RICOH UNIVERSITY
Learning ◆ Knowledge ◆ Performance

B222/B224
SERVICE MANUAL

(Book 1 of 2) 002825MIU

MAINFRAME

Gestetner LANIER RICOH savin

RICOH
Learning ◆ Knowledge ◆ Performance
UNIVERSITY

B222/B224

SERVICE MANUAL

(BOOK 1 OF 2) MAINFRAME

Gestetner
LANIER
RICOH
SAVIN

RICOH UNIVERSITY
Learning ◆ Knowledge ◆ Performance

B222/B224
SERVICE MANUAL

Book 1 of 2

MAINFRAME

002825MIU

Gestetner LANIER RICOH SAVIN

It is the reader's responsibility when discussing the information contained within this document to maintain a level of confidentiality that is in the best interest of Ricoh Corporation and its member companies.

NO PART OF THIS DOCUMENT MAY BE REPRODUCED IN ANY FASHION AND DISTRIBUTED WITHOUT THE PRIOR PERMISSION OF RICOH CORPORATION.

All product names, domain names or product illustrations, including desktop images, used in this document are trademarks, registered trademarks or the property of their respective companies.
They are used throughout this book in an informational or editorial fashion only and for the benefit of such companies. No such use, or the use of any trade name, or web site is intended to convey endorsement or other affiliation with Ricoh products.

© 2006 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

WARNING

The Service Manual contains information regarding service techniques, procedures, processes and spare parts of office equipment distributed by Ricoh Corporation. Users of this manual should be either service trained or certified by successfully completing a Ricoh Technical Training Program.

Untrained and uncertified users utilizing information contained in this service manual to repair or modify Ricoh equipment risk personal injury, damage to property or loss of warranty protection.

Ricoh Corporation

LEGEND

PRODUCT CODE	COMPANY			
	GESTETNER	LANIER	RICOH	SAVIN
B222	DSc535	LD435c	Aficio MP C3500	C3535
B224	DSc545	LD445c	Aficio MP C4500	C4540

DOCUMENTATION HISTORY

REV. NO.	DATE	COMMENTS
*	09/2006	Original Printing

B222/B224

TABLE OF CONTENTS

INSTALLATION

1. INSTALLATION 1-1

1.1 INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS 1-1
- 1.1.1 ENVIRONMENT 1-1
- 1.1.2 MACHINE LEVEL 1-1
- 1.1.3 MACHINE SPACE REQUIREMENTS 1-2
- 1.1.4 POWER REQUIREMENTS 1-2

1.2 OPTIONAL UNIT COMBINATIONS 1-3
- 1.2.1 MACHINE OPTIONS 1-3
- 1.2.2 CONTROLLER OPTIONS 1-4
- 1.2.3 FAX OPTIONS 1-4
- 1.2.4 OTHER OPTIONS 1-5

1.3 COPIER INSTALLATION 1-6
- 1.3.1 POWER SOCKETS FOR PERIPHERALS 1-6
- 1.3.2 INSTALLATION FLOW CHART 1-6
- 1.3.3 ACCESSORY CHECK 1-7
- 1.3.4 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 1-9
  - Tapes and Retainers 1-10
  - Developer and Toner Bottles 1-10
  - Paper Trays 1-11
  - Emblem and Decals 1-12
  - Fire Prevention Cover 1-13
  - Manual Pocket Attachment 1-13
  - Initialize the Developer 1-13
  - Settings Relevant to the Service Contract 1-14
- 1.3.5 MOVING THE MACHINE 1-15
- 1.3.6 TRANSPORTING THE MACHINE 1-15

1.4 PAPER FEED UNIT (B800) 1-17
- 1.4.1 ACCESSORY CHECK 1-17
- 1.4.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 1-18

1.5 LCT (B801) 1-21
- 1.5.1 ACCESSORY CHECK 1-21
- 1.5.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 1-22

1.6 AUTO REVERSE DOCUMENT FEEDER (B802) 1-25
- 1.6.1 COMPONENT CHECK 1-25
- 1.6.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 1-25

1.7 1-BIN TRAY UNIT (B803) 1-29
- 1.7.1 COMPONENT CHECK 1-29
- 1.7.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 1-29

1.8 BRIDGE UNIT (B227) 1-32
1.8.1 COMPONENT CHECK 1-32
1.8.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 1-32
1.9 1000-SHEET FINISHER (B408) 1-35
1.9.1 ACCESSORY CHECK 1-35
1.9.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 1-36
1.10 2000/3000-SHEET (BOOKLET) FINISHER (B804/B805) 1-38
1.10.1 ACCESSORY CHECK 1-38
1.10.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 1-39
Support Tray Installation 1-43
1.11 PUNCH UNIT 1-44
1.11.1 COMPONENT CHECK 1-44
1.11.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 1-45
1.12 MECHANICAL COUNTER (NA ONLY) 1-49
1.12.1 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 1-49
1.13 KEY COUNTER BRACKET 1-51
1.13.1 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 1-51
1.14 KEY COUNTER INTERFACE UNIT 1-53
1.14.1 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 1-53
1.15 ANTI-CONDENSATION HEATER (SCANNER) 1-55
1.15.1 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 1-55
1.16 TRAY HEATER 1-57
1.16.1 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 1-57
1.17 CONTROLLER OPTIONS 1-58
1.17.1 OVERVIEW 1-58
I/F Card Slots 1-58
SD Card Slots 1-58
1.17.2 SD CARD APPLI MOVE 1-59
Overview 1-59
Move Exec 1-60
Undo Exec 1-61
1.17.3 POSTSCRIPT 3 1-61
1.17.4 FILE FORMAT CONVERTER 1-62
1.17.5 IEEE1394 (FIREWIRE) 1-63
Installation Procedure 1-63
UP Mode Settings for IEEE 1394 1-64
SP Mode Settings for IEEE 1394 1-64
1.17.6 IEEE1284 1-65
Installation Procedure 1-65
1.17.7 IEEE 802.11B (WIRELESS LAN) 1-66
Installation Procedure 1-66
UP Mode Settings for Wireless LAN 1-67
SP Mode Settings for IEEE 802.11b Wireless LAN 1-69
1.17.8 BLUETOOTH 1-69
1.17.9 COPY DATA SECURITY UNIT 1-70
User Tool Setting 1-72

1.17.10 DATA OVERWRITE SECURITY UNIT TYPE D (B735) 1-72
Before You Begin the Procedure 1-72
Seal Check and Removal 1-73
Installation Procedure 1-73
1.17.11 USB HOST INTERFACE 1-76
1.17.12 PICTBRIDGE 1-76
1.17.13 BROWSER UNIT TYPE B 1-77
Installation Procedure 1-77
Update Procedure 1-79
1.17.14 REMOTE COMMUNICATION GATE INSTALLATION 1-79
Component Check 1-79
Installation Procedure 1-80
1.17.15 VM CARD TYPE C (JAVA PLATFORM) 1-82
1.17.16 CHECK ALL CONNECTIONS 1-83
1.17 FIERY E-5000 (B878) 1-84

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE

2. PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE 2-1
2.1 SETTINGS 2-1
2.1.1 BEFORE REMOVING THE OLD PM PARTS 2-1
2.1.2 AFTER INSTALLING THE NEW PM PARTS 2-2
2.1.3 PREPARATION BEFORE OPERATION CHECK 2-2
2.1.4 OPERATION CHECK 2-3
2.2 MAINTENANCE TABLES 2-4
2.2.1 PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE TABLES 2-4
Mainframe 2-4
ARDF 2-7
Two-tray Paper Feed Unit 2-8
LCT 2-8
2000/3000-Sheet (Booklet) Finisher 2-8
2000/3000-Sheet (Booklet) Finisher Punch Kit 2-9
1000-Sheet Finisher 2-9
2.2.2 OTHERS IN MAINFRAME 2-9

REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

3. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT 3-1
3.1 BEFOREHAND 3-1
3.2 SPECIAL TOOLS 3-2
3.3 IMAGE ADJUSTMENT 3-3
3.3.1 SCANNING 3-3
Scanner sub-scan magnification 3-3
Scanner leading edge and side-to-side registration 3-3
3.3.2 ARDF 3-4
ARDF side-to-side, leading edge registration and trailing edge 3-4
ARDF sub-scan magnification 3-5

3.3.3 REGISTRATION....3-5
Image Area....3-5
Leading Edge....3-6
Side to Side....3-6
Adjustment Standard....3-6
Paper Registration Standard....3-6
Adjustment Procedure....3-6
3.3.4 ERASE MARGIN ADJUSTMENT....3-7
3.3.5 COLOR REGISTRATION....3-7
Line Position Adjustment....3-7
3.3.6 PRINTER GAMMA CORRECTION....3-8
Copy Mode....3-8
Printer Mode....3-13
3.4 EXTERIOR COVERS....3-15
3.4.1 FRONT DOOR....3-15
3.4.2 LEFT COVER....3-16
3.4.3 REAR COVER....3-16
3.4.4 RIGHT REAR COVER....3-17
3.4.5 OPERATION PANEL....3-17
3.4.6 PAPER EXIT COVER....3-18
3.4.7 INNER TRAY....3-19
3.4.8 DUST FILTER....3-20
3.4.9 OZONE FILTER....3-20
Ozone filters for scanner unit....3-20
Ozone filter for IH inverter....3-21
3.5 SCANNER UNIT....3-22
3.5.1 EXPOSURE GLASS....3-22
3.5.2 ORIGINAL LENGTH/WIDTH SENSORS....3-23
3.5.3 EXPOSURE LAMP....3-23
3.5.4 SCANNER MOTOR....3-26
3.5.5 SENSOR BOARD UNIT (SBU)....3-27
When reassembling....3-27
3.5.6 EXPOSURE LAMP STABILIZER....3-27
3.5.7 SIO (SCANNER IN/OUT) BOARD....3-28
3.5.8 SCANNER HP SENSOR....3-28
3.5.9 PLATEN COVER SENSOR....3-29
3.5.10 FRONT SCANNER WIRE....3-30
Reassembling the Front Scanner Wire....3-30
3.5.11 REAR SCANNER WIRE....3-32
Reassembling the Rear Scanner Wire....3-34
3.5.12 TOUCH PANEL POSITION ADJUSTMENT....3-35
3.6 LASER OPTICS....3-36
3.6.1 CAUTION DECAL LOCATION....3-36
3.6.2 LASER OPTICS HOUSING UNIT....3-36
Preparing the new laser optics housing unit....3-37
Before removing the old laser optics housing unit....3-37

Recovery procedure for no replacement preparation of laser optics housing unit 3-38
Removing the old laser optics housing unit....3-39
Installing a new Laser Optics Housing Unit....3-40
After installing the new laser optics housing unit 3-40
3.6.3 POLYGON MIRROR MOTOR AND DRIVE BOARD....3-42
3.6.4 SHUTTER MOTOR 3-43
3.7 IMAGE CREATION 3-46
3.7.1 PCU....3-46
3.7.2 DRUM UNIT AND DEVELOPMENT UNIT 3-47
Developer 3-49
3.7.3 TONER COLLECTION BOTTLE 3-50
3.7.4 SECOND DUCT FAN....3-51
When reinstalling the second duct fan 3-52
3.7.5 THIRD DUCT FAN 3-52
When reinstalling the third duct fan....3-53
3.7.6 TONER PUMP UNIT 3-53
When you install the new toner pump unit 3-56
3.7.7 TONER END SENSOR 3-59
3.8 IMAGE TRANSFER....3-60
3.8.1 IMAGE TRANSFER BELT UNIT 3-60
3.8.2 IMAGE TRANSFER BELT CLEANING UNIT 3-60
3.8.3 IMAGE TRANSFER BELT....3-61
When reinstalling the image transfer belt....3-65
3.9 PAPER TRANSFER....3-67
3.9.1 PAPER TRANSFER ROLLER UNIT 3-67
3.9.2 PAPER TRANSFER UNIT....3-67
3.9.3 HIGH VOLTAGE SUPPLY BOARD - DISCHARGE PLATE 3-69
3.9.4 ID SENSOR BOARD....3-70
Cleaning for ID sensors 3-71
After installing a new ID sensor unit/board....3-71
3.9.5 TEMPERATURE AND HUMIDITY SENSOR 3-72
3.10 DRIVE UNIT 3-73
3.10.1 GEAR UNIT 3-74
When installing the drive unit 3-79
Adjustment after replacing the gear unit 3-79
3.10.2 REGISTRATION MOTOR....3-80
3.10.3 PAPER FEED MOTOR....3-80
3.10.4 DRUM/DEVELOPMENT MOTORS FOR M, C, AND Y 3-81
3.10.5 DRUM/DEVELOPMENT MOTOR-K 3-82
3.10.6 ITB DRIVE MOTOR....3-83
3.10.7 FUSING/PAPER EXIT MOTOR....3-83
3.10.8 IMAGE TRANSFER BELT CONTACT MOTOR....3-84
3.10.9 PAPER TRANSFER CONTACT MOTOR....3-84
3.10.10 DUPLEX INVERTER MOTOR....3-85
3.10.11 DUPLEX/BY-PASS MOTOR 3-86

3.10.12 TONER TRANSPORT MOTOR 3-87
3.10.13 TONER COLLECTION UNIT....3-88
3.10.14 PAPER FEED CLUTCHES 3-89
3.10.15 DEVELOPMENT CLUTCH-Y 3-91
3.10.16 DEVELOPMENT CLUTCHES FOR M AND C 3-92
3.10.17 DEVELOPMENT CLUTCH-K 3-93
3.11 FUSING 3-94
3.11.1 FUSING UNIT 3-94
3.11.2 FUSING LAMP....3-94
3.11.3 PRESSURE ROLLER AND PRESSURE ROLLER BEARING ..3-96
When re-installing the pressure roller 3-99
3.11.4 FERRITE ROLLER GEAR 3-101
3.11.5 FUSING ROLLER BUSHING AND TENSION ROLLER BUSHING 3-101
When re-installing the fusing roller bushing and tension roller bushing 3-102
3.11.6 TENSION ROLLER....3-103
When re-installing the tension roller....3-103
3.11.7 FUSING BELT, HEATING ROLLER, HEATING ROLLER BUSHING AND FUSING ROLLER....3-103
When re-installing the fusing belt, heating roller, fusing roller and heating roller bushing....3-105
3.11.8 LUBRICANT ROLLER BUSHING 3-106
3.11.9 LUBRICANT ROLLER AND CLEANING ROLLER 3-106
3.11.10 HEATING ROLLER THERMISTOR 3-107
3.11.11 PRESSURE ROLLER THERMOSTAT....3-107
3.11.12 PRESSURE ROLLER THERMISTOR....3-108
3.11.13 FUSING ROLLER ONE-WAY CLUTCH AND IDLE GEAR ..3-108
When re-installing the idle gear 3-109
3.11.14 FUSING FAN....3-109
When installing the fusing fan 3-110
3.11.15 PAPER EXIT FAN 3-110
When installing the paper exit fan 3-111
3.11.16 IH (INDUCTION HEATING) INVERTER FAN 3-111
When installing the IH inverter fan 3-111
3.11.17 THERMOPILE 3-111
3.11.18 FUSING BELT SENSOR AND FERRITE ROLLER HP SENSOR 3-112
3.11.19 IH COIL FAN 3-113
3.11.20 IH COIL UNIT 3-114
3.12 PAPER FEED 3-116
3.12.1 PAPER FEED UNIT....3-116
3.12.2 PICK-UP, FEED AND SEPARATION ROLLERS....3-116
Tray 1 and Tray 2 3-116
3.12.3 TRAY LIFT MOTOR....3-117

3.12.4 VERTICAL TRANSPORT, PAPER OVERFLOW, PAPER END AND PAPER FEED SENSOR 3-117
3.12.5 REGISTRATION SENSOR 3-118
3.12.6 BY-PASS PAPER SIZE SENSOR SWITCH 3-119
When reinstalling this switch 3-119
3.12.7 BY-PASS BOTTOM TRAY 3-120
3.12.8 BY-PASS PAPER END SENSOR 3-122
3.12.9 BY-PASS PICK-UP, FEED AND SEPARATION ROLLER, TORQUE LIMITER 3-123
3.12.10 BY-PASS FEED CLUTCH 3-123
3.12.11 PAPER EXIT UNIT 3-124
3.12.12 FUSING EXIT, PAPER OVERFLOW, JUNCTION PAPER JAM AND PAPER EXIT SENSOR 3-125
3.12.13 JUNCTION GATE 1 MOTOR 3-126
3.13 DUPLEX UNIT 3-127
3.13.1 DUPLEX UNIT 3-127
3.13.2 DUPLEX DOOR SENSOR 3-128
3.13.3 DUPLEX ENTRANCE SENSOR 3-128
3.13.4 DUPLEX EXIT SENSOR 3-129
3.14 ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS 3-130
3.14.1 CONTROLLER UNIT 3-130
3.14.2 CONTROLLER BOX RIGHT COVER 3-130
3.14.3 CONTROLLER BOX 3-131
When opening the controller box 3-131
When removing the controller box 3-131
3.14.4 IOB (IN/OUT BOARD) 3-133
3.14.5 BCU 3-133
When installing the new BCU 3-134
3.14.6 IPU 3-134
3.14.7 PSU 3-135
PSU bracket 3-135
PSU board 3-135
3.14.8 ITB POWER SUPPLY BOARD 3-136
3.14.9 HIGH VOLTAGE SUPPLY BOARD 3-136
3.14.10 HIGH VOLTAGE SUPPLY BOARD BRACKET 3-137
3.14.11 IH INVERTER 3-137
3.14.12 CONTROLLER BOARD 3-138
When installing the new controller board 3-139
3.14.13 MOTHER BOARD 3-139
3.14.14 HDD FAN 3-141
3.14.15 HDD 3-141
When installing a new HDD unit 3-142
Disposal of HDD Units 3-142
Reinstallation 3-142
3.14.16 NVRAM REPLACEMENT PROCEDURE 3-143
NVRAM on the BCU 3-143

NVRAM on the Controller 3-144

TROUBLESHOOTING

4. TROUBLESHOOTING 4-1
4.1 PROCESS CONTROL ERROR CONDITIONS 4-1
4.1.1 DEVELOPER INITIALIZATION RESULT 4-1
4.1.2 PROCESS CONTROL SELF-CHECK RESULT 4-2
Vsg Adjustment Result 4-5
4.1.3 LINE POSITION ADJUSTMENT RESULT 4-6
4.2 SCANNER TEST MODE 4-8
4.2.1 VPU TEST MODE 4-8
4.2.2 IPU TEST MODE 4-8
SP4-904-1 Register Access 4-8
SP4-904-2 Image Path 4-8
4.3 SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS 4-10
4.3.1 SUMMARY 4-10
SC Code Classification 4-11
4.4 SC TABLE 4-14
4.5 TROUBLESHOOTING GUIDE 4-97
4.5.1 IMAGE QUALITY 4-97
4.5.2 LINE POSITION ADJUSTMENT 4-99
4.6 JAM DETECTION 4-108
4.6.1 PAPER JAM DISPLAY 4-108
4.6.2 JAM CODES AND DISPLAY CODES 4-108
Paper Size Code 4-115
Sensor Locations 4-116
4.7 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DEFECTS 4-117
4.7.1 SENSORS 4-117
4.7.2 BLOWN FUSE CONDITIONS 4-123
Power Supply Unit 4-123
IH Inverter 4-124

SERVICE TABLES

5. SERVICE TABLES 5-1
5.1 SERVICE PROGRAM MODE 5-1
5.1.1 ENABLING AND DISABLING SERVICE PROGRAM MODE 5-1
Entering SP Mode 5-1
Exiting SP Mode 5-1
5.1.2 TYPES OF SP MODES 5-1
SP Mode Button Summary 5-2
Switching Between SP Mode and Copy Mode for Test Printing 5-3
Selecting the Program Number 5-3
Exiting Service Mode 5-4

Service Mode Lock/Unlock 5-4
5.1.3 REMARKS 5-5
Display on the Control Panel Screen 5-5
Others 5-6
5.2 COPY SERVICE MODE 5-7
5.2.1 SERVICE MODE TABLE 5-7
SP1-XXX (Feed) 5-7
SP2-XXX (Drum) 5-30
SP3-XXX (Process) 5-162
SP4-XXX (Scanner) 5-214
SP5-XXX (Mode) 5-254
SP6-XXX (Peripherals) 5-317
SP7-XXX (Data Log) 5-328
SP8-xxx: Data Log2 5-363
SP9-XXX: Others 5-417
5.2.2 INPUT CHECK TABLE 5-423
Copier 5-423
1000-Sheet Booklet Finisher (B793) 5-429
2000/3000-Sheet (Booklet) Finisher (B804, B805) 5-429
1000-Sheet Finisher (B408) 5-433
Table 1: Paper Height Sensor 5-434
Table 2: Paper Size Switch (Tray 2) 5-435
Table 3: Paper Size (By-pass Table) 5-436
Table 4: APS Original Size Detection 5-437
5.2.3 OUTPUT CHECK TABLE 5-438
Copier 5-438
1000-Sheet Booklet Finisher (B793) 5-450
1000-Sheet Finisher (B408) 5-450
2000/3000-Sheet (Booklet) Finisher 5-451
5.2.4 TEST PATTERN PRINTING 5-453
5.3 PRINTER SERVICE MODE 5-455
5.3.1 SP1-XXX (SERVICE MODE) 5-455
5.4 SCANNER SP MODE 5-459
5.4.1 SP1-XXX (SYSTEM AND OTHERS) 5-459
5.4.2 SP2-XXX (SCANNING-IMAGE QUALITY) 5-460
5.5 REBOOT/SYSTEM SETTING RESET 5-461
5.5.1 SOFTWARE RESET 5-461
5.5.2 SYSTEM SETTINGS AND COPY SETTING RESET 5-461
System Setting Reset 5-461
Copier Setting Reset 5-461
5.6 FIRMWARE UPDATE 5-463
5.6.1 TYPE OF FIRMWARE 5-463
5.6.2 BEFORE YOU BEGIN 5-464
5.6.3 UPDATING FIRMWARE 5-465
5.6.4 UPDATING THE LCDC FOR THE OPERATION PANEL 5-467
5.6.5 DOWNLOADING STAMP DATA 5-468

5.6.6 NVRAM DATA UPLOAD/DOWNLOAD 5-469
Uploading Content of NVRAM to an SD card 5-469
Downloading an SD Card to NVRAM 5-469
5.6.7 ADDRESS BOOK UPLOAD/DOWNLOAD 5-470
Information List 5-470
Download 5-471
Upload 5-471
5.6.8 INSTALLING ANOTHER LANGUAGE 5-472
5.6.9 HANDLING FIRMWARE UPDATE ERRORS 5-474
Error Message Table 5-474
5.7 SD CARD APPLI MOVE 5-477
5.7.1 OVERVIEW 5-477
5.7.2 MOVE EXEC 5-478
5.7.3 UNDO EXEC 5-479
5.8 CONTROLLER SELF-DIAGNOSTICS 5-480
5.8.1 OVERVIEW 5-480
5.9 USING THE DEBUG LOG 5-481
5.9.1 SWITCHING ON AND SETTING UP SAVE DEBUG LOG 5-481
5.9.2 RETRIEVING THE DEBUG LOG FROM THE HDD 5-486
5.9.3 RECORDING ERRORS MANUALLY 5-486
5.9.4 NEW DEBUG LOG CODES 5-486
SP5857-015 Copy SD Card-to-SD Card: Any Desired Key 5-486
SP5857-016 Create a File on HDD to Store a Log 5-487
SP5857-017 Create a File on SD Card to Store a Log 5-487
5.10 DIP SWITCHES 5-488
5.10.1 CONTROLLER BOARD 5-488
5.10.2 BCU BOARD 5-488

DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS

6. DETAILED SECTION DESCRIPTIONS 6-1
6.1 OVERVIEW 6-1
6.1.1 COMPONENT LAYOUT 6-1
6.1.2 PAPER PATH 6-2
6.1.3 DRIVE LAYOUT 6-3
6.1.4 BOARD STRUCTURE 6-5
Overview 6-5
6.1.5 PRINTING PROCESS 6-6
6.2 PROCESS CONTROL 6-9
6.2.1 OVERVIEW 6-9
6.2.2 POTENTIAL CONTROL 6-9
Overview 6-9
Process Control Self Check 6-9
6.2.3 PROCESS CONTROL SELF CHECK PROCEDURE 6-12
6.2.4 TONER DENSITY ADJUSTMENT MODE 6-14
6.2.5 TONER SUPPLY CONTROL 6-14

Overview....6-14
Toner Supply Control Modes....6-15
6.2.6 TONER NEAR END/TONER END DETECTION....6-15
6.2.7 DEVELOPER INITIALIZATION....6-16
6.3 SCANNING....6-18
6.3.1 OVERVIEW....6-18
6.3.2 SCANNER DRIVE....6-19
6.3.3 ORIGINAL SIZE DETECTION....6-20
6.3.4 ANTI-CONDENSATION HEATER....6-21
6.4 IMAGE PROCESSING....6-22
6.4.1 OVERVIEW....6-22
6.4.2 SBU (SENSOR BOARD UNIT)....6-22
6.4.3 IPU (IMAGE PROCESSING UNIT)....6-23
6.5 LASER EXPOSURE....6-24
6.5.1 OVERVIEW....6-24
6.5.2 OPTICAL PATH....6-25
6.5.3 LASER SYNCHRONIZING DETECTORS....6-26
Overview....6-26
6.5.4 LD SAFETY SWITCH....6-27
6.5.5 AUTOMATIC LINE POSITION ADJUSTMENT....6-29
Overview....6-29
Summary of Each Adjustment....6-29
Adjustment Conditions....6-30
Main Scan Skew Adjustment....6-32
ID Sensors....6-32
6.5.6 SHUTTER MECHANISM....6-33
6.6 PCU (PHOTO CONDUCTOR UNIT)....6-34
6.6.1 OVERVIEW....6-34
6.6.2 AROUND THE DRUM....6-35
Drum Drive....6-35
Phase Control Mechanism....6-35
Drum Charge and Quenching....6-36
Drum Cleaning....6-37
6.6.3 DEVELOPMENT....6-38
Development Operation....6-38
Drive....6-39
Developer Agitation....6-39
Development Bias....6-40
New Unit Detection....6-41
6.7 TONER SUPPLY....6-42
6.7.1 OVERVIEW....6-42
6.7.2 TONER SUPPLY MECHANISM....6-43
Toner supply from toner bottle to toner attraction pump....6-43
Toner Near End Detection....6-43
Toner supply from toner attraction pump to development unit....6-44
6.7.3 TONER CARTRIDGE....6-45

RFID (Radio Frequency ID) 6-45
6.8 WASTE TONER COLLECTION 6-46
6.8.1 TONER COLLECTION PATH AND DRIVE 6-46
From PCU 6-46
From Image Transfer Belt Unit 6-46
Used Toner Distribution Mechanism 6-47
6.8.2 TONER COLLECTION BOTTLE SET/ NEAR-FULL/ FULL DETECTION 6-47
6.9 IMAGE TRANSFER AND PAPER SEPARATION 6-49
6.9.1 IMAGE TRANSFER 6-49
Overview 6-49
ITB (Image Transfer Belt) Drive 6-50
ITB Current 6-51
Transfer belt cleaning 6-52
ITB (Image Transfer Belt) Contact 6-53
Transfer Belt Sensor 6-54
6.9.2 PAPER TRANSFER AND SEPARATION 6-55
Overview 6-55
PTR (Paper Transfer Roller) Drive 6-55
PTR (Paper Transfer Roller) Contact and Separation 6-56
6.10 PAPER FEED 6-58
6.10.1 OVERVIEW 6-58
6.10.2 DRIVE – TRAY 1, TRAY 2, AND BY-PASS TRAY 6-59
Tray 1 and Tray2 6-59
By-pass Tray 6-59
6.10.3 PAPER PICK-UP 6-60
6.10.4 PAPER LIFT – TRAYS 1 AND 2 6-61
6.10.5 PAPER SIZE DETECTION – TRAYS 1 & 2 6-61
6.10.6 PAPER HEIGHT DETECTION – TRAYS 1 & 2 6-63
6.10.7 PAPER END DETECTION – TRAYS 1 & 2 6-64
6.10.8 REGISTRATION 6-65
6.10.9 PAPER FEED LINE SPEED 6-65
6.10.10 TRAY LOCK MECHANISM 6-66
Tray Lock at the Front 6-66
Tray Lock at the Rear 6-67
6.10.11 PAPER DUST COLLECTION 6-67
6.10.12 BY-PASS PAPER SEPARATION 6-68
6.10.13 BY-PASS PAPER SIZE DETECTION 6-68
6.11 FUSING 6-69
6.11.1 OVERVIEW 6-69
6.11.2 FUSING UNIT DRIVE 6-70
Belt and Rollers 6-70
Lubricant Mechanism 6-70
6.11.3 IH (INDUCTION HEATING) SYSTEM 6-71
Basic IH System 6-71
Paper Size Correction 6-71

6.11.4 PRESSURE RELEASE MECHANISM....6-72
6.11.5 FUSING TEMPERATURE CONTROL....6-73
Components....6-73
Fusing Temperatures....6-74
Temperature Corrections....6-79
Overheat Protection....6-80
6.11.6 CPM DOWN SYSTEM....6-80
CPM Down Control....6-80
6.11.7 ENERGY SAVER MODES....6-82
Overview....6-82
Panel Off Mode....6-82
Auto Off Mode....6-83
6.11.8 NEW UNIT DETECTION....6-84
Fusing Unit, Image Transfer Belt Unit....6-84
PCU, Development Unit....6-84
6.12 PAPER EXIT....6-85
6.12.1 OVERVIEW....6-85
6.12.2 JUNCTION GATE MECHANISM....6-86
To the Standard Tray....6-86
To the 1-bin Tray or Duplex Unit....6-87
6.13 DUPLEX UNIT....6-88
6.13.1 OVERVIEW....6-88
6.13.2 DUPLEX DRIVE....6-89
6.13.3 INVERTER MECHANISM....6-90
6.13.4 DUPLEX OPERATION....6-91
Up to A4/LT (81/2" x 11") LEF....6-91
From A4/LT (8 1/2" x 11") LEF to 400mm length....6-91
6.14 PRINTER FUNCTIONS....6-93
6.14.1 OVERVIEW....6-93
6.14.2 HARD DISK....6-95
Overview....6-95
6.14.3 CONTROLLER FUNCTIONS....6-95
Sample Print....6-95
Locked Print....6-96
Hold Print....6-96
Stored Print/ Store and Print....6-96
6.14.4 JOB SPOOLING....6-96
Related SP Modes....6-97
Paper Source Selection....6-97
Auto Continue....6-98
6.15 PICTBRIDGE....6-100
6.15.1 GENERAL FUNCTION....6-100
Photo image format....6-100
6.15.2 PRINTING FUNCTION LIST....6-100
6.15.3 PRINTING FUNCTION DESCRIPTION....6-101
Single image printing....6-101

Selected image printing 6-102
DPOF (Digital Print Order Format) printing 6-102
All image printing 6-102
Index printing 6-102
Trimming 6-102
Multiple number printing 6-102
Date and file name printing 6-103
Image print size (Fixed size printing) 6-104
Multi-Image-Layout (N-up) 6-105
Edge-to-edge borderless printing 6-106
Printing quality 6-106
Color matching 6-107
Paper type specification 6-107
Form printing 6-107
Camera memo printing 6-108
6.16 COPY DATA SECURITY UNIT 6-109
6.16.1 GENERAL FUNCTION 6-109
When copying on a machine with an optional Copy Data Security Unit 6-109
When copying on a machine without an optional Copy Data Security Unit 6-110
Setting 6-110
Related SC 6-110
6.16.2 MASK TYPE FOR COPYING 6-110
6.17 FILE FORMAT CONVERTER (MLB) 6-112
6.18 DATA OVERWRITE SECURITY UNIT (B735) 6-113
6.18.1 AUTO ERASE MEMORY 6-113
Types of Data Overwritten and Not Overwritten 6-113
Overwrite timing 6-114

SPECIFICATIONS

7. SPECIFICATIONS 7-1
7.1 GENERAL SPECIFICATIONS 7-1
7.1.1 MAIN FRAME 7-1
7.2 PRINTER 7-5
7.3 SCANNER 7-7
7.4 SUPPORTED PAPER SIZES 7-8
7.4.1 PAPER FEED 7-8
7.4.2 PAPER EXIT 7-10
2000/3000 Sheet Booklet Finisher 7-10
1000-Sheet Finisher 7-13
7.4.3 PLATEN/ARDF ORIGINAL SIZE DETECTION 7-16
7.5 SOFTWARE ACCESSORIES 7-18
7.5.1 PRINTER DRIVERS 7-18
7.5.2 SCANNER AND LAN FAX DRIVERS 7-19

7.5.3 UTILITY SOFTWARE....7-19
7.6 MACHINE CONFIGURATION....7-21
7.7 OPTIONAL EQUIPMENT....7-24
7.7.1 ARDF....7-24
7.7.2 PAPER FEED UNIT....7-25
7.7.3 LARGE CAPACITY TRAY....7-25
7.7.4 3000-SHEET FINISHER....7-26
7.7.5 2000-SHEET BOOKLET FINISHER....7-28
7.7.6 PUNCH UNIT FOR 2000/3000-SHEET (BOOKLET) FINISHER....7-30
7.7.7 1000-SHEET FINISHER....7-31
Upper Tray....7-31
Lower Tray....7-31
7.7.8 BRIDGE UNIT....7-32
7.7.9 1-BIN TRAY UNIT....7-33

SEE B222/B224 SERVICE MANUAL BOOK 2 OF 2 FOR ACCESSORIES:

FAX OPTION B771

SEE SECTION B771 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

AUTO REVERSE DOCUMENT FEEDER B802

SEE SECTION B802 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

1 BIN TRAY UNIT B803

SEE SECTION B803 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

BOOKLET FINISHER/FINISHER B804/B805

SEE SECTION B804/B805 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

SCANNER ACCESSIBILITY OPTION TYPE 4045 B838

SEE SECTION B838 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

Read This First

Important Safety Notices

Prevention of Physical Injury

1. Before disassembling or assembling parts of the copier and peripherals, make sure that the copier power cord is unplugged.
2. The wall outlet should be near the copier and easily accessible.
3. If any adjustment or operation check has to be made with exterior covers off or open while the main switch is turned on, keep hands away from electrified or mechanically driven components.
4. The copier drives some of its components when it completes the warm-up period. Be careful to keep hands away from the mechanical and electrical components as the copier starts operation.
5. The inside and the metal parts of the fusing unit become extremely hot while the copier is operating. Be careful to avoid touching those components with your bare hands.

Health Safety Conditions

1. Toner and developer are non-toxic, but if you get either of them in your eyes by accident, it may cause temporary eye discomfort. Immediately wash eyes with plenty of water. If unsuccessful, get medical attention.
2. The copier, which use high voltage power source, can generate ozone gas. High ozone density is harmful to human health. Therefore, the machine must be installed in a well-ventilated room.

Observance of Electrical Safety Standards

The copier and its peripherals must be serviced by a customer service representative who has completed the training course on those models.

⚠WARNING

- ⃠ Keep the machine away from flammable liquids, gases, and aerosols. A fire or an explosion might occur.

⚠CAUTION

- The Controller board on this machine contains a lithium battery. The danger of explosion exists if a battery of this type is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or an equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer. Discard batteries in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and local regulations.

- The optional fax and memory expansion units contain lithium batteries, which can explode if replaced incorrectly. Replace only with the same or an equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer. Do not recharge or burn the batteries. Used batteries must be handled in accordance with local regulations.

Safety and Ecological Notes for Disposal

1. Do not incinerate toner bottles or used toner. Toner dust may ignite suddenly when exposed to an open flame.
2. Dispose of used toner, the maintenance unit which includes developer or the organic photoconductor in accordance with local regulations. (These are non-toxic supplies.)
3. Dispose of replaced parts in accordance with local regulations.
4. When keeping used lithium batteries in order to dispose of them later, do not put more than 100 batteries per sealed box. Storing larger numbers or not sealing them apart may lead to chemical reactions and heat build-up.

Laser Safety

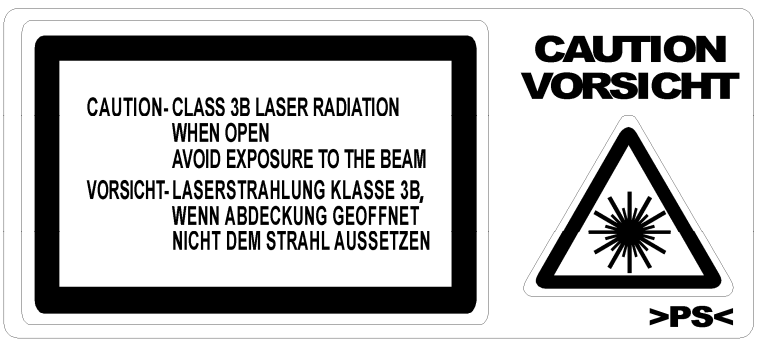
The Center for Devices and Radiological Health (CDRH) prohibits the repair of laser-based optical units in the field. The optical housing unit can only be repaired in a factory or at a location with the requisite equipment. The laser subsystem is replaceable in the field by a qualified Customer Engineer. The laser chassis is not repairable in the field. Customer engineers are therefore directed to return all chassis and laser subsystems to the factory or service depot when replacement of the optical subsystem is required.

⚠WARNING

- **Use of controls, or adjustment, or performance of procedures other than those specified in this manual may result in hazardous radiation exposure.**

⚠WARNING

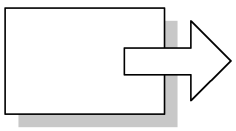
- **WARNING**: Turn off the main switch before attempting any of the procedures in the Laser Optics Housing Unit section. Laser beams can seriously damage your eyes.
- **CAUTION MARKING:**



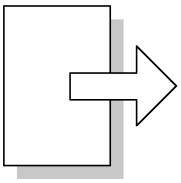
Symbols, Abbreviations and Trademarks

This manual uses several symbols and abbreviations. The meaning of those symbols and abbreviations are as follows:

	See or Refer to
	Clip ring
	Screw
	Connector
	Clamp
	E-ring
SEF	Short Edge Feed
LEF	Long Edge Feed



Short Edge Feed (SEF)



Long Edge Feed (LEF)

Trademarks

Microsoft®, Windows®, and MS-DOS® are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and /or other countries.

PostScript® is a registered trademark of Adobe Systems, Incorporated.

PCL® is a registered trademark of Hewlett-Packard Company.

Ethernet® is a registered trademark of Xerox Corporation.

PowerPC® is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corporation.

Other product names used herein are for identification purposes only and may be trademarks of their respective companies. We disclaim any and all rights involved with those marks.

INSTALLATION
AUTO REVERSE DOCUMENT FEEDER B802
FAX OPTION B771
TAB POSITION 1

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE
TAB POSITION 2

REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT
TAB POSITION 3

TROUBLESHOOTING
BOOKLET FINISHER/FINISHER B804/B805
TAB POSITION 4

SERVICE TABLES
TAB POSITION 5

DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS
TAB POSITION 6

SPECIFICATIONS
1 BIN TRAY UNT B803
TAB POSITION 7

TAB POSITION 8

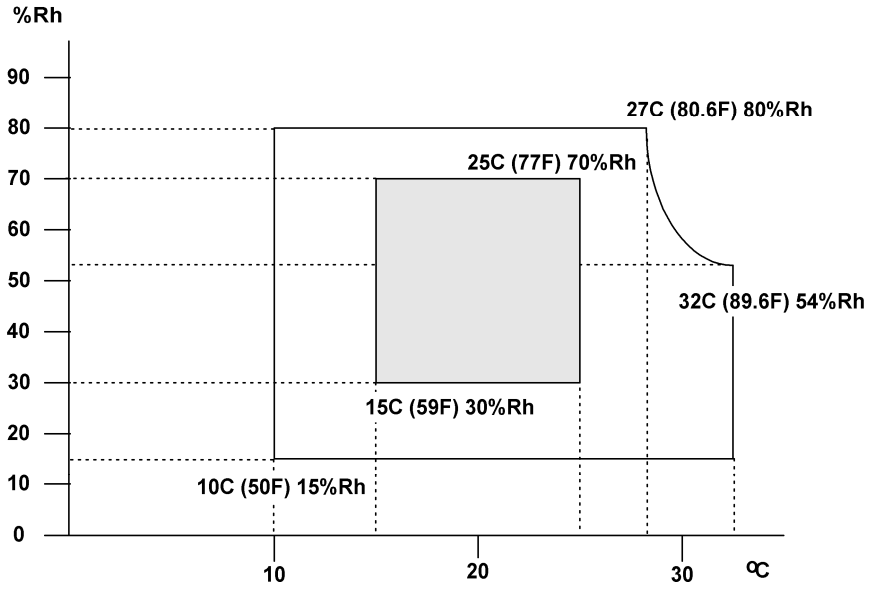
INSTALLATION

SECTION 1 INSTALLATION REVISION HISTORY		
Page	**Date**	**Added/Updated/New**
59	03/23/2007	Controller options
69 ~ 69	05/08/2008	Wireless Lan
82 ~ 83	03/23/2007	VM Card Type C
84 ~ 102	04/23/2008	Fiery E5000

1. INSTALLATION

1.1 INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

1.1.1 ENVIRONMENT



1. Temperature Range: 10°C to 32°C (50°F to 89.6°F)
2. Humidity Range: 15% to 80% RH
3. Ambient Illumination: Less than 1500 lux (do not expose to direct sunlight)
4. Ventilation: 3 times/hr/person or more
5. Do not let the machine get exposed to the following:
   1) Cool air from an air conditioner
   2) Heat from a heater
6. Do not install the machine in areas that are exposed to corrosive gas.
7. Install the machine at locations lower than 2,500 m (8,200 ft.) above sea level.
8. Install the machine on a strong, level base. (Inclination on any side must be no more than 5 mm.)
9. Do not install the machine in areas that get strong vibrations.

1.1.2 MACHINE LEVEL

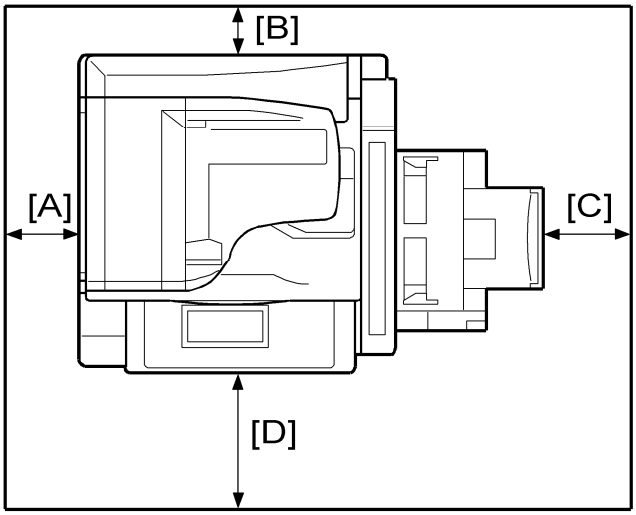
Front to back: Within 5 mm (0.2")

Right to left: Within 5 mm (0.2")

1.1.3 MACHINE SPACE REQUIREMENTS

CAUTION

- This machine, which uses high voltage power sources, can generate ozone gas. High ozone density is harmful to human health. Therefore, the machine must be installed in a well-ventilated room.



A: Over 100 mm (3.9")

B: Over 100 mm (3.9")

C: Over 550 mm (21.7")

D: Over 750 mm (29.5")

Put the machine near the power source with the clearance shown above.

1.1.4 POWER REQUIREMENTS

CAUTION

- Insert the plug firmly in the outlet.
- Do not use an outlet extension plug or cord.
- Ground the machine.

1. Input voltage level:
   120 V, 60 Hz: More than 12 A
   220 V to 240 V, 50 Hz/60 Hz: More than 8 A
2. Permissible voltage fluctuation: ±10 %
3. Do not put things on the power cord.

1.2 OPTIONAL UNIT COMBINATIONS

1.2.1 MACHINE OPTIONS

No.	Options	Remarks
1	2-tray paper feed unit	One from No.1 or No.2
2	Large capacity tray	
3	Platen cover	One from No.3 or No.4
4	ARDF	
5	1-bin tray unit	-
6	Bridge unit	
7	2000-sheet booklet finisher	One from No.7, No.8 or No.10; Requires No.6 and one from No.1 and No.2.
8	3000-sheet finisher	One from No.7, No.8 or No.10; Requires No.6 and one from No.1 and No.2.
9	*Punch kit (3 types)	No.7 or 8 required; One of the three types
10	1000-sheet finisher	One from No.7, No.8 or No.10; Requires No.6 and one from No.1 and No.2.
11	Scanner Accessibility Option	

*: Child options (Child options require a parent option.)

Optional Unit Combinations

1.2.2 CONTROLLER OPTIONS

No.	Options	Remarks
1	IEEE 1394	No. 1 to No. 4 (I/F Slot A)
2	Bluetooth	
3	IEEE 802.11b	
4	IEEE 1284	
5	USB Host Interface Unit	I/F Slot B
6	File Format Converter	I/F Slot D
7	PostScript 3	No.7 to No.9 (SD card slot 2)
8	PictBridge Option	
9	Data Overwrite Security Unit Type D	
11	Browser Unit	SD card slot 3 (during installation only)
12	Copy Data Security Unit	-
13	VM Card Type C	SD card slot 3 (during installation only)

1.2.3 FAX OPTIONS

No.	Options	Remarks
1	Fax Option Type C4500	-
2	*Memory Unit Type B 32MB	Requires No.1.
3	*Hand Set Type 1018	Requires No.1. (NA Only)
4	G3 Interface Unit Type C4500	-

*: Child options (Child options require a parent option.)

1.2.4 OTHER OPTIONS

No.	Options	Remarks
1	Copy Data Security Unit Type A	-
2	Optional Counter Interface Unit Type A	-

1.3 COPIER INSTALLATION

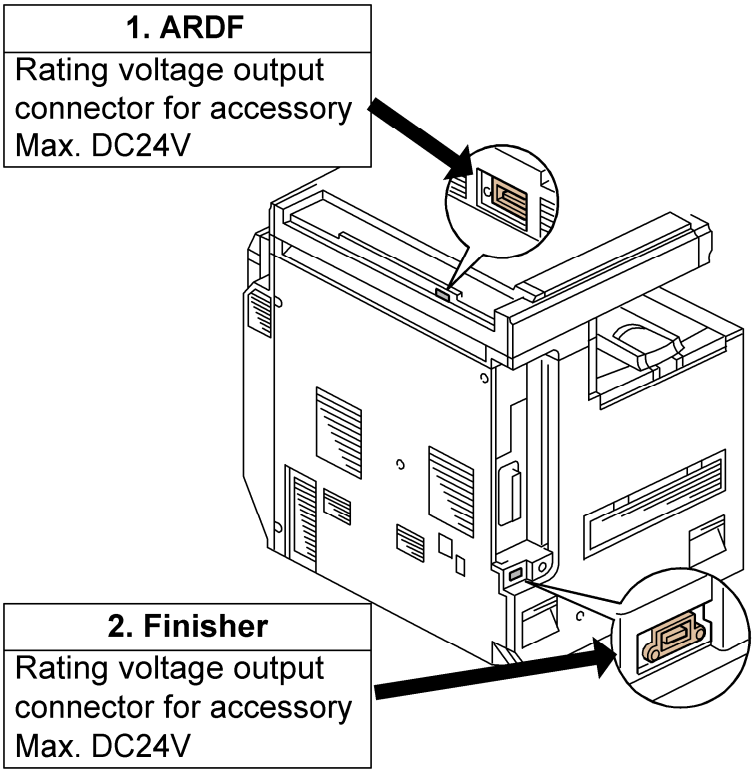
⚠CAUTION

- Make sure that the image transfer belt is in its correct position before you move the machine. Otherwise, the image transfer belt and the black PCU can be damaged.

1.3.1 POWER SOCKETS FOR PERIPHERALS

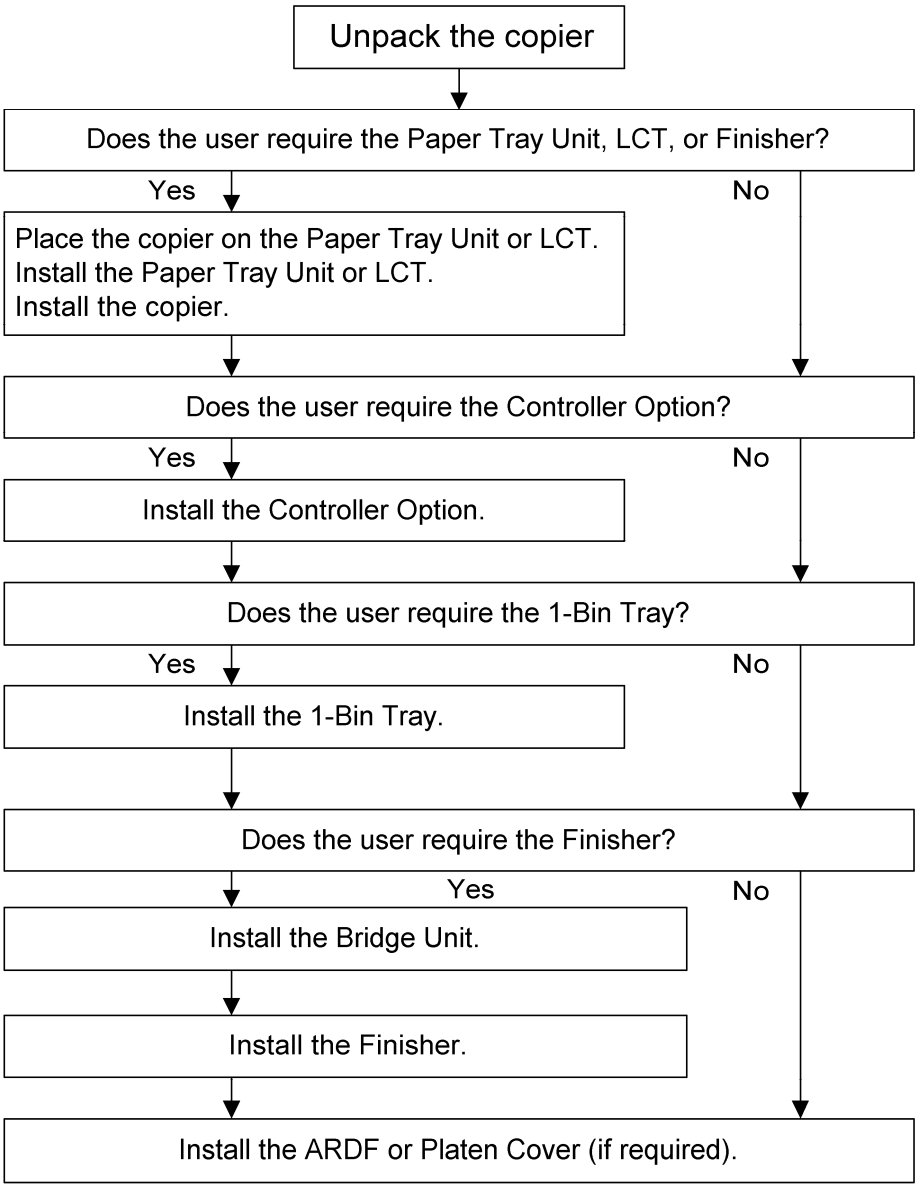
⚠CAUTION

- Rating voltage for peripherals.
- Make sure to plug the cables into the correct sockets.



1.3.2 INSTALLATION FLOW CHART

This flow chart shows the best procedure for installation.



You need the optional paper tray unit or the LCT if you want to install the finisher (B408, B804 or B805).

The punch unit is for 2000-sheet booklet finisher (B804) and 3000-sheet finisher (B805).

1.3.3 ACCESSORY CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of these accessories.

	Description	Q'ty
1.	Operating Instruction - Troubleshooting	1
2.	Operating Instruction - About This Machine	1

Copier Installation

	Description	Q'ty
3.	Operating Instruction - Security	1
4.	Operation Instruction - Quick Reference Guide	1
5.	Operation Instruction - Printer Quick Reference	1
6.	Operation Instruction - Scanner Quick Reference	1
7.	CD-ROM - Instruction - RIC	1
8.	CD-ROM - Instruction - SAV	1
9.	CD-ROM - Instruction - GES	1
10.	CD-ROM - Instruction - LAN	1
11.	CD-ROM - Printer Instruction - RIC	1
12.	CD-ROM - Printer Instruction - SAV	1
13.	CD-ROM - Printer Instruction - GES	1
14.	CD-ROM - Printer Instruction - NRG	1
15	CD-ROM - Printer Instruction - LAN	1
16	CD-ROM - Printer Instruction - INF	1
17	CD-ROM - Scanner Instruction - RIC	1
18	CD-ROM - Scanner Instruction - SAV	1
19	CD-ROM - Scanner Instruction - GES	1
20	CD-ROM - Scanner Instruction - NRG	1
21	CD-ROM - Scanner Instruction - LAN	1
22	Model Name Decal	1
23	Stamp	1
24	Cloth Holder	1

	Description	Q'ty
25	Exposure Glass Cleaning Cloth	1
26	Rivet	2
27	Operating Instructions Holder	1
28	Ferrite Core	1
29	Power Supply Cord	1
30	Cover	1
31	Decal - Paper Size	1
32	Emblem Cover	1
33	Sheet - Eula: 16 Languages	1
34	Sheet - Caution 16 Languages	1
35	Decal - Caution - Original	1
36	Sheet Data	1
37	Warranty Sheet (Chinese)	1
38	Sheet - Name - Tel	1

1.3.4 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

⚠CAUTION

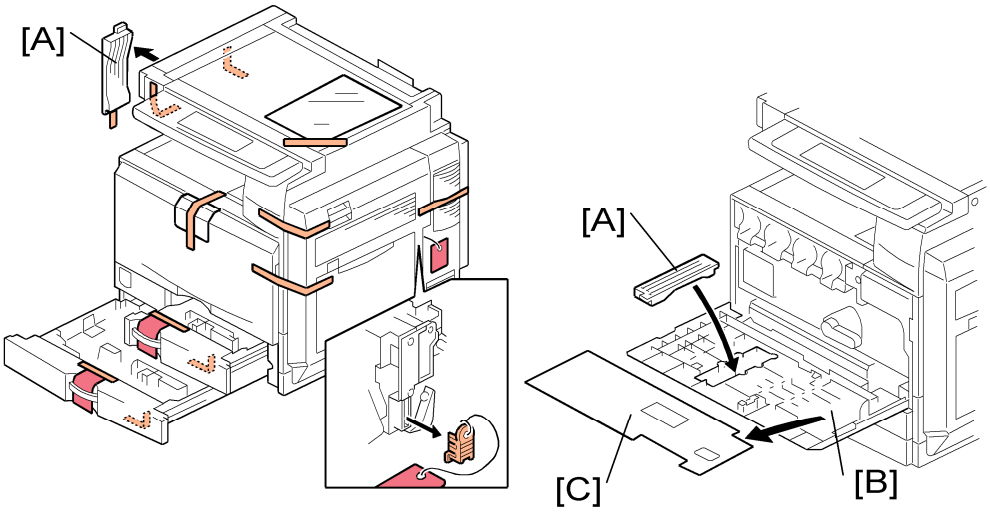
- **Remove the tape from the development units before you turn the main switch on. The development units can be severely damaged if you do not remove the tape.**

Put the machine on the paper tray unit or the LCT first if you install an optional paper tray unit or the optional LCT at the same time. Then install the machine and other options.

Note

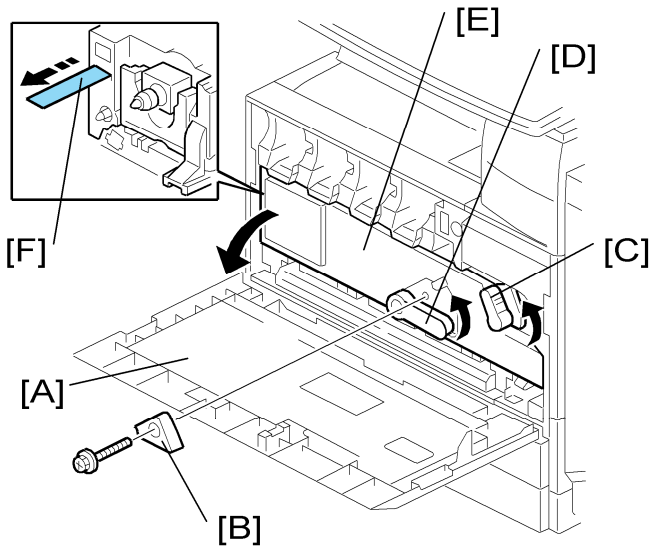
- Keep the shipping retainers after you install the machine. You may need them in the future if you transport the machine to another location.

Tapes and Retainers



1. **Remove all the tapes and retainers on the machine.**
2. **Remove all the tapes and retainers in trays 1 and 2, and then take out the power cord from tray 1 (if applicable).**
3. **Remove the scanner unit stay [A].**
4. **Open the front door [B], and then remove the jam location sheet [C].**
5. **Keep the scanner unit stay [A] inside the front door [B].**
6. **Reattach the jam location sheet.**
7. **Close the front door.**

Developer and Toner Bottles



1. **Open the front door [A].**
   GSA model (-58) and EU models (-67/-26) **do not** require steps from 2 to 7. Skip to step 8 if you install these models.
2. **Remove the stopper [B] (x 1).**

Note

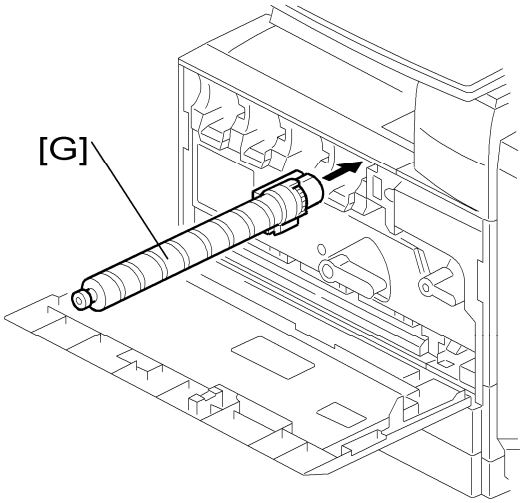
- This stopper locks the drum positioning plate lever.

3. **Release the image transfer unit lock lever [C], and turn the drum positioning plate lever [D] counterclockwise.**
4. **Open the drum positioning plate [E].**
5. **Remove all tapes [F] from the four development units.**

Note

- When you remove the tape from the development unit, hold the development unit with your hand, and then pull the tape.

6. **Close the drum positioning plate. Then lock the image transfer unit lock and turn the drum positioning plate lever clockwise.**
7. **Lock the drum positioning plate lever with the stopper [B] (x 1).**
8. **Shake each toner bottle five or six times.**



9. **Install each toner bottle [G] in the machine.**
10. **Close the front door.**

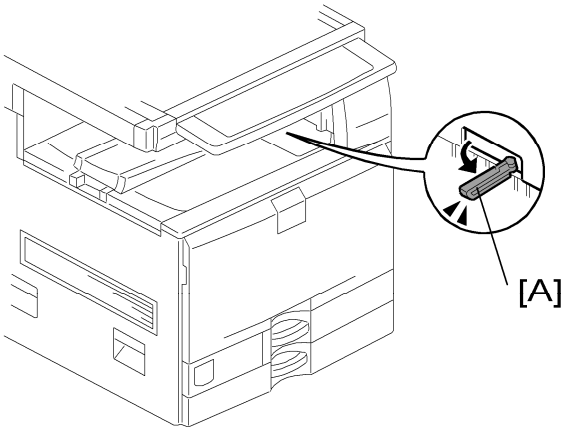
Paper Trays

1. **Pull each paper tray out. Then adjust the side guides and end guide to match the paper size.**

Note

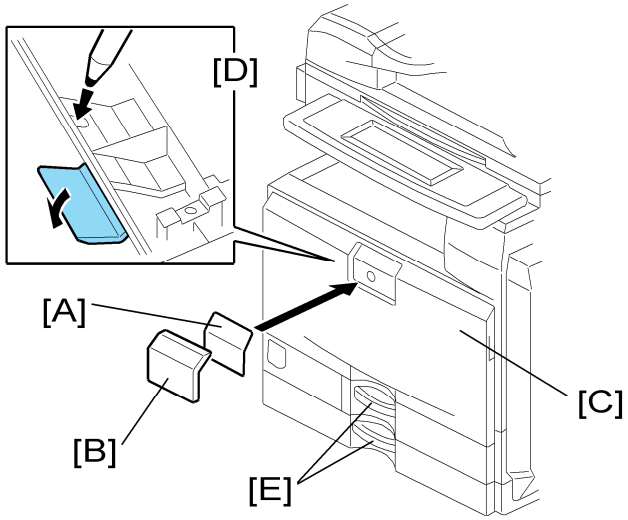
- To move the side guides, first pull out the tray fully. Then push down the green

lock at the rear inside the tray.



2. **Pull out the feeler [A] for the output tray full detection mechanism.**

Emblem and Decals



1. **Attach the correct emblem [A] and the cover [B] to the front door [C] of the machine, if the emblem is not attached.**

Note

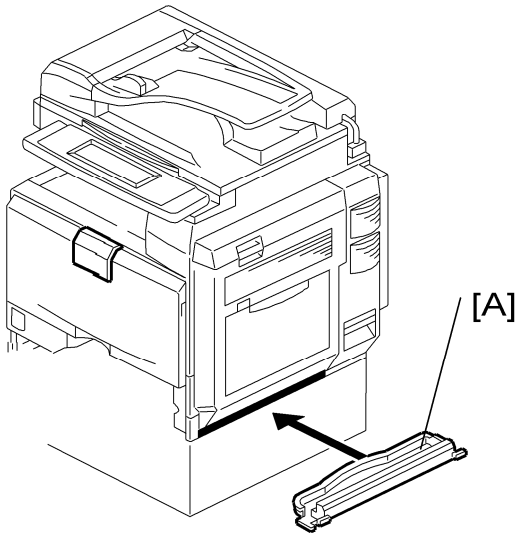
- If you want to change the emblem that has been already attached, remove the panel with an object (not a sharp object) as shown [D], and then install the correct emblem.

2. **Attach the correct paper tray number and size decals to the paper trays [E].**

Note

- Paper tray number and size decals are also used for the optional paper tray or the optional LCT. Keep these decals for use with these optional units.

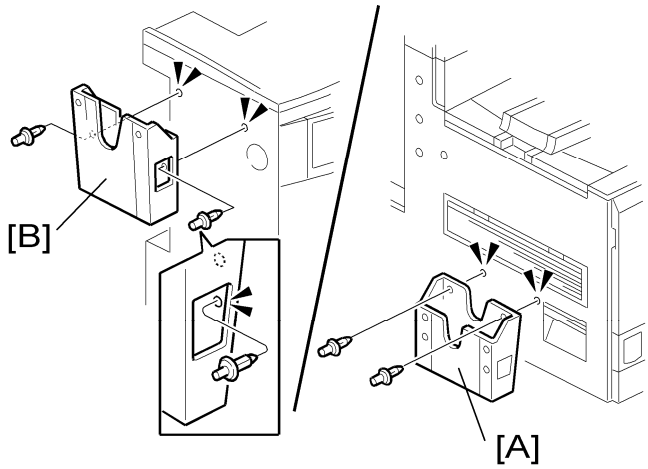
Fire Prevention Cover



When the copier is installed on the floor without the optional paper tray unit or a table, the cover [A] must be attached to the copier.

Install the cover [A] at the right side of the copier.

Manual Pocket Attachment



1. **Attach the manual pocket [A] to the left side of the copier (snap rivet x 2).**
2. **If a finisher has been installed, attach the manual pocket [B] to the rear side of the finisher (snap rivet x 2).**

Initialize the Developer

1. **Plug in the machine.**
2. **Make sure that the platen or ARDF is closed and the main power is turned off.**

3. **Turn the main power switch on. The machine automatically starts the initialization procedure. The Start button LED (⏲) turns green when this procedure has finished.**
4. **Make copies of image samples (text, photo, and text/photo modes).**
5. **Do the Automatic Color Calibration process (ACC) as follows:**
    1. Print the ACC test pattern (User tools > Maintenance > ACC > Start).
    2. Put the printout on the exposure glass.
    3. Put 10 sheets of white paper on top of the test chart.
    4. Close the ARDF or the platen cover.
    5. Press “Start Scanning” on the LCD panel. The machine starts the ACC.
6. **Check that the sample image has been copied normally.**

Settings Relevant to the Service Contract

Change the necessary settings for the following SP modes if the customer has made a service contract.

Note

- You must select one of the counter methods (developments/prints) in accordance with the contract (✉ SP5-045-001).

Item	SP No.	Function	Default
Counting method	SP5-045-001	Specifies if the counting method used in meter charge mode is based on developments or prints. NOTE: You can set this one time only. You cannot change the setting after you have set it for the first time.	“0”: Developments
A3/11" x 17" double counting	SP5-104-001	Specifies whether the counter is doubled for A3/11" x 17" paper. When you have to change this setting, contact your supervisor.	“No”: Single counting

Service Tel. No. Setting	SP5-812-001 through 004	5812-002 programs the service station fax number. The number is printed on the counter list when the meter charge mode is selected. This lets the user fax the counter data to the service station.	

1.3.5 MOVING THE MACHINE

This section shows you how to manually move the machine from one floor to another floor. See the section “Transporting the Machine” if you have to pack the machine and move it a longer distance.

1. **Remove all trays from the optional paper feed unit or LCT.**

1.3.6 TRANSPORTING THE MACHINE

Main Frame

1. **Do SP 4806-001 to move the scanner carriage from the home position. This prevents dust from falling into the machine during transportation.**
2. **Remove the toner cartridges. This prevents toner flow into the toner supply tube, which is caused by vibration during transport. This can also cause the tube to be clogged with toner.**
3. **Make sure there is no paper left in the paper trays. Then fix down the bottom plates with a sheet of paper and tape.**
4. **Empty the toner collection bottle. Then attach securing tape to stop the toner bottle from coming out.**
5. **Do one of the following:**
   - Attach shipping tape to the covers and doors.
   - Shrink-wrap the machine tightly.

Note

- After you move the machine, make sure you do the "Auto Color Registration" as follows. This optimizes color registration.
  1. Do the "Forced Line Position Adj. Mode c" (SP2-111-3).
  2. Then do the "Forced Line Position Adj. Mode a" (SP2-111-1).
     To check if SP 2-111-1 was successful, watch the screen during the process. A message is displayed at the end. Also, you can check the result with SP

2-194-10 to -12.

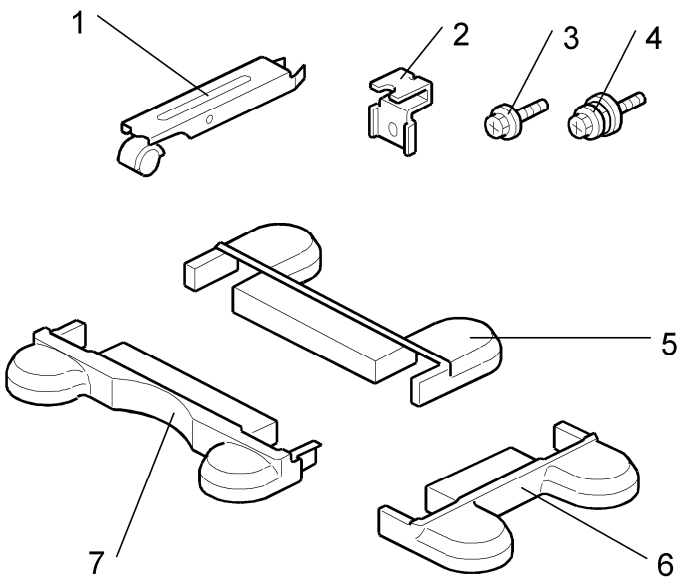
- Make sure that the side fences in the trays are correctly positioned to prevent color registration errors.

1.4 PAPER FEED UNIT (B800)

1.4.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the accessories against the following list.

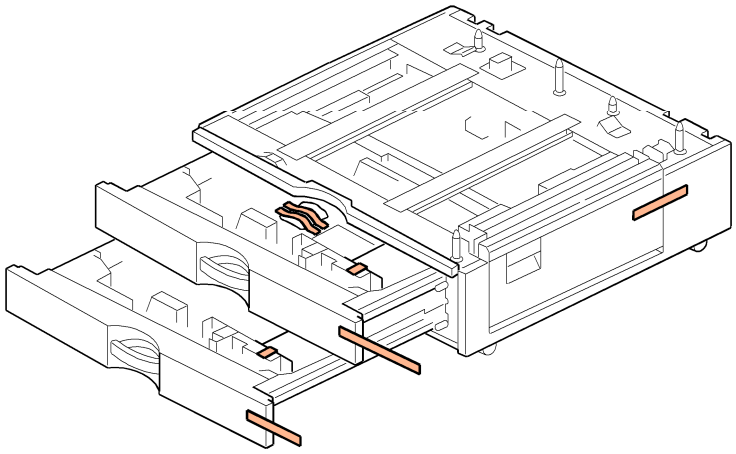
No.	Description	Q'ty
1	Caster stand	6
2	Securing bracket	2
3	Screw (M3x6 x 6, M4x10 x 2)	8
4	Spring Washer Screw	1
5	Rear stand cover	1
6	Left stand cover	1
7	Front stand cover	1



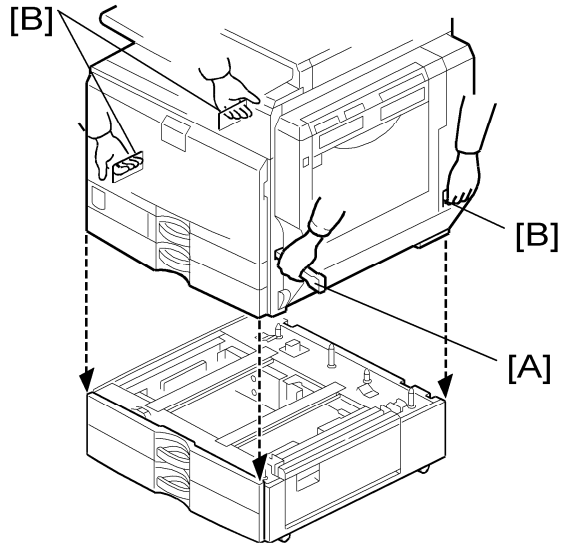
1.4.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

⚠CAUTION

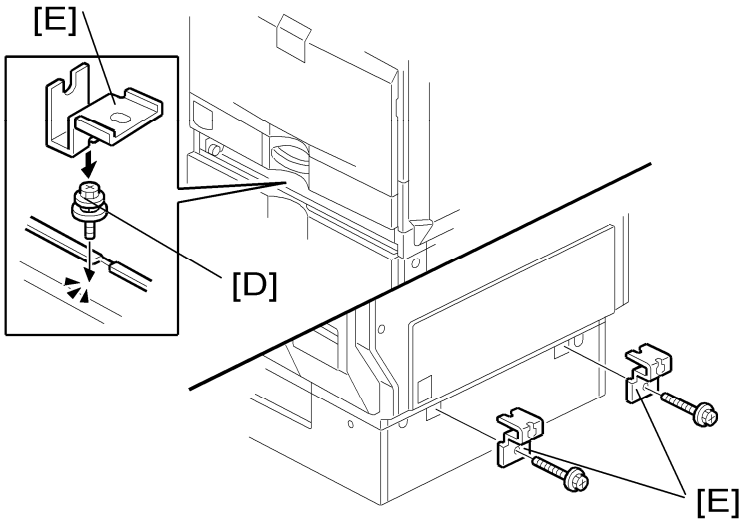
- Turn off the main switch of the copier and unplug the power cord before you start the installation procedure.
- You need two or more persons to lift the copier. The copier is highly unstable when lifted by one person, and may cause human injury or property damage.
- Do not lift the copier with the paper feed unit installed. Otherwise, the handle and grips may be damaged.



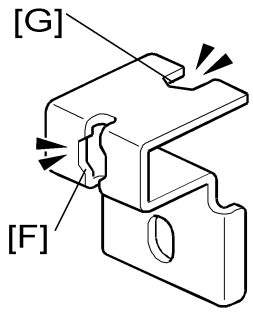
1. **Remove all tape on the paper feed unit.**
2. **Remove the paper trays and remove all tape and padding.**



3. **Grasp the handle [A] and grips [B] of the machine.**
4. **Lift the copier and install it on the paper feed unit [C].**



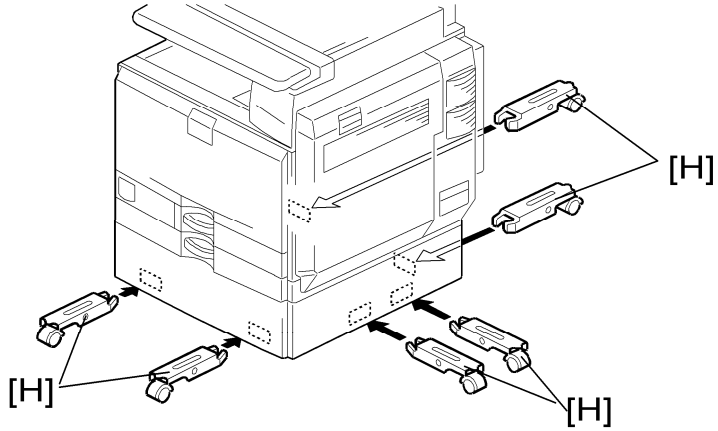
5. **Remove tray 2 of the machine.**
6. **Fasten the spring washer screw [D], using the cutout in the securing bracket [E] as a tool.**
7. **Reinstall tray 2.**
8. **Attach the securing brackets [E] (M4x10 x 1 each).**



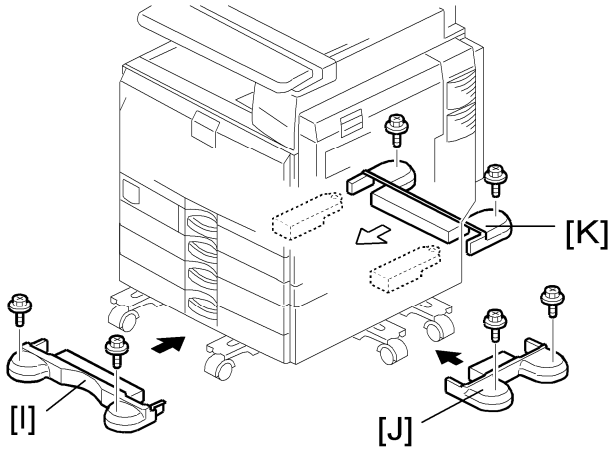
Note

- One of the securing brackets is used as a securing tool (the cutout [F] is used in step 6). But the cutout [G] is for attaching the tray heater. Therefore, attach the securing brackets [E] after installing the tray heater if you will install the tray heater.

Paper Feed Unit (B800)



9. **Attach two caster stands [H] to front, right, and rear sides of the machine.**



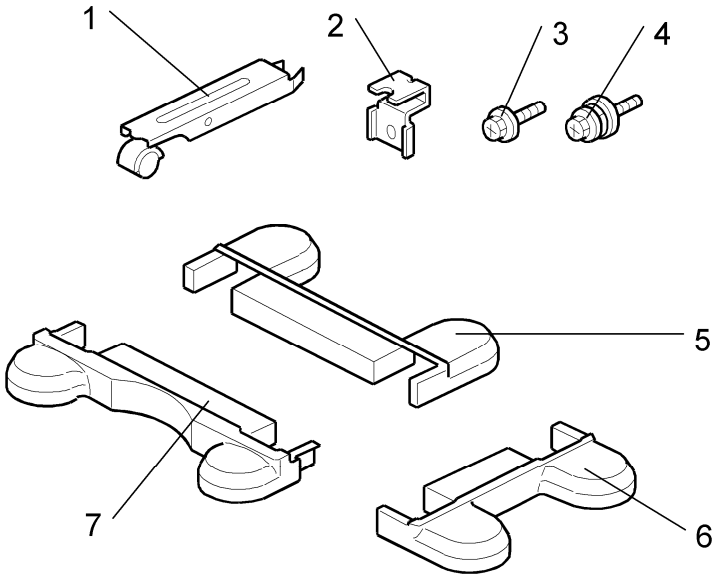
10. **Attach the front stand cover [I], right stand cover [J] and rear stand cover [K] to the correct sides of the machine (M3x6 x 2: each).**
11. **Load paper into the paper feed unit.**
12. **Turn on the main power switch of the machine.**
13. **Check the paper feed unit operation and copy quality.**

1.5 LCT (B801)

1.5.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the accessories against the following list.

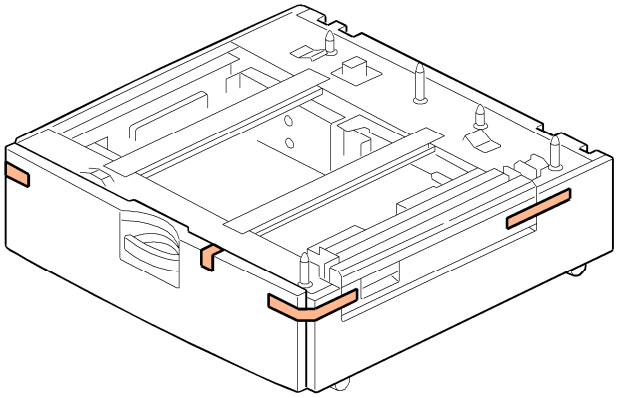
No.	Description	Q'ty
1	Caster stand	6
2	Securing bracket	2
3	Screw (M3x6 x 6, M4x10 x 2)	8
4	Spring washer screw	1
5	Rear stand cover	1
6	Right stand cover	1
7	Front stand cover	1



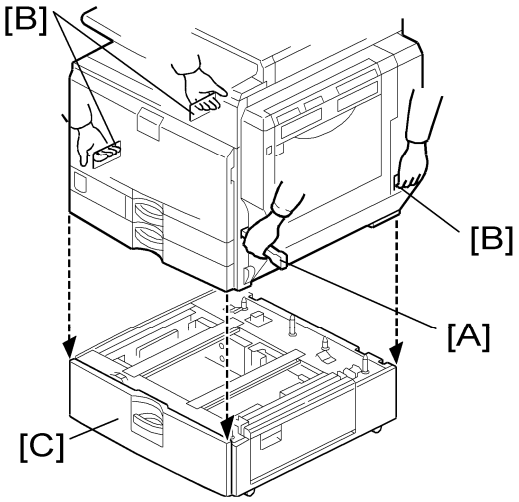
1.5.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

⚠CAUTION

- Turn off the main switch of the copier and unplug the power cord before you start the installation procedure.
- You need two or more persons to lift the copier. The copier is highly unstable when lifted by one person, and may cause human injury or property damage.
- Do not lift the copier with the paper feed unit installed. Otherwise, the handle and grips may be damaged.

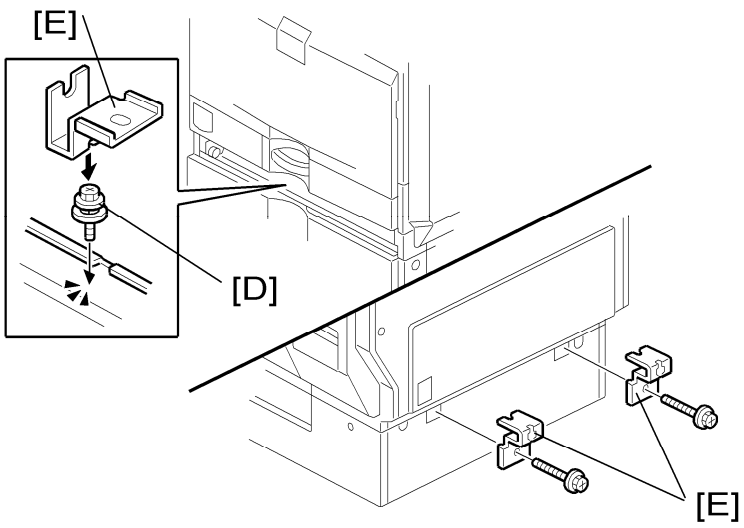


1. Remove all tapes and retainers in the LCT.

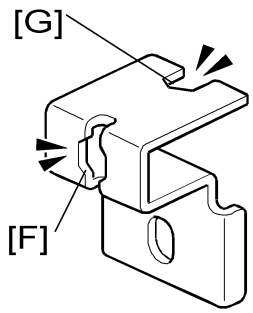


2. Grasp the handle [A] and grips [B] of the machine.

3. Lift the copier and install it on the LCT [C].



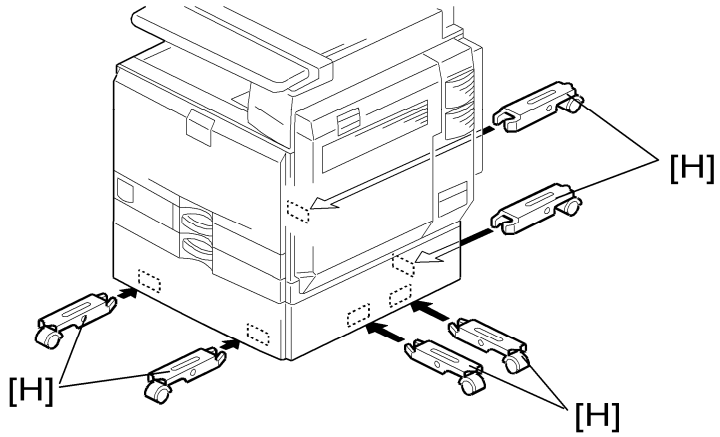
4. **Remove tray 2 of the machine.**
5. **Fasten the spring washer screw [D], using the cutout in the securing bracket [E] as a tool.**
6. **Reinstall tray 2.**
7. **Attach the securing brackets [E] (M4x10 x 1each).**



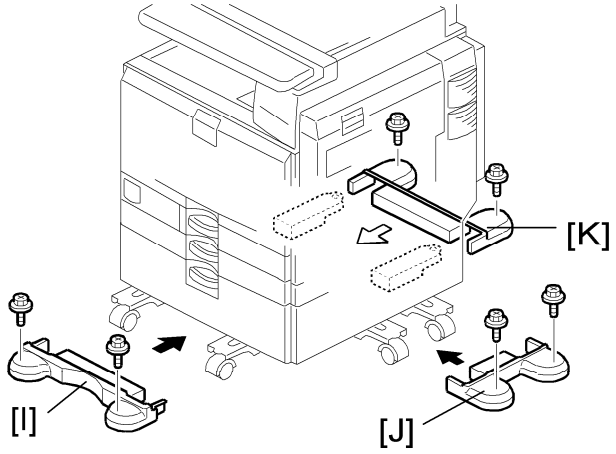
Note

- One of the securing brackets is used as a securing tool (the cutout [F] is used in step 6). But the cutout [G] is for attaching the tray heater. Therefore, attach the securing brackets [E] after installing the tray heater if you will install the tray heater.

LCT (B801)



8. **Attach two caster stands [H] to the front, right, and rear sides of the machine.**



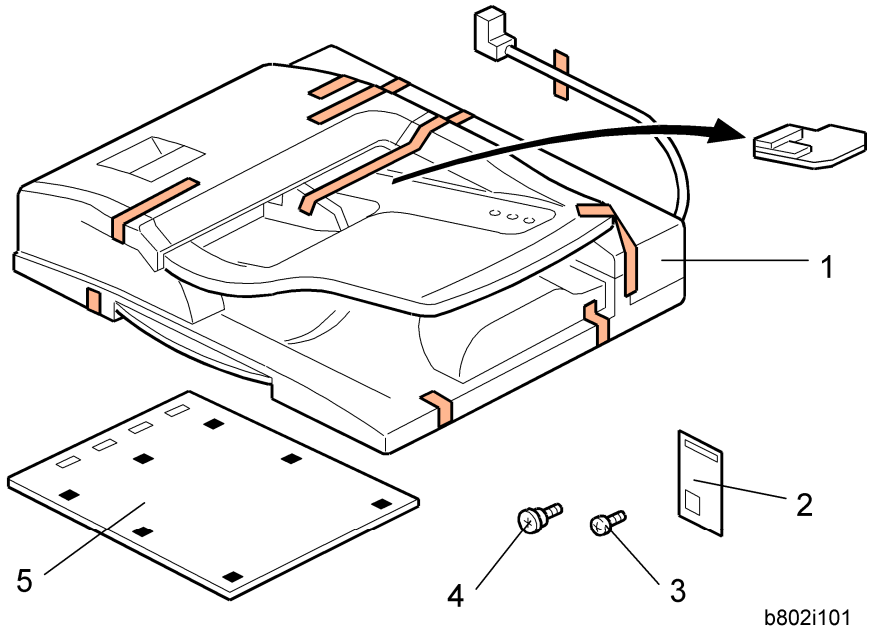
9. **Attach the front stand cover [I], right stand cover [J] and rear stand cover [K] to the correct sides of the machine (M3x6 x 2 each).**
10. **Load paper into the LCT.**
11. **Turn on the main power switch of the machine.**
12. **Check the LCT operation and copy quality.**

1.6 AUTO REVERSE DOCUMENT FEEDER (B802)

1.6.1 COMPONENT CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the components against the following list.

No.	Description	Q'ty
1	ARDF	1
2	Decal	1
3	Knob Screw	2
4	Stud Screw	2
5	Platen Plate	1



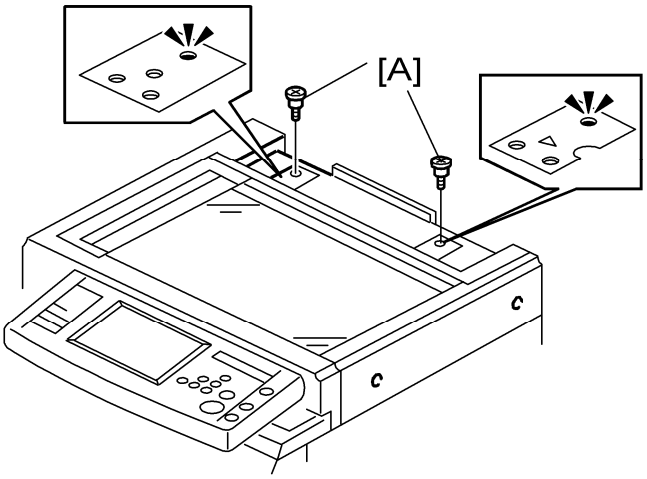
1.6.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

⚠CAUTION

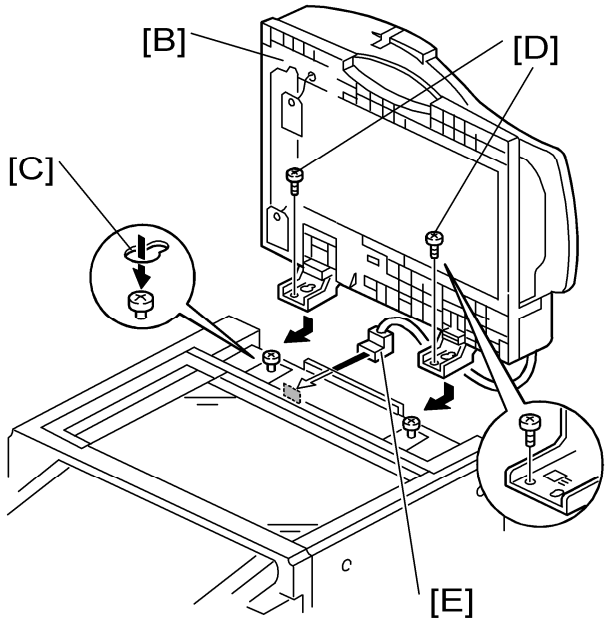
- **Unplug the copier power cord before starting the following procedure.**

1. **Remove all tapes and shipping retainers.**

2. Remove the two screws already installed at the top rear of the machine.



3. Insert the two stud screws [A] on the top of the machine.

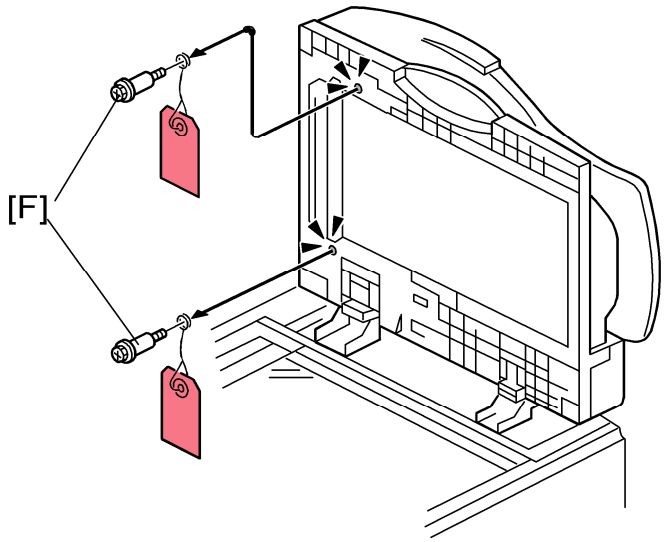


4. Mount the ARDF [B] by aligning the screw keyholes [C] in the ARDF support plate over the stud screws.

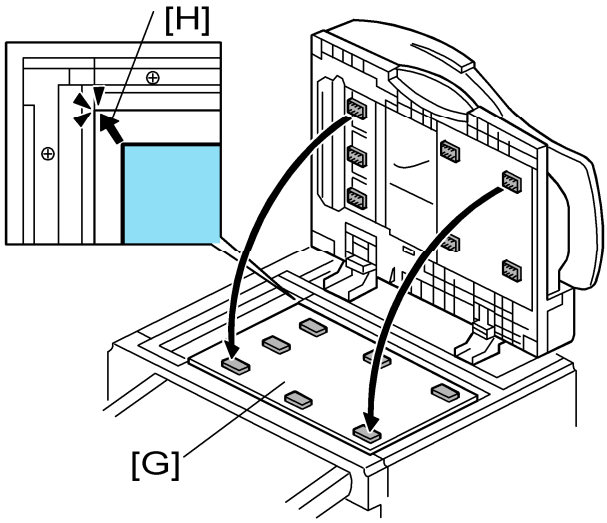
5. Slide the ARDF toward the front of the machine.

6. Secure the ARDF with the two knob screws [D].

7. Connect the ARDF interface cable [E] to the machine.

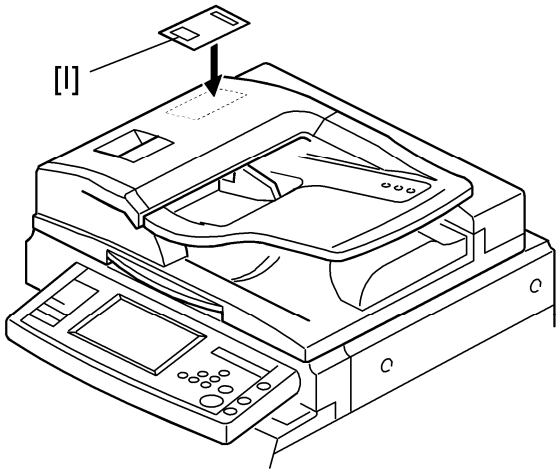


8. **Remove two screws [F] from the bottom of the ARDF.**



9. **Peel off the platen plate [G] and place it on the exposure glass.**
10. **Align the rear left corner of the platen plate with the corner [H] on the exposure glass.**
11. **Close the ARDF.**
12. **Open the ARDF and check that the platen plate is correctly attached.**

Auto Reverse Document Feeder (B802)



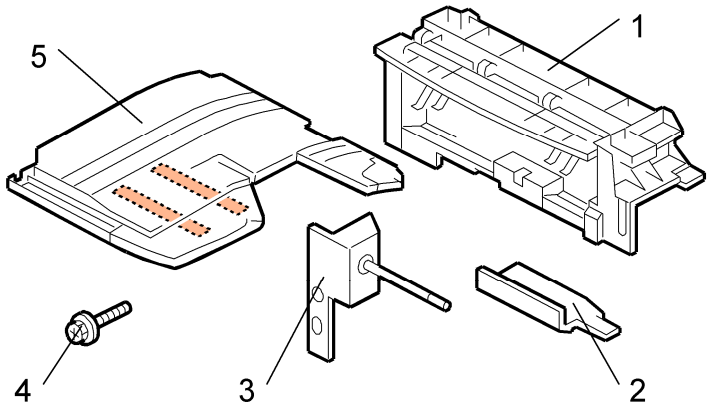
13. **Attach the decal [I] to the top cover as shown. Choose the language you want.**
14. **Plug in and turn on the main power switch of the machine, and then check the ARDF operation.**
15. **Make a full size copy. Check that the registrations (side-to-side and leading edge) and image skew are correct. If they are not, adjust the registrations and image skew (refer to "Copy Adjustments" in the "Replacements and Adjustments" section).**

1.7 1-BIN TRAY UNIT (B803)

1.7.1 COMPONENT CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the components against the following list.

No.	Description	Q'ty
1	1-Bin Tray Unit	1
2	End-fence	1
3	Tray Support Bar	1
4	Screws (M3 x 16)	2
5	Tray	1



1.7.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

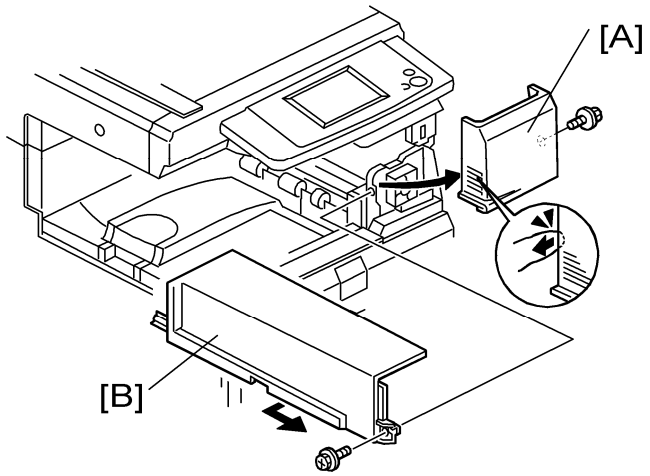
⚠CAUTION

- **Unplug the copier power cord before starting the following procedure.**

If the bridge unit (B227) has already been installed in the machine, remove it before installing 1-bin tray unit (B803). This will make it easier for you to do the following procedure.

1. **Remove all tapes.**
2. **Open the right door of the machine.**

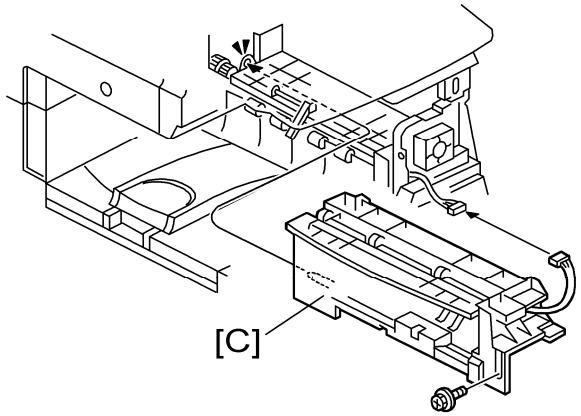
1-Bin Tray Unit (B803)



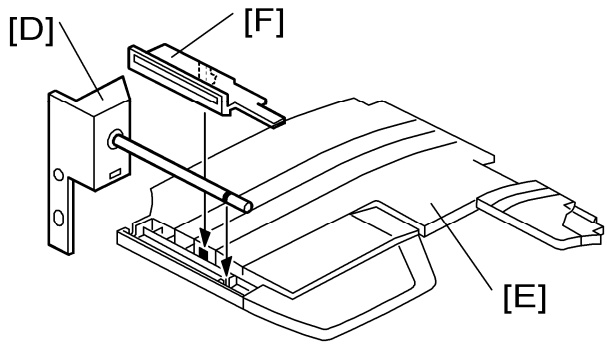
3. **Remove the front right cover [A] (x 1).**
4. **Remove the inner cover [B] (x 1).**

Note

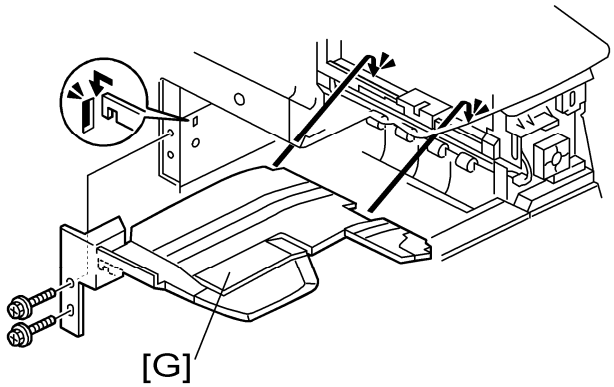
- Keep this screw for step 5.



5. **Install the 1-bin tray unit [C] (x 1, x 1, x 1 [This screw was removed in step 4]).**



6. **Attach the tray support bar [D] to the tray [E] as shown, and then attach the end-fence [F].**



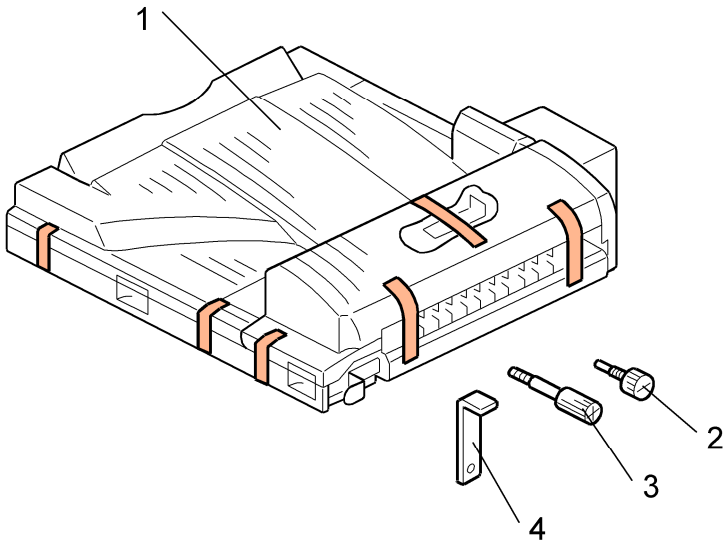
7. **Install the tray [G] (with the tray support bar) in the machine (M3 x 16: x 2).**
8. **Reinstall the front right cover in the machine, and then close the right door of the machine.**
9. **Turn on the main power switch of the machine.**
10. **Check the 1-bin tray unit operation.**

1.8 BRIDGE UNIT (B227)

1.8.1 COMPONENT CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the components against the following list.

No.	Description	Q'ty
1	Bridge Unit	1
2	Screw	1
3	Knob screw	1
4	Holder bracket	1



1.8.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

CAUTION

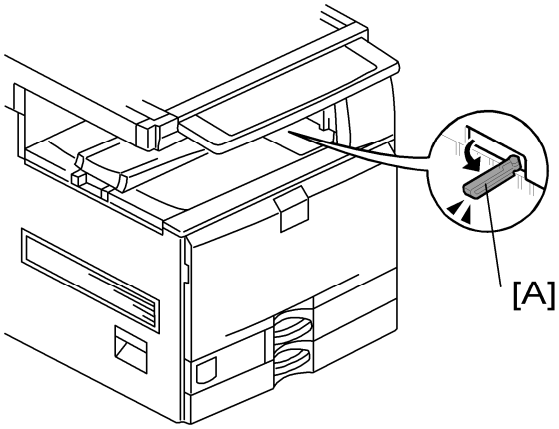
- **Unplug the copier power cord before starting the following procedure.**

Note

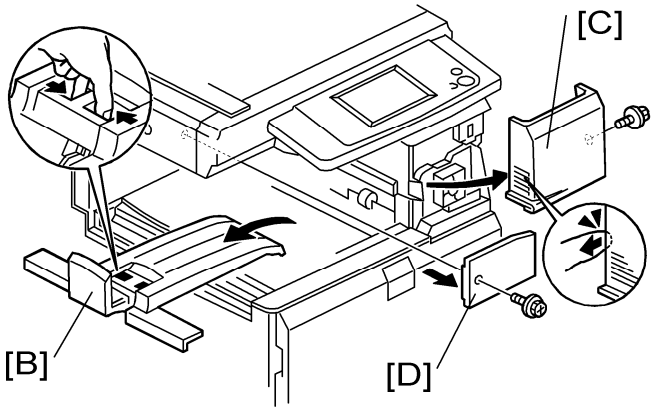
- 1. If you will install the 1-bin tray (B803) in the machine, install the 1-bin tray before you install the bridge unit (B227). This will make it easier for you to do the following procedure.

- 2. If you will install a finisher (B408, B804, or B805) in the machine, install the finisher after you install the bridge unit (B227).

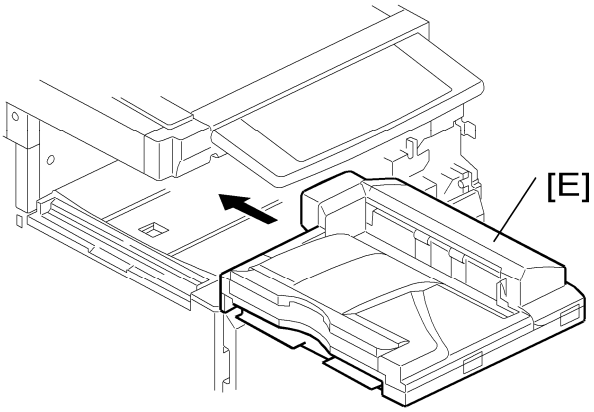
1. **Remove all tapes.**



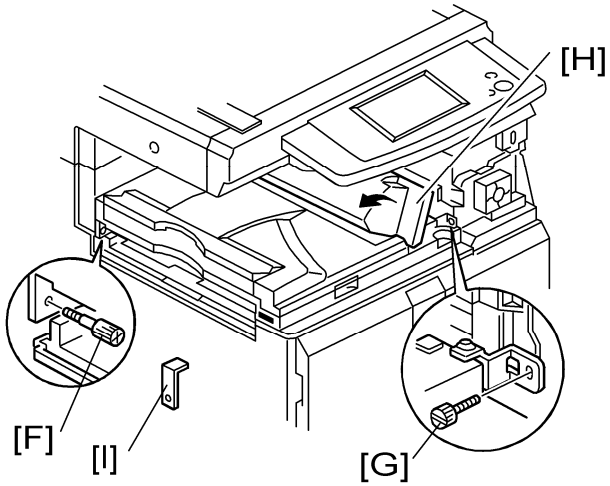
2. **If the sensor feeler [A] is out, fold it into the machine.**
3. **Open the right door of the machine.**



4. **Remove the inner tray [B].**
5. **Remove the front right cover [C] (x 1).**
6. **Remove the connector cover [D] (x 1).**



7. **Install the bridge unit [E] in the machine.**



8. **Secure the bridge unit with the knob screw [F] and screw [G].**
9. **Reinstall the front right cover in the machine. Then close the right door of the machine.**

Note

- Open the bridge unit cover [H] when installing the front right cover. Otherwise, the bridge unit cover is an obstacle for attaching the front right cover.

10. **Install the optional finisher (refer to the finisher installation procedure).**

Note

- If you will not install the finisher at this time, install the holder bracket [I]. Otherwise, the customer will damage the bridge unit if they pull up the bridge unit tray. When you install the finisher, you will need this bracket during the installation procedure.

11. **Turn on the main power switch of the machine.**
12. **Check the bridge unit operation.**

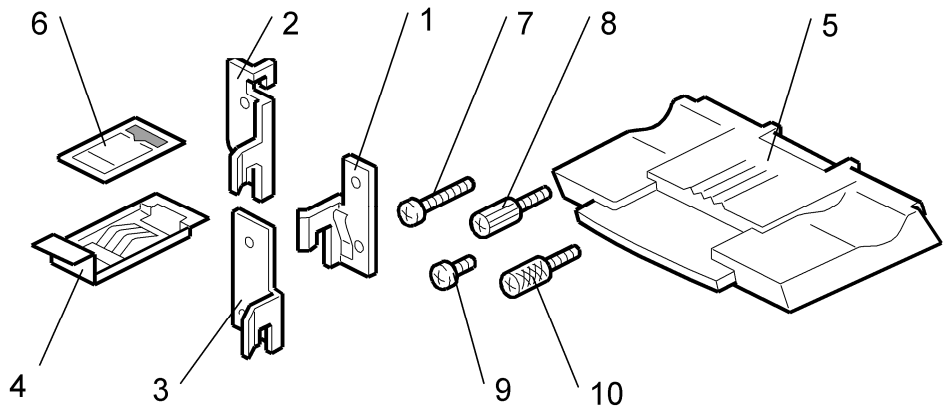
1.9 1000-SHEET FINISHER (B408)

1.9.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the accessories against the following list.

No.	Description	Q'ty	B222/B224
1	Front Joint Bracket	1	O
2	Rear Joint Bracket	1	---
3	Rear Joint Bracket	1	O
4	Grounding Plate	1	O
5	Copy Tray	1	O
6	Staple Position Decal	1	O
7	Screw - M4 x 14	4	O
8	Knob Screw - M4 x 10	1	O
9	Screw - M3 x 8	1	O
10	Knob Screw - M3 x 8	1	O

O = Necessary, --- = Not necessary



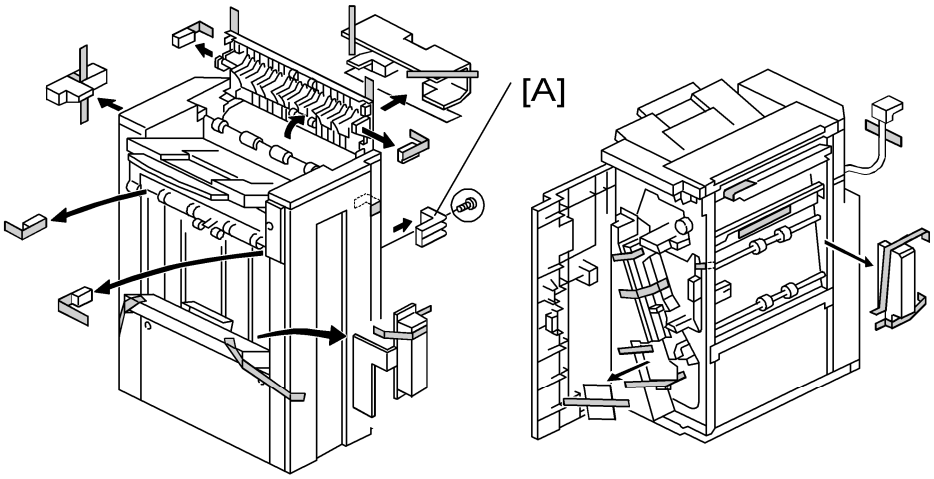
1.9.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

CAUTION

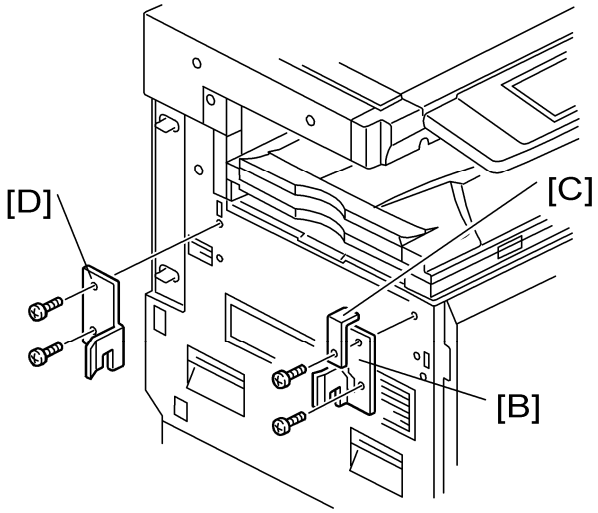
- **Unplug the main machine power cord before starting the following procedure.**

If this finisher will be installed on the B222 or B224 copier, the following options must be installed before installing this finisher.

- Bridge Unit (B227)
- Paper Feed Unit (B800) or LCT (B801)



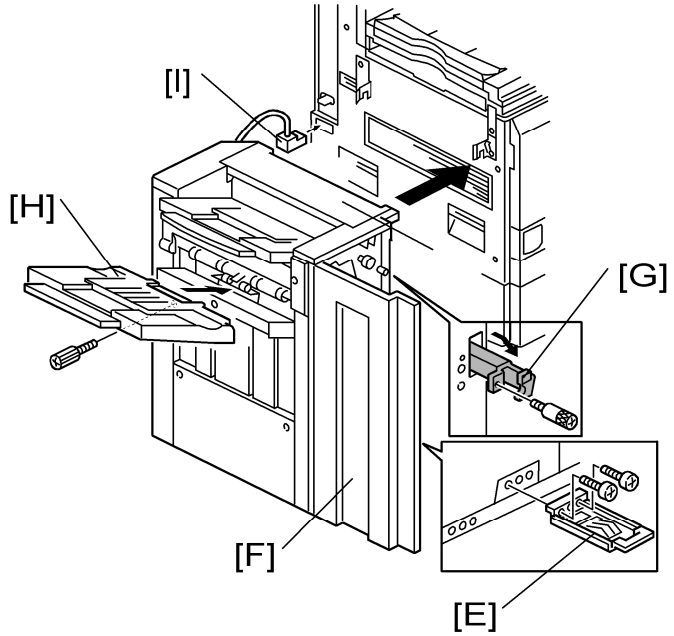
1. **Unpack the finisher, and then remove the tapes [A] and stopper (x 1).**



2. **Install the front joint bracket [B], holder bracket [C] (x 2 - M4 x 14), and rear joint bracket [D] (x 2 - M4 x 14).**

Note

- The holder bracket [C] must be placed outside the front joint bracket [B]. The holder bracket is provided with the bridge unit (B227).

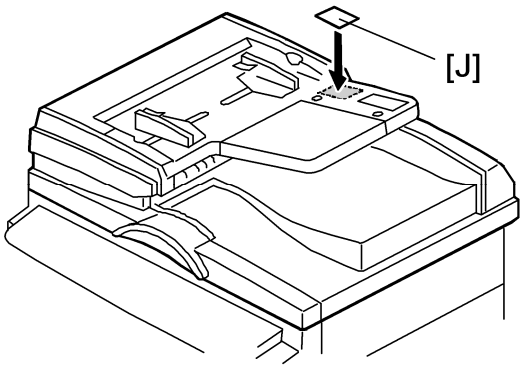


3. **Install the grounding plate [E] on the finisher (x 2 - M3 x 8).**

Note

- Use the screw removed in step 1 and the screw from the accessory box.

4. **Open the front door [F] of the finisher, and then pull the locking lever [G] (1 knob screw - M3 x 8).**
5. **Align the finisher on the joint brackets, and lock it in place by pushing the locking lever.**
6. **Secure the locking lever (1 knob screw - M3 x 8).**
7. **Close the front door.**
8. **Install the copy tray [H] (1 knob screw - M4 x 10).**
9. **Connect the finisher cable [I] to the main machine below the right rear handle.**



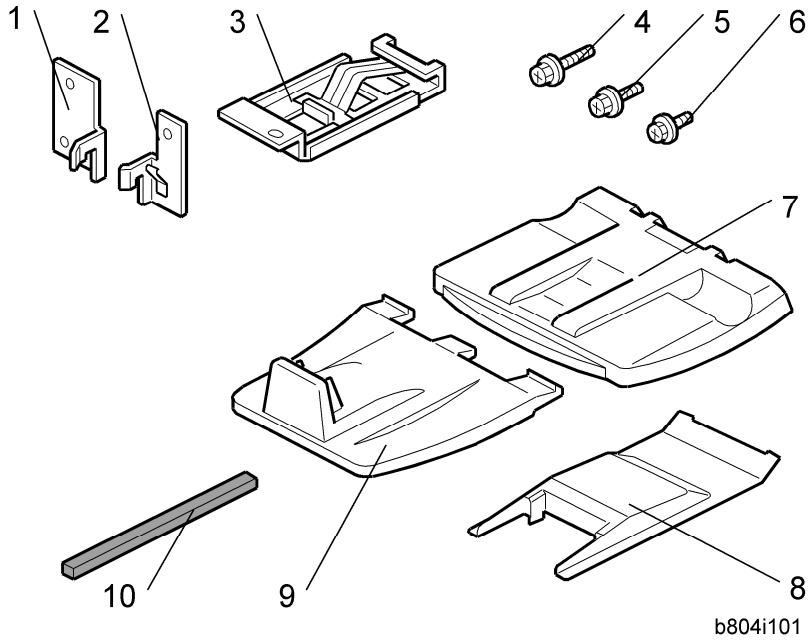
10. **Attach the staple position decal [J] to the ARDF as shown.**
11. **Turn on the main power switch and check the finisher operation.**

1.10 2000/3000-SHEET (BOOKLET) FINISHER (B804/B805)

1.10.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the accessories against the following list.

No.	Description	Q'ty
1	Rear Joint Bracket	1
2	Front Joint Bracket	1
3	Ground Plate	1
4	Tapping screws - M4 x14	4
5	Tapping screws - M3 x 8	1
6	Tapping screws - M3 x 6	6
7	Upper output tray	1
8	Support Tray	1
9	Lower output tray (B804 Only)	1
10	Cushion (with double-sided tape)	1

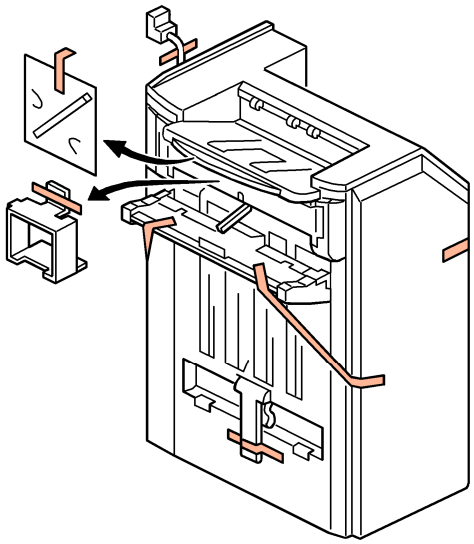


1.10.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

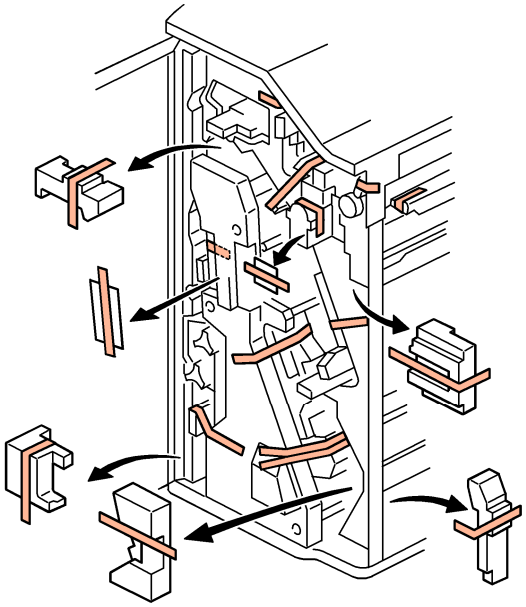
⚠CAUTION

- **Unplug the main machine power cord before starting the following procedure.**

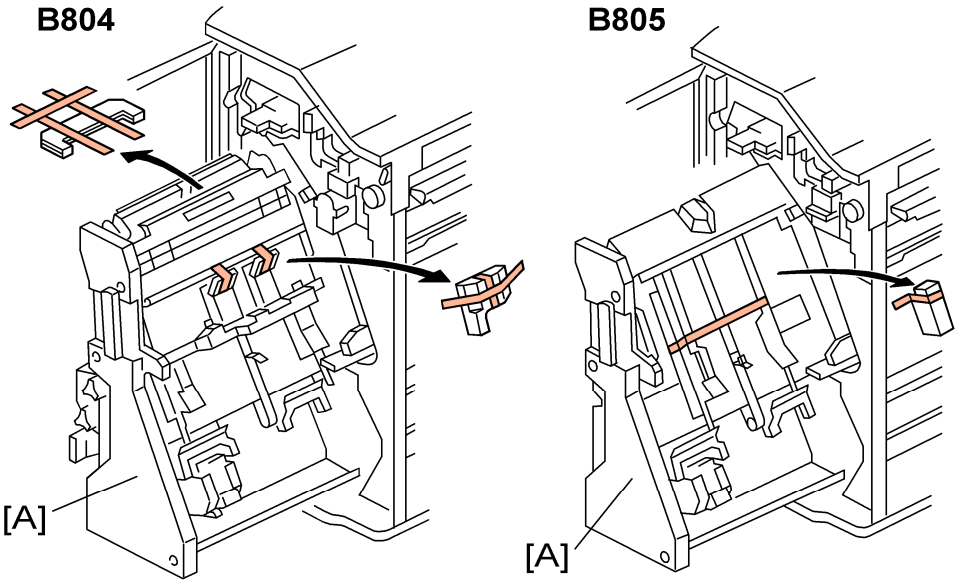
The bridge unit (B227) and optional paper feed unit (B800 or B801) must be installed before installing this finisher (B804/B805).



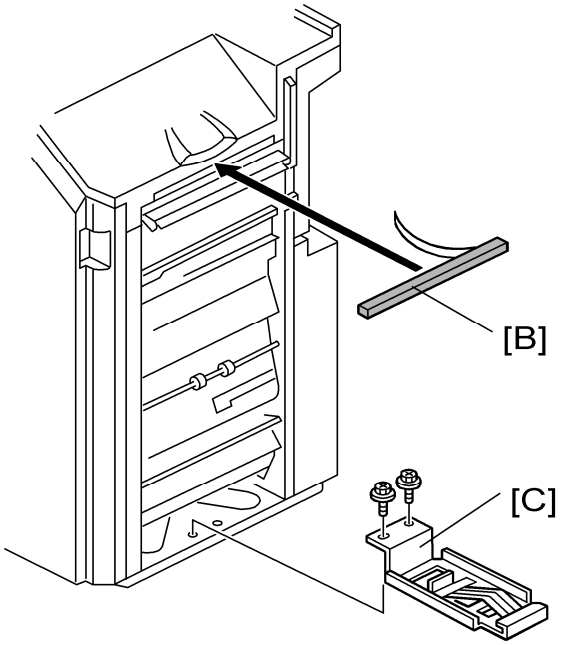
1. **Unpack the finisher and remove all tapes and packing materials from the finisher.**



2. **Open the front door, and then remove all tapes and packing materials from the inside of the finisher.**



3. **Pull out the jogger unit [A], and then remove all tapes and retainers.**

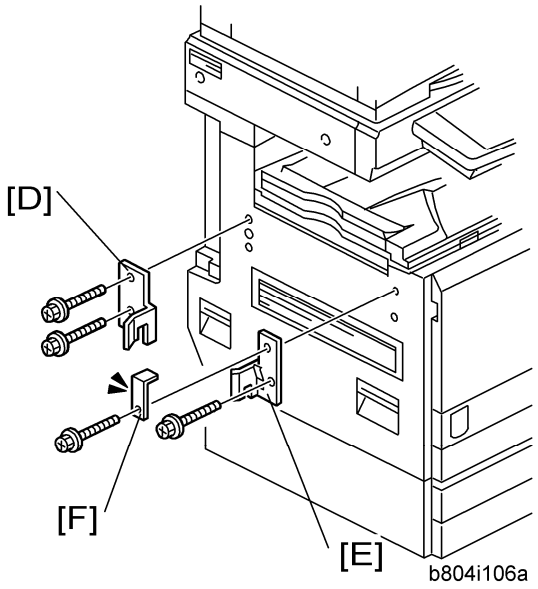


4. **Attach the cushions [B] to the finisher.**

Note

- Make sure that the cushion is placed within 0 to 1 mm from the edge of the cover.

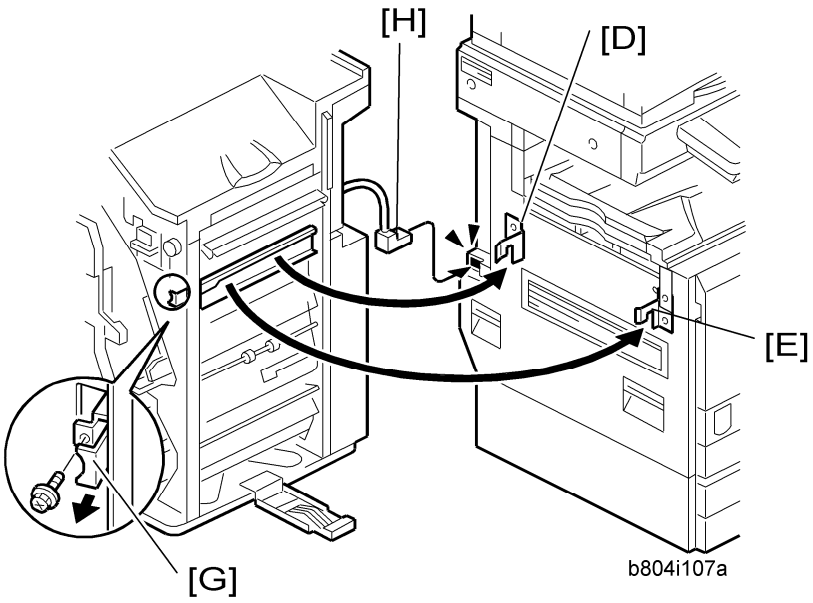
5. **Install the ground plate [C] on the finisher (🔩 x 2; M3x6).**



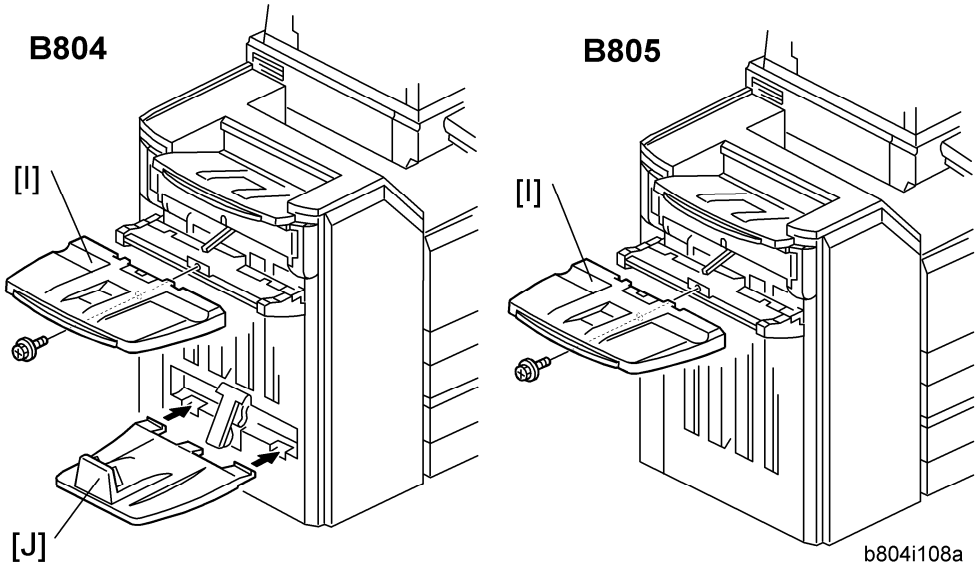
6. **Attach the rear joint bracket [D] (🔩 x 2; M4x4).**
7. **Attach the front joint bracket [E] and the holder bracket [F] (🔩 x 2; M4x14).**

Note

- The holder bracket [F] must be placed outside the front joint bracket [E]. The holder bracket is provided with the bridge unit (B227).

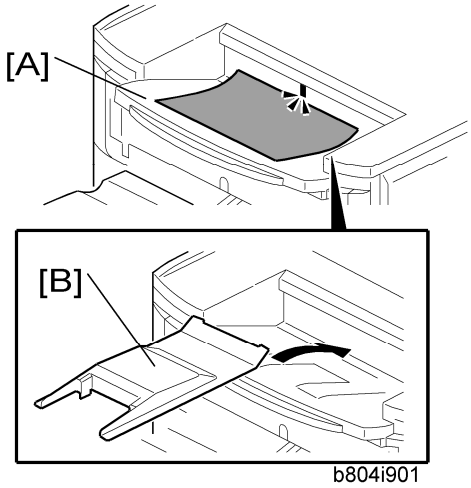


8. **Pull the lock lever [G] (Long knob screw x 1).**
9. **Slowly push the finisher to the left side of the machine, keeping its front door open until the brackets [D] [E] go into their slots.**
10. **Push the lock lever [G], and then secure it (Long knob screw x 1).**
11. **Close the front door of the finisher.**
12. **Connect the finisher connector [H] to the machine.**



13. **Install the upper output tray [I] (x 1; M3x8).**
14. **Only for B804, install the lower output tray [J].**
15. **Turn on the main power switch of the machine.**
16. **Check the finisher operation.**

Support Tray Installation



b804i901

If a stacking problem occurs several times on the upper output tray [A], put the support tray [B] on the tray as shown.

Note

- Keep this tray in the manual pocket if this tray does not need to be installed.

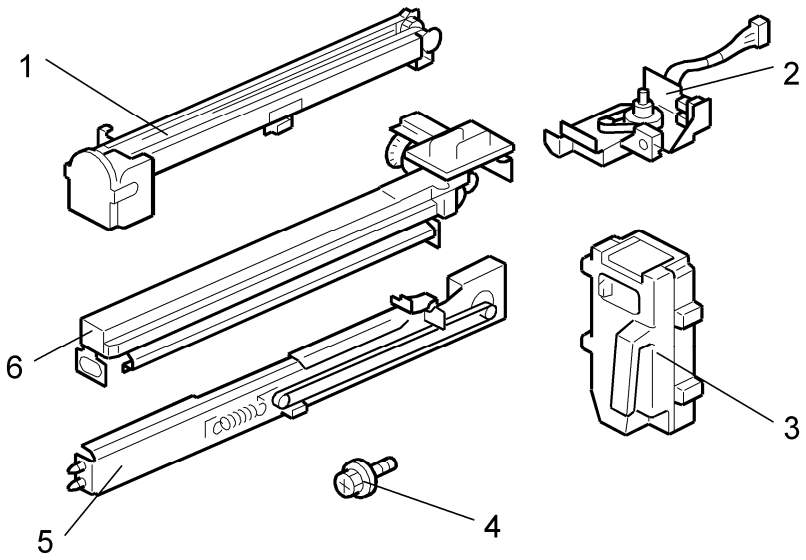
1.11 PUNCH UNIT

The Punch Unit B702 is installed in the 2000/3000 Sheet (Booklet) Finisher B804/B805.

1.11.1 COMPONENT CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the components against the following list.

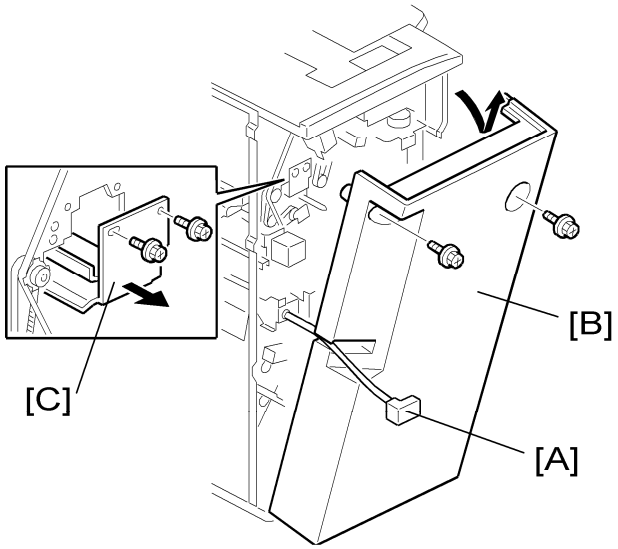
No.	Description	Q'ty
1	Punchout Waste Unit	1
2	Slide Drive Unit	1
3	Punch Waste Hopper	1
4	Screws (M3 x 6)	5
5	Side-to-Side Detection Unit	1
6	Punching Unit	1



1.11.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

⚠CAUTION

- **Unplug the main machine power cord before starting the following procedure. If the 2000/3000-sheet booklet finisher has been installed, disconnect it and pull it away from the machine.**

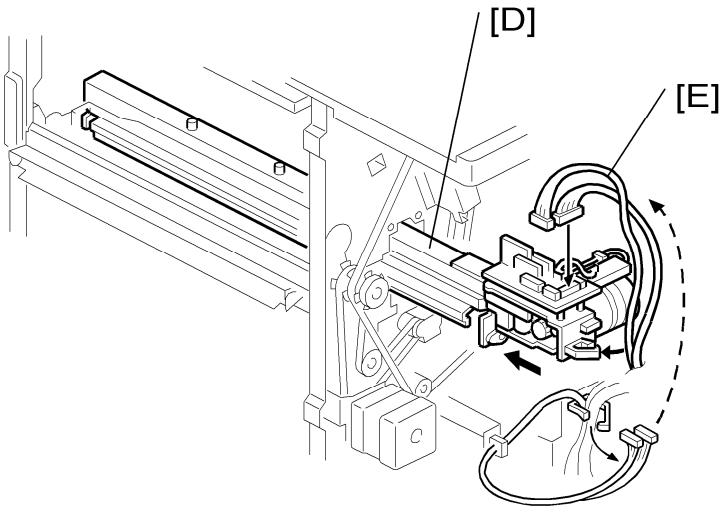


1. **If the finisher is connected to the copier, disconnect the power connector [A] and move the finisher away from the copier.**
2. **Remove the rear cover [B] (x 2) and open the front door.**

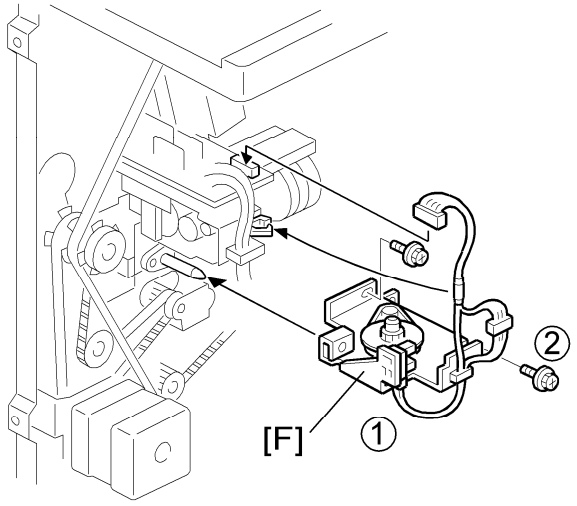
Note

- At the bottom of the rear cover, make sure to disconnect the tabs that attach the cover to the frame.

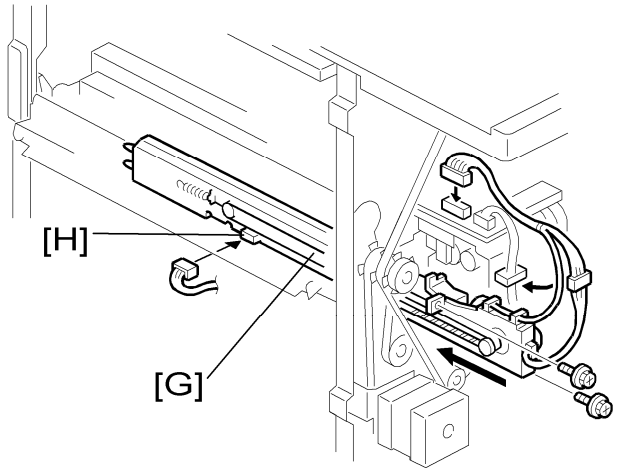
3. **Remove the guide plate [C] (x 2).**



4. **Move the punch unit [D] along its rails into the finisher. Make sure that the pin engages correctly at the front and rear.**
5. **Connect the cables [E] of the finisher to the connectors (CN601 and CN602) on the punch unit board (x 2, x 1).**
   - The cables [E] are coiled and attached to the PCB.



6. **Attach the slide drive unit [F] to the finisher and connect it to the punch unit (x 2, x 1). Push in the slide drive unit at ① when you attach the screw ②.**
7. **Make sure that the punch unit moves freely and is not blocked by the screws.**

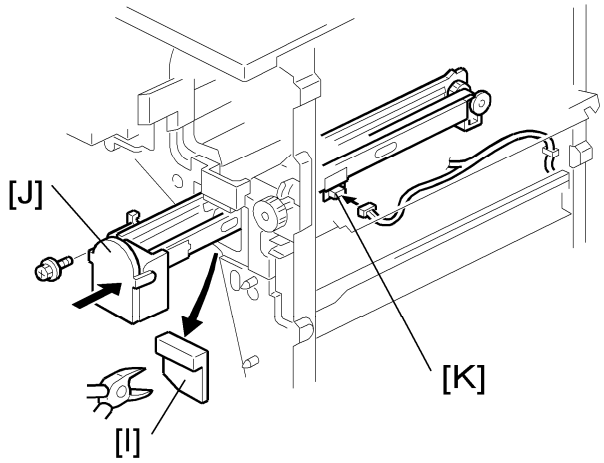


8. **Put the side-to-side detection unit [G] in the machine. Make sure that the two pins are engaged correctly at the front.**
9. **Make sure that the side-to-side detection unit moves smoothly on its rails. If it does not, make sure that the rails are aligned with their grooves.**
10. **Attach the side-to-side detection unit and connect it at the rear (x 2, x 1, x 1).**

11. **Pull the short connector out of the connector [H] then connect the cable of the finisher (x 1).**

Note

- This is the 3-pin connector.

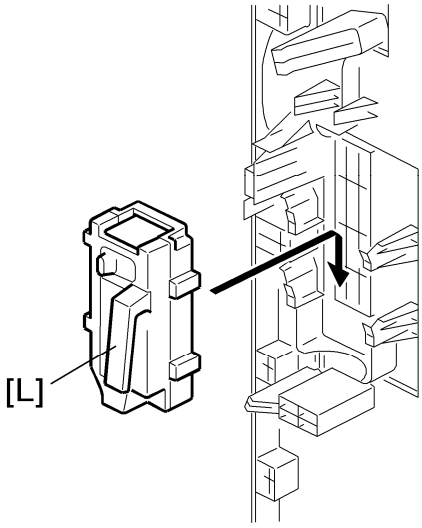


12. **At the front, use a pair of wire cutters to remove the part [I] of the cover.**
13. **Install the punch-waste transport unit [J] in the finisher.**
14. **Make sure that the punch-waste transport unit moves smoothly on its rails. If it does not, make sure that the rails are aligned with the grooves.**
15. **Remove the short connector from the connector [K].**

Note

- This is the 4-pin connector.

16. **Connect the cable and attach the punch-waste transport unit (x 1, x 1, x 1).**



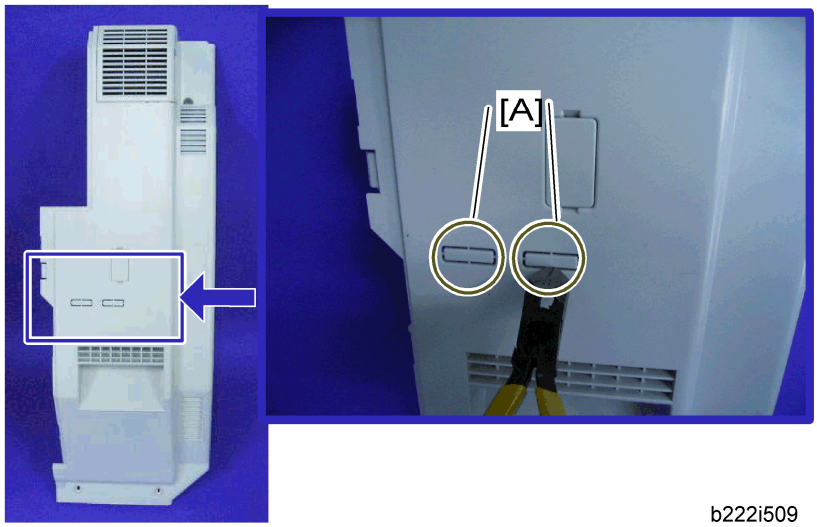
17. **Set the hopper [L] in its holder.**

18. **Reassemble the finisher, and then install it on the main machine.**
19. **Connect the power cord to the outlet, and then turn the main power switch on.**
20. **Check the punch unit operation.**

1.12 MECHANICAL COUNTER (NA ONLY)

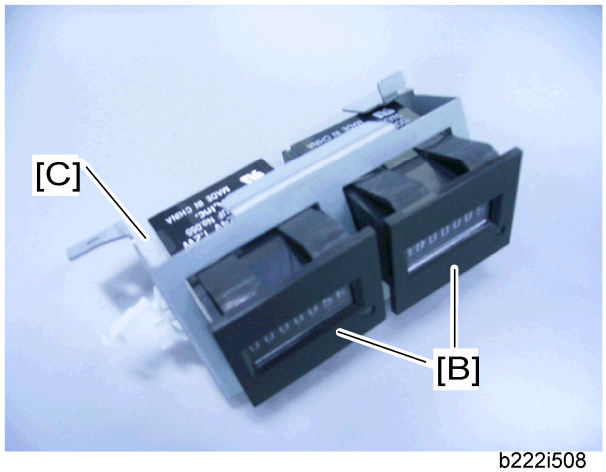
1.12.1 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

1. **Rear cover (see "Rear Cover" in the "Replacement and Adjustment" section)**
2. **Right rear cover (see "Right Rear Cover" in the "Replacement and Adjustment" section)**



b222i509

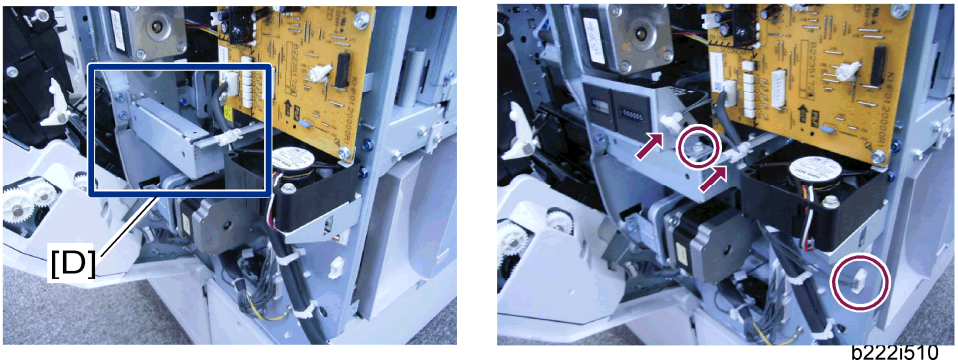
3. **Remove the cutouts [A] on the right rear cover with nippers.**



b222i508

4. **Attach the mechanical counters [B] to the bracket [C] and connect the harness to each mechanical counter.**

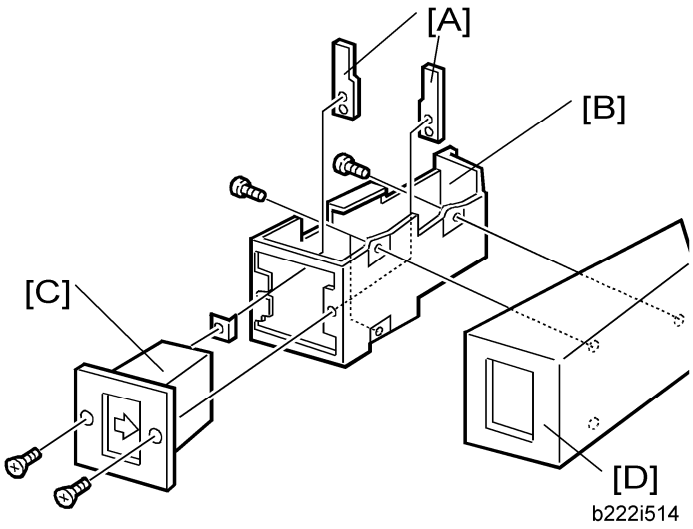
Mechanical Counter (NA Only)



5. **Attach the mechanical counter bracket to the frame [D] (x 1, x 2, x 1).**
6. **Reassemble the machine.**
7. **Plug in the machine and turn on the main power switch.**
8. **Enter the SP mode.**
9. **Set SP5987-001 to "1: ON".**
10. **Exit the SP mode, and then turn the machine off and on.**

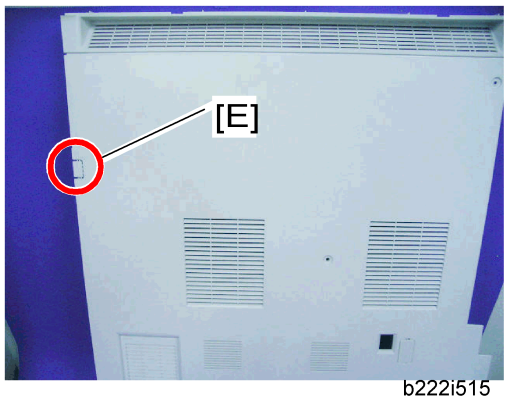
1.13 KEY COUNTER BRACKET

1.13.1 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE



b222i514

1. **Hold the key counter plate nuts [A] on the inside of the key counter bracket [B] and insert the key counter holder [C].**
2. **Secure the key counter holder to the bracket (x 2).**
3. **Install the key counter cover [D] (x 2).**
4. **Rear cover ("Rear Cover" in the Replacement and Adjustment section)**



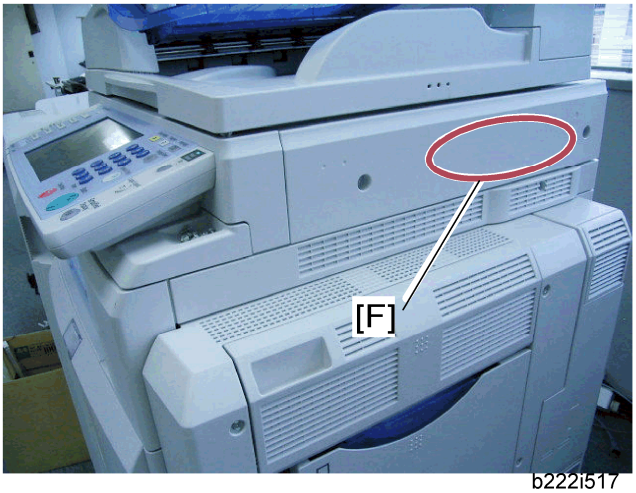
b222i515

5. **Cut off the part [E] of the rear cover.**

Key Counter Bracket

b222i516

6. **Connect the harness to the connector [F] inside the machine.**



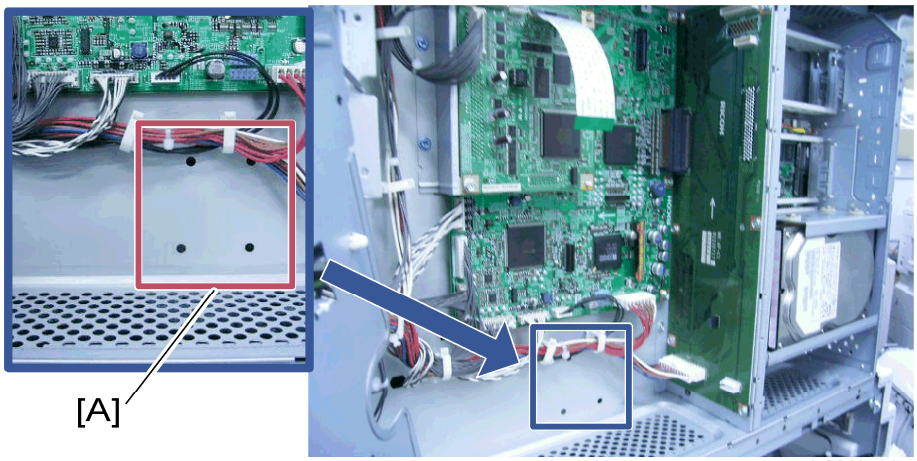
b222i517

7. **Peel off double sided tape on the key counter bracket and attach the key counter to the scanner right cover [F].**
8. **Reassemble the machine.**

1.14 KEY COUNTER INTERFACE UNIT

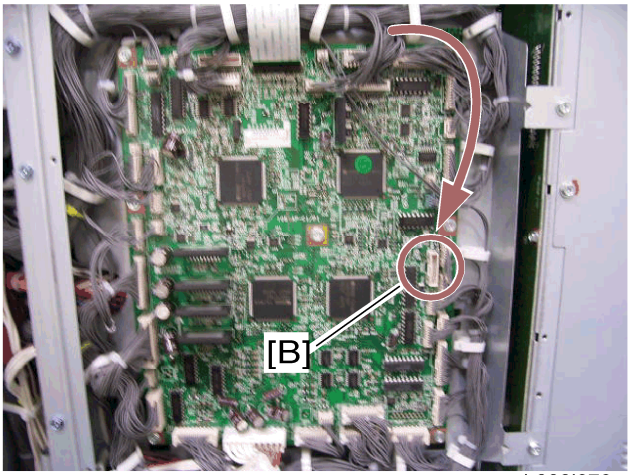
1.14.1 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

1. **Rear cover (see "Rear Cover" in the "Replacement and Adjustment" section)**
2. **IOB bracket (see "Controller Box" in the "Replacement and Adjustment" section)**



b222i511

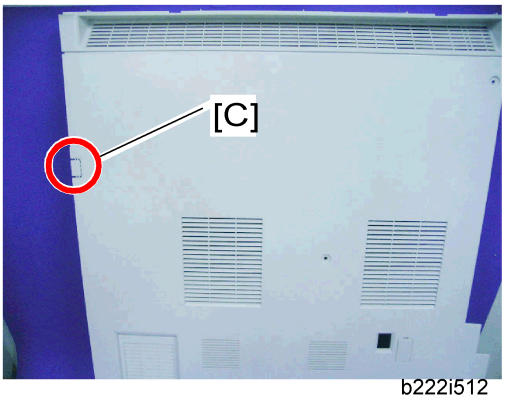
3. **Install the four stud stays in the location [A] in the controller box.**
4. **Install the key counter interface board on the four stud stays in the controller box.**
5. **Connect the harness to CN3 on the key counter interface board.**



b222i676

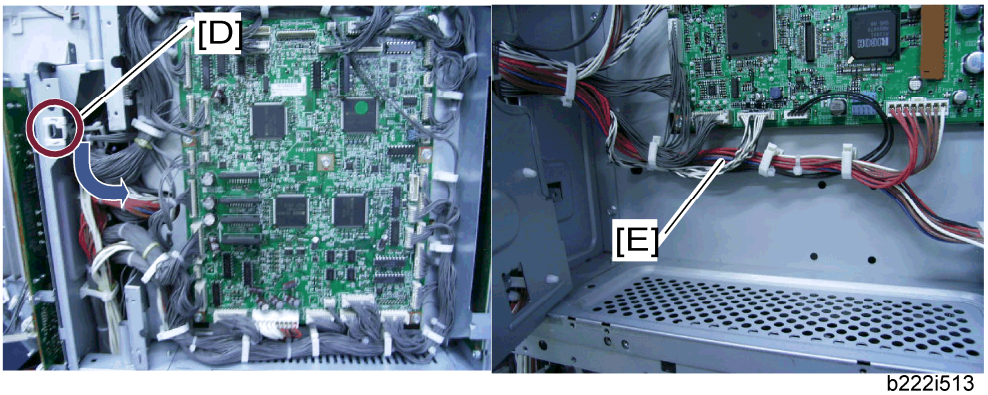
6. **Close the IOB bracket and connect the other terminal to CN238 [B] on the IOB.**

Key Counter Interface Unit



b222i512

7. **Cut off the part [C] of the rear cover.**



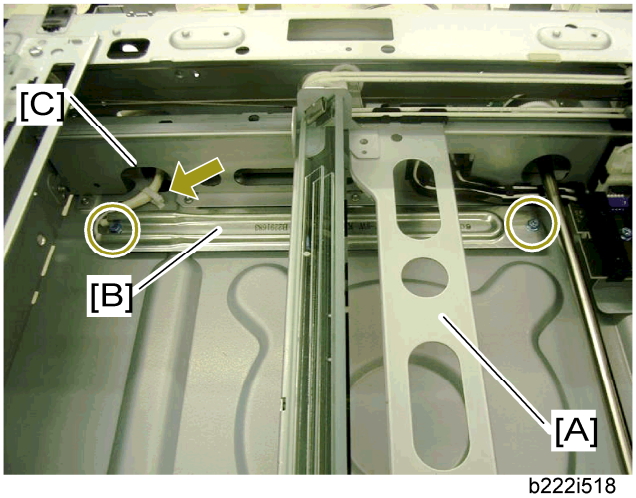
b222i513

8. **Clamp the harness from the counter device with the clamp [D] and put it as shown by the blue arrow (x 1).**
9. **Route the harness from the counter device in the same way as the other harnesses [E] (x 3).**
10. **Connect the harness from the counter device to CN4 on the key counter interface board.**
11. **Reattach the IOB bracket (see "Controller Box" in the "Replacement and Adjustment" section)**
12. **Reassemble the machine.**

1.15 ANTI-CONDENSATION HEATER (SCANNER)

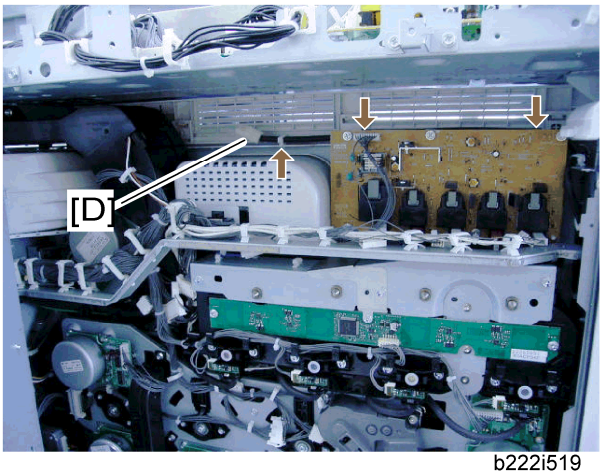
1.15.1 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

1. **Remove the ARDF or platen cover (see "ARDF" or "Platen Cover" in the "Installation" section.)**
2. **Rear cover (see "Rear Cover" in the "Replacement and Adjustment" section.)**
3. **ARDF exposure glass and exposure glass with left scale (see "Exposure Glass" in the "Replacement and Adjustment" section.)**
4. **Scanner rear frame (see "Scanner Motor" in the "Replacement and Adjustment" section.)**



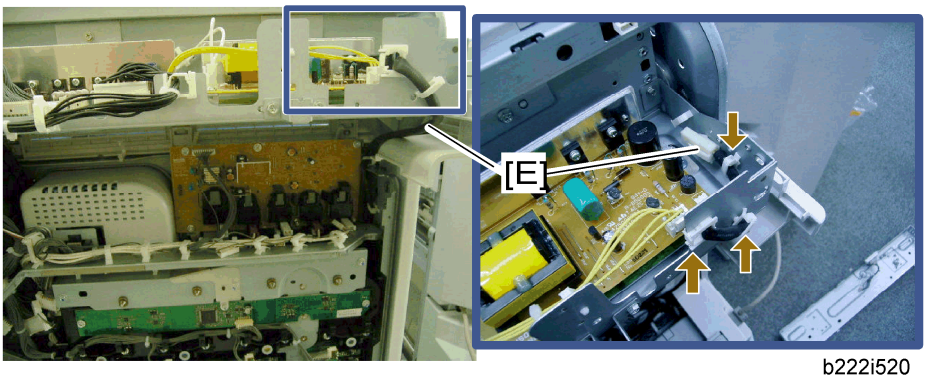
b222i518

5. **Move the scanner carriage [A] to the right side by rotating the scanner motor.**
6. **Install the heater [B] in the scanner unit (x 2, x 1)**
7. **Put the cable through the cutout [C].**



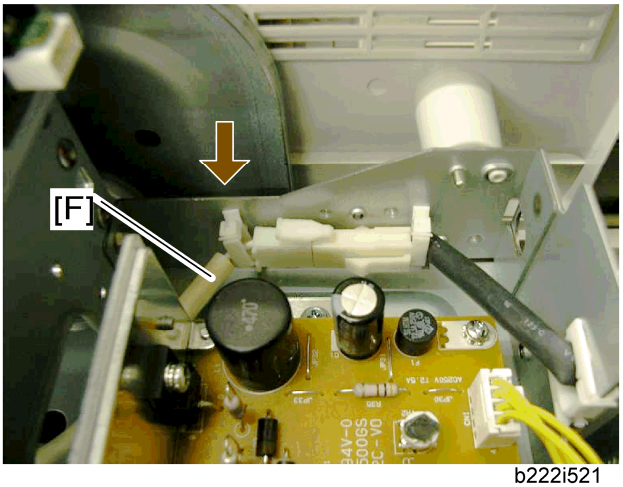
b222i519

8. **Release the heater relay cable [D] (🖃 x 3).**



b222i520

9. **Route the heater relay cable [E] as shown (🖃 x 3).**

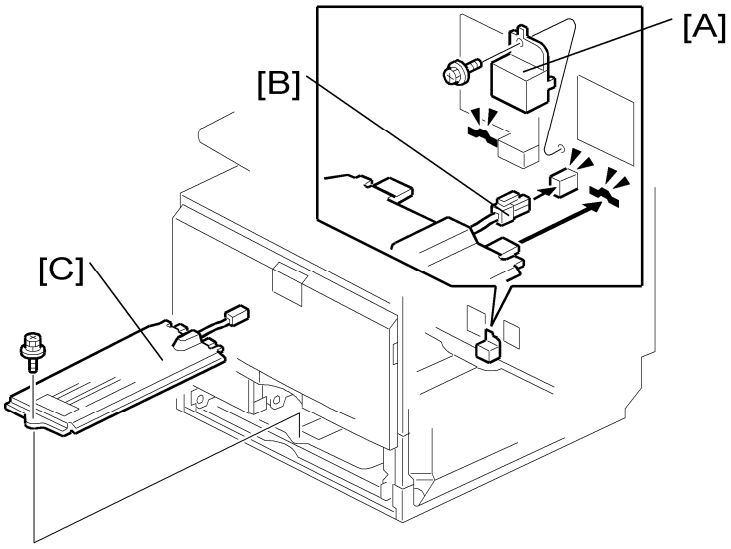


b222i521

10. **Connect the heater cable [F] to the heater relay cable (🖃 x 1).**
11. **Reassemble the machine.**

1.16 TRAY HEATER

1.16.1 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

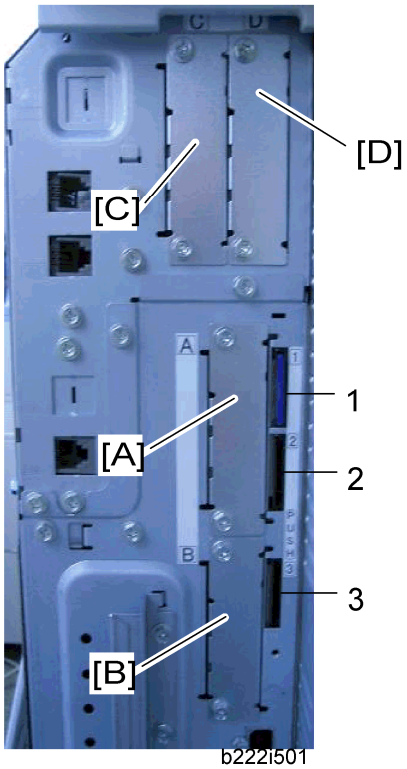


1. **Remove trays 1 and 2 from the machine.**
2. **Remove the connector cover [A] (x 1).**
3. **Connect the connector [B] of the heater to the connector of the main machine.**
4. **Install the heater [C] inside the machine (x 1)**
5. **Reassemble the machine.**

1.17 CONTROLLER OPTIONS

1.17.1 OVERVIEW

This machine has I/F card slots for optional I/F connections and SD card slots applications. After you install an option, check that the machine can recognize it (see “Check All Connections” at the end of this section).



b222l501

I/F Card Slots

- Slot A is used for one of the optional I/F connections (only one can be installed): IEEE1284, IEEE1394 (FireWire), IEEE802.11 (Wireless LAN), Bluetooth, or Remote Communication Gate.
- Slot B is used for the USB Host only.
- Slot C is not used in this machine.
- Slot D is used for the File Format Converter only.

SD Card Slots

- Slot 1 is used for the standard printer/scanner application only.
- Slot 2 is used for one of the optional applications:

⇒ PostScript 3, Data Overwrite Security Unit, PictBridge, or VM Card

- Slot 3 is used for installing the Browser Unit, VM Card, or for service only (for example, updating the firmware).

1.17.2 SD CARD APPLI MOVE

Overview

The service program “SD Card Appli Move” (SP5-873) lets you copy application programs from one SD card to another SD card.

Slot 1 and Slot 2 are used to store application programs. But there are 3 possible applications (PostScript 3, DOS unit, PictBridge). You cannot run application programs from Slot 3. However you can move application programs from Slot 3 to either Slot 1 or Slot 2 with the following procedure (if there are cards in slots 1 and 2, Slot 1 will be used.)

For this model, the printer/scanner card in slot 1 has enough space for the PictBridge and the DOS applications. Use the card that is already in slot 1 (printer/scanner card). Do not remove the printer/scanner card from slot 1.

The procedures in this section will assume that you use slot 1.

If you want to use slot 2, you must first turn the machine power off, remove the SD card from slot 1, and turn the power on again. You can then do the following procedure, and the application will go to the card in slot 2.

Make sure that the target SD card has enough space.

1. Enter SP5873 “SD Card Appli Move”.
2. Then move the application from the SD Card in Slot 3 to the card in slot 1.

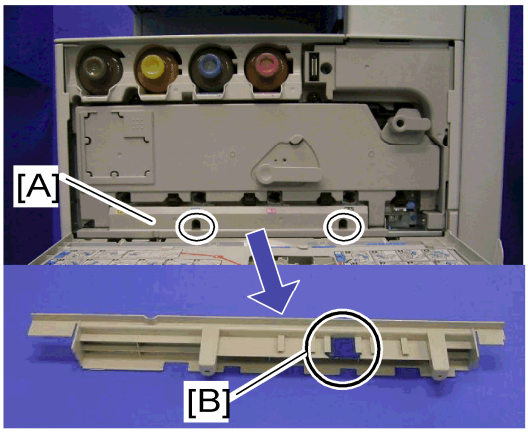
Note

- Do steps 1-2 again if you want to move another application program.

3. Exit the SP mode.

Be very careful when you do the SD Card Appli Move procedure:

- The data necessary for authentication is transferred with the application program from an SD card to another SD card. Authentication fails if you try to use the SD card after you copy the application program from one card to another card.
- Do not use the SD card if it has been used before for other purposes. Normal operation is not guaranteed when such an SD card is used.



- Remove the cover [A] (🔩 x 2), and then keep the SD card in the place [B] after you copy the application program from one card to another card. This is done for the following reasons:
  1. The SD card can be the only proof that the user is licensed to use the application program.
  2. You may need to check the SD card and its data to solve a problem in the future.
- You cannot copy PostScript application to another SD card. You have to copy the other application (PictBridge, DOS Unit) to the SD card that stores the PostScript application.

Move Exec

The menu “Move Exec” (SP5-873-001) lets you copy application programs from the original SD card to another SD card.

Important

- Do not turn ON the write protect switch of the system SD card or application SD card on the machine. If the write protect switch is ON, a download error (e.g. Error Code 44) occurs during a firmware upgrade or application merge.

1. **Turn the main switch off.**
2. **Make sure that an SD card is in SD Card Slot 1. The application program is copied to this SD card.**
3. **Insert the SD card with the application program in SD Card Slot 3. The application program is copied from this SD card.**
4. **Turn the main switch on.**
5. **Start the SP mode.**
6. **Select SP5-873-001 “Move Exec.”**
7. **Follow the messages shown on the operation panel.**

8. **Turn the main switch off.**
9. **Remove the SD card from SD Card Slot 3.**
10. **Turn the main switch on.**
11. **Check that the application programs run normally.**

Undo Exec

"Undo Exec" (SP5-873-002) lets you copy back application programs from an SD card to the original SD card. You can use this program when, for example, you have mistakenly copied some programs by using Move Exec (SP5-873-001).

Important

- Do not turn ON the write protect switch of the system SD card or application SD card on the machine. If the write protect switch is ON, a download error (e.g. Error Code 44) occurs during a firmware upgrade or application merge.

1. **Turn the main switch off.**
2. **Insert the original SD card in SD Card Slot 3. The application program is copied back into this card.**
3. **Insert the SD card with the application program in SD Card Slot 1. The application program is copied back from this SD card.**
4. **Turn the main switch on.**
5. **Start the SP mode.**
6. **Select SP5-873-002 "Undo Exec."**
7. **Follow the messages shown on the operation panel.**
8. **Turn the main switch off.**
9. **Remove the SD card from SD Card Slot 3.**

Note

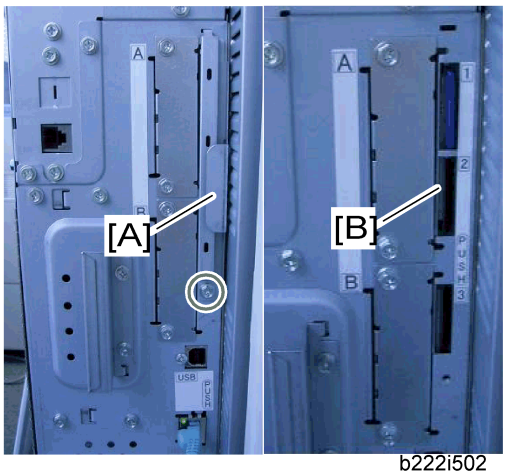
- This step assumes that the application programs in the SD card are used by the machine.

10. **Turn the main switch on.**
11. **Check that the application programs run normally.**
12. **Make sure that the machine can recognize the option (see 'Check All Connections' at the end of this section).**

1.17.3 POSTSCRIPT 3

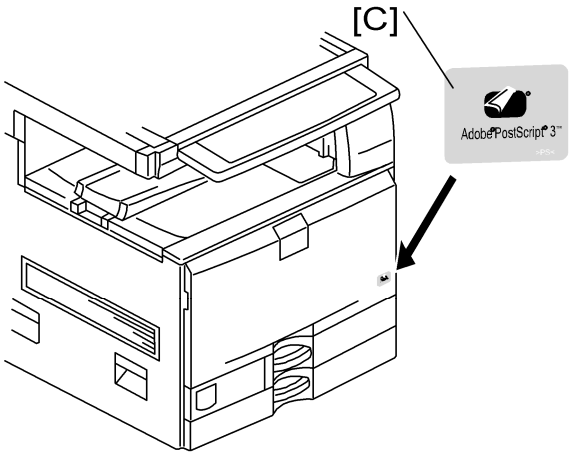
CAUTION

- **Unplug the main machine power cord before you do the following procedure.**



b222i502

1. **Remove the slot cover [A] from SD card slot 2 (🔩 x 1).**
2. **Turn the SD-card label face to the rear of the machine. Then push it slowly into slot 2 [B] until you hear a click.**
3. **Attach the slot cover [A] (🔩 x 1).**



4. **Attach the "Adobe PostScript 3" decal [C] to the front door.**
5. **Make sure that the machine can recognize the option (see 'Check All Connections' at the end of this section).**

1.17.4 FILE FORMAT CONVERTER

⚠CAUTION

- **Unplug the main machine power cord before you do the following procedure.**

1. **Remove the slot cover [A] from I/F card slot D (☞ x 2).**
2. **Install the file format converter into I/F card slot D and then fasten it with screws.**
3. **Plug in and turn on the main power switch.**
4. **Check or set the following SP codes with the values shown below.**

SP No.	Title	Setting
SP5-836-001	Capture Function (0:Off 1:On)	"1"
SP5-836-002	Panel Setting	"0"

5. **Check the operation.**
6. **Make sure that the machine can recognize the option (see 'Check All Connections' at the end of this section).**

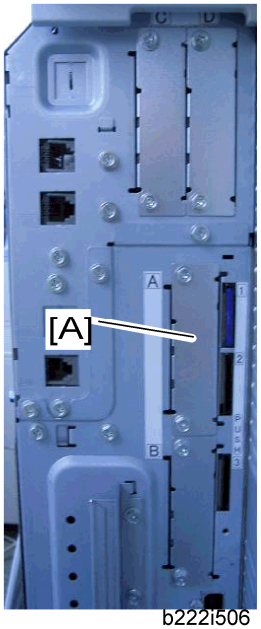
1.17.5 IEEE1394 (FIREWIRE)

Installation Procedure

You can only install one of the following network interfaces at a time: (IEEE 802.11b (Wireless LAN), IEEE1284, IEEE1394, Bluetooth).

⚠CAUTION

- **Unplug the main machine power cord before you do the following procedure.**



1. **Remove the slot cover [A] from I/F Card Slot A (🔩 x 2).**
2. **Install the FireWire board (Knob-screw x 2) into I/F card slot A.**
3. **Make sure that the machine can recognize the option (see 'Check All Connections' at the end of this section).**

UP Mode Settings for IEEE 1394

Enter the UP mode. Then do the procedure below to perform the initial interface settings for IEEE 1394. These settings take effect every time the machine is powered on.

1. **Press the "User Tools/Counter" key.**
2. **On the touch panel, press "System Settings".**
3. **Press "Interface Settings".**
4. **Press "IEEE1394".**
5. **Press the following soft keys on the touch panel. Then set up the following settings:**
   - "IP Address": Set the IP Address and Subnet Mask.
   - "IP over 1394": Enable or disable this setting as required. This setting enables IP over 1394 as the default setting for the printing method.
   - "SCSI Print": Enable or disable this setting as required. This setting enables SCSI Print as the default setting for the printing method.
   - "Bi-directional SCSI Print": Switch bi-directional printing on or off for SCSI print.

SP Mode Settings for IEEE 1394

The following SP commands can be set for IEEE 1394.

SP No.	Name	Function
5839 007	Cycle Master	Enables or disables cycle master function of the IEEE 1394 standard bus.
5839 008	BCR Mode	Sets the BCR (Broadcast Channel Register) setting for the Auto Node operation for the standard IEEE1394 bus for when IRM is not in use. The following three settings are available: “Standard,” “IRM Color Copy,” and “Always Effective.”
5839 009	IRM 1394a Check	Determines whether an IRM check for IEEE 1394a is conducted for the Auto Node when IRM is not used.
5839 010	Unique ID	Enables the “Node_Unique_Id” setting for enumeration on the standard IEEE 1394 bus.
5839 011	Logout	Determines how successive initiator login requests are handled during login in for SBP-2.
5839 012	Login	Enables or disables exclusive login for SBP-2.
5839 013	Login MAX	Sets the limit for the number of logins for SBP-2. Range: 1 to 62.

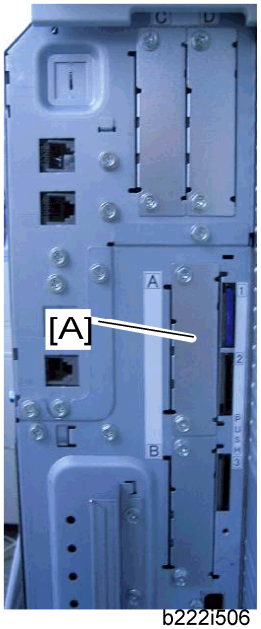
1.17.6 IEEE1284

Installation Procedure

⚠CAUTION

- **Unplug the main machine power cord before you do the following procedure.**

You can only install one of the following network interfaces at a time: (IEEE 802.11b (Wireless LAN), IEEE1284, IEEE1394, Bluetooth).



b222i506

1. **Remove the slot cover [A] from I/F Card Slot A (🔩 x 2).**
2. **Install the interface board (Knob-screw x 2) into I/F card slot A.**
3. **Make sure that the machine can recognize the option (see 'Check All Connections' at the end of this section).**

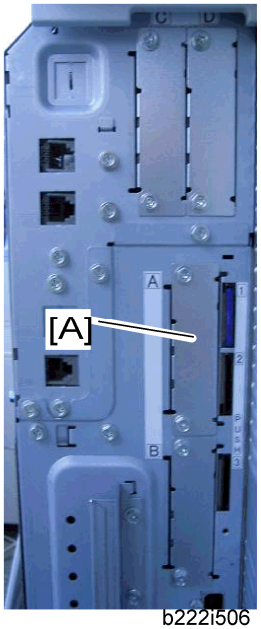
1.17.7 IEEE 802.11B (WIRELESS LAN)

Installation Procedure

⚠CAUTION

- **Unplug the main machine power cord before you do the following procedure.**

You can only install one of the following network interfaces at a time: (IEEE 802.11b (Wireless LAN), IEEE1284, IEEE1394, Bluetooth).



b222l506

1. **Remove the slot cover [A] from I/F Card Slot A (🔧 x 2).**
2. **Install the wireless LAN board (Knob-screw x 2) into I/F card slot A.**
3. **Install the wireless LAN card in the wireless LAN board. Make sure the card label faces to the front of the machine.**
4. **Attach the cover to the wireless LAN card.**
5. **Make sure that the machine can recognize the option (see 'Check All Connections' at the end of this section).**

You may have to move the machine if the reception is not clear.

1. Make sure that the machine is not located near an appliance or any type of equipment that generates strong magnetic fields.
2. Put the machine as close as possible to the access point.

UP Mode Settings for Wireless LAN

Enter the UP mode. Then do the procedure below to perform the initial interface settings for IEEE 802.11b. These settings take effect every time the machine is powered on.

Note

- You cannot use the wireless LAN if you use Ethernet.

1. **Press the "User Tools/Counter" key.**
2. **On the touch panel, press "System Settings".**

Note

- The Network I/F (default: Ethernet) must be set for either Ethernet or wireless LAN.

3. **Select “Interface Settings” → “Network” (tab) → “Network I/F Setting”**
4. **Press “IEEE 802.11b”. Only the wireless LAN options show.**
5. **Communication Mode. Select either “802.11 Ad hoc”, “Ad hoc” or “Infrastructure”.**
6. **SSID Setting. Enter the SSID setting. (The setting is case sensitive.)**
7. **Channel. You need this setting when Ad Hoc Mode is selected.**
   Range: 1 to 14 (default: 11)

   Note

   - The allowed range for the channel settings may vary for different countries.
8. **WEP (Encryption) Setting. The WEP (Wired Equivalent Privacy) setting is designed to protect wireless data transmission. The same WEP key is required on the receiving side in order to unlock encoded data. There are 64 bit and 128 bit WEP keys.**

   WEP:

   Selects “Active” or “Inactive”. (“Inactive” is default.)

   Range of Allowed Settings:

   64 bit 10 characters

   128 bit26 characters
9. **Transmission Speed. Press the Next button to show more settings. Then select the transmission speed for the mode: Auto, 11 Mbps, 5.5 Mbps, 2 Mbps, 1 Mbps (default: Auto). This setting should match the distance between the closest machine or access point. This depends on which mode is selected.**

   Note

   - For the Ad Hoc Mode, this is the distance between the machine and the closest PC in the network. For the Infrastructure Mode, this is the distance between the machine and the closest access point.

   11 Mbps: 140 m (153 yd.)

   5.5 Mbps: 200 m (219 yd.)

   2 Mbps: 270 m (295 yd.)

   1 Mbps: 400 m (437 yd.)

⟹ 10. **Reboot the machine for these settings to take effect.**

⟹ *SP Mode Settings for IEEE 802.11b Wireless LAN*

The following SP commands and UP modes can be set for IEEE 802.11b

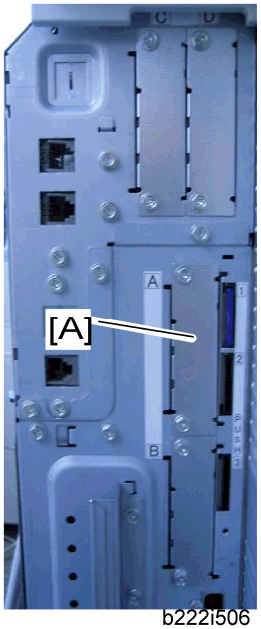
SP No.	Name	Function
5840 006	Channel MAX	Sets the maximum range of the channel settings for the country.
5840 007	Channel MIN	Sets the minimum range of the channels settings allowed for your country.
5840 011	WEP Key Select	Used to select the WEP key (Default: 00).
UP mode	Name	Function
	SSID	Used to confirm the current SSID setting.
WEP Key	Used to confirm the current WEP key setting.	
WEP Mode	Used to show the maximum length of the string that can be used for the WEP Key entry.	

1.17.8 BLUETOOTH

⚠CAUTION

- **Unplug the main machine power cord before you do the following procedure.**

You can only install one of the following network interfaces at a time: (IEEE 802.11b (Wireless LAN), IEEE1284, IEEE1394, Bluetooth).



b222i506

1. **Remove the slot cover [A] from I/F Card Slot A (🔩 x 2).**
2. **Install the Bluetooth board (Knob-screw x 2) into I/F card slot A.**
3. **Insert the Bluetooth card into the Bluetooth card adaptor.**
4. **Attach the antenna cap to the Bluetooth card.**
5. **Install the Bluetooth card adaptor into Bluetooth board.**
6. **Make sure that the machine can recognize the option (see 'Check All Connections' at the end of this section).**

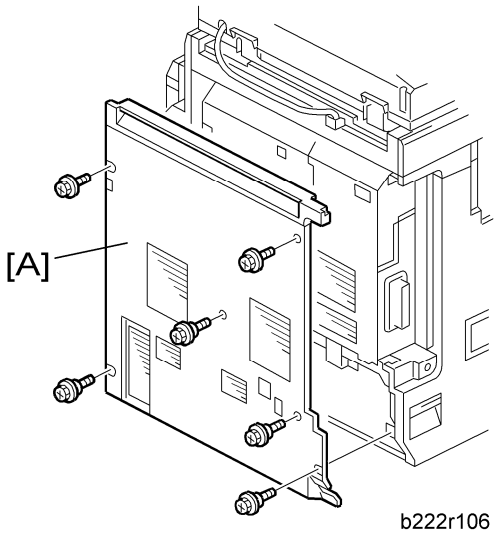
1.17.9 COPY DATA SECURITY UNIT

⚠CAUTION

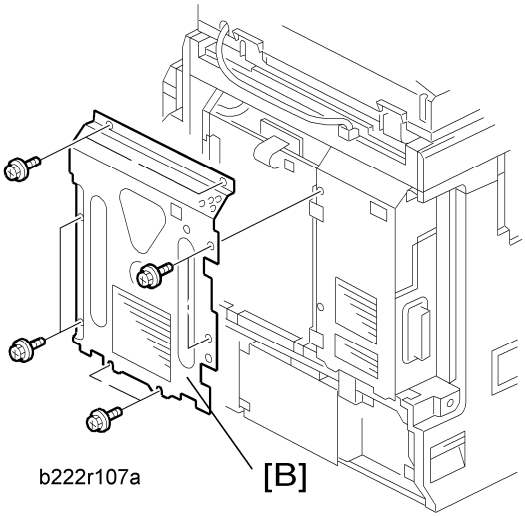
- **Unplug the main machine power cord before you do the following procedure.**

Note

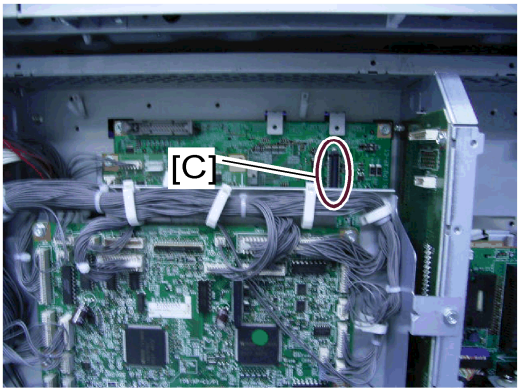
- If you install this option, you cannot use scanner or fax functions.
- When you store originals to the document server after installing this option, you can not select the 50 % or less reduction mode on the LCD panel.



1. **Remove the rear cover [A] of the machine (🔩 x 6).**



2. **Controller box right cover [B] (🔩 x 8)**



3. **Attach the ICIB-1 (copy data security board) to CN 508 [C] on the IPU (🔩 x 2).**
4. **Reassemble the machine.**

User Tool Setting

1. **Plug in and turn on the main power switch.**
2. **Go into the User Tools mode, and select System Settings > Administrator Tools > Copy Data Security Option > "On".**
3. **Exit the User Tools.**
4. **Check the operation.**

Note

- The machine will issue an SC165 error if the machine is powered on with the ICIB-1 removed and the "Data Security for Copying" feature set to "ON".
- When you remove this option from the machine, first set the setting to "OFF" with the user tool before removing this board. If you forget to do this, "Data Security for Copying" feature cannot appear in the user tool setting. And then SC165 will appear every time the machine is switched on, and the machine cannot be used.

5. **Make sure that the machine can recognize the option (see 'Check All Connections' at the end of this section).**

1.17.10 DATA OVERWRITE SECURITY UNIT TYPE D (B735)

Before You Begin the Procedure

1. **Make sure that the following settings are not at their factory default values:**
   - Supervisor login password
   - Administrator login name
   - Administrator login password

   If any of these settings is at a factory default value, tell the customer these settings must be changed before you do the installation procedure.
2. **Make sure that "Admin. Authentication" is ON.**

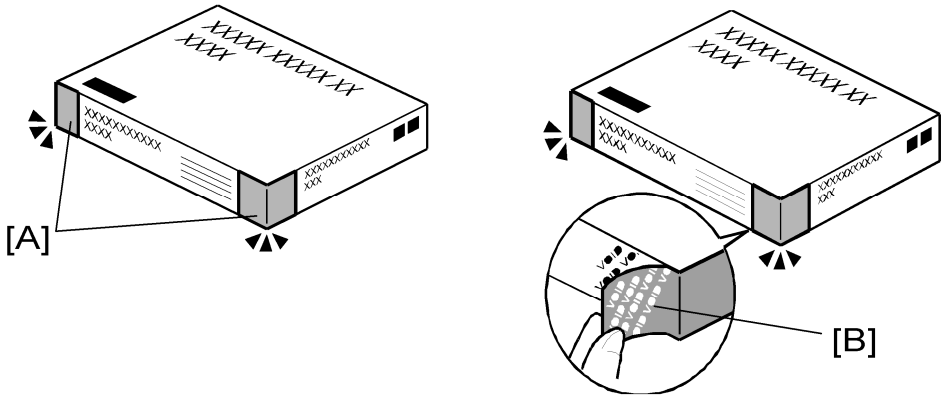
   [System Settings] – [Administrator Tools] – [Administrator Authentication Management] - [Admin. Authentication]

   If this setting is OFF, tell the customer this setting must be ON before you do the installation procedure.
3. **Make sure that "Administrator Tools" is enabled (selected).**

   [System Settings] – [Administrator Tools] – [Administrator Authentication Management] - [Available Settings]

   If this setting is disabled (not selected), tell the customer this setting must be enabled (selected) before you do the installation procedure.

Seal Check and Removal



CAUTION

- **You must check the box seals to make sure that they were not removed after the items were sealed in the box at the factory before you do the installation.**

1. **Check the box seals [A] on each corner of the box.**
   - Make sure that a tape is attached to each corner.
   - The surfaces of the tapes must be blank. If you see “VOID” on the tapes, do not install the components in the box.
2. **If the surfaces of the tapes do not show “VOID”, remove them from the corners of the box.**
3. **You can see the “VOID” marks [B] when you remove each seal. In this condition, they cannot be attached to the box again.**

Installation Procedure

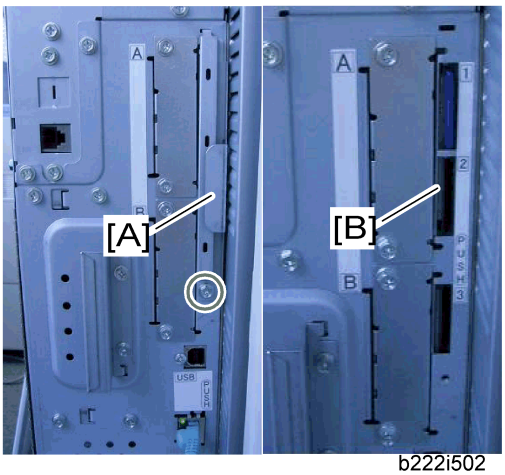
CAUTION

- **Unplug the main machine power cord before you do the following procedure.**

Note

- You must install the data overwrite security unit in SD Card slot 2. However, the Postscript option and the PictBridge option are also installed in SD Card slot 2. You must do the SD Card Appli move procedure first if you have the postscript or PictBridge option installed and you want to install the data overwrite security unit.

1. **Turn off the main power switch if the machine is turned on.**
2. **Disconnect the network cable if the NIB is installed.**



b222i502

3. **Remove the slot cover [A] for SD cards (🔩 x 1).**
4. **Turn the SD-card label face to the rear of the machine. Then push it slowly into slot 2 [B] until you hear a click.**
5. **Connect the network cable if the NIB option is installed.**
6. **Turn on the main power switch.**
7. **Go into the SP mode and push "EXECUTE" with SP5-878.**
8. **Exit the SP mode and turn off the operation switch. Then turn off the main power switch.**
9. **Turn on the machine power.**
10. **Do SP5990-005 (SP print mode Diagnostic Report).**
11. **Make sure the ROM number and firmware version in area [a] of the diagnostic report are the same as those in area [b].**
    - **[a]**: "ROM Number/Firmware Version" – "HDD Format Option"
    - **[b]**: "Loading Program" – "GW2a_zoffy"

Diagnostic Report:	"ROM No. / Firmware Version" [a]	"Loading Program" [b]
Data Overwrite Security Unit	HDD Format Option: B7355060 / 0.03	GW2a_zoffy: B7355060 / 0.03

Important

- The ROM number and firmware version number change when the firmware is upgraded. However, the important thing is to make sure the numbers in [a] are the same as the numbers in [b].
- If the ROM numbers are not the same, or the version numbers are not the same, this means the unit was not installed correctly.

If this happens:

Make sure of the unit type (must be Type D).

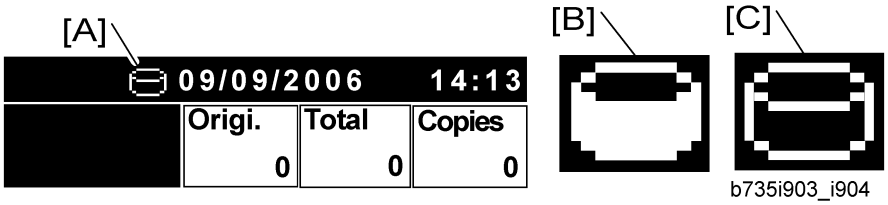
If they do not match:

1) Replace the NV-RAM on the controller.

2) Replace the “Data Overwrite Security Unit” (SD card) with the correct type

3) Do the installation procedure in this procedure again, from Step 1.

12. **Go into the User Tools mode, and select System Settings> Administrator Tools> Auto Erase Memory Setting> On.**
13. **Exit the User Tools mode.**



b735i903_i904

14. **Check the display and make sure that the overwrite erase icon [A] shows.**
15. **Make a Sample Copy.**
16. **Check the overwrite erase icon.**
    - The icon [A] changes to [B] when job data is stored in the HDD.
    - The icon goes back to its usual shape [C] after this function has completed a data overwriting in the HDD.

1.17.11 USB HOST INTERFACE

CAUTION

- **Unplug the main machine power cord before you do the following procedure.**

b222i506a

1. **Remove the slot cover [A] from I/F Card Slot B (x 2).**
2. **Install the USB Host Interface (Knob-screw x 2) into I/F card slot B.**
3. **Make sure that the machine can recognize the option (see 'Check All Connections' at the end of this section).**

1.17.12 PICTBRIDGE

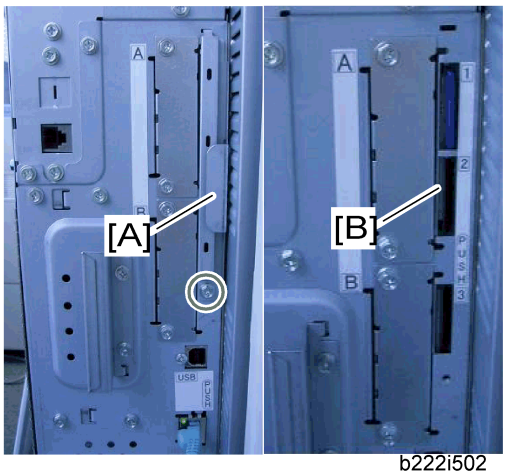
CAUTION

- **Unplug the main machine power cord before you do the following procedure.**

Note

- You must install the PictBridge option in SD Card slot 2. However, the Postscript option and the data overwrite security unit option are also installed in SD Card slot 2. You must do the SD Card Appli move procedure first if you have the postscript or data overwrite security unit option installed and you want to install the PictBridge unit.

You must install the USB Host Interface when using the PictBridge unit.



b222i502

1. **Remove the slot cover [A] for SD cards (🔩 x 1).**
2. **Turn the SD-card label face to the rear of the machine. Then push it slowly into slot 2 [B] until you hear a click.**
3. **Attach the slot cover [A] (🔩 x 1).**
4. **Make sure that the machine can recognize the option (see 'Check All Connections' at the end of this section).**

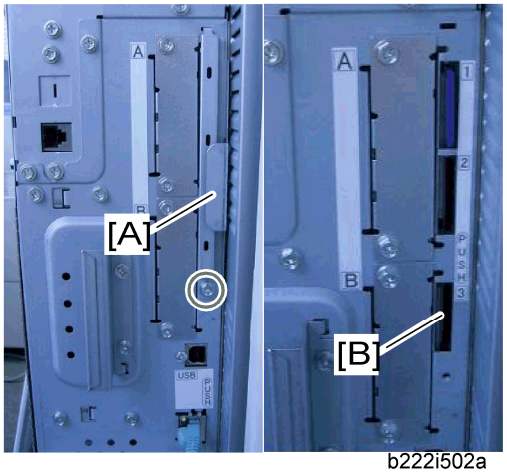
1.17.13 BROWSER UNIT TYPE B

Installation Procedure

⚠CAUTION

- **Unplug the main machine power cord before you do the following procedure.**

SD card slot 3 is basically used only for service maintenance. Do not leave an SD card in slot 3 after installing an application.



b222i502a

Controller Options

1. **Remove the slot cover [A] for SD cards (🔩 x 1).**
2. **Turn the SD-card label face to the rear of the machine. Then push it slowly into slot 3 until you hear a click.**
3. **Plug in and turn on the main power switch.**
4. **Push the "User Tools" key.**
   If an administrator setting is registered for the machine, step 5 and 6 are required. Otherwise, skip to the step 7
5. **Push the "Login/ Logout" key.**
6. **Login with the administrator user name and password.**
7. **Touch "Extended Feature Settings" twice on the LCD.**
8. **Touch "Install" on the LCD.**
9. **Touch "SD Card".**
10. **Touch the "Browser" line.**
11. **Under "Install to" touch "Machine HDD" and touch "Next".**
12. **When you see "Ready to Install", check the information on the screen to confirm your previous selection.**
13. **Touch "OK". You will see "Installing the extended feature... Please wait.", and then "Completed".**
14. **Touch "Exit" to go back to the setting screen.**
15. **Touch "Change Allocation".**
16. **Touch the "Browser" line.**
17. **Press one of the hard keys, which you want to use for the Browser Unit. In default, this function is assigned to the "Other Functions" key (bottom key of function keys).**
18. **Touch "OK".**
19. **Touch "Exit" twice to go back to the copy screen.**
20. **Turn off the main power switch.**
21. **Install the key for "Browser Unit" to the place, where you want.**
22. **Remove the SD card from slot 3.**
23. **Attach the slot cover [A] (🔩 x 1).**
24. **Keep the SD card in the place (☛"SD Card Appli Move" in section of "Installation") after you install the application program from the card to HDD. This is because: The SD card can be the only proof that the user is licensed to use the application program. - You may need to check the SD card and its data to solve a problem in the future.**

Update Procedure

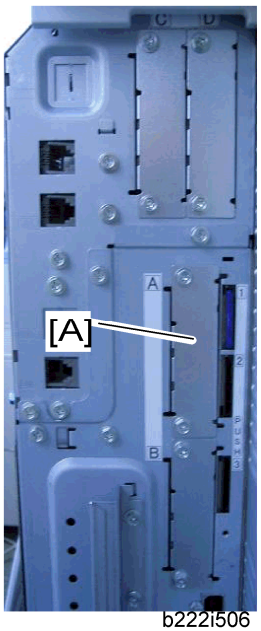
1. **Remove the slot cover [A] for SD cards (🖉 x 1).**
2. **Turn the SD-card label face to the rear of the machine. Then push it slowly into slot 3 until you hear a click.**
3. **Plug in and turn on the main power switch.**
4. **Push the "User Tools" key.**
   If an administrator setting is registered for the machine, step 5 and 6 are required. Otherwise, skip to the step 7
5. **Push the "Login/ Logout" key.**
6. **Login with the administrator user name and password.**
7. **Touch "Extended Feature Settings" twice on the LCD.**
8. **Touch "Uninstall" on the LCD.**
9. **Touch the "Browser" line**
10. **Confirmation message appears on the LCD.**
11. **Touch "Yes" to proceed.**
12. **Reconfirmation message appears on the LCD.**
13. **Touch "Yes" to uninstall the browser unit.**
14. **You will see "Uninstalling the extended feature... Please wait.", and then "Completed".**
15. **Touch "Exit" to go back to the setting screen.**
16. **Exit "User/Tools" setting, and then turn off the main power switch.**
17. **Remove the SD card from the SD card slot 3.**
18. **Overwrite the updated program in the "sdk" folder of the browser unit application with PC.**
19. **Do the "Installation Procedure" to install the browser unit.**

1.17.14 REMOTE COMMUNICATION GATE INSTALLATION

Component Check

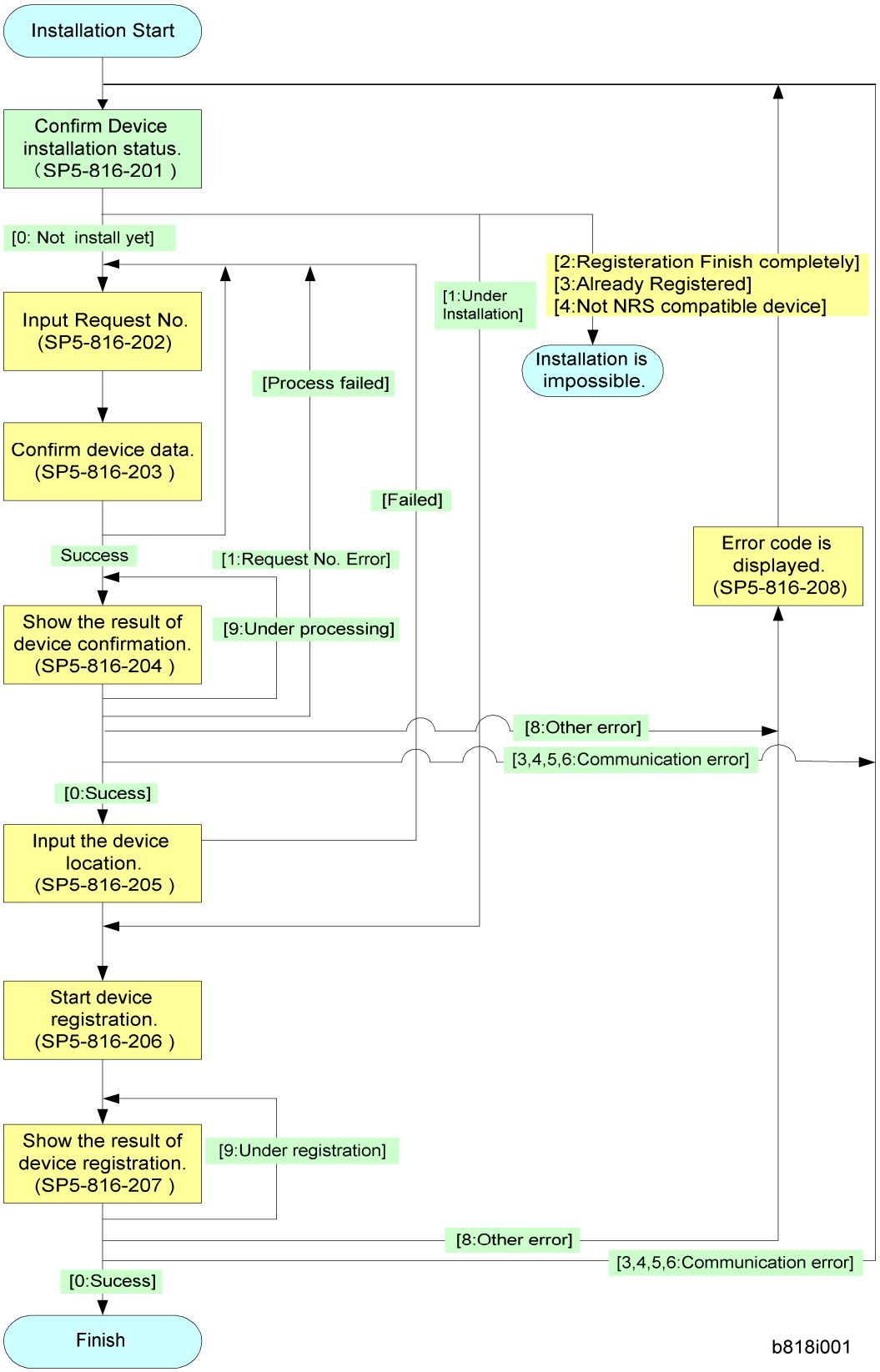
No.	Description	Q'ty
1	Remote Comm. Gate Interface	1
2	Cover	1
3	Screw	3

Installation Procedure



b222i506

1. **Remove one cover bracket [A] from I/F Card Slot A (x 2)**
2. **Install the modem board into the card slot for the device (x 2).**
3. **Check the following SP settings before starting the installation flow chart**
   - SP5-816-150 (To Select the country)
   - SP5-816-154 (To set the telephone number for outside connection)
   - SP5-816-161 (To set the telephone number)
4. **Follow the Installation flow chart as shown below with SP mode.**

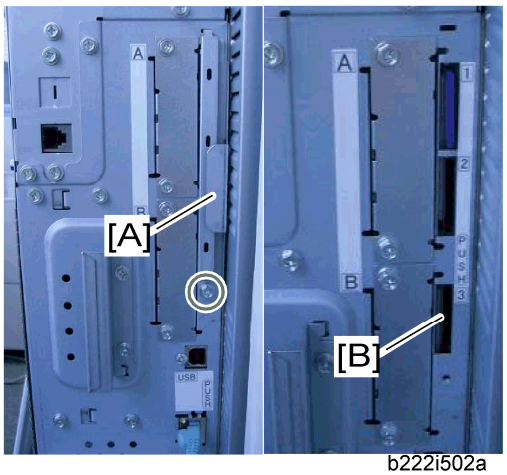

Installation Start
Confirm Device installation status. (SP5-816-201)
[0: Not install yet]
Input Request No. (SP5-816-202)
Confirm device data. (SP5-816-203)
Success
Show the result of device confirmation. (SP5-816-204)
[0:Sucess]
Input the device location. (SP5-816-205)
Start device registration. (SP5-816-206)
Show the result of device registration. (SP5-816-207)
[0:Sucess]
Finish
[1:Under Installation]
[2:Registeration Finish completely]
[3:Already Registered]
[4:Not NRS compatible device]
Installation is impossible.
[Process failed]
[Failed]
[1:Request No. Error]
[9:Under processing]
[8:Other error]
[3,4,5,6:Communication error]
Error code is displayed. (SP5-816-208)
[9:Under registration]
[8:Other error]
[3,4,5,6:Communication error]
b818i001

⇒1.17.15 VM CARD TYPE C (JAVA PLATFORM)

⚠CAUTION

- **Unplug the main machine power cord before you do the following procedure.**

Do not remove the SD card from slot 2 or 3 after installing the platform.



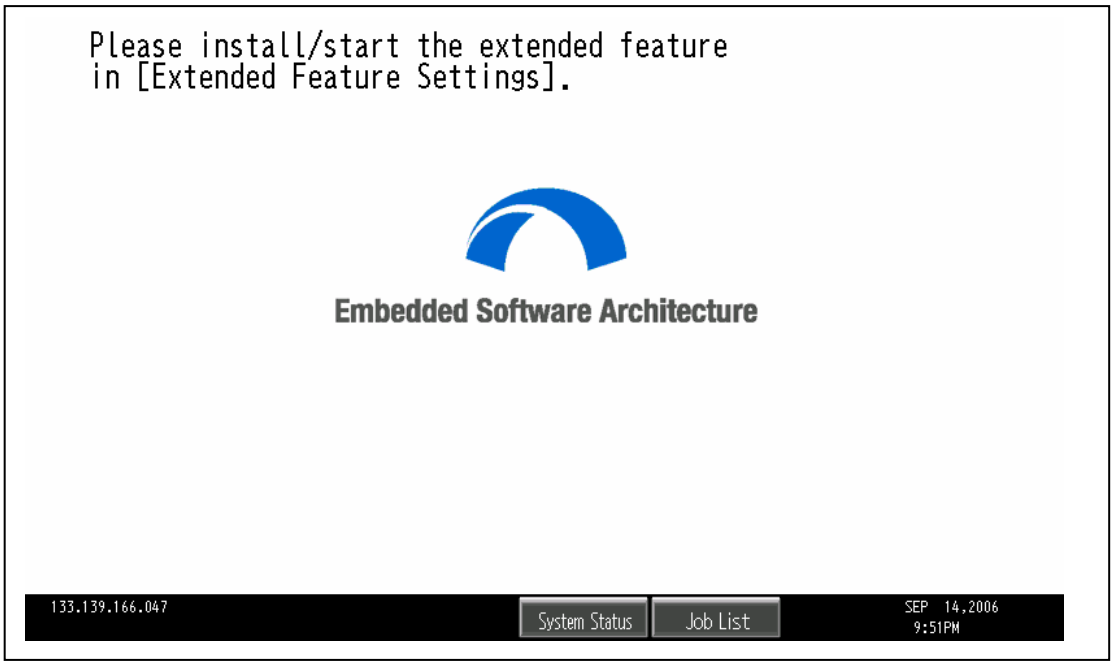
b222i502a

1. **With the power OFF and the machine unplugged, remove the slot cover [A] from SD card slot 2 or 3 (x 1).**
2. **Insert the VM-Card Type C [B] label face to the rear of the machine. Then push it slowly into slot 2 or 3 until you hear a click.**
3. **Replace the sixth key-slot cover with the "Other function" key (part number B2381576).**
4. **Plug in and turn ON the main power switch. The installation of the Java VM platform will start automatically.**

   IMPORTANT: DO NOT turn the main power OFF. Also, do not open any of the covers or do any machine operations. This will damage the SD card. A damaged SD card cannot be repaired.

⟹ **5. Wait five minutes, and then press the “Other function” key. You will hear two beeps.**

- If the screen does not change, this means the installation is not finished yet. Wait a few more minutes and then press the “Other function” key again.
- When the installation is finished, the following will be displayed:



6. **Set the heap size and stack size for the application. (In User Tools/Extended Features setting, see the Administrator Tools tab.)**
7. **Install the application using the installation procedure provided with the application.**

1.17.16 CHECK ALL CONNECTIONS

1. **Plug in the power cord. Then turn on the main switch.**
2. **Enter the printer user mode. Then print the configuration page.**
   User Tools > Printer Settings > List Test Print > Config. Page

All installed options are shown in the “System Reference” column.

⇒1.18 FIERY E-5000 (B878)

1.18.1 ENVIRONMENT

1. Temperature Range: 5°C to 40°C (41°F to 104°F)
2. Humidity Range: 10% to 90% RH
3. Ambient Illumination: Less than 1500 lux (do not expose to direct sunlight or strong light)
4. Ambient Dust: Less than 0.10 mg/m3
5. If the place of installation is air-conditioned or heated, do not place the machine where it will be:
   1) Subjected to sudden temperature changes
   2) Directly exposed to cool air from an air-conditioner
   3) Directly exposed to heat from a heater
6. Do not place the machine where it will be exposed to corrosive gases.
7. Do not install the machine at any location over 3,048 m (10,000 feet) above sea level.
8. Place the controller on a strong and level base.
9. Do not place the machine where it may be subjected to strong vibrations.
10. Do not connect the machine to a power source shared with another electrical appliance.
11. The machine can generate an electromagnetic field, which could interfere with radio or television reception.

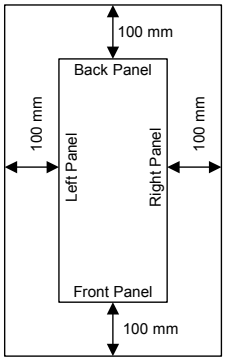
1.18.2 MACHINE LEVEL

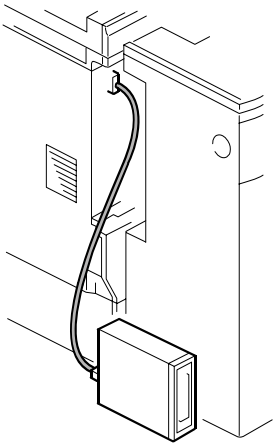
1. Front to back: Within ± 5° (0.2") away from level
2. Right to left: Within ± 5° (0.2") away from level

1.18.3 MINIMUM SPACE REQUIREMENTS

Place the machine near the power source, providing clearance as shown.

You may place the E-5000 on the rear side of the large capacity tray or finisher as shown in the illustration.





1.18.4 POWER REQUIREMENTS

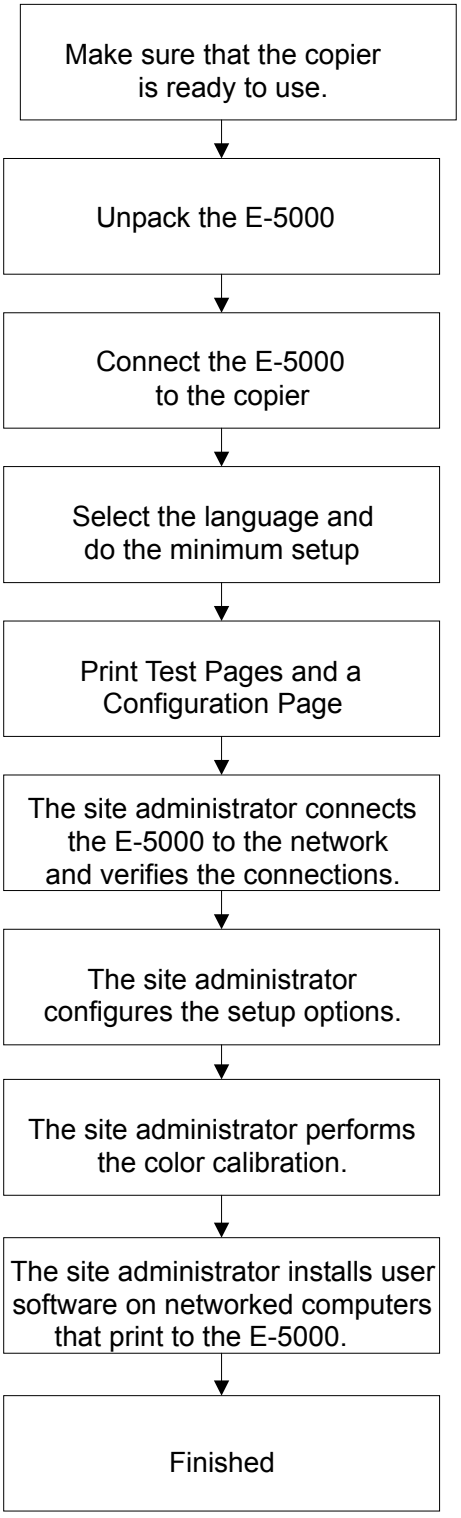
⚠CAUTION

1. Insert firmly the plug in the outlet.
2. Avoid using an outlet extension plug or cord.
3. Ground the machine. Avoid using a 3-prong adapter in a 2-hole ungrounded outlet.
4. Use the supplied AC power cord with this product.

1. Input voltage level: 100 – 240V, 50-60Hz; 3A
2. Do not put anything on the AC power cord.

1.18.5 INSTALLATION FLOW CHART

Recommended installation steps are as follows:



1.18.6 MACHINE INSTALLATION

Setting Customer Expectations

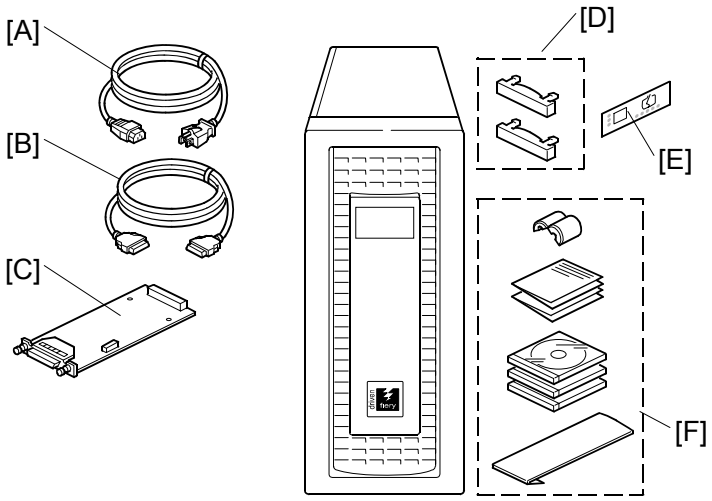
Before installation, the customer should be informed of the following:

- Some nodes on the network may be unavailable for up to one hour.
- The copier may be unavailable for up to one hour
- The site administrator should be available during the installation for network connectivity.
- Equipment downtime and impact on the network can be minimized if the site administrator installs a network connector for the Color Controller and confirms network connection for the Color Controller installation.
- The site administrator should have a networked computer available during the installation. The appropriate software should already be installed. Documentation for the networked computer and the network operating software should be available.
- The site administrator should install the user software shipped with the Color Controller (user documentation is also included) onto the networked PCs and Mac OS computers that will print to the Color Controller.

This guide covers hardware installation and service. It provides general information on connecting the Color Controller to the customer's network. For network setup and configuration information, refer the site administrator to the *Configuration and Setup* manual.

1.18.7 UNPACKING THE COLOR CONTROLLER

1. Open the box and remove the packing material.
2. Remove the contents from the top container. Inspect the contents for visible damage. The top container should include the following items:



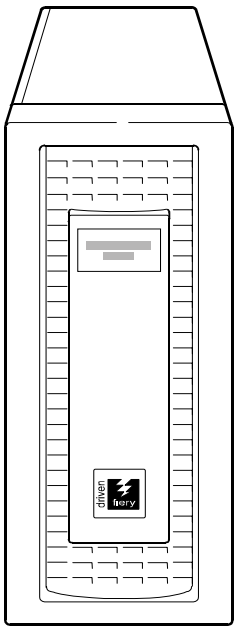
- [A] AC Power Cord
- [B] Interface Cable
- [C] Extension Card
- [D] Fierydriven Keytops
- [E] Fierydriven Logo
- [F] Media Pack

3. Give the Media Pack [F] to the site administrator.
4. Take the remaining components out of the top container.
5. Remove the top container and any packing materials.
6. Carefully lift the Color Controller out of the box.

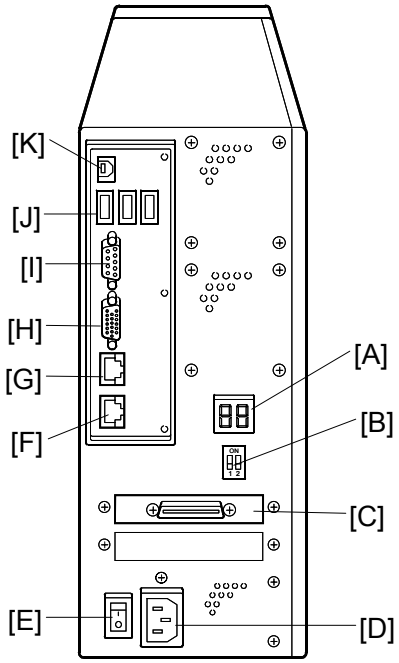
1.18.8 FRONT AND BACK PANELS

After unpacking the Color Controller, familiarize yourself with the front and back panels before you connect the Color Controller to the copier.

- **Front Panel**



- **Back Panel**



A	Diagnostic LEDs (for service use only)
B	Service Switches (for service use only)
C	Video Interface
D	Power Connector
E	Power Switch
F	Not Used
G	RJ-45 Connector (10BaseT/100BaseTX/1000BaseT)
H	Not used (Monitor port)
I	Not used (Serial Port)
J	USB Ports
K	Not used (USB Type B port)

1.18.9 CONNECTING COLOR CONTROLLER TO THE COPIER

NOTE: The installation of the Color Controller has already been done at the factory. You do not need to perform the following installation procedure. This procedure is provided for your information only.

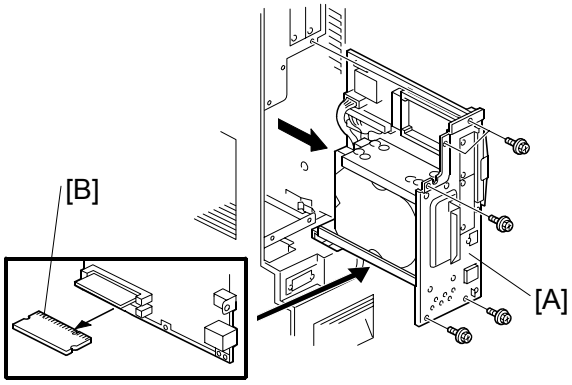
Preparation for Installing the Color Controller E-5000

After you unpack the Color Controller, connect the Color Controller to the copier before you connect it to the network. This is to confirm that there are no problems with the hardware and controller itself.

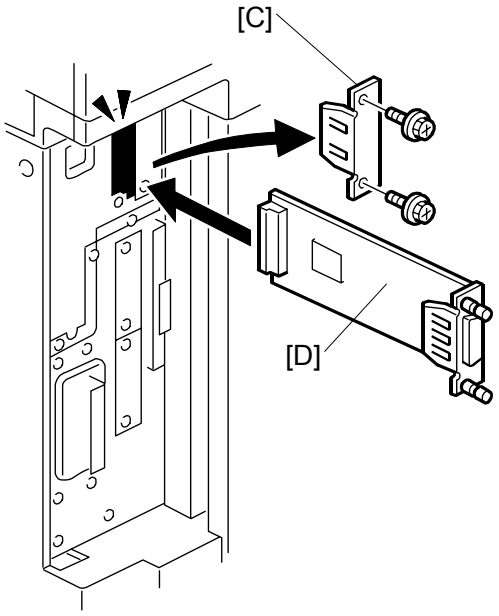
⚠WARNING

Turn the controller main power switch and copier main power switch to off and disconnect the power cords before you do these procedures.

1. Remove the printer and scanner CDs from the copier accessories (B222 or B224).
2. Remove the EULA and Caution sheets from the copier accessories.
3. Remove the controller box [A] (🔩 x 5).
4. Remove the lower memory [B] of the two DIMM memories.
5. Remove all SD slot covers on the left side of the controller box.
6. Remove all SD cards from the three SD slots.



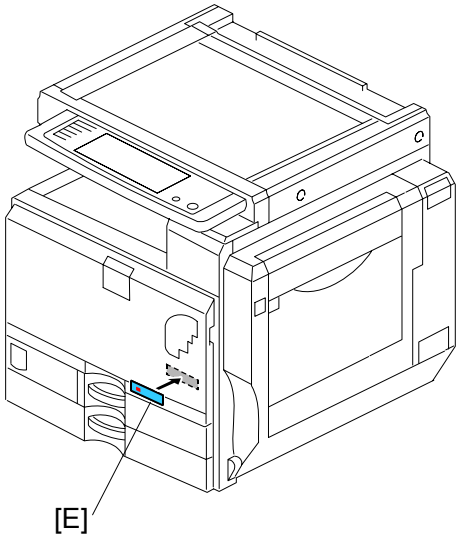
7. Remove the I/F slot cover [C] of Slot C (this is the slot for the external controller) (☞ x 2).
8. Touch a metal surface to remove static charge from your hands before you touch the extension card.
9. Insert the extension card [D] into Slot C and fasten it with the screws (☞ x 2).



NOTE: Make sure that the extension card [D] is inserted straight and firmly.

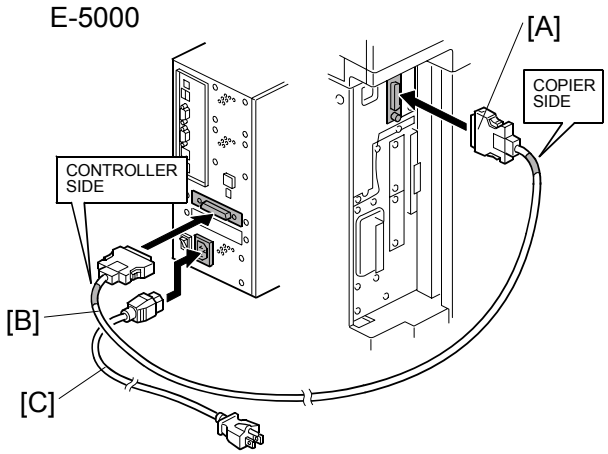
10. Reassemble the I/F slot cover, SD slot covers, controller box cover and rear cover.

11. Remove the Slot Covers of the printer key and scanner key slots on the operation panel of the copier, and then discard them.
12. Install the "Fierydriven" key top in the slot, which was for printer key and the blank key top in the slot, which was for scanner key.
13. Change the setting of SP5-985-001 from "1" (default) to "0".
14. Attach the Fiery Decal [E] to the copier front cover.



NOTE: Refer to *Connecting The Color Controller To The Copier*.

Connecting the Color Controller to the Copier



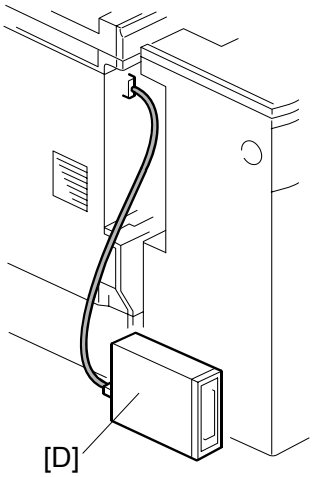
1. Connect the interface cable as follows:
   1) “Copier Side” [A]: Connect this to the extension card.
   2) “Controller Side” [B]: Connect this to the video interface on the rear of the Color Controller.

   NOTE: If the interface cable is connected in the opposite direction, the copier engine will fail to communicate with the controller.
2. Connect the AC power cord [C] to the power connector at the back of the Color Controller.

⚠CAUTION

Power Supply: The socket-outlet shall be installed near the product and shall be easily accessible.

3. Place the E-5000 [D] on the rear side of finisher as shown in the illustration.
4. Make sure to provide with clearance as shown in the left illustration.



1.18.10 STARTUP AND INITIAL SETUP

1. Connect the power cord of the copier to a power outlet and switch on the copier main power.

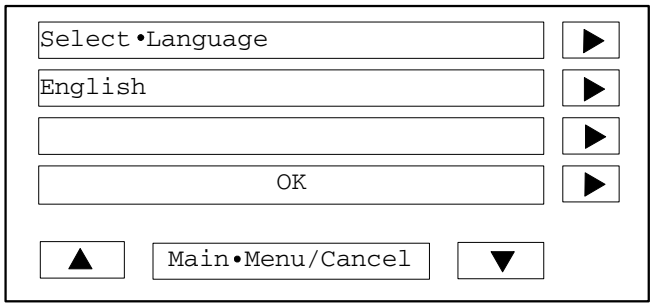
   NOTE: 1) The copier must be turned on before you turn the Color Controller on.
   2) Make sure that all firmware modules for the copier are updated to the newest versions. If they are not, update them before you turn on the Color Controller.

2. Turn the power switch on the Color Controller back panel to ON.

3. Allow startup to proceed without interruption, while you watch the diagnostic LEDs on the back panel of the Color Controller.

4. When the diagnostic LEDs remain at '00', go to the copier operation panel and press the **Fierydriven** key. 'Please wait' may be shown on the copier operation panel.

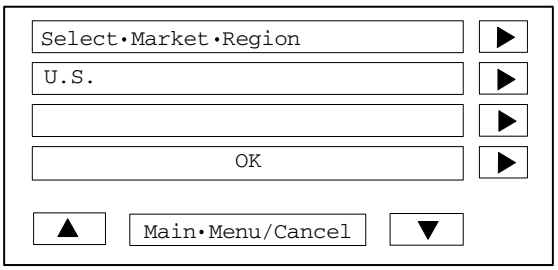
5. The language selection screen is shown. (If this screen is not shown, then press the **Fierydriven** key again.)
   Select the desired language with the down arrow "▼" key and up arrow "▲" key, and touch "**OK**".
   - English
   - Dutch
   - Spanish
   - Italian
   - German
   - French



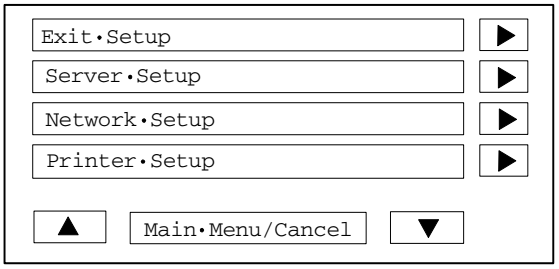
NOTE: 1) Once you have selected a language, you cannot change the language unless you perform "Factory Defaults" (☛ 4.3) or re-install the system software.
2) The default settings for the Color Controller depends on the language selection as follows:

		Selected Language & Market Region	
		English - US	English – UK / Dutch / Spanish / Italian / German/ French
PS Setting	Default Paper Sizes	**US**	**Metric**
PCL Setting	Paper Size	**Letter**	**A4**
	Paper Size for System Pages	**US**	**Metric**

If you selected “**English**” at the language selection screen, you are prompted to select the market region. Select either “**US**” or “**UK**” with the down arrow “▼” key and up arrow “▲” key, then touch “**OK**”.



6. “Please wait…” will be indicated on the Fiery menu screen, then the Fiery menu screen will disappear from the operation panel.
7. Wait for a moment, then press the **Fierydriven** key again on the operation panel. The Setup main menu will appear on the Fiery menu screen.



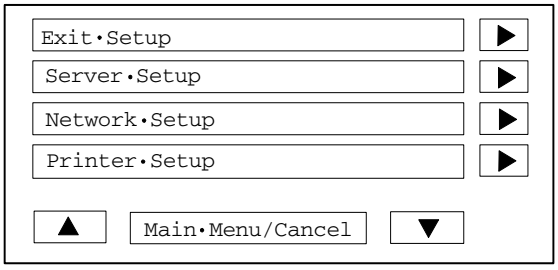
NOTE: The Color Controller setup options should be configured later by the site administrator. However, during the installation, a field technician must check that the Color Controller works correctly with the default configuration.
Therefore, the next steps show the steps for minimum configuration.

8. “Enter Password” message will appear.
   Enter the default administrator password: “**Fiery.1**”.

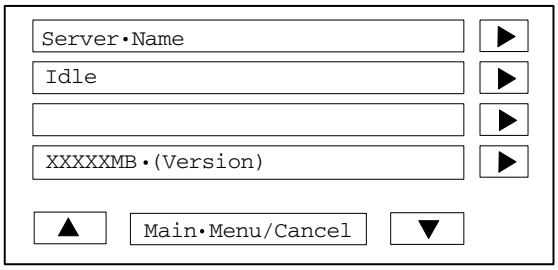
9. Touch the keys in the following order, to configure the minimum setup.

   1) "**Server Setup**" key
   2) "**Main Menu/Cancel**" key
   3) (When you see "Save Changes for Server Setup / YES")
      "**OK**" key
   4) "**Network Setup**" key
   5) "**Exit Network**" key
   6) (When you see "Save Changes for Server Setup/ YES")
      "**OK**" key
   7) "**Printer Setup**" key
   8) "**Main Menu/Cancel**" key
   9) (When you see "Save Changes for Printer Setup / YES")
      "**OK**" key

10. Select "**Exit Setup**".



11. The system will reboot. The **Fierydriven** key will have no effect until after the system reboots. To confirm that the reboot was successful, press the **Fierydriven** key. The Fiery Menu screen will appear on the operation panel of the copier.



1.18.11 VERIFYING THE CONNECTION (LOCAL TEST PRINT)

After you connect the Color Controller to the copier, print the Test Page and the Configuration Page to verify that the connection between the Color Controller and the copier is good.

1. Make sure that the copier is not in use.
2. Check the settings in the following table, and make sure that Letter or A4 paper is loaded in at least one of the paper trays of the copier.

	PS Setting Default Paper Size		PCL Setting Paper Size for System Settings	
Setup Option	**"US"**	**"Metric"**	**"US"**	**"Metric"**
Configuration Page requires…	Letter	A4	-	-
PS Test Page requires…	Letter	A4	-	-
PCL Test Page requires….	-	-	Letter	A4

3. On the operation panel of the copier, press the **Fierydriven** key to access the printer initial menu screen.
4. Access the menu list. To do this, touch the "**Main Menu/Cancel**" key, and select "**Print Pages**".
5. Print the following pages:
   - Configuration Page
   - PS Test Page
   - PCL Test Page
6. Examine the quality of the test pages.
   - All patches should be visible, but it is acceptable if they are very faint in the 5% and 2% ranges.
   - Each patch set should show uniform gradation from patch to patch as the shade lightens from 100% to 0%.
   - Poor image quality may indicate that the copier needs service. For more information, see the documentation provided with the copier.

1.18.12 VERIFYING CONNECTION TO THE NETWORK

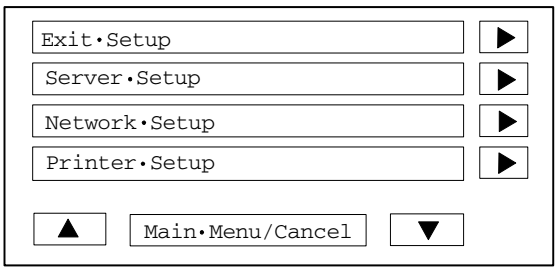
The Color Controller provides twisted pair connectivity to an Ethernet network.

Cable requirements:

- 10BaseT (Ethernet): Unshielded Twisted Pair (UTP), Category 3 or higher
- 100BaseTX (Fast Ethernet): UTP, Category 5 or higher (4-pair/8-wire, short length)
- 1000BaseT (Gigabit Ethernet): UTP, Category 5e or higher (4-pair/8-wire, short-length)

NOTE: If the print engine is 230V, use a shielded network cable.

1. Turn off the Color Controller power before connecting the Color Controller to any network device.
2. Connect the network cable to the RJ-45 connector (upper connector) on the Color Controller. (The lower connector cannot be used.)
3. Make sure that the copier power is switched on.
4. Turn the power switch on the Color Controller back panel to ON.
5. Allow startup to proceed without interruption, while you watch the diagnostic LED on the back panel of the Color Controller. When the diagnostic LEDs show '00', go to the copier operation panel.
6. Configure the Setup options.
   1) Press the **Fierydriven** key on the copier operation panel. ('Please wait' may be shown on the copier operation panel. If the next screen is not shown after 'Please wait', then press the **Fierydriven** key again.)



   2) Touch the "**Main Menu/Cancel**" key.
   3) Touch the down arrow "▼" key.
   4) Select "**Run Setup**".
   5) Touch "**OK**".
   6) Wait for a while and then press the **Fierydriven** key again.
   7) Wait until the setup main screen appears.
   8) Ask the site administrator to configure the Setup options.

NOTE: It is the site administrator's responsibility to configure the correct setup options for the network and user environment. The default settings in the setup may be adequate, but they may not be optimal for the user's environment. Refer the site administrator to the Configuration and Setup manual for setup information.

7. After configuring the Setup options, verify the network connection.
   Ask the site administrator to install the printer driver on a client PC, and to make a test print from that PC.

1.18.13 INSTALLING OPTIONAL FEATURES

Overview

The system software for the Color Controller contains the following optional features:

- EFI Hot Folders
- EFI Auto Trap
- EFI Spot On

Initially, the above three optional functions cannot be used. When the customer purchases these options, a hardware USB dongle which includes a license for the optional feature will be provided.

After the license for the feature is transferred to the Color Controller, the dongle will be locked to that particular Color Controller (a unique value will be written to the dongle).

- To transfer the license from the dongle to the Color Controller, you turn off the Color Controller power, connect the dongle, turn on the Color Controller power, wait for the Color Controller to get to the idle condition, then remove the dongle. The feature is now activated. There is a detailed procedure on the next page.

After this, the same dongle cannot be used on another Color Controller, unless the license is first removed from the original Color Controller using that dongle. (You must use the same dongle.)

- To remove the license from the Color Controller, do exactly the same procedure that you use when you transfer the license from the dongle to the Color Controller. This deactivates the feature.

When the feature is removed from the original Color Controller, the unique value will be removed from the dongle. The dongle can now be used on another Color Controller.

If a dongle that has already a unique value (had its unit ID locked to a Color Controller) is inserted into another Color Controller unit, the dongle will have no effect.

The number of times the license can be removed from the Color Controller is limited as shown in the table below. (Activate 4 times and deactivate 3 times.) When this limit is reached, the dongle can no longer be used to remove the license, so the license will stay on the Color Controller. If a dongle is inserted to remove a feature but the limit has been reached, there will be no effect.

Color Controller **Power Turned On (or** Color Controller **Rebooted) with Dongle Connected**	**Activates/Deactivates the feature on the** Color Controller	**License Transferred to**
1st time	Activates	Color Controller
2nd time	Deactivates	Original Dongle
3rd time	Activates	Color Controller
4th time	Deactivates	Original Dongle
5th time	Activates	Color Controller
6th time	Deactivates	Original Dongle
7th time	Activates	Color Controller
8th time and after	No effect	No effect

Activate / Deactivate An Optional Feature Using A Dongle

The optional feature dongle can be used to either activate or deactivate a feature. The operation for both of these procedures is exactly the same, and the successful activation or deactivation can be confirmed by printing the configuration page.

The purpose of the ability to remove the license (deactivation) is to handle cases where the license was accidentally installed on the wrong Color Controller unit.

Immediately after the Color Controller main power is turned on or the Color Controller is rebooted, the Color Controller checks for the presence of the feature activation dongle.

1. Print the configuration sheet of the Color Controller. (☛ G878 SM Section 2.3)
2. With the configuration sheet, check the condition of the optional feature that you will activate/deactivate. (If activated, the option name will appear on the configuration sheet.)

3. Shut down the Color Controller and turn the power of the Color Controller OFF. (☛ G878 SM Section 2.1.3)
4. Insert the dongle in the left USB port.
   (There are three USB ports in the back panel of the Color Controller. Insert the dongle to the left USB port.)
5. Make sure that the copier main power is already ON.
6. Turn the power switch of the Color Controller ON.
7. Wait for the Color Controller to come to the idle status.
   During this startup sequence, the optional feature will be activated/deactivated.

   NOTE: 1) If the Color Controller already has a particular feature activated, and a new dongle for the same feature is inserted, the license will not be affected and the new dongle will remain active.
   2) If the Color Controller already has a particular feature activated and the matching dongle is inserted, the feature will be removed, and the dongle can then be re-used on another Color Controller unit.

8. Remove the dongle from the USB port.

⚠CAUTION

Do not forget to remove the dongle at this time.

If you leave the dongle in the USB port and the Color Controller main power is restarted or the Color Controller is rebooted, then the condition of the optional feature will be reversed. (For example, if you wanted to activate the feature, it is now deactivated.) The only exception is that after you activate a feature for the 4th time, it cannot be deactivated.

9. Print a configuration sheet (☛ G878 SM Section 2.1.3).
10. On the configuration sheet, check if the desired optional feature is activated/deactivated. (If activated, the option name will appear on the configuration sheet.)

If you have activated an optional feature, keep the configuration sheet. You may need it later for troubleshooting purposes, as shown in the following caution.

⚠CAUTION

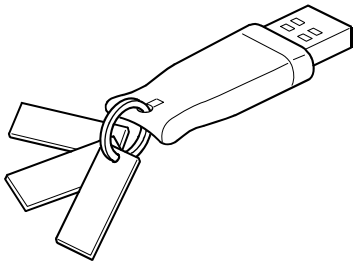
After an optional feature has been activated, the optional feature license information is kept inside the ACT chip on the video board of the Color Controller.

If the ACT chip becomes defective, the following are needed as evidence in order to get a new ACT chip and optional feature dongle:

- **The defective ACT chip**
- **The configuration sheet that shows that the defective ACT chip had the optional feature license installed.**

Therefore, always print a configuration sheet and keep it when you activate a new optional feature on the Color Controller.

11. 3 tags with 6 labels are attached to each optional feature dongle.



a) Optional Feature Name: **Printed**
b) Optional dongle serial number: **Printed**
c) Installed Controller Model Name: **Blank**
d) Installed Controller Serial Number: **Blank**
e) 4 check boxes for Activation: **Not checked**
f) 3 check boxes for Deactivation: **Not checked**

For the labels c) to f), you can fill in the related information or check the boxes, if you want to keep a record of the status of each dongle

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE

SECTION 2 PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE REVISION HISTORY		
Page	**Date**	**Added/Updated/New**
		None

2. PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE

2.1 SETTINGS

2.1.1 BEFORE REMOVING THE OLD PM PARTS

1. **Enter the SP mode.**
2. **Output the SMC logging data with SP5-990-004.**
3. **Set the following SPs to "1" before you turn the power off. Then, the machine will reset the PM counters automatically. In the case of developer, the developer initialization will also be done automatically.**
4. **Exit the SP mode.**

Item	SP
Developer	Black: 3902-005 Yellow: 3902-006 Cyan: 3902-007 Magenta: 3902-008
Drum Unit	Black: 3902-009 Yellow: 3902-010 Cyan: 3902-011 Magenta: 3902-012
Fusing Unit Parts (not necessary for complete fusing units; see below)	3902-014
Image Transfer Belt Cleaning Unit	3902-015
Paper Transfer Unit	3902-016
Toner Collection Bottle (if not full or near-full)	3902-017

For the following units, there is a new unit detection mechanism. It is not necessary to reset PM counters.

Settings

- PCU
- Development unit
- Complete fusing unit
- Toner Collection Bottle (if full or near-full)

2.1.2 AFTER INSTALLING THE NEW PM PARTS

1. **Turn on the main power switch.**
2. **Output the SMC logging data with SP5-990-004 and check the counter values.**
3. **Make sure that the PM counters for the replaced units are "0" with SP7-803. If the PM counter for a unit was not reset, then reset that counter with SP 7-804.**
4. **Make sure that the exchange counter counts up with SP7-853.**
5. **Make sure that the counters for the previous units (SP7-906) on the new SMC logging data list (from step 2 above) are equal to the counters (SP7-803) for these units on the previous SMC logging data list (the list that was output in the "Before removing the old parts" section).**
6. **Make sure that the unit replacement date is updated with SP7-950.**

2.1.3 PREPARATION BEFORE OPERATION CHECK

1. **Clean the exposure glasses (for DF and book scanning).**
2. **Enter the user tools mode.**
3. **Do the "Automatic Color Calibration "(ACC) for the copier mode & printer mode as follows:**
    1. Print the ACC test pattern (User Tools > Maintenance > ACC > Start).
    2. Put the printout on the exposure glass.
    3. Put 10 sheets of white paper on the test chart. This ensures the precise ACC adjustment.
    4. Close the ARDF or the platen cover.
    5. Press "Start Scanning" on the LCD. Then, the machine starts the ACC.
4. **Exit the User Tools mode, and then enter the SP mode.**
5. **Do the "Forced line position adjustment" as follows.**
    1. First do SP2-111-3 (Mode c).
    2. Then do SP2-111-1 (Mode a).
    3. To check if SP 2-111-1 was successful, watch the screen during the process. A message is displayed at the end. Also, you can check the result with SP 2-194-10 to -12.

6. Exit the SP mode.

2.1.4 OPERATION CHECK

Check if the sample image has been copied normally.

2.2 MAINTENANCE TABLES

2.2.1 PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE TABLES

Chart: A4 (LT)/5%

Mode: 2 copies/original (prints/job)

Environment: Normal temperature and humidity

Yield may change depending on circumstances and print conditions.

Symbol keys: C: Clean, R: Replace, L: Lubricant, I: Inspect

Mainframe

Item	80K	160K	240K	320K	EM	Remarks
Scanner						
Reflector		C				Optics cloth
1st/2nd/3rd mirrors		C				Optics cloth
Front and Rear Rails		C				Dry cloth
Exposure Glass		C			C	Dry cloth; alcohol
ADF Exposure Glass		C			C	Dry cloth; alcohol
Exposure Lamp					R	
APS Sensor		C				Dry cloth
PCU						
Dev. Unit–K				R		
Drum Unit-K, C, M, Y	R					
Developer-K, C, M, Y		R				

Item	80K	160K	240K	320K	EM	Remarks
Dev. Unit Entrance Mylar-K, C, M, Y	C					Vacuum
Transfer						
Image transfer belt-cleaning unit		R				
Paper transfer roller unit			R			
Toner Collection Bottle		R				
ID Sensor				C		Dry cloth
Fusing						
Fusing unit					R	
Fusing Belt		R				
Pressure Roller		R/L				S552R
-Bearing		R				
Fusing Roller		R/L				S552R
-Bearing		R				
Heating Roller		R				
-Insulating Bushing		R				
Tension Roller		R				
-Bushing		R				
Lubricant Roller		R				
-Bearing-Front		R				
-Bearing-Rear		R				
Cleaning Roller		R				

Maintenance Tables

Item	80K	160K	240K	320K	EM	Remarks
Ferrite Roller Gear		R				
Idle Gear		R				
One-way Clutch Gear		R				
Thermopile			C			Dry cloth
Themistor (Fusing Roller)		C				Dry cloth*[1]
Themistor (Pressure Roller)		C				Dry cloth
Guide Plate (Entrance)		C				Dry cloth; alcohol
Guide Plate (Exit)		C				Dry cloth; alcohol
Stripper Plate		C				Dry cloth; alcohol
Paper Path						
Registration Roller					C	Damp cloth
Registration Sensor					C	Dry cloth
Vertical Transport Roller					C	Damp cloth
Vertical Transport Sensor					C	Dry cloth
Paper Feed Sensor					C	Dry cloth
Pick-up Roller					C	Dry cloth
Feed Roller					C	Dry cloth
Separation Roller					C	Dry cloth

Item	80K	160K	240K	320K	EM	Remarks
Fusing Entrance Sensor					C	Dry cloth
Fusing Exit Sensor					C	Dry cloth
Paper Dust Container					C	
Duplex Unit						
Inverter Roller					C	Dry cloth
Transport Roller					C	Dry cloth
Inverter Sensor					C	Blower brush
Duplex Exit Sensor					C	
Miscellaneous						
Dust Filter		R				
Ozone Filter		R				

*1: Clean this thermistor only when it gets paper dust.

ARDF

Item	120K	EM	Remarks
Pick-up Roller	R		Damp cloth; alcohol
Feed Belt	R		Damp cloth; alcohol
Separation Roller	R		Damp cloth; alcohol
Sensors		C	Blower brush
Platen Sheet Cover		C	Damp cloth; alcohol (Replace if required.)

Item	120K	EM	Remarks
White Plate		C	Dry or damp cloth
Drive Gear		L	Grease G501
Transport Roller		C	Damp cloth; alcohol
Exit Roller		C	Damp cloth; alcohol
Inverter Roller		C	Damp cloth; alcohol
Idle Rollers		C	Damp cloth; alcohol

Two-tray Paper Feed Unit

Item	EM	Remarks
Relay Roller	C	Damp cloth
Bottom Plate Pad	C	Damp cloth

LCT

Item	EM	Remarks
Relay Roller	C	Damp cloth
Bottom Plate Pad	C	Damp cloth

2000/3000-Sheet (Booklet) Finisher

Items	EM	Remarks
Rollers	C	Damp cloth
Discharge Brush	C	Dry cloth

Sensors	C	Blower brush

2000/3000-Sheet (Booklet) Finisher Punch Kit

Items	EM	Remarks
Punch Chads	C	Discard chads.

1000-Sheet Finisher

Items	EM	Remarks
Rollers	C	Damp cloth
Discharge Brush	C	Dry cloth
Sensors	C	Blower brush

2.2.2 OTHERS IN MAINFRAME

Item	320K	360K	Remarks
Dev. Unit–C, M, Y	R		✉*1
Image Transfer Belt Unit		R	✉*2

*1: The color development units are considered EM parts because the actual life time of the color development units depends on the usage of color ratio.

*2: The image transfer belt unit is considered an EM part because its expected lifetime is relatively long.

REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

SECTION 3 REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT REVISION HISTORY		
Page	**Date**	**Added/Updated/New**
		None

3. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

3.1 BEFOREHAND

⚠CAUTION

- Before installing options, please do the following:
  1. If there is a fax unit in the machine, print out all messages stored in the memory, the lists of user-programmed items, and the system parameter list.
  2. If there are printer jobs in the machine, print out all jobs in the printer buffer.
  3. Turn off the main switch and disconnect the power cord, the telephone line, and the network cable.

3.2 SPECIAL TOOLS

Part Number	Description	Q'ty
B645 5010	SD Card	1
B645 6705	PCMCIA Card Adapter	1
B645 6820	USB Reader/Writer	1
VSSM9000	Digital Multimeter – FLUKE87	1
G021 9350	Loop-back Connector – Parallel ***NOTE**	1
C401 9503	20X Magnification Scope	1
A257 9300	Grease Barrierta – S552R	1
5203 9502	Silicone Grease G-501	1
A092 9503	C4 Color Test Chart (3 pcs/set)	1
A006 9104	Scanner Positioning Pin (4 pcs/set)	1
B679 5100	Plug - IEEE1284 Type C	1
B132 9700	Lubricant Powder	1

Note

- The "Loop-back Connector–Parallel" requires the "Plug-IEEE1284 Type C", and the optional IEEE1284 interface option must also be installed.

3.3 IMAGE ADJUSTMENT

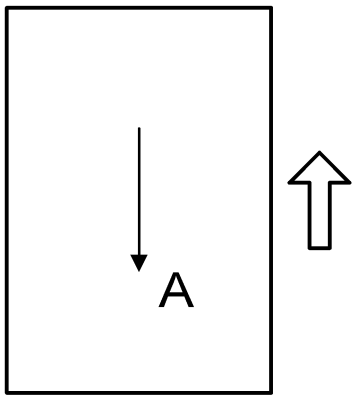
3.3.1 SCANNING

Check the printing registration/side-to-side adjustment and the blank margin adjustment before you do the following scanner adjustments.

Note

- Use S-2-1 test chart to do the following adjustments.

Scanner sub-scan magnification



A: Sub-scan magnification

1. **Put the test chart on the exposure glass. Then make a copy from one of the feed stations.**
2. **Check the magnification ratio. Adjust with SP4-008 if necessary.**
   Standard: ±1.0%.

Scanner leading edge and side-to-side registration

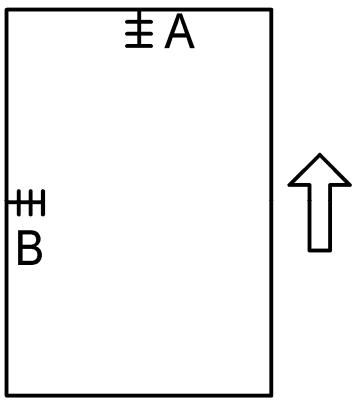


Image Adjustment

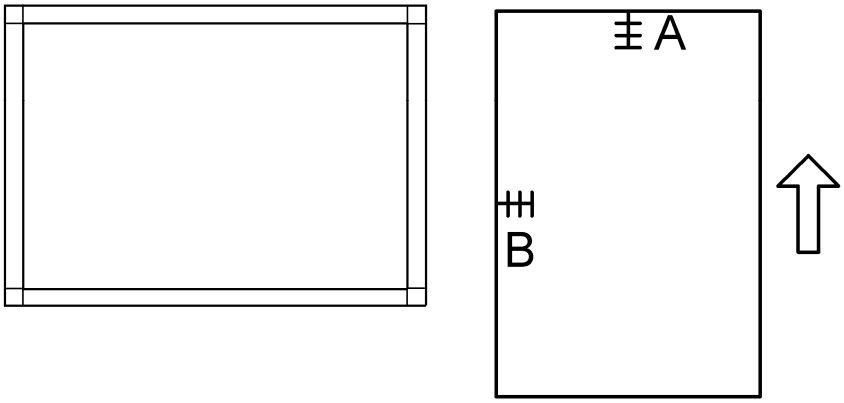
A: Leading Edge Registration

1. **Put the test chart on the exposure glass. Then make a copy from one of the feed stations.**
2. **Check the leading edge and side-to-side registration. Adjust the following SP modes if necessary. Standard: 0 ± 2mm for the leading edge registration, 0 ± 2.5mm for the side-to-side registration.**

	SP mode
Leading Edge Registration	SP4-010-001
Side-to-Side Registration	SP4-011-001

3.3.2 ARDF

ARDF side-to-side, leading edge registration and trailing edge



A: Leading edge registration

Use A3/DLT paper to make a temporary test chart as shown above.

1. **Put the temporary test chart on the ARDF. Then make a copy from one of the feed stations.**
2. **Check the registration. Check the leading edge and side-to-side registration. Adjust the following SP modes if necessary. Standard: 4.2 ± 2 mm for the leading edge registration, 2 ± 1 mm for the side-to-side registration. Use the following SP modes to adjust if necessary.**

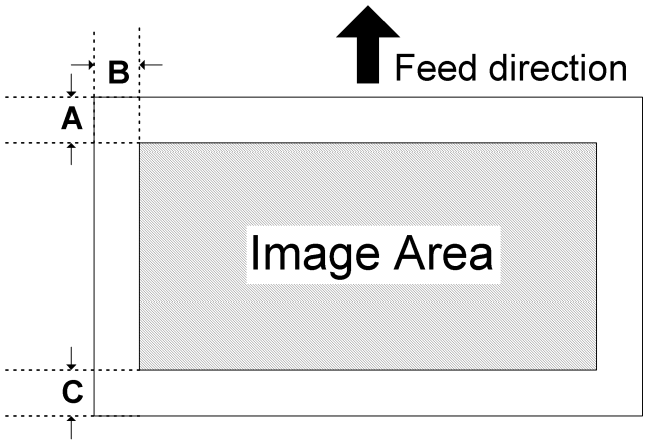
SP Code	What It Does	Adjustment Range
SP6-006-001	Side-to-Side Registration	± 3.0 mm
SP6-006-003	Leading Edge Registration	± 5.0 mm
SP6-006-005	Buckle: Duplex Front	± 3.0 mm
SP6-006-006	Buckle: Duplex Rear	± 2.5 mm
SP6-006-007	Rear Edge Erase (Trailing Edge)	± 10.0 mm

ARDF sub-scan magnification

1. **Put the temporary test chart on the ARDF. Then make a copy from one of the feed stations.**
2. **Check the magnification ratio. Adjust with SP6-017-001 if necessary.**
   Standard: ±1.0%
   Reduction mode: ±1.0%
   Enlargement mode: ±1.0%

3.3.3 REGISTRATION

Image Area



A = C = 4.2mm (1.6"), B = 2.0mm

Make sure that the registration is adjusted within the adjustment standard range as shown below.

Leading Edge

Adjusts the leading edge registration for each paper type and process line speed.

Side to Side

Adjusts the side-to-side registration for each paper feed station. Use SP mode (SP1-002) to adjust the side-to-side registration for the optional paper feed unit, LCT, and duplex unit.

Adjustment Standard

- Leading edge (sub-scan direction): 4.2 ± 2 mm
- Side to side (main-scan direction): 2 ± 1 mm

Paper Registration Standard

The registration in both main- and sub-scan directions can change within the following tolerance.

- Sub-scan direction: 0 ± 9 mm
- Main-scan direction: 0 ± 4 mm

Adjustment Procedure

1. **Enter SP2-109-003.**
2. **Print out the test pattern (14: 1-dot trimming pattern) with SP2-109-003.**

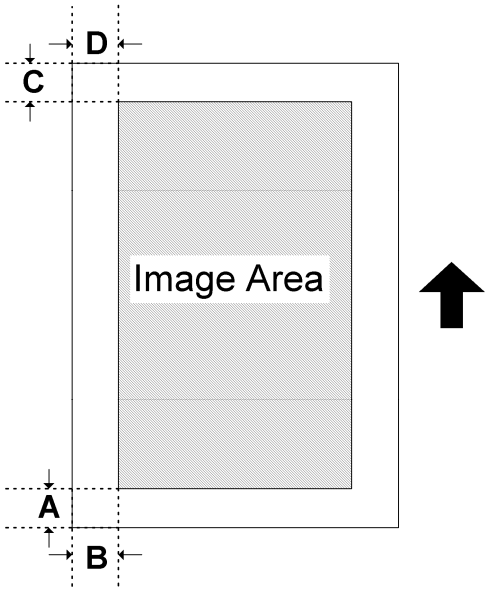
   Note

   - Registration can change slightly as shown on the previous page. Print some pages of the 1-dot trimming pattern for step 3 and 4. Then average the leading edge and side-to-side registration values, and adjust each SP mode.
3. **Do the leading edge registration adjustment.**
   1. Check the leading edge registration and adjust it with SP1-001.
   2. Select the adjustment conditions (paper type and process line speed).
   3. Input the value. Then press the # key.
   4. Generate a trim pattern to check the leading edge adjustment.
4. **Do the side-to-side registration adjustment.**
   1. Check the side-to-side registration and adjust it with SP1-002.
   2. Select the adjustment conditions (paper feed station).
   3. Input the value. Then press the # key.
   4. Generate a trim pattern to check the leading edge adjustment.

3.3.4 ERASE MARGIN ADJUSTMENT

Note

- Adjust the erase margin C and D only if the registration (main scan and sub scan) cannot be adjusted within the standard values. Do the registration adjustment after adjusting the erase margin C and D, and then adjust the erase margin A and B.



1. **Enter SP2-109-003.**
2. **Print out the test pattern (14: 1-dot trimming pattern) with SP2-109-003.**
3. **Check the erase margin A and B. Adjust them with SP2-103-001 to -010 if necessary.**
   Leading edge: 1.5 to 5.0 mm,
   Side-to-side: 0.5 to 4.0 mm,
   Trailing edge: 0.5 to 0.6 mm

3.3.5 COLOR REGISTRATION

Line Position Adjustment

The automatic line position adjustment usually is done for a specified condition to get the best color prints.

Do the following if color registration shifts:

- Do “Auto Color Registration” as follows to do the forced line position adjustment.
  1. First do SP2-111-3.
  2. Then do SP2-111-1.

To check if SP 2-111-1 was successful, watch the screen during the process. A message is displayed at the end. Also, you can check the result with SP 2-194-10 to -12.

- You should also do the line position adjustment at these times:
  - After you transport or move the machine (you should do the forced line position adjustment if you install the machine at the user location.) if the machine is pre-installed at the workshop and moved to the user location,
  - When you open the drum positioning plate
  - When you remove or replace the motors, clutches, and/or gears related to the drum/development/transfer sections
  - When you remove or replace the image transfer belt, image transfer belt unit or laser optical housing unit

3.3.6 PRINTER GAMMA CORRECTION

Note

- The ACC (Auto Color Calibration) is usually sufficient to adjust the color balance to get the best print output. You only need the printer gamma correction to fine-tune to meet user requirements.

Use SP modes if you want to modify the printer gamma curve created with ACC. You can adjust the gamma data for the following:

- Highlight
- Middle
- Shadow areas
- IDmax.

The adjustable range is from 0 to 30 (31 steps).

Copy Mode

- KCMY Color Balance Adjustment -

The adjustment uses only “Offset” values.

Note

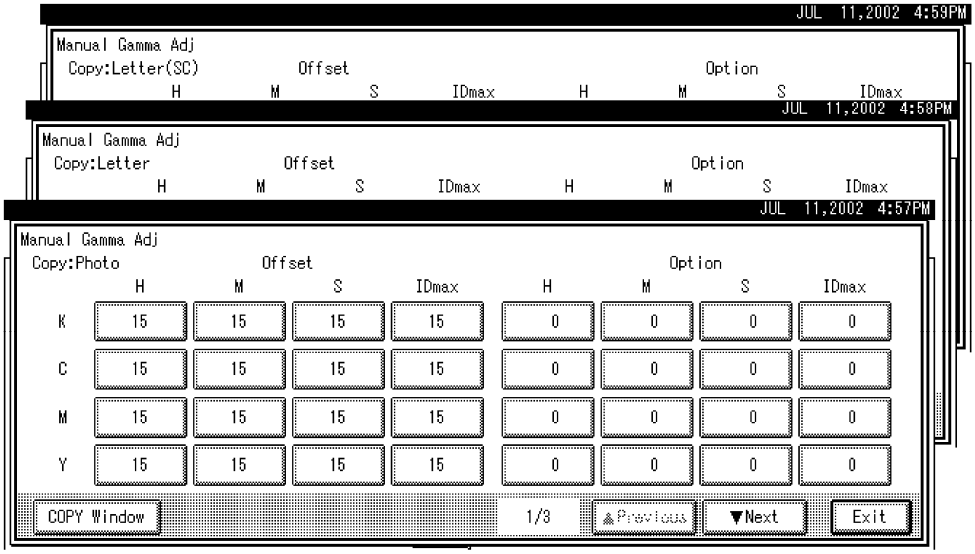
- Never change “Option” values (default value is 0).

Highlight (Low ID)	Levels 2 through 5 in the C4 chart 10-level scale
Middle (Middle ID)	Levels 3 through 7 in the C4 chart 10-level scale

Shadow (High ID)	Levels 6 through 9 in the C4 chart 10-level scale
ID max	Level 10 in the C4 chart 10-level scale (affects the entire image density.)
Offset	The higher the number in the range associated with the low ID, middle ID, high ID, and ID max, the greater the density.

There are four adjustable modes (can be adjusted with SP4-918-009):

- Copy Photo mode
- Copy Letter mode
- Copy Letter (Single Color) mode
- Copy Photo (Single Color) mode



- Adjustment Procedure -

1. **Copy the C-4 chart in the mode that you want to adjust.**
2. **Enter the SP mode.**
3. **Select "Copy SP."**
4. **Select SP4-918-009.**
5. **Adjust the offset values until the copy quality conforms to the standard (☒ the table below).**

Note

- 1. Never change "Option" value (default value is "0").
- 2. Adjust the density in this order: "ID Max," "Middle," "Shadow," "Highlight."

- Photo Mode, Full Color -

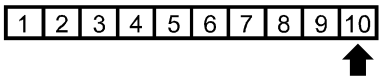
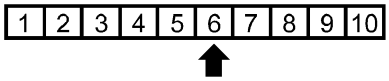
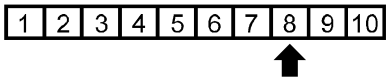
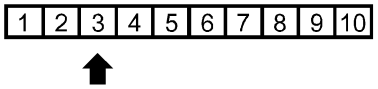
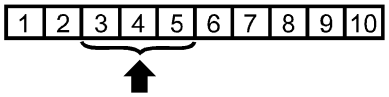
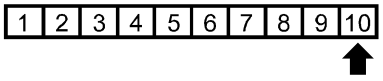
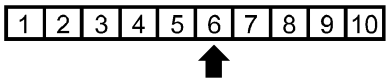
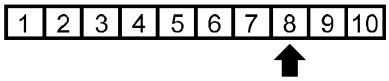
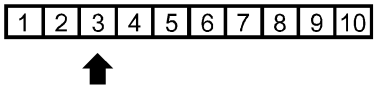
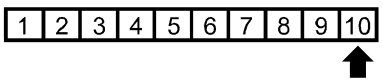
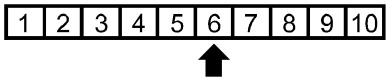
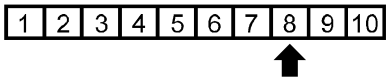
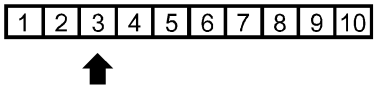
	Item to Adjust	Level on the C-4 chart	Adjustment Standard
1	ID max: (K, C, M, and Y)		Adjust the offset value so that the density of level 10 matches that of level 10 on the C-4 chart.
2	Middle (Middle ID) (K, C, M, and Y)		Adjust the offset value so that the density of level 6 matches that of level 6 on the C-4 chart.
3	Shadow (High ID) (K, C, M, and Y)		Adjust the offset value so that the density of level 8 matches that of level 8 on the C-4 chart.
4	Highlight (Low ID) (K, C, M, and Y)		Adjust the offset value so that dirty background does not show on the copy and the density of level 3 is slightly lighter than that of level 3 on the C-4 chart.
5	K Highlight (Low ID) (C,M, and Y) <on the full color copy>		Adjust the offset value so that the color balance of black scale levels 3 through 5 in the copy is seen as gray (no C, M, or Y should be visible). If the black scale contains C, M, or Y, do steps 1 to 4 again.

Photo Mode, Single Color -

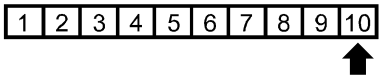
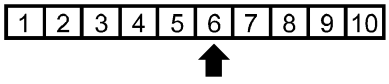
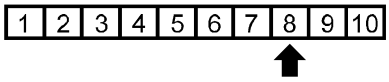
	Item to Adjust	Level on the C-4 chart	Adjustment Standard
1	ID max: (K)		Adjust the offset value so that the density of level 10 matches that of level 10 on the C-4 chart.
2	Middle (Middle ID) (K)		Adjust the offset value so that the density of level 6 matches that of level 6 on the C-4 chart.
3	Shadow (High ID) (K)		Adjust the offset value so that the density of level 8 matches that of level 8 on the C-4 chart.
4	Highlight (Low ID) (K)		Adjust the offset value so that dirty background does not show on the copy and the density of level 3 is slightly lighter than that of level 3 on the C-4 chart.

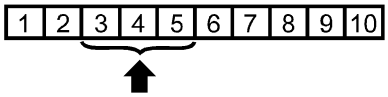
- Text (Letter) Mode, Full Color -

	Item to Adjust	Level on the C-4 chart (K)	Adjustment Standard
1	ID max: (K, C, M, and Y)		Adjust the offset value so that the density of level 10 matches that of level 10 on the C-4 chart.

2	Middle (Middle ID) (K, C, M, and Y)		Adjust the offset value so that the density of level 6 matches that of level 6 on the C-4 chart.
3	Shadow (High ID) (K, C, M, and Y)		Adjust the offset value so that the density of level 8 matches that of level 8 on the C-4 chart.
4	Highlight (Low ID) (K, C, M, and Y)		Adjust the offset value so that dirty background does not show on the copy and the density of level 3 is slightly lighter than that of level 3 on the C-4 chart.

- Text (Letter) Mode, Single Color -

	Item to Adjust	**Level on the C-4 chart (K)**	**Adjustment Standard**
1	ID max: (K)		Adjust the offset value so that the density of level 10 matches that of level 10 on the C-4 chart.
2	Middle (Middle ID) (K)		Adjust the offset value so that the density of level 6 matches that of level 6 on the C-4 chart.
3	Shadow (High ID) (K)		Adjust the offset value so that the density of level 8 matches that of level 8 on the C-4 chart.

4	Highlight (Low ID) (K)		Adjust the offset value so that dirty background does not show on the copy and the density of level 3 is slightly lighter than that of level 3 on the C-4 chart.

Note

- Text parts of the test pattern cannot be printed clearly after you adjust “shadow” as shown above. At this time, check if the 5 line/mm pattern at each corner is printed clearly. If it is not, adjust the offset value of “shadow” again until it is.

Printer Mode

There are six adjustable modes (select these modes with printer SP1-102-001):

- 2400 x 600 photo mode
- 2400 x 600 text mode
- 1800 x 600 photo mode
- 1800 x 600 text mode
- 600 x 600 photo mode
- 600 x 600 text mode

	K	C	M	Y
Highlight	SP1-104-1	SP1-104-21	SP1-104-41	SP1-104-61
Shadow	SP1-104-2	SP1-104-22	SP1-104-42	SP1-104-62
Middle	SP1-104-3	SP1-104-23	SP1-104-43	SP1-104-63
IDmax	SP1-104-4	SP1-104-24	SP1-104-44	SP1-104-64

- Adjustment Procedure -

1. **Do ACC for the printer mode. (Refer to operating instructions – Troubleshooting Manual;Chapter 6 – Maintenance-Auto Color Calbration)**
2. **Turn the main power off and on.**
3. **Enter SP mode.**
4. **Select “Printer SP”.**
5. **Select SP1-102-001. Then select the necessary print mode to adjust.**
6. **Choose SP1-103-1 to print out a tone control test sheet if you want to examine**

the image quality for these settings.

7. **Adjust the color density with SP1-104. Compare the tone control test sheet with the C4 test chart.**

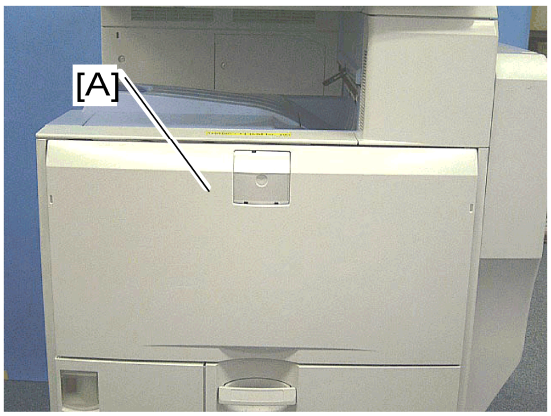
Note

- Adjust the density in this order: “ID Max”, “Shadow”, “Middle”, “Highlight”.

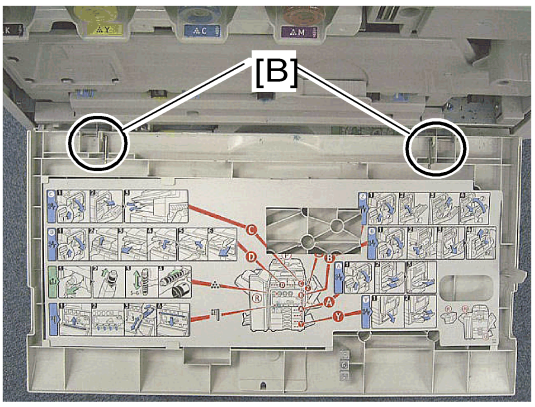
8. **Use SP1-105-001 to keep the adjusted settings.**

3.4 EXTERIOR COVERS

3.4.1 FRONT DOOR

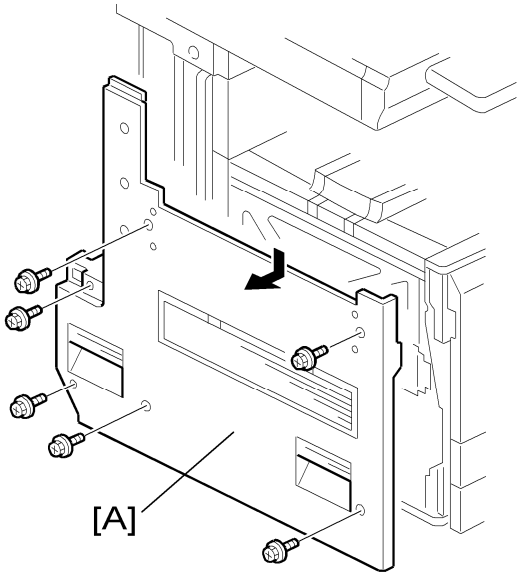


1. **Open the front door [A].**



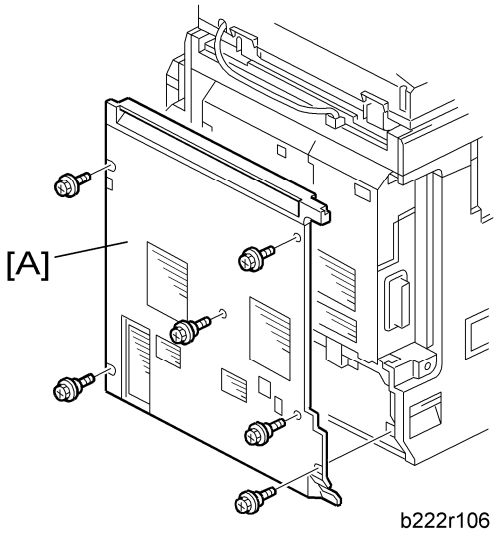
2. **Remove the two pins [B], and then remove the front cover.**

3.4.2 LEFT COVER



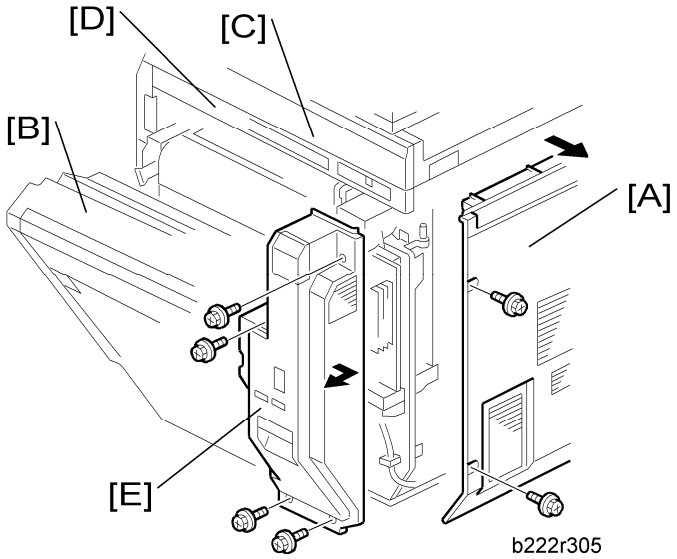
1. **Left cover [A] (🔩 x 6)**

3.4.3 REAR COVER



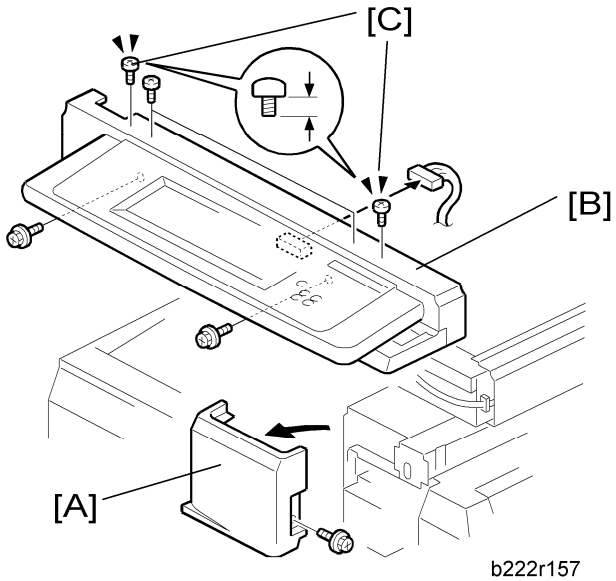
1. **Rear cover [A] (🔩 x 6)**

3.4.4 RIGHT REAR COVER



1. **Rear cover [A] (x 6)**
2. **Open the right door [B].**
3. **Scanner right cover [C] (x 2)**
4. **Right top cover [D] (x 1)**
5. **Right rear cover [E] (x 4)**

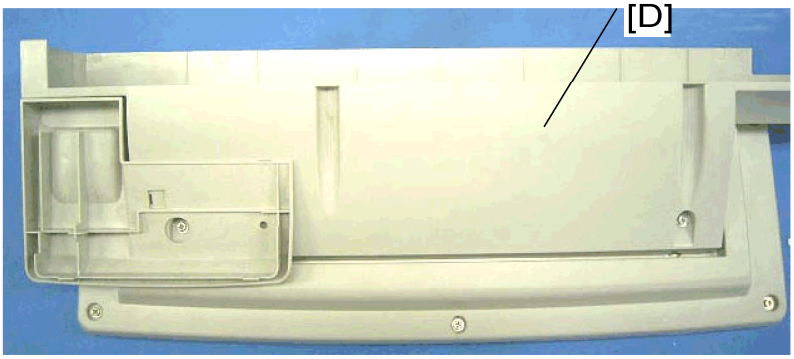
3.4.5 OPERATION PANEL



1. **Open the right door.**
2. **Front right cover [A] (x 1)**
3. **Operation panel with the scanner front cover [B] (x 6, x 1)**

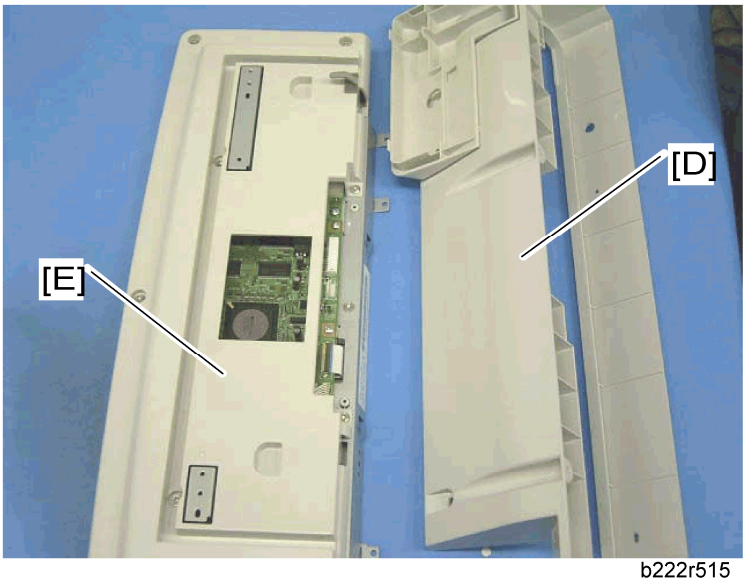
Note

- The two screws [C] are shorter than the other screws installed in the inner two screw holes. Make sure that the two screws [C] are installed in the outer screw holes on the scanner front cover.



b222r514

4. **Scanner front cover [D] (x 2)**

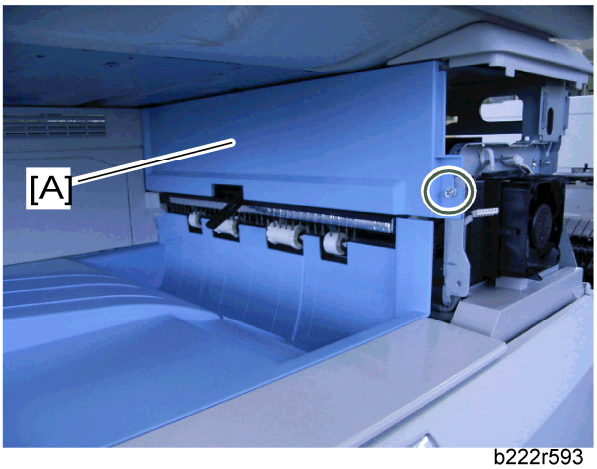


b222r515

5. **Operation panel [E]**

3.4.6 PAPER EXIT COVER

1. **Front right cover (☛3.4.5 “Operation Panel")**

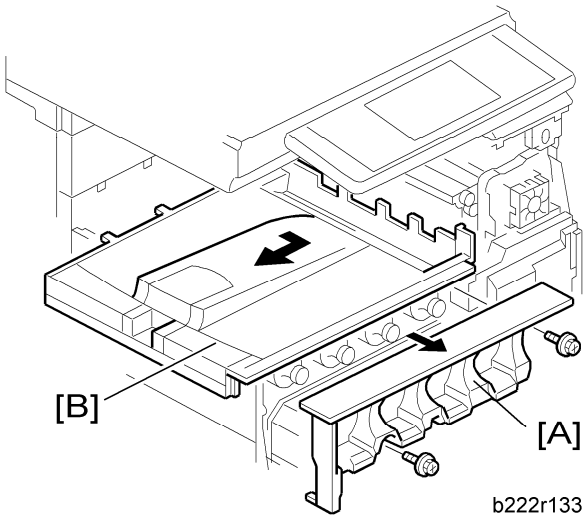


b222r593

2. **Paper exit cover [A] (x 1)**

3.4.7 INNER TRAY

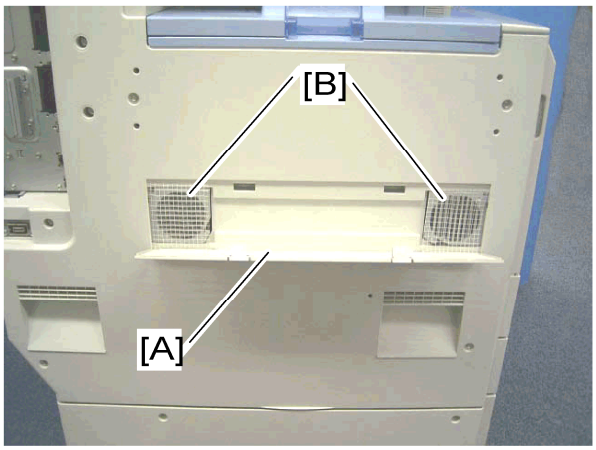
1. **Remove the image transfer belt unit.**
2. **Paper exit cover (3.4.6 "Paper Exit Cover")**
3. **Left cover (3.4.2 "Left Cover")**



b222r133

4. **Toner cartridge cover [A] (x 2)**
5. **Inner tray [B].**

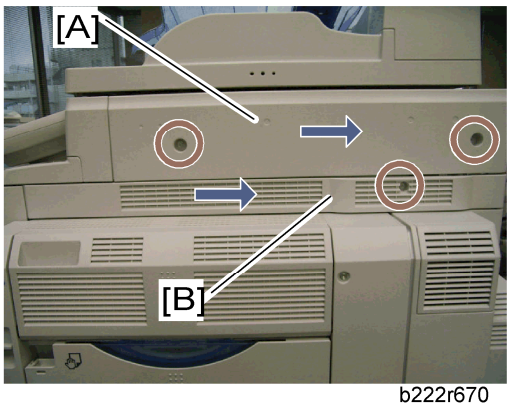
3.4.8 DUST FILTER



1. **Dust filter cover [A]**
2. **Two dust filters [B]**

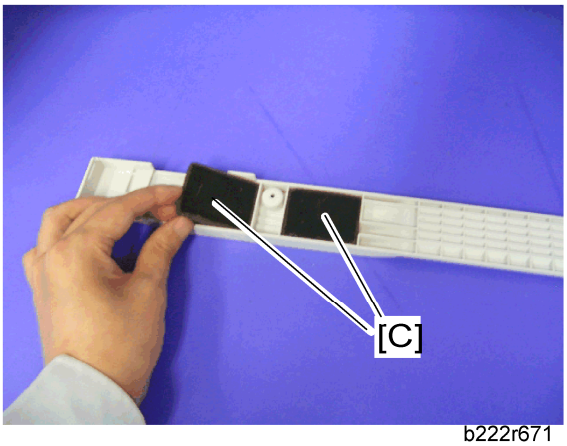
3.4.9 OZONE FILTER

Ozone filters for scanner unit



b222r670

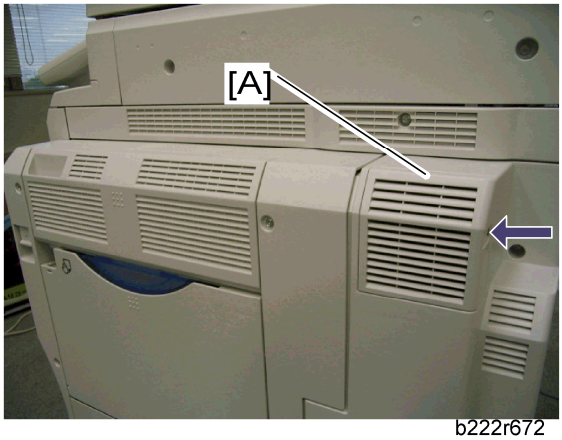
1. **Scanner right cover [A] (x 2)**
2. **Right top cover [B] (x 1)**



b222r671

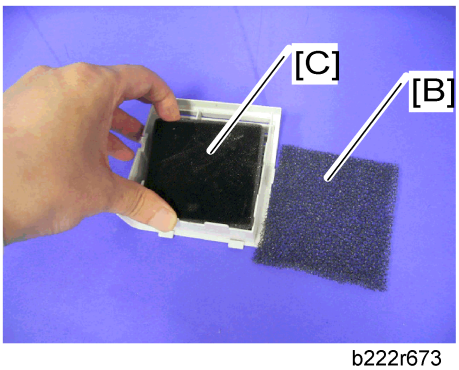
3. **Ozone filters [C] in the right top cover.**

Ozone filter for IH inverter



b222r672

1. **IH inverter fan cover [A] (hook)**

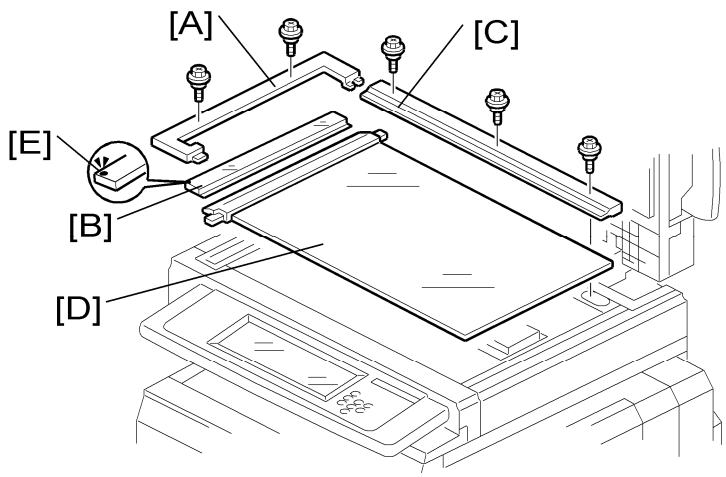


b222r673

2. **Filter [B]**
3. **Ozone filter [C]**

3.5 SCANNER UNIT

3.5.1 EXPOSURE GLASS

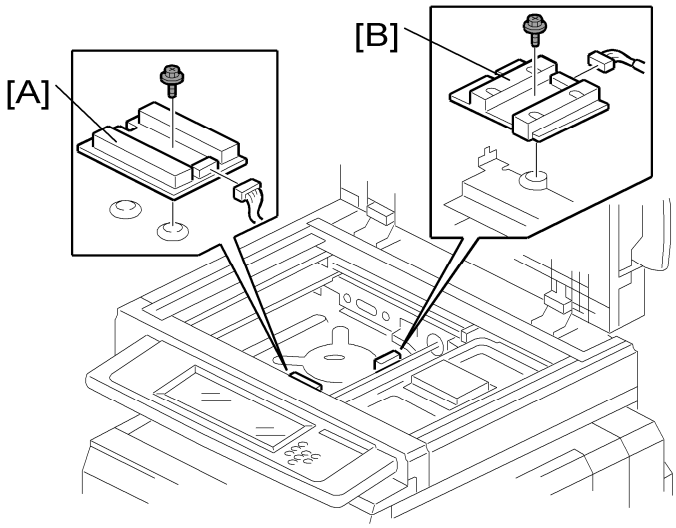


1. **Glass cover [A] (x 2)**
2. **ARDF exposure glass [B]**
3. **Rear scale [C] (x 3)**
4. **Exposure glass with left scale [D]**

Note

- Position the black marker [E] at the front-left corner when you reattach the ARDF exposure glass.

3.5.2 ORIGINAL LENGTH/WIDTH SENSORS



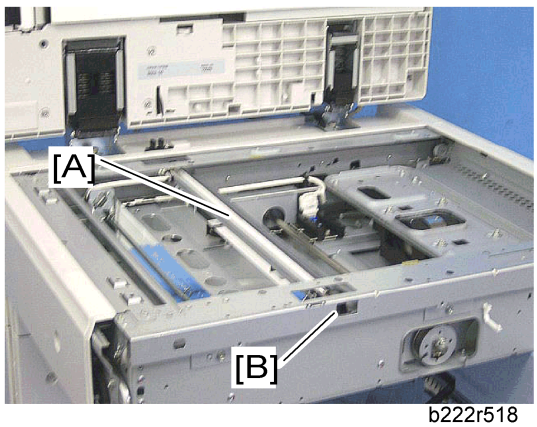
1. **Exposure glass with left scale (☛3.5.1 "Exposure Glass")**
2. **Original width sensors [A] (x 1, x1)**
3. **Original length sensors [B] (x 1, x1)**

Note

- The number of the original length sensors depends on the model; 3 for EU, 2 for others.

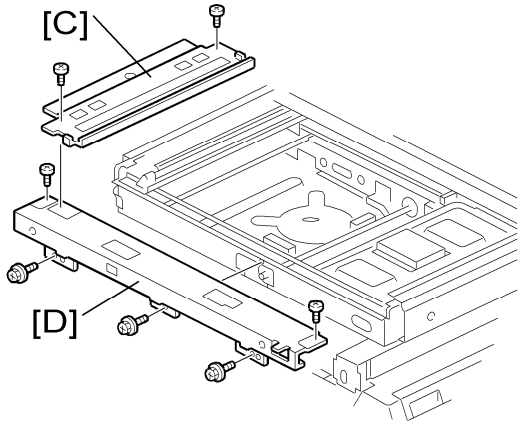
3.5.3 EXPOSURE LAMP

1. **Operation panel with scanner front cover (☛3.4.5 "Operation Panel")**
2. **Exposure glass (☛3.5.1 "Exposure Glass")**



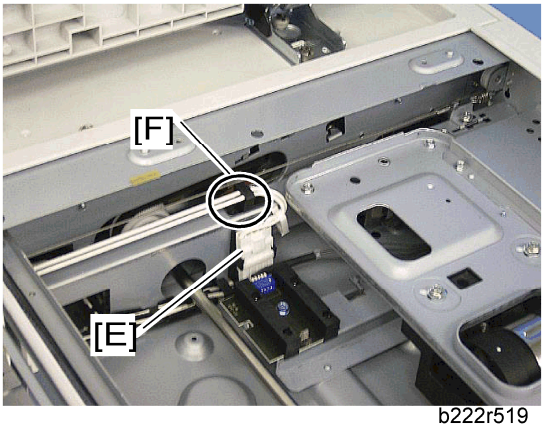
b222r518

3. **Move the 1st scanner carriage [A] to the cutout [B] in the front frame.**



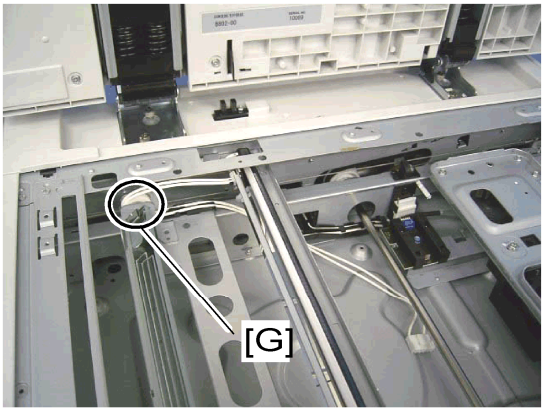
b222r157a

4. **Scanner left stay [C] (x 2)**
5. **Scanner front frame [D] (x 5)**



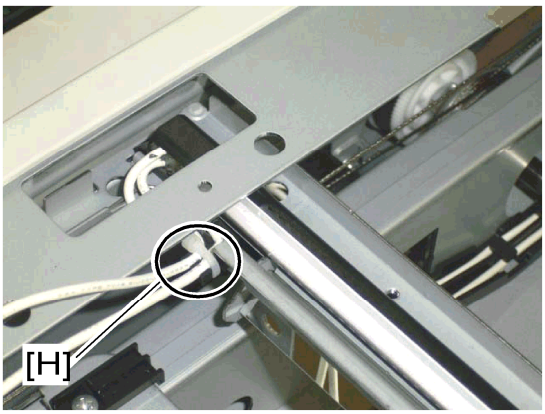
b222r519

6. **Disconnect the connector [E] (x 1).**
7. **Remove the clamp [F] (x 1)**



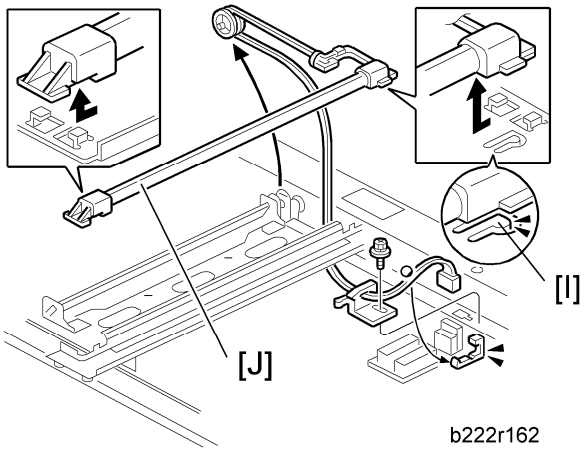
b222r520

8. **Remove the pulley [G].**



b222r521

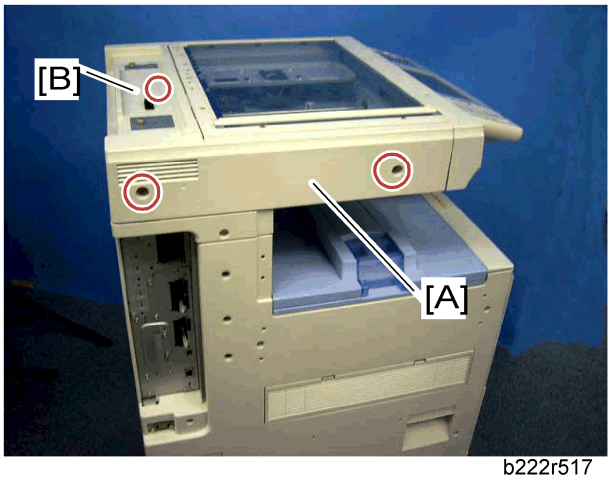
9. **Release the cable clamp [H].**



b222r162

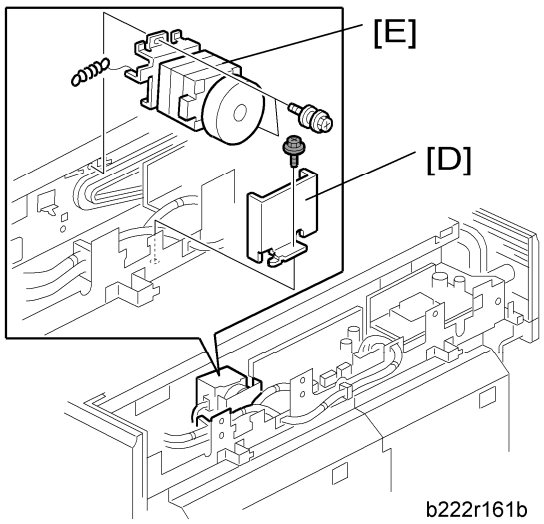
10. **Hold down the snap [I], and then slide the exposure lamp [J] to the front side.**
11. **Exposure lamp [J]**

3.5.4 SCANNER MOTOR



b222r517

1. **Rear cover (☛3.4.2 "Rear Cover")**
2. **Scanner left cover [A] (x 2)**
3. **Scanner top rear cover [B] (x 1)**
4. **Scanner rear frame [C] (x 8, x 3, x 2)**



b222r161b

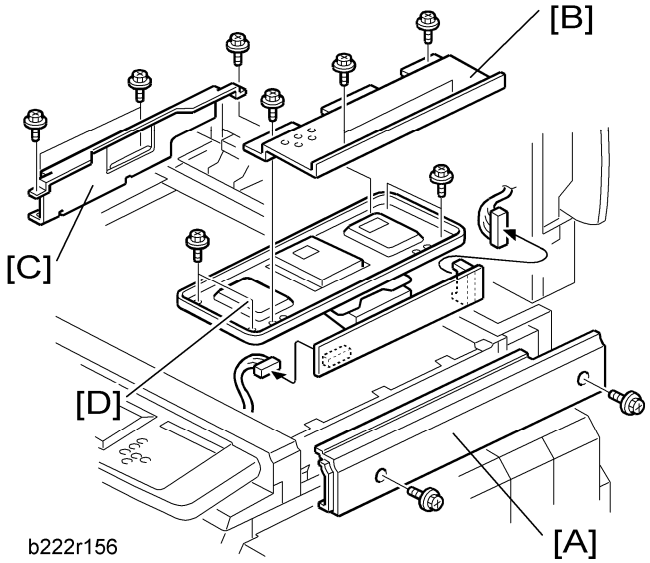
5. **Scanner motor bracket [D] (x 1)**
6. **Scanner motor [E] (x 2, spring x 1)**

Note

- After replacing the scanner motor, do the image adjustments in the following section of the manual (☛3.3.1 "Scanning"").

3.5.5 SENSOR BOARD UNIT (SBU)

1. **Exposure glass (☛3.5.1 "Exposure Glass")**



2. **Scanner right cover [A] (x 2)**
3. **SBU cover bracket [B] (x 4)**
4. **Ground plate [C] (x 4)**
5. **Sensor board unit [D] (x 4, x 3, x 1)**

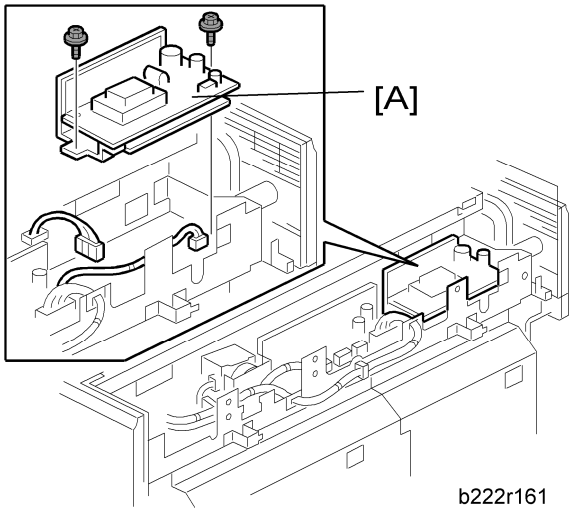
When reassembling

Adjust the following SP modes after you replace the sensor board unit:

- SP4–008 (Sub Scan Mag): See "Image Adjustment: Scanning".
- SP4–010 (Sub Mag Reg.): See "Image Adjustment: Scanning".
- SP4–011 (Main Scan Reg): See "Image Adjustment: Scanning".
- SP4–688 (DF: Density Adjustment): Use this to adjust the density level if the ID of outputs made in the DF and Platen mode is different.

3.5.6 EXPOSURE LAMP STABILIZER

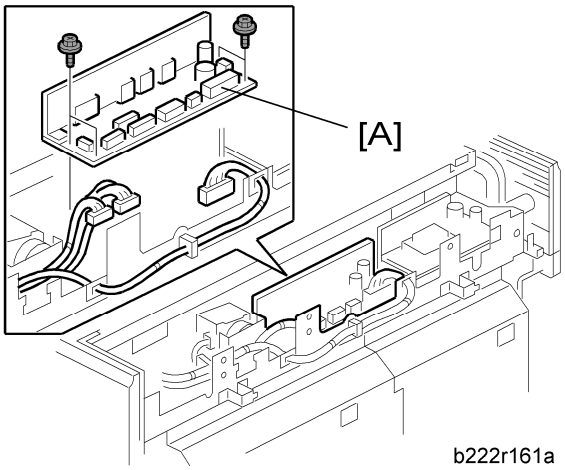
1. **Rear cover (☛3.4.2. "Rear Cover")**
2. **Scanner rear frame (☛3.5.4 "Scanner Motor")**



3. **Exposure lamp stabilizer [A] (x 2, x 2)**

3.5.7 SIO (SCANNER IN/OUT) BOARD

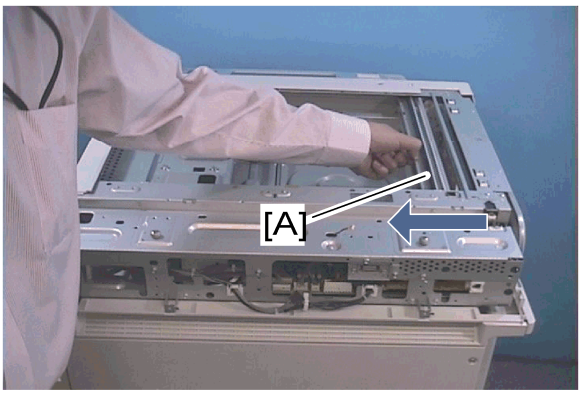
1. **Rear cover (☛3.4.2 "Rear Cover")**
2. **Scanner rear frame (☛3.5.4 "Scanner Motor")**



3. **SIO board with bracket [A] (x 4, All s)**

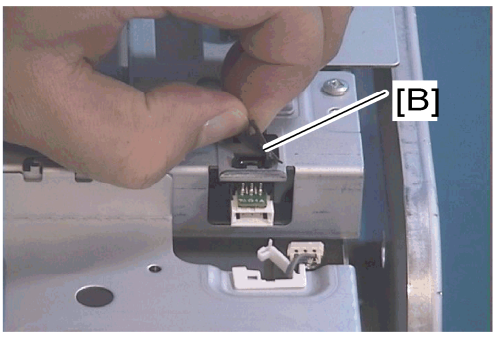
3.5.8 SCANNER HP SENSOR

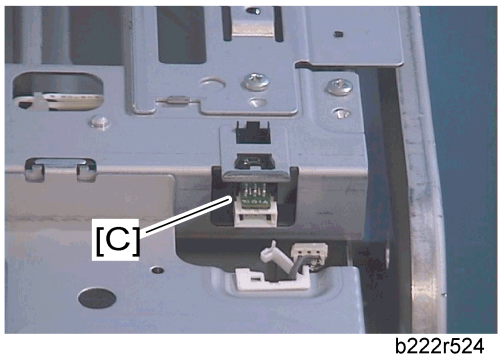
1. **Rear cover (☛3.4.2 "Rear Cover")**
2. **Scanner left cover and Scanner top rear cover (☛3.5.4 "Scanner Motor")**
3. **Exposure glass (☛3.5.1 "Exposure Glass")**



b222r523

4. **Move the 1st scanner carriage [A] to the right side.**



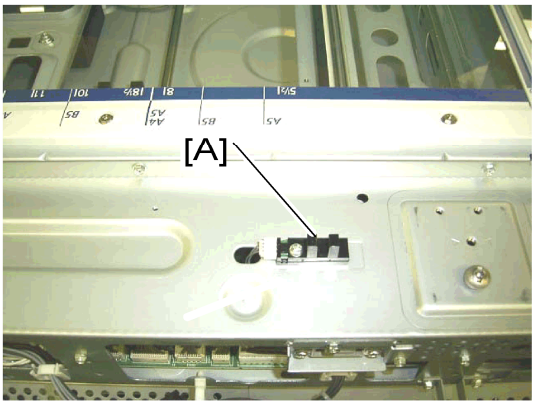


b222r524

5. **Remove the mylar [B]**
6. **Remove the scanner HP sensor [C] (x 1, x 1, two snaps)**

3.5.9 PLATEN COVER SENSOR

1. **Rear cover (☛3.4.2 "Rear Cover")**
2. **Scanner left cover and Scanner top rear cover (☛3.4.5 "Scanner Motor")**

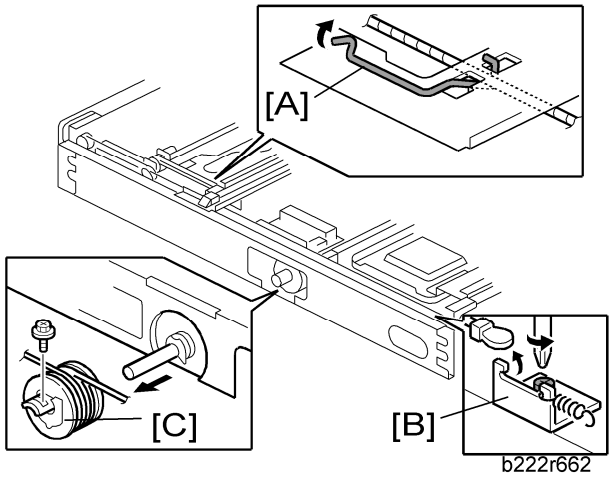


b222r525

3. **Platen cover sensor [A] (x 1, x 1)**

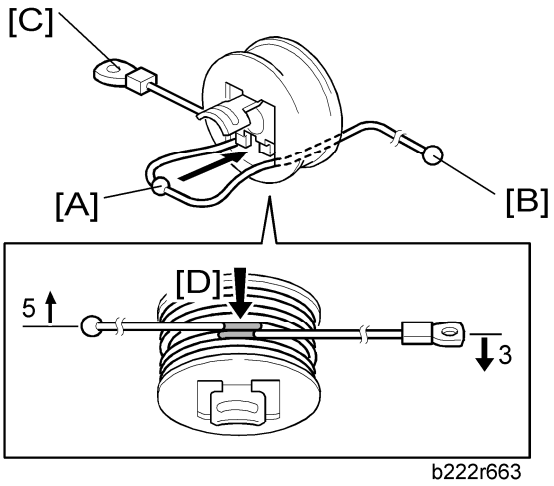
3.5.10 FRONT SCANNER WIRE

1. **Operation panel with the scanner front cover (☛3.4.5 "Operation Panel")**
2. **Front frame (☛3.5.1 "Exposure Lamp")**
3. **To make reassembly easy, slide the first scanner to the right.**



4. **Front scanner wire clamp [A]**
5. **Front scanner wire bracket [B] (☞ x 1)**
6. **Front scanner wire and scanner drive pulley [C] (☞ x 1)**

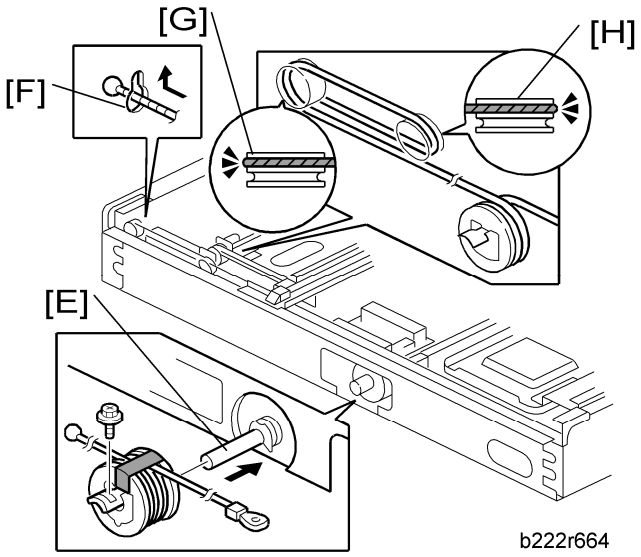
Reassembling the Front Scanner Wire



1. **Position the center ball [A] in the middle of the forked holder.**
2. **Pass the right end (with the ball) [B] through the square hole. Pass the left end (with the ring) [C] through the notch.**
3. **Wind the right end counterclockwise (shown from the machine's front) five times. Wind the left end clockwise twice.**

Note

- The two red marks [D] come together when you have done this. Stick the wire to the pulley with tape. This lets you easily handle the assembly at the time of installation.

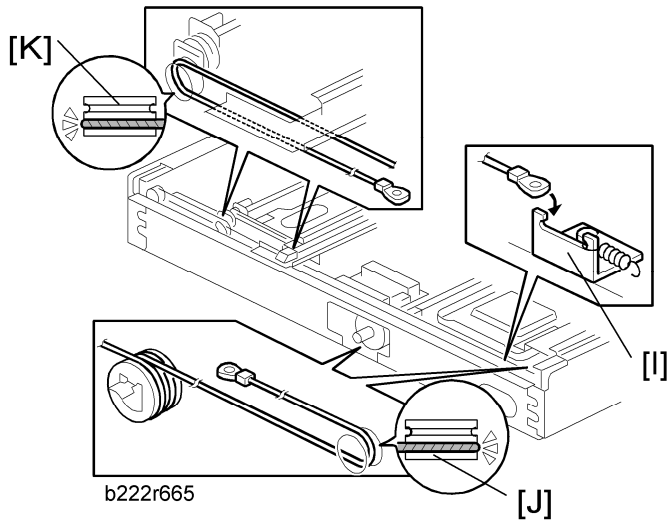


4. **Install the drive pulley on the shaft [E].**

Note

- Do not attach the pulley to the shaft with the screw at this time.

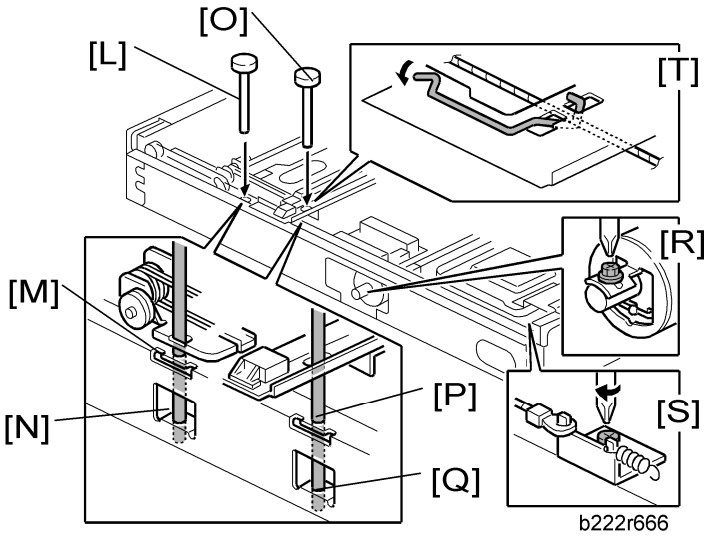
5. **Insert the left end into the slit [F]. The end should go via the rear track of the left pulley [G] and the rear track of the movable pulley [H].**



6. **Hook the right end onto the front scanner wire bracket [I]. The end should go via the front track of the right pulley [J] and the front track of the movable pulley [K].**

Note

- Do not attach the scanner wire bracket with the screw at this time.



7. **Remove the tape from the drive pulley.**
8. **Insert a scanner-positioning pin [L] through the 2nd carriage hole [M] and the left holes [N] in the front rail. Insert another scanner positioning pin [O] through the 1st carriage hole [P] and the right holes in the front rail [Q].**
9. **Insert two more scanner positioning pins through the holes in the rear rail.**
10. **Screw the drive pulley to the shaft [R].**
11. **Screw the scanner wire bracket to the front rail [S].**
12. **Install the scanner wire clamp [T].**
13. **Pull out the positioning pins.**

Note

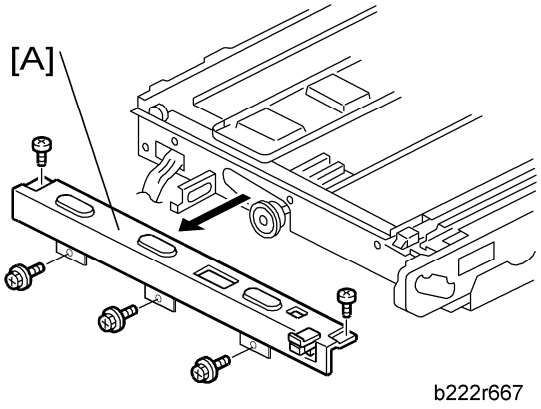
- Make sure the 1st and 2nd carriages move smoothly after you remove the
- positioning pins. Do steps 8 through 13 again if they do not.

Note

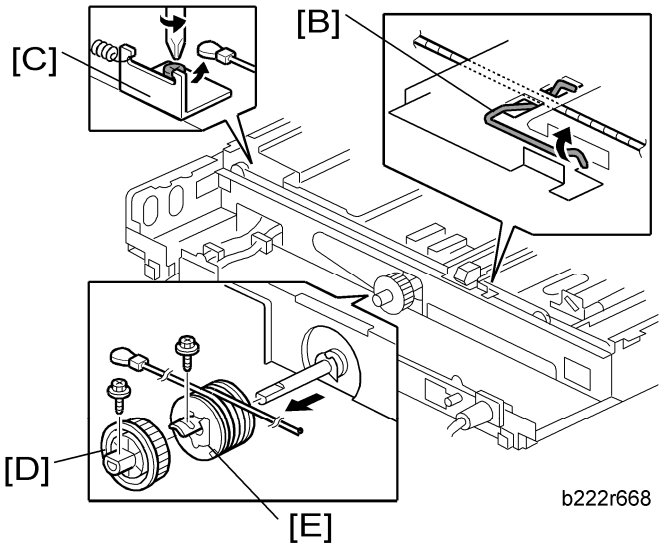
- After replacing the scanner wire, do the image adjustments in the following section of the manual (☛3.3.1. "Scanning").

3.5.11 REAR SCANNER WIRE

1. **Exposure glass (☛3.5.1. "Exposure Glass")**
2. **Scanner rear frame (☛3.5.4 "Scanner Motor")**
3. **Scanner motor (☛3.5.4 "Scanner Motor")**
4. **IOB with bracket (☛3.14.4 "IOB (In/Out Board)")**

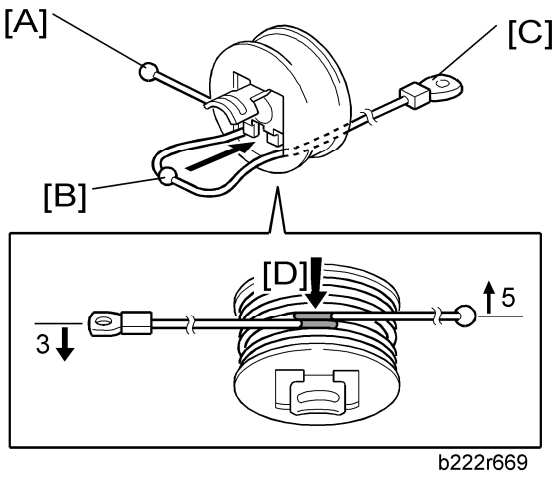


5. **Rail frame [A]**



6. **To make reassembly easy, slide the first scanner to the center.**
7. **Rear scanner wire clamp [B]**
8. **Rear scanner wire bracket [C] (x 1)**
9. **Scanner motor gear [D] (x 1)**
10. **Rear scanner wire and scanner drive pulley [E] (x 1)**

Reassembling the Rear Scanner Wire



1. **Position the center ball [B] in the middle of the forked holder.**
2. **Pass the end with the ball [A] through the right square hole from the front.**
3. **Position the center ball [B] in the middle of the notch, as shown by the arrow.**
4. **Pass the ball end [A] through the drive pulley notch.**
5. **Wind the end with the ring [C] clockwise (shown from the machine's front) three times from ; wind the ball end [A] clockwise (shown from the machine's front) five times.**

Note

- The two red marks [D] should meet when you have done this.

6. **Stick the wire to the pulley with tape, so you can easily handle the pulley and wire during installation.**
7. **Install the drive pulley on the shaft.**

Note

- Do not screw the pulley onto the shaft yet.

8. **Install the wire.**

Note

- The winding of the wire on the three pulleys at the rear of the scanner should be he same as the winding on the three pulleys at the front. This must show as a mirror image. Example: At the front of the machine, the side of the drive pulley with the three windings must face the front of the machine. At the rear of the machine, it must face the rear.

9. **Perform steps 8 through 13 in "Reassembling the Front Scanner Wire".**

Note

- After replacing the scanner wire, do the image adjustments in the following section

of the manual (☛3.3.1 "Scanning"Image" in the "Image Adjustment").

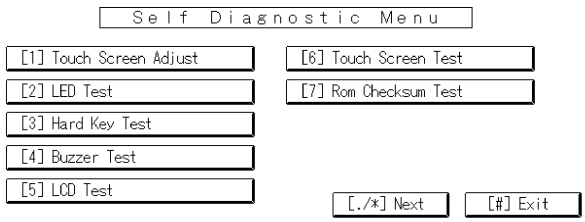
3.5.12 TOUCH PANEL POSITION ADJUSTMENT

Note

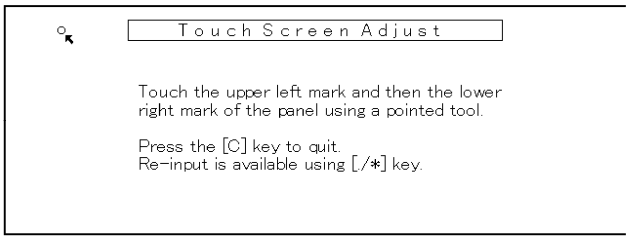
- It is necessary to calibrate touch panel at the following times:
- When you replace the operation panel.
- When you replace the controller board.
- When the touch panel detection function does not operate correctly

Do not use items [2] to [9] on the Self-Diagnostic Menu. These items are for design use only.

1. **Press [Menu], press 1993, press C/C 5 times to open the Self-Diagnostics menu.**



2. **On the touch screen press "Touch Screen Adjust" (or press 1).**
3. **Use a pointed (not sharp) tool to press the upper left mark ↖.**



4. **Press the lower right mark when "↖" shows.**
5. **Touch a few spots on the touch panel to make sure that the marker "+" shows exactly where the screen is touched.**
6. **Press Cancel. Then start from Step 2 again if the "+" mark does not show where the screen is touched.**
7. **Press [#] OK on the screen (or press #) when you are finished.**
8. **Touch [#] Exit on the screen to close the Self-Diagnostic menu. Save the calibration settings.**

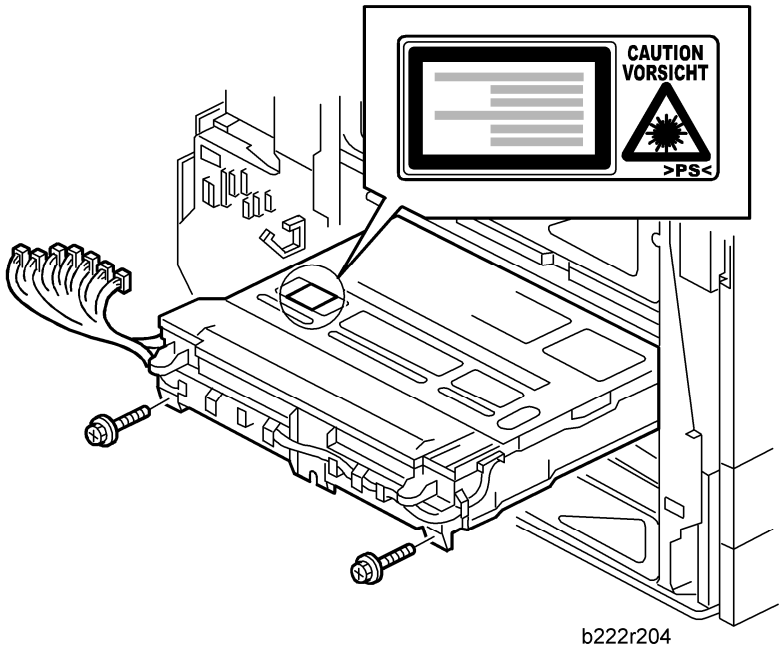
3.6 LASER OPTICS

⚠WARNING

- Turn off the main switch and unplug the machine before beginning any of the procedures in this section. Laser beams can cause serious eye injury.

3.6.1 CAUTION DECAL LOCATION

Caution decals are placed as shown below.



b222r204

⚠WARNING

- Be sure to turn off the main switch and disconnect the power plug from the power outlet before beginning any disassembly or adjustment of the laser unit. This copier uses a class IIIb laser beam with a wavelength of 655 nm and an output of 7 mW. The laser can cause serious eye injury.

3.6.2 LASER OPTICS HOUSING UNIT

⚠CAUTION

- Before installing a new laser optics housing unit, remove the sponge padding and the tag from the new unit.

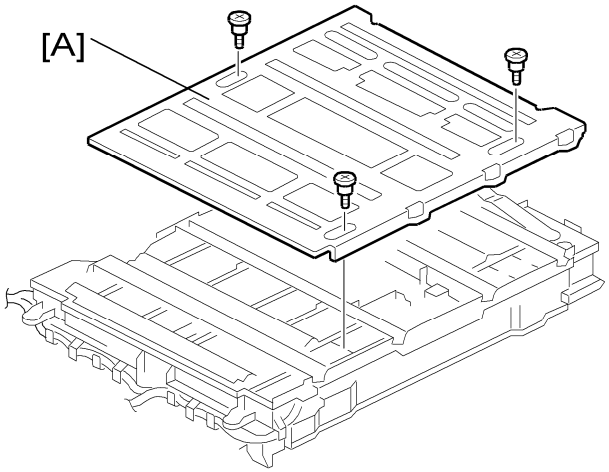
Note

- A new laser optics housing unit has a bracket to protect the LD units. When you install the new unit, do not remove the bracket until near the end of the installation

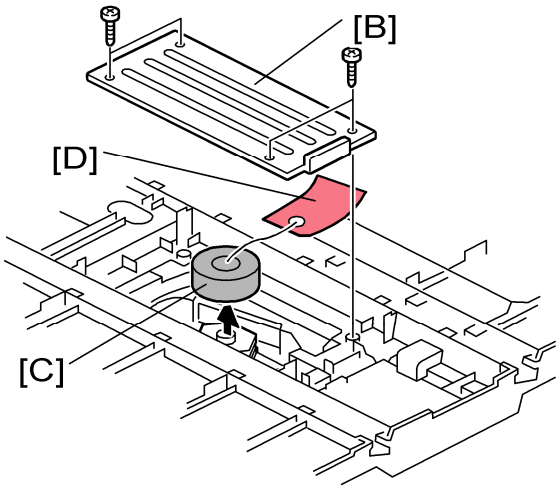
procedure (the correct time is stated in the manual).

- This bracket protects a capacitor on the unit. If the bracket is removed too early, you could break the capacitor on the corner of the main frame when you install the new unit.

Preparing the new laser optics housing unit



1. **Shutter [A] of the laser optics housing unit (x 3)**



2. **Polygon motor cover [B] of the laser optics housing unit (x 4)**
3. **Sponge padding [C]**
4. **Tag [D]**
5. **Reinstall the polygon motor cover [B].**

Before removing the old laser optics housing unit

Do the following settings before removing the laser optics housing unit. These are adjustments for skew adjustment motors in the laser optics housing unit.

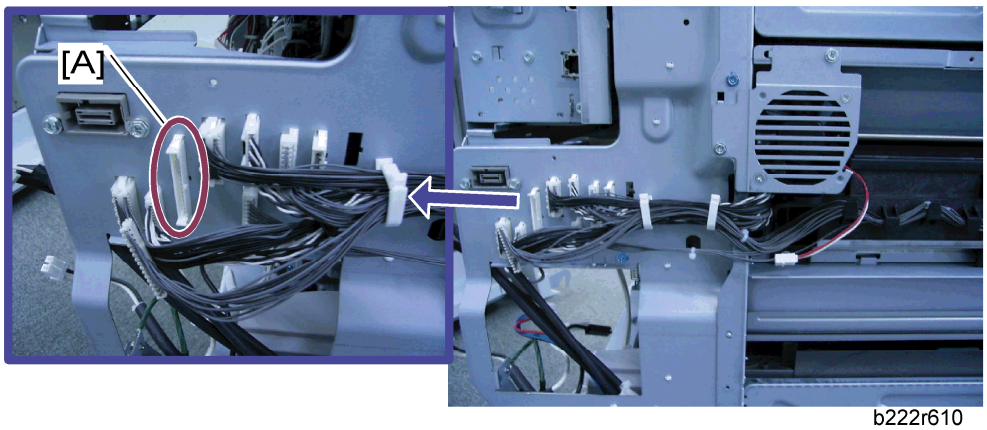
Laser Optics

1. Plug in and turn on the main power switch of the copier.
2. Enter the SP mode.
3. Execute SP9511-001 to clear the L2 lens positioning motor setting for Magenta.
4. Execute SP9511-002 to clear the L2 lens positioning motor setting for Cyan.
5. Execute SP9511-003 to clear the L2 lens positioning motor setting for Yellow.
6. Exit the SP mode.
7. Turn off the main power switch and disconnect the power cord of the copier.

Recovery procedure for no replacement preparation of laser optics housing unit

If you did not do the procedure in ‘Before removing the old laser optics housing’ before removing the old laser optics housing unit, you must do the following.

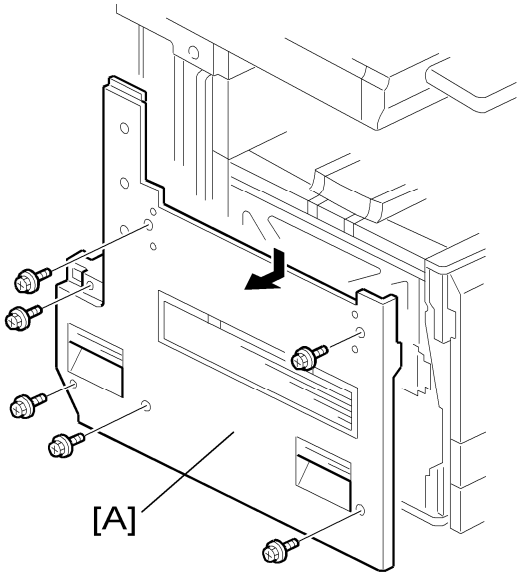
1. Turn off the main power switch and disconnect the power cord of the copier.
2. Remove the left cover and harness cover bracket (see the following "Removing the old laser optics housing unit")



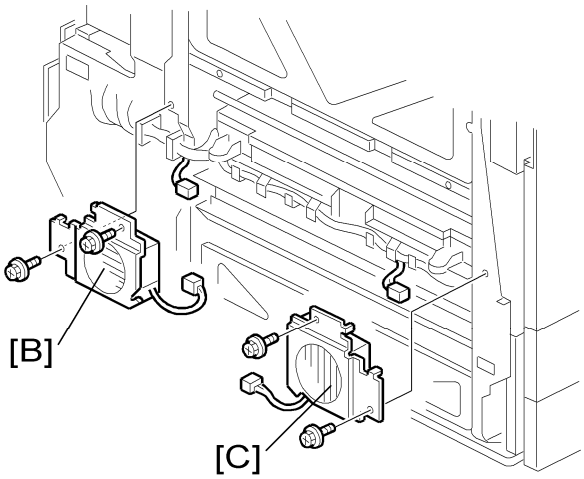
b222r610

3. Disconnect the harness [A] of the skew correction motor.
4. Do steps 1 to 7 of "Before removing the old laser optics housing unit".
5. Connect the harness [A] and reinstall the harness bracket and left cover.
6. Plug in and turn on the main power switch.

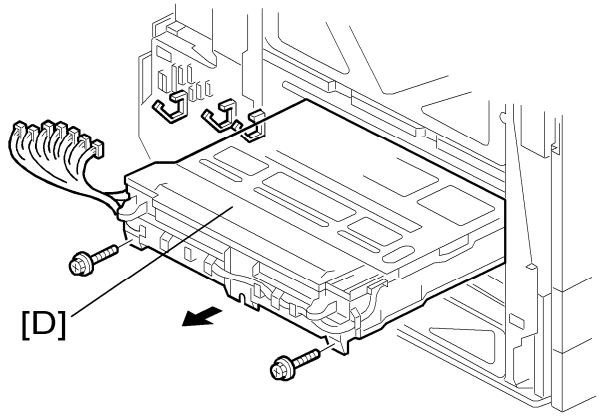
Removing the old laser optics housing unit



1. **Left cover [A] (x 6)**



2. **Rear fan bracket [B] for the laser housing optics unit (x 2, x 1)**
3. **Front fan bracket [C] for the laser housing optics unit (x 2, x 1)**

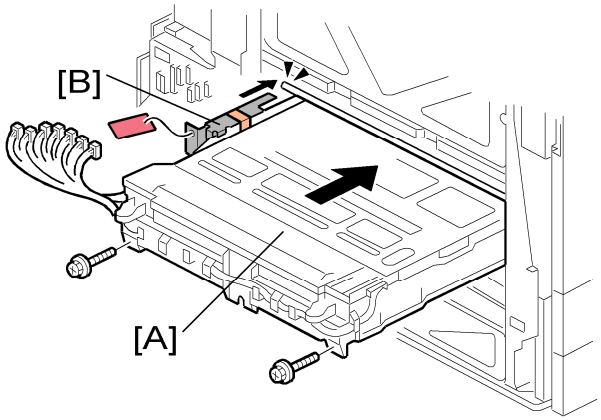


4. **Remove the old laser optics housing unit [D] (x 2, All 's, x 3)**

Installing a new Laser Optics Housing Unit

Note

- A new laser optics housing unit has a bracket to protect the LD units. When you install the new unit, do not remove the bracket until near the end of the installation procedure (the correct time is stated in the manual).
- This bracket protects a capacitor on the unit. If the bracket is removed too early, you could break the capacitor on the corner of the main frame when you install the new unit.

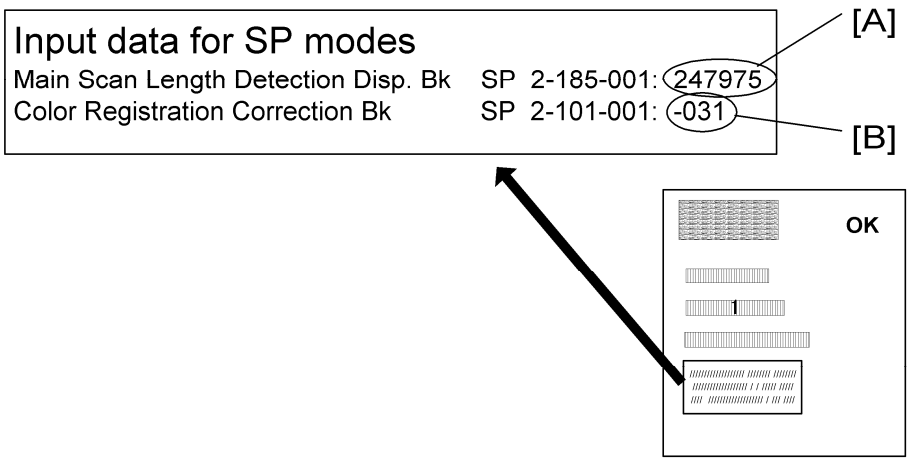


1. **Push the new laser optics housing unit [A] slowly into the copier until the bracket [B] bumps against the frame of the copier.**
2. **Remove the bracket [B], and then push the new laser optics housing unit fully into the copier (x 2, All 's, x 3).**
3. **Reassemble the machine.**

After installing the new laser optics housing unit

Do the following adjustment after installing the new laser optics housing unit.

1. **Plug in and turn on the main power switch.**



2. **Adjust the main scan magnification only for black (Bk).**
   1. Input the standard value [A] provided with a new laser optics housing unit for the main scan magnification adjustment with SP2-185-001.

      Note

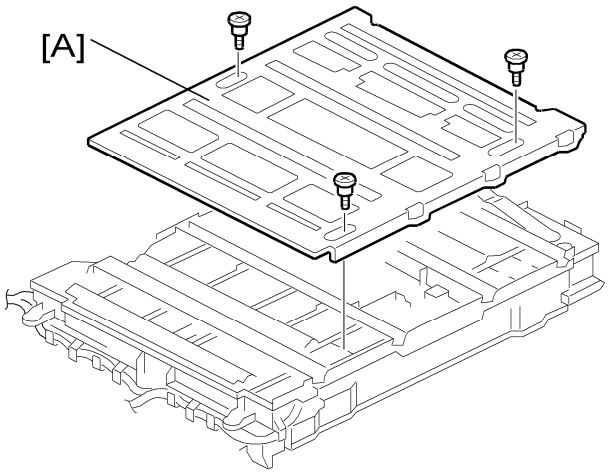
      - The value [A] is different for each laser optics housing unit.
   2. Print the test pattern (14: 1-dot trimming pattern in the SP2-109-003).
   3. Check that the left and right trim margin is within 4 ± 1 mm. If not, change the standard value for the main scan magnification adjustment.
3. **Adjust the main scan registration only for black (Bk).**
   1. Input the registration value [B] provided with a new laser optics housing unit for the main scan registration adjustment with SP2101-001.

      Note

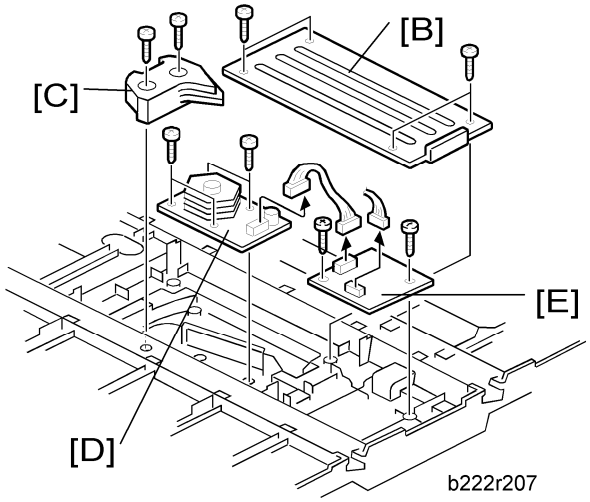
      - The value [B] is different for each laser optics housing unit.
   2. Print the test pattern (14: 1-dot trimming pattern in the SP2-109-003).
   3. Check that the left trim margin is within 2 ± 1 mm. If not, change the registration value for the main scan registration adjustment.
4. **Select "0" with SP2-109-003 after printing the "1-dot trimming pattern.**
5. **Do the line position adjustment.**
   1. First do SP2-111-3.
   2. Then do SP2-111-1.

      To check if SP 2-111-1 was successful, watch the screen during the process. A message is displayed at the end. Also, you can check the result with SP 2-194-10 to -12.
6. **Exit the SP mode.**
7. **After you replace the housing unit, do the adjustments in the following section of the manual: Image Adjustment – Registration.**

3.6.3 POLYGON MIRROR MOTOR AND DRIVE BOARD



1. **Laser optics housing unit (☛3.6.2 "Laser Optics Housing Unit")**
2. **Shutter [A] of the laser housing optics unit (x 3)**



3. **Polygon mirror motor cover [B] of the laser optics housing unit (x 4)**
4. **Polygon mirror motor holder [C] (x 2)**
5. **Polygon mirror motor [D] (x 4, x 1)**
6. **Polygon mirror motor drive board [E] (x 2, x 2)**

After installing the polygon mirror motor:

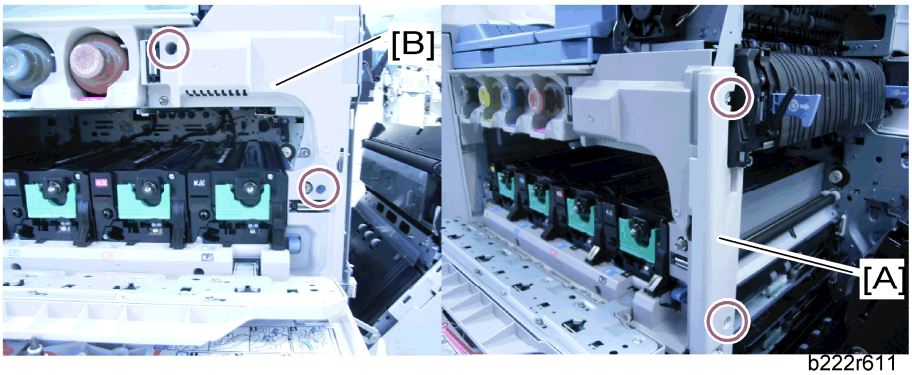
1. Do the "Forced Line Position Adj. Mode c" (SP2-111-3).
2. Then do the "Forced Line Position Adj. Mode a" (SP2-111-1).

To check if SP 2-111-1 was successful, watch the screen during the process. A message is displayed at the end. Also, you can check the result with SP 2-194-10 to -12.

After you replace the motor, do the adjustments in the following section of the manual: Image Adjustment – Registration.

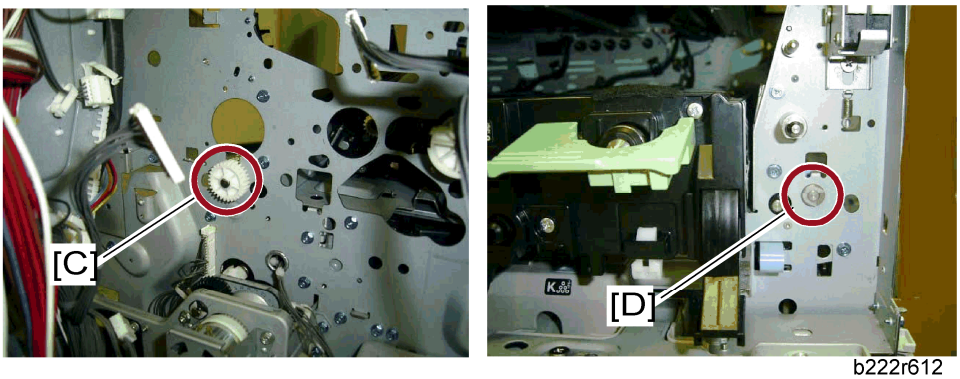
3.6.4 SHUTTER MOTOR

1. All PCUs (☛3.7.1 "PCU")
2. Image transfer belt unit (☛3.8.1 "Image Transfer Belt Unit")
3. Rear cover (☛3.4.3 "Rear Cover")
4. Right rear cover (☛3.4.4. "Right Rear Cover")
5. Controller box (☛3.14.3 "Controller Box")
6. Third duct (☛3.7.5 "Third Duct Fan")
7. Left cover (☛3.4.2 "Left Cover")
8. PSU bracket (☛3.14.7 "PSU")
9. Gear unit (☛3.10.1 "Gear Unit")
10. Image transfer belt contact motor (☛3.10.8 "Image Transfer Belt Contact Motor")
11. Registration motor (☛3.10.2 "Registration Motor")
12. Duplex unit (☛3.13.1 "Duplex Unit")
13. Paper guide plate 1 and 2 (☛3.12.5 "Registration Sensor")
14. Front right cover (☛3.4.5 "Operation Panel")



b222r611

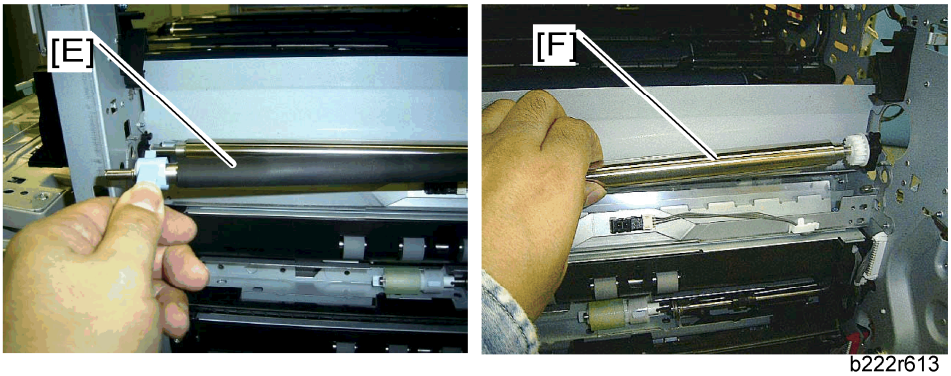
15. Pull out the tray 1 and 2, and image transfer belt unit.
16. Right front cover [A] (☞ x 2)
17. Front inner cover [B] (☞ x 2)



b222r612

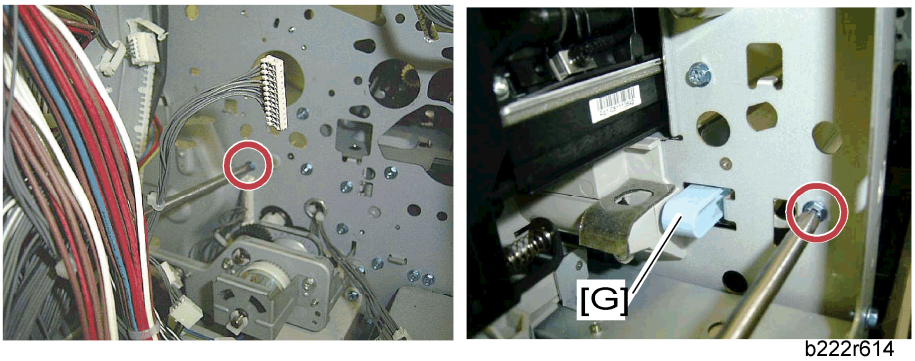
18. Remove the gear and bushing [C] from the rear frame (☾ x 1).

19. **Remove the bushing [D] from the front frame (ℂ x 1).**



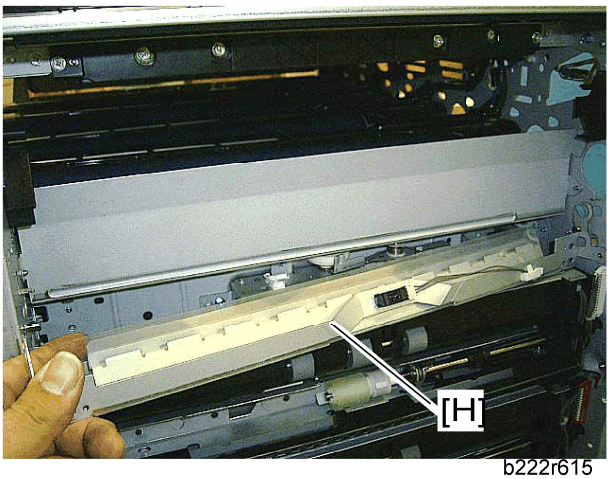
b222r613

20. **Registration rollers [E] and [F]**



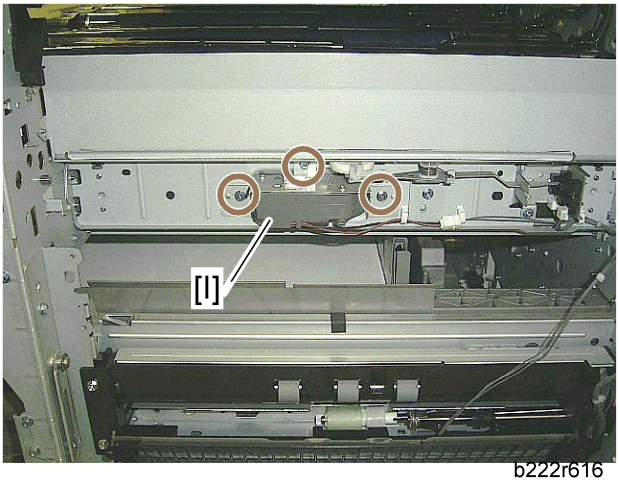
b222r614

21. **Remove the paper dust case [G] and two screws (at the front and rear frame each).**



b222r615

22. **Registration sensor bracket [H] (x 1, x 2)**
23. **Paper feed unit (☛3.12.1 "Paper Feed Unit")**



b222r616

24. Shutter motor [I] (x 3, x 1, x 1)

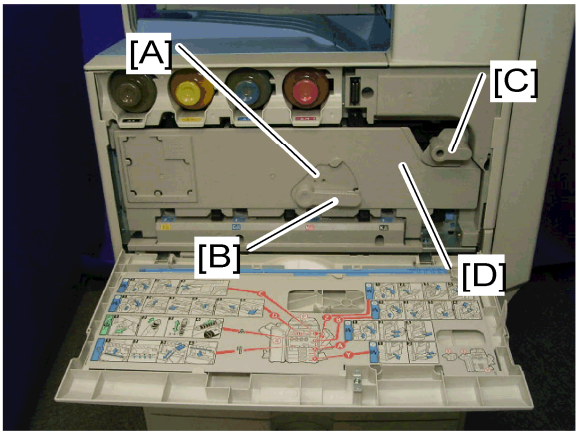
3.7 IMAGE CREATION

3.7.1 PCU

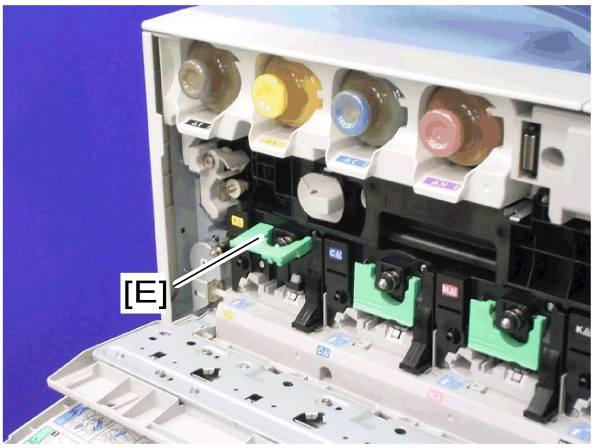
Note

- Do not touch the OPC drum. Do not let metal objects touch the development sleeve.

1. **Open the front door.**



2. **Lever lock [A] (x 1)**
3. **Turn the drum positioning plate lever [B] and the image transfer unit lock lever [C] counter-clockwise.**
4. **Open the drum positioning plate [D].**



5. **Pull out the PCU (hold the grip while you pull it out) [E].**

3.7.2 DRUM UNIT AND DEVELOPMENT UNIT

The new drum unit has a front cover and a front joint. When you attach the new drum unit to the development unit, remove a front cover and a front joint at first.

And use them for reassembling the new drum unit and development unit.

1. **If you install a new drum unit, set SP 3902-xxx to "1".**

   Black: 3902-009

   Yellow: 3902-010

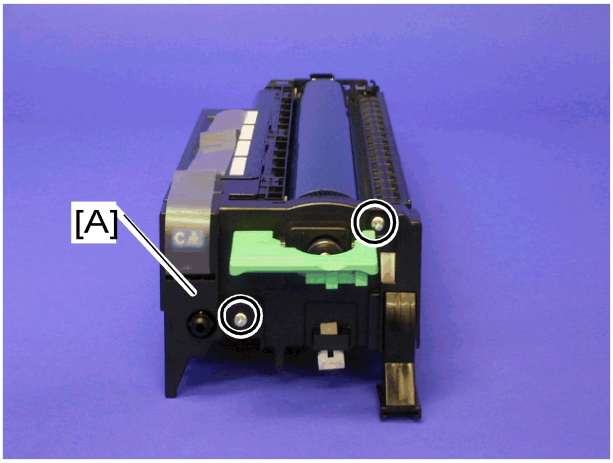
   Cyan: 3902-011

   Magenta: 3902-012

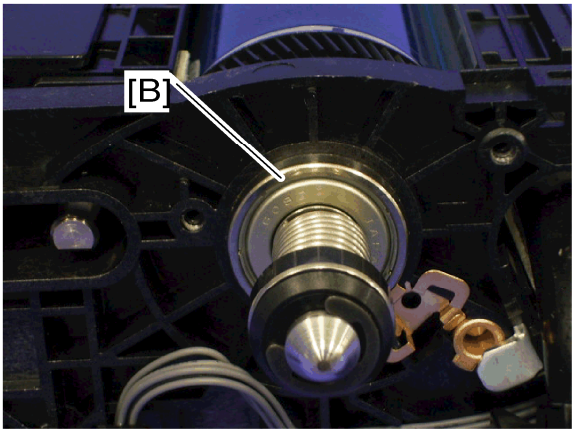
   Note

   - If you do this, then the machine will reset the PM counter for the drum unit automatically, after you turn the power on again.

2. **Turn the machine power off.**
3. **PCU (☛3.7.1 "PCU")**

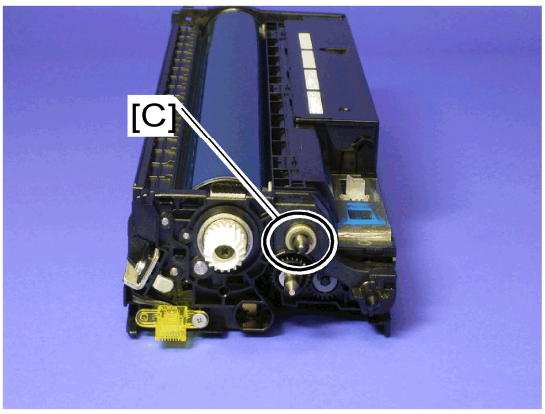


4. **Front cover [A] (x 2)**

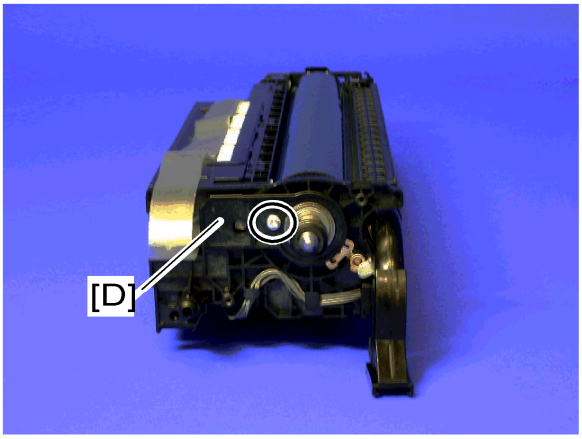


Note

- Do not touch the bearing [B] after removing the front cover. The bearing is properly applied with lubricant.



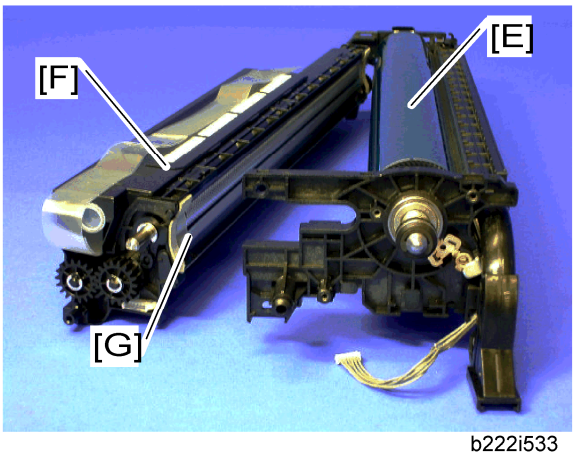
5. **Remove the bushing [C] of the development roller at the rear of the PCU (x 1).**



6. **Remove the front joint [D] (x 1, x 1).**

Note

- The front joint [D] is firmly set. Remove it with a watchmaker's or jeweler's screwdriver.



b222i533

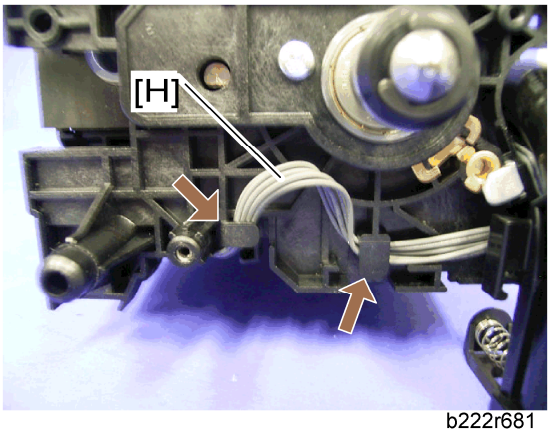
7. **Drum unit [E] and Development Unit [F]**

Note

- When the development unit is removed from the drum unit, clean the entrance mylar [G] with a vacuum.

8. **If you change the development unit, do the ACC procedure. Refer to Operating Instructions Troubleshooting Manual; Chapter 6 – Maintenance – Auto Color Calibration.**

When reassembling the PCU

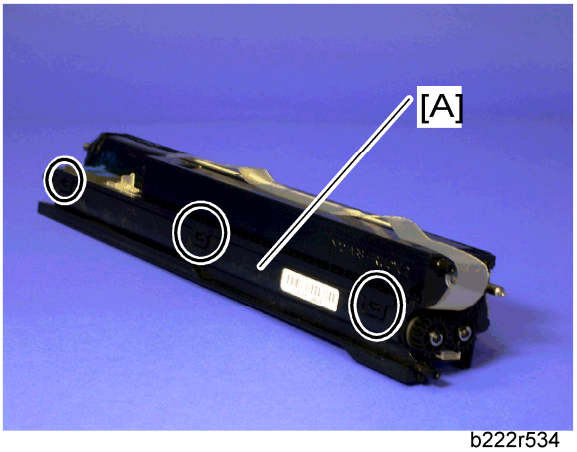


b222r681

Make sure that the harness [H] is hooked as shown.

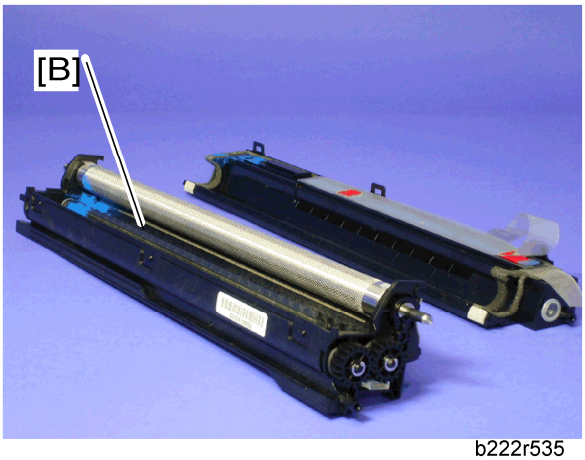
Developer

1. **Set SP 3902-xxx to "1".**
   Black: 3902-005
   Yellow: 3902-006
   Cyan: 3902-007
   Magenta: 3902-008
2. **Turn the machine power off.**
3. **Development unit (☛3.7.2 "Drum Unit and Development Unit")**



b222r534

4. **Hopper cover [A] (hook x 3)**



b222r535

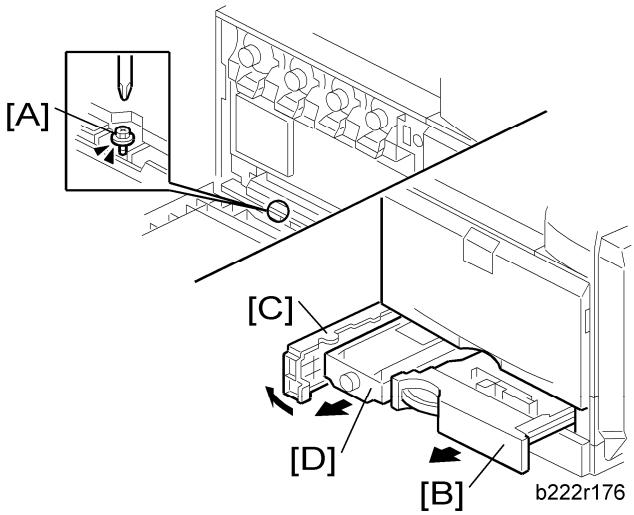
5. **Shake a bag of developer and pour it into the development hopper [B].**
6. **Reattach the hopper cover (hook x 3)**
7. **Turn the machine power on. The machine initializes the developer and resets the PM counter for the developer. (For details of the developer initialization result, see "Developer Initialization Result" in the "Troubleshooting" chapter.**
8. **Do the ACC procedure. (Refer to operating instructions – Troublshooting Manual; Chapter 6 – Maintenance – Auto Color Calibration)**

3.7.3 TONER COLLECTION BOTTLE

If you will install a new bottle, and the old bottle is not in a full or near-full condition, then set SP 3902-017 to 1.

Note

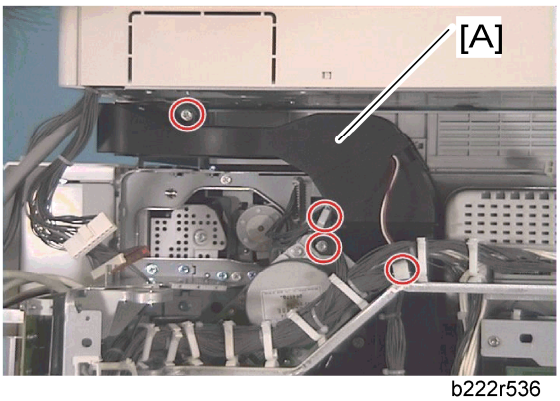
- If you do this, then the machine will reset the PM counter for the bottle automatically, after you turn the power on again.
- If the bottle is in a full or near-full condition, it is not necessary to do this.



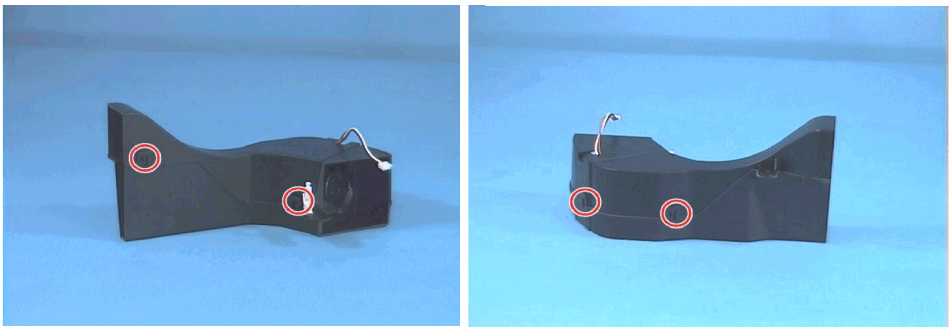
1. Turn off the main power switch.
2. Open the front door and remove the screw [A].
3. Close the front door.
4. Pull out tray 1 [B].
5. Open the toner collection bottle door [C].
6. Pull out the toner collection bottle [D].

3.7.4 SECOND DUCT FAN

1. Rear cover (☛3.4.3. "Rear Cover")
2. Right rear cover (☛3.4.4 "Right Rear Cover")
3. Open the controller box (☛3.14.3 "Controller Box")

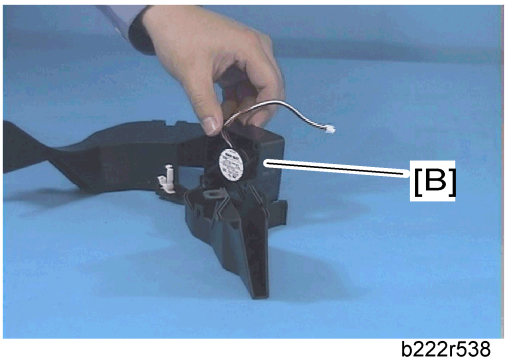


4. Second duct [A] (x 2, x 1, x 1)



b222r537

5. **Split the second duct (4 hooks).**



b222r538

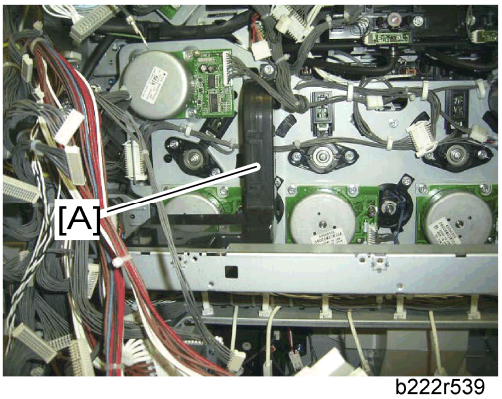
6. **Second duct fan [B]**

When reinstalling the second duct fan

Make sure that the second duct fan is installed with its decal facing to the front of the machine.

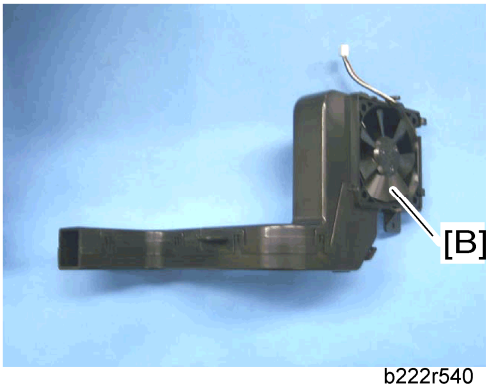
3.7.5 THIRD DUCT FAN

1. **Rear cover (☛3.4.3 "Rear Cover")**
2. **Right rear cover (☛3.4.4 "Right Rear Cover")**
3. **Controller box (☛3.4.3 "Controller Box")**



b222r539

4. **Third duct [A] (x 2, x 1)**



b222r540

5. **Third duct fan [B] (7 hooks)**

When reinstalling the third duct fan

Make sure that the third duct fan is installed with its decal facing to the upper side of the machine.

3.7.6 TONER PUMP UNIT

There are four pump units inside the machine. This procedure describes the replacement procedure only for one unit. If you need to replace another unit, do the same as this procedure.

Note

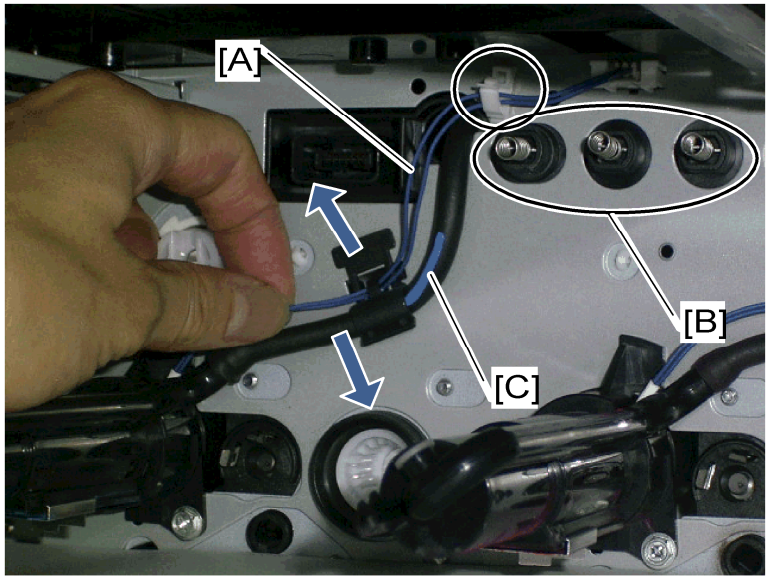
- Put some sheets of paper on the floor before doing this procedure. Toner may fall on the floor.

1. **Front door (☛3.4.3"Rear Cover")**
2. **Image transfer belt unit (☛3.8.1"Image Transfer Belt Unit")**

3. **All PCUs (☛3.7.1"PCU")**
4. **Put a sheet of paper (A3/DLT) inside the machine as shown and on the floor.**

Note

- The sheet of paper on the floor is used in a later step.

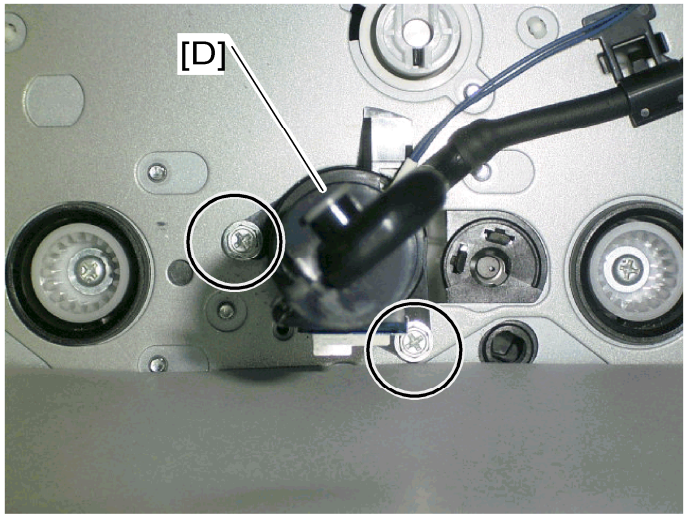


5. **Release the harness [A] from the clamp (x 1 for YCM, x 3 for K) and hook, and then disconnect the harness.**

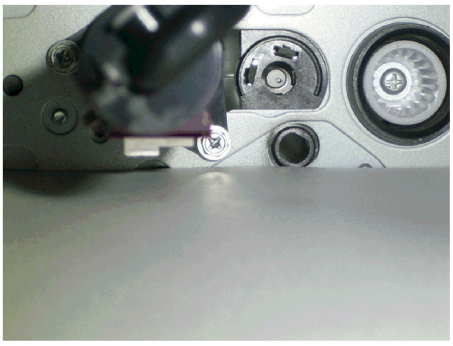
Note

- Avoid touching these spring terminals [B].

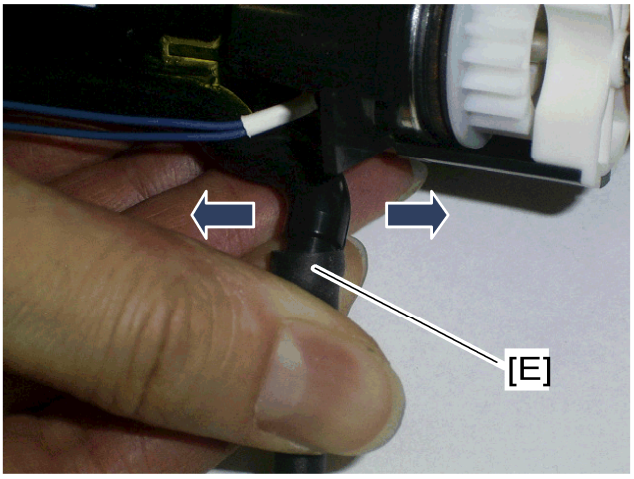
6. **Release the toner supply tube [C].**



7. **Remove the toner pump unit [D] (x 2)**



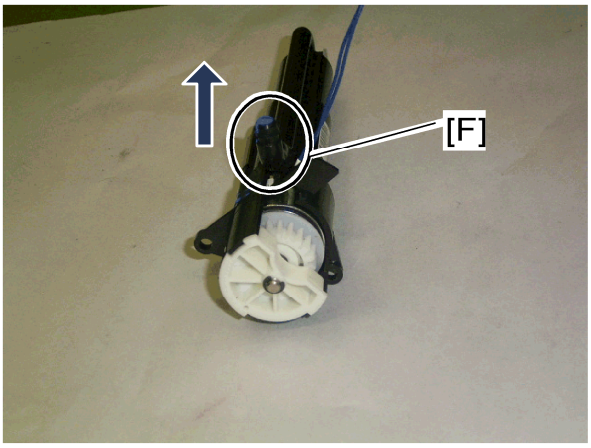
Make sure that a sheet of paper is attached to the frame of the rear side and covers the four gears. The picture on the left shows a sheet of paper that is correctly set, but the picture on the right shows a sheet of paper that is not correctly set. This sheet of paper prevents toner and screws from falling into the laser optics housing unit through cutouts.



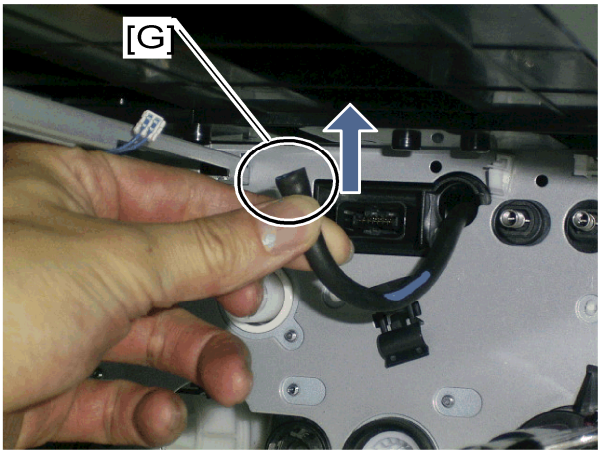
8. **Slowly remove the toner supply tube [E] from the toner pump unit by pulling the tube right and left.**
9. **Turn up the openings of the toner pump unit and toner supply tube just after removing the tube.**

Note

- If not, the toner may scatter away and fall down.



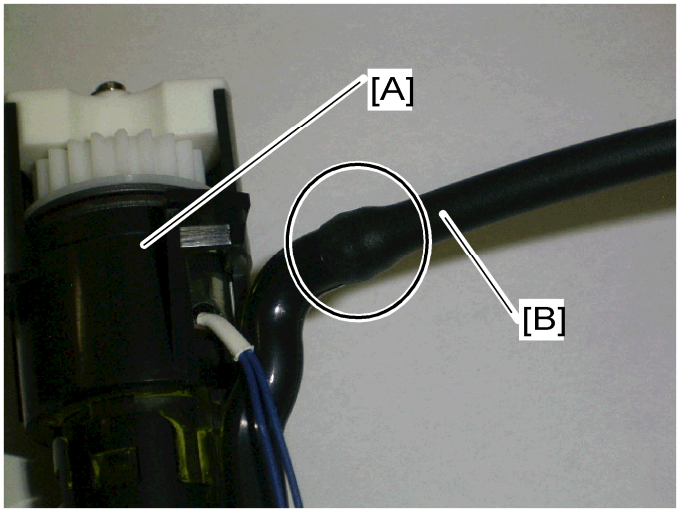
10. **Put the toner pump unit on the sheet of paper, which has been put in step 4, with its opening [F] up.**



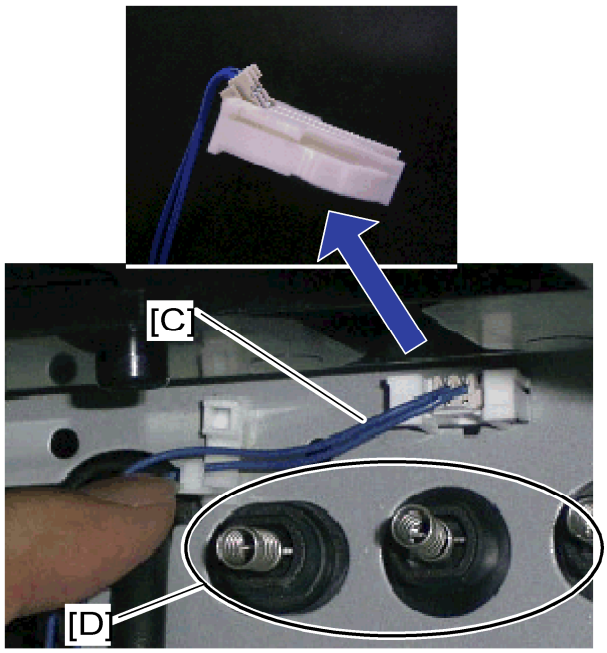
11. **Keep the opening [G] of the toner supply tube up, and then clip the opening of the toner supply.**

When you install the new toner pump unit

Before installing the new toner pump unit, mask the opening of the old toner pump unit with tape. Dispose of it following local rules.



1. **Put a sheet of paper (A3/DLT) inside the machine.**
2. **Turn up the opening of the toner supply tube, and then remove the object that was used to clip the opening of the toner supply tube.**
3. **Insert the opening of the toner pump unit [A] into the opening of the toner supply tube [B] as far as possible.**



4. **Connect the harness [C] to the connector of the machine.**

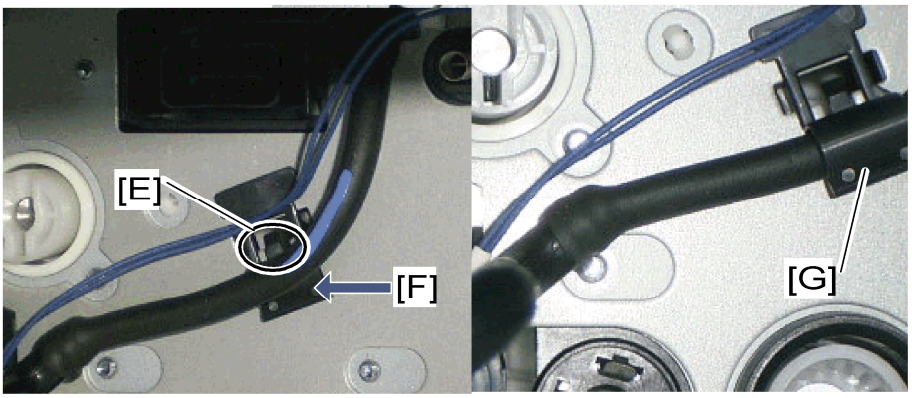
Note

- On the above picture, the magnified picture of the connector shows the easiest way to connect it.

5. **Clamp the harness [C] (x 1 for YCM, x 3 for K).**

Note

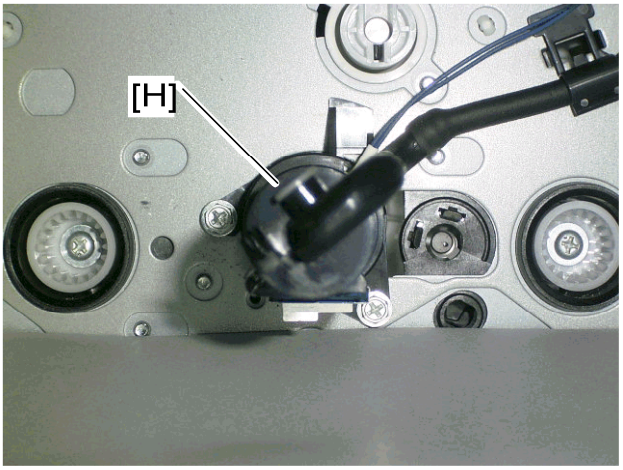
- Avoid touching these spring terminals [D].



6. **Pass the harness of the toner pump unit behind the hook [E], while pressing at [F].**
7. **Secure the toner supply tube with the holder [G], lifting up the edge of the holder "very gently".**

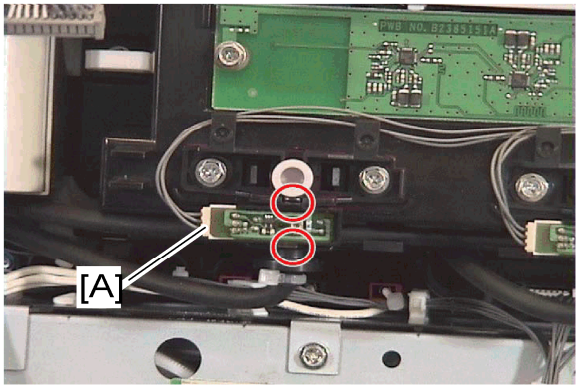
Note

- Be careful when you lift the edge of the holder, because the holder is easily broken.



8. **Insert the toner pump unit [H] into the rear frame of the machine (x 2).**

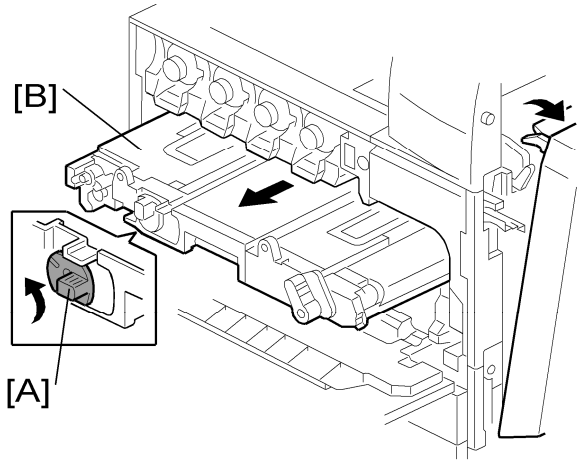
3.7.7 TONER END SENSOR



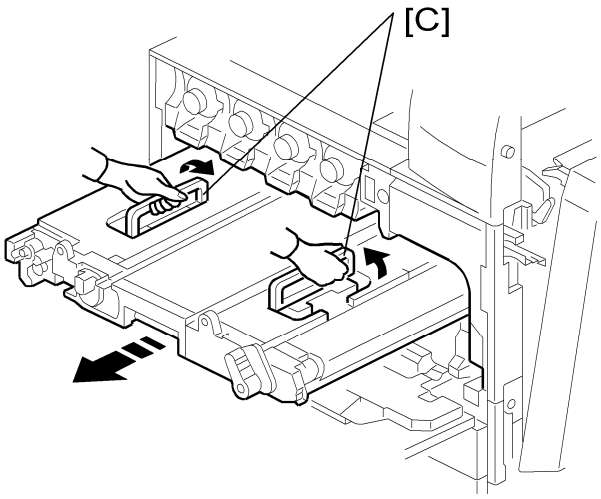
1. Rear cover (☛3.4.3 "Rear Cover")
2. Open the controller box (☛3.4.3 "Controller Box"")
3. Toner end sensor [A] (x 1, 2 hooks each)

3.8 IMAGE TRANSFER

3.8.1 IMAGE TRANSFER BELT UNIT



1. **Open the right door.**
2. **Open the front door**
3. **Open the drum positioning plate. (☛3.7.1"PCU"")**
4. **Turn the image transfer belt unit lock lever [A] counterclockwise.**
5. **Pull out the image transfer belt unit [B] halfway.**



6. **Grasp the handles [C], and then pull out the image transfer belt unit fully.**

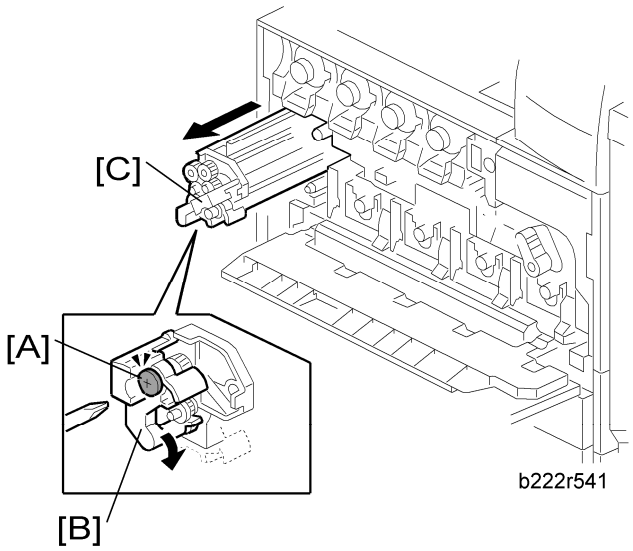
3.8.2 IMAGE TRANSFER BELT CLEANING UNIT

1. **If you will install a new belt cleaning unit, then set SP 3902-015 to 1.**

Note

- If you do this, then the machine will reset the PM counter for the belt cleaning unit automatically, after you turn the power on again.
  Do not use SP3902-015 or 013 if you replace the complete ITB unit.

2. **Turn off the main power switch.**
3. **Open the right door.**
4. **Open the front door**
5. **Open the drum positioning plate. (☛3.7.1 "PCU"")**



6. **Loosen the screw [A].**
7. **Turn the lock lever [B] clockwise**
8. **Pull out the image transfer belt cleaning unit [C].**

3.8.3 IMAGE TRANSFER BELT

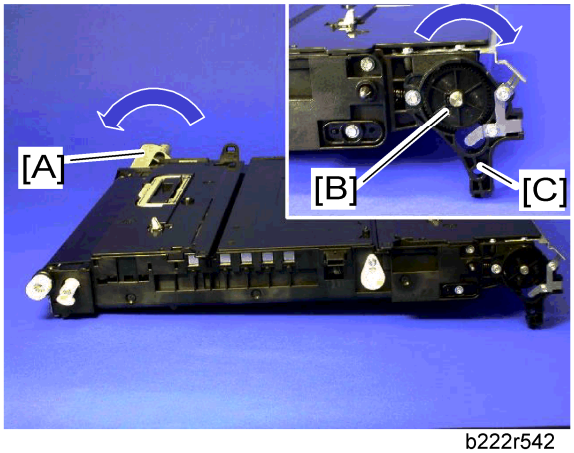
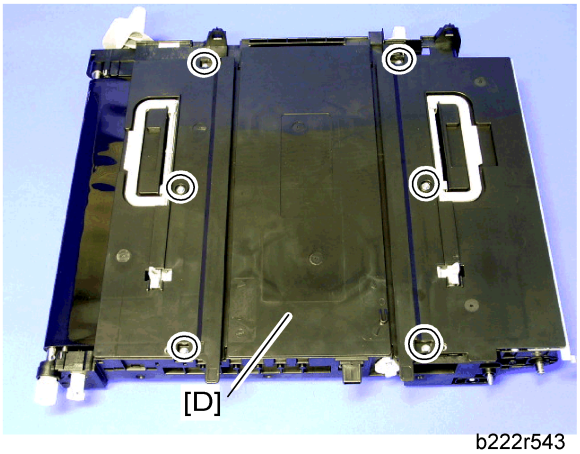


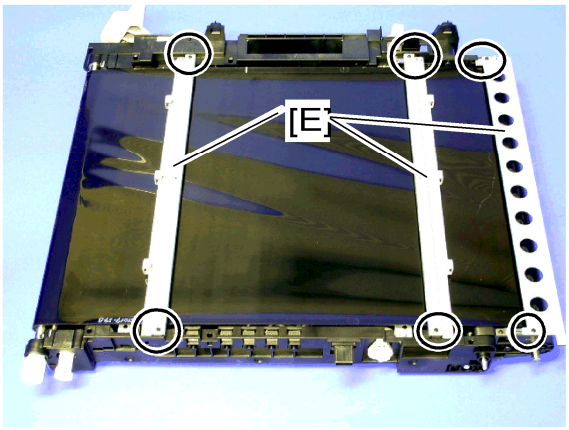
Image Transfer

1. **Image transfer belt cleaning unit (☛3.8.2 "Image Transfer Belt Cleaning Unit")**
2. **Image transfer belt unit (☛3.7.1 "PCU")**
3. **Turn the image transfer unit contact lover [A] counterclockwise (as seen from the rear).**
4. **Gear [B] (hook x 1)**
5. **Turn the gear cover [C] clockwise (as seen from the rear) (x 1).**



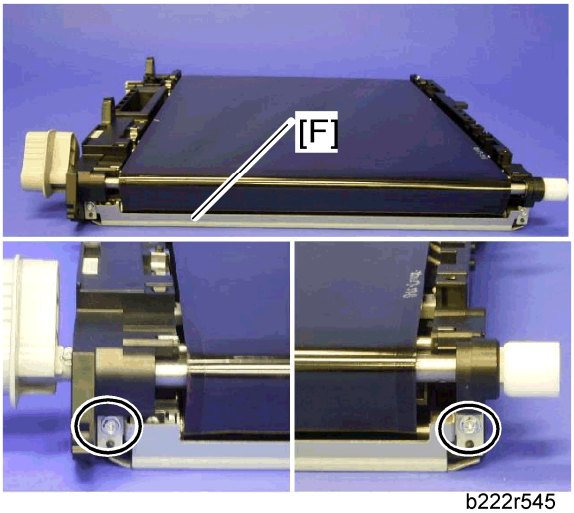
b222r543

6. **Image transfer belt unit top cover [D] (x 6).**



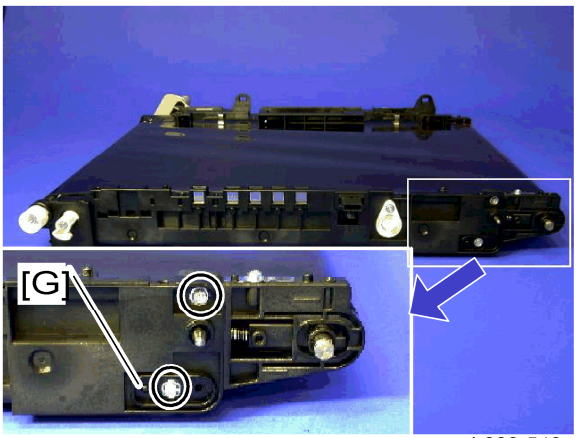
b222r544

7. **Three stays [E] (x 6)**



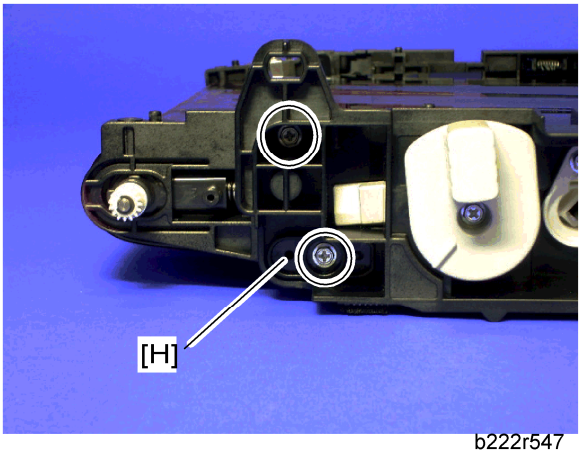
b222r545

8. **Guide plate [F] (as seen from the right side of the machine) (x 2)**



b222r546

9. **Remove the two screws and then rear hold bracket [G] (as seen from the rear).**

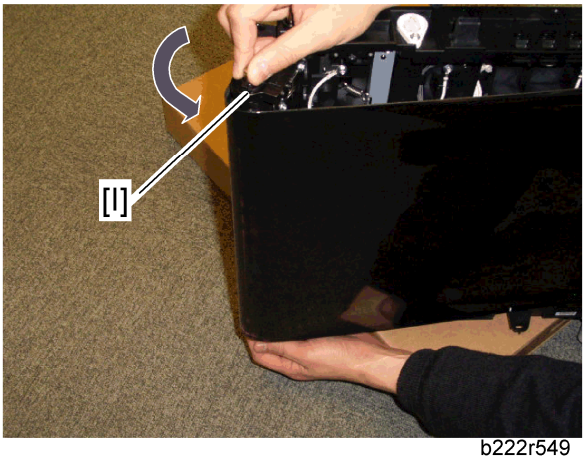


b222r547

10. **Remove the two screws and then front hold bracket [H] (as seen from the front).**

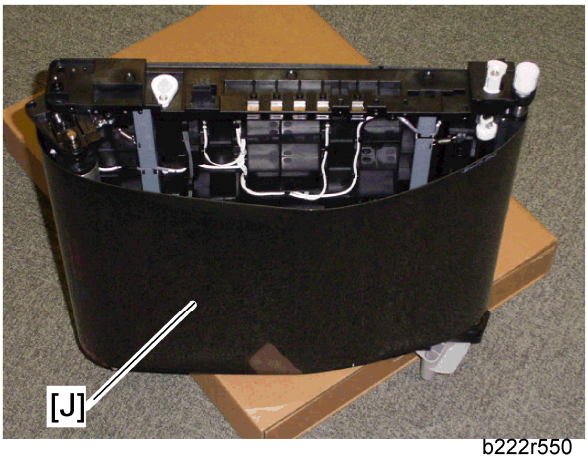
b222r548

11. **Put the front side of the image transfer belt unit on a corner of the table or a box as shown.**



b222r549

12. **Pull the tension roller [I] as shown.**

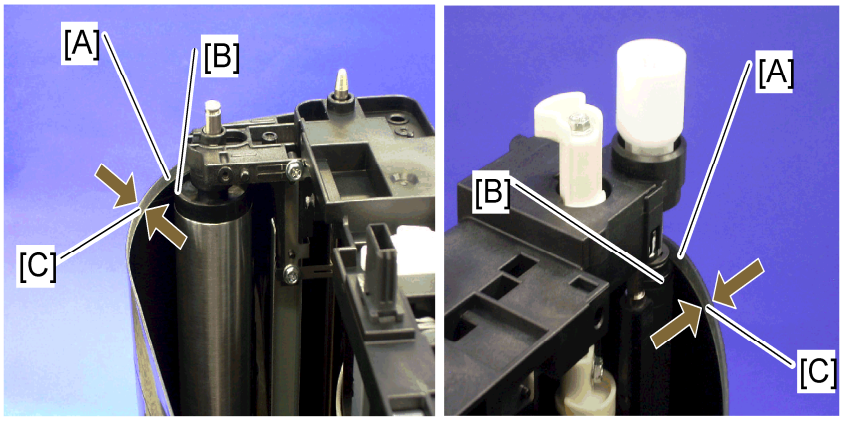


b222r550

13. **Image transfer belt [J]**

When reinstalling the image transfer belt

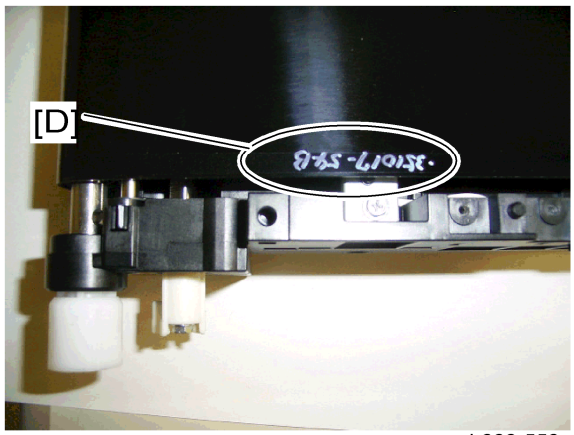
- Clean all rollers with dry cloth before installing the image transfer belt.



- There is a rim [A] at each edge of the transfer belt. The ends of all the rollers ([B] for example) in the transfer belt unit must be between the two rims.

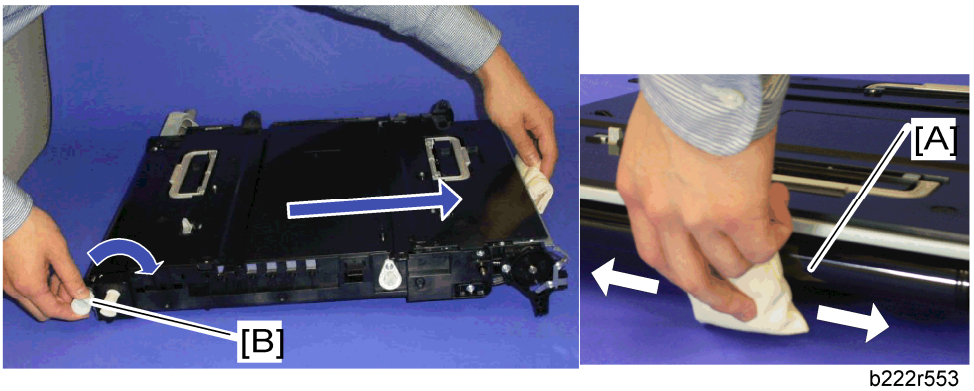
Note

  - There are two rims (width [C]: about 5 mm) on the underside of the front and rear edges of the image transfer belt.



b222r552

- This belt must be installed the correct way around. When you reinstall the image transfer belt unit, install it with the painted number [D] on the belt at the rear side of the unit.



b222r553

- Put "Lubricant Powder" (B132 9700) on the surface of the image transfer belt [A], while you turn the drive gear [B] at a constant speed, as shown. (The straight arrow in the picture shows belt movement direction.) Lubricant powder prevents the image transfer cleaning blade from turning up.

Note

  - Do not put the lubricant powder at the right side of the image transfer belt unit (the above picture is taken from the rear). Otherwise, lubricant powder may damage the encoder sensor.

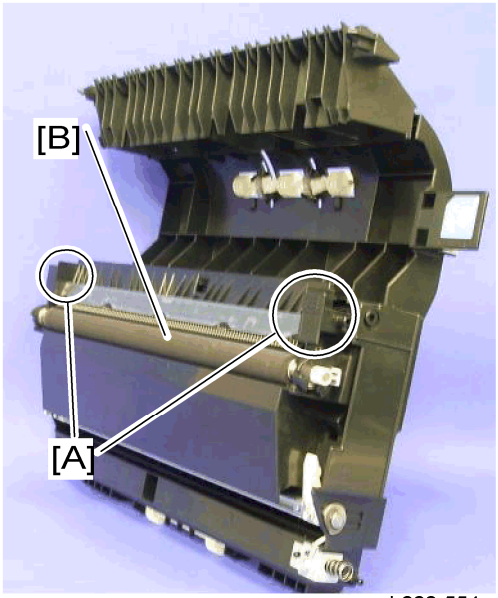
3.9 PAPER TRANSFER

3.9.1 PAPER TRANSFER ROLLER UNIT

If you will install a new paper transfer unit, then set SP 3902-016 to 1.

Note

- If you do this, then the machine will reset the PM counter for the paper transfer unit automatically, after you turn the power on again.



b222r554

1. **Open the right door.**
2. **Release the two locks [A].**
3. **Paper transfer roller unit [B]**

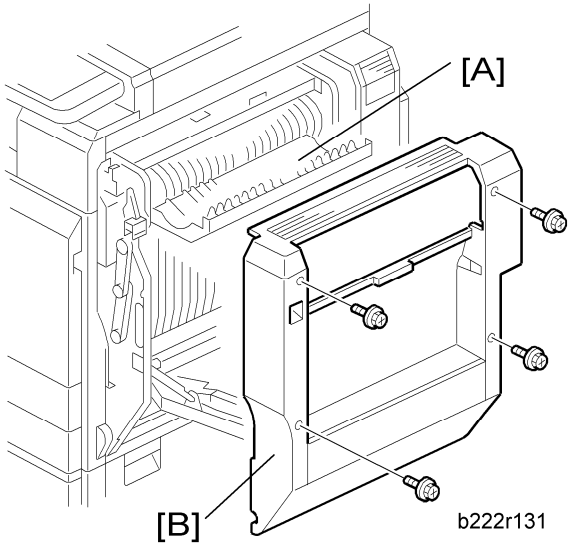
3.9.2 PAPER TRANSFER UNIT

If you will install a new paper transfer unit, then set SP3-902-016 to 1.

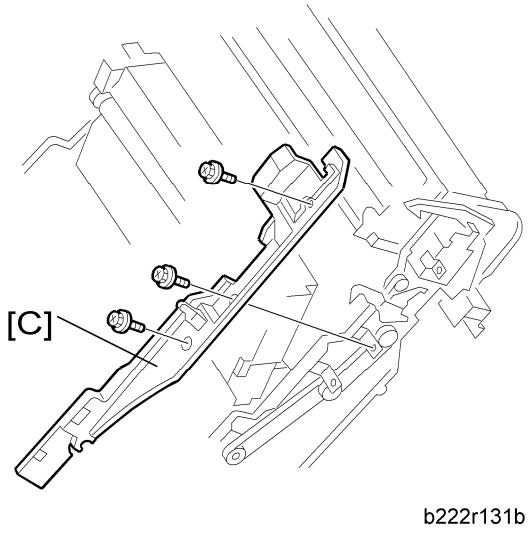
Note

- If you do this, then the machine will reset the PM counter for the paper transfer unit automatically, after you turn the power on again.

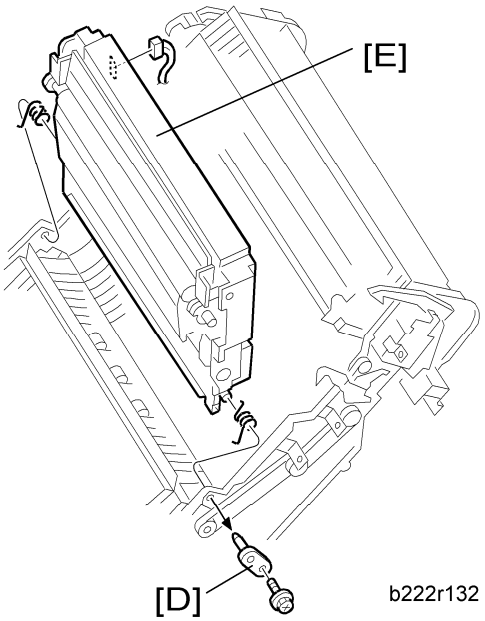
1. **Turn off the main power switch.**



2. **Open the duplex door [A].**
3. **Right door cover [B] (x 4)**
4. **Open the right door.**



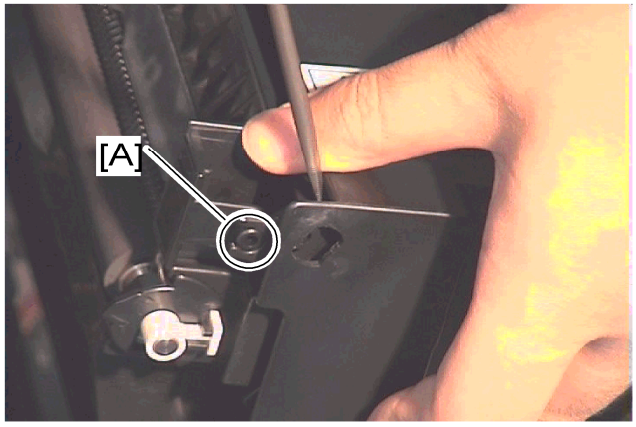
5. **Right door inner cover [C] (x 3)**



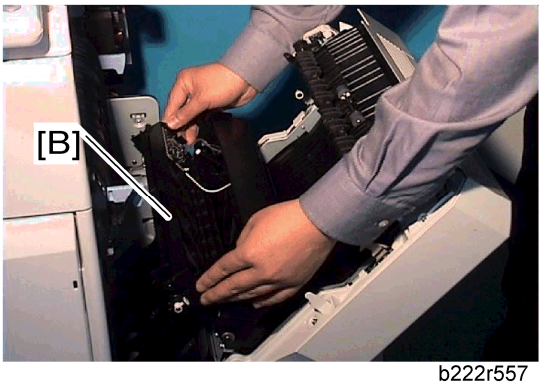
6. **Pivot bracket [D] (x 1)**
7. **Paper transfer unit [E] (x 1, 2 springs)**

3.9.3 HIGH VOLTAGE SUPPLY BOARD - DISCHARGE PLATE

1. **Open the right door.**

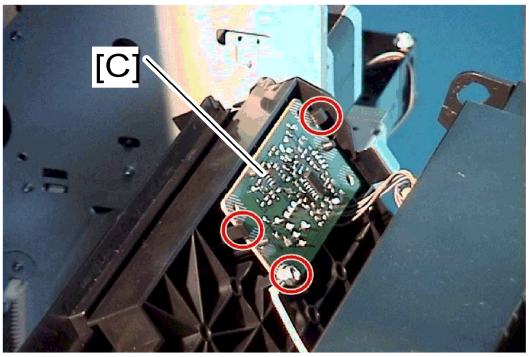


2. **Release the front [A] and rear pivots of the paper transfer roller case.**



b222r557

3. **Paper transfer roller case [B]**

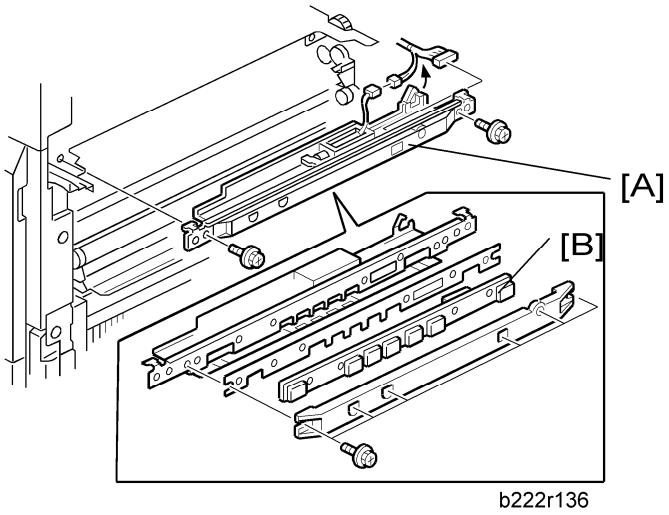


b222r558

4. **High voltage supply board [C] (x 3, x 1, ground cable x 1)**

3.9.4 ID SENSOR BOARD

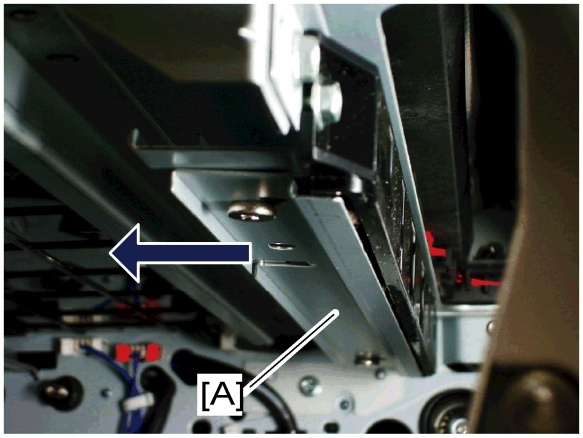
1. **K PCU (☛3.7.1"PCU")**
2. **Open the right door.**
3. **Fusing unit (☛3.11.1 "Fusing Unit")**
4. **Image transfer belt unit (☛3.8.1 "Image Transfer Belt Unit")**



5. **ID sensor unit [A] (x 2, x 2, x 1)**
6. **ID sensor board [B] (x 6)**

Cleaning for ID sensors

ID sensors require a cleaning procedure every 320K. Do the following steps for ID sensor cleaning.



1. **K PCU (☛3.7.1 "PCU")**
2. **Fusing unit (☛3.11.1 "Fusing Unit")**
3. **Image transfer belt unit (☛3.8.1 "Image Transfer Belt Unit")**
4. **Slide the ID sensor shutter [A] to the left side.**
5. **Clean the ID sensors keeping the ID sensor shutter to the left.**

After installing a new ID sensor unit/board

Do the following adjustment after installing a new ID sensor unit/board.

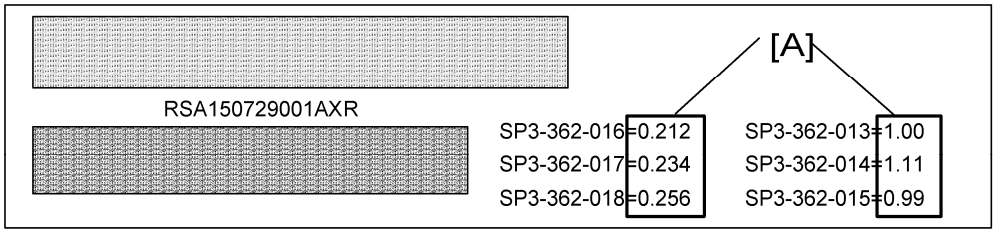
1. **Plug in and turn on the main power switch of the copier.**

2. **Enter the SP mode.**
3. **Input all correction coefficients [A] for the ID sensor with the SP modes referring to the barcode sheet provided with the new ID sensor unit/board.**

Note

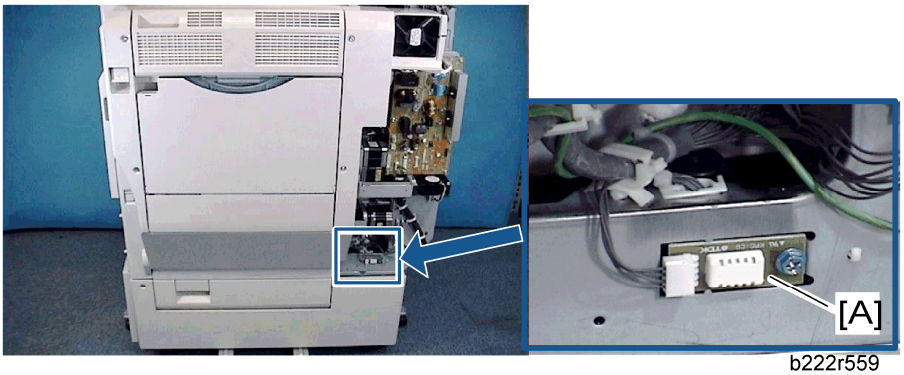
- For example, input "**1.00**" with SP3-362-013.

4. **Exit the SP mode.**



3.9.5 TEMPERATURE AND HUMIDITY SENSOR

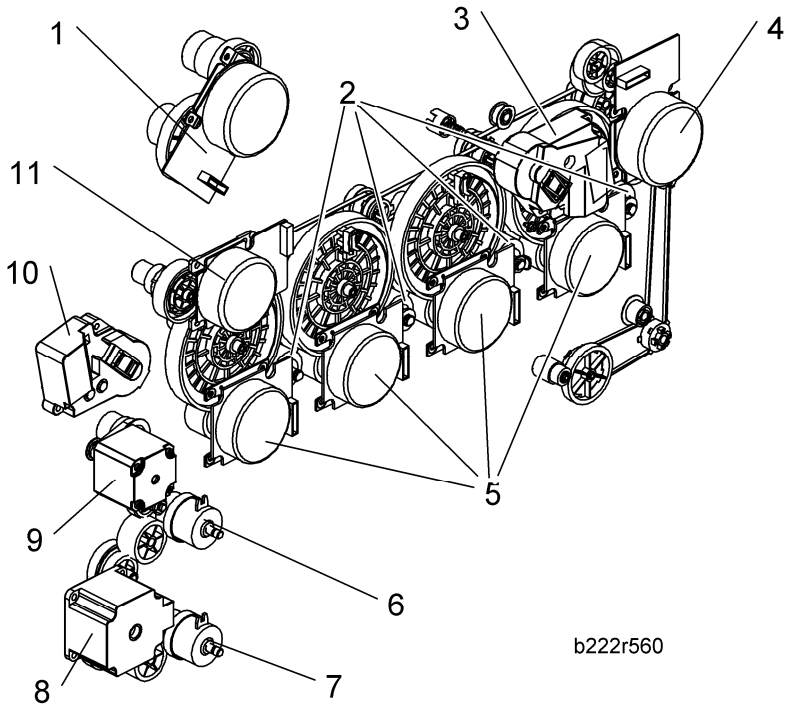
1. **Rear cover (☛3.4.3 "Rear Cover")**
2. **Right rear cover (☛3.4.4"Right Rear Cover")**



b222r559

3. **Temperature and humidity sensor [A] (x 1, x 1)**

3.10 DRIVE UNIT



The drawing above shows the drive unit layout.

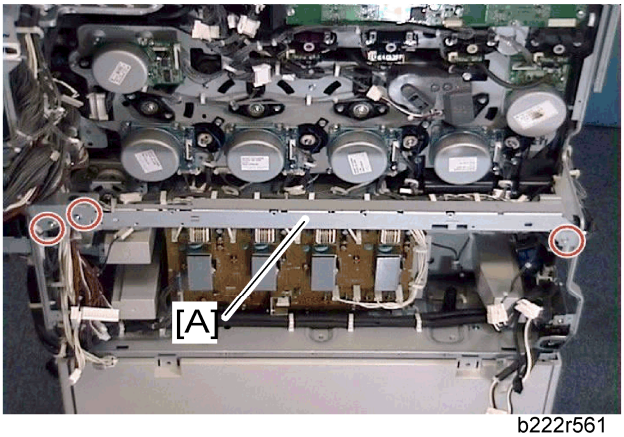
1. Fusing/paper exit motor 2. Development clutches 3. Image transfer belt contact motor 4. Toner transport motor 5. Drum/Development drive motors 6. Paper feed clutch – Tray 1	7. Paper feed clutch – Tray 2 8. Paper feed motor 9. Registration motor 10. Paper transfer contact motor 11. ITB drive motor

There are some motors and clutches that are not shown in the above drawing:

▪ Tray lift motor 1 and 2 ▪ Duplex inverter motor ▪ Duplex/By-pass Motor	▪ Junction gate 1 motor ▪ Shutter motor ▪ By-pass clutch

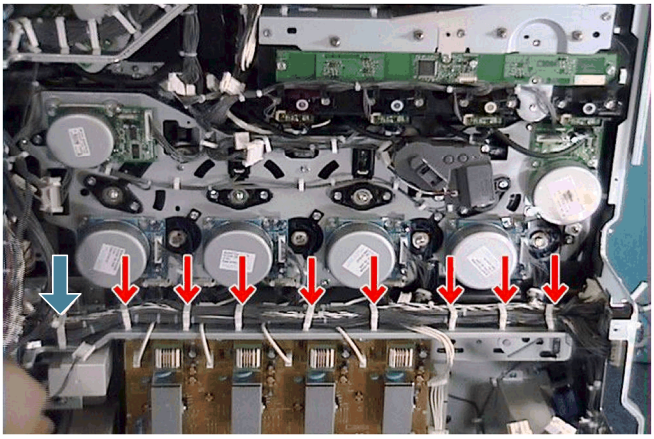
3.10.1 GEAR UNIT

1. **All PCU's**
2. **Image transfer belt unit**
3. **Rear cover (☛3.4.3 "Rear Cover")**
4. **Controller box (☛3.14.3 "Controller Box"")**
5. **Third duct (☛3.7.5 "Third Duct Fan")**
6. **Left cover (☛3.4.2 "Left Cover")**
7. **PSU bracket (☛3.14.7 "PSU")**



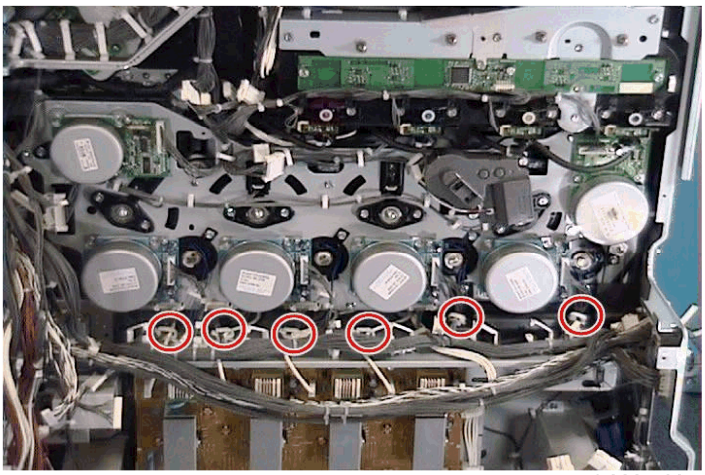
b222r561

8. **Remove the rear stay [A] (x 3).**



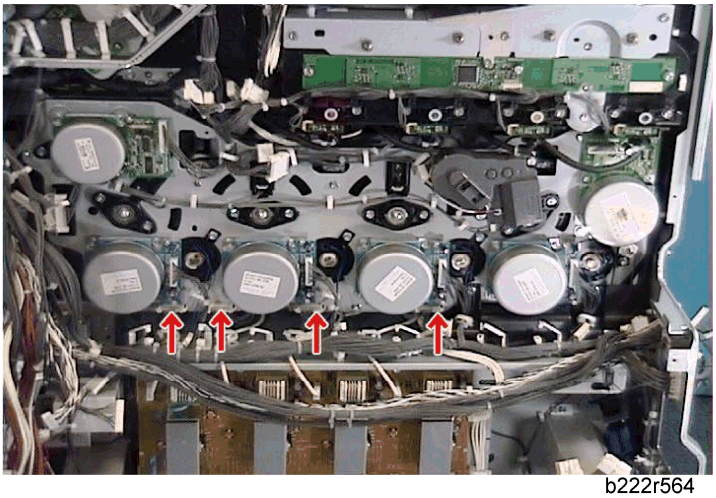
b222r562

9. **Remove eight clamps (small arrows) and release one clamp (large arrow).**



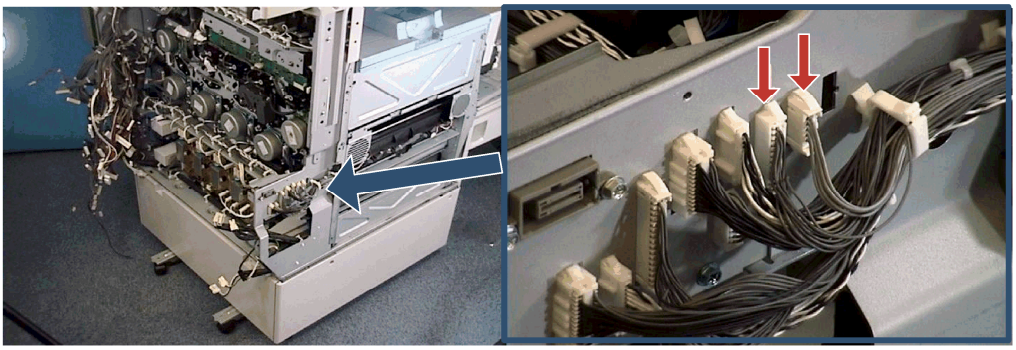
b222r563

10. **Release six clamps (circles) and turn each harness aside.**



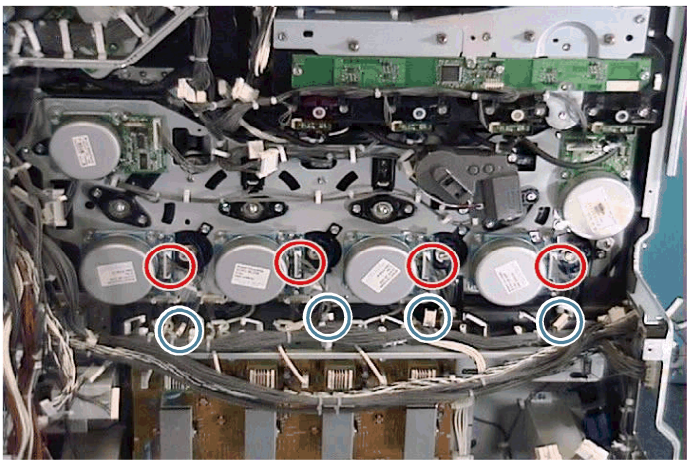
b222r564

11. **Disconnect four connectors (arrows).**



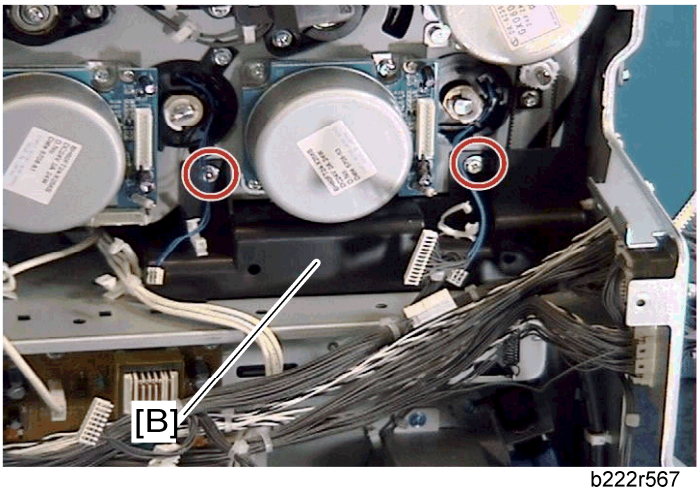
b222r565

12. **Disconnect two connectors (small arrows) and put these harnesses inside the machine.**



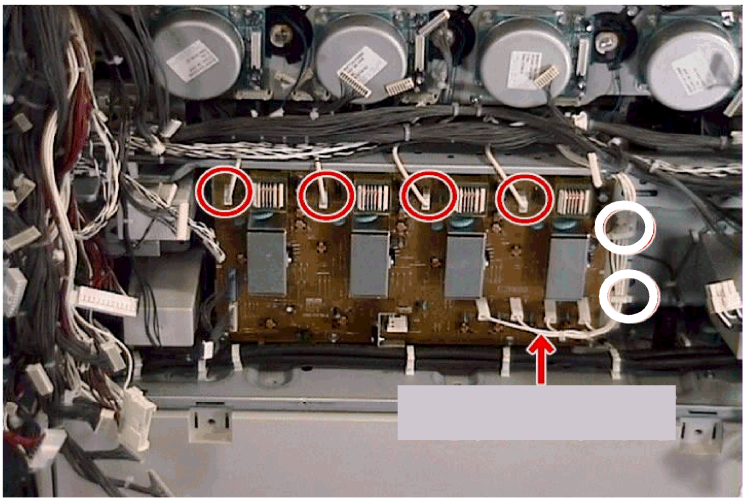
b222r566

13. **Disconnect each connector (upper circles) from the drum/development drive motors (x 1, x 1 each).**
14. **Disconnect each connector (lower circles) from the development clutches (x 1, x 1 each).**



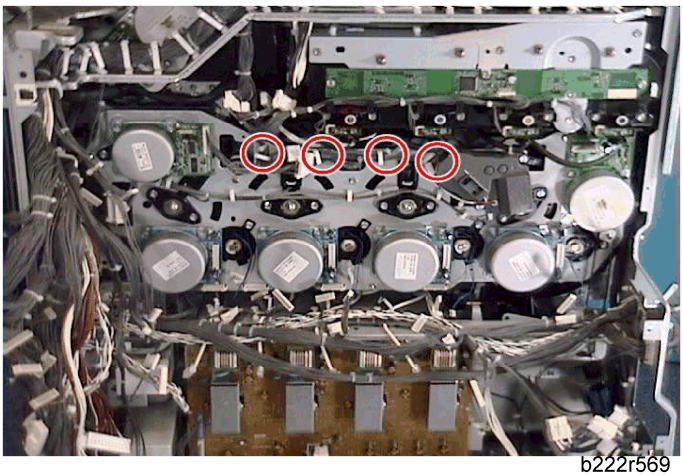
b222r567

15. **Cover [B] (x 2)**



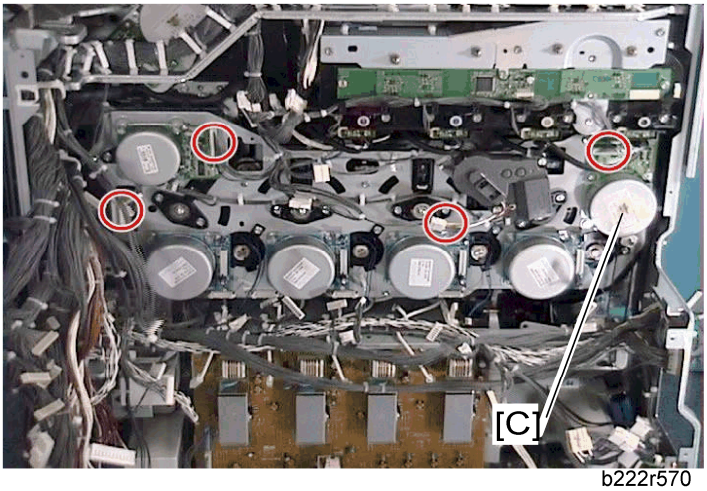
b222r568

16. **Disconnect eight connectors (circles and arrow) from the high voltage supply board (x 8, x 2).**



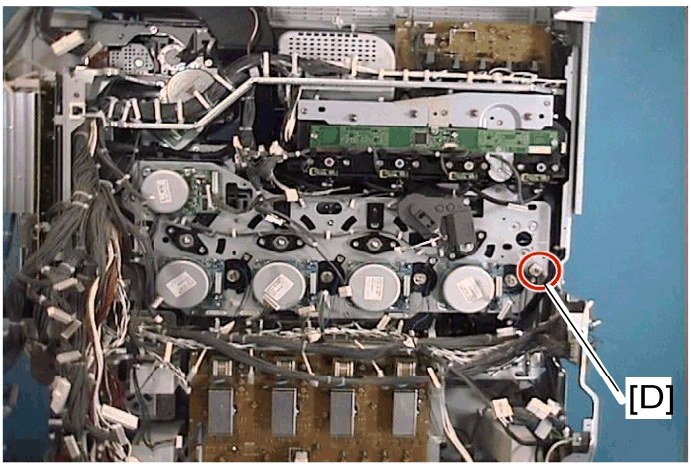
b222r569

17. **Release four clamps (circles) and turn the harnesses aside.**



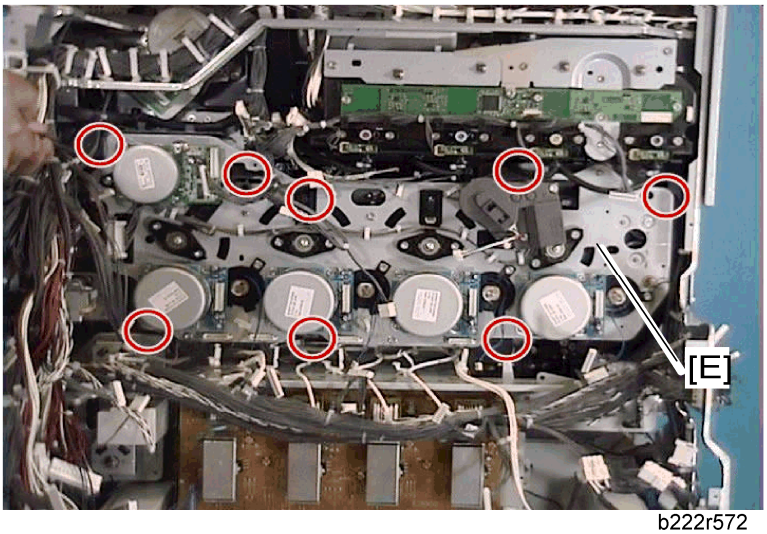
b222r570

18. **Disconnect four connectors (circles) (x 4).**
19. **Toner transport motor [C] (x 3)**



b222r571

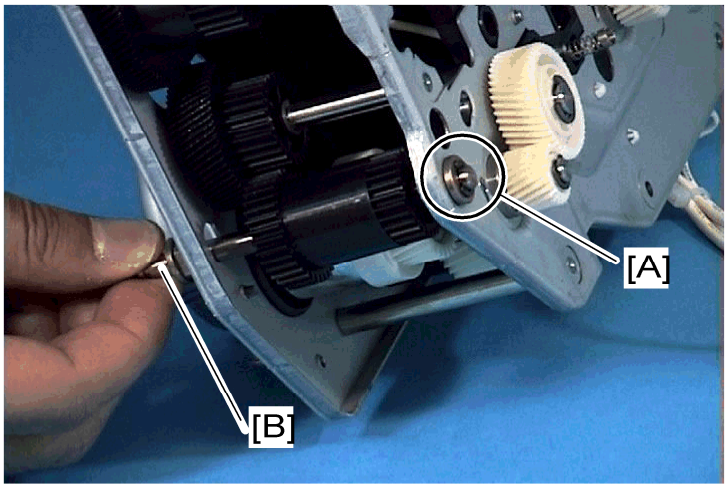
20. **Pulley [D] (timing belt)**



b222r572

21. Gear unit [E] (x 8)

When installing the drive unit



b222r573

Make sure that the bushing [A] is fully set in the frame of the gear unit before installing the timing belt and pulley to the shaft [B].

Adjustment after replacing the gear unit

Do the following procedures after replacing the gear unit.

1. Turn on the main power switch.
2. Enter "Copy SP" in the SP mode.
3. Do the "Drum Phase Adjustment" with SP1-902-001.
4. Check the result of the drum phase adjustment with SP1-902-002.
   0: Success, 1: Failure due to no sampling data,
   2: Failure due to insufficient number of pattern detections

Drive Unit

When the result of this adjustment is "1" or "2":

- Check that all the PCUs are correctly set and that the image transfer belt unit is correctly set.
- Do the "Drum Phase Adjustment" again after checking the PCUs and image transfer belt unit.

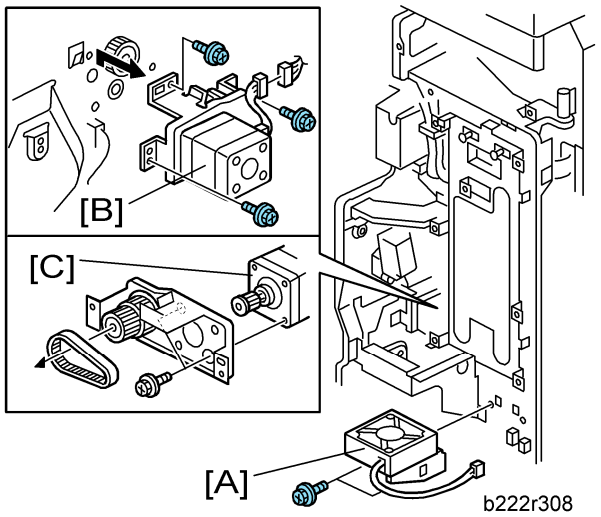
When the result is still "1" or "2" after checking the PCUs and image transfer belt unit:

- Check that the gear unit is installed correctly.

5. Exit the SP mode.

3.10.2 REGISTRATION MOTOR

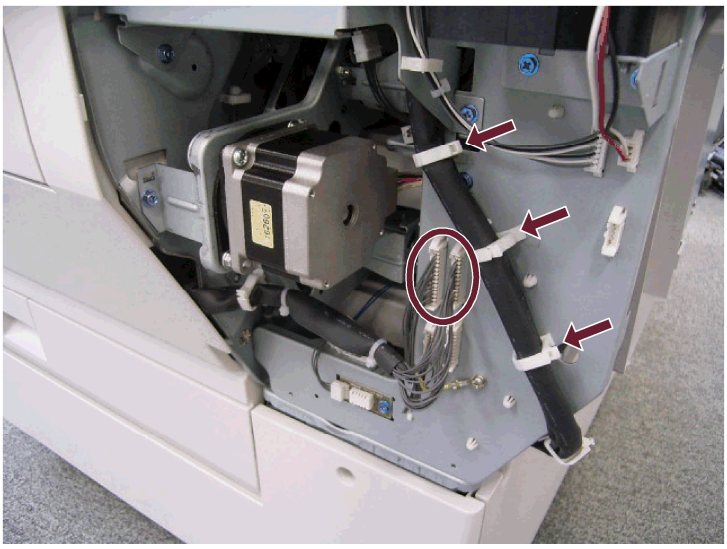
1. **Rear cover (☛3.4.3 "Rear Cover")**
2. **Right rear cover (☛3.4.4 "Right Rear Cover")**
3. **Ventilation duct (☛3.14.7 "PSU")**
4. **Turn the harnesses aside (x 5)**



5. **Fusing power supply board fan bracket [A] (x 2, x 1)**
6. **Registration motor assembly [B] (x 3, x 1)**
7. **Registration motor [C] (x 2, timing belt)**

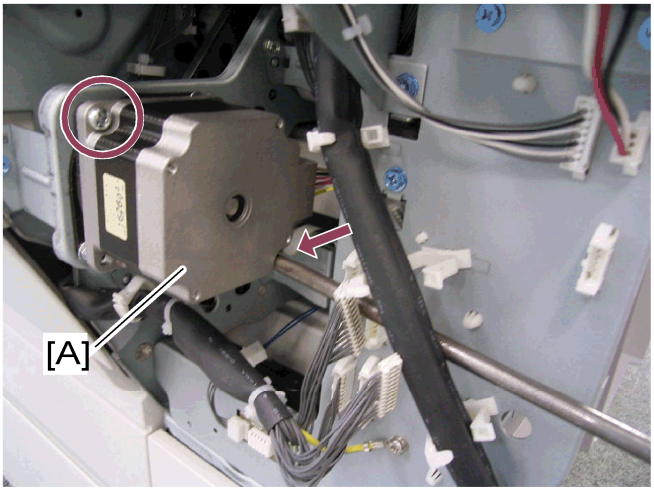
3.10.3 PAPER FEED MOTOR

1. **Rear cover (☛3.4.2 "Rear Cover")**
2. **Right rear cover (☛3.4.4 "Right Rear Cover")**



b222r679

3. **Disconnect two harnesses and release the three clamps (x 2, x 3).**



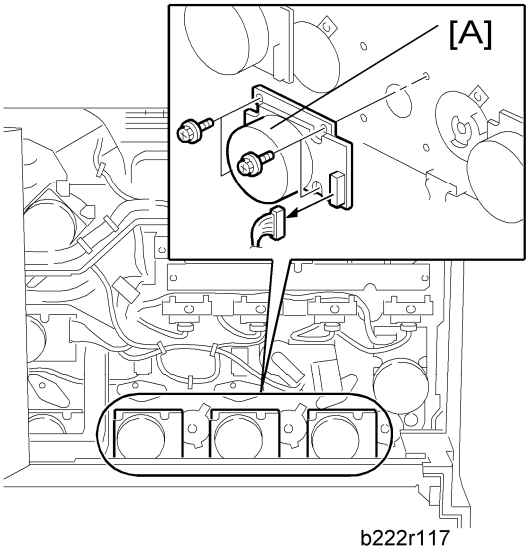
b222r680

4. **Paper feed motor [A] (x 1, x 2, timing belt)**

3.10.4 DRUM/DEVELOPMENT MOTORS FOR M, C, AND Y

1. **Rear cover (3.4.3 "Rear Cover")**
2. **PSU bracket (3.14.7 "PSU")**
3. **Open the controller box.**

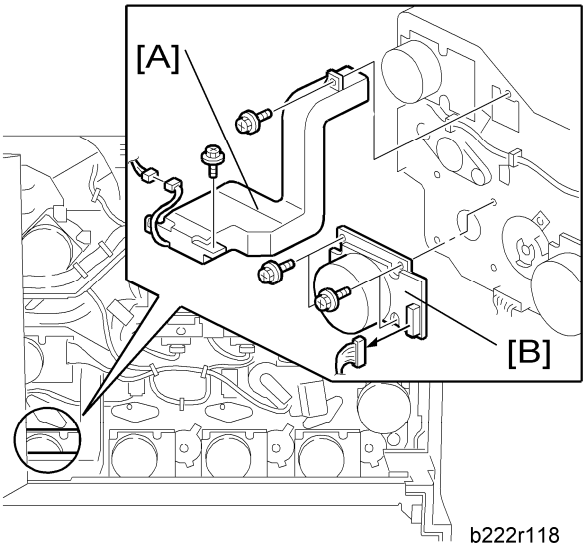
Drive Unit



4. **Drum/Development motors (three motors, one each for MCY) [A] (x 4, x 1 each)**

3.10.5 DRUM/DEVELOPMENT MOTOR-K

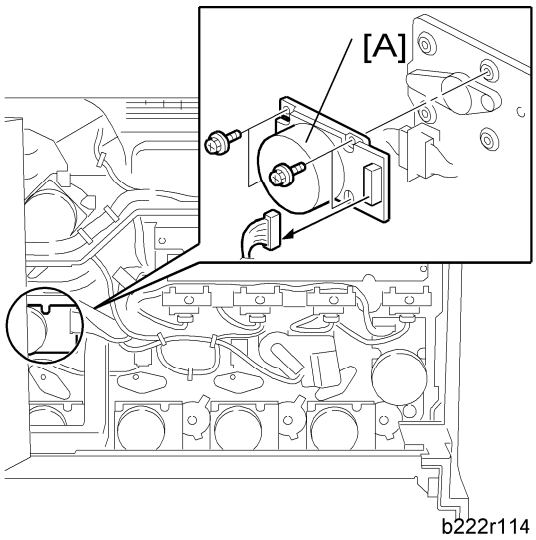
1. **Rear cover (☛3.4.3"Rear Cover")**
2. **PSU bracket (☛3.14.7 "PSU")**
3. **Controller box (☛3.14.3 "Controller Box")**



4. **Third duct [A] (x 2, x 1)**
5. **Drum/Development motor-K [B] (x 4, x 1)**

3.10.6 ITB DRIVE MOTOR

1. **Rear cover (☛3.4.3 "Rear Cover")**
2. **Controller box (☛ 3.14.3 "Controller Box")**

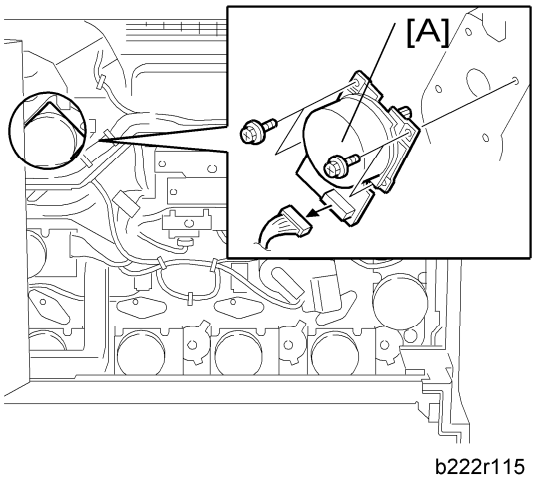


b222r114

3. **ITB drive motor [A] (x 4, x 1)**

3.10.7 FUSING/PAPER EXIT MOTOR

1. **Rear cover (☛3.4.3 "Rear Cover")**
2. **Controller box (☛3.14.3 "Controller Box")**

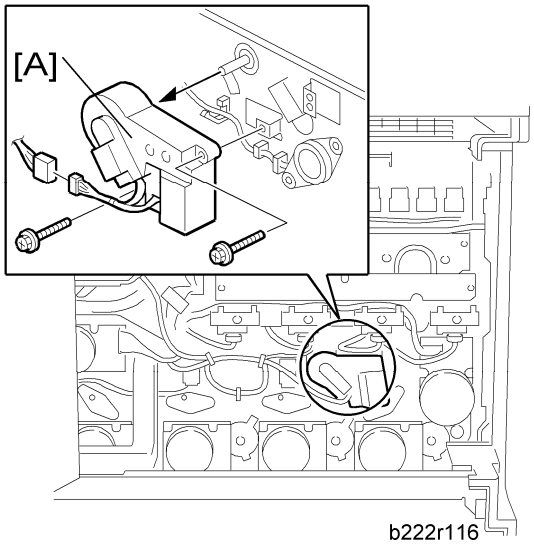


b222r115

3. **Fusing/paper exit motor [A] (x 4, x 1, x 1)**

3.10.8 IMAGE TRANSFER BELT CONTACT MOTOR

1. **Rear cover (☛3.4.3 "Rear Cover")**
2. **Open the controller box. (☛3.14.3 "Controller Box")**

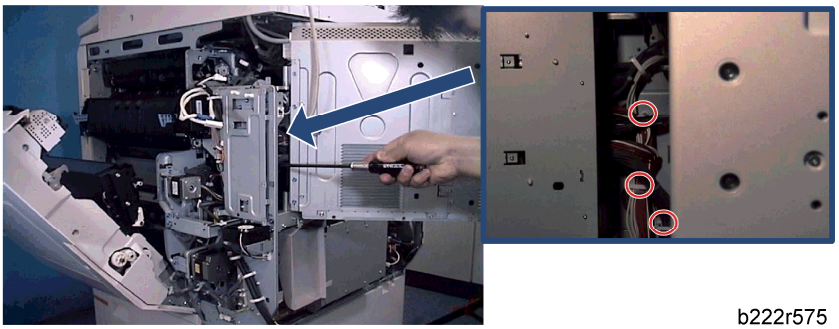


b222r116

3. **Transfer belt contact motor [A] (x 2, x 2, x 1)**

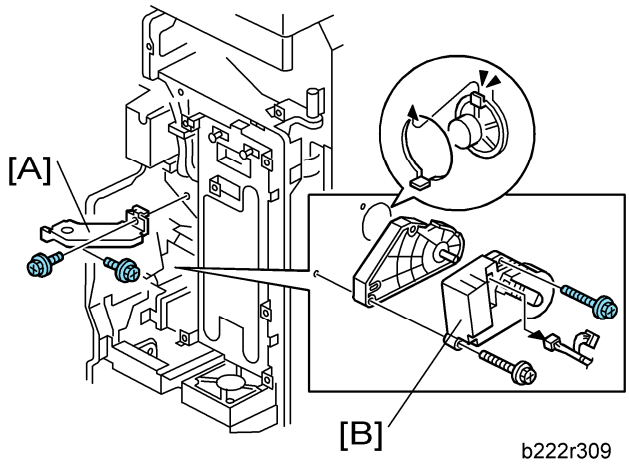
3.10.9 PAPER TRANSFER CONTACT MOTOR

1. **Rear cover (☛3.4.3 "Rear Cover")**
2. **Right rear cover (☛3.4.4 "Right Rear Cover")**



b222r575

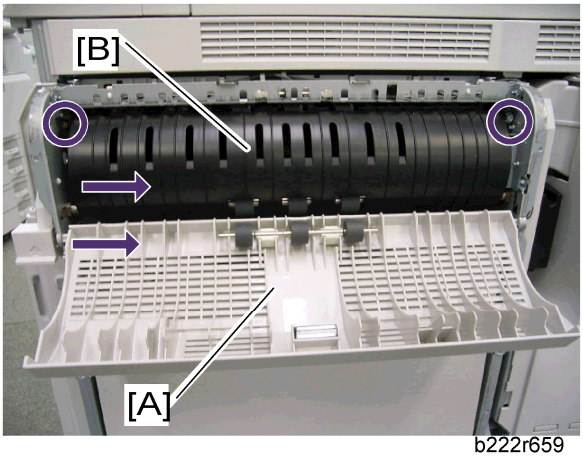
3. **Release three clamps (circles) (x 3).**



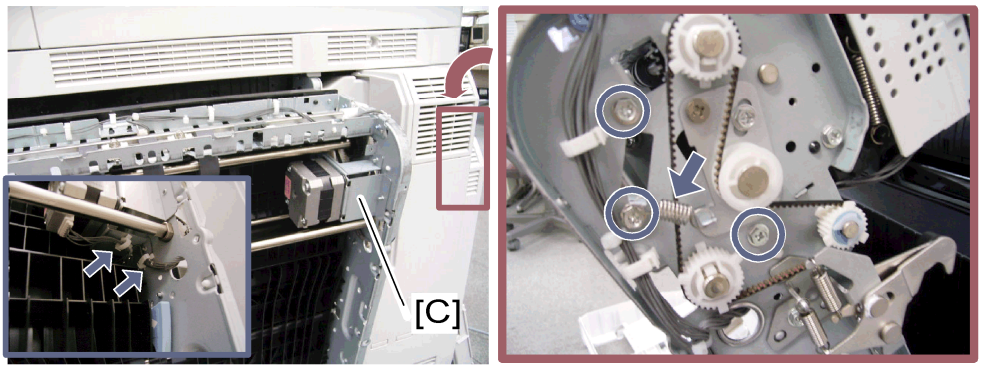
4. **Stay [A] (x 2)**
5. **Paper transfer contact motor [B] (x 2, x 2)**

3.10.10 DUPLEX INVERTER MOTOR

1. **Open the right door.**
2. **Right door cover (3.12.7 "By-pass Bottom Tray")**

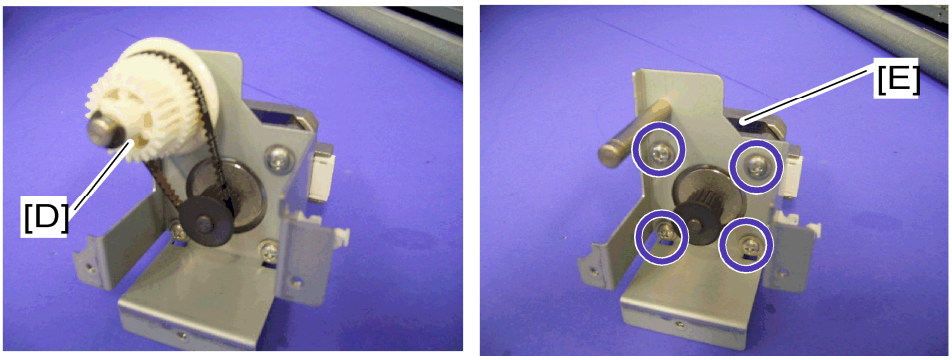


3. **Duplex door [A] (2 hooks)**
4. **Duplex guide plate [B] (x 1, stepped screw x 1; front side, 2 hooks)**
5. **Right door rear cover (3.12.7 "By-pass Bottom Tray"")**



b222r660

6. **Duplex inverter motor bracket [C] (x 3, x 1, x 2, spring x 1)**

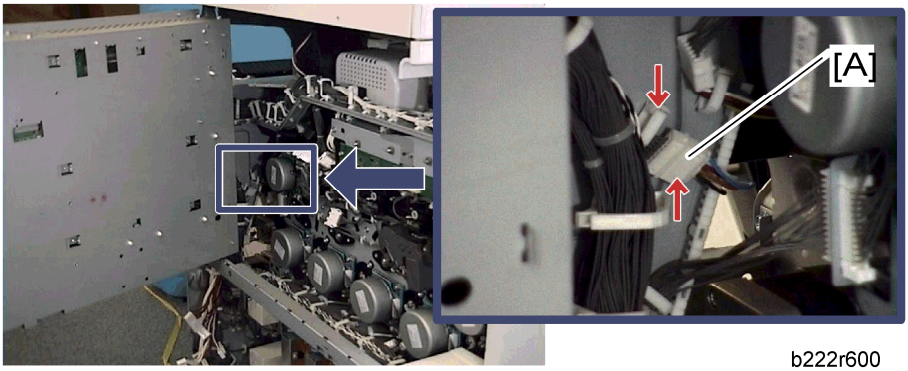


b222r661

7. **Gear [D] (x 1, belt x 1)**
8. **Duplex inverter motor [E] (x 4)**

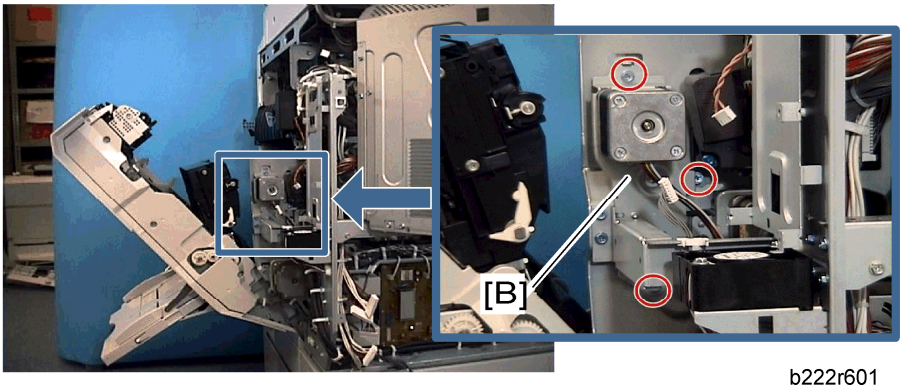
3.10.11 DUPLEX/BY-PASS MOTOR

1. **Rear cover (3.4.3 "Rear Cover"")**
2. **Right rear cover (3.4.4 "Right Rear Cover")**
3. **Open the controller box (3.14.3 "Controller Box").**



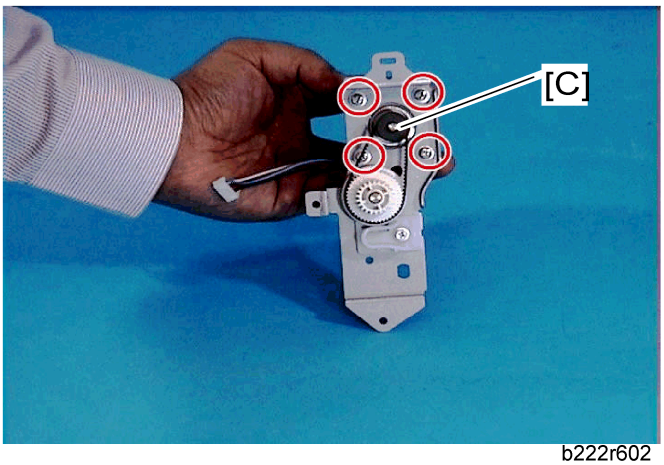
b222r600

4. **Disconnect the connector [A] (x 1)**



b222r601

5. **Duplex/by-pass motor bracket [B] (x 3)**



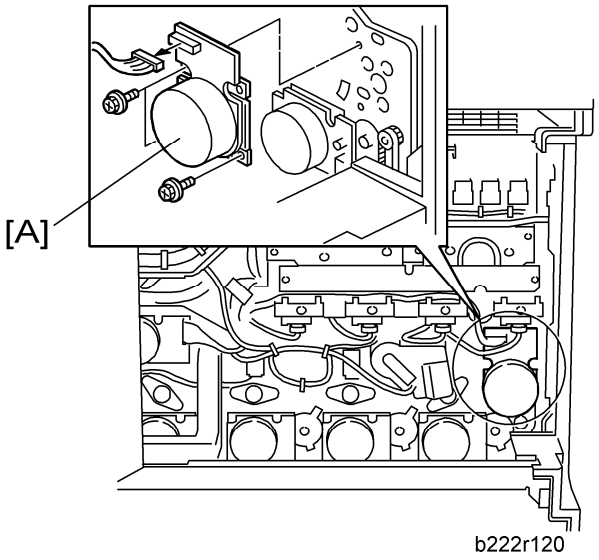
b222r602

6. **Duplex/by-pass motor [C] (x 4)**

3.10.12 TONER TRANSPORT MOTOR

1. **Rear cover (3.4.3 "Rear Cover")**
2. **Open the controller box (3.14.3 "Controller Box")**

Drive Unit

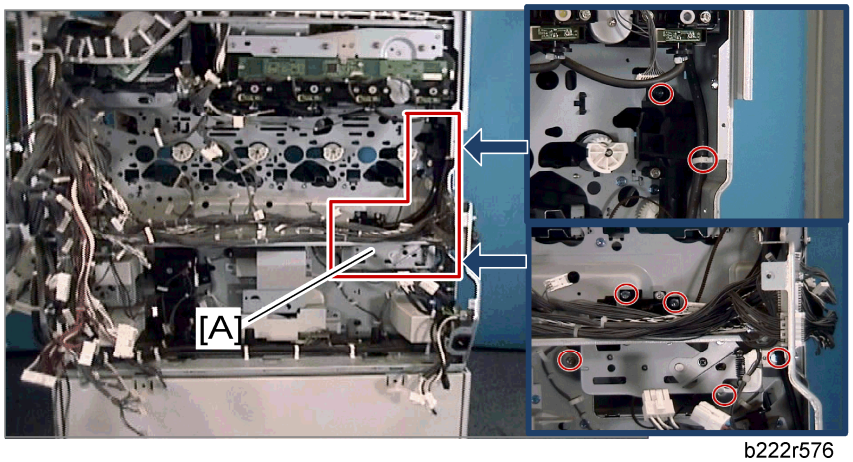


b222r120

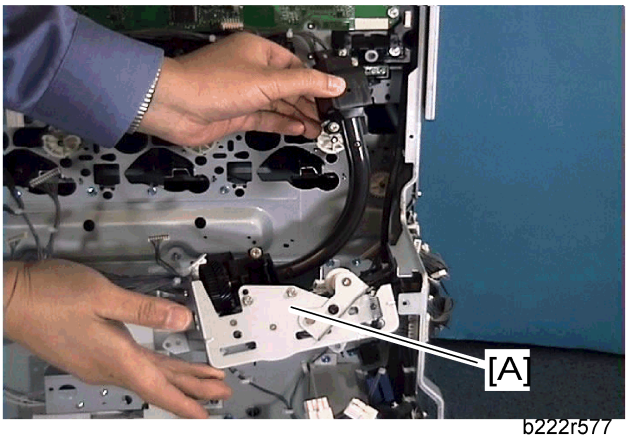
3. **Toner transport motor [A] (x 3, x 1)**

3.10.13 TONER COLLECTION UNIT

1. **Remove all PCUs (☛3.10.1 "Gear Unit").**
2. **Remove the image transfer belt unit (☛3.8.1 "Image Transfer Belt Unit").**
3. **Rear cover (☛3.4.3 "Rear Cover"")**
4. **Controller box (☛3.14.3 "Controller Box")**
5. **Third duct (☛3.7.5 "Third Duct Fan")**
6. **Left cover (☛3.4.2 "Left Cover")**
7. **PSU bracket (☛3.14.7 "PSU")**
8. **High voltage power supply board bracket**



b222r576

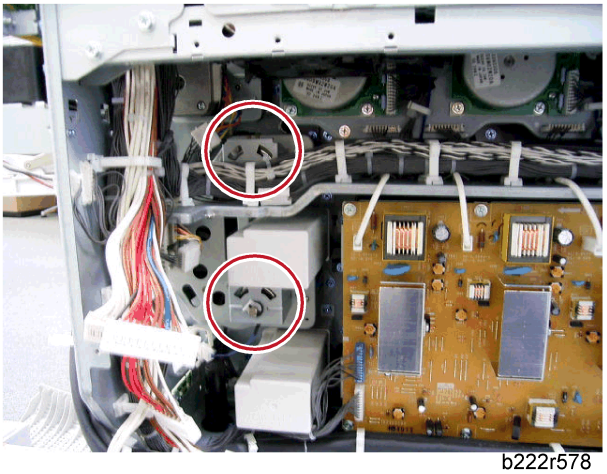


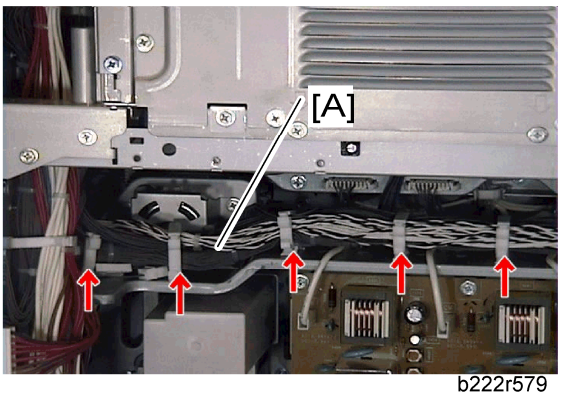
b222r577

9. **Toner collection unit [A] (x 6, x 1)**

3.10.14 PAPER FEED CLUTCHES

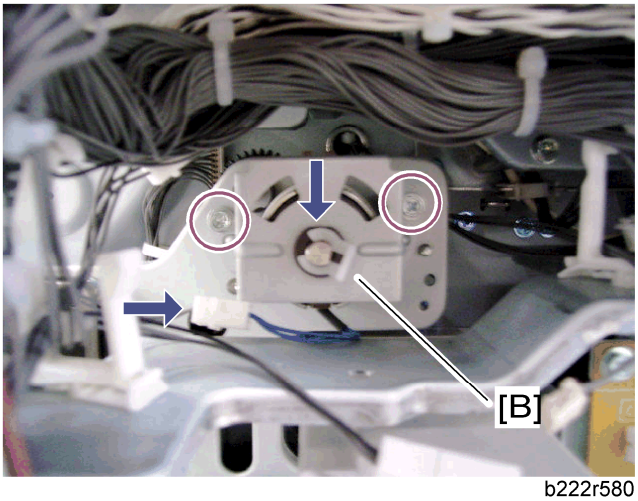
1. **Rear cover (☛3.4.3 "Rear Cover")**
2. **PSU bracket (☛3.14.7 "PSU")**


b222r578



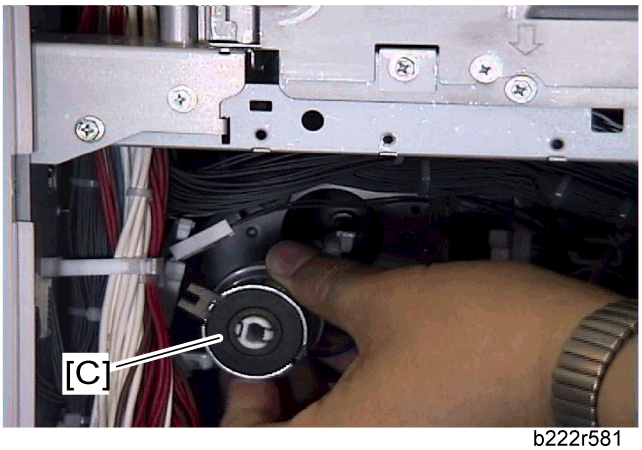
b222r579

3. **Release five clamps, and then turn the harness [A] aside.**



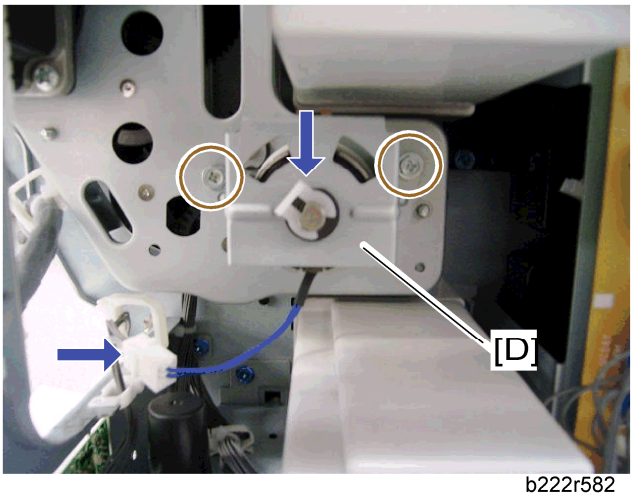
b222r580

4. **Paper feed clutch 1 bracket [B] (x 2, x 1, x 1)**



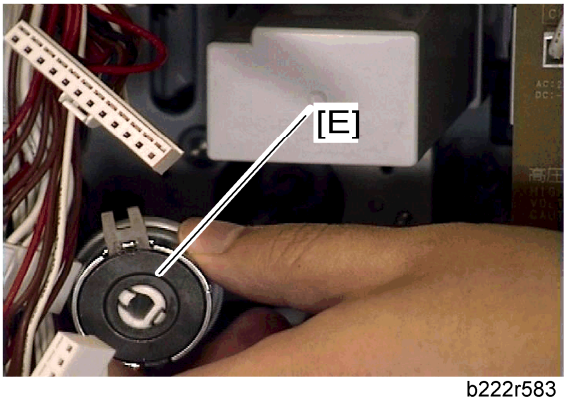
b222r581

5. **Paper feed clutch 1 [C]**



b222r582

6. **Paper feed clutch 2 bracket [D] (x 2, x 1, x 1)**

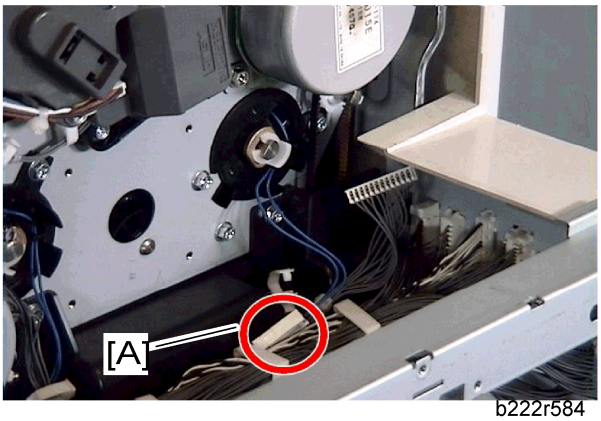


b222r583

7. **Paper feed clutch 2 [E]**

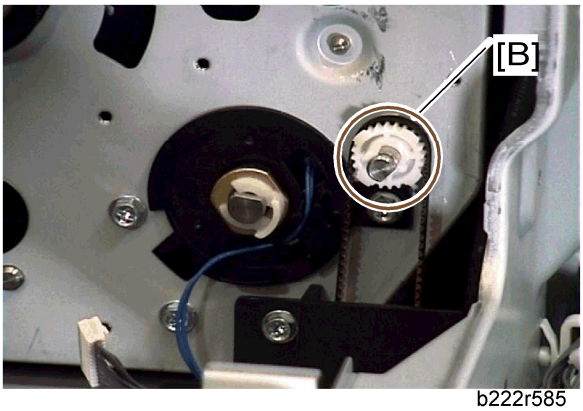
3.10.15 DEVELOPMENT CLUTCH-Y

1. **Rear cover (☛3.4.3 "Rear Cover")**
2. **PSU bracket (☛3.14.7 "PSU")**
3. **Open the controller box. (☛3.14.3 "Controller Box").**
4. **Drum/development motor-Y (☛3.10.4 and 3.10.5 “Drum/Development Motor-K")**



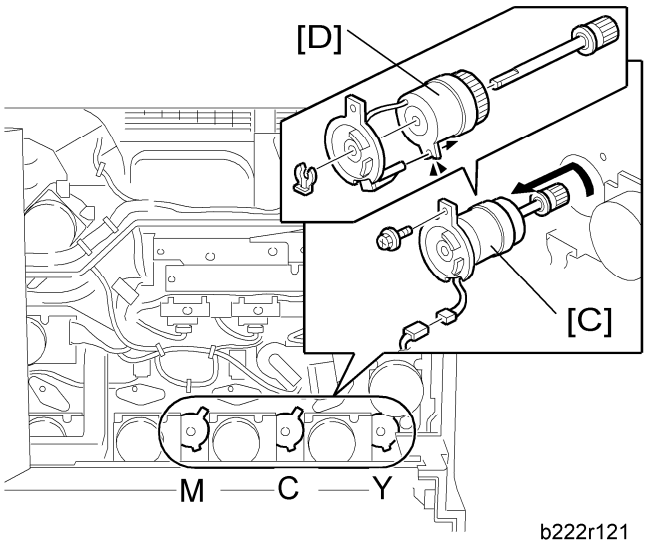
b222r584

5. **Disconnect the connector [A] (✍ x 1).**



b222r585

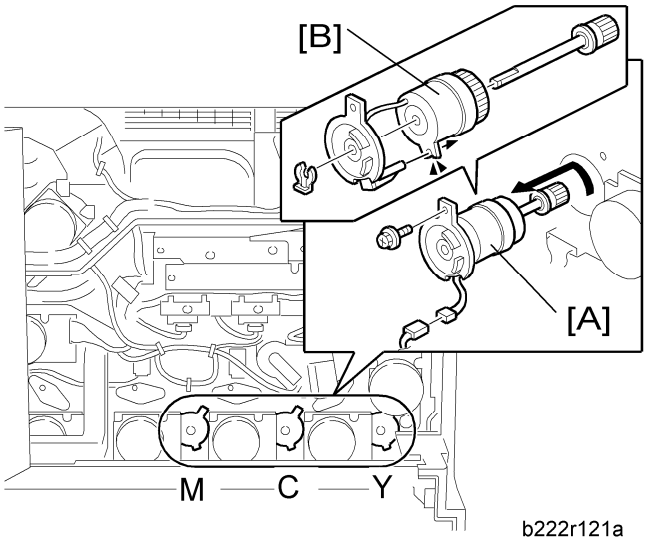
6. **Remove the pulley and bushing [B].**



7. **Turn the development clutch unit [C] counter-clockwise and then pull it out (x 1).**
8. **Development clutch-Y [D] (x 1)**

3.10.16 DEVELOPMENT CLUTCHES FOR M AND C

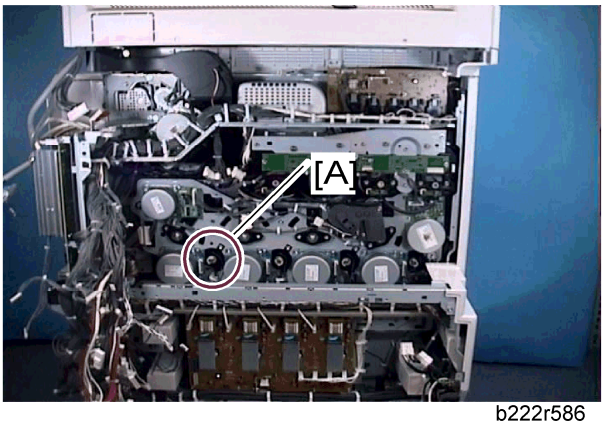
1. **Rear cover (☛3.4.3 "Rear Cover")**
2. **PSU bracket (☛3.14.7 "PSU")**
3. **Open the controller box. (☛3.14.3 "Controller Box"").**
4. **Drum/development motors for M and C (☛3.10.4 "Drum/Development Motors for M, C, and Y"")**
5. **Disconnect the connector for each development clutch (x 1).**



6. Turn the development clutch unit [A] counter-clockwise and then pull it out (x 1).
7. Development clutches for M and C [B] (x 1)

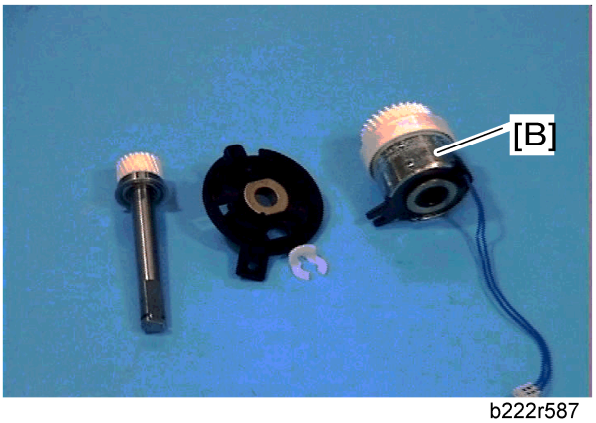
3.10.17 DEVELOPMENT CLUTCH-K

1. Rear cover (3.4.3 "Rear Cover")
2. PSU bracket (3.14.7 "PSU")
3. Controller box. (3.14.3 "Controller Box")
4. Drum/development motor-K (3.10.5 "Drum/Development Motor-K")



b222r586

5. Turn the development clutch unit [A] counter-clockwise and then pull it out (x 1).



b222r587

6. Development clutch-K [B] (x 1)

3.11 FUSING

3.11.1 FUSING UNIT

⚠CAUTION

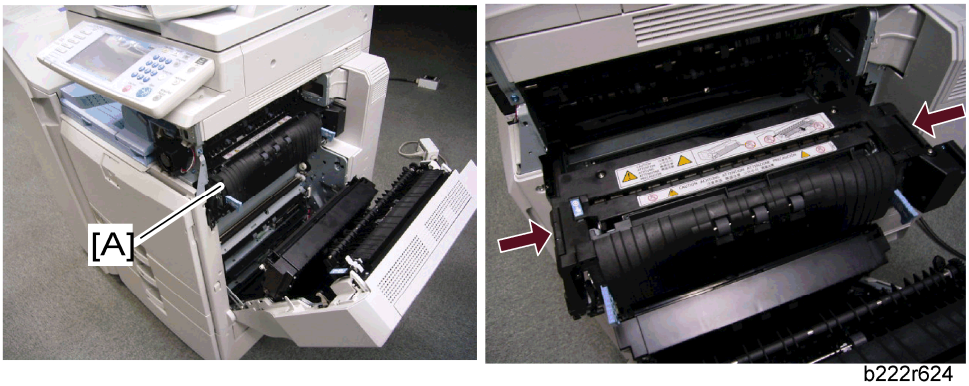
- Turn off the main switch and wait until the fusing unit cools down before beginning any of the procedures in this section. The fusing unit can cause serious burns.

1. **If you install a lot of new parts in the fusing unit (at PM for example), then set SP 3902-014 to "1".**

Note

- If you do this, then the machine will reset the PM counter for the fusing unit automatically, after you turn the power on again.
  Do not do this if you replace the complete fusing unit. This is because the fusing unit has a new detection mechanism.

2. **Turn off the main power switch.**
3. **Open the right door.**

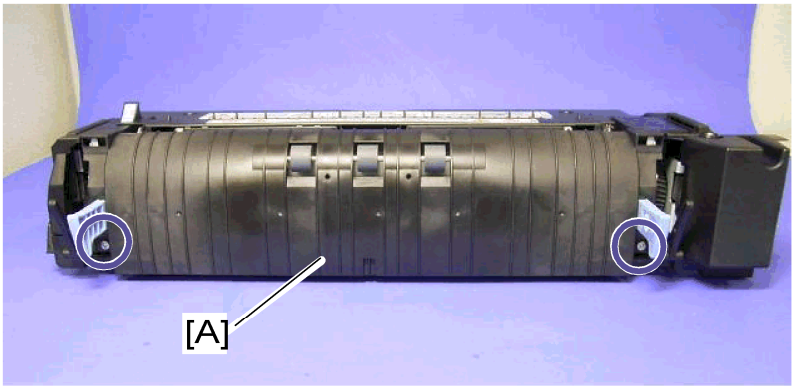


b222r624

4. **Pull out the fusing unit [A].**

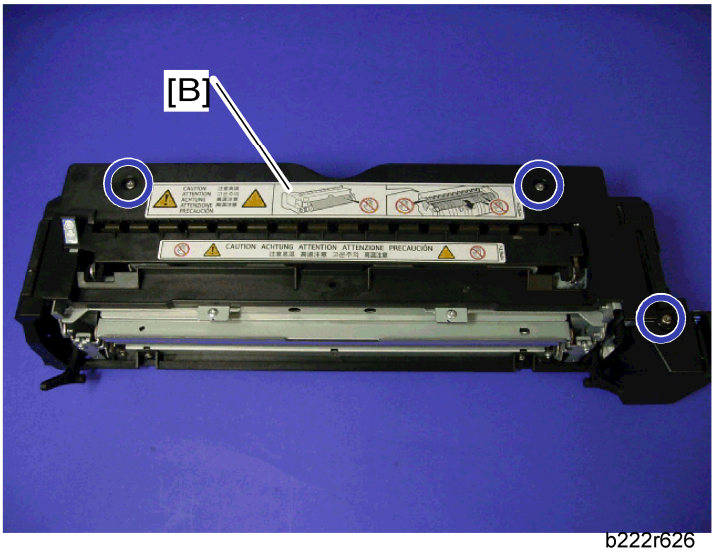
3.11.2 FUSING LAMP

1. **Fusing unit (☛3.11.1 "Fusing Unit")**



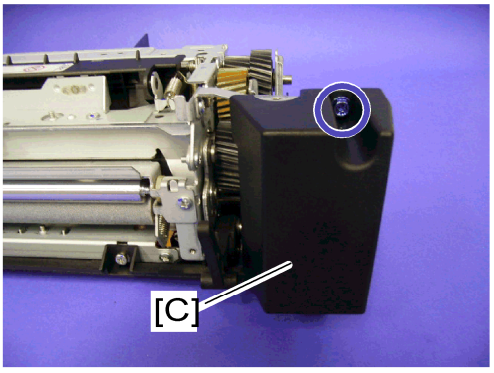
b222r625

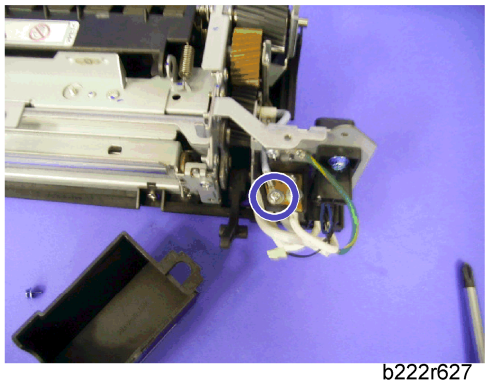
2. **Fusing right cover [A] (🔩 x 2; Stepped screws)**



b222r626

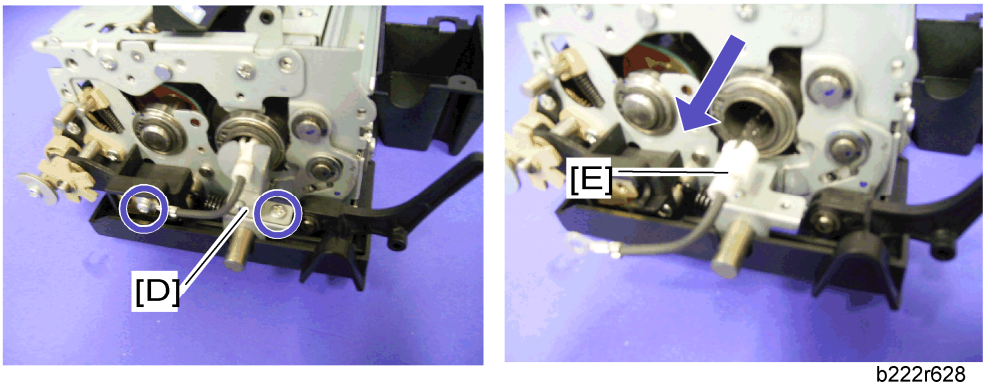
3. **Fusing upper cover [B] (🔩 x 3; Stepped screws)**





b222r627

4. **Connector cover [C] (🔩 x 1)**
5. **Remove the rear terminal of the fusing lamp (🔩 x 1)**

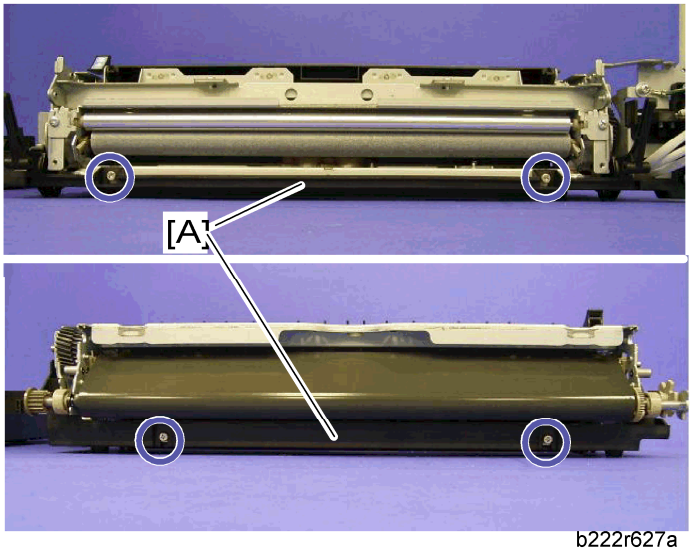


b222r628

6. **Fusing lamp front bracket [D] (x 1)**
7. **Remove the front terminal of the fusing lamp (x 1)**
8. **Fusing lamp [E]**

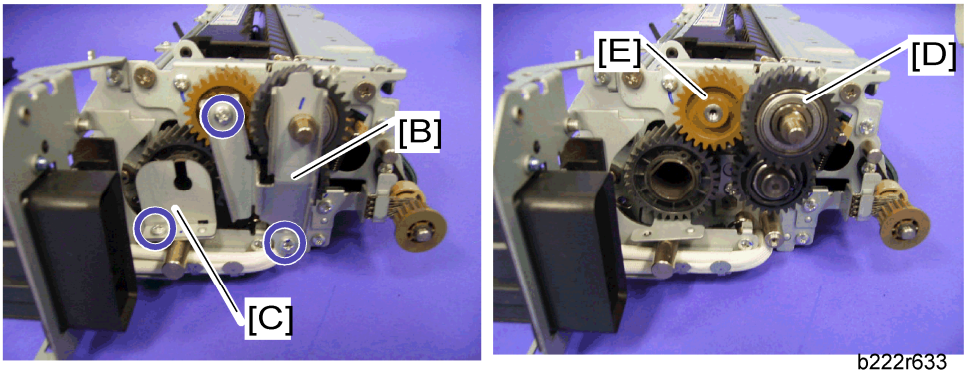
3.11.3 PRESSURE ROLLER AND PRESSURE ROLLER BEARING

1. **Fusing unit (3.11.1"Fusing Unit")**
2. **Fusing right cover, fusing upper cover (3.1.2 "Fusing Lamp")**



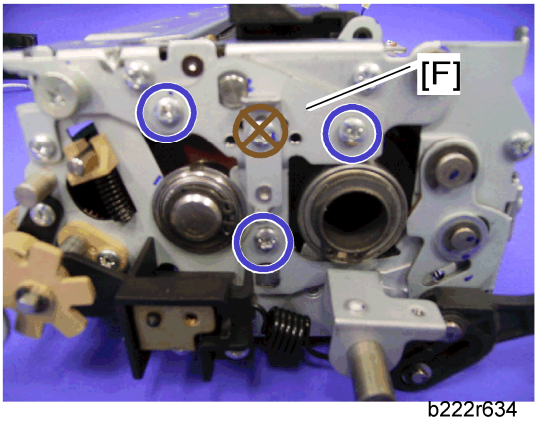
b222r627a

3. **Fusing bottom cover [A] (x 4)**
4. **Fusing lamp (3.11.2)**



b222r633

5. **Gear holder bracket [B] (x 2)**
6. **Fusing lamp rear bracket [C] (x 1)**
7. **One-way clutch gear [D] (x 1) and idle gear [E]**

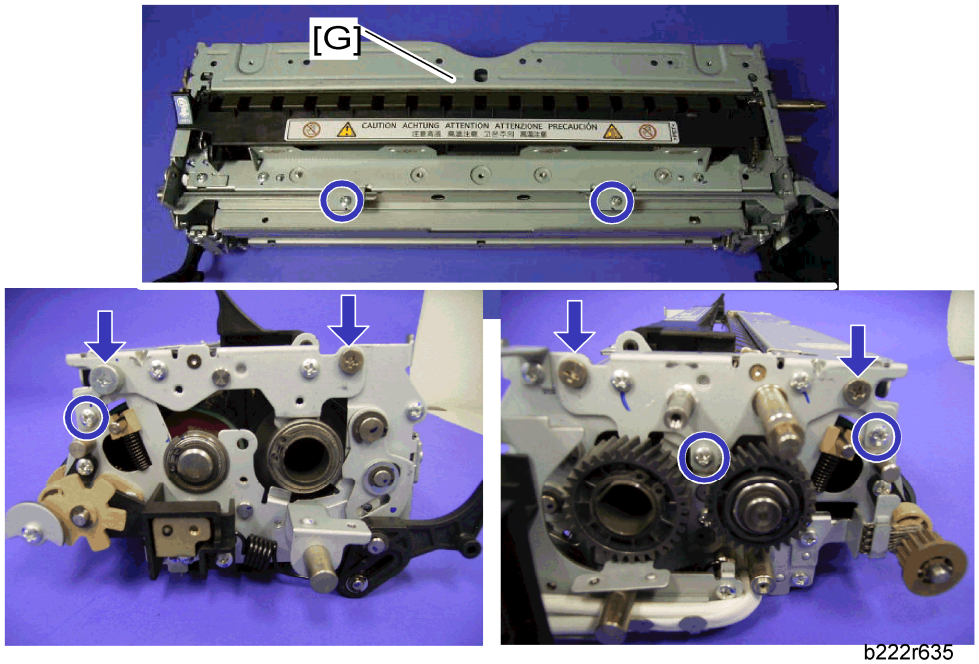


b222r634

8. **Pressure adjustment bracket [F] at the front side (x 3)**

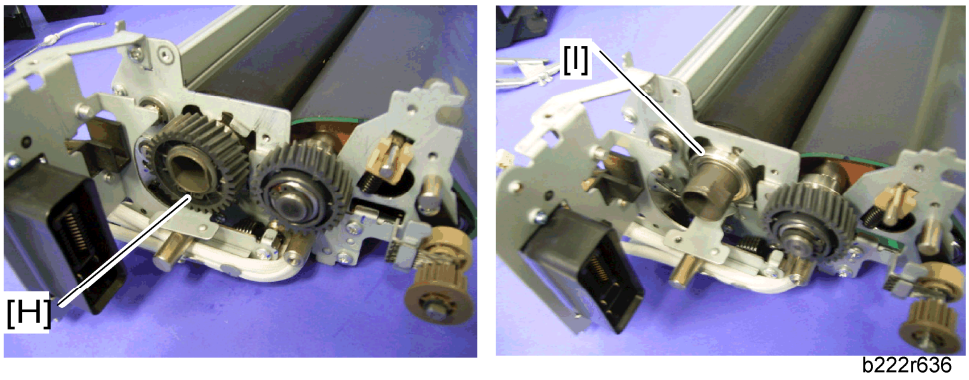
Important

- Never remove the screw that is covered by the crossed-circle in the above photo.



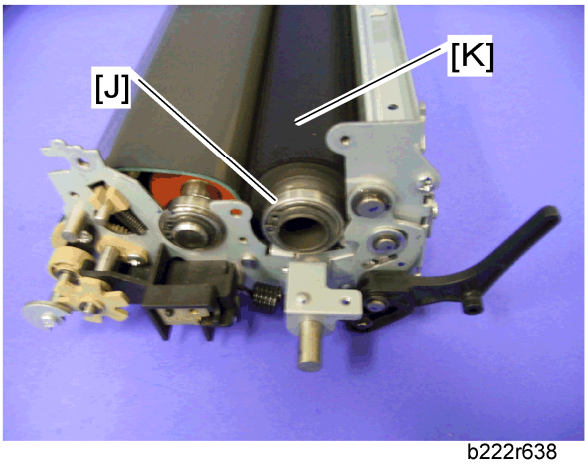
b222r635

9. **Upper frame [G] (x 5, stepped screw x 4, stud screw x 1)**



b222r636

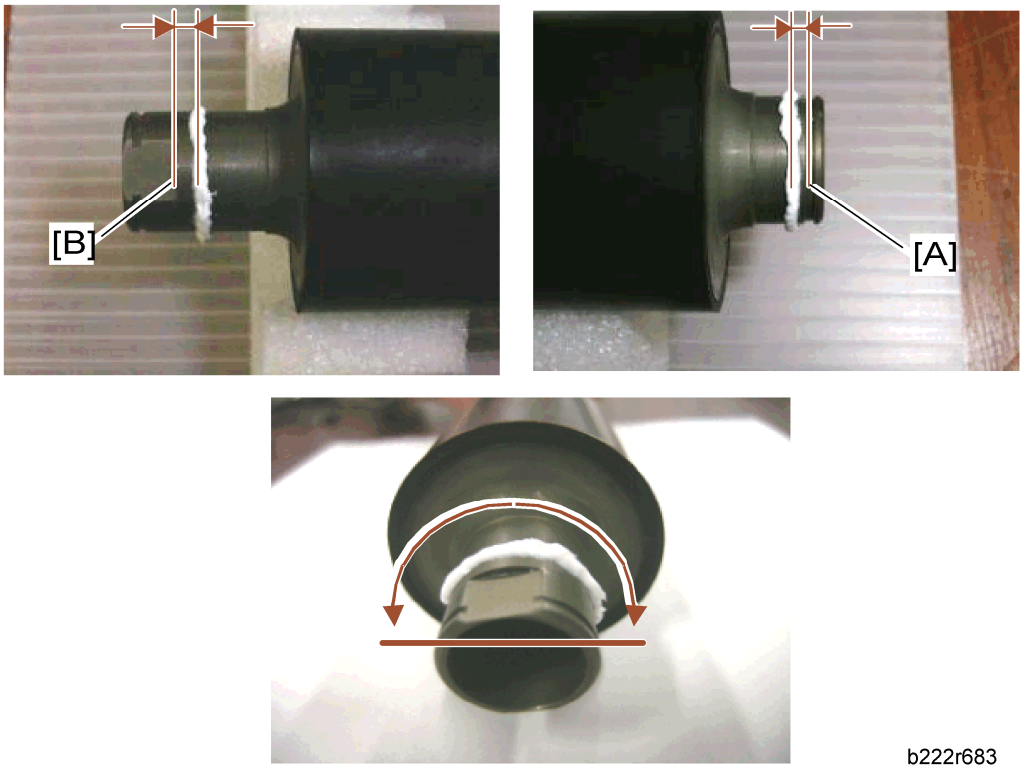
10. **Pressure roller gear [H] (C-ring x 1)**
11. **Pressure roller bushing [I] at the rear side**



b222r638

12. **Pressure roller bushing [J] at the front side**
13. **Pressure roller [K]**

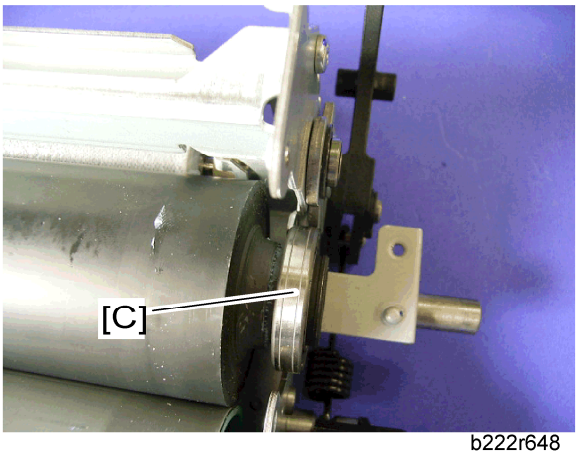
When re-installing the pressure roller



b222r683

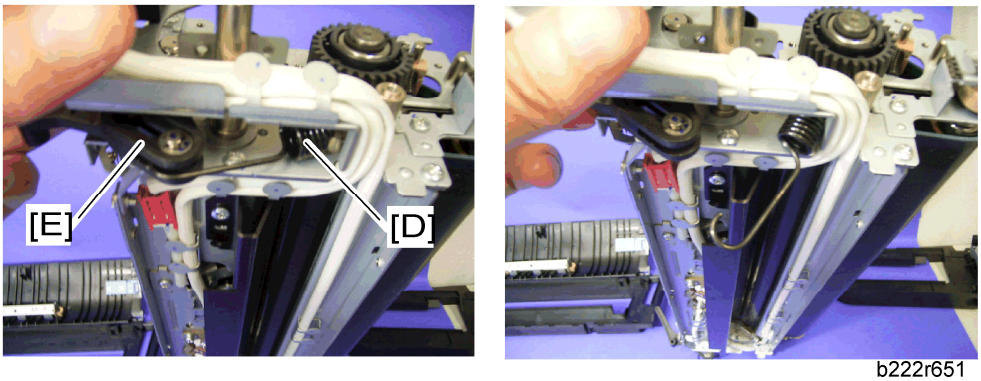
1. Apply "Barrierta S552R" to the front shaft of the pressure roller at 2 mm from the notch [A], and to the rear shaft of the pressure roller at 2 mm from the edge [B]. (Apply the lubricant to half of the circumference of the pressure roller, as shown in the lower of the three above diagrams.)

Fusing



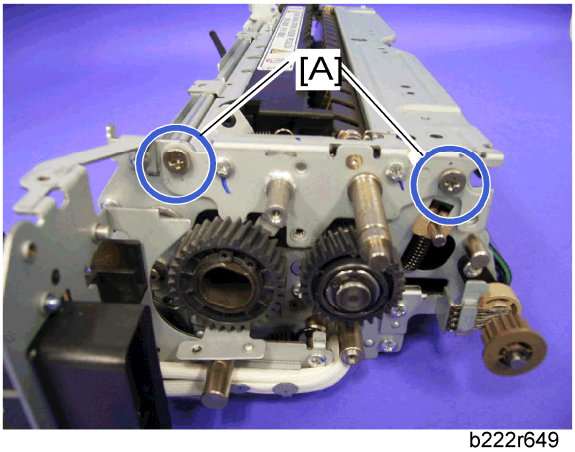
b222r648

2. Make sure that pressure roller bushing [C] at the front side is set as shown below.



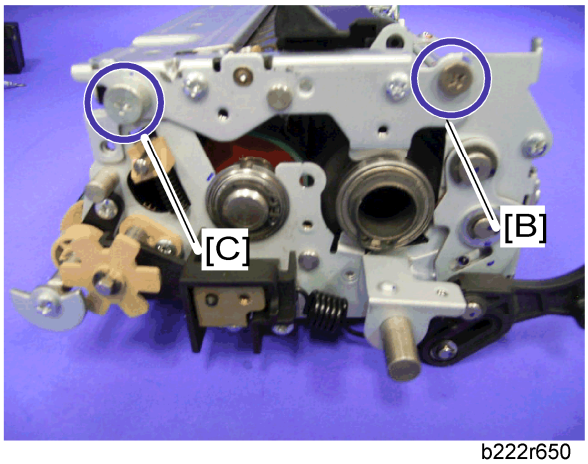
b222r651

3. Make sure that the spring [D] is correctly hooked on the pressure lever [E] before installing the upper frame. (The picture above on the right side shows an example of how to do it wrong.)
4. Follow the correct order when installing the upper frame.



b222r649

1. **Secure the stepped screws [A] at the rear side first (at this time, do not fully tighten these screws).**

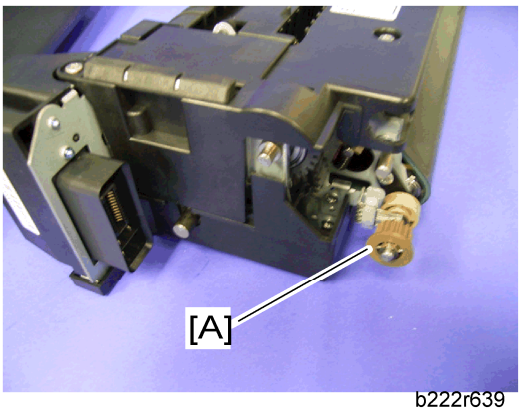


b222r650

2. Secure the stepped screw [B] and stud screw [C] at the front side tightly.
3. Secure the stepped screws [A] at the rear side tightly after securing the stepped screw [B] and stud screw [C] at the front side.
4. Install the pressure adjustment bracket, and then secure the other screws.

3.11.4 FERRITE ROLLER GEAR

1. Fusing unit (☛3.11.1)

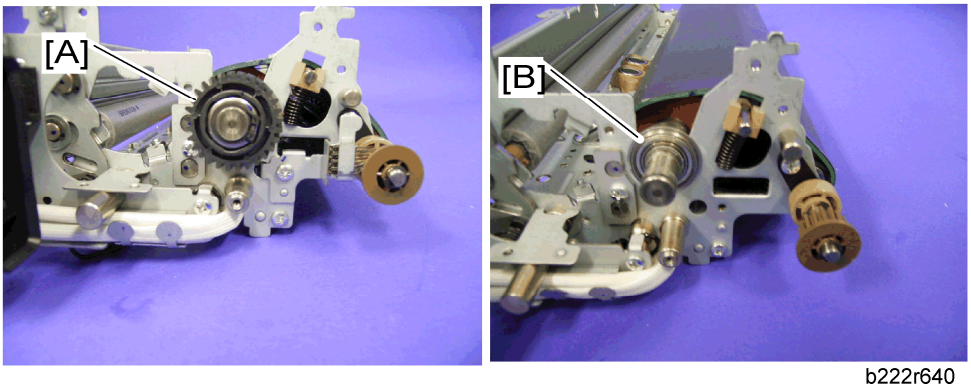


b222r639

2. Ferrite roller gear [A] (℄ x 1)

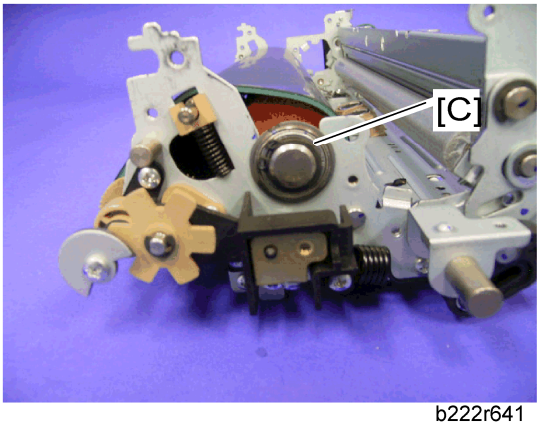
3.11.5 FUSING ROLLER BUSHING AND TENSION ROLLER BUSHING

1. Fusing unit (☛3.11.1"Fusing Unit")
2. Fusing right cover, fusing upper cover (☛3.11.1"Fusing Unit")
3. Pressure Roller (☛3.11.3"Pressure Roller and Presure Roller Bearing)



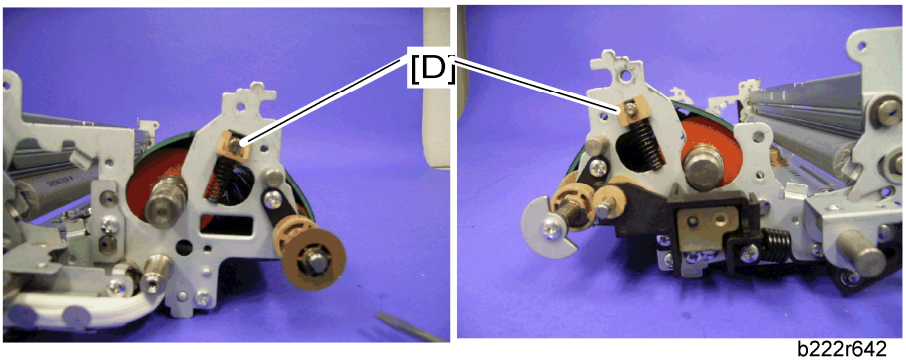
b222r640

4. **Fusing roller gear [A] (C-ring x 1)**
5. **Fusing roller bushing [B] (C-ring x 1) at the rear side**



b222r641

6. **Fusing roller bushing [C] (C-ring x 1) at the front side**



b222r642

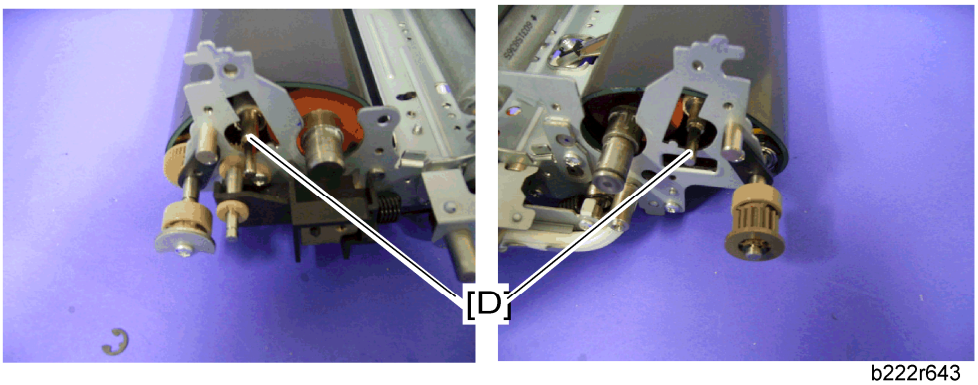
7. **Tension roller bushings [D] (spring x 1 each)**

When re-installing the fusing roller bushing and tension roller bushing

Follow points 3 and 4 explained in "When re-installing the pressure roller" (☛3.11.3)

3.11.6 TENSION ROLLER

1. **Fusing unit (☛3.11.1"Fusing Unit")**
2. **Fusing right cover, fusing upper cover (☛3.11.1"Fusing Unit")**
3. **Pressure Roller (☛3.11.3"Pressure Roller and Pressure Roller Bearing)**
4. **Tension roller bushings (☛3.11.5"Fusing Roller Bushing and Tension Roller Bushing")**



b222r643

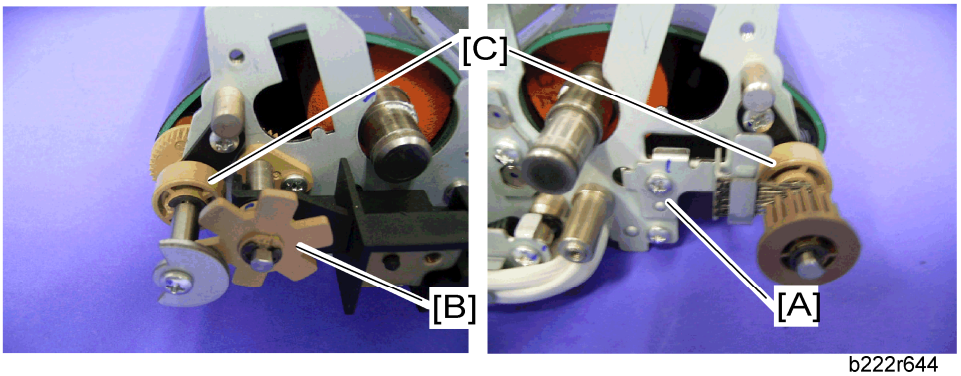
5. **Tension roller [D]**

When re-installing the tension roller

Follow points 3 and 4 explained in "When re-installing the pressure roller" (☛3.11.3)

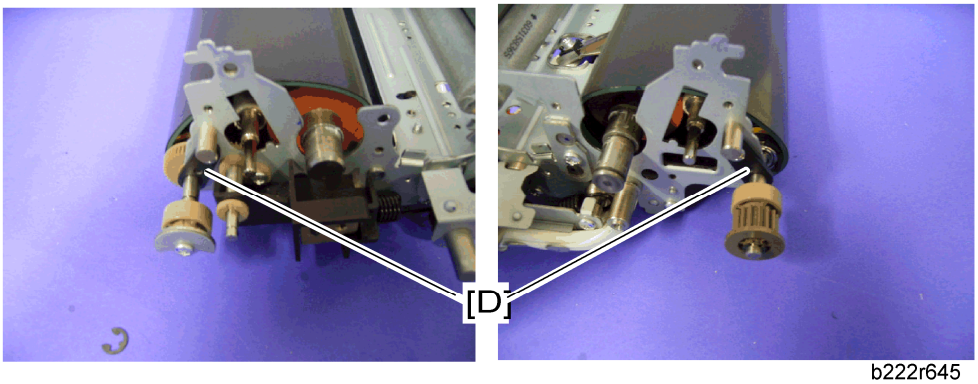
3.11.7 FUSING BELT, HEATING ROLLER, HEATING ROLLER BUSHING AND FUSING ROLLER

1. **Fusing unit (☛3.11.1")**
2. **Fusing right cover, fusing upper cover (☛3.11.2 "Fusing Lamp"")**
3. **Pressure Roller (☛3.11.3"Pressure Roller and Pressure Roller Bearing")**
4. **Tension roller (☛3.11.5 "Fusing Roller Bushing and Tension Roller Bushing" ")**



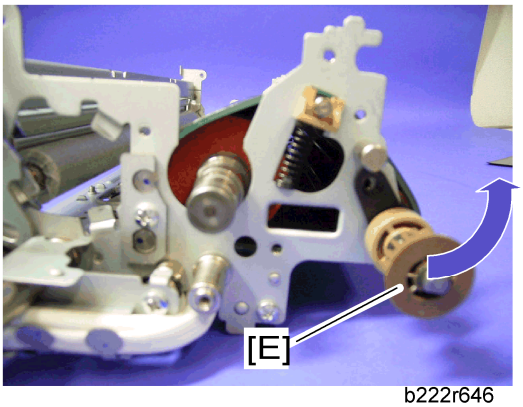
b222r644

5. **Discharge brush bracket [A] (☞ x 1)**
6. **Fusing belt sensor actuator [B] (ℂ x 1)**
7. **Slide the holder rollers [C] to the front and rear sides (ℂ x 1 each).**



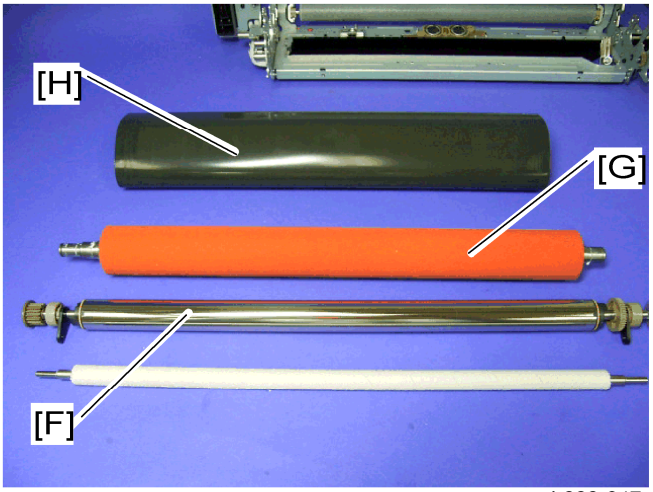
b222r645

8. **Slide the heating roller bushings [D] (☞ x 1 each).**



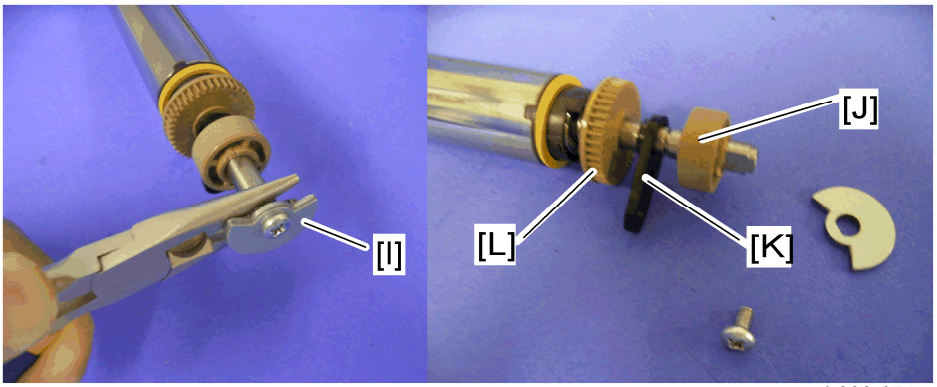
b222r646

9. **Hold both edges of the heating roller [E] and lift it in the arrow direction.**



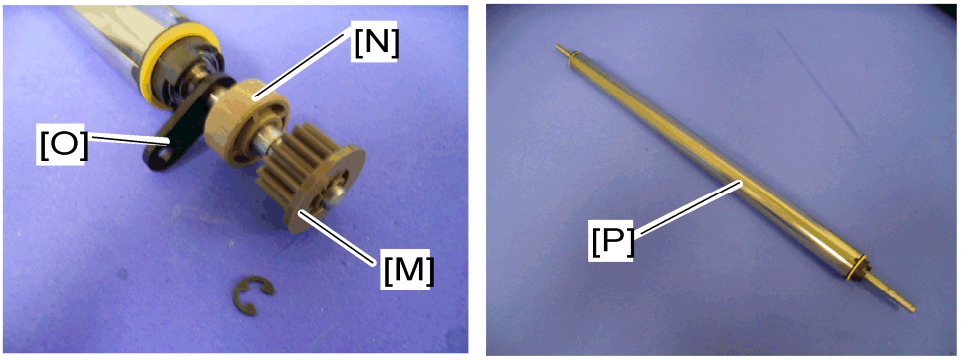
b222r647

10. **Heating roller unit [F], fusing roller [G] and fusing belt [H]**



b222r674

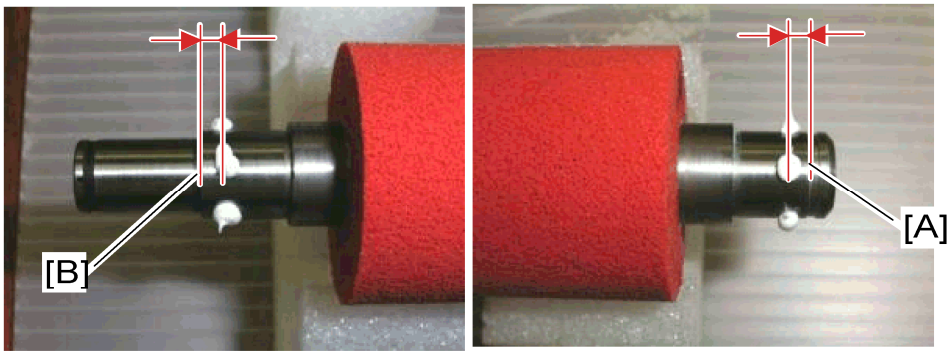
11. **Remove the ferrite roller actuator [I] (x 1), while holding the shaft with the pliers.**
12. **Bushing holder [J], heating roller bushing [K], gear [L]**



b222r675

13. **Gear [M] (x 1), bushing holder [N] and heating roller bushing [O]**
14. **Heating roller [P]**

When re-installing the fusing belt, heating roller, fusing roller and heating roller bushing



b222r682

1. Apply three spots of "Barrierta S552R" (the diameter of each spot must be about 3 mm in diameter, and approximately 0.1 g in weight) to the front shaft of the fusing roller at 2

Fusing

- 3 mm from the notch [A].

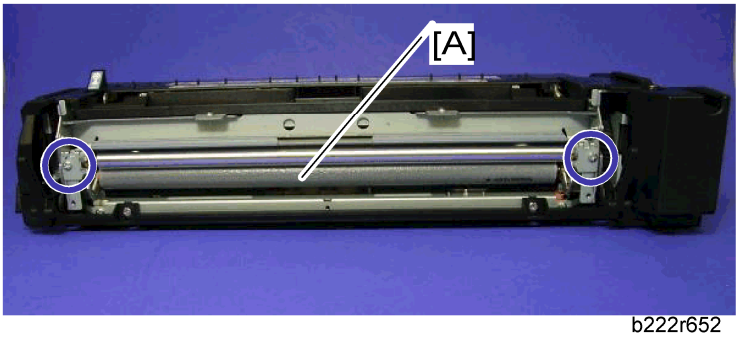
2. Apply three spots of "Barrierta S552R" (the diameter of each spot must be about 3 mm in diameter, and approximately 0.1 g in weight) to the rear shaft of the fusing roller at 2 - 3 mm from the edge [B] (rear side of the fusing roller).

And:

Follow the points 3 and 4 explained in "When re-installing the pressure roller" (☛3.11.3 "Pressure Roller and Pressure Roller Bearing"")

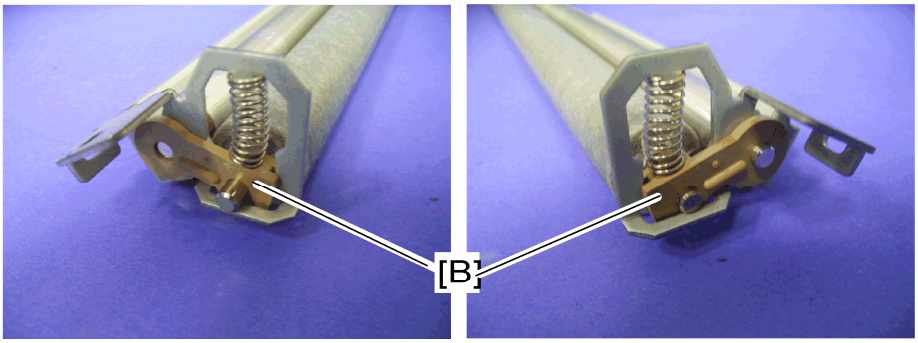
3.11.8 LUBRICANT ROLLER BUSHING

1. **Fusing unit (☛3.11.1 "Fusing Unit")**
2. **Fusing right cover (☛3.11.2 "Fusing Lamp")**



b222r652

3. **Lubricant roller unit [A] (🔩 x 2)**

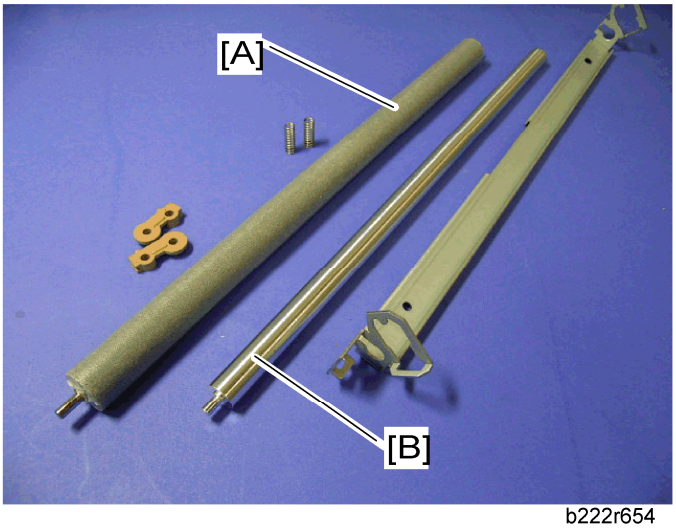


b222r653

4. **Lubricant roller bushings [B] (spring x 1 each)**

3.11.9 LUBRICANT ROLLER AND CLEANING ROLLER

1. **Fusing unit (☛3.11.1 "Fusing Unit")**
2. **Fusing right cover (☛3.11.2 "Fusing Lamp")**
3. **Lubricant roller bushings (☛3.11.8 "Lubricant Roller Bushing")**

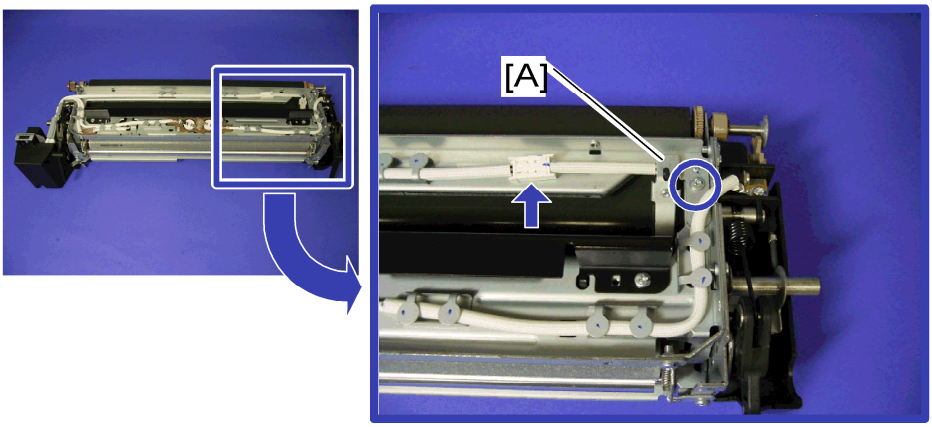


b222r654

4. **Lubricant roller [A] and cleaning roller [B]**

3.11.10 HEATING ROLLER THERMISTOR

1. **Fusing unit (☛3.11.1 "Fusing Unit"")**
2. **Fusing right cover (☛3.11.2 "Fusing Lamp")**
3. **Fusing bottom cover (☛3.11.2 "Fusing Lamp")**

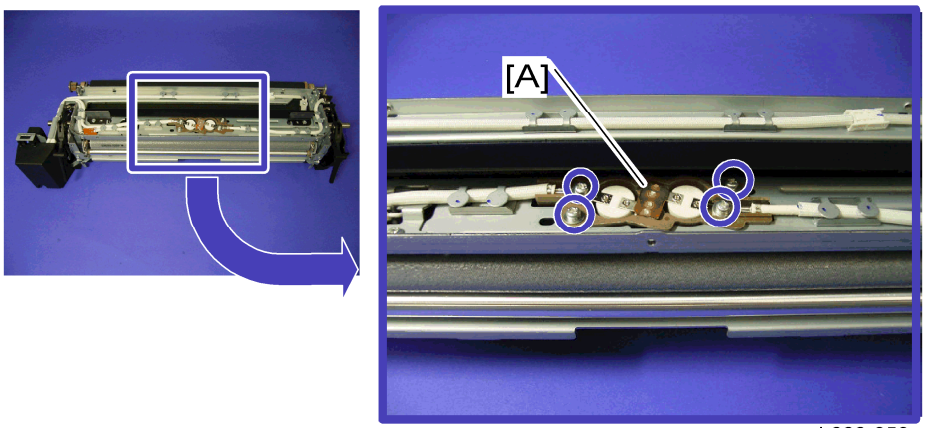


b222r655

4. **Heating roller thermistor with bracket [A] (x 1, x 1)**

3.11.11 PRESSURE ROLLER THERMOSTAT

1. **Fusing unit (☛3.11.1 "Fusing Unit")**
2. **Fusing right cover (☛3.11.2 "Fusing Lamp")**
3. **Fusing bottom cover (☛3.11.2 "Fusing Lamp")**

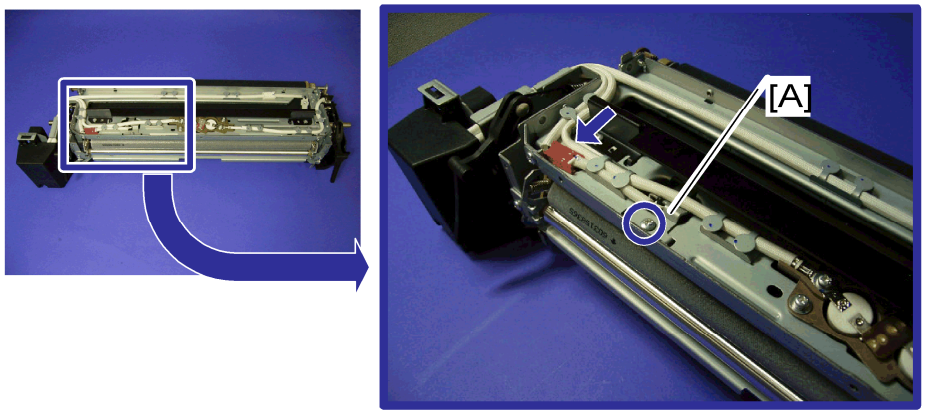


b222r656

1. **Pressure roller thermostat [A] (x 4)**

3.11.12 PRESSURE ROLLER THERMISTOR

1. **Fusing unit (☛3.11.1 "Fusing Unit")**
2. **Fusing right cover (☛3.11.2 "Fusing Lamp"")**
3. **Fusing bottom cover (☛3.11.2 "Fusing Lamp"")**

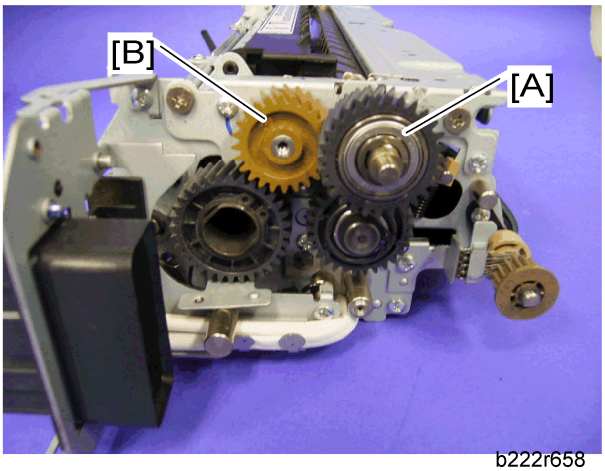


b222r657

4. **Pressure roller thermistor [A] (x 1)**

3.11.13 FUSING ROLLER ONE-WAY CLUTCH AND IDLE GEAR

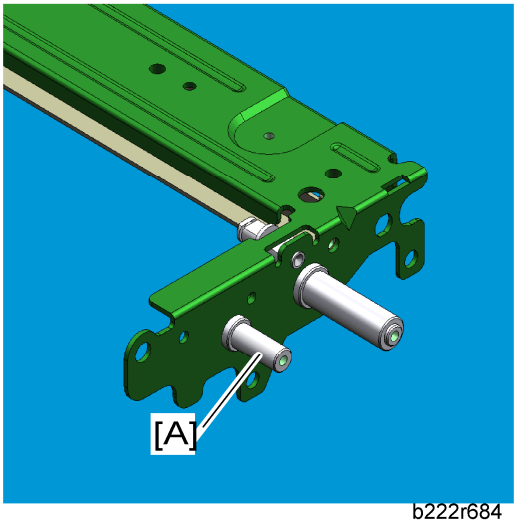
1. **Fusing unit (☛3.11.1 "Fusing Unit")**
2. **Fusing upper cover (☛3.11.2 "Fusing Lamp")**
3. **Fusing bottom cover (☛3.11.3 "Pressure Roller and Pressure Roller Bearing")**
4. **Gear holder bracket (☛3.11.3 "Pressure Roller and Pressure Roller Bearing")**



b222r658

5. **One-way clutch gear [A] (C-ring x 1)**
6. **Idle gear [B]**

When re-installing the idle gear

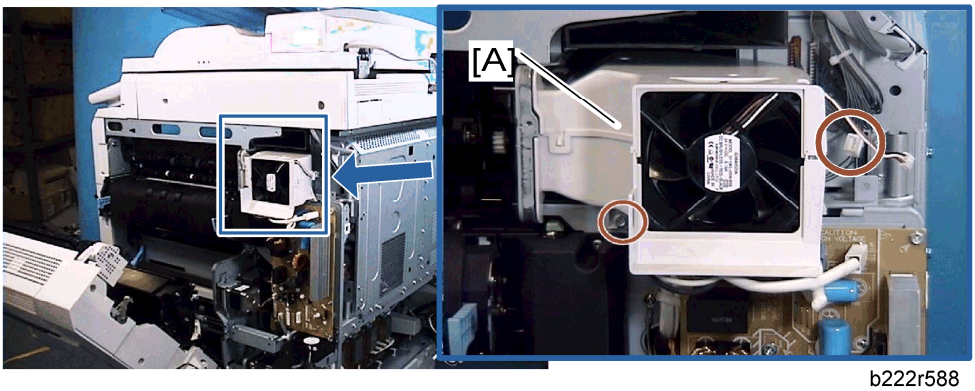


b222r684

1. Apply one spot of "Barrierta S552R" (the diameter of the spot must be about 3 mm in diameter, and approximately 0.1 g in weight) to the idle gear shaft [A].

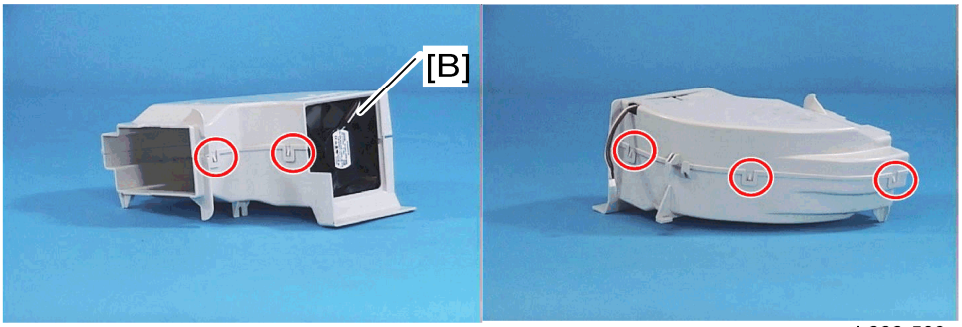
3.11.14 FUSING FAN

1. **Rear cover (☛3.4.3"Rear Cover")**
2. **Right rear cover (☛3.4.4 "Right Rear Cover")**



b222r588

3. **Fusing duct [A] (x 1, x 1)**



b222r589

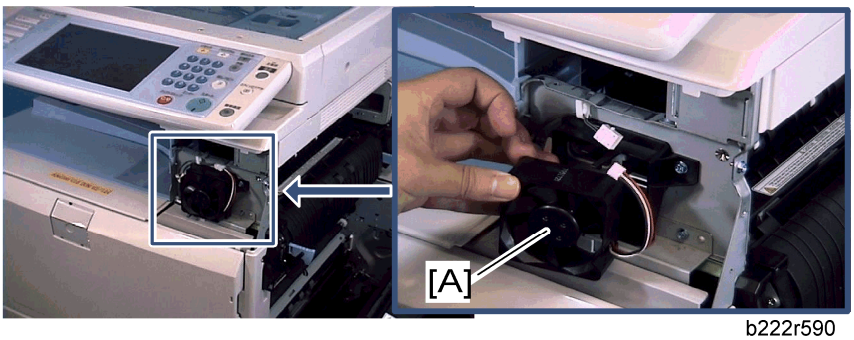
4. **Fusing fan [B] (hook x 5)**

When installing the fusing fan

Make sure that the fusing fan is installed with its decal facing the right side of the machine.

3.11.15 PAPER EXIT FAN

1. **Open the right door.**
2. **Front right cover (3.4.5"Operation Panel")**



b222r590

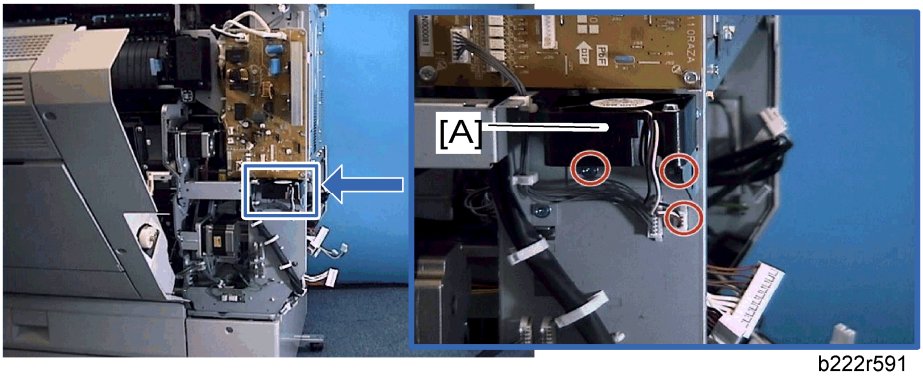
3. **Paper exit fan [A] (x 1, hook x 2)**

When installing the paper exit fan

Make sure that the paper exit fan is installed with its decal facing the rear of the machine.

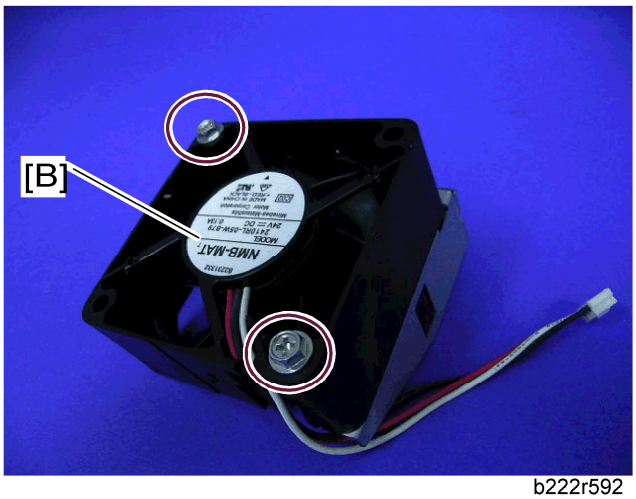
3.11.16 IH (INDUCTION HEATING) INVERTER FAN

1. **Rear cover (☛3.4.3 "Rear Cover")**
2. **Right rear cover (☛3.4.4 "Right Rear Cover")**



b222r591

3. **IH inverter fan bracket [A] (🔩 x 2, 🖐 x 1)**



b222r592

4. **IH inverter fan [B] (🔩 x 2)**

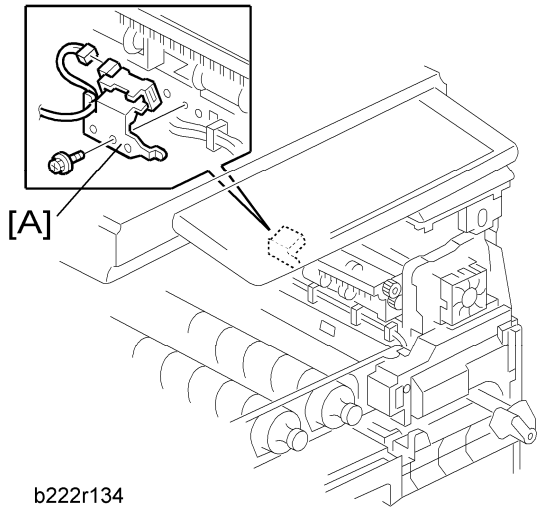
When installing the IH inverter fan

Make sure that the IH inverter fan is installed with its decal facing the upper side of the machine.

3.11.17 THERMOPILE

1. **Remove the image transfer belt unit.**

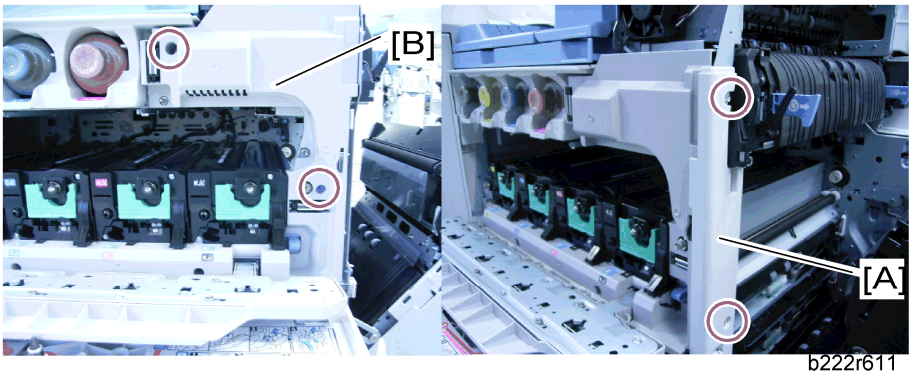
2. **Left cover (☛3.4.3 "Left Cover")**
3. **Paper exit cover (☛3.4.6 "Paper Exit Cover")**
4. **Inner Tray (☛3.4.7 "Inner Tray")**



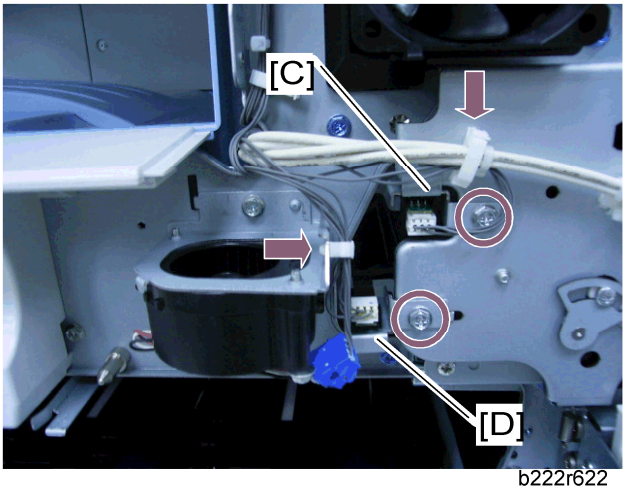
5. **Thermopile bracket [A] (x 1, x 1)**

3.11.18 FUSING BELT SENSOR AND FERRITE ROLLER HP SENSOR

1. **Open the right door.**
2. **Front right cover (☛3.4.5 "Operation Panel")**
3. **Pull out tray 1 and 2, and the image transfer belt unit.**



4. **Right front cover [A] (x 2)**
5. **Front inner cover [B] (x 2)**

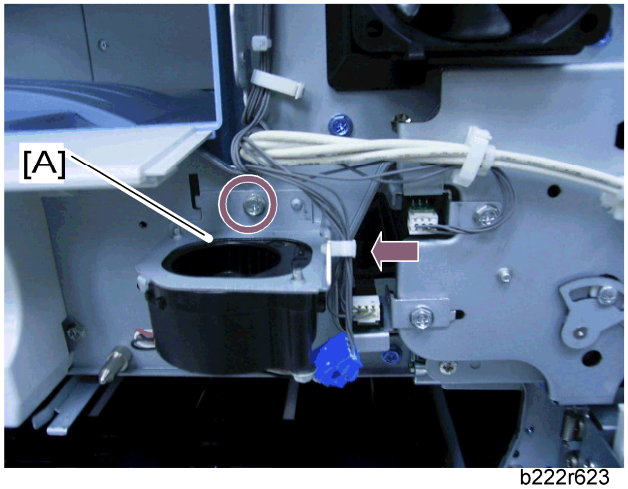


b222r622

6. Fusing belt sensor bracket [C] (x 1, x 1, x 1)
7. Fusing belt sensor (1 hook)
8. Ferrite roller HP sensor bracket [D] (x 1, x 1, x 1)
9. Ferrite roller HP sensor (1 hook)

3.11.19 IH COIL FAN

1. Open the right door.
2. Front right cover (☛3.4.5 "Operation Panel")
3. Pull out trays 1 and 2, and the image transfer belt unit.
4. Right front cover and front inner cover (☛3.11.8 " Fusing Belt Sensor and Ferrite Roller HP Sensor")



b222r623

5. IH coil fan bracket [A]
6. IH coil fan (x 2)

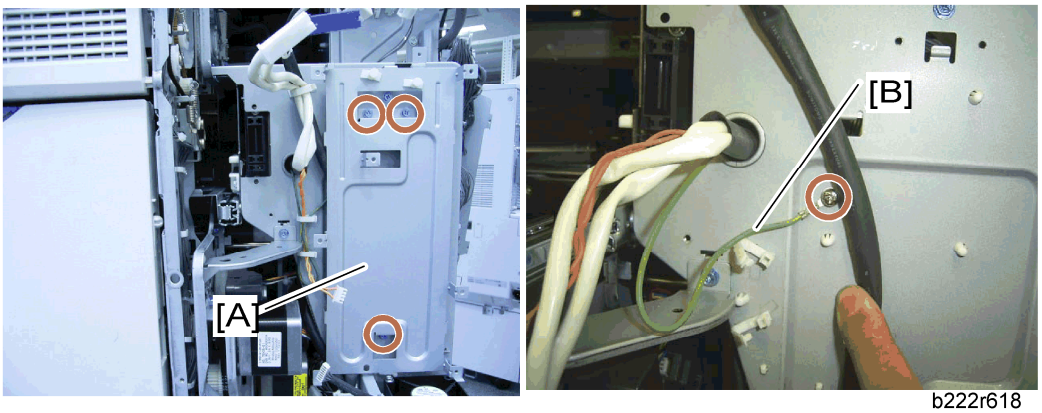
3.11.20 IH COIL UNIT

CAUTION

- Do not push the thermostats on the IH coil unit. If you do, the thermostats will be opened. In that case, the IH coil unit must be replaced.

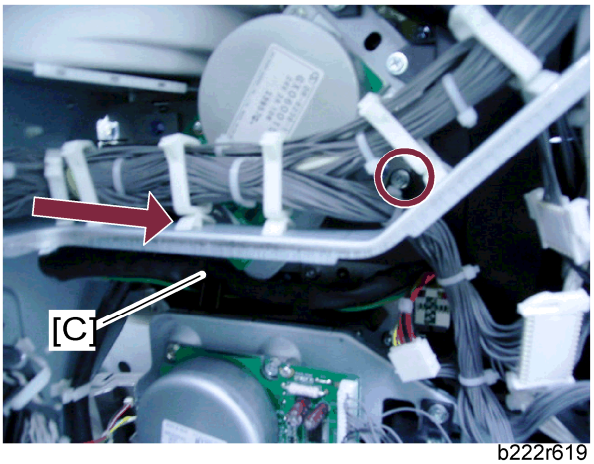
b222r617

1. **Fusing unit (☛3.11.1 "Fusing Unit")**
2. **Front right cover (☛3.4.5 "Operation Panel")**
3. **Image transfer belt unit (☛3.8.1 "Image Transfer Belt Unit")**
4. **Paper exit cover (☛3.6.4 "Paper Exit Cover")**
5. **Inner Tray (☛3.4.7 "Inner Tray")**
6. **All PCUs (☛3.7.1 "PCU")**
7. **Rear cover (☛3.4.3 "Rear Cover")**
8. **Right rear cover (☛3.4.5 "Right Rear Cover")**
9. **Open the controller box (☛3.14.3 "Controller Box").**
10. **Second duct (☛3.7.4 "Second Duct Fan")**
11. **Fusing duct (☛3.11.4 " Fusing Fan")**
12. **IH inverter (☛3.14.11 " IH Inverter")**



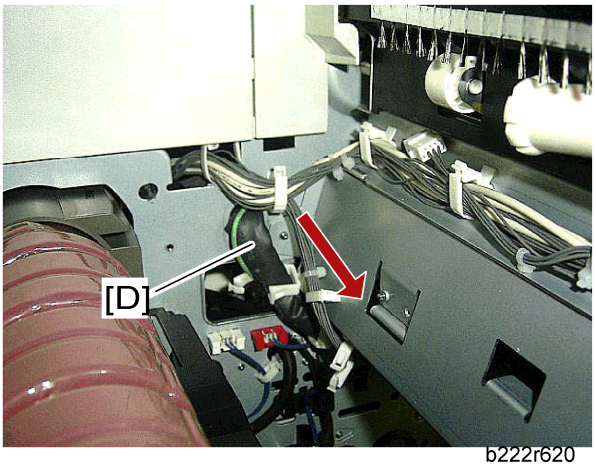
b222r618

13. **IH inverter bracket [A] (🔩 x 3)**
14. **Remove the ground cable [B] (🔩 x 1)**



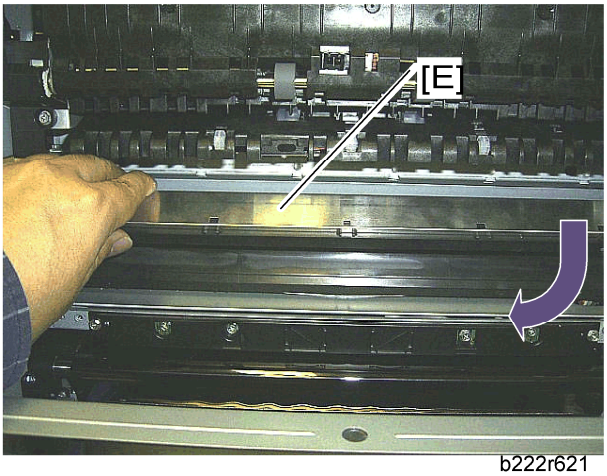
b222r619

15. **Pull the IH harness [C] in the arrow direction.**
16. **Remove the second duct screw (circle).**



b222r620

17. **Pull the IH harness [D] in the arrow direction.**



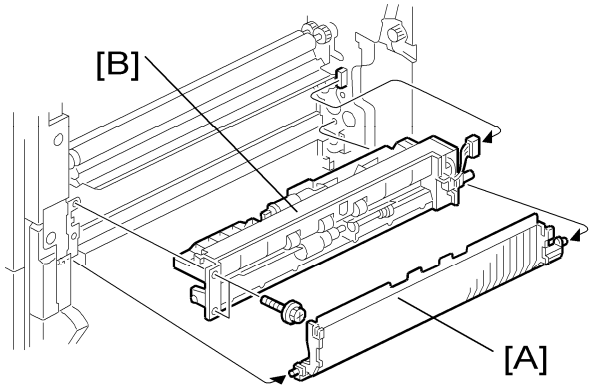
b222r621

18. **IH coil unit [E] (First release the rear side of the IH coil unit.)**

3.12 PAPER FEED

3.12.1 PAPER FEED UNIT

1. **Rear cover (☛3.4.3 "Rear Cover")**
2. **Right rear cover ☛3.4.4 "Right Rear Cover")**
3. **Duplex unit (☛3.13.1 "Duplex Unit")**
4. **Pull out tray 1 and tray 2.**

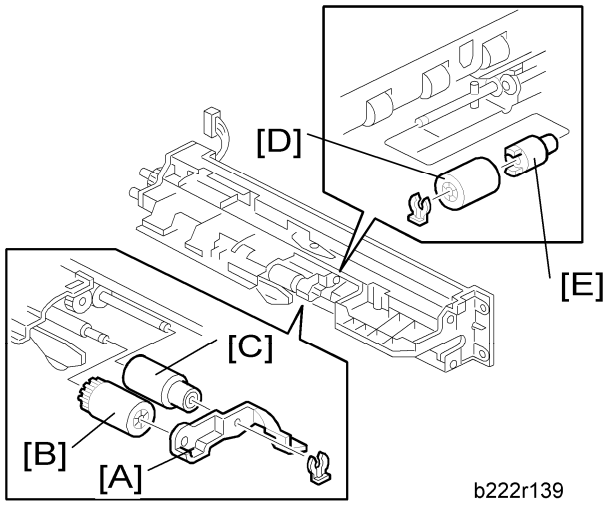


5. **Paper guide plate [A] (hook x 2)**
6. **Paper feed unit [B] (x 2, x 1)**

3.12.2 PICK-UP, FEED AND SEPARATION ROLLERS

Tray 1 and Tray 2

1. **Paper feed unit (☛3.12.1 "Paper Feed Unit")**

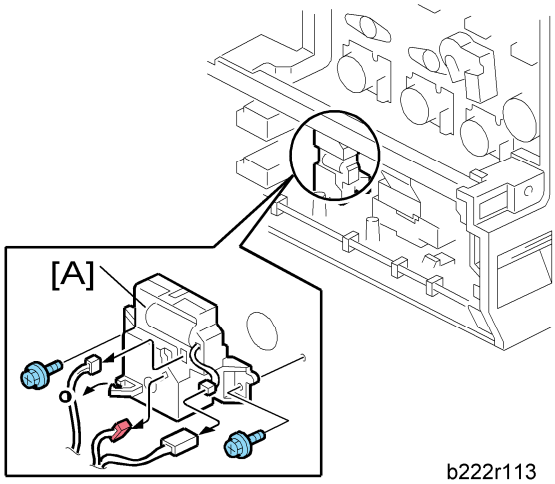


2. **Roller holder [A] (x 1)**

3. **Pick-up roller [B]**
4. **Feed roller [C]**
5. **Separation roller [D] and torque limiter [E] (x 1)**

3.12.3 TRAY LIFT MOTOR

1. **Rear cover (☛3.4.3 "Rear Cover")**
2. **PSU bracket (☛3.14.7 "PSU")**
3. **High voltage supply board bracket (☛3.14.10 " High Voltage Supply Board Bracket")**

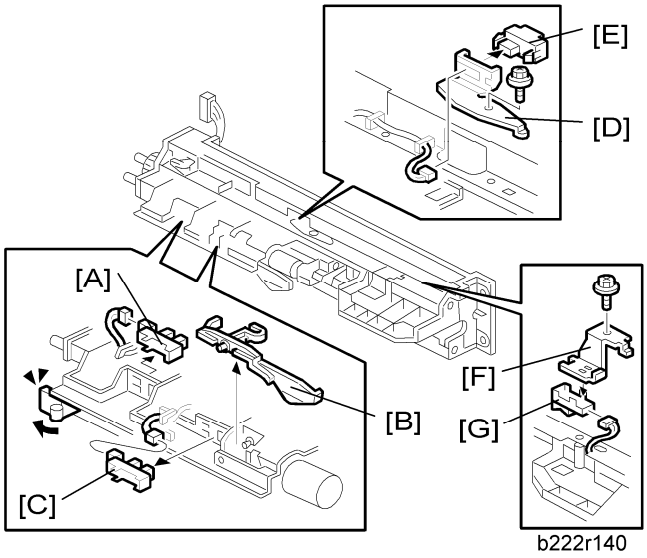


b222r113

4. **Tray lift motor 1 or 2 [A] (x 2, x 3, x 1 each)**

3.12.4 VERTICAL TRANSPORT, PAPER OVERFLOW, PAPER END AND PAPER FEED SENSOR

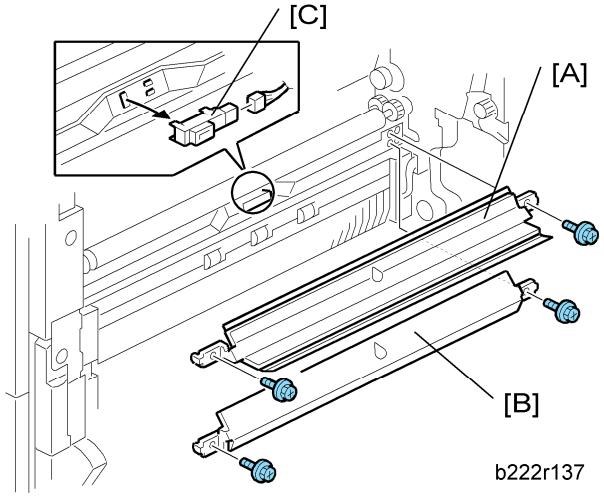
1. **Rear cover (☛3.4.3 "Rear Cover")**
2. **Right rear cover (☛3.4.4"Right Rear Cover")**
3. **Paper feed unit (☛3.12.1 "Paper Feed Unit")**



4. **Paper overflow sensor [A]**
5. **Paper end feeler [B] and paper end sensor [C] (hook, x 1 each)**
6. **Vertical transport sensor bracket [D] (x 1, x 1)**
7. **Vertical transport sensor [E] (x 1, hook)**
8. **Paper feed sensor bracket [F] (x 1)**
9. **Paper feed sensor [G] (x 1, hook)**

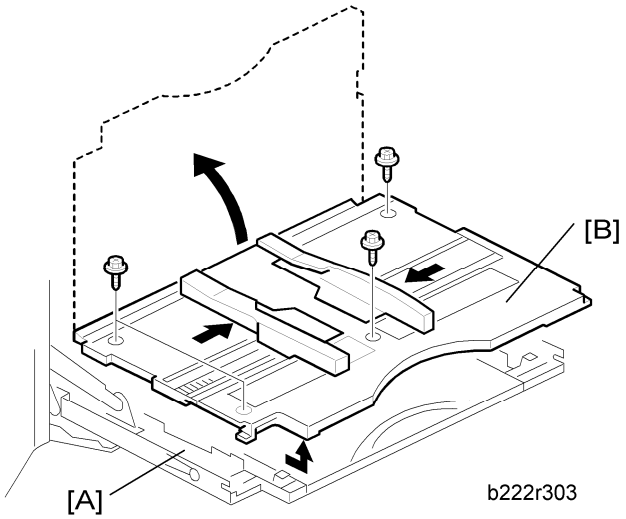
3.12.5 REGISTRATION SENSOR

1. **Rear cover (☛3.4.3 "Rear Cover")**
2. **Right rear cover (☛3.4.4"Right Rear Cover")**

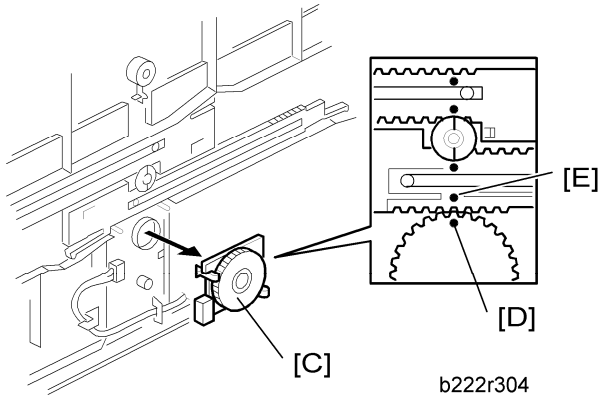


3. **Paper guide plate 1 [A] and 2 [B] (x 2 each)**
4. **Registration sensor [C] (x 1, hook)**

3.12.6 BY-PASS PAPER SIZE SENSOR SWITCH



1. **Open the by-pass tray [A].**
2. **Move the side fences to the center.**
3. **By-pass tray cover [B] (x 4)**



4. **By-pass paper size sensor [C] (x 1)**

When reinstalling this switch

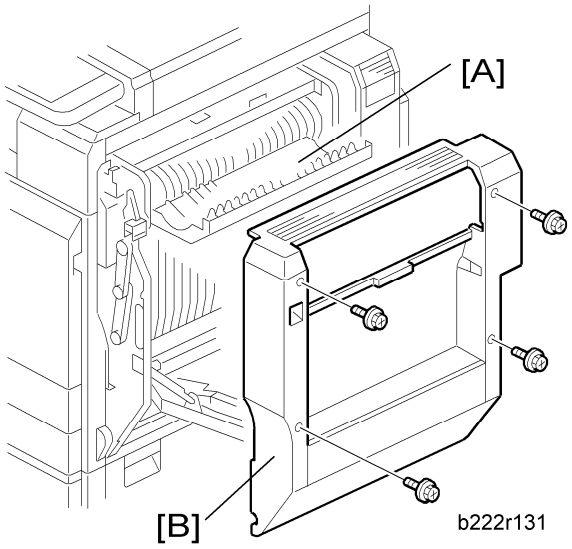
1. **Adjust the projection [E] of the left side fence bar (it must be centered).**
2. **Install the by-pass paper size detection switch so that the hole [D] in this switch faces the projection [E] of the left side fence bar.**
3. **Reassemble the copier.**
4. **Plug in and turn on the main power switch.**
5. **Check this switch operation with SP5803-071 (By-pass paper size < Input Check).**

- Display on the LCD -

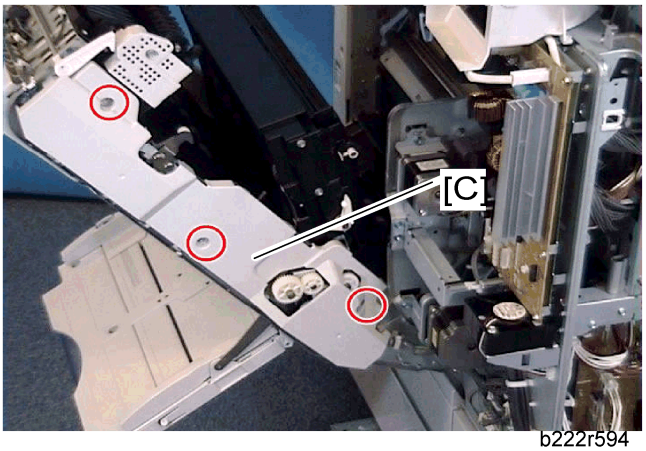
Paper Size	Display	Paper Size	Display
A3 SEF	00001110	A5 SEF	00001011
B4 SEF	00001100	B6 SEF	00000011
A4 SEF	00001101	A6 SEF	00000111
B5 SEF	00001001	Smaller A6 SEF	00001111

3.12.7 BY-PASS BOTTOM TRAY

1. **Open the right door.**
2. **By-pass tray cover (☛3.12.6 "By-pass Paper Size Sensor Switch")**

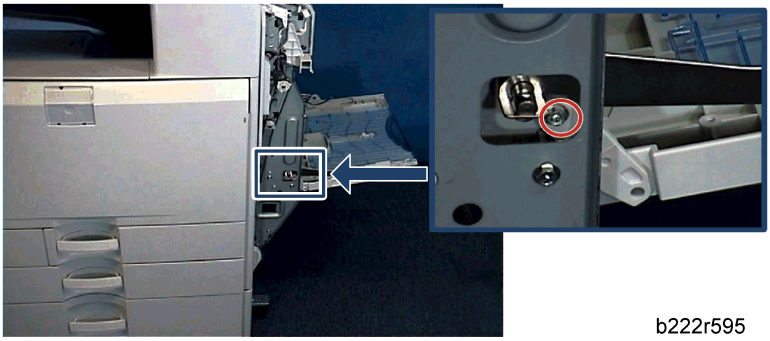


3. **Open the duplex door [A].**
4. **Right door cover [B] (☞ x 4)**



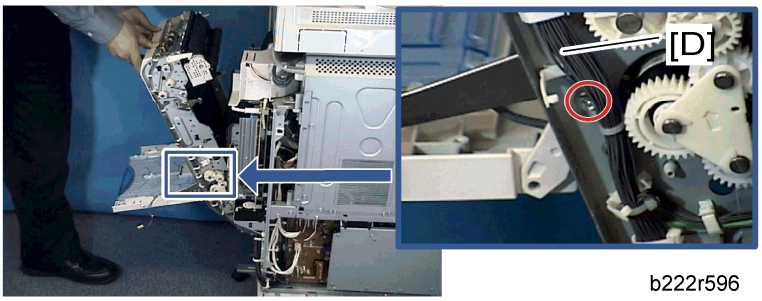
b222r594

5. **Right door rear cover [C] (x 3)**



b222r595

6. **Remove the screw at the front side (x 1).**

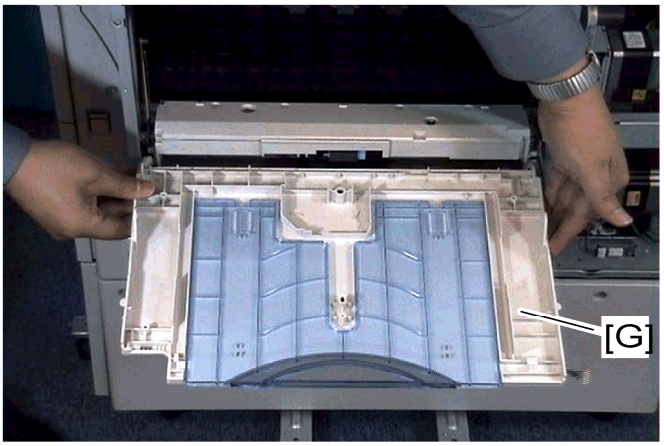


b222r596

7. **Turn the harness [D] aside (x 1), and then remove the screw at the rear side (x 1).**

b222r597

8. **Release the front [E] and rear [F] arms (x 1 each).**

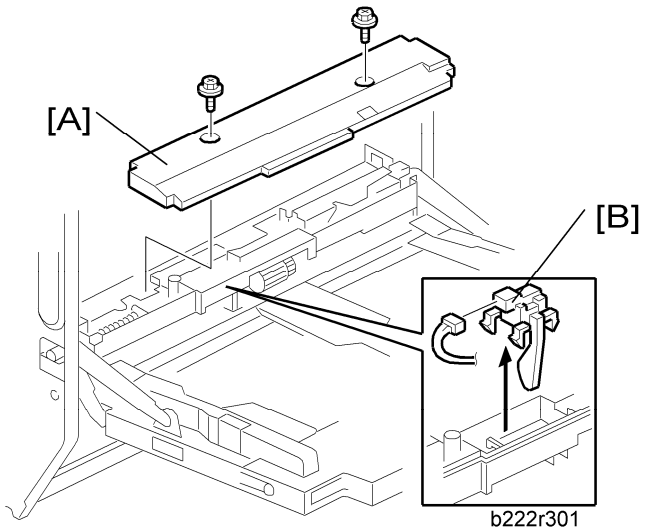


b222r598

9. **By-pass Bottom Tray [G]**

3.12.8 BY-PASS PAPER END SENSOR

1. **Right door cover (3.12.7 "By-pass Bottom Tray"")**



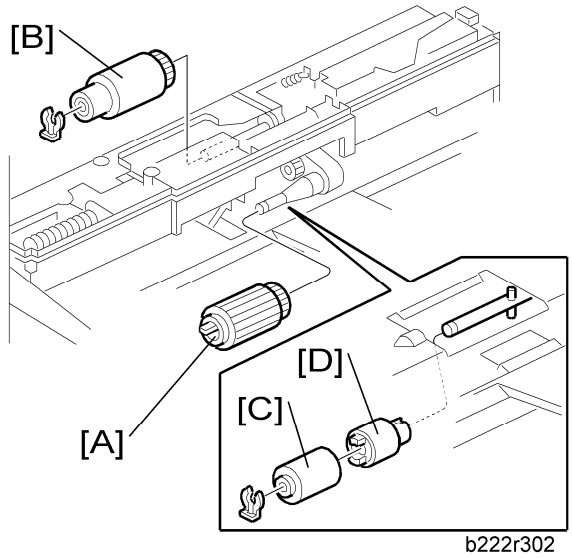
b222r301

2. **By-pass feed unit cover [A] (x 2).**

3. **By-pass paper end sensor [B] (x 1, hook)**

3.12.9 BY-PASS PICK-UP, FEED AND SEPARATION ROLLER, TORQUE LIMITER

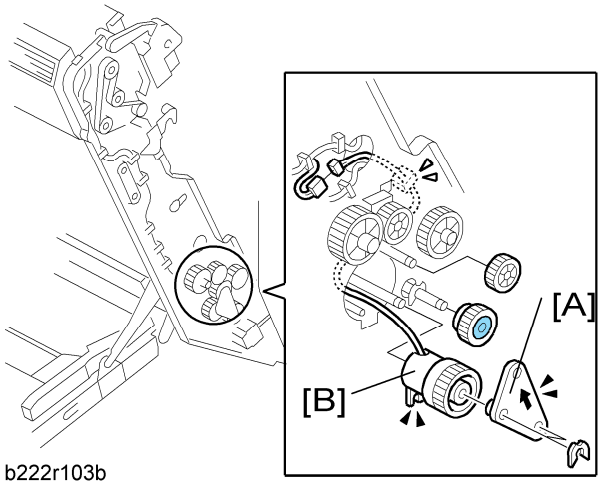
1. **Right door cover (☛3.12.7 "By-pass Bottom Tray")**
2. **By-pass feed unit cover (☛3.12.8 "By-pass Paper End Sensor")**



3. **By-pass pick-up roller [A] (hook)**
4. **By-pass feed roller [B] (x 1)**
5. **By-pass separation roller [C] (x 1)**
6. **Torque limiter [D]**

3.12.10 BY-PASS FEED CLUTCH

1. **Open the right door.**
2. **Right door rear cover (☛3.12.7 "By-pass Bottom Tray")**

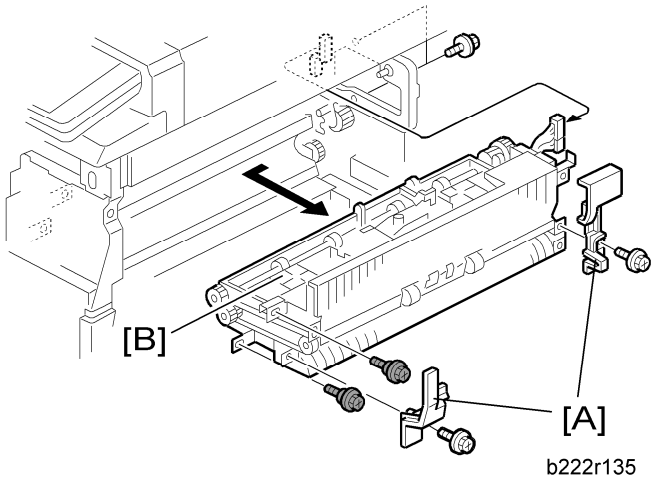


b222r103b

3. **By-pass feed clutch holder [A] (x 2)**
4. **By-pass feed clutch [B] (x 1, x 1)**

3.12.11 PAPER EXIT UNIT

1. **Fusing Unit (☛3.11.1 "Fusing Unit")**
2. **Front right cover (☛3.4.5 "Operation Panel")**
3. **Image transfer belt unit (☛3.8.1")**
4. **Inner Tray (☛3.4.7 "Inner Tray")**
5. **Thermopile (☛3.11.17 " Thermopile")**
6. **Rear cover (☛3.4.3 "Rear Cover")**
7. **Right rear cover (☛3.4.4 "Right Rear Cover")**
8. **Fusing duct (☛3.11.14 " Fusing Fan"")**
9. **Open the controller box (☛3.14.3 "Controller Box").**



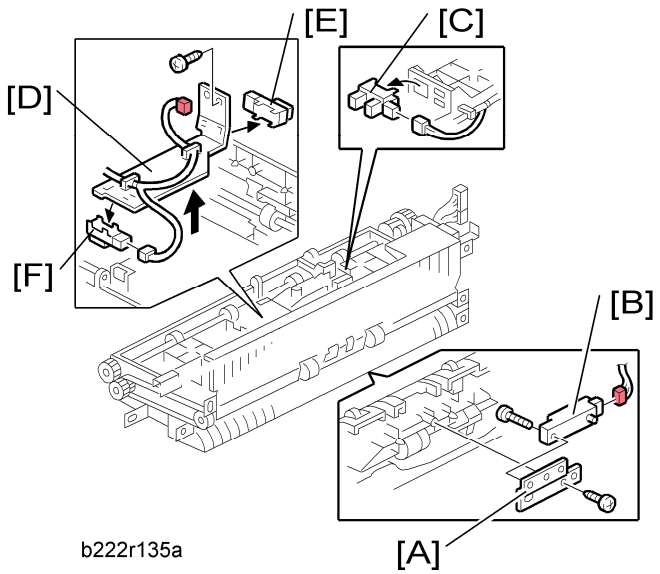
b222r135

10. **Gear cover [A] (x 1 each)**

11. **Paper exit unit [B] (x 4, x 2)**

3.12.12 FUSING EXIT, PAPER OVERFLOW, JUNCTION PAPER JAM AND PAPER EXIT SENSOR

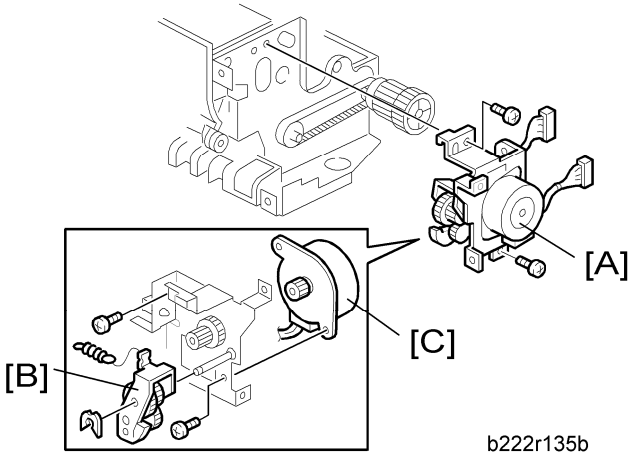
1. **Paper exit unit (3.12.11 " Paper Exit Unit")**



2. **Fusing exit sensor bracket [A] (x 1, x 1)**
3. **Fusing exit sensor [B] (x 1)**
4. **Paper overflow sensor [C] (x 1, hook)**
5. **Sensor bracket [D] (x 1)**
6. **Junction paper jam sensor [E] (x 1, hook)**
7. **Paper exit sensor [F] (x 1, hook)**

3.12.13 JUNCTION GATE 1 MOTOR

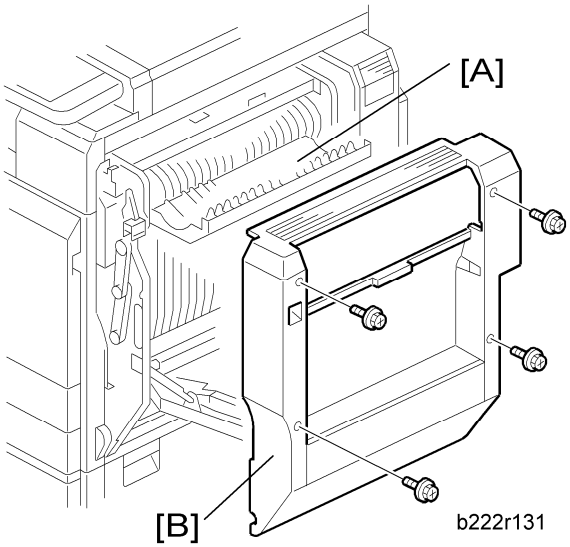
1. **Paper exit unit (☛3.12.11 " Paper Exit Unit")**



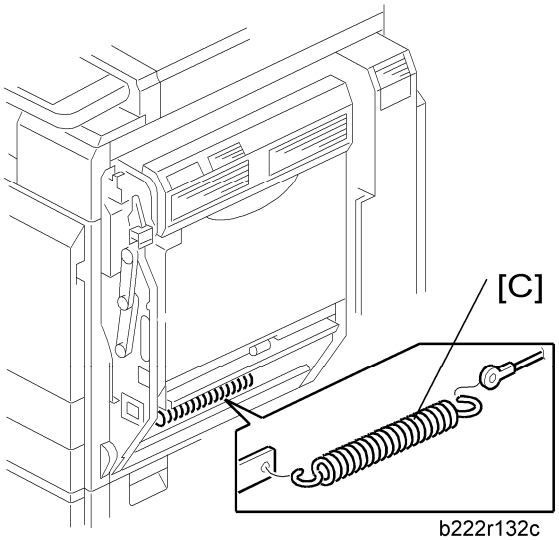
2. **Junction gate 1 motor bracket [A] (🔩 x 2)**
3. **Gear bracket [B] (⟲ x 1, spring x 1)**
4. **Junction gate 1 motor [C] (🔩 x 2)**

3.13 DUPLEX UNIT

3.13.1 DUPLEX UNIT

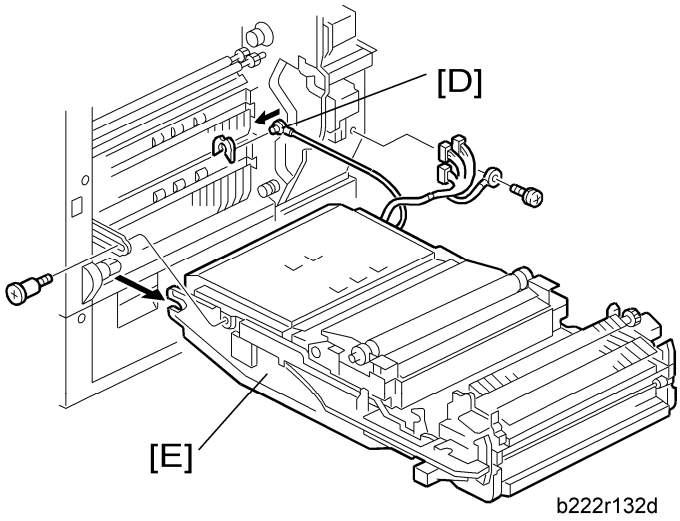


1. **Open the duplex door [A] and by-pass tray.**
2. **Right door cover [B] (x 4)**



3. **Remove the spring [C].**
4. **Rear cover (3.4.3 "Rear Cover")**
5. **Right rear cover (3.4.4 "Right Rear Cover")**

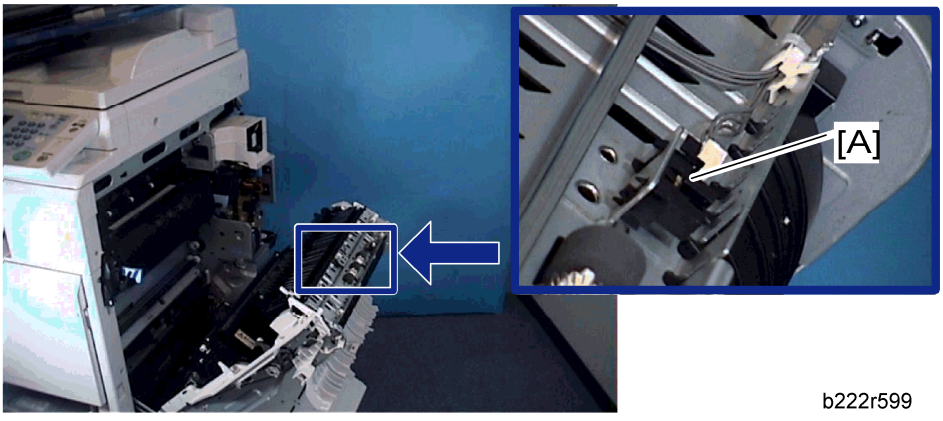
Duplex Unit



6. **Wire [D] (x 1)**
7. **Duplex unit [E] (x 1, Stud screw x 1, x 1, x 3, ground cable x 1)**

3.13.2 DUPLEX DOOR SENSOR

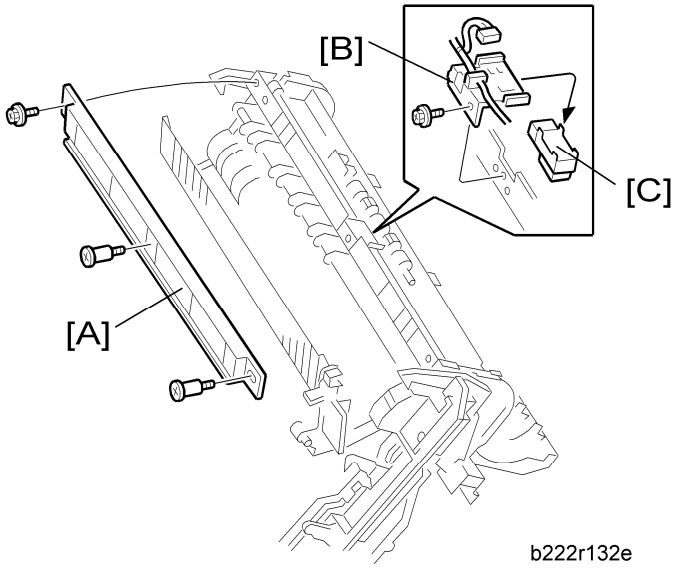
1. **Right door cover (3.13.1 "Duplex Unit")**
2. **Open the right door.**



3. **Duplex door sensor [A] (x 1, hook)**

3.13.3 DUPLEX ENTRANCE SENSOR

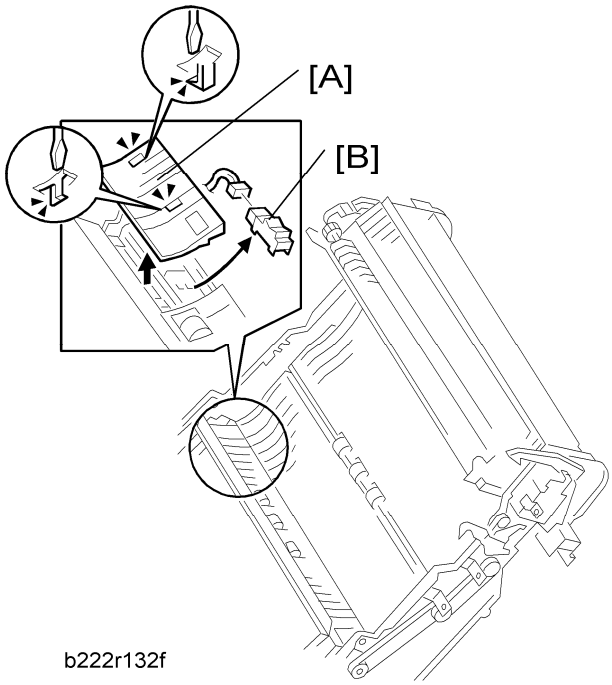
1. **Right door cover (3.13.1 "Duplex Unit")**
2. **Open the right door.**



3. **Duplex entrance guide [A] (x1, stepped screw x 2)**
4. **Duplex entrance sensor bracket [B] (x 1, x 1)**
5. **Duplex entrance sensor [C] (hook)**

3.13.4 DUPLEX EXIT SENSOR

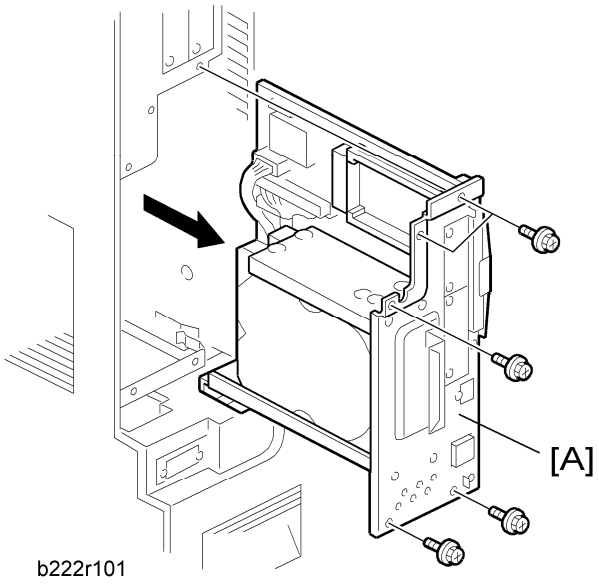
1. **Paper transfer unit (3.9.2 "Paper Transfer Unit")**



2. **Guide plate [A] (two hooks)**
3. **Duplex exit sensor [B] (x 1, hook)**

3.14 ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS

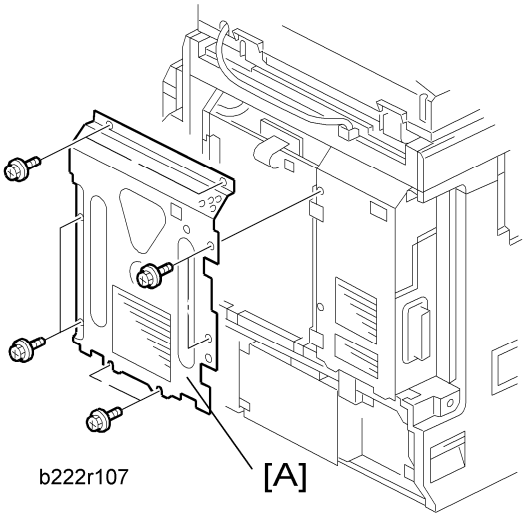
3.14.1 CONTROLLER UNIT



1. **Controller unit [A] (x 5)**

3.14.2 CONTROLLER BOX RIGHT COVER

1. **Rear cover (3.4.3 "Rear Cover")**

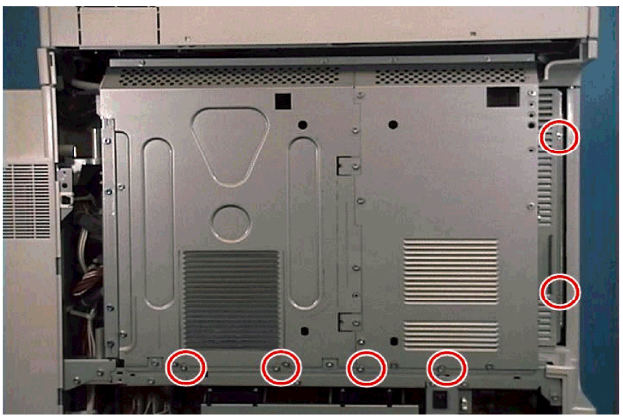


2. **Controller box right cover [A] (x 8)**

3.14.3 CONTROLLER BOX

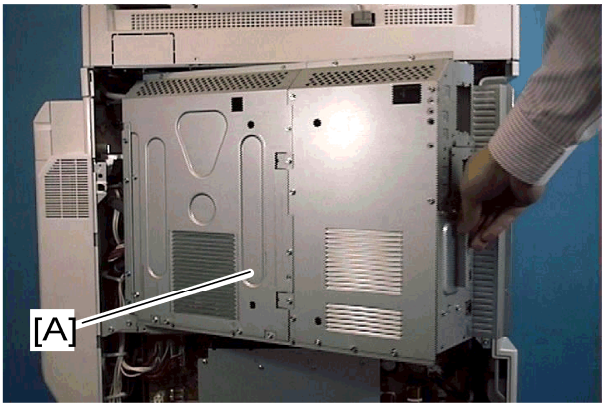
When opening the controller box

1. **Rear cover (☛3.4.3 "Rear Cover")**



b222r603

2. **Remove six screws (circles).**

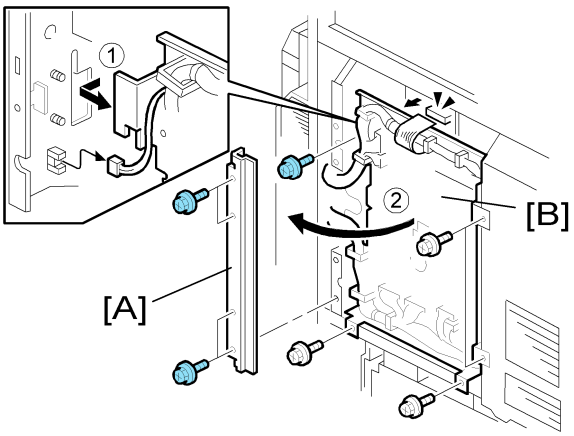


b222r604

3. **Open the controller box [A].**

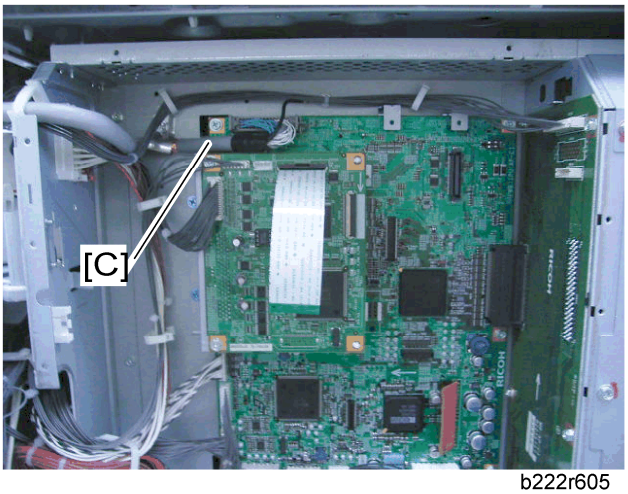
When removing the controller box

1. **Rear cover ("Rear Cover")**
2. **Right rear cover ("Right Rear Cover")**
3. **Controller box right cover (☛3.14.2 "Controller Box Right Cover ")**



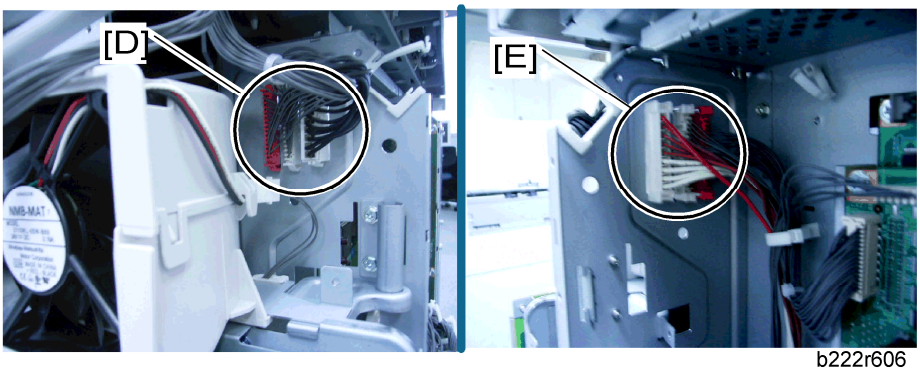
b222r109

4. **Remove the controller box stay [A] (x 4)**
5. **Take the IOB bracket [B] aside (x 4, x 1).**



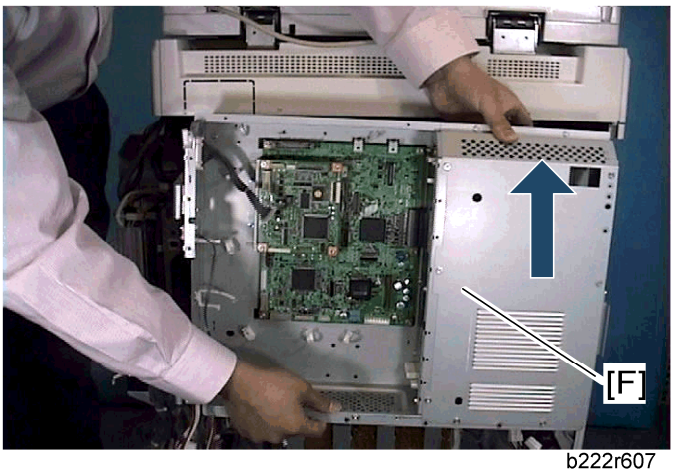
b222r605

6. **Disconnect the scanner interface cable [C] (x 2, ground cable).**
7. **Release all clamps on the controller box frame.**
8. **Disconnect all connectors on the BCU, IPU and mother board.**



b222r606

9. **Disconnect three connectors [D] at the outer controller box and three connectors [E] at the inner controller box.**

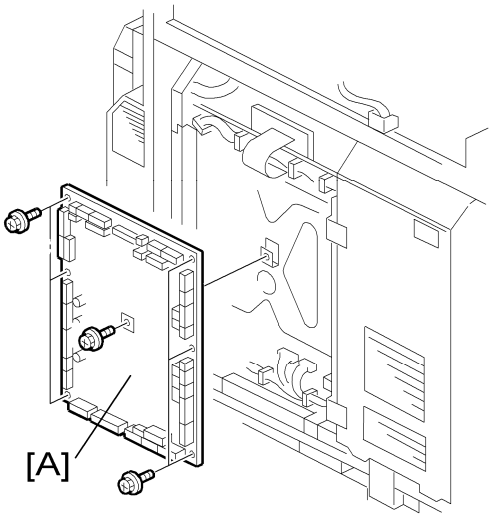


b222r607

10. **Lift up the controller box [D], and then remove it.**

3.14.4 IOB (IN/OUT BOARD)

1. **Rear cover (☛3.4.3 "Rear Cover")**
2. **Controller box right cover (☛3.14.2 "Controller Box Right Cover ")**

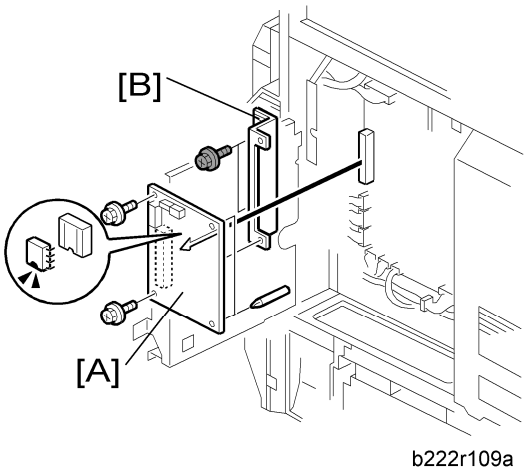


b222r108

3. **IOB [A] (x 7, All s, flat cable x 1)**

3.14.5 BCU

1. **Rear cover (☛3.4.3 "Rear Cover")**
2. **Controller box right cover (☛3.14.2 "Controller Box Right Cover ")**
3. **Take the IOB bracket aside (☛3.14.3 "Controller Box")**



b222r109a

4. **BCU board [A] (x 2, flat cable x 1, two stays)**
5. **BCU bracket [B] (x2)**

When installing the new BCU

Remove the NVRAM from the old BCU. Then install it on the new BCU after you replace the BCU. Replace the NVRAM (☛3.14.16 " NVRAM Replacement Procedure"") if the NVRAM on the old BCU is defective.

Note

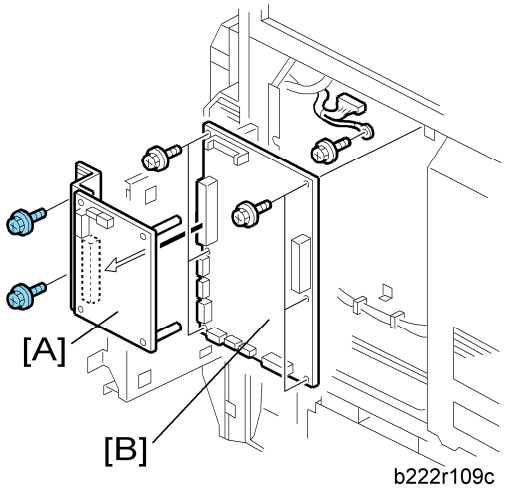
- Make sure you print out the SMC reports (“SP Mode Data” and “Logging Data”) before you replace the NVRAM.

CAUTION

- Keep NVRAMs away from any objects that can cause static electricity. Static electricity can damage NVRAM data.
- Make sure the NVRAM is correctly installed on the BCU. Insert the NVRAM in the NVRAM slot with the "half-moon" [C] pointing to the downward side.
- Make sure that the DIP-switch settings on the old BCU are the same for the new BCU when. Do not change the DIP switches on the BCU in the field.

3.14.6 IPU

1. **Rear cover (☛3.4.3 "Rear Cover")**
2. **Controller box right cover (☛3.14.2 "Controller Box Right Cover ")**
3. **Take the IOB bracket aside (☛3.14.3 "Controller Box")**

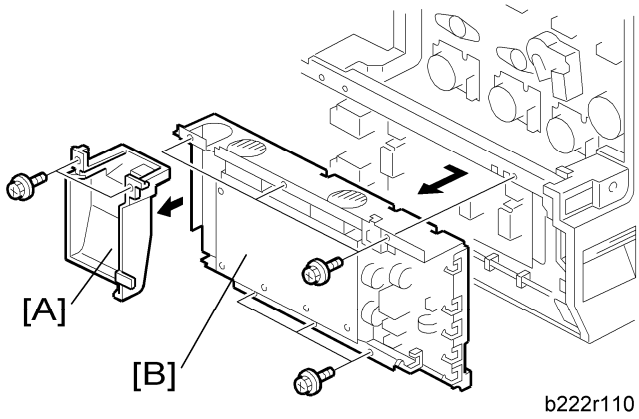


4. **BCU bracket [A] (x 2)**
5. **IPU board [B] (x 6, all s)**

3.14.7 PSU

PSU bracket

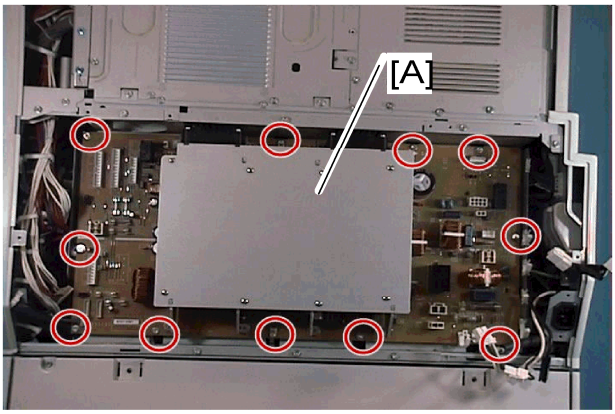
1. **Rear cover (3.4.3 "Rear Cover")**



2. **Ventilation duct [A] (x 2)**
3. **PSU bracket [B] (x 6, all s, all s)**

PSU board

1. **Rear cover (3.4.3 "Rear Cover")**
2. **Ventilation duct (see "PSU bracket")**

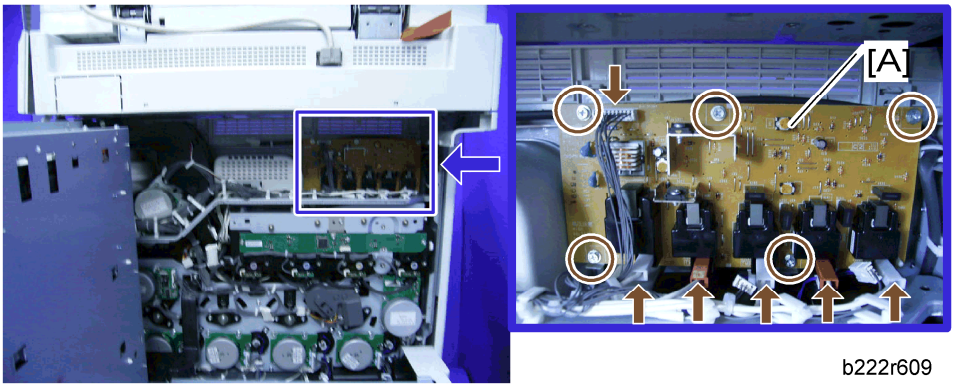


b222r608

3. **PSU board [A] (x 11, all s, all s)**

3.14.8 ITB POWER SUPPLY BOARD

1. **Rear cover (3.4.3 "Rear Cover")**
2. **Open the controller box (3.14.3 "Controller Box")**

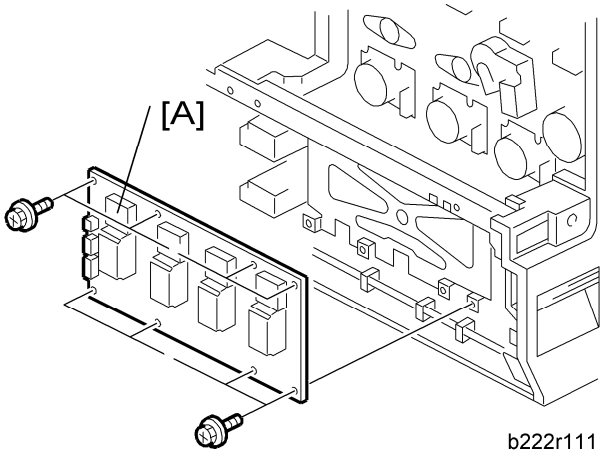


b222r609

3. **ITB power supply board [A] (x 5, x 6)**

3.14.9 HIGH VOLTAGE SUPPLY BOARD

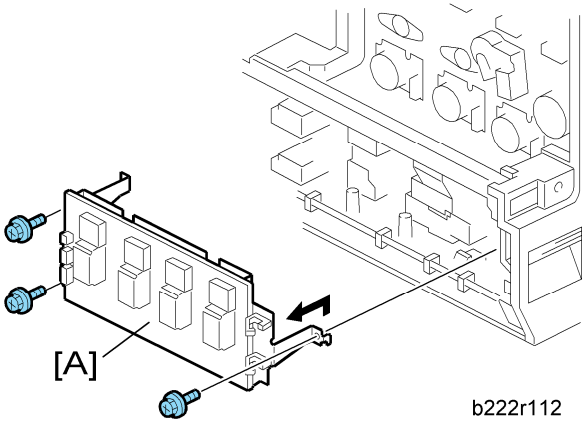
1. **Rear cover (3.4.3 "Rear Cover")**
2. **PSU bracket (3.14.7 "PSU")**



3. **High voltage supply board [A] (x 8, All s, x 2)**

3.14.10 HIGH VOLTAGE SUPPLY BOARD BRACKET

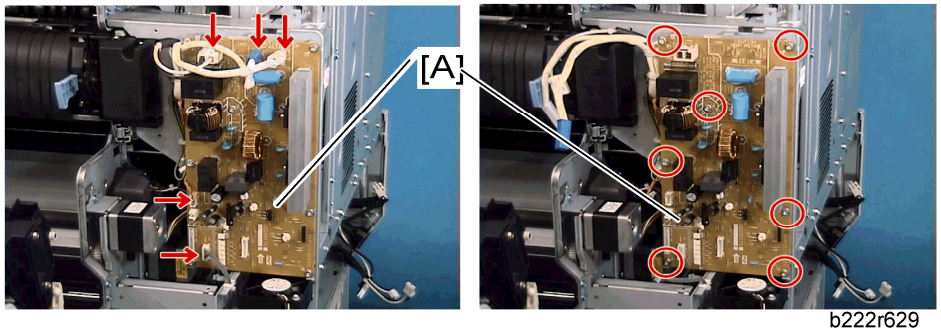
1. **Rear cover (☛3.4.3 "Rear Cover")**
2. **PSU bracket (☛3.14.7 "PSU")**



3. **High voltage supply board bracket [A] (x 3, All s, x 2)**

3.14.11 IH INVERTER

1. **Rear cover (☛3.4.3 "Rear Cover")**
2. **Right rear cover (☛3.4.4 "Right Rear Cover")**
3. **Fusing duct (☛3.11.14 " Fusing Fan")**

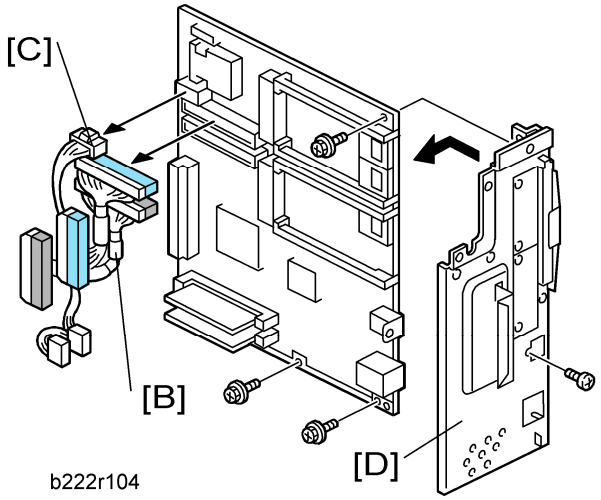


b222r629

4. **IH inverter (x 7, x 5)**

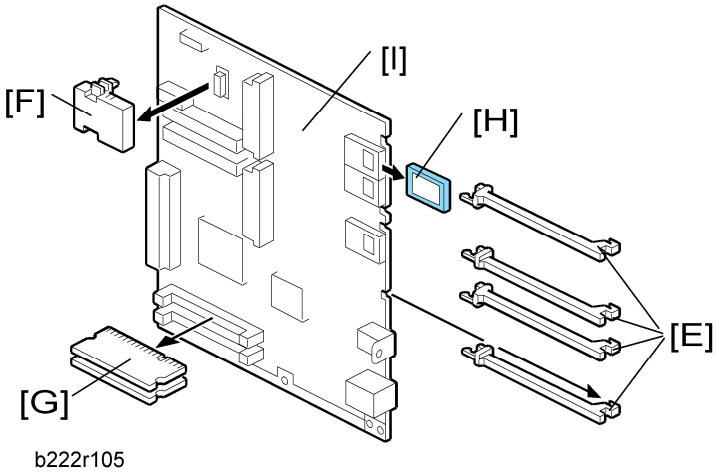
3.14.12 CONTROLLER BOARD

1. **Controller unit (☛3.14.1 "Controller Unit")**
2. **HDD fan bracket (☛3.14.14" HDD Fan")**
3. **HDD unit (☛3.14.15 " HDD")**



b222r104

4. **Two HDD interface cables [B] and harness [C]**
5. **Controller slot bracket [D] (x 4)**



b222r105

6. **Interface rails [E], NV-RAM [F], RAM-DIMM(s) [G], SD card [H]**
7. **Controller board [I]**

When installing the new controller board

Remove the NVRAM from the old controller board. Then install it on the new controller board after you replace the controller board. Replace the NVRAM (☛"p.3-143 " NVRAM Replacement Procedure"") if the NVRAM on the old controller board is defective.

Note

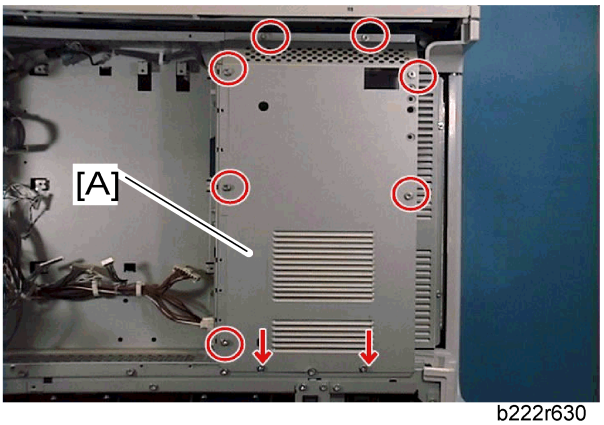
- Make sure you print out the SMC reports (“SP Mode Data” and “Logging Data”) before you replace the NVRAM.

⚠CAUTION

- Keep NVRAMs away from any objects that can cause static electricity. Static electricity can damage NVRAM data.
- Make sure the NVRAM is correctly installed on the controller board.
- Make sure that the DIP-switch settings on the old controller board are the same for the new controller board. Do not change the DIP switches on the controller board in the field.

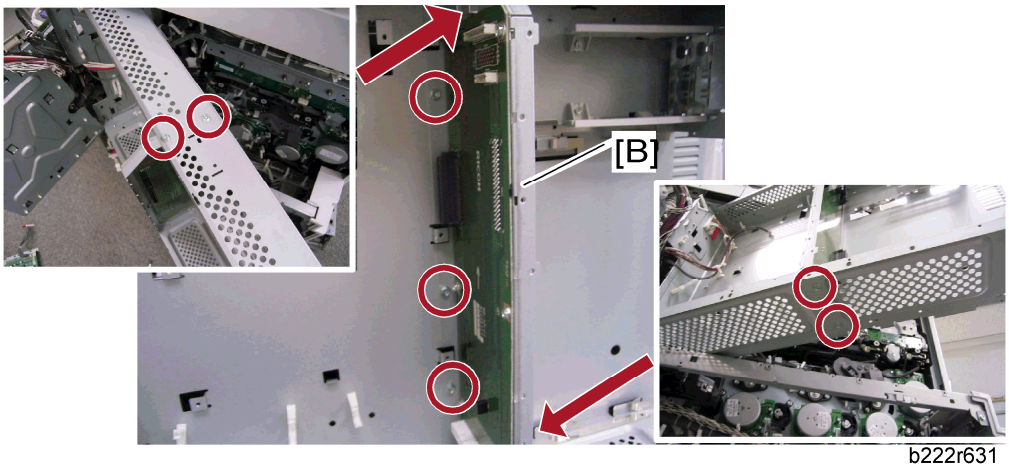
3.14.13 MOTHER BOARD

1. **Controller unit (☛3.14.1 "Controller Unit")**
2. **Rear cover (☛3.4.3 "Rear Cover")**
3. **Controller box right cover (☛3.14.2 ”Controller Box Right Cover ")**
4. **IOB bracket (☛3.14.3 "Controller Box")**
5. **IPU (☛3.14.6 "IPU")**



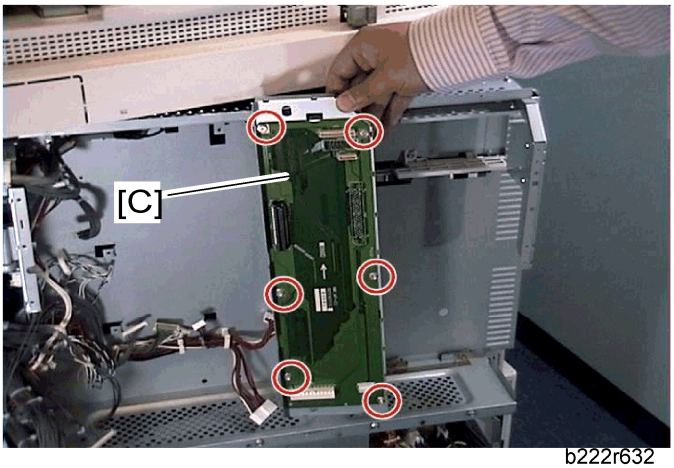
b222r630

6. **Controller box left cover [A] (🔩 x 9; red arrow screws do not need to be removed, just loosen them.)**
7. **Open the controller box (☛3.14.2 "Controller Box").**



b222r631

8. **Mother board bracket [B] (🔩 x 7, all 🖐s)**

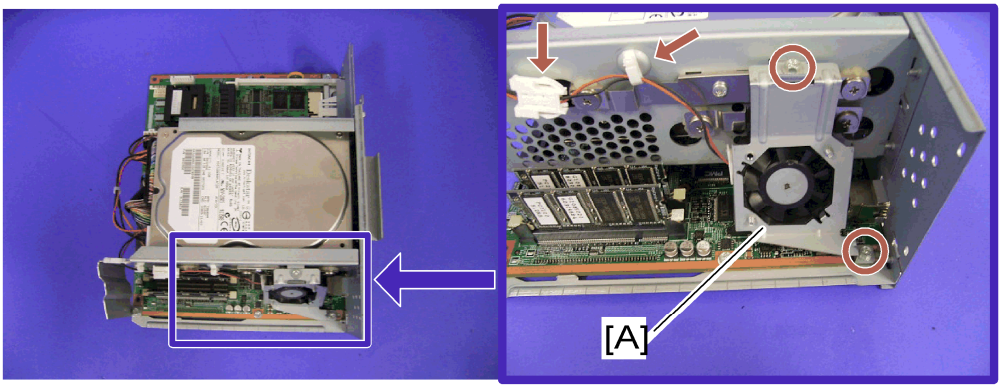


b222r632

9. **Mother board [C] (🔩 x 6)**

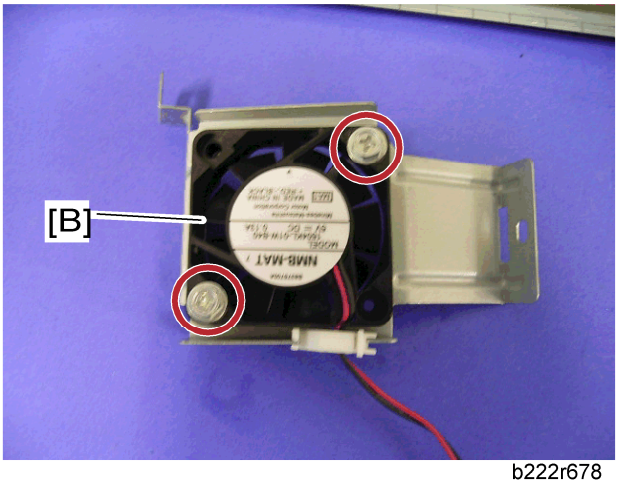
3.14.14 HDD FAN

1. Controller unit (☛3.14.1 "Controller Unit")



b222r677

2. HDD fan bracket [A] (x 2, x 1, x 1)

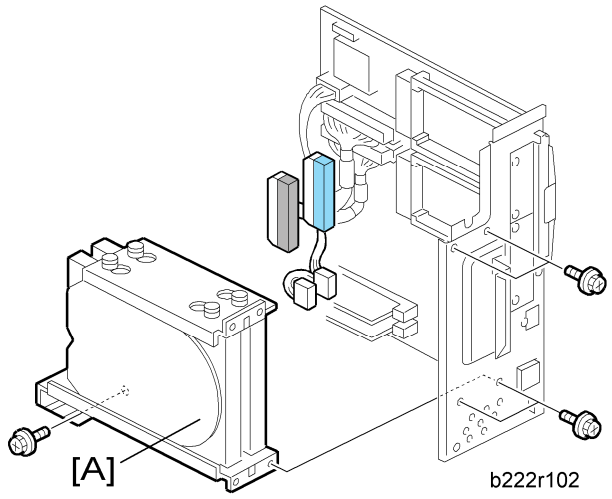


b222r678

3. HDD fan [B] (x 2)

3.14.15 HDD

1. Controller unit (☛3.14.1 "Controller Unit")
2. HDD fan bracket (☛3.14.14 " HDD Fan")



3. **HDD unit [A] (x 5, x 4)**

When installing a new HDD unit

1. **Turn the main power switch on. The disk is automatically formatted.**
2. **Install the stamp data using "SP5853".**
3. **Switch the machine off and on to enable the fixed stamps for use.**

Disposal of HDD Units

- Never remove an HDD unit from the work site without the consent of the client.
- If the customer has any concerns about the security of any information on the HDD, the HDD must remain with the customer for disposal or safe keeping.
- The HDD may contain proprietary or classified (Confidential, Secret) information. Specifically, the HDD contains document server documents and data stored in temporary files created automatically during copy job sorting and jam recovery. Such data is stored on the HDD in a special format so it cannot normally be read but can be recovered with illegal methods.

Reinstallation

Explain to the customer that the following information stored on the HDD is lost when the HDD is replaced:

- Document server documents
- Custom-made stamps
- Document server address book

The address book and document server documents (if needed) must be input again.

If you previously backed up the address book to an SD card with SP5846 051, you can use SP 5846 052 to copy the data from the SD card to the hard disk.

If the customer is using the Data Overwrite Security feature, the DOS function must be set up again. For more, see Section 1 (Installation).

If the customer is using the optional Browser Unit, this unit must be installed again. For more, see Section 1 (Installation).

3.14.16 NVRAM REPLACEMENT PROCEDURE

NVRAM on the BCU

1. **Make sure that you have the SMC report (factory settings). This report comes with the machine.**
2. **Output the SMC data (☛ SP5-990-001) if possible.**
3. **Turn the main switch off.**
4. **Install an SD card into SD card slot 3. Then turn the main power on.**
5. **Copy the NVRAM data to an SD card (☛ SP5-824-001) if possible.**
6. **Turn off the main switch. Then unplug the power cord.**
7. **Replace the NVRAM on the BCU and reassemble the machine.**
8. **Plug in the power cord. Then turn the main switch on.**
9. **Select a paper-size type (☛ SP5-131-001).**
10. **Specify the device number and destination code of the machine.**

    Note

    - Contact your supervisor for details on how to enter the device number and destination code.
    - SC 999 or “Fusing Unit Setting Error” can be shown until the device number and destination code are correctly programmed.
11. **Turn the main switch off and on.**
12. **Copy the data from the SD card to the NVRAM (☛ SP5-825-001) if you have successfully copied them to the SD card.**
13. **Turn the main switch off. Then remove the SD card from SD card slot 3.**
14. **Turn the main switch on.**
15. **Specify the SP and UP mode settings.**
16. **Do the process control self-check.**
17. **Do ACC (Auto Color Calibration) for the copier application program. (Refer to instruction – Troubleshhoting Manual; Chapter 6 – Maintenance – Auot Color Calbration)**
18. **Do ACC for the printer application program.**

NVRAM on the Controller

CAUTION

- If you change the NVRAM in the controller, and the Data Overwrite Security unit is installed, this Data Overwrite Security unit must be replaced with a new one.

1. **Make sure that you have the SMC report (factory settings). This report comes with the machine.**
2. **Output the SMC data (☛ SP5-990-001) if possible.**
3. **Turn the main switch off. Then put a blank formatted SD card into SD card slot 3.**
4. **Turn the main switch on.**
5. **Copy the NVRAM data (☛ SP5-824-001) and the address book data in the HDD (SP5846-051) to an SD card if possible.**

   Note

   - An error message shows if local user information cannot be stored in an SD card because the capacity is not enough.
   - You cannot do this procedure if the SD card is write-protected.
6. **Enter SP mode. Then print out the SMC reports (✉ SP5-990-001) if possible.**
7. **Turn off the main switch. Then unplug the power cord.**
8. **Replace the NVRAM on the controller. Then reassemble the machine.**
9. **Check if the serial number shows on the operation panel. (☛SP5-811-002). Input the serial number if it does not show. (Contact your supervisor about this setting.)**
10. **Plug in the power cord. Then turn the main switch on.**
11. **Copy the data from the SD card to the NVRAM (☛ SP5-825-001) and HDD (☛SP5-846-52) if you have successfully copied them to the SD card.**

    Note

    - The counter data in the user code information clears even if step 11 is done correctly.
    - An error message shows if the download is incomplete. However, you can still use the part of the address book data that has already been downloaded in step 11.
    - An error message shows when the download data does not exist in the SD card, or, if it is already deleted.
    - You cannot do this procedure if the SD card is write-protected.
12. **Go out of SP mode. Then turn the main switch off. Then remove the SD card from SD card slot 3.**
13. **Turn the main switch on.**

14. **Specify the SP and UP mode settings.**
15. **Do ACC (Auto Color Calibration) for the copier application program. (Refer to Operating Instruction – Troubleshooting Manual; Chapter 6 – Maintenance – Auto Color Calibration)**
16. **Do ACC for the printer application program.**

TROUBLESHOOTING

SECTION 4 TROUBLESHOOTING (SC CODES) REVISION HISTORY		
Page	**Date**	**Added/Updated/New**
43	05/30/2009	SC536
59 ~ 60	12/12/2008	SC636
67 ~ 68	05/30/2009	SC721/723
68 ~ 69	12/12/2008	SC726
70 ~ 71	05/30/2009	SC Table
72 ~ 75	05/30/2009	SC753, 765/766/767
83	12/12/2008	SC838

4. TROUBLESHOOTING

4.1 PROCESS CONTROL ERROR CONDITIONS

4.1.1 DEVELOPER INITIALIZATION RESULT

SP-3-014-001 (Developer Initialization Result)

No.	Result	Description	Possible Causes	Action
1	Successfully completed	Developer initialization is successfully completed.	-	-
2	Forced termination	Developer initialization was forcibly terminated.	A cover was opened or the main switch was turned off during the initialization.	When done in SP mode, do the developer initialization again. Reinstall the engine main firmware if the result is the same. Turn the main switch off and on when done at unit replacement.
6	Vt error	Vt is more than 0.7V when Vcnt is 4.3V.	1. Make sure that the heat seal on the development unit is not removed. 2. Defective TD sensor	
7	Vcnt error 1	Vcnt is less than 4.7V when Vcnt is Vt target ± 0.2V.	1. Defective TD sensor 2. Vt target settings are not correct. 3. Toner density error	
8	Vcnt error 2	Vt is more than 0.7V	1. Make sure that the heat seal on the development unit is not removed.	

Process Control Error Conditions

No.	Result	Description	Possible Causes	Action
		when Vcnt is 4.3V and Vcnt is less than 4.7V when Vcnt is Vt target ± 0.2V.	2. Defective TD sensor	
9	Vcnt error 3	Vcnt is less than 4.7V.	1. Make sure that the heat seal on the development unit is not removed 2. Defective TD sensor 3. Vt target settings are not correct. 4. Toner density error	

Note

- The machine starts developer initialization after you set “Enable” in SP3-902-005, 006, 007, or 008. Developer initialization automatically resumes when you open and close the front door or turn the main switch off and on if an error other than Error 8 occurs.

4.1.2 PROCESS CONTROL SELF-CHECK RESULT

Displayed number shows results of each color sensor check.

00000000 = YYCCMMKK

SP3-012-001 to -010 (Process Control Self-check Result)

No.	Result	Description	Possible Causes	Action
11	Successfully completed	Process control self-check successfully completed.	-	Check the Vsg adjustment. See the " Vsg Adjustment Result" following this table.
41	Vt error	Vt maximum or	1. Defective	Vt maximum error and

No.	Result	Description	Possible Causes	Action
		minimum error is detected.	development unit	an image is faint: ▪ Replace the toner supply pump unit. Vt maximum error and an image is O.K: • Replace the development unit. ▪ Replace the IOB board. Vt minimum error: ▪ Replace the development unit. ▪ Replace the IOB board.
53	ID sensor coefficient (K5) detection error	Not enough data can be sampled.	-	Solid image is not sufficient density: ▪ Retry the process control. ▪ Replace the ID sensors. ▪ Replace the IOB board. Solid image is O.K. ▪ Replace the ID sensors. ▪ Replace the IOB board. ID sensor is dirty: ▪ Clean the ID sensors. ▪ Retry the process control.

Process Control Error Conditions

No.	Result	Description	Possible Causes	Action
54	ID sensor coefficient (K5) maximum/ minimum error	When the K5 is more than the value of SP3-362-003 or less than the value of SP3-362-004, the error 54 is displayed.	1. ID sensor pattern density is too high or low. 2. ID sensor or shutter is defective.	Same as 53
55	Gamma error: Maximum	Gamma is out of range. 5.0 < Gamma	1. ID sensor pattern density is too high. 2. Hardware defective.	Same as 53
56	Gamma error: Minimum	Gamma is out of range. Gamma < 0.15	1. ID sensor pattern density is too low. 2. Hardware defective.	Same as 53 ▪ Replace the toner supply pump unit.
57	Vk error: Maximum	Vk is out of range. 150 < Vk	1. ID sensor pattern density is too low. 2. Hardware defective.	Same as 53
58	Vk error: Minimum	Vk is out of range. Vk < –150	1. ID sensor pattern density is too high. 2. Background dirty 3. Hardware defective	Same as 53

59	Sampling data error during gamma correction	Not enough data can be sampled during the gamma correction.	1. ID sensor pattern density is too high or low. 2. Hardware defective	Same as 53
99	Unexpected error	Process control fails.	1. Power Failure	Check the power source.

Vsg Adjustment Result

SP3-325-001 to -010 (Vsg Adjustment Result)

No.	Result	Description	Possible Causes	Action
1	O.K	Vsg adjustment is correctly done.	-	-
2	ID sensor adjustment error	Vsg cannot be adjusted within 4.0 ± 0.5V.	1. Dirty ID sensor (toner, dust, or foreign material) 2. Dirty transfer belt 3. Scratched image transfer belt 4. Defective ID sensor 5. Poor connection 6. Defective IOB	▪ Clean the ID sensor. ▪ Check the belt cleaning. Clean or replace the transfer belt. ▪ Replace the image transfer belt. ▪ Replace the ID sensor. ▪ Check the connection. ▪ Replace the IOB board.
3	ID sensor output error	ID sensor output is more than "Voffset Threshold"	1. Defective ID sensor 2. Poor connection 3. Defective IOB	▪ Replace the ID sensor. ▪ Check the connection.

Process Control Error Conditions

No.	Result	Description	Possible Causes	Action
		(SP3-324-004)		▪ Replace the IOB board.
9	Vsg Adjustment error	Vsg adjustment has not been completed.	Other cases	▪ Retry the SP3-321-010.

4.1.3 LINE POSITION ADJUSTMENT RESULT

SP2-194-010 to -012 (Line Position Adjustment Result: M, C, Y)

This SP shows the number as a line position adjustment result on the LCD. It shows which color has an error (M, Y or C).

No.	Result	Description	Note
0	Not done	Line position adjustment has not been done.	-
1	Completed successfully	Line position adjustment has correctly been done,	-
2	Cannot detect patterns	ID sensors have not detected the patterns for line position adjustment.	See Note
3	Fewer lines on the pattern than the target	The patterns, which ID sensors has detected, are not enough for line position adjustment.	See Note
4	More lines on the pattern than the target	Not used in this machine.	-
5	Out of the adjustment range	ID sensors has correctly detected the patterns for line position adjustment, but a shift of patterns is out of adjustable range.	See Note
6-9	Not used	-	-

Note

- For details, see the "Troubleshooting Guide - Line Position Adjustment" section.

4.2 SCANNER TEST MODE

4.2.1 VPU TEST MODE

Output the VPU test pattern with SP4-907-001 to make sure the scanner VPU control operates correctly. The VPU test pattern prints out after you have set the SP mode settings and pressed the start key.

- The CCD on the SBU board may be defective if the copy is abnormal and the VPU test pattern is normal.
- The following can be the cause if the copy is normal and the VPU test pattern is abnormal:
  - The harness may not be correctly connected between the SBU and the IPU.
  - The IPU or SBU board may be defective.

4.2.2 IPU TEST MODE

You can check the IPU board with the SP mode menu, SP4-904-1.
If no error is detected, the test ends. Then the completion code shows in the operation panel display. If an error is detected, the test is interrupted. Then an error code shows. The table below lists the completion and error codes.

SP4-904-1 Register Access

There are 16 bits switches in this SP. Each bit indicates each CPU as followings. The error result is displayed on the operation panel in decimal number.
0: Normal, 1: Error

Bit 0: TAURUS register	Bit 3 to 11: Not used
Bit 1: ORION register	Bit 12: Ri20 register
Bit 2: LUPUS register	Bit 13 to 15: Not used

SP4-904-2 Image Path

There are 16 bits switches in this SP. Each bit indicates each CPU path as followings. The error result is displayed on the operation panel in decimal number.
0: Normal, 1: Error

Bit 0: Image path from SBU to TAURUS	Bit 4 to 11: Not used
Bit 1: Image path from TAURUS to ORION	Bit 12: Image path from LUPUS to Ri20
Bit 2: Image path from ORION to TAURUS	Bit 13: Image path from Ri20 to GAVD
Bit 3: Image path from TAURUS to LUPUS	Bit 14 and 15: Not used

Errors may be caused by the following problems:

1. Short circuit on the signal lines
   - When the IPU board is installed, a pin or two on the ASIC is damaged.
   - Some conductive matter or object is trapped among the pins.
   - Condensation
2. Destruction of circuit elements
   - Over current or a defective element breaks the circuit.
3. Abnormal power supply
   •The required voltage is not supplied to the devices.
4. Overheat/overcooling
   - The environment is inappropriate for the board (the scanner unit).
5. Static electricity
   - Static electricity of a high voltage occurs during the test.
6. Others
   - The scanner and IPU are incorrectly connected.

When you have completed a check, turn the main switch off and on before you do another check. When you have completed all necessary checks, turn the main switch off and on.

4.3 SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS

4.3.1 SUMMARY

The 'SC Table' section shows the SC codes for controller errors and other errors. The latter (not controller errors) are put into four types. The type is determined by their reset procedures. The table shows the classification of the SC codes.

	Key	Definition	Reset Procedure
Controller errors	CTL	The error has occurred in the controller.	See "Troubleshooting Procedure" in the table.
Other errors	A	The error involves the fusing unit. The machine operation is disabled. The user cannot reset the error.	Turn the main switch off and on. Reset the SC (set SP5-810-1). Turn the main switch off and on.
	B	The error involves one or some specific units. The machine operates as usual, excluding the related units.	Turn the operation switch off and on.
	C	The error is logged. The SC-code history is updated. The machine operates as usual.	The SC will not show. Only the SC history is updated.
	D	The machine operation is disabled. You can reset the machine by turning the operation switch or main switch off and on. If the error occurs again, the same SC code is displayed.	Turn the operation switch or main power switch off and on.

After you turn the main power switch off, wait for one second or more before you turn the

main power switch on (✉ SC 672). All SCs are logged. The print log data (SP5-990-004) in SP mode can check the latest 10 SC codes detected and total counters when the SC code is detected.

Note

- If the problem concerns electrical circuit boards, first disconnect then reconnect the connectors before you replace the PCBs.
- If the problem concerns a motor lock, first check the mechanical load before you replace motors or sensors.

SC Code Classification

The table shows the classification of the SC codes:

Class 1	Section	SC Code	Detailed section
1XX	Scanning	100 -	Scanner
		190 -	Unique for a specific model
2XX	Laser exposure	200 -	Polygon motor
		220 -	Synchronization control
		230 -	FGATE signal related
		240 -	LD control
		280 -	Unique for a specific model
		290 -	Shutter
3XX	Image development 1	300 -	Charge
		330 -	Drum potential
		350 -	Development
		380 -	Unique for a specific model
4XX	Image development 2	400 -	Image transfer
		420 -	Paper separation
		430 -	Cleaning

Service Call Conditions

Class 1	Section	SC Code	Detailed section
		440 -	Around drum
		460 -	Unit
		480 -	Others
5XX	Paper feed / Fusing	500 -	Paper feed
		515 -	Duplex
		520 -	Paper transport
5XX	Paper feed / Fusing	530 -	Fan motor
		540 -	Fusing
		560 -	Others
		570 -	Unique for a specific model
6XX	Communication	600 -	Electrical counters
		620 -	Mechanical counters
		630 -	Account control
		640 -	CSS
		650 -	Network
		670 -	Internal data processing
		680 -	Unique for a specific model
7XX	Peripherals	700 -	Original handling
		720 -	Two-tray finisher
		740 -	Booklet finisher
8XX	Controller	800 -	Error after ready condition
		820 -	Diagnostics error

Class 1	Section	SC Code	Detailed section
		860 -	Hard disk
		880 -	Unique for a specific model
9XX	Others	900 -	Counter
		920 -	Memory
		990 -	Others

4.4 SC TABLE

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
101	D	Exposure lamp error -001: Shading at AGC -002: Shading at scanning
		The peak white level is less than 64/255 digits (8 bits) when scanning the shading plate. (The shading data peak does not reach the specified threshold)
		▪ Exposure lamp defective ▪ Lamp stabilizer defective ▪ Exposure lamp connector defective ▪ Standard white plate dirty ▪ Scanner mirror or scanner lens out of position or dirty ▪ SBU defective
		1. Check and clean the scanner mirror(s) and scanner lens. 2. Check and clean the shading plate. 3. Replace the exposure lamp. 4. Replace the lamp stabilizer. 5. Replace the scanner mirror(s) or scanner lens. 6. Replace the SBU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
120	D	Scanner home position error 1
		The scanner home position sensor does not detect the “OFF” condition during operation.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		▪ Scanner motor driver defective ▪ Scanner motor defective ▪ Harness between SIO board and scanner motor disconnected ▪ Scanner HP sensor defective ▪ Harness between SBU and HP sensor disconnected
		1. Check the cable connection between the SIO board and scanner motor. 2. Check the cable connection between the SBU and HP sensor. 3. Replace the scanner motor. 4. Replace the HP sensor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
121	D	Scanner home position error 2
		The scanner home position sensor does not detect the “ON” condition during operation.
		▪ Scanner motor driver defective ▪ Scanner motor defective ▪ Harness between SIO board and scanner motor disconnected ▪ Scanner HP sensor defective ▪ Harness between SBU and HP sensor disconnected
		1. Check the cable connection between the SIO board and scanner motor. 2. Check the cable connection between the SBU and HP sensor. 3. Replace the scanner motor. 4. Replace the HP sensor.

SC Table

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
141	D	Black level detection error
		The black level cannot be adjusted within the target value during the zero clamp.
		▪ Defective SBU
		Replace the SBU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
142	D	White level detection error
		The white level cannot be adjusted within the target during auto gain control.
		▪ Dirty exposure glass or optics section ▪ SBU board defective ▪ Exposure lamp defective ▪ Lamp stabilizer defective
		1. Clean the exposure glass, white plate, mirrors, and lens. 2. Check if the exposure lamp is lit during initialization. 3. Check the harness connection between SBU and IPU. 4. Replace the exposure lamp. 5. Replace the SBU board.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
144		SBU communication error
-001	D	SBU connection error
		The SBU connection cannot be detected at power on or recovery from the energy save mode.
		▪ Insufficient power supply for SBU

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		▪ Defective SBU ▪ Defective harness ▪ Defective detection port on the BCU
		1. Replace the harness. 2. Replace the SBU. 3. Replace the BCU.
-002	D	SBU serial communication error
		The power ON of the SBU is not detected.
		▪ Defective SIO ▪ Defective harness ▪ Defective detection port on the BCU
		1. Replace the harness. 2. Replace the SIO. 3. Replace the BCU.
-003	D	GASBU reset error
		The serial communication does not work.
		▪ Defective SBU ▪ Defective detection circuit on the BCU ▪ Defective harness
		1. Replace the SBU. 2. Replace the BCU. 3. Replace the harness.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
161	D	IPU error
		The error result of self-diagnostic by the Taurus (ASIC on the IPU) is detected.

SC Table

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		▪ Defective IPU ▪ Defective connection between IPU and SBU
		1. Check the connection between IPU and SBU. 2. Replace the IPU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
165	D	Copy Data Security Unit error
		▪ The copy data security board is not detected when the copy data security function is set "ON" with the initial setting. ▪ A device check error occurs when the copy data security function is set "ON" with the initial setting.
		▪ Incorrect installation of the copy data security board ▪ Defective copy data security board
		1. Reinstall the copy data security board. 2. Replace the copy data security board.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
195	D	Serial Number Mismatch
		▪ Serial number stored in the memory does not have the correct code.
		▪ NVRAM defective ▪ BCU replaced without original NVRAM
		1. Check the serial number with SP5-811-002. 2. If the stored serial number is incorrect, contact your supervisor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
202	D	Polygon motor error 1: ON timeout
		The polygon mirror motor does not reach the targeted operating speed within the specified time after turning on or changing speed
		▪ Defective or disconnected harness to polygon motor driver board ▪ Defective polygon motor driver board ▪ Defective polygon motor.
		1. Replace the polygon motor. 2. Replace the laser optics housing unit. 3. Replace the harness. 4. Replace the IPU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
203	D	Polygon motor error 2: OFF timeout
		The polygon mirror motor does leave the READY status within 3 seconds after the polygon motor switches off.
		▪ Disconnected or defective harness to polygon motor driver board ▪ Defective polygon motor driver board ▪ Defective polygon motor
		1. Check or replace the harness. 2. Replace the polygon motor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
204	D	Polygon motor error 3: XSCRDY signal error
		The SCRDY_N signal goes HIGH (inactive) while the laser diode is firing.

		▪ Disconnected or defective harness to polygon motor driver board ▪ Defective polygon motor ▪ Defective polygon motor driver board
		1. Check or replace the harness. 2. Replace the polygon motor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
210	C	Laser synchronizing detection error: end position [K]
211	C	Laser synchronizing detection error: end position [Y]
212	C	Laser synchronizing detection error: end position [M]
213	C	Laser synchronizing detection error: end position [C]
-	-	The laser synchronizing detection signal for the end position of LDB [K], [Y], [M], [C] is not detected for one second after the LDB unit turned on when detecting the main scan magnification.
		▪ Disconnected or defective harness to synchronizing detector for end position ▪ Defective synchronizing detector board ▪ Defective LD board or driver ▪ Defective IPU
		1. Replace the harness of the LD board. 2. Replace the laser optics housing unit. 3. Replace the IPU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
220	D	Laser synchronizing detection error: start position [K]: LD0
221	D	Laser synchronizing detection error: start position [K]: LD1
222	D	Laser synchronizing detection error: start position [Y]: LD0

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
223	D	Laser synchronizing detection error: start position [Y]: LD1
224	D	Laser synchronizing detection error: start position [M]: LD0
225	D	Laser synchronizing detection error: start position [M]: LD1
226	D	Laser synchronizing detection error: start position [C]: LD0
227	D	Laser synchronizing detection error: start position [C]: LD1
-	-	The laser synchronizing detection signal for the start position of the LDB [K], [Y], [M], [C] is not output for two seconds after LDB unit turns on while the polygon motor is rotating normally.
		▪ Disconnected cable from the laser synchronizing detection unit or defective connection ▪ Defective laser synchronizing detector ▪ Defective LDB ▪ Defective IPU
		1. Check the connectors. 2. Replace the laser-synchronizing detector. 3. Replace the LDB. 4. Replace the IPU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
230	D	FGATE ON error: Bk
		The PFGATE ON signal does not assert within 5 seconds after processing the image in normal job or MUSIC for start position [K].
		▪ Defective ASIC (Lupus) ▪ Poor connection between controller and IPU. ▪ Defective IPU

SC Table

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		1. Check the connection between the controller board and the IPU. 2. Replace the IPU. 3. Replace the controller board.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
231	D	FGATE OFF error: Bk
		▪ The PFGATE ON signal still asserts within 5 seconds after processing the image in normal job or MUSIC for end position [K]. ▪ The PFGATE ON signal still asserts when the next job starts.
		See SC 230 for troubleshooting details.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
232	D	FGATE ON error: Y
		The PFGATE ON signal does not assert within 5 seconds after processing the image in normal job or MUSIC for start position [Y].
		See SC 230 for troubleshooting details.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
233	D	FGATE OFF error: Y
		▪ The PFGATE ON signal still asserts within 5 seconds after processing the image in normal job or MUSIC for end position [Y]. ▪ The PFGATE ON signal still asserts when the next job starts.
		See SC 230 for troubleshooting details.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
234	D	FGATE ON error: M
		The PFGATE ON signal does not assert within 5 seconds after processing the image in normal job or MUSIC for start position [M].
		See SC 230 for troubleshooting details.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
235	D	FGATE OFF error: M
		▪ The PFGATE ON signal still asserts within 5 seconds after processing the image in normal job or MUSIC for end position [M]. ▪ The PFGATE ON signal still asserts when the next job starts.
		See SC 230 for troubleshooting details.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
236	D	FGATE ON error: C
		The PFGATE ON signal does not assert within 5 seconds after processing the image in normal job or MUSIC for start position [C].
		See SC 230 for troubleshooting details.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
237	D	FGATE OFF error: C
		▪ The PFGATE ON signal still asserts within 5 seconds after processing the image in normal job or MUSIC for end position [C]. ▪ The PFGATE ON signal still asserts when the next job starts.
		See SC 230 for troubleshooting details.

SC Table

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
240	C	LD error: Bk
241	C	LD error: Y
242	C	LD error: M
243	C	LD error: C
-	-	The IPU detects LDB error a few times consecutively when LDB unit turns on after LDB initialization.
		▪ Worn-out LD ▪ Disconnected or broken harness of the LD
		1. Replace the harness of the LD. 2. Replace the laser optics housing unit. 3. Replace the IPU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
285	D	Line position adjustment (MUSIC) error
		Line position adjustment fails four consecutive times.
		▪ Pattern sampling error (insufficient image density) ▪ Defective ID sensors for the line position adjustment ▪ Defective image transfer belt unit ▪ Defective PCU(s) ▪ Defective laser optics housing unit
		1. Check and reinstall the image transfer belt unit and PCUs. 2. Check if each toner bottle has enough toner. 3. Replace the ID sensor. 4. Replace the image transfer belt unit. 5. Replace the PCU(s). 6. Replace the laser optics housing unit.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
290	D	Shutter sensor time over error: Close
		The shutter close sensor does not detect "ON" for 2000 msec after the shutter motor turns on.
		▪ Defective shutter close sensor ▪ Disconnected or broken harness ▪ Defective shutter motor ▪ Defective shutter ▪ Shutter motor overload ▪ Defective IOB
		1. Check or replace the harness. 2. Replace the shutter on the laser optics housing unit. 3. Replace the shutter motor. 4. Replace the shutter close sensor. 5. Replace the IOB.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
291	C	Shutter overrun error 1: Close
		The shutter close sensor loses the "ON" signal after the shutter was closed.
		▪ Defective motor ▪ Change of load to shutter motor
		Replace the shutter on the laser optics housing unit.

SC Table

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
292	D	Shutter overrun error 2: Close
		The shutter close sensor detects "ON" after SC 291 has occurred.
		▪ Defective motor ▪ Change of load to shutter motor
		Replace the shutter on the laser optics housing unit.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
293	D	Shutter sensor time over error: Open
		The shutter open sensor does not detect "ON" for 2000 msec after the shutter motor turns on.
		▪ Defective shutter close sensor ▪ Disconnected or broken harness ▪ Defective shutter motor ▪ Defective shutter ▪ Shutter motor overload ▪ Defective IOB
		1. Check or replace the harness. 2. Replace the shutter on the laser optics housing unit. 3. Replace the shutter motor. 4. Replace the shutter close sensor. 5. Replace the IOB.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
294	C	Shutter overrun error 1: Open
		The shutter open sensor loses the "ON" signal after the shutter was closed.
		▪ Defective motor ▪ Change of load to shutter motor
		1. Replace the shutter on the laser optics housing unit.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
295	D	Shutter overrun error 2: Open
		The shutter open sensor detects "ON" after SC 291 has occurred.
		▪ Defective motor ▪ Change of load to shutter motor
		1. Replace the shutter on the laser optics housing unit.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
296	D	Shutter open/close sensor error
		Both shutter open sensor and close sensor detect "ON" at the same time.
		▪ Broken harness(es) of the shutter open/close sensors
		Replace the shutter on the laser optics housing unit.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
300	D	AC charge output error [K]
301	D	AC charge output error [M]
302	D	AC charge output error [C]

SC Table

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
303	D	AC charge output error [Y]
-	-	The measured voltage is not proper when IOB measures the charge output for each color.
		▪ Disconnected or broken high voltage cable ▪ Defective or not installed PCU ▪ Defective high voltage power supply
		1. Check or replace the connectors. 2. Replace the PCU for the affected colour. 3. Replace the high voltage power supply.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
360	D	TD sensor (Vt high) error 1: K
361	D	TD sensor (Vt high) error 1: M
362	D	TD sensor (Vt high) error 1: C
363	D	TD sensor (Vt high) error 1: Y
-	-	▪ The Vt value of the black, magenta, cyan, or yellow TD sensor exceeds the specified value (default: 4.7V) with SP3020-002 for twenty counts. ▪ The [Vt - Vtref] value of the black, magenta, cyan, or yellow TD sensor exceeds the specified value (default: 5.0V) with SP3020-001.
		▪ Black, magenta, cyan, or yellow TD sensor disconnected ▪ Harness between TD sensor and PCU defective ▪ Defective TD sensor.
		1. Check the black, magenta, cyan, or yellow TD sensor connector and harness between the TD sensor and PCU for damage. 2. Check the drawer connector. 3. Replace the defective PCU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
364	D	TD sensor (Vt high) error 2: K
365	D	TD sensor (Vt high) error 2: M
366	D	TD sensor (Vt high) error 2: C
367	D	TD sensor (Vt high) error 2: Y
-	-	The Vt value of the black, magenta, cyan, or yellow TD sensor is below the specified value with SP3020-004 (default: 0.5V) for 10 counts.
		▪ TD sensor harness disconnected, loose, defective ▪ A drawer connector disconnected, loose, defective ▪ TD sensor defective
		1. Check the black, magenta, cyan, or yellow TD sensor connector and harness between the TD sensor and PCU for damage. 2. Check the drawer connector. 3. Replace the defective PCU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
372	D	TD sensor adjustment error: K
373	D	TD sensor adjustment error: M
374	D	TD sensor adjustment error: C
375	D	TD sensor adjustment error: Y
-	-	During TD sensor initialization, the output value of the black, magenta, cyan, or yellow TD sensor is not within the range of the specified value with SP3238-001 to -004 (default: 2.7V) ± 0.2V
		▪ Heat seal not removed from a new developer pack ▪ TD harness sensor disconnected, loose or defective ▪ TD sensor defective ▪ Harness between TD sensor and drawer disconnected, defective

SC Table

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		1. Remove the heat seal from each PCU. 2. Replace the defective PCU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
380	C	Drum gear position sensor error
		The machine does not detect the drum position signal for 3 seconds at the drum phase adjustment.
		▪ Dirty or defective drum gear position sensor
		1. Replace the drum gear position sensor. 2. Replace the PCU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
396	D	Drum/Development motor error: K
397	D	Drum/Development motor error: M
398	D	Drum/Development motor error: C
399	D	Drum/Development motor error: Y
-	-	The machine detects a High signal from the drum/development motor for 2 seconds after the drum/development motor turned on.
		▪ Overload on the drum/development motor ▪ Defective drum/development motor ▪ Defective harness ▪ Shorted 24 V fuse on the PSU ▪ Defective interlock system
		1. Check or replace the harness. 2. Replace the drum/development motor. 3. Replace the 24V fuse on the PSU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
400	D	ID sensor adjustment error
		When the Vsg error counter reaches "3", the machine detects "SC400". The Vsg error counter counts "1" when the Vsg detected by ID sensor is more than the value (default: 4.5V) specified with SP3234-005 or less than the value (default: 3.5V) specified with SP SP3234-006.
		▪ Dirty or defective ID sensor ▪ Defective ID sensor shutter
		1. Check the harness of the ID sensor. 2. Clean or replace the ID sensor. Note ▪ After replacing the ID sensor, input the ID sensor correction coefficient with SP3362-013 to -018. For details, refer to "ID sensor board" in the Replacement and Adjustment section. 3. Replace the IOB. 4. Replace the image transfer belt unit.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
441	D	Image transfer unit motor error
		The motor LOCK signal is not detected for more than two seconds while the motor START signal is on.
		▪ Motor overload ▪ Defective image transfer unit motor
		1. Replace the image transfer belt unit. 2. Replace the IOB.

SC Table

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
442	D	Image transfer belt contact motor error
		The image transfer belt contact sensor does not detect the movement of actuator at the sensor while the polygon motor rotates.
		▪ Dirty image transfer belt contact sensor ▪ Defective image transfer belt contact motor ▪ Disconnected connector of image transfer belt contact sensor or motor ▪ Disconnected cable
		1. Replace the image transfer belt contact sensor. 2. Replace the image transfer belt contact motor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
443	D	Image transfer unit error
		The machine detects the encoder sensor error.
		▪ Defective encoder sensor ▪ Image transfer unit installation error ▪ Defective image transfer unit motor
		1. Check if the image transfer unit is correctly set. 2. Replace the image transfer unit motor. 3. Replace the image transfer unit.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
452	D	Paper transfer unit contact error
		The paper transfer unit contact sensor does not detect the movement of actuator at the sensor while the polygon motor rotates.
		▪ Defective paper transfer unit contact sensor ▪ Defective paper transfer unit contact motor ▪ Broken +24V fuse on PSU ▪ Defective IOB
		1. Check the connection between the paper transfer unit and PSU. 2. Replace the paper transfer unit contact sensor. 3. Replace the paper transfer unit contact motor. 4. Replace the +24V fuse on the PSU. 5. Replace the IOB.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
460	D	Separation power pack output error
		An interrupt checks the status of the power pack every 20 ms. This SC is issued if the BCU detects a short in the power pack 10 times at D(ac).
		▪ Damaged insulation on the high-voltage supply cable ▪ Damaged insulation around the high-voltage power supply.
		1. Replace the high-voltage supply cable. 2. Replace the high-voltage power supply unit. 3. Replace the IOB.

SC Table

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
490	D	Toner transport motor error
		The LOCK signal is not detected for 2 seconds when the transport motor turns on.
		▪ Toner transport motor overload ▪ Disconnected or broken harness ▪ Defective toner transport motor ▪ Opened +24V fuse on the PSU ▪ Defective interlock switch
		1. Check or replace the harness. 2. Replace the toner transport motor. 3. Replace the +24V fuse on the PSU. 4. Replace the interlock switch.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
491	D	High voltage power: Drum/ development bias output error
		An error signal is detected for 0.2 seconds when charging the drum or development.
		▪ High voltage leak ▪ Broken harness ▪ Defective drum unit or development unit ▪ Defective high voltage supply unit
		1. Check or replace the harness. 2. Replace the drum unit or paper transfer unit. 3. Replace the high voltage supply unit.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
492	D	High voltage power: Image transfer/ paper transfer bias output error
		An error signal is detected for 0.2 seconds when charging the separation, image transfer bet or paper transfer roller.
		▪ High voltage leak ▪ Broken harness ▪ Defective image transfer belt unit or paper transfer unit ▪ Defective high voltage supply unit
		1. Check or replace the harness. 2. Replace the image transfer belt unit or paper transfer unit. 3. Replace the high voltage supply unit.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
498	C	Temperature and humidity sensor error 2
		▪ The thermistor output of the temperature sensor was not within the prescribed range (0.5V to 4.2V). ▪ The thermistor output of the humidity sensor was not within the prescribed range (0.01V to 2.4V).
		▪ Temperature and humidity sensor harness disconnected, loose, defective ▪ Temperature and humidity sensor defective
		1. Check the connector and harness. 2. Replace the temperature/humidity sensor.

SC Table

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
501	B	Paper Tray 1 error
502	B	Paper Tray 2 error
-	-	▪ When the tray lift motor rotates counterclockwise, (if the upper limit is not detected within 10 seconds), the machine asks the user to reset the tray. ▪ When the tray lift motor rotates clockwise, (if the upper limit is not detected within 1.5 seconds), the machine asks the user to reset the tray. If one of these conditions occurs three consecutive times, the SC is generated.
		▪ Disconnected or defective paper lift sensor ▪ Disconnected or defective tray lift motor ▪ Defective bottom plate lift mechanism ▪ Too much paper in the tray ▪ Defective IOB
		1. Check if the paper is not loaded too much. 2. Check if the bottom plate smoothly moves up and down manually. 3. Check and/or replace the tray lift motor. 4. Replace the IOB.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
503-01	B	Tray 3 error (Paper Feed Unit or LCT)
		For the paper feed unit: ▪ When the tray lift motor is turned on, the upper limit is not detected within 10 seconds **For the LCT:** ▪ SC 503-01 occurs if the upper or lower limit is not detected within 8 seconds when the tray lift motor is turned on to lift or lower the tray.
		For the paper feed unit: ▪ Defective tray lift motor or connector disconnection ▪ Defective lift sensor or connector disconnection **For the LCT:** ▪ Defective stack transport clutch or connector disconnection ▪ Defective tray motor or connector disconnection ▪ Defective end fence home position sensor or connector disconnection ▪ Defective upper limit sensor or connector disconnection ▪ Defective tray lift motor or connector disconnection
		1. Check the cable connections. 2. Check and/or replace the defective component.

SC Table

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
503-02	B	Tray 3 error (Paper Feed Unit or LCT)
		This SC is generated if the following condition occurs 3 consecutive times. **For the paper feed unit:** ▪ When the tray lowers, the tray lift sensor does not go off within 1.5 sec. **For the LCT:** ▪ When the main switch is turned on or when the LCT is set, if the end fence is not in the home position (home position sensor ON), the tray lift motor stops. ▪ If the upper limit does not go off for 1.5 seconds even the tray lift motor turns on to lower the tray after the upper limit has been detected at power on.
		For the paper feed unit: ▪ Defective tray lift motor or connector disconnection ▪ Defective lift sensor or connector disconnection **For the LCT:** ▪ Defective stack transport clutch or connector disconnection ▪ Defective tray motor or connector disconnection ▪ Defective end fence home position sensor or connector disconnection
		1. Check the cable connections. 2. Check and/or replace the defective component.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
504-01	B	Tray 4 error (Paper Feed Unit or LCT)
		For the two-tray paper feed unit When the tray lift motor is turned on, the upper limit is not detected within 10 seconds. If this condition occurs three consecutive times, the SC is generated. **For the LCT** If the upper or lower limit is not detected within 8 seconds when the tray lift motor is turned on to lift up or lower the tray
		▪ Defective tray lift motor or connector disconnection ▪ Defective lift sensor or connector disconnection
		1. Check the cable connections. 2. Check and/or replace the defective component.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
504-02	B	Tray 4 error (3 Tray Paper Feed Unit)
		This SC is generated if the following condition occurs 3 consecutive times. **For the two-tray paper feed unit** ▪ When the tray lowers, the tray lift sensor does not go off within 1.5 sec. **For the LCT** ▪ If the upper limit does not go off for 1.5 seconds even the tray lift motor turns on to lower the tray after the upper limit has been detected at power on.
		▪ Defective tray lift motor or connector disconnection ▪ Defective lift sensor or connector disconnection
		1. Check the cable connections. 2. Check and/or replace the defective component.

SC Table

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
529	D	Junction gate 1 motor error
		The junction gate 1 HP sensor does not detect the home position of junction gate 1 for 0.15 seconds when the machine starts to detect its home position. The junction gate 1 HP sensor does not turn off for 0.1 seconds after the machine has detected its home position.
		▪ Disconnected or defective junction gate 1 motor ▪ Disconnected or defective junction gate 1 HP sensor ▪ Mechanical problem (such as paper jam etc.) ▪ Shorted 24 V fuse on the PSU ▪ Defective IOB
		1. Remove any objects that obstruct junction gate 1. 2. Replace the junction gate 1 HP sensor. 3. Replace the junction gate 1 motor. 4. Replace the 24 V fuse on the PSU. 5. Replace the IOB.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
530	D	Fusing fan error
		The IOB does not receive the lock signal 10 seconds after turning on the fusing fan.
		▪ Defective fusing fan motor or connector disconnection ▪ Defective IOB
		Check the connector and/or replace the fusing fan motor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
531	D	Ventilation fan (at the left side of the machine) motor-front/rear error
		The IOB does not receive the lock signal for 2 seconds after turning on the ventilation fan motor-front/rear.
		▪ Defective ventilation fan motor-front or rear
		Replace the ventilation fan (at the left side of the machine) motor-front or rear.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
532	D	IH coil fan error
		The machine does not detect the fan motor lock signal for 2 seconds while the IH coil fan turns on.
		▪ Disconnected harness ▪ Overload on the IH coil fan motor ▪ Defective IH coil fan motor ▪ Defective IOB
		1. Check or replace the harness. 2. Replace the IH coil fan. 3. Replace the IOB

SC Table

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
533	D	IH inverter fan error
		The machine does not detect the fan motor lock signal for 2 seconds while the IH inverter fan turns on.
		▪ Disconnected harness ▪ Overload on the IH inverter fan motor ▪ Defective IH inverter fan motor ▪ Defective IOB
		1. Check or replace the harness. 2. Replace the IH inverter fan. 3. Replace the IOB

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
534	D	Second duct fan error
		The machine does not detect the fan motor lock signal for 2 seconds while the second duct fan turns on.
		▪ Disconnected harness ▪ Overload on the second duct fan motor ▪ Defective second duct motor ▪ Defective IOB
		1. Check or replace the harness. 2. Replace the second duct fan. 3. Replace the IOB

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
535	D	Paper exit fan error
		The machine does not detect the fan motor lock signal for 2 seconds while the paper exit fan turns on.
		Disconnected harness Overload on the paper exit fan motor Defective paper exit motor Defective IOB
		Check or replace the harness. Replace the paper exit fan. Replace the IOB

⇒

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
536	D	Third duct fan error
		The machine does not detect the fan motor lock signal for 2 seconds after the third duct fan is turned on.
		Disconnected harness Third duct motor overload Defective third duct motor Defective IOB
		1. Check or replace the harness 2. Replace the third duct fan 3. Replace the IOB

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
540	D	Fusing/Paper exit motor error
		The IOB does not receive the lock signal 10 seconds after turning on the fusing/paper exit motor.
		▪ Motor overload ▪ Defective fusing/paper exit motor
		Replace the fusing/paper exit motor.

SC Table

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
541	A	Heating roller thermopile error
		The temperature measured by the heating roller thermopile does not reach 0°C for 6 seconds.
		▪ Loose connection of the heating roller thermopile ▪ Defective heating roller thermopile ▪ Defective thermopile
		1. Check if the heating roller thermopile is firmly connected. 2. Replace the heating roller thermopile.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
542	A	Heating roller warm-up error 1
		▪ The heating roller temperature does not reach the ready temperature for 190 seconds after the heating lamp on. ▪ The heating roller temperature does not reach 80°C for 18 seconds after the IH inverter on.
		▪ Dirty or defective thermopile ▪ Defective IH coil unit
		1. Check if the heating roller thermopile is firmly connected. 2. Replace the thermopile. 3. Replace the IH coil unit.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
543	A	Heating roller overheat 1 (software error)
		The detected fusing temperature stays at 215°C for 1 second.
		▪ Defective PSU ▪ Defective IOB ▪ Defective BCU
		Related SC code: SC 553
		1. Replace the PSU. 2. Replace the IOB. 3. Replace the BCU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
544	A	Heating roller overheat 1 (hardware error)
		During stand-by mode or a print job, the detected heating roller temperature reaches 220 °C.
		▪ Defective PSU ▪ Defective IOB ▪ Defective BCU ▪ Defective fusing control system
		Related SC code: SC 543
		1. Replace the PSU. 2. Replace the IOB. 3. Replace the BCU.

SC Table

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
547	D	Zero cross error
		▪ The zero cross signal is detected three times even though the heater relay is off when turning on the main power. ▪ The zero cross signal is not detected for 3 seconds even though the heater relay is on after turning on the main power or closing the front door. ▪ The detection error occurs twice or more in the 11 zero cross signal detections. This error is defined when the detected zero cross signal is less than 39.
		▪ Defective fusing relay ▪ Defective fusing relay circuit ▪ Shorted +24V fuse on the PSU ▪ Unstable power supply
		1. Check the power supply source. 2. Replace the +24V fuse on the PSU. 3. Replace the PSU

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
548	A	Fusing unit rotation error
		The fusing belt sensor does not detect change in the actuator for 0.5 seconds after the fusing/paper exit motor has turned on.
		▪ Defective fusing/paper exit motor ▪ Deformed actuator for the fusing belt sensor ▪ Defective fusing belt sensor ▪ Broken connection between IH inverter and IOB ▪ Incorrectly set fusing unit
		1. Check if the fusing unit is correctly set. 2. Check or replace the actuator for fusing belt sensor. 3. Replace the fusing belt sensor. 4. Replace the IH inverter. 5. Check the connection between IH inverter and IOB.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
549	A	Ferrite core rotation error
		The ferrite roller HP sensor does not detect the ferrite roller home position for 4 seconds after the fusing/paper exit motor has turned on.
		▪ Deformed actuator for the ferrite roller HP sensor ▪ Defective ferrite roller HP sensor ▪ Defective ferrite roller motor ▪ Shorted +24V fuse on the PSU ▪ Defective IOB
		1. Replace the heating roller. 2. Replace the ferrite roller HP sensor. 3. Replace the ferrite roller motor. 4. Replace the +24V fuse on the PSU. 5. Replace the IOB.

SC Table

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
551	A	Heating roller thermistor error
		The temperature measured by the pressure roller thermistor does not reach 0 °C for 7 seconds.
		▪ Loose connection of pressure roller thermistor ▪ Defective pressure roller thermistor
		Related SC code: SC 541
		1. Check that the pressure roller thermistor is firmly connected. 2. Replace the pressure roller thermistor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
552	A	Heating roller warm-up error 2
		▪ The heating roller temperature does not reach the ready temperature for 90 seconds after the heating lamp on. ▪ The heating roller temperature does not reach 80°C for 13 seconds after the IH inverter on.
		▪ Defective thermistor ▪ Defective IH inverter
		Related SC code: SC 542
		1. Check if the heating roller thermistor is firmly connected. 2. Replace the IH inverter.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
553	A	Heating roller overheat (software error)
		The detected heating roller temperature stays at 230°C or more for 1 second.
		▪ Defective PSU ▪ Defective IOB ▪ Defective BCU
		Related SC code: SC 543
		1. Replace the PSU. 2. Replace the IOB. 3. Replace the BCU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
554	A	Heating roller overheat (hardware error)
		The heating roller thermistor detects 240°C or more.
		▪ Defective PSU ▪ Defective IOB ▪ Defective BCU ▪ Defective fusing control system
		1. Replace the PSU. 2. Replace the IOB. 3. Replace the BCU.

SC Table

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
557	C	Zero cross frequency error
		When the zero cross signal is 66 or more and it is detected 10 times or more in 11 detections, the machine determines that input 60 Hz and SC557 occurs.
		▪ Noise (High frequency)
		1. Check the power supply source.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
559	A	Consecutive fusing jam
		The paper jam counter for the fusing unit reaches 3 times. The paper jam counter is cleared if the paper is fed correctly. This SC is activated only when SP1159-001 is set to "1" (default "0").
		▪ Paper jam in the fusing unit.
		Remove the paper that is jammed in the fusing unit. Then make sure that the fusing unit is clean and has no obstacles in the paper feed path.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
561	A	Pressure roller thermistor error
		The temperature measured by the thermistor does not reach 0 °C for 37 seconds.
		▪ Loose connection of the thermopile ▪ Defective thermopile
		1. Check if the thermistor is firmly connected. 2. Replace the thermistor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
562	A	Pressure roller temperature error
		The temperature of the pressure roller does not reach the ready temperature for 120 seconds after the fusing lamp has turned on.
		▪ Defective thermistor ▪ Defective fusing lamp
		1. Replace the thermistor for the pressure roller. 2. Replace the fusing lamp.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
563	A	Pressure roller overheat 3 (software error)
		The detected pressure roller temperature stays at 215°C or more for 1 second.
		▪ Defective PSU ▪ Defective IOB ▪ Defective BCU
		1. Replace the PSU. 2. Replace the IOB. 3. Replace the BCU.

SC Table

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
564	A	Pressure roller overheat 3 (hardware error)
		The thermistor detects 220°C or more.
		▪ Defective PSU ▪ Defective IOB ▪ Defective BCU ▪ Defective fusing control system
		1. Replace the PSU. 2. Replace the IOB. 3. Replace the BCU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
565	A	Pressure roller fusing lamp consecutive full power 3
		When the fusing unit is not running in the ready condition, the pressure roller fusing lamp keeps ON full power for 180 seconds or more.
		▪ Broken pressure roller fusing lamp
		1. Replace the pressure roller lamp. 2. Replace the PSU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
580	D	IH inverter zero cross frequency error
		The zero cross signal is not detected for 1 second or more after the IH inverter has turned on.
		▪ Disconnected CN983 on the IH inverter ▪ Defective IH inverter ▪ Defective IH coil unit
		1. Check CN983 on the IH inverter. 2. Replace the IH inverter. 3. Replace the IH coil unit.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
581	D	IH inverter input voltage error
		The IH inverter detects 70V or less/140V or more for 10 seconds.
		▪ Unusual input voltage ▪ Disconnected CN981 on the IH inverter ▪ Defective IH inverter
		1. Check CN981 on the IH inverter. 2. Replace the IH inverter.

SC Table

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
582	D	IH inverter current error at power on
		The output current from the IH inverter does not reach the proper value when the IH inverter turns on.
		▪ Disconnected power input terminal 1 and 2 ▪ Defective IH inverter ▪ Defective IH coil unit ▪ Defective fusing unit
		1. Check the power input terminals 1 and 2. 2. Replace the IH inverter. 3. Replace the IH coil unit. 4. Replace the fusing unit.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
583	D	IH inverter communication error
		The IH inverter does not get the communication signal from the IOB.
		▪ Broken connection between IH inverter and IOB ▪ Defective IH inverter ▪ Defective IOB ▪ Defective BCU
		1. Check the connection between IH inverter and IOB 2. Replace the IH inverter. 3. Replace the IOB. 4. Replace the BCU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
584	A	Fusing unit rotation error
		The fusing belt sensor does not detect a change in the fusing unit actuator for 0.5 seconds.
		▪ Defective fusing/paper exit motor ▪ Deformed actuator for the fusing belt sensor ▪ Defective fusing belt sensor ▪ Broken connection between IH inverter and IOB ▪ Incorrectly set fusing unit
		1. Check if the fusing unit is correctly set. 1. Check or replace the actuator for fusing belt sensor. 2. Replace the fusing belt sensor. 3. Replace the IH inverter. 4. Check the connection between IH inverter and IOB.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
585	A	IH coil unit full power (1250W) error
		The IH coil unit full power (1250W) continues for 220 seconds or more.
		▪ Defective IH inverter ▪ Defective BCU ▪ Defective IOB ▪ Broken connection between IH inverter and IOB ▪ Defective thermopile
		1. Replace the IH inverter. 2. Replace the BCU. 3. Replace the IOB. 4. Check the connection between IH inverter and IOB. 5. Replace the thermopile.

SC Table

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
586	D	IH coil unit rare short error
		The IH inverter detects an unusual current (high current) in the IH coil unit.
		▪ Defective IH coil unit ▪ Defective IH inverter
		1. Replace the IH coil unit. 2. Replace the IH inverter.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
587	D	IH inverter high temperature error
		The IH inverter detects a high temperature near Q5 (power control circuit on the IH inverter).
		▪ Defective IH inverter ▪ Defective IH inverter fan ▪ Clogged IH inverter fan intake at the right rear cover ▪ Incorrect input paper type to the machine
		1. Check or clean the IH inverter fan intake. 2. Set the correct paper type on the operation panel. 3. Replace the IH inverter. 4. Replace the IH inverter fan.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
610	D	Mechanical counter error: Bk
611	D	Mechanical counter error: FC
-	-	This SC is only for NA models. The machine detects the mechanical counter error when SP5987-001 is set to "1".
		▪ Disconnected mechanical counter ▪ Defective mechanical counter
		1. Check or replace the mechanical counter.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
620	D	ARDF communication error
		After the ARDF is detected, the break signal occurs or communication timeout occurs.
		▪ Incorrect installation of ARDF ▪ ARDF defective ▪ IPU board defective ▪ External noise
		1. Check the cable connection of the ARDF. 2. Shut out the external noise. 3. Replace the ARDF. 4. Replace the IPU board.

SC Table

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
621	D	Finisher communication error
622	D	Paper tray unit communication error
-	-	While the IOB communicates with an optional unit, an SC code is displayed if one of following conditions occurs. ▪ The IOB receives the break signal which is generated by the peripherals only just after the main switch is turned on. ▪ When the IOB does not receive an OK signal from a peripheral 100ms after sending a command to it. The IOB resends the command. The IOB does not receive an OK signal after sending the command 3 times.
		▪ Cable problems ▪ IOB problems ▪ BCU problems ▪ PSU problems in the machine ▪ Main board problems in the peripherals
		1. Check if the cables of peripherals are correctly connected. 2. Replace the PSU if no power is supplied to peripherals. 3. Replace the IOB or main board of peripherals. 4. Replace the BCU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
630	CTL C	CSS communication error
		A communication error occurred during communication with the CSS.
		▪ Communication line error
		Logging only.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
632	CTL B	MF accounting device error 1
		The controller sends data to the accounting device, but the device does not respond. This occurs three times.
		Loose connection between the controller and the accounting device
		1. Check the connection.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
633	CTL B	MF accounting device error 2
		After communication is established, the controller receives the brake signal from the accounting device.
		▪ Loose connection between the controller and the accounting device
		1. Check the connection.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
634	CTL B	MF accounting device error 3
		The accounting device sends the controller the report that indicates a backup RAM error has occurred.
		▪ Defective controller of the MF accounting device ▪ Battery error
		1. Turn the main switch off and on. 2. Replace the controller board of the accounting device. 3. Replace the battery.
635	CTL B	MF accounting device error 4
		The accounting device sends the controller the report that indicates the battery voltage error has occurred.
		▪ Defective controller of the MF accounting device ▪ Battery error
		1. Turn the main switch off and on. 2. Replace the controller board of the accounting device. 3. Replace the battery.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
636	CTL B	SD Card Error
		There is no expanded authentication module in the machine.
		▪ The SD card or the file of the expanded authentication module is broken. ▪ There is no DESS module in the machine.
		1. Install the correct SD card or the file of the expanded authentication module. 2. Install the DESS module.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
650	CTL B	Communication error of the remote service modem (Cumin-M)
-001	-	Authentication error
		The authentication for the Cumin-M fails at a dial up connection.
		▪ Incorrect SP settings ▪ Disconnected telephone line ▪ Disconnected modem board
		3. Check and set the correct user name (SP5816-156) and password (SP5816-157).
-004	-	Incorrect modem setting
		Dial up fails due to the incorrect modem setting.
		Same as -001
		1. Check and set the correct AT command (SP5819-160).
-005	-	Communication line error
		The supplied voltage is not sufficient due to the defective

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		communication line or defective connection.
		Same as -001
		1. Consult with the user's local telephone company.
-011	-	Incorrect network setting
		Both the NIC and Cumin-M are activated at the same time.
		Same as -001
		1. Disable the NIC with SP5985-1.
-012	-	Modem board error
		The modem board does not work properly even though the setting of the modem board is installed with a dial up connection.
		Same as -001
		1. Install the modem board. 2. Check and reset the modem board setting with SP5816. 3. Replace the modem board.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
651	CTL C	Incorrect dial up connection
		-001: Program parameter error
		-002: Program execution error
		An unexpected error occurs when the modem (Cumin-M) tries to call the center with a dial up connection.
		▪ Caused by a software bug
		No action required because this SC does not interfere with operation of the machine.

SC Table

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
669	D	EEPROM error
		Retry of EEPROM communication fails three times after the machine has detected the EEPROM error.
		▪ Caused by noise
		Turn the main power switch off and on.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
670	CTL D	No response from controller at power on
		When the main power is turned on or the machine starts warming up from energy-saving mode, the controller does not receive a command signal from the controller.
		▪ Loose connection ▪ Defective controller ▪ Defective controller board
		1. Check the connection between the BCU and controller. 2. Replace the controller. 3. Replace the BCU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
672	CTL D	Controller-to-operation panel communication error at startup ▪ After the machine is powered on, the communication between the controller and the operation panel is not established, or communication with controller is interrupted after a normal startup. ▪ After startup reset of the operation panel, the attention code or the attention acknowledge code is not sent from the controller within 15 seconds. ▪ After the controller issues a command to check the communication line with the controller at 30-second intervals, the controller fails to respond twice.
		▪ Controller stalled ▪ Controller board installed incorrectly ▪ Controller board defective ▪ Operation panel connector loose or defective ▪ The controller is not completely shutdown when you turn the main switch off.
		1. Check the setting of SP5875-001. If the setting is set to "1 (OFF)", change it to "0 (OFF)". 2. Check the condition of the controller board. 3. Check the condition of the operation panel. 4. Replace the controller board. 5. Replace the operation panel. 6. Turn the main switch off, wait for one second or more, and turn the main switch on.

SC Table

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
681	D	RFID: Communication error ▪ Communication error occurs when the RFID starts to communicate with the RFID receptor. ▪ Retry of RFID communication fails three times after the machine has detected the RFID communication error.
		▪ Defective RFID reader and writer ▪ Disconnected ASAP I/F ▪ No memory chip on the toner cartridge ▪ Noise
		1. Replace the RFID controller board. 2. Replace the toner cartridge.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
682	D	Memory chip at TD sensor: Communication error
		Retry of memory chip communication fails three times after the machine has detected the memory chip communication error.
		▪ Damaged memory chip data ▪ Disconnected inter face ▪ No memory chip on the development unit ▪ Noise
		1. Replace the PCU.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
683	B	RFID: Unit check error
		The machine gets RFID communication error even the toner cartridges have not been installed in the machine.
		Caused by noise
		1. Turn the main power switch off and on.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
687	D	Memory address command error
		The BCU does not receive a memory address command from the controller 120 seconds after paper is in the position for registration.
		▪ Loose connection ▪ Defective controller ▪ Defective BCU
		1. Check if the controller is firmly connected to the BCU. 2. Replace the controller. 3. Replace the BCU.

SC Table

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
689	D	IH inverter communication error
		▪ When the machine turns on, recovers from the energy save mode or front and right doors are opened and closed, a time out error for communicating with the IOB occurs. ▪ The IOB detects the break signal from the IH inverter after a communication between the IOB and IH inverter has already been detected. ▪ The IOB fails to communicate with IH inverter three times after the IOB has detected the break signal from the IH inverter.
		▪ Defective IOB ▪ Defective IH inverter.
		1. Turn the main power switch off and on. 2. If the error occurs again, replace the IOB and/or the IH inverter

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
690	D	GAVD communication error
		▪ The I2C bus device ID is not identified during initialization. ▪ A device-status error occurs during I2C bus communication. ▪ The I2C bus communication is not established due to an error other than a buffer shortage.
		▪ Loose connection ▪ Defective IPU ▪ Defective LD controller board
		1. Turn the main switch off and on. 2. Check the cable connection. 3. Replace the laser optics-housing unit. 4. Replace the IPU board.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
700	D	Original stopper HP error
		When the pick-up motor turns on clockwise, the original stopper HP sensor does not detect the home position of the original stopper.
		▪ Defective original stopper HP sensor ▪ Defective pick-up motor ▪ Defective DF drive board
		1. Replace the DF drive board if the pick-up motor does not work correctly. 2. Replace the pick-up motor. 3. Replace the original stopper HP sensor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
701	D	Pick-up roller HP error
		When the pick-up motor turns on counterclockwise, the pick-up roller HP sensor does not detect the home position of the pick-up roller.
		▪ Defective pick-up roller HP sensor ▪ Defective pick-up motor ▪ Defective DF drive board
		1. Replace the DF drive board if the pick-up motor does not work correctly. 2. Replace the pick-up motor. 3. Replace the pick-up roller HP sensor.

⇒

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
721	B	Booklet finisher jogger motor error
		The jogger home position sensor is not activated within the specified time. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.
		▪ Motor harness disconnected, loose, defective ▪ Defective motor
		1. Check the connections to the jogger motor. 2. Defective jogger motor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
723	B	Booklet finisher stack feed out motor error
		The stack feed out home position sensor is not activated within the specified time. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.
		▪ Motor harness disconnected, loose, defective ▪ Defective motor
		1. Check the connections to the stack feed out motor. 2. Defective stack feed out motor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
725	B	Finisher exit guide plate motor error
		After moving away from the guide plate position sensor, the exit guide is not detected at the home position within the prescribed time. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.
		▪ Guide plate motor disconnected, defective ▪ Guide plate motor overloaded due to obstruction ▪ Guide plate position sensor disconnected, defective
		1. Check the connections and cables for the components mentioned above. 2. Check for blockages in the guide plate motor mechanism. 3. Replace the guide plate position sensor and/or guide plate motor 4. Replace the finisher main board.

⇒

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
726	B	The feed out jogger motor error.
		The jogger motor home position sensor does not activate within the specified time.
		▪ Jogger motor motor disconnected or defective ▪ Jogger motor home position sensor disconnected, defective
		1. Check the connections and cables for the components mentioned above. 2. Replace the home position sensor. 3. Defeective feed out jogger motor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
730	B	Finisher Tray 1 shift motor error
		The shift roller HP sensor of the upper tray does not activate within the prescribed time after the shift tray starts to move toward or away from the home position. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.
		▪ Shift tray HP sensor of the upper tray disconnected, defective ▪ Shift tray motor of the upper tray is disconnected, defective ▪ Shift tray motor of the upper tray overloaded due to obstruction
		1. Check the connections and cables for the components mentioned above. 2. Check for blockages in shift motor mechanism. 3. Replace the shift tray HP sensor and/or shift motor 4. Replace the finisher main board.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
740	B	Finisher corner stapler motor error
		The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code. **For the 2000/3000-sheet (booklet) finisher** ▪ Staple movement is not finished after a certain time. **For the 1000-sheet finisher** ▪ The stapler motor does not switch off within the prescribed time after operating. ▪ The HP sensor of the staple unit does not detect the home position after the staple unit moves to its home position. ▪ The HP sensor of the staple unit detects the home position after the staple unit moves from its home position.
		▪ Staple jam ▪ Motor overload ▪ Defective stapler motor
		1. Check the connections and cables for the components mentioned above. 2. Replace the HP sensor and/or stapler motor 3. Replace the finisher main board.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
741	B	Finisher corner stapler rotation motor error
		The stapler does not return to its home position within the specified time after stapling. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.
		▪ Defective stapler rotation motor ▪ Overload to the stapler rotation motor ▪ Defective stapler rotation HP sensor
		1. Replace the stapler rotation motor. 2. Replace the stapler rotation HP sensor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
742	B	Finisher stapler movement motor error
		The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code. **For the 2000/3000-sheet (booklet) finisher** ▪ Staple movement is not finished for a certain time. **For the 1000-sheet finisher** ▪ The stapler HP sensor is not activated within the specified time after the stapler motor turned on. (first detection: jam error, consecutive twice detection SC code).
		▪ Motor overload ▪ Loose connection of the stapler home position sensor ▪ Loose connection of the stapler movement motor ▪ Defective stapler home position sensor ▪ Defective stapler movement motor
		1. Check the connection of the stapler movement motor. 2. Check the connection of the stapler home position sensor. 3. Replace the stapler home position sensor. 4. Replace the stapler movement motor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
743	B	Booklet stapler motor error 1
		The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code. **For the 2000/3000-sheet (booklet) finisher** The front stapler unit saddle-stitch motor does not start operation within the specified time.
		▪ Motor overload ▪ Loose connection of the front stapler motor ▪ Defective front stapler motor
		Replace the front stapler motor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
744	B	Booklet staple motor error 2
		The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code. **For the 2000/3000-sheet (booklet) finisher** The rear stapler unit saddle-stitch motor does not start operation within the specified time.
		▪ Motor overload ▪ Loose connection of the rear stapler motor ▪ Defective rear stapler motor
		Replace the front stapler motor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
746	B	1000-sheet booklet finisher: Stack feed motor error
		▪ **This SC is not used in this machine.**

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
750	B	1000/2000/3000-sheet (booklet) finisher: Tray lift motor error
		The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code. The upper tray paper height sensor does not change its status with the specified time after the tray raises or lowers.
		1. Check the connections to the shift tray motor. 2. Defective shift tray motor.

⇒

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
753	B	Stack sponge roller motor error
		Occurs while the lower tray pressure motor is running.
		▪ Defective motor ▪ Motor harness is disconnected, loose or defective ▪ Defective HP sensor
		1. Check the connection of the harness to the stack sponge roller motor 2. Replace the stack sponge roller motor

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
760	B	Finisher punch motor error
		The punch HP sensor is not activated within the specified time after the punch motor turned on. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.
		▪ Punch HP sensor disconnected, defective ▪ Punch motor disconnected or defective ▪ Punch motor overload due to obstruction
		1. Check the connections and cables for the punch motor and HP sensor. 2. Check for blockages in the punch motor mechanism. 3. Replace the punch HP sensor and/or punch motor 4. Replace the finisher main board.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
761	B	Finisher folder plate motor error
		The folder plate moves but is not detected at the home position within the specified time. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.
		▪ Folder plate HP sensor disconnected, defective ▪ Folder plate motor disconnected, defective ▪ Folder plate motor overloaded due to obstruction.
		1. Check the connections and cables for the folder plate motor and HP sensor. 2. Check for blockages in the folder plate motor mechanism. 3. Replace the folder plate HP sensor and/or folder plate motor 4. Replace the finisher main board.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
763	B	Punch movement motor error
		The punch unit moves but is not detected at the home position within the specified time. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.
		▪ Motor harness disconnected, loose, defective ▪ Defective motor
		1. Check the connections to the punch movement motor. 2. Defective punch movement motor

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
764	B	Paper position sensor slide motor error
		The paper position sensor moves but is not detected at the home position within the specified time. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.
		▪ Motor harness disconnected, loose, defective ▪ Defective motor
		1. Check the connections to the paper position sensor slide motor. 2. Defective paper position sensor slide motor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
765	B	Booklet finisher bottom fence lift motor error
		The bottom fence home position sensor is not activated within the specified time. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.
		▪ Motor harness disconnected, loose, defective ▪ Defective motor
		1. Check the connections to the bottom fence lift motor. 2. Defective bottom fence lift motor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
766	B	Booklet finisher lower retraction motor error
		The lower clamp roller home position sensor is not activated within the specified time. The 1st detection failure issues a jam error, and the 2nd failure issues this SC code.
		▪ Motor harness disconnected, loose, defective ▪ Defective motor
		1. Check the connections to the lower retraction motor. 2. Defective lower retraction motor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
767	D	Stack junction gate motor error
		The stack junction gate motor home position sensor is not activated within the specified time. The first failure triggers a jam error, and the second triggers this SC code.
		▪ Defective motor ▪ Motor harness is disconnected, loose or defective
		1. Check the connection of the harness to the stack junction gate motor 2. Replace the stack junction gate motor

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
791	D	Bridge unit error
		The machine recognizes the finisher, but does not recognize the bridge unit.
		▪ Defective connector ▪ Broken harness
		1. Check the connections between the bridge unit and the machine. 2. Install a new bridge unit.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
792	B	Finisher error
		The machine does not recognize the finisher, but recognizes the bridge unit.
		▪ Defective connector ▪ Defective harness ▪ Incorrect installation
		1. Check the connections between the finisher and the machine. 2. Install a new finisher.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
818	CTL B	Watch-dog error
		While the system program is running, other processes do not operate at all.
		▪ Defective controller ▪ Software error
		1. Replace the controller.
		Note ▪ See Note 1 at the end of the SC table

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
819	CTL D	Fatal error
[696E]		Process error
		System completely down
		▪ Defective RAM DIMM

SC Table

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		▪ Defective ROM DIMM ▪ Defective controller ▪ Software error
		1. Check and/or replace the RAM DIMM. 2. Check and/or replace the ROM DIMM. 3. Replace the controller.
		Note ▪ See Note 1 at the end of the SC table
[766D]		Memory error
		Unexpected system memory size
		▪ Defective RAM DIMM ▪ Defective ROM DIMM ▪ Defective controller ▪ Software error
		1. Check and/or replace the RAM DIMM. 2. Check and/or replace the ROM DIMM. 3. Replace the controller.
[4361]		Kernel stop error
		The cache error trap occurs in the CPU.
		▪ CPU cache error
		1. Replace the controller.
-		Kernel stop error
		An error in the operation system (An error message is output.)

	▪ Defective CPU ▪ Defective memory ▪ Defective flash memory ▪ Incorrect software
	1. Replace the memory. 2. Replace the controller.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
820	CTL D	Self-diagnostics error: CPU [XXXX]: Detailed error code
[0001] to [06FF] [0801] to [4005]		CPU error During the self-diagnostic, the controller CPU detects an error. There are 47 types of error code (0001 to 4005) depending on the cause of the error. The CPU detects an error and displays the specific error code with the program address where the error occurs.
		▪ System firmware problem ▪ Defective controller
		1. Turn the main switch off and on. 2. Reinstall the controller system firmware. 3. Replace the controller. When the problem cannot be fixed with the above procedure, the following information displayed on the screen needs to be fed back to a technical support center. ▪ SC code ▪ Detailed error code ▪ Program address
[0702] [0709] [070A]		CPU/Memory Error

SC Table

	▪ System firmware problem ▪ Defective RAM-DIMM ▪ Defective controller
	1. Reinstall the controller system software. 2. Replace the RAM-DIMM. 3. Replace the controller.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
821	CTL D	Self-diagnostics error: ASIC [XXXX]: Detailed error code
[0B00]		ASIC error
		The write-&-verify check error has occurred in the ASIC.
		▪ Defective ASIC device
		1. Replace the controller.
[0B06]		ASIC detection error
		The I/O ASIC for system control is not detected.
		▪ Defective ASIC ▪ Defective North Bridge and PCI I/F
		1. Replace the controller board.
[0B10]		SHM register error ▪ The initialization of bus connection or read for SHM fails. ▪ The register of SHM is different from specified value.
		▪ Defective connection bus ▪ Defective SHM
		1. Replace the controller board

[0D05]	Self-diagnosis error: ASIC
	The CPU checks if the ASIC timer works correctly compared with the CPU timer. If the ASIC timer does not function in the specified range, this SC code is displayed.
	▪ System firmware problem ▪ Defective RAM-DIMM ▪ Defective controller
	1. Reinstall the controller system firmware. 2. Replace the RAM-DIMM. 3. Replace the controller board.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
822	CTL B	Self-diagnostic error: HDD (Hard Disk Drive) [XXXX]: Detailed error code
[3003]		Timeout error
[3004]		Command error
-	-	When the main switch is turned on or starting the self-diagnostic, the HDD stays busy for the specified time or more.
-	-	▪ Loose connection ▪ Defective HDD ▪ Defective controller
-	-	1. Check that the HDD is correctly connected to the controller. 2. Replace the HDD. 3. Replace the controller.

SC Table

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
823	CTL B	Self-diagnostic error: NIB [XXXX]: Detailed error code
[6101]		MAC address check sum error The result of the MAC address check sum does not match the check sum stored in ROM.
[6104]		PHY IC error The PHY IC on the controller cannot be correctly recognized.
[6105]		PHY IC loop-back error An error occurred during the loop-back test for the PHY IC on the controller.
-		1. Replace the controller.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
824	CTL D	[1401] Self-diagnosis error: Standard NVRAM The controller cannot recognize the standard NVRAM installed or detects that the NVRAM is defective.
		▪ Loose connection ▪ Defective standard NVRAM ▪ Defective controller
		1. Check the standard NVRAM is firmly inserted into the socket. 2. Replace the NVRAM. 3. Replace the controller

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
826	CTL D	[15FF] Self-diagnostic Error: RTC/optional NVRAM The RTC device is not detected.
		▪ RTC defective ▪ NVRAM without RTC installed ▪ Backup battery discharged
		1. Replace the NVRAM with another NVRAM with an RTC device.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
827	CTL D	Self-diagnostic error: Standard SDRAM DIMM [XXXX]: Detailed error code
[0201]		Verification error
		Error detected during a write/verify check for the standard RAM (SDRAM DIMM).
		▪ Loose connection ▪ Defective SDRAM DIMM ▪ Defective controller
		1. Turn the main switch off and on. 2. Replace the SDRAM DIMM. 3. Replace the controller.
[0202]		Resident memory error
		The SPD values in all RAM DIMM are incorrect or unreadable.
		▪ Defective RAM DIMM ▪ Defective SPD ROM on RAM DIMM ▪ Defective 12C bus
		1. Replace the RAM DIMM.

SC Table

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
828	CTL D	Self-diagnostic error: ROM [XXXX]: Detailed error code
[0101]		Check sum error 1 ▪ The boot monitor and OS program stored in the ROM DIMM is checked. If the check sum of the program is incorrect, this SC code is displayed.
[0104]		Check sum error 2 All areas of the ROM DIMM are checked. If the check sum of all programs stored in the ROM DIMM is incorrect, this SC code is displayed.
-	-	▪ Defective ROM DIMM ▪ Defective controller
-	-	1. Turn the main switch on and off. 2. Replace the ROM DIMM 3. Replace the controller.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
829	CTL B	Self-diagnosis error: optional RAM [XXXX]: Detailed error code
[0401]		Verification error (Slot 1) The data stored in the optional RAM in Slot 1 does not match the data when reading.
[0402]		Composition error (Slot 1) The result of checking the composition data of the optional RAM in Slot 1 on the controller is incorrect.
-	-	▪ Not specified RAM DIMM installed ▪ Defective RAM DIMM

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
-	-	1. Turn the main switch off and on. 2. Replace the RAM DIMM. 3. Replace the controller board.

⇒

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
838	CTL	Self-diagnosis Error: Clock Generator
		The result of improper value when the set data is checked from Clock from Clock Generator through I2C bus.
		▪ Clock Generator error ▪ I2C bus error ▪ Port for I2C bus of CPU error
		1. Turn the main switch off and on 2. Replace the controller board

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
851	CTL B	IEEE1394 interface error
		The 1394 interface is unusable.
		▪ Defective IEEE1394 ▪ Defective controller.
		1. Turn the main switch off and on. 2. Replace the IEEE1394 interface board. 3. Replace the controller.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
853	CTL B	Wireless LAN card not detected
		The wireless LAN card is not detected before communication is established, though the wireless LAN board is detected.
		▪ Loose connection
		1. Check the connection.

SC Table

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
854	CTL B	Wireless LAN/Bluetooth card not detected
		The wireless LAN/Bluetooth card is not detected after communication is established, but the wireless LAN board is detected.
		▪ Loose connection
		1. Check the connection.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
855 856	CTL B	Wireless LAN/Bluetooth card error
		An error is detected in the wireless LAN/Bluetooth card.
		▪ Loose connection ▪ Defective wireless LAN/Bluetooth card
		1. Check the connection. 2. Replace the wireless LAN/Bluetooth card.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
857	CTL B	USB interface error
		The USB interface cannot be used due to a driver error.
		▪ Defective USB driver ▪ Loose connection
		1. Check the connection. 2. Replace the USB board.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
860	CTL B	HDD: Initialization error
		The controller detects that the hard disk fails.
		▪ HDD not initialized ▪ Defective HDD
		1. Reformat the HDD. 2. Replace the HDD.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
861	CTL D	HDD: Reboot error
		The HDD does not become ready within 30 seconds after the power is supplied to the HDD.
		▪ Loose connection ▪ Defective cables ▪ Defective HDD ▪ Defective controller
		1. Check the connection between the HDD and controller. 2. Check and replace the cables. 3. Replace the HDD. 4. Replace the controller.

SC Table

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
863	CTL D	HDD: Read error
		The data stored in the HDD cannot be read correctly.
		▪ Defective HDD ▪ Defective controller
		1. Replace the HDD. 2. Replace the controller.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
864	CTL D	HDD: CRC error
		While reading data from the HDD or storing data in the HDD, data transmission fails.
		▪ Defective HDD
		1. Replace the HDD.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
865	CTL D	HDD: Access error
		An error is detected while operating the HDD.
		Defective HDD
		Replace the HDD.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
866	CTL B	SD card authentication error
		A correct license is not found in the SD card.
		▪ SD-card data is corrupted.
		1. Store correct data in the SD card.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
867	CTL D	SD card error
		The SD card is ejected from the slot.
		1. Install the SD card. 2. Turn the main switch off and on.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
868	CTL D	SD card access error ▪ -13 to -3: File system error ▪ Other number: Device error
		An error report is sent from the SD card reader. ▪ An error is detected in the SD card.
		1. For a file system error, format the SD card on your PC. 2. For a device error, turn the mains switch off and on. 3. Replace the SD card. 4. Replace the controller.

SC Table

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
870	CTL B	Address book error
		An error is detected in the data copied to the address book over a network.
		▪ Defective software program ▪ Defective HDD ▪ Incorrect path to the server
		1. Initialize the address book data (SP5-846-050). 2. Initialize the user information (SP5-832-006). 3. Replace the HDD.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
872	CTL B	HDD mail data error
		An error is detected in the HDD at machine initialization.
		▪ Defective HDD ▪ Power failure during an access to the HDD
		1. Turn the main switch off and on. 2. Initialize the HDD partition (SP5-832-007). 3. Replace the HDD.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
873	CTL B	HDD mail transfer error
		An error is detected in the HDD at machine initialization.
		▪ Defective HDD ▪ Power failure during an access to the HDD
		1. Initialize the HDD partition (SP5-832-008). 2. Replace the HDD.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
874	CTL D	Delete All error 1: HDD
		An error is detected while all of the HDD or NVRAM are formatted physically by the Data Overwrite Security Unit (B735).
		▪ Data Overwrite Security Unit (SD card) not installed ▪ Defective HDD
		1. Install the Data Overwrite Security Unit (B735). 2. Replace the HDD.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
875	CTL D	Delete All error 2: Data area
		An error is detected while all of the HDD or NVRAM are formatted logically by the Data Overwrite Security Unit (B735).
		▪ The logical format for the HDD fails.
		1. Turn the main switch off/on and try the operation again

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
876	CTL D	Log Data Error An error was detected in the handling of the log data at power on or during machine operation. This can be caused by switching the machine off while it is operating.
-001		Log Data Error 1
		▪ Damaged log data file in the HDD
		1. Initialize the HDD with SP5832-004.
-002		Log Data Error 2
		▪ An encryption module not installed

SC Table

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		1. Disable the log encryption setting with SP9730-004 ("0" is off.)
		1. Install the DESS module.
-003		Log Data Error 3
		▪ Invalid log encryption key due to defective NVRAM data
		1. Initialize the HDD with SP5832-004. 2. Disable the log encryption setting with SP9730-004 ("0" is off.)
-004		Log Data Error 4
		▪ Unusual log encryption function due to defective NVRAM data
		1. Initialize the HDD with SP5832-004.
-005		Log Data Error 5
		▪ Installed NVRAM or HDD which is used in another machine
		1. Reinstall the previous NVRAM or HDD. 2. Initialize the HDD with SP5832-004.
-099		Log Data Error 99
		▪ Other than the above causes
		1. Ask your supervisor.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
877	CTL D	HDD Data Overwrite Security SD card error
		The 'all delete' function cannot be executed but the Data Overwrite Security Unit (B735) is installed and activated.
		▪ Defective SD card (B735) ▪ SD card (B735) not installed
		1. Replace the NVRAM and then install the new SD card (B735). 2. Check and reinstall the SD card (B735).

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
880	CTL D	File format converter error
		The file format converter does not respond.
		▪ Defective file format converter
		1. Replace the file format converter.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
900	CTL D	Electric counter error
		Abnormal data in the counters.
		▪ Defective NVRAM ▪ Defective controller
		1. Check the connection between the NVRAM and controller. 2. Replace the NVRAM. 3. Replace the controller.

SC Table

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
910	CTL D	External Controller Error 1
911		External Controller Error 2
912		External Controller Error 3
913		External Controller Error 4
914		External Controller Error 5
-	-	The external controller alerted the machine about an error.
-	-	▪ Please refer to the instructions for the external controller (application).

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
919	CTL D	External Controller Error 6
		While EAC (External Application Converter), the conversion module, was operating normally, the receipt of a power line interrupt signal from the FLUTE serial driver was detected, or BREAK signal from the other station was detected.
		▪ Power outage at the EFI controller ▪ EFI controller was rebooted ▪ Connection to EFI controller loose

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
920	CTL D	Printer application error
		An error is detected in the printer application program.
		▪ Defective software ▪ Unexpected hardware resource (e.g., memory shortage)
		1. Software defective; switch off/on, or change the controller firmware if the problem is not solved 2. Insufficient memory

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
921	CTL D	Printer font error
		A necessary font is not found in the SD card.
		▪ A necessary font is not found in the SD card. ▪ The SD card data is corrupted.
		1. Check that the SD card has the correct data.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
925	CTL D	Netfile function error
		The management area or management file on the HDD is corrupted.
		▪ Defective HDD ▪ Data inconsistency (e.g., caused by power failure)
		When SC 860-865 keep occurring: 1. Follow the troubleshooting procedures. **In other cases:** 1. Initialize the netfile partition. 2. Initialize the hard disk. 3. Replace the HDD.

SC Table

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
990	CTL D	Software performance error
		The software makes an unexpected operation.
		▪ Defective software ▪ Defective controller ▪ Software error
		1. Turn the main switch off and on. 2. Reinstall the controller and/or engine main firmware.
		▪ Note ▪ See Note 1 at the end of the SC table.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
991	CTL C	Software continuity error
		The software has attempted to perform an unexpected operation. However, unlike SC 990, the object of the error is continuity of the software.
		▪ Software program error ▪ Internal parameter incorrect, insufficient working memory.
		1. This SC is not displayed on the LCD (logging only).

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
992	CTL D	Undefined error
		Defective software program
		▪ An error undetectable by any other SC code occurred

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
994	CTL C	Operation panel management records exceeded
		An error occurred because the number of records exceeded the limit for images managed in the service layer of the firmware. This can occur if there if there are too many application screens open on the operation panel.
		▪ No action required because this SC does not interfere with operation of the machine.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
995	CTL D	Controller Board Mismatch
		The information on the controller board does not match that of the machine
		▪ Wrong controller board installed
		Reinstall the correct controller board for this machine.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
997	CTL B	Application function selection error ▪ The application selected by the operation panel key does not start or ends abnormally.
		▪ Software (including the software configuration) defective ▪ An option required by the application (RAM, DIMM, board) is not installed ▪ Nesting of the fax group addresses is too complicated
		1. Check the devices necessary for the application program. If necessary devices have not been installed, install them. 2. Check that application programs are correctly configured.

SC Table

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
		3. For a fax operation problem, simplify the nesting of the fax group addresses. 4. Take necessary countermeasures specific to the application program. If the logs can be displayed on the operation panel, see the logs.

No.	Type	Details (Symptom, Possible Cause, Troubleshooting Procedures)
998	CTL D	Application start error
		No applications start within 60 seconds after the power is turned on.
		▪ Loose connection of RAM-DIMM, ROM-DIMM ▪ Defective controller ▪ Software problem
		1. Check the setting of SP5875-001. If the setting is set to "1 (OFF)", change it to "0 (OFF)". 2. Check if the RAM-DIMM and ROM-DIMM are correctly connected. 3. Reinstall the controller system firmware. 4. Replace the controller.

Note 1

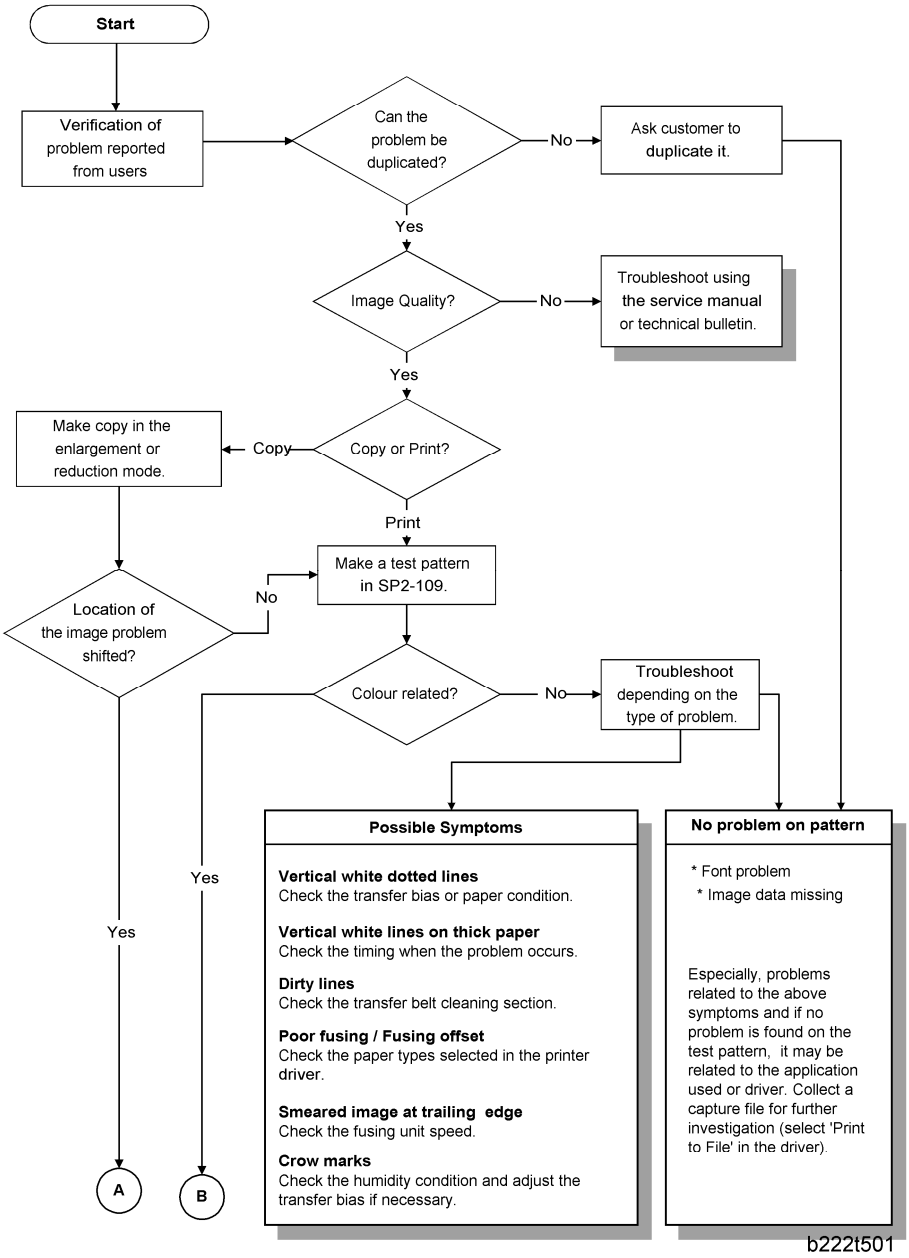
If a problem always occurs in a specific condition (for example. printer driver setting, image file), the problem may be caused by a software error. In this case, the following data and information needs to be sent back to your product specialist. Please understand that it may take some time to get a reply on how to solve the problem, because in some cases the design staff in Japan must analyze the data.

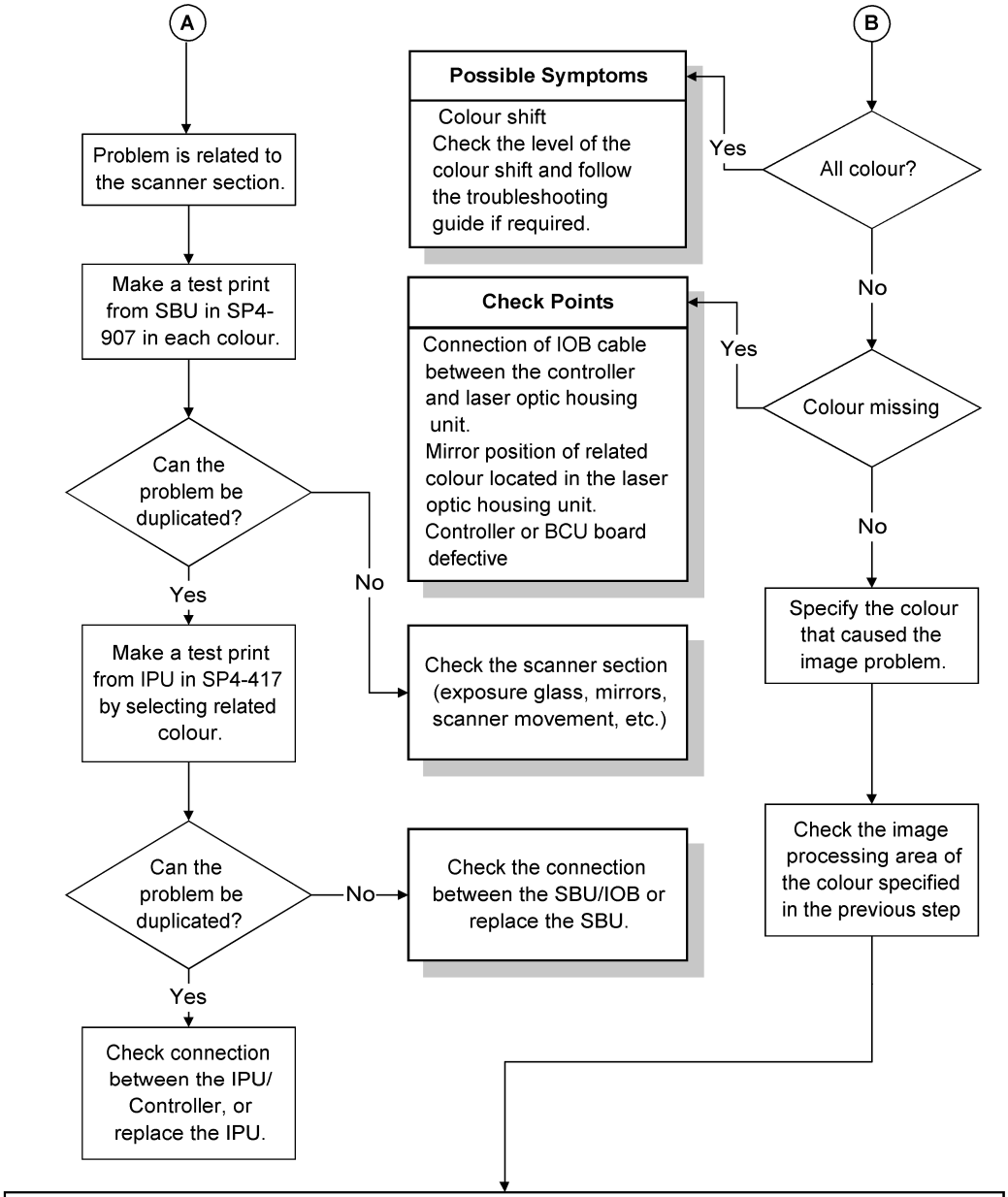
- Symptom / Possible Causes / Action taken
- Summary sheet (SP mode “Printer SP”, SP1-004 [Print Summary])
- SMC - All (SP5-990-001)
- SMC - Logging (SP5-990-004)
- Printer driver settings used when the problem occurs
- All data displayed on the screen (SC code, error code, and program address where the problem is logged.)
- Image file which causes the problem, if possible

4.5 TROUBLESHOOTING GUIDE

4.5.1 IMAGE QUALITY

The following work-flow shows the basic troubleshooting steps for the image quality problems on this product.





Considerable Symptom
Toner blasting Check which colour is blasting and adjust the toner limit or transfer bias. Image density change Check when the problem is reported and follow the necessary steps. Dirty Background Check in which condition the problem is reported, and follow the required procedure. Colour vertical bands/lines/dirty background Check the OPC drum and/or development unit. Colour shift Check the level of the colour shift and follow the troubleshooting guide if required. Colour lines/bands/dirty background When the PCU/development unit is close to its life end, the developer or the cleaning blade of the PCU wears out, causing vertical colour lines, bands, or dirty background. Check the related colour unit and replace it if necessary.

b222t502

4.5.2 LINE POSITION ADJUSTMENT

When there are color registration errors on the output, do the line position adjustment as follows.

Note

- Use A3/DLT size paper for this adjustment.

Test

1. **Do SP2-111-003 (Mode c: rough adjustment).**
2. **Use SP2-194-007 to check if the result of the line position adjustment is correct (0: Completed successfully, 1: Not completed). If the result is "1", refer to 'Countermeasure list for color registration errors'.**
3. **Do SP2-111-001 (Mode a: fine adjustment twice).**
4. **Use SP2-194-007 to check if the result of the line position adjustment is correct (0: Completed successfully, 1: Not completed). If the result is "1", refer to 'Countermeasure list for color registration errors'.**
5. **Put some A3/DLT paper on the by-pass tray.**

   Note

   - When you print a test pattern, use the by-pass tray to feed the paper.
6. **Print out test pattern "7" with SP2-109-003.**
7. **Check the printed output with a loupe.**
8. **If there are no color registration errors on the output, the line position adjustment is correctly done. If not, refer to the countermeasure list for color registration errors.**

Countermeasure list for color registration errors

After Executing SP2-111-003			
Result (SP2-194)		**Test pattern check**	**Possible cause/Countermeasure**
-007	**-010, -011, -012**		
Result: "1"	Result: "2" or "3" (Line pattern detection failure)	White image, Abnormal image, Low density	▪ Defective laser optics housing unit shutter ▪ Defective image processing unit ▪ Low density of test pattern ▪ Defective BCU 1. Replace the shutter motor. 2. Replace the high voltage power supply unit. 3. Do the forced process control (SP3-011-001) or supply some toner (SP3-015-xxx). 4. Replace the BCU.
		Normal image, but with color registration errors	▪ Defective ID sensor shutter ▪ Defective ID sensor ▪ Defective BCU 1. Replace the ID sensor shutter solenoid. 2. Replace the ID sensor. 3. Replace the BCU.

	One of results (-010, -011, -012): "5" (Out of adjustable range)	The main scan registrations of M, C, Y are shifted by more than ± 15 mm from the main scan registration of Bk.	▪ Defective laser optics housing unit ▪ Defective BCU 1. Replace the laser optics housing unit. 2. Replace the BCU.
		The sub scan registrations of M, C, Y are shifted by more than ± 20 mm from the sub scan registration of Bk.	▪ Defective image transfer belt ▪ Defective drive units ▪ Defective BCU 1. Replace the image transfer belt. 2. Replace the drum motor. 3. Replace the BCU.

		The main scan registration is shifted by more than ± 0.66 mm, but only at the central area of the image on the output.	▪ Defective ID sensor at center ▪ Deformed center area on the image transfer belt ▪ Defective BCU 1. Replace the ID sensor. 2. Replace the image transfer belt. 3. Replace the BCU.
		The skew for M, C, Y is more than ± 0.75 mm from the main scan registration of Bk	▪ Defective PCU ▪ Defective laser optics housing unit ▪ Defective BCU 1. Reinstall or replace the PCU. 2. Replace the laser optics housing unit. 3. Replace the BCU.
		Others	▪ Skew correction upper limit error ▪ Defective BCU ▪ Defective laser optics housing unit 1. Replace the BCU. 2. Replace the laser optics housing unit.
Result: "0"	-	-	Do SP2-111-001 or -002.

After Executing SP2-111-001			
Result (SP2-194)		**Test pattern check**	**Possible cause/Countermeasure**
-007	**-010, -011, -012**		
Result: "1"	Result: "2" or "3" (Line pattern detection failure)	White image, Abnormal image, Low density	▪ Defective laser optics housing unit shutter ▪ Defective image processing unit ▪ Low density of test pattern ▪ Defective BCU 1. Replace the shutter motor. 2. Replace the high voltage power supply unit. 3. Do the forced process control (SP3-011-001) or supply some toner (SP3-015-xxx). 4. Replace the BCU.
		Normal image, but with color registration errors	▪ Defective ID sensor shutter ▪ Defective ID sensor ▪ Defective BCU 1. Replace the ID sensor shutter solenoid. 2. Replace the ID sensor. 3. Replace the BCU.
	Result: "5" (Out of adjustable range)	Low image density on the output	▪ Low pattern density 1. Do the forced process control (SP3-011-001) or supply some toner (SP3-015-xxx).

		The main scan registrations of M, C, Y are shifted by more than ± 1.4 mm from the main scan registration of Bk.	▪ No defective component ▪ Defective laser optics housing unit ▪ Defective BCU 1. Do SP2-111-003 again. 2. Replace the laser optics housing unit. 3. Replace the BCU.
		The sub scan registrations of M, C, Y are shifted by more than ± 1.4 mm from the sub scan registration of Bk.	▪ No defective component ▪ Defective image transfer belt ▪ Defective drive units ▪ Defective BCU 1. Do SP2-111-003 again. 2. Replace the image transfer belt. 3. Replace the drum motor. 4. Replace the BCU.
		The main scan registration is shifted by more than ± 0.66 mm, but only at the central area of the image on the output.	▪ Defective ID sensor at center ▪ Deformed center area on the image transfer belt ▪ Defective BCU 1. Replace the ID sensor. 2. Replace the image transfer belt. 3. Replace the BCU.

		The skew for M, C, Y is more than ± 0.75 mm from the main scan registration of Bk. – at the end of the scan line?	▪ Defective PCU ▪ Defective laser optics housing unit ▪ Defective BCU 1. Reinstall or replace the PCU. 2. Replace the laser optics housing unit. 3. Replace the BCU.
		Others	▪ Skew correction upper limit error ▪ Defective BCU ▪ Defective laser optics housing unit 1. Replace the BCU. 2. Replace the laser optics housing unit.
Result: "0"	No color registration errors	The main scan registration of Bk is shifted.	▪ Abnormal SP setting value of main scan: Bk 1. Adjust the value with SP2-101-001.
		The main scan length of Bk is shifted.	▪ Abnormal SP setting value of main scan length detection: Bk 1. Adjust the value with SP2-185-001.
	Color registration errors	Low image density on the output	▪ Low pattern density 1. Do the forced process control (SP3-011-001) or supply some toner (SP3-015-xxx).

		The main scan registration is shifted, but only at the central area of the image on the output.	▪ Defective ID sensor at center ▪ Deformed center area on the image transfer belt ▪ Defective BCU 1. Replace the ID sensor. 2. Replace the image transfer belt. 3. Replace the BCU.
		The main scan registrations of M, C, Y are shifted.	▪ Defective laser optics housing unit ▪ Defective ID sensor ▪ Defective BCU ▪ Incorrect SP value 1. Replace the laser optics housing unit. 2. Replace the ID sensor. 3. Replace the BCU. 4. Adjust the value with SP2-182-004 to -021.

		The sub scan registrations of M, C, Y are shifted.	▪ Defective image transfer belt ▪ Defective drive units ▪ Defective ID sensor ▪ Defective BCU ▪ Incorrect SP value 1. Replace the image transfer belt. 2. Replace the ID sensor. 3. Replace the drum motor. 4. Replace the BCU. 5. Adjust the value with SP2-182-022 to -039.
		The skew of M, C, Y is different.	▪ Defective PCU ▪ Defective laser optics housing unit ▪ Defective IOB 1. Reinstall or replace the PCU. 2. Replace the laser optics housing unit. 3. Replace the IOB.
		The sub scan lines are shifted. Shifted lines appear cyclically.	▪ Defective PCU ▪ Defective drive unit ▪ Drum phase adjustment error 1. Do SP1-902-001 (Drum phase adjustment); see Replacement and Adjustment – Drive Unit – Gear Unit for details. 2. Reinstall or replace the PCU. 3. Check or replace the drive unit.

4.6 JAM DETECTION

4.6.1 PAPER JAM DISPLAY

SP7-504 shows the paper jam history.

```
CODE :011
SIZE    :05h
TOTAL:000034
DATE  :Fri Feb 15 11:44:50 2006
```

CODE: indicates the jam code.

SIZE: indicates the paper Size Code.

Total: Indicates the total counter (SP7-502-001).

DATE: indicates the date when the jam occurred.

4.6.2 JAM CODES AND DISPLAY CODES

Jam Code SP	Display	Description	LCD Display
7504 1	At Power On	Paper is not fed at power on.	-
7504 3	Tray 1: ON	Paper is not fed from tray 1.	A
7504 4	Tray 2: ON	Paper is not fed from tray 2.	A
7504 5	Tray 3: ON	Paper is not fed from tray 3 (LCT).	Y
7504 6	Tray 4: ON	Paper is not fed from tray 4.	Y
7504 8	Bypass: ON	Paper is not fed from the by-pass tray.	A
7504 9	Duplex: ON	Paper is jammed at the duplex unit.	Z
7504 11	Vertical Transport 1: ON	Vertical transport sensor 1 does not detect paper from tray 1.	A
7504 12	Vertical Transport 2: ON	Vertical transport sensor 2 does not detect paper from tray 2.	A

Jam Code SP	Display	Description	LCD Display
7504 13	Bank Transport 1	Vertical transport sensor 1 or relay sensor does not detect paper from tray 3 (LCT).	Y
7504 17	Registration: ON	Registration sensor does not detect paper.	B
7504 18	Fusing Entrance: ON	Fusing entrance sensor does not detect paper.	B
7504 19	Fusing Exit: ON	Fusing exit sensor does not detect paper.	B
7504 20	Paper Exit: ON	Paper exit sensor does not detect paper.	C
7504 21	Relay Exit: ON	Tray exit sensor (bridge unit) does not detect paper.	D
7504 22	Relay Transport: ON	Relay sensor (bridge unit) does not detect paper.	D
7504 24	Junction Gate Feed: ON	Junction gate jam sensor does not detect paper.	C
7504 25	Duplex Exit: ON	Duplex exit sensor does not detect paper.	Z
7504 26	Duplex Entrance: ON (In)	Duplex entrance sensor does not detect paper.	Z
7504 27	Duplex Entrance: ON (Out)	Duplex entrance sensor does not detect paper again after paper has passed this sensor.	Z
7504 28	1-Bin Exit Sensor	1-bin tray exit sensor does not detect paper.	C
7504 51	SEF Sensor 1	Vertical transport sensor 1 does not turn off.	A

Jam Detection

Jam Code SP	Display	Description	LCD Display
7504 52	SEF Sensor 2	Vertical transport sensor 2 does not turn off.	A
7504 53	Bank SEF Sensor 1	Vertical transport sensor or relay sensor 1 does not turn off.	Y
7504 54	Bank SEF Sensor 2	Vertical transport sensor 2 does not turn off.	Y
7504 57	Regist Sensor	Registration sensor does not turn off.	B
7504 60	Exit Sensor	Paper exit sensor does not turn off.	C
7504 61	Relay Exit Sensor	Tray exit sensor (bridge unit) does not turn off.	D
7504 62	Relay Sensor	Relay sensor (bridge unit) does not turn off.	D
7504 64	Junction Gate Feed: OFF	Junction gate jam sensor does not turn off.	C
7504 65	Duplex Exit Sensor	Duplex exit sensor does not turn off.	Z
7504 66	Duplex Entrance: OFF (In)	Duplex entrance sensor does not turn off.	Z
7504 67	Duplex Entrance: OFF (Out)	Duplex entrance sensor does not turn off after paper has passed this sensor.	Z
7504 68	1-Bin Exit: ON	1-bin tray exit sensor does not turn off.	C
7504 100	Finisher Entrance (B408)	Paper does not reach to the entrance sensor or stay at the entrance sensor.	R1-R2
7504 101	Finisher Shift Tray Exit (B408)	Paper does not reach to the lower tray exit sensor or stay at the lower tray exit sensor.	R1-R2
7504 102	Finisher Staple (B408)	Paper does not reach to the staple tray	R3-R5

Jam Code SP	Display	Description	LCD Display
		entrance sensor or stay at the staple tray entrance sensor.	
7504 103	Finisher Exit (B408)	▪ Lower tray exit sensor does not detect paper after the stack feed-out belt has fed paper. ▪ Lower tray exit sensor still detects paper after the stack feed-out belt has returned to the home position.	R3-R5
7504 104	Finisher Drive Motor (B408)	Exit guide plate HP sensor does not turn on or off for specified time.	
7504 105	Finisher Tray Lift Motor (B408)	▪ Stack height sensor does not detect paper after the lower tray has lifted up. ▪ Stack height sensor still detects paper after the lower tray has lifted down.	R1-R2
7504 106	Finisher Jogger Motor (B408)	▪ Jogger fence HP sensor does not turn off after the jogger fence has moved from its home position. ▪ Jogger fence HP sensor does not turn on after the jogger fence has returned to its home position.	R3-R5
7504 107	Finisher Shift Motor (B408)	▪ Shift roller HP sensor does not turn off after the shift roller has moved from its home position. ▪ Shift roller HP sensor does not turn on after the shift roller has returned to its home position.	R1-R2
7504 108	Finisher Staple Motor (B408)	▪ Stapler HP sensor does not turn off after the stapler has moved from its	R3-R5

Jam Detection

Jam Code SP	Display	Description	LCD Display
		home position. ▪ Stapler HP sensor does not turn on after the stapler has returned to its home position.	
7504 109	Finisher Exit Motor (B408)	▪ Stack feed-out belt HP sensor does not turn off after the stack feed-out belt has moved from its home position. ▪ Stack feed-out belt HP sensor does not turn on after the stack feed-out belt has returned to its home position.	R3-R5
7504 191	Finisher Entrance: EUP (B804/B805)	Paper does not reach the finisher entrance sensor or stays at the finisher entrance sensor.	R1-R4
7504 192	Finisher Proof Exit: EUP (B804/B805)	Paper does not reach the proof tray exit sensor or stays at the proof tray exit sensor.	R1-R4
7504 193	Finisher Shift Tray Exit: EUP (B804/B805)	Paper does not reach the upper tray exit sensor or stays at the upper tray exit sensor.	R1-R4
7504 194	Finisher Stapler Exit: EUP (B804/B805)	▪ Stapling tray paper sensor does not turn on after the finisher entrance sensor has turned on. ▪ Stapling tray paper sensor does not turn off after it has turned on.	[B804]: R5-R7 [B805]: R5-R8
7504 195	Finisher Exit: EUP (B804/B805)	▪ Upper tray exit sensor does not turn on while the stack feed-out belt is turned on. ▪ Upper tray exit sensor does not turn	[B804]: R1-R4/ R8-R12 [B805]:

Jam Code SP	Display	Description	LCD Display
		off after the stack feed-out belt has returned to its home position.	R8-R12
7504 196	Finisher Staple: EUP (B804/B805)	Not used	-
7504 197	Finisher Saddle Stitch Staple: EUP (B804/B805)	Not used	-
7504 198	Finisher Folder: EUP (B804 only)	▪ Fold bottom fence HP sensor does not turn on after the fold roller motor has stopped. ▪ Fold unit exit sensor does not turn on after the fold rollers have stopped. ▪ Fold unit exit sensor does not turn off after the fold rollers have stopped.	R8-R12
7504 199	Finisher Tray Motor: EUP (B804/B805)	▪ Upper tray limit sensor does not turn on after the upper tray has lifted up. ▪ Upper tray limit sensor does not turn off after the upper tray has moved down.	[B804]: R1-R4/ R5-R7 [B805]: R1-R4/ R5-R8
7504 200	Finisher Jogger Motor: EUP (B804/B805)	▪ Jogger fence HP sensor does not turn on/off after the jogger motor has turned on. ▪ Stack feed out belt HP sensor does not turn on/off after the feed out belt motor has turned on.	[B804]: R5-R7/ R8-R12 [B805]: R5-R8
7504 201	Finisher Shift Motor: EUP (B804/B805)	▪ Shift roller HP sensor does not turn on/off after the shift roller motor has	[B804]: R1-R4/

Jam Detection

Jam Code SP	Display	Description	LCD Display
		turned on. ▪ Exit guide plate HP sensor does not turn on/off after the exit guide plate motor has turned on. ▪ Stacking roller HP sensor does not turn on/off after the stacking sponge roller motor has turned on.	R5-R7 [B805]: R1-R4/ R5-R8
7504 202	Finisher Staple Moving Motor: EUP (B804/B805)	▪ Corner stapler HP sensor does not turn on/off after the corner stapler movement motor has turned on. ▪ Stapler rotation HP sensor does not turn on/off after the corner stapler rotation motor has turned on.	[B804]: R5-R7/ R8-R12 [B805]: R5-R8
7504 203	Finisher Staple Motor: EUP (B804/B805)	▪ Corner stapler does not finish stapling after a specified time. ▪ Booklet stapler does not finish stapling after a specified time.	[B804]: R5-R7/ R8-R12 [B805]: R5-R8
7504 204	Finisher Folder Motor: EUP (B804 only)	▪ Fold plate HP sensor does not turn on/off after the fold plate motor has turned on. ▪ Clamp roller HP sensor does not turn on/off after the clamp roller retraction motor has turned on. ▪ Fold bottom fence HP sensor does not turn on/off after the fold unit bottom fence lift motor has turned on. ▪ Stack junction gate HP sensor does not turn on/off after the stack junction gate motor has turned on.	R8-R12

Jam Code SP	Display	Description	LCD Display
7504 205	Finisher Exit Motor: EUP (B804/B805)	Not used	-
7504 206	Finisher Punch Motor: EUP (B804/B805)	▪ Punch encoder sensor does not turn on/off after the punch drive motor has turned on. ▪ Punch movement HP sensor does not turn on/off after the punch movement motor has turned on. ▪ Paper position slide HP sensor does not turn on/off after the paper position sensor slide motor has turned on.	R1-R4
7504 230	Finisher Exit No Response	The machine does not get a paper exit signal from the finisher.	-
7504 231	Finisher Communication Error	The machine does not detect the finisher.	-

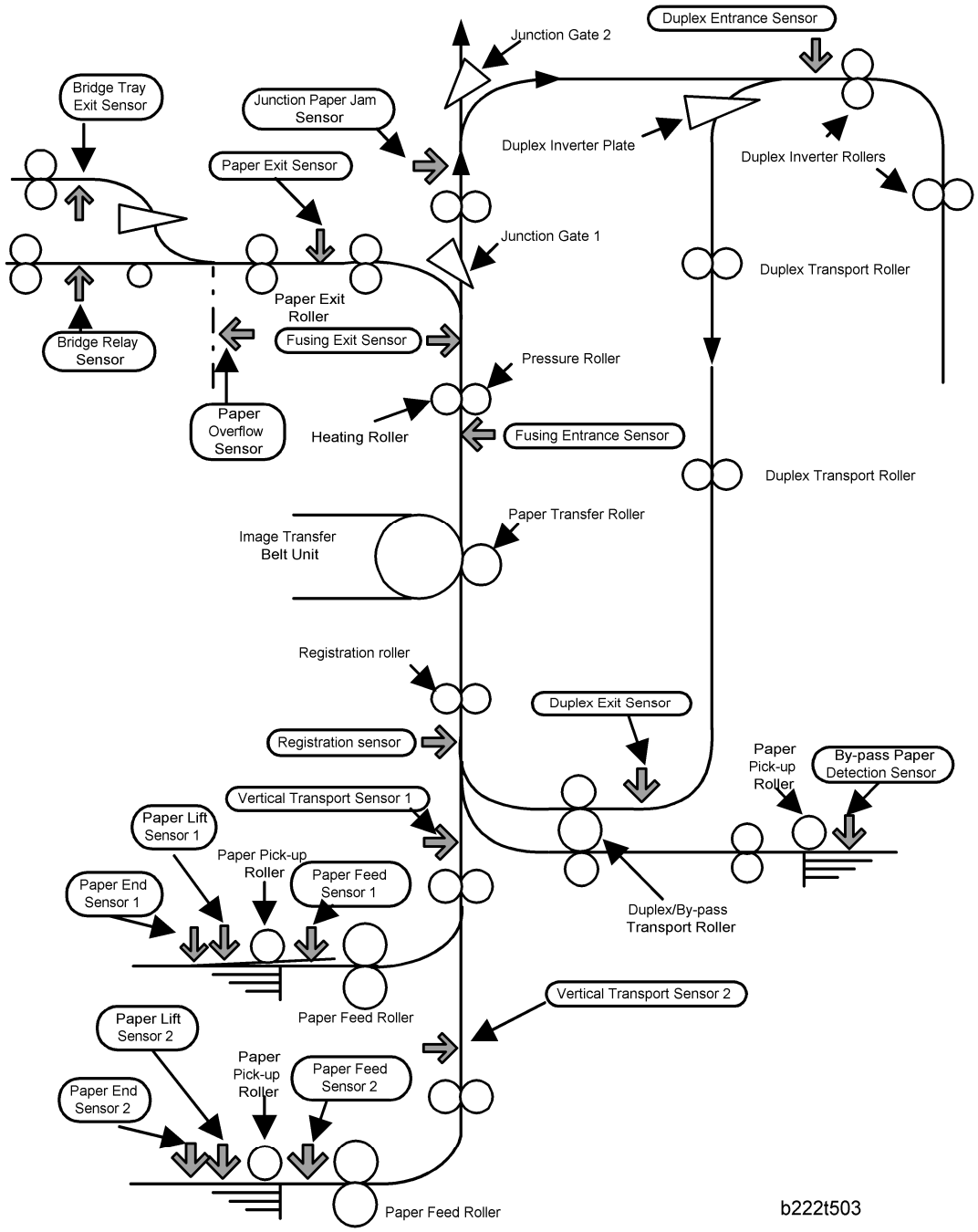
Paper Size Code

Size Code	Paper Size	Size Code	Paper Size
05	A4 LEF	141	B4 SEF
06	A5 LEF	142	B5 SEF
14	B5 LEF	160	DLT SEF
38	LT LEF	164	LG SEF
44	HLT LEF	166	LT SEF
132	A3 SEF	172	HLT SEF

Jam Detection

Size Code	Paper Size	Size Code	Paper Size
133	A4 SEF	255	Others
134	A5 SEF	-	-

Sensor Locations



4.7 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DEFECTS

4.7.1 SENSORS

Note

- The CN numbers in the following table are the connector numbers on the IOB.

No.	Sensor Name/ Sensor Board Name	Active	CN	Condition	Symptom
S13	Duplex Door	L	CN215/B9	Open	"Open Cover" is displayed
				Shorted	"Open cover" cannot be detected.
S44	ID Sensor (K, M, C, Y)	A	CN239	Open/ Shrted	SC285
	ID Sensor (Front, Center, Rear)	A	CN107 on BCU	Open/ Shorted	SC400
S17	Registration Sensor	L	CN209/A2	Open	Jam A (Jam8, 17)
				Shorted	Jam A, B (Jam1)
S35	Drum Gear Position Sensor-K	H	CN244/10	Open/ Shorted	SC380/SC396
S36	Drum Gear Position Sensor-M	H	CN244/13	Open/ Shorted	SC380/SC397
S37	Drum Gear Position Sensor-C	H	CN244/16	Open/ Shorted	SC380/SC398
S38	Drum Gear Position Sensor-Y	H	CN244/19	Open/ Shorted	SC380/SC399
S1	Shutter Positioning Sensor - Open	H	CN266/4	Open	SC294/295
				Shorted	SC293

Electrical Component Defects

No.	Sensor Name/ Sensor Board Name	Active	CN	Condition	Symptom
S2	Shutter Positioning Sensor - Close	H	CN266/7	Open	SC291/292
				Shorted	SC290
S31 S32 S33 S34	Toner End Sensor - Y Toner End Sensor - C Toner End Sensor - M Toner End Sensor - K	L	CN236/B3 CN236/B6 CN236/B9 CN236/ B12	Open	Toner end cannot be detected.
				Shorted	Toner end is detected when there is enough toner.
S52	Image Transfer Belt Rotation Sensor	H/L	CN223/1	Open/ Shorted	SC443
S24	Vertical Transport Sensor 1	L	CN212/A7	Open	Jam A (Jam3, 11)
				Shorted	Jam A, B (Jam1)
S25 S29	Paper End Sensor 1, 2	L	CN212/ A10, B10	Open	Paper end is not detected when there is no paper in the paper tray.
				Shorted	Paper end is detected when there is paper in the paper tray.
S26 S30	Paper Lift Sensor 1, 2	H	CN212/ A13, B13	Open/ Shorted	SC501, SC502
S28	Vertical Transport Sensor 2	L	CN212/B7	Open	Jam A (Jam4, 12)
				Shorted	Jam A, B (Jam1)
S19 S20	Tray 1 Paper Height Sensor 1, 2	L	CN209/ B2, B5	Open/ Shorted	Remaining paper volume on the LCD is wrong.
S21	Tray 2 Paper Height	L	CN209/	Open/	Remaining paper

No.	Sensor Name/ Sensor Board Name	Active	CN	Condition	Symptom
S22	Sensor 1, 2		B10, B13	Shorted	volume on the LCD is wrong.
S23	Tray 1 Paper Feed Sensor	L	CN212/A4	Open/ Shorted	Jam A, B (Jam1)
S27	Tray 2 Paper Feed Sensor	L	CN212/A4	Open/ Shorted	Jam A, B (Jam1)
SW5	Tray 1 Set Switch	L	CN209/A9	Open	Tray 1 is not detected when tray 1 is set.
				Shorted	Tray 1 is detected when tray 1 is not set.
S15	By-pass Paper Size Sensor	L	CN215/ B16, B17, B19, B20	Open/ Shorted	Paper size error
S11	By-pass Paper Detection Sensor	L	CN215/ A17	Open	Paper on the by-pass tray is not detected when paper is set.
				Shorted	Paper on the by-pass tray is detected when paper is not set.
S12	Fusing Entrance Sensor	L	CN215/B6	Open	Jam C (Jam 18)
				Shorted	Jam C (Jam 1)
S9	Duplex Entrance Sensor	L	CN215/A8	Open	Jam Z (Jam 26/27)
				Shorted	Jam Z (Jam 1)
S10	Duplex Exit Sensor	L	CN215/ A11	Open	Jam Z (Jam 25)
				Shorted	Jam Z (Jam 1)
S48	TD Sensor - K	A	CN219/A7	Open/	SC372

Electrical Component Defects

No.	Sensor Name/ Sensor Board Name	Active	CN	Condition	Symptom
				Shorted	
S49	TD Sensor - M	A	CN219/ A15	Open/ Shorted	SC373
S50	TD Sensor - C	A	CN219/B7	Open/ Shorted	SC374
S51	TD Sensor - Y	A	CN219/ B15	Open/ Shorted	SC375
S5	Fusing Exit Sensor	L	CN232/13	Open	Jam C (Jam 19)
				Shorted	Jam C (Jam 1)
S18	Waste Toner Sensor	H	CN209/A5	Open	Waste toner near full indicated when it is not near full.
				Shorted	Waste toner near full cannot be detected when the waste toner bottle is nearly full.
SW4	Waste Toner Bottle Set Switch	L	CN209/A7	Open	Waste toner bottle is not detected when the waste toner bottle is set.
				Shorted	Waste toner bottle is detected when the waste toner bottle is not set.
SW6	Tray 2 Paper Size Switch	L	CN209/ A11, A12, A13, A14	Open/ Shorted	Paper size error

No.	Sensor Name/ Sensor Board Name	Active	CN	Condition	Symptom
S16	Temperature/ Humidity Sensor	A	CN205/1, 3	Open/ Shorted	SC498 Printed image has some problems such as rough image, dirty background, weak image or poor fusing.
S47	Thermopile	A	CN218/3	Open/ Shorted	SC541
TH2	Thermistor - Heating Roller	A	CN217/5	Open/ Shorted	SC551
TH1	Thermistor - Pressure Roller	A	CN217/3	Open/ Shorted	SC561
S4	Paper Exit Sensor	L	CN231/10	Open	Jam C (Jam 20)
				Shorted	Jam C (Jam 1)
S6	Paper Overflow Sensor	L	CN232/16	Open	Paper overflow message is not displayed when the paper overflow condition still remains.
				Shorted	Paper overflow message is displayed when the paper overflow condition does not remain.
S41	Original Width Sensor 1	A	CN313/4 SIO	Open/ Shorted	Original paper size cannot be detected.
	Original Width Sensor 2	A	CN313/3 SIO		

Electrical Component Defects

No.	Sensor Name/ Sensor Board Name	Active	CN	Condition	Symptom
S42	Original Length Sensor 1	A	CN313/8 SIO	Open/ Shorted	Original paper size cannot be detected.
	Original Length Sensor 2	A	CN313/9 SIO		
S43	Original Length Sensor 3	A	CN313/13 SIO		
S39	Scanner HP Sensor	H	CN318/2 SIO	Open	SC120
				Shorted	SC121
S40	Platen Cover Sensor	L	CN318/5 SIO	Open/ Shorted	Platen cover open cannot be detected.
S45	Paper Transfer Contact Sensor	L	CN225/11	Open/ Shorted	SC452
S46	Image Transfer Belt Contact Sensor	L	CN225/17	Open/ Shorted	SC442
S8	Ferrite Roller HP Sensor	L	CN224/7	Open/ Shorted	SC549
S7	Fusing Belt Sensor	H/L	CN225/2	Open/ Shorted	SC584
S14	Junction Gate 1 HP Sensor	L	C215/B12	Open/ Shorted	SC529
S3	Junction Paper Jam	L	C232/7	Open/ Shorted	Jam C (Jam 24/64)

4.7.2 BLOWN FUSE CONDITIONS

Power Supply Unit

Fuse	Rating		Symptom when turning on the main switch
	115V	220V - 240V	
FU1	15A/125V	8A/250V	No response. (5V power to the PSU is not supplied.)
FU2	10A/125V	6.3A/250V	No response. (5V power to the BCU and controller is not supplied.)
FU3	2A/250V	1A/250V	5V power to the scanner heater and tray heater is not supplied.
FU4	1A/250V	1A/250V	5V power to the SIO and heater is not supplied.
FU5	5A/250V	5A/250V	5V power to the IOB not supplied.
FU6	2A/250V	2A/125V	5VS power to the IPU not supplied.
FU7	10A/125V	10A/125V	24VS power to the IOB not supplied.
FU8	10A/125V	10A/125V	24VS power to the IOB not supplied.
FU9	6.3A/125V	6.3A/125V	24V power to the IOB not supplied.
FU10	6.3A/125V	6.3A/125V	24V power to the SIO not supplied.
FU11	6.3A/125V	6.3A/125V	24V power to the IPU and MB not supplied.
FU12	6.3A/125V	6.3A/125V	24V power to the PFU or LCT not supplied.
FU13	6.3A/125V	6.3A/125V	24V power to the finisher not supplied.
FU14	5A/250V	5A/250V	5V power to the IPU not supplied.

IH Inverter

Fuse	Rating		Symptom when turning on the main switch
	115V	220V - 240V	
FU1	15A/125V	8A/250V	15V power to the IH coil unit is not supplied. SC689 occurs.
FU2	115°C		No response
FU3	115°C		No response
FU4	1A/250V		15V power to the IH coil unit is not supplied. SC689 occurs.

⚠CAUTION

- For continued protection against risk of fire, replace only with same type and rating of fuse.

SERVICE TABLES

SECTION 5 SERVICE TABLES (SP MODES) REVISION HISTORY		
Page	**Date**	**Added/Updated/New**
263	10/18/2006	SP5401
455 ~ 489	04/06/2009	Printer SP1001

5. SERVICE TABLES

5.1 SERVICE PROGRAM MODE

CAUTION

- Make sure that the data-in LED (⇨) is not on before you go into the SP mode. This LED indicates that some data is coming to the machine. When the LED is on, wait for the copier to process the data.

5.1.1 ENABLING AND DISABLING SERVICE PROGRAM MODE

Note

- The Service Program Mode is for use by service representatives only. If this mode is used by anyone other than service representatives for any reason, data might be deleted or settings might be changed. In such case, product quality cannot be guaranteed any more.

Entering SP Mode

1. Press the "Clear Mode" key (C/⊘).
2. Use keypad to enter "107" (1 0 7).
3. Hold down "Clear/Stop" (C/⊘) for 3 seconds at least.
4. Enter the Service Mode.

Exiting SP Mode

1. Press "Exit" on the LCD twice to return to the copy window.

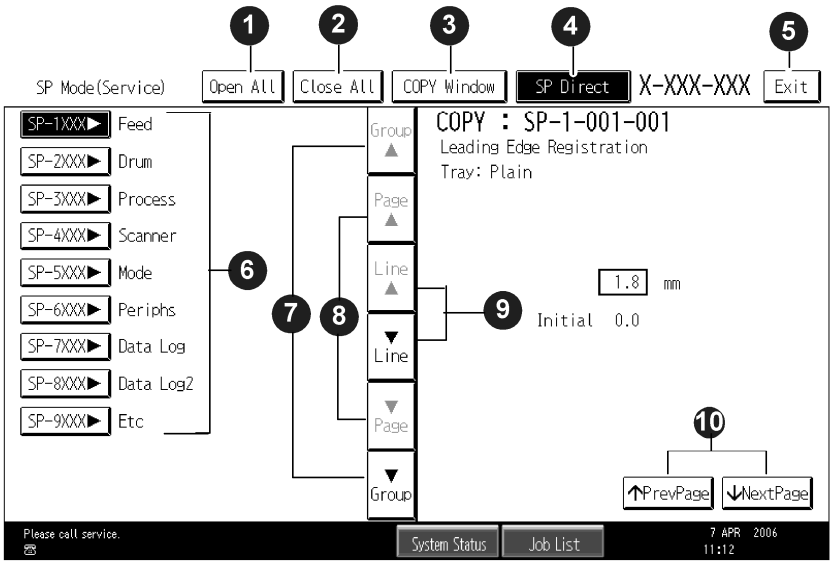
5.1.2 TYPES OF SP MODES

- Copy SP: SP modes related to the engine functions
- Printer SP: SP modes related to the controller functions
- Scanner SP: SP modes related to the scanner functions
- Fax SP: SP modes related to the fax functions

Select one of the Service Program modes (Copy, Printer, Scanner, or Fax) from the touch panel as shown in the diagram below after you access the SP mode. This section explains the functions of the Printer/Copy/Scanner SP modes. Refer to the Fax service manual for the Fax SP modes.

SP Mode Button Summary

Here is a short summary of the touch-panel buttons.



❶	Opens all SP groups and sublevels.
❷	Closes all open groups and sublevels and restores the initial SP mode display.
❸	Opens the copy window (copy mode) so you can make test copies. Press SP Mode (highlighted) in the copy window to return to the SP mode screen,
❹	Enter the SP code directly with the number keys if you know the SP number. Then press ⓝ. (The required SP Mode number will be highlighted when pressing ⓝ. If not, just press the required SP Mode number.)
❺	Press two times to leave the SP mode and return to the copy window to resume

	normal operation.
❻	Press any Class 1 number to open a list of Class 2 SP modes.
❼	Press to scroll the show to the previous or next group.
❽	Press to scroll to the previous or next display in segments the size of the screen display (page).
❾	Press to scroll the show the previous or next line (line by line).
❿	Press to move the highlight on the left to the previous or next selection in the list.

Switching Between SP Mode and Copy Mode for Test Printing

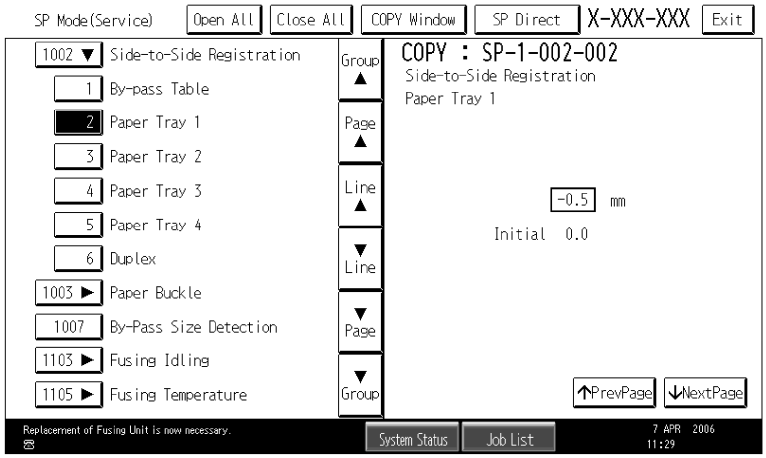
1. In the SP mode, select the test print. Then press Copy Window.
2. Use the copy window (copier mode), to select the appropriate settings (paper size, etc.) for the test print.
3. Press Start ⓓ to start the test print.
4. Press SP Mode (highlighted) to return to the SP mode screen and repeat from step 1.

Selecting the Program Number

Program numbers have two or three levels.

1. Refer to the Service Tables to find the SP that you want to adjust before you begin.
2. Press the Group number on the left side SP Mode window that contains the SP that you want to adjust.
3. Use the scrolling buttons in the center of the SP mode window to show the SP number that you want to open. Then press that number to expand the list.
4. Use the center touch-panel buttons to scroll to the number and title of the item that you want to set and press it. The small entry box on the right activates and shows the below default or the current settings.

Service Program Mode



Note

- Refer to the Service Tables for the range of allowed settings.

1. Do this procedure to enter a setting:
   - Press ⊙ to toggle between plus and minus and use the keypad to enter the appropriate number. The number you enter writes over the previous setting.
   - Press ⊙ to enter the setting. (The value is not registered if you enter a number that is out of range.)
   - Press “Yes” when you are prompted to complete the selection.
2. If you need to perform a test print, press Copy Window to open the copy window and select the settings for the test print. Press Start ⊙ and then press SP Mode (highlighted) in the copy window to return to the SP mode display.
3. Press Exit two times to return to the copy window when you are finished.

Exiting Service Mode

Press the Exit key on the touch-panel.

Service Mode Lock/Unlock

At locations where the machine contains sensitive data, the customer engineer cannot operate the machine until the Administrator turns the service mode lock off. This function makes sure that work on the machine is always done with the permission of the Administrator.

1. If you cannot go into the SP mode, ask the Administrator to log in with the User Tool and then set “Service Mode Lock” to OFF after he or she logs in:
   User Tools > System Settings > Administrator Tools > Service Mode Lock > OFF
   - This unlocks the machine and lets you get access to all the SP codes.
   - The CE can service the machine and turn the machine off and on. It is not necessary to ask the Administrator to log in again each time the machine is turned

on.

2. Go into the SP mode and set SP5169 to “1” if you must use the printer bit switches.
3. After machine servicing is completed:
   - Change SP5169 from “1” to “0”.
   - Turn the machine off and on. Tell the administrator that you have completed servicing the machine.
   - The Administrator will then set the “Service Mode Lock” to ON.

5.1.3 REMARKS

Display on the Control Panel Screen

The maximum number of characters which can show on the control panel screen is limited to 30 characters. For this reason, some of the SP modes shown on the screen need to be abbreviated. The following are abbreviations used for the SP modes for which the full description is over 20 characters.

<table>
<tr><td colspan="2">Paper Weight
Thin paper: 52-59 g/m^2
Plain Paper: 60-81g/m2, 16-22lb.
Middle Thick: 82-105g/m2, 22-28lb.
Thick Paper 1: 106-169g/m2, 28.5-44.9lb.
Thick Paper 2: 170-219g/m2, 45-58lb.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Paper Type
N: Normal paper
MTH: Middle thick paper
TH: Thick paper</td><td>Paper Feed Station
P: Paper tray
B: By-pass table</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Color Mode [Color]
[K]: Black in B&W mode
[Y], [M], or [C]: Yellow, Magenta, or Cyan in Full Color mode
[YMC]: Only for Yellow, Magenta, and Cyan
[FC]: Full Color mode
[FC, K], [FC, Y], [FC, M], or [FC, C]: Black, Yellow, Magenta, or Cyan in full color mode</td></tr>
<tr><td>Print Mode
S: Simplex</td><td>Process Speed
L: Low speed (77 mm/s)</td></tr>
</table>

D: Duplex	M: Middle speed (115 mm/s) H: High speed (B224: 205, B222 154 mm/s)

Others

The following symbols are used in the SP mode tables.

FA: Factory setting

(Data may be adjusted from the default setting at the factory. Refer to the factory setting sheets enclosed. You can find it under the jammed paper removal decal.)

DFU: Design/Factory Use only

Do not touch these SP modes in the field.

A sharp (#) to the right hand side of the mode number column means that the main switch must be turned off and on to effect the setting change.

An asterisk (*) to the right hand side of the mode number column means that this mode is stored in the NVRAM. If you do a RAM clear, this SP mode will be reset to the default value.

“ENG” and “CTL” show which NVRAM contains the data.

- ENG: NVRAM on the BCU board
- CTL: NVRAM on the controller board

The settings of each SP mode are explained in the right-hand column of the SP table in the following way.

[Adjustable range / **Default setting** / Step] Alphanumeric

Note

- If “Alphanumeric” is written to the right of the bracket as shown above, the setting of the SP mode shows on the screen using alphanumeric characters instead of only numbers. However, the settings in the bracket in the SP mode table are explained by using only the numbers.

SSP: This denotes a “Special Service Program” mode setting.

5.2 COPY SERVICE MODE

5.2.1 SERVICE MODE TABLE

SP1-XXX (Feed)

1001	**[Leading Edge Registration]** Leading Edge Registration Adjustment (Tray Location, Paper Type, Color Mode), Paper Type -> Plain, Thick 1or Thick 2		
	Adjusts the leading edge registration by changing the registration clutch operation timing for each mode.		
001	Tray: Plain	*ENG	[–9 to 9 / **0.0** / 0.1 mm/step]
002	Tray: Thick 1	*ENG	
003	Tray: Thick 2	*ENG	
004	By-pass Table: Plain	*ENG	
005	By-pass Table: Thick 1	*ENG	
006	By-pass Table: Thick 2	*ENG	
007	Duplex: Plain	*ENG	
008	Duplex: Thick 1	*ENG	
009	Tray: Thin	*ENG	
010	Tray: Middle Thick	*ENG	
011	By-pass: Thin	*ENG	
012	By-pass: Middle Thick	*ENG	
013	By-pass: Thick 3	*ENG	
014	Duplex: Thin	*ENG	
015	Duplex: Middle Thick	*ENG	

1002	**[Side to Side Reg.]** Side-to-Side Registration Adjustment		
	Adjusts the side-to-side registration by changing the laser main scan start position for each mode.		
001	By-pass Table	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / **0.0** / 0.1 mm/step]
002	Paper Tray 1	*ENG	
003	Paper Tray 2	*ENG	
004	Paper Tray 3	*ENG	
005	Paper Tray 4	*ENG	
006	Duplex	*ENG	

1003	**[Paper Buckle]** Paper Buckle Adjustment (Tray Location, Paper Type), Paper Type: N: Normal, TH: Thick		
	Adjusts the amount of paper buckle at the registration roller by changing the paper feed timing.		
001	Paper Tray1: Plain	*ENG	[–5 to 5 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
002	Paper Tray1: Thick1	*ENG	[–5 to 5 / **-2** / 1 mm/step]
003	Paper Tray1: Thick2	*ENG	
004	Paper Tray2/3/4/5: Plain	*ENG	[–5 to 5 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
005	Paper Tray2/3/4/5: Thick 1	*ENG	[–5 to 5 / **-2** / 1 mm/step]
006	Paper Tray2/3/4/5: Thick 2	*ENG	
007	By-pass: Plain	*ENG	[–5 to 5 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
008	By-pass: Thick1	*ENG	[–5 to 5 / **-2** / 1 mm/step]
009	By-pass: Thick2	*ENG	

010	Duplex: Plain	*ENG	[–5 to 5 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
011	Duplex: Thick1	*ENG	[–5 to 5 / **-2** / 1 mm/step]
012	Tray 1: Thin	*ENG	[–5 to 5 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
013	Tray 1: Middle Thick	*ENG	
014	Tray 2/3/4/5: Thin	*ENG	[–5 to 5 / **-2** / 1 mm/step]
015	Tray 2/3/4/5: Middle Thick	*ENG	[–5 to 5 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
016	By-pass: Thin	*ENG	
017	By-pass: Middle Thick	*ENG	
018	By-pass: Thick 3	*ENG	[–5 to 5 / **-2** / 1 mm/step]
019	Duplex: Thin	*ENG	[–5 to 5 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
020	Duplex: Middle Thick	*ENG	

1007	**[By-Pass Size Detection]** By-Pass Size Detection Display		
001	LG	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / –] **0**: **OFF**, 1: ON
	Enables or disables the automatic paper size detection function of the by-pass tray. This SP determines what paper size the machine detects if the detected size is less than 8.5”. 0: OFF (Letter/SEF), 1: ON (Legal/SEF)		

1103	**[Fusing Idling]** Fusing Idling Adjustment		
001	Extra Idling Time	*ENG	[0 to 60 / **0** / 1 sec/step] **Not used**
	Specifies how long the extra idling operation is executed.		
016	Extra Idling Time (L)	*ENG	Specifies how long the extra idling operation is executed for each environment.

			[0 to 250 / **60** / 1 sec/step] Each environment is determined with SP1112-001 and 002.
017	Extra Idling Time (H)	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **B222: 10, B224: 25** / 1 sec/step]
018	Extra Idling Time (M)	*ENG	

1105	**[Fusing Temperature]** Fusing Temperature Adjustment		
	(Printing Mode, Roller Type, [Color], Simplex/Duplex) Roller Type –> Center and Ends: Heating roller, Pressure –> Pressure roller Paper Type -> Plain, Thin, Thick, OHP, Middle Thick, Special		
001	Fusing Ready Temp.	*ENG	[100 to 200 / **138** / 1°C/step]
	Specifies the heating roller target temperature for the ready condition.		
002	Fusing Ready: Offset	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **0** / 1°C/step]
	Sets the heating roller offset temperature for the printing ready condition. Ready temperature = (Target temperature specified in SP1-105-1) – Temperature specified in this SP mode		
003	Ends Ready: Offset	*ENG	[70 to 180 / **70** / 1°C/step]
	Sets the heating roller offset temperature at the end of the heating roller. This value is one of the thresholds to determine if the machine is at the heating roller target temperature during warm-up.		
004	Ends Ready: Upper Limit	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **200** / 1°C/step]
	Sets the upper limit temperature of the heating roller at the end of the heating roller. This value is one of the thresholds to determine if the machine is at the heating roller target temperature during warm-up.		
005	Pressure Ready: Offset.	* ENG	[40 to 180 / **B222: 70, B224: 90**/ 1°C/step]
	Sets the pressure roller offset temperature. This value is one of the thresholds to determine if the machine is at the heating roller target temperature during warm-up.		

006	Pressure Ready: Upper Limit.	* ENG	[0 to 180 / **180** / 1°C/step]
	Sets the limit temperature of the pressure roller. This value is one of the thresholds to determine if the machine is at the heating roller target temperature during the warm-up.		
012	Stand-By: Pressure	* ENG	[90 to 150 / **150** / 1°C/step]
	Specifies the stand-by temperature for the pressure roller.		
016	Pressure Target Energy Saver	* ENG	[90 to 150 / **B222: 100, B224: 140** / 1°C/step]
	Specifies the temperature during the panel-off mode for the pressure roller.		
	The following SPs except SP1105-085 set the target operating temperatures of the heating roller in various modes.		
030	Plain: FC: Simplex	*ENG	[100 to 200 / **B222: 155, B224: 160** / 1°C/step]
032	Plain: FC: Duplex	*ENG	
034	Plain: BW: Simplex	*ENG	
036	Plain: BW: Duplex	*ENG	
038	Thin: FC: Simplex	*ENG	[100 to 200 / **150** / 1°C/step]
040	Thin: FC: Duplex	*ENG	
042	Thin: BW: Simplex	*ENG	
044	Thin: BW: Duplex	*ENG	
046	Thick 1: FC: Simplex	*ENG	[100 to 200 / **170** / 1°C/step]
048	Thick 1: FC: Duplex	*ENG	
050	Thick 1: BW: Simplex	*ENG	
052	Thick 1: BW: Duplex	*ENG	
054	Thick 2: FC: Simplex	*ENG	[100 to 200 / **170** / 1°C/step]

055	Thick 2: BW: Simplex	*ENG	
056	OHP: FC	*ENG	[100 to 180 / **165** / 1°C/step]
057	OHP: BW	*ENG	[100 to 180 / **160** / 1°C/step]
058	Special 1: FC: Simplex	*ENG	[100 to 200 / **160** / 1°C/step]
060	Special 1: FC: Duplex	*ENG	
062	Special 1: BW: Simplex	*ENG	
064	Special 1: BW: Duplex	*ENG	
066	Special 2: FC: Simplex	*ENG	[100 to 200 / **160** / 1°C/step]
068	Special 2: FC: Duplex	*ENG	
070	Special 2: BW: Simplex	*ENG	
072	Special 2: BW: Duplex	*ENG	
074	Special 3: FC: Simplex	*ENG	[100 to 200 / **160** / 1°C/step]
076	Special 3: FC: Duplex	*ENG	
078	Special 3: BW: Simplex	*ENG	
080	Special 3: BW: Duplex	*ENG	
082	Target Temp. After Ready	*ENG	[100 to 200 / **160** / 1°C/step]
	Specifies the target temperature for the maintain mode after the machine has reached the target temperature in warm-up mode.		
083	Recovery Target Temp.	*ENG	[100 to 200 / **170** / 1°C/step]
	Specifies the target temperature for the print mode without printing/copying job after the machine's recovery.		
085	Print Start: Offset	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **5** / 1°C/step]
	Specifies the paper feed start temperature. This value is the offset temperature in relation to the target temperature for the print ready mode.		

086	Feed Start: Offset	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **5** / 1°C/step]
	Specifies the image processing start temperature. This value is the offset temperature in relation to the target temperature for the print ready mode.		
089	Thick 3: FC: Simplex	*ENG	[100 to 200 / **175** / 1°C/step]
091	Thick 3: BW: Simplex	*ENG	
093	Envelop: FC	*ENG	[100 to 180 / **160** / 1°C/step]
094	Envelop: BW	*ENG	
095	Middle Thick: Middle Speed: FC: Simplex	*ENG	[100 to 160 / **145** / 1°C/step]
097	Middle Thick: Middle Speed: FC: Duplex	*ENG	
099	Middle Thick: Middle Speed: BW: Simplex	*ENG	
101	Middle Thick: Middle Speed: BW: Duplex	*ENG	
103	Middle Thick: Constant Speed: Offset	*ENG	[0 to 55 / **B222: 15, B224: 20** / 1°C/step]
104	Feed Start: Extra: Offset	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **100** / 1°C/step]
	Specifies the paper feed start offset temperature. This value is the offset temperature in relation to the target temperature for the print ready mode.		
105	Print Start: Extra: Offset	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **100** / 1°C/step]
	Specifies the image processing start offset temperature. This value is the offset temperature in relation to the target temperature for the print ready mode.		
106	Extra Rotation Temp.: L	*ENG	[100 to 200 / **165** / 1°C/step]
	Specifies the target temperature for extra idling mode in a low temperature environment. The low temperature threshold can be adjusted with SP1112-003.		

107	Extra Rotation Temp.: M	*ENG	[100 to 200 / **160** / 1°C/step]
	Specifies the target temperature for extra idling mode in a medium temperature environment. The medium temperature is between the low temperature threshold (SP1112-003) and the high temperature threshold (SP1112-004).		
108	Extra Rotation Temp.: H	*ENG	[100 to 200 / **160** / 1°C/step]
	Specifies the target temperature for extra idling mode in a high temperature environment. The high temperature threshold can be adjusted with SP1112-004.		
111	Thick: Small Size	*ENG	[100 to 170 / **155** / 1°C/step]
119	PF/PS Temp.: Extend: O/V: Plain: FC Prn	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **B222: 20, B224: 10** / 1°C/step]
120	PF/PS Temp.: Extend: O/V: M-Thick	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **5** / 1°C/step]
121	PF/PS Temp.: O/V: Stand-By: Mid-Thick	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **5** / 1°C/step]
122	PF Temp: Pressure: Plain	*ENG	[10 to 150 / **20** / 1°C/step]
123	PF Temp: Pressure: Plain: FC Prn.	*ENG	[10 to 150 / **B222: 65, B224: 90** / 1°C/step]
124	PF Temp: Pressure: M-Thick: BK	*ENG	[10 to 150 / **B222: 85, B224: 115** / 1°C/step]
125	PF Temp: Pressure: M-Thick: FC	*ENG	
126	Reload Correction Temp.: Plain: Reload	*ENG	[0 to 20 / **10** / 1°C/step]
127	Reload Correction Temp.: M-Thick: Reload	*ENG	[0 to 20 / **15** / 1°C/step]
128	Reload Correction	*ENG	[0 to 20 / **10** / 1°C/step]

	Temp.: M-Thick: Standby		
*129	PF/PS Temp: Offset Value: Color: M	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **30** / 1°C/step]
*130	PF/Print: Offset Value: Color: M: M-Thick	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **5** / 1°C/step]

*For Future Use

1106	**[Fusing Temperature Display]** Fusing Temperature Display (Heating or Pressure)		
	Displays the current temperature of the heating and pressure rollers.		
001	Fusing: Center	-	[–20 to 250 / - / 1°C/step] The heating roller has two lamps. One heats the center of the heating roller and the other heats both ends of the heating roller.
002	Fusing: Ends	-	
003	Pressure	-	

1108	**[Forced Ready Setting]**		
	Japan use only		
001	ON/OFF	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: OFF, 1: ON
002	Target Voltage Ratio	*ENG	[85 to 100 / **92** / 1%/step]
003	Measured Voltage Ratio	*ENG	[70 to 120 / **100** / 1%/step]
004	Target Temperature	*ENG	[110 to 155 / **155** / 1 deg/step]

1109	**[Fusing Nip Band Check]**		
001	Execute	-	Executes the nip band measurement between fusing belt and pressure roller. If the nip band width is not 8 mm, and

			fusing is not good, replace the pressure roller or install a new fusing unit.
002	Pre-Idling Time	*ENG	[0 to 120 / **240** / 1 sec/step]
	Specifies the fusing rotation time before executing SP1109-001.		
003	Stop Time	* ENG	[5 to 30 / **10** / 1 sec/step]
	Specifies the time for measuring the nip.		

1112	**[Environmental Correction: Fusing]**		
001	Temp.: Threshold: Low	*ENG	[10 to 23 / **17** / 1°C/step]
	Specifies the threshold temperature for low temperature condition.		
002	Temp.: Threshold: High	*ENG	[24 to 40 / **30** / 1°C/step]
	Specifies the threshold temperature for high temperature condition.		
003	Low Temp. Correction	*ENG	[0 to 15 / **5** / 1°C/step]
	Specifies the temperature correction for the heating roller. When the low temperature condition (specified with SP1112-001) is detected, the value of this SP is added to the heating roller temperature.		
004	High Temp. Correction	*ENG	[0 to 15 / **5** / 1°C/step]
	Specifies the temperature correction for the heating roller. When the high temperature condition (specified with SP1112-002) is detected, the value of this SP is subtracted from the heating roller temperature.		

1113	**[Stand-by Time]**		
001	Shift Time	*ENG	[0 to 180 / **60** / 1 sec/step]
	Specifies the interval from the ready mode to the stand-by mode. If the machine does not do any printing job for the time specified with this SP after the heating roller has reached the ready temperature, the machine returns to the stand-by mode.		

002	Recovery Target Temp.	*ENG	[0 to 180 / **10** / 1 sec/step]
	Specifies the time for keeping the target temperature after recovery (SP1105-083) without any jobs.		

1115	**[Stand-by Idling]**		
001	Interval	*ENG	[1 to 240 / **60** / 1 min/step]
	Specifies the interval between idling during stand-by mode. This idling during the stand-by mode prevents the roller deformation.		
002	Idling Time	*ENG	[0 to 60 / **0.7** / 0.1 sec/step]
	Specifies the length of each idling operation during stand-by mode.		

1116	**[Ends Temp. Correction] Not used**		
001	Mode: X1	*ENG	[0 to 999 / **40** / 1 sheet/step]
002	Mode: X2	*ENG	[0 to 999 / **70** / 1 sheet /step]
003	Mode: X3	*ENG	[0 to 999 / **100** / 1 sheet /step]
004	Detection Hysteresis	*ENG	[1 to 20 / **5** / 1deg/step]
005	Saturation Temp.	*ENG	[180 to 230 / **210** / defe/step]
006	Saturation Temp.: Margin	*ENG	[30 to 130 / **130** / 1deg/step]

1159	**[Fusing Jam Detection]**		
001	SC Display	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: Disable, 1: Enable
	Enables or disables the fusing consecutive jam detection. If this SP is set to "1" (default: 0), SC559 occurs when the machine detects the paper jam three times consecutively at the fusing unit.		

1801	[Motor Speed Adj.] FA		
001	Registration: 77: Plain	*ENG	[–2 to 2 / **0** / 0.05 %/step]
002	Registration: 115: Plain	*ENG	
003	Registration: 154: Plain	*ENG	
004	Registration: 205: Plain	*ENG	
006	BkOpcDevMot: 205	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / **0** / 0.01 %/step]
007	BkOpcDevMot: 154	*ENG	
008	BkOpcDevMot: 115	*ENG	
009	BkOpcDevMot: 77	*ENG	
010	MOpcDevMot: 205	*ENG	[–10 to 10 / **0** / 1 /step]
011	MOpcDevMot: 154	*ENG	[–7 to 7 / **0** / 1 /step]
012	MOpcDevMot: 115	*ENG	[–9 to 9 / **0** / 1 /step]
013	MOpcDevMot: 77	*ENG	[–13 to 13 / **0** / 1 /step]
014	COpcDevMot: 205	*ENG	[–10 to 10 / **0** / 1 /step]
015	COpcDevMot: 154	*ENG	[–7 to 7 / **0** / 1 /step]
016	COpcDevMot: 115	*ENG	[–9 to 9 / **0** / 1 /step]
017	COpcDevMot: 77	*ENG	[–13 to 13 / **0** / 1 /step]
018	YOpcDevMot: 205	*ENG	[–10 to 10 / **0** / 1 /step]
019	YOpcDevMot: 154	*ENG	[–7 to 7 / **0** / 1 /step]
020	YOpcDevMot: 115	*ENG	[–9 to 9 / **0** / 1 /step]
021	YOpcDevMot: 77	*ENG	[–13 to 13 / **0** / 1 /step]
022	Fusing: 205	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / **0** / 0.01%/step]
023	Fusing: 154	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / **0** / 0.01%/step]

024	Fusing: 115	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / **–1.4** / 0.01%/step]
025	Fusing: 77	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / **–1** / 0.01%/step]
026	Image Transfer: 205	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / **0** / 0.01%/step]
027	Image Transfer: 154	*ENG	
028	Image Transfer: 115	*ENG	
029	Image Transfer: 77	*ENG	
030	Drum Drive Fine Adj. Control	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / -]
031	Offset: 205: M	*ENG	[–10 to 10 / **0** / 1 /step]
032	Offset: 205: C	*ENG	
033	Offset: 205: Y	*ENG	
034	Offset: 154: M	*ENG	[–7 to 7 / **0** / 1 /step]
035	Offset: 154: C	*ENG	
036	Offset: 154: Y	*ENG	
037	Offset: 115: M	*ENG	[–9 to 9 / **0** / 1 /step]
038	Offset: 115: C	*ENG	
039	Offset: 115: Y	*ENG	
040	Offset: 77: M	*ENG	[–13 to 13 / **0** / 1 /step]
041	Offset: 77: C	*ENG	
042	Offset: 77: Y	*ENG	
043	Registration: 77: Thin	*ENG	[–2 to 2 / **–0.5** / 0.05 %/step]
044	Registration: 77: Thick 1	*ENG	
045	Registration: 77: Thick 2	*ENG	
046	Registration: 77: Thick 3	*ENG	

047	Registration: 115: Middle Thick	*ENG	[–2 to 2 / **0** / 0.05 %/step]
048	Registration: 154: Middle Thick	*ENG	
049	Registration: 205: Thin	*ENG	[–2 to 2 / –**0.5** / 0.05 %/step]
050	Registration: 205: Middle Thick	*ENG	[–2 to 2 / **0** / 0.05 %/step]
051	Registration: 154: Thin	*ENG	[–2 to 2 / –**0.5** / 0.05 %/step]
052	Registration: 115: Thick1	*ENG	[–2 to 2 / –**1** / 0.05 %/step]
054	Duplex CW: 77	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / **0** / 0.1 %/step]
055	Duplex CW: 115: Thick1	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / **0.6** / 0.1 %/step]
056	Duplex CW: 115: Middle Thick	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / **1** / 0.1 %/step]
057	Duplex CW: 154: Normal	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / **0.5** / 0.1 %/step]
058	Duplex CW: 154: Middle Thick	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / **1** / 0.1 %/step]
059	Duplex CW: 205: Normal	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / **0.5** / 0.1 %/step]
060	Duplex CW: 205: Middle Thick	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / **1** / 0.1 %/step]
061	Duplex CCW: 115: Thick1	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / **0** / 0.1 %/step]
062	Duplex CCW: 115: Middle Thick	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / **0.2** / 0.1 %/step]
063	Duplex CCW: 154: Normal	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / –**0.3** / 0.1 %/step]
064	Duplex CCW: 154: Middle Thick	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / **0.2** / 0.1 %/step]

065	Duplex CCW: 205: Normal	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / –**0.3** / 0.1 %/step]
066	Duplex CCW: 205: Middle Thick	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / **0.2** / 0.1 %/step]
067	Reverse CW: 115: Thick1	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / **0** / 0.1 %/step]
068	Reverse CW: 115: Middle Thick	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / **0** / 0.1 %/step]
069	Reverse CW: 154: Normal	*ENG	
070	Reverse CW: 154: Middle Thick	*ENG	
071	Reverse CW: 205: Normal	*ENG	
072	Reverse CW: 205: Middle Thick	*ENG	
073	Reverse CCW: 115: Thick1	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / **0** / 0.1 %/step]
074	Reverse CCW: 115: Middle Thick	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / **0.2** / 0.1 %/step]
075	Reverse CCW: 154: Normal	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / –**0.3** / 0.1 %/step]
076	Reverse CCW: 154: Middle Thick	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / **0.2** / 0.1 %/step]
077	Reverse CCW: 205: Normal	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / –**0.3** / 0.1 %/step]
078	Reverse CCW: 205: Middle Thick	*ENG	[–4 to 4 / **0.2** / 0.1 %/step]

1901	[Recovery Temp. Ope. Time]		
004	-	*ENG	[0 to 60 / **10** / 1 sec/step] **Not used**

1902	[Drum Phase Adj.]		
001	Execute	-	Execute drum phase adjustment.
002	Result	*ENG	Displays the result of drum phase adjustment. 0: Successfully done 2: Sampling failure 3: Insufficient detection number
003	Auto Execution	*ENG	Turns the automatic drum phase adjustment on or off. **0:** Off, **1: On**

1907	[Paper Feed Timing Adj.] DFU		
001	Pre-Feed	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / -]
002	Feed Solenoid ON: Plain	*ENG	[–10 to 40 / **0** / 2.5 mm/step]
003	Feed Clutch OFF: Plain	*ENG	[–10 to 10 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
004	Feed Clutch ON: Plain	*ENG	[–10 to 10 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
005	Inverter Stop Position	*ENG	[–10 to 10 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
006	Re-Feed Stop Position	*ENG	[–10 to 10 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
007	By-pass Solenoid OFF	*ENG	[0 to 40 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
008	By-pass Solenoid Re-ON	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / -]
010	By-pass Feed Clutch ON	*ENG	[–10 to 10 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
012	Feed Solenoid ON: Thick	*ENG	[–10 to 40 / **0** / 2.5 mm/step]
013	Feed Clutch OFF: Thick	*ENG	[–10 to 10 / **0** / 1 mm/step]

014	Feed Clutch ON: Thick	*ENG	[–10 to 10 / **0** / 1 mm/step]

1908	**[Paper Bank Feed Timing Adj.] DFU**		
006	Feed Clutch ON: Plain	*ENG	[–10 to 10 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
007	Feed Clutch ON: Thick	*ENG	

1910	**[Fusing Feed Start Time]**		
	Specifies the waiting time for feeding paper after the machine has entered the print ready mode.		
001	Plain: Normal Temp	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **0** / 1 sec/step]
002	Thick: Normal Temp.	*ENG	
003	Middle Thick Constant Speed: Normal Temp.	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **5** / 1 sec/step]
007	Plain: Low Temp.	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **0** / 1 sec/step]
008	Thick: Low Temp.	*ENG	
009	Middle Thick Constant Speed: Low Temp.	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **5** / 1 sec/step]

1911	**[Stand-by Recovery Rotation Speed]**		
	Selects the line speed for increasing the fusing temperature after recovery.		
001	Low Temp. Setting	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: Low Speed 1: Constant Speed (B222)/205 (B224)
002	Normal temp. Setting	*ENG	

1912	**[Capacitor Condition Display] Not used**		
001	Latest Capacity	*ENG	[0 to 150 / **45** / 1 F/step]

002	Current Voltage	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **0** / 0.01 V/step]
003	Charge Time	*ENG	[0 to 50000 / **0** / 10 ms/step]
004	Deterioration Counter	*ENG	[0 to 1000 / **0** / 1 /step]
005	Charge Current	*ENG	[5 to 15 / **10** / 0.1 A/step]

1913	**[Capacitor Discharge Stop Voltage Setting] Not used**		
001		*ENG	[10 to 25 / **20** / 1 V/step]

1914	**[Capacitor Deterioration Detection Condition] Not used**		
001	AC Input Voltage Display	*ENG	[0 to 150 / **100** / 1 V/step]
002	Deterioration Counter	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **30** / 1 /step]
003	AC Input Voltage	*ENG	[80 to 100 / **90** / 1 V/step]
004	Capacitor Capacity	*ENG	[20 to 130 / **35** / 1 F/step]

1915	**[After Ready Setting]**		
001	Correction Temp.: Plain: Reload	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **10** / 1 deg/step]
	Specifies the additional temperature for the target temperature of the plain paper for the first print mode. This temperature is added for the time specified with SP1915-002.		
002	Correction Time: Plain: Reload	*ENG	[0 to 60 / **20** / 1 sec/step]
	Specifies the time for adding the correction temperature (SP1915-001) for the first print mode.		
003	Correction Temp.: M-Thick: Reload	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **20** / 1 deg/step]

	Specifies the additional temperature for the target temperature of the middle thick paper for the first print mode. This temperature is added for the time specified with SP1915-004.		
004	Correction Time: M-Thick: Reload	*ENG	[0 to 60 / **20** / 1 sec/step]
	Specifies the time for adding the correction temperature (SP1915-003) for the first print mode.		
005	Correction Temp.: M-Thick: Normal	*ENG	[0 to 50 / **10** / 1 deg/step]
	Specifies the additional temperature for the target temperature of the middle thick paper at recovery from the stand-by mode. This temperature is added for the time specified with SP1915-006.		
006	Correction Time: M-Thick: Normal	*ENG	[0 to 60 / **20** / 1 sec/step]
	Specifies the time for adding the correction temperature (SP1915-005) at recovery from the stand-by mode.		

1916	**[CPM Down Setting]**		
001	Temp.: BW: M	*ENG	[100 to 200 / **B222: 135, B224: 140** / 1 deg/step]
	Not used		
002	Temp.: BW: L	*ENG	[100 to 200 / **B222: 140, B224: 145** / 1 deg/step]
	Not used		
003	Temp.: FC: M	*ENG	[100 to 200 / **B222: 135, B224: 140** / 1 deg/step]
	Not used		

004	Temp.: FC: L	*ENG	[100 to 200 / **B222: 140, B224: 145** / 1 deg/step]
	Not used		
005	ON/OFF: BW: M	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / -]
	Not used		
006	ON/OFF: BW: L	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / -]
	Not used		
007	ON/OFF: FC: M	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / -]
	Not used		
008	ON/OFF: FC: L	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / -]
	Not used		
009	Non Permissive Time: BW: M	*ENG	[0 to 180 / **0** / 1 sec/step]
	Not used		
010	Non Permissive Time: BW: L	*ENG	[0 to 180 / **0** / 1 sec/step]
	Not used		
011	Non Permissive Time: FC: M	*ENG	[0 to 180 / **0** / 1 sec/step]
	Not used		
012	Non Permissive Time: FC: L	*ENG	[0 to 180 / **0** / 1 sec/step]
	Not used		

013	CPM: BW: M	*ENG	[20 to 30 / **B222: 25, B224: 30** / 5 cpm/step]
	Not used		
014	CPM: BW: L	*ENG	[20 to 30 / **B222: 25, B224: 30** / 5 cpm/step]
	Not used		
015	CPM: FC: M	*ENG	[20 to 30 / **B222: 25, B224: 30** / 5 cpm/step]
	Not used		
016	CPM: FC: L	*ENG	[20 to 30 / **B222: 25, B224: 30** / 5 cpm/step]
	Not used		
017	O/V: Plain	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **20** / 1 deg/step]
	Specifies the offset temperature for plain paper for the CPM down threshold. CPM down threshold temperature for plain paper = Fusing temperature for plain paper (SP1-105-030, -032, -034, -036) – this offset value		
018	O/V: M-Thick: BK	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **25** / 1 deg/step]
	Specifies the offset temperature for middle thick paper in B/W mode for the CPM down threshold. CPM down threshold temperature for middle thick paper in B/W mode = Fusing temperature for middle thick paper in B/W mode (SP1-105-099, -101) – this offset value		

019	O/V: M-Thick: FC	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **10** / 1 deg/step]
	Specifies the offset temperature for middle thick paper in full color mode for thed CPM down threshold. CPM down threshold temperature for middle thick paper in full color mode = Fusing temperature for middle thick paper in full color mode (SP1-105-095, -097) – this offset value		
020	CPM Value: Plain	*ENG	[20 to 30 / **B222: 25, B224: 30** / 5 cpm/step]
	Adjusts the CPM for plain paper. This setting is activated only when the machine enters the CPM down mode. For details, refer to "CPM Down System" in the "Detailed Section Descriptions" section.		
021	CPM Value: M-Thick: BK	*ENG	[20 to 30 / **B222: 25, B224: 30** / 5 cpm/step]
	Adjusts the CPM for middle thick paper in B/W mode. This setting is activated only when the machine enters the CPM down mode. For details, refer to "CPM Down System" in the "Detailed Section Descriptions" section.		
022	CPM Value: M-Thick: FC	*ENG	[20 to 30 / **B222: 25, B224: 30** / 5 cpm/step]
	Adjusts the CPM for middle thick paper in full color mode. This setting is activated only when the machine enters the CPM down mode. For details, refer to "CPM Down System" in the "Detailed Section Descriptions" section.		
023	Operation Time	*ENG	[0 to 60 / **20** / 1 sec/step]
	Specifies the time for keeping CPM down mode. This SP is activated only for middle thick paper in full color mode.		

024	Low Temp.: CPM O/V Coeffiecient	*ENG	[0 to 10 / **5** / 5 cpm/step]
	Specifies the offset value for CPM down mode. This SP is activated only when the machine determines that input voltage is 93% or less (SP1-916-026) and ambient temperature is 17°C or less (SP1-112-001) using middle thick paper in full color mode.		
025	CPM Down Enable	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **B222: 0, B224: 1** / -] 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Enables or disables the CPM down mode.		
026	Voltage Target	*ENG	[80 to 120 / **93*** / 1%/step] *Only TAIWAN: **90**
	Specifies the threshold voltage for CPM down mode.		

1917	**[Magnetic Field Roller HP Detection]**		
001	Position Replacement	*ENG	[5 to 100 / **40** / 1 time/step]
	Specifies the limit times of the ferrite roller rotation for initializing the home position of the ferrite roller. After the ferrite roller rotates more than 40 times, the machine starts to find the home position of the ferrite roller.		
002	Continuous Feed Page	*ENG	[100 to 1000 / **500** / 10 sheets/step]
	Specifies the limit sheets of outputs for initializing the home position of the ferrite roller. When the outputs are more than 500 sheets of paper, the machine starts to find the home position of the ferrite roller.		

SP2-XXX (Drum)

2005	**[Charge DC Voltage]** Charge Roller DC Voltage Adjustment (Paper Type, Process Speed, Color) Paper Type –> Plain, Thick 1, Thick 2		
	Adjusts the DC component of the charge roller bias in the various print modes. Charge bias (DC component) is automatically adjusted during process control; therefore, adjusting these settings does not effect while process control mode (SP3-041-1 Default: ON) is activated. When deactivating process control mode with SP3-041-1, the values in these SP modes are used for printing.		
001	Plain: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 1000 / **690** / 10 –volts/step]
002	Plain: M	*ENG	
003	Plain: C	*ENG	
004	Plain: Y	*ENG	
005	Thick 1: Bk	*ENG	
006	Thick 1: M	*ENG	
007	Thick 1: C	*ENG	

008	Thick 1: Y	*ENG	
009	Thick 2&FINE: Bk	*ENG	
010	Thick 2&FINE: M	*ENG	
011	Thick 2&FINE: C	*ENG	
012	Thick 2&FINE: Y	*ENG	

2006	**[Charge AC Voltage]** Charge Roller AC Voltage Adjustment (Paper Type, Process Speed, Color) Paper Type –> Plain, Thick 1, Thick 2		
	Adjusts the AC component of the charge roller bias in the various print modes. Charge bias (AC component) is adjusted by environment correction (SP2-007-xxx to SP2-011-xxx). These SPs are activated only when SP2-012-1 is set to "1: manual control".		
001	Plain: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **2.1** / 0.01 KV/step]
002	Plain: M	*ENG	
003	Plain: C	*ENG	
004	Plain: Y	*ENG	
005	Thick 1: Bk	*ENG	
006	Thick 1: M	*ENG	
007	Thick 1: C	*ENG	
008	Thick 1: Y	*ENG	
009	Thick 2&FINE: Bk	*ENG	
010	Thick 2&FINE: M	*ENG	
011	Thick 2&FINE: C	*ENG	
012	Thick 2&FINE: Y	*ENG	

2007	**[Charge AC Current: LL]** Charge Roller AC Current Adjustment for LL (Color)		
	Displays/sets the AC current target of the charge roller for LL environment (Low temperature and Low humidity). **DFU**		
001	Environmental Target: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **B222: 1.24, B224: 1.64** / 0.01 mA/step]
002	Environmental Target: M	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **B222: 1.28, B224: 1.68** / 0.01 mA/step]
003	Environmental Target: C	*ENG	
004	Environmental Target: Y	*ENG	

2008	**[Charge AC Current: ML]** Charge Roller AC Current Adjustment for MM (Color)		
	Displays/sets the AC current target of the charge roller for ML environment (Meddle temperature and Low humidity). **DFU**		
001	Environmental Target: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **B222: 1.21, B224: 1.6** / 0.01 mA/step]
002	Environmental Target: M	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **B222: 1.25, B224: 1.65** / 0.01 mA/step]
003	Environmental Target: C	*ENG	
004	Environmental Target: Y	*ENG	

2009	**[Charge AC Current: MM]** Charge Roller AC Current Adjustment for MM (Color)		
	Displays/sets the AC current target of the charge roller for MM environment (Middle temperature and Middle humidity). **DFU**		
001	Environmental Target: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **B222: 1.16, B224: 1.53** / 0.01 mA/step]

002	Environmental Target: M	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **B222: 1.2, B224: 1.58** / 0.01 mA/step]
003	Environmental Target: C	*ENG	
004	Environmental Target: Y	*ENG	

2010	**[Charge AC Current: MH]** Charge Roller AC Current Adjustment for MH (Color)		
	Displays/sets the AC current target of the charge roller for MH environment (Middle temperature and High humidity). **DFU**		
001	Environmental Target: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **B222: 1.13, B224: 1.49** / 0.01 mA/step]
002	Environmental Target: M	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **B222: 1.15, B224: 1.52** / 0.01 mA/step]
003	Environmental Target: C	*ENG	
004	Environmental Target: Y	*ENG	

2011	**[Charge AC Current: HH]** Charge Roller AC Current Adjustment for HH (Color)		
	Displays/sets the AC current target of the charge roller for HH environment (High temperature and High humidity). **DFU**		
001	Environmental Target: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **B222: 1. 21, B224: 1.48** / 0.01 mA/step]
002	Environmental Target: M	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **B222: 1.14, B224: 1.5** / 0.01 mA/step]
003	Environmental Target: C	*ENG	
004	Environmental Target: Y	*ENG	

2012	**[Charge Output Control]**		
001	AC Voltage	*ENG	Selects the AC voltage control type. [0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step]

			0: Process control 1: Manual control (AC voltages are decided with SP2006.)

2013	**[Environmental Correction: PCU]**		
001	Current Environmental: Display	*ENG	Displays the environmental condition, which is measured in absolute humidity. [1 to 5 / **–** / 1 /step] 1: LL (LL <= 4.3 g/m^3) 2: ML (4.3 < ML <= 11.3 g/m^3) 3: MM (11.3 < MM <= 18.0 g/m^3) 4: MH (18.0 < MH <= 24.0 g/m^3) 5: HH (24.0 g/m^3 < HH)
002	Forced Setting	*ENG	Selects the environmental condition manually. [0 to 5 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: The environmental condition is determined automatically. 1: LL, 2: ML, 3: MM, 4: MH, 5: HH
003	Absolute Humidity: Threshold 1	*ENG	Changes the humidity threshold between LL and ML. [0 to 100 / **4.3** / 0.01 g/m^3/step]
004	Absolute Humidity: Threshold 2	*ENG	Changes the humidity threshold between ML and MM. [0 to 100 / **11.3** / 0.01 g/m^3/step]
005	Absolute Humidity: Threshold 3	*ENG	Changes the humidity threshold between MM and MH. [0 to 100 / **18.0** / 0.01 g/m^3/step]
006	Absolute Humidity: Threshold 4	*ENG	Changes the humidity threshold between MH and HH. [0 to 100 / **24.0** / 0.01 g/m^3/step]

007	Current Temp.: Display	*ENG	Displays the current temperature. [0 to 100 / – / 1°C/step]
008	Current Relative Humidity: Display	*ENG	Displays the current relative humidity. [0 to 100 / – / 1%RH/step]
009	Current Absolute Humidity: Display	*ENG	Displays the absolute humidity. [0 to 100 / – / 0.01 g/m^3/step]
010	Previous Environmental: Display	*ENG	Displays the previous environmental condition, which is measured in absolute humidity. [1 to 5 / **–** / 1 /step] 1: LL, 2: ML, 3: MM, 4: MH, 5: HH
011	Previous Temp.: Display	*ENG	Displays the previous temperature. [0 to 100 / – / 1°C/step]
012	Previous Relative Humidity: Display	*ENG	Displays the previous relative humidity. [0 to 100 / – / 1%RH/step]
013	Previous Absolute Humidity: Display	*ENG	Displays the previous absolute humidity. [0 to 100 / – / 0.01 g/m^3/step]

2101	**[Color Registration Correction] FA**		
	These values are the parameters for the automatic line position adjustment and are adjusted at the factory. However, you must input a value for SP2101-001 after replacing the laser optics housing unit. For details, see 3.6.2 "Laser Optics Housing Unit"" in the "Replacement and Adjustment" section. The value should be provided with the new laser optics housing unit.		
001	Main Dot: Bk	*ENG	[–512 to 511 / **0** / 1 dot/step]
002	Main Dot: M	*ENG	
003	Main Dot: C	*ENG	
004	Main Dot: Y	*ENG	
005	Sub Line: Bk	*ENG	[–16384 to 16383 / **0** / 1 line/step]

006	Sub Line: M	*ENG	
007	Sub Line: C	*ENG	
008	Sub Line: Y	*ENG	

2102	**[Magnification Adjustment] DFU**		
001	Main Mag.: High Speed: Bk	*ENG	These are results of the main scan length adjustment. [0 to 560 / **280** / 1 /step]
002	Main Mag.: Medium Speed: Bk	*ENG	
003	Main Mag.: Low Speed: Bk	*ENG	
004	Main Mag.: High Speed: M	*ENG	
005	Main Mag.: Medium Speed: M	*ENG	
006	Main Mag.: Low Speed: M	*ENG	
007	Main Mag.: High Speed: C	*ENG	
008	Main Mag.: Medium Speed: C	*ENG	
009	Main Mag.: Low Speed: C	*ENG	
010	Main Mag.: High Speed: Y	*ENG	
011	Main Mag.: Medium Speed: Y	*ENG	
012	Main Mag.: Low Speed: Y	*ENG	

2103	**[Erase Margin Adjustment]** (Area, Paper Size)		
	Adjusts the erase margin by deleting image data at the margins.		
001	Lead Edge Width	*ENG	[0 to 9.9 / **4.2** / 0.1 mm/step]
002	Trail. Edge Width	*ENG	
003	Left	*ENG	[0 to 9.9 / **2** / 0.1 mm/step]
004	Right	*ENG	
005	Lead Edge Width: Thin	*ENG	[0 to 9.9 / **5** / 0.1 mm/step]
006	Duplex Trail. L Size	*ENG	[0 to 9.9 / **1** / 0.1 mm/step]
007	Duplex Trail. M Size	*ENG	[0 to 4 / **0.8** / 0.1 mm/step]
008	Duplex Trail. S Size	*ENG	[0 to 4 / **0.6** / 0.1 mm/step]
009	Duplex Left Edge	*ENG	[0 to 1.5 / **0.3** / 0.1 mm/step]
010	Duplex Right Edge	*ENG	

2105	**[LD Power Adj.]** (Process Speed, Color)		
	Adjusts the LD power of each color for each process speed. Each LD power setting is decided by process control. High Speed: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Middle Speed: 111 mm/sec, Low Speed: 77 mm/sec		
001	High Speed: Bk	*ENG	[50 to 120 / **100** / 1%/step] Decreasing a value makes lines thinner on the output. Increasing a value makes lines thicker on the output.
002	High Speed: M	*ENG	
003	High Speed: C	*ENG	
004	High Speed: Y	*ENG	
005	Middle Speed: Bk	*ENG	
006	Middle Speed: M	*ENG	

007	Middle Speed: C	*ENG	
008	Middle Speed: Y	*ENG	
009	Low Speed: Bk	*ENG	
010	Low Speed: M	*ENG	
011	Low Speed: C	*ENG	
012	Low Speed: Y	*ENG	

2106	**[Polygon Rotation Time]**		
	Adjusts the time of the polygon motor rotation. **DFU**		
001	Warming-Up	*ENG	[0 to 60 / **10** / 1 sec/step]
002	Job End	*ENG	

2107	**[Image Parameter]**		
	DFU		
001	Image Gamma Flag	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1 /step]
002	Shading Correction Flag	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1 /step]

2109	**[Test Pattern]**		
	Generates the test pattern using "COPY Window" tab in the LCD.		
003	Pattern Selection	-	[0 to 23 / **0** / 1/step] 0 None 1: 1-dot line pattern (Vertical) 2: 2-dot line pattern (Vertical) 3: 1-dot line pattern (Horizontal) 4: 2-dot line pattern (Horizontal) 5: 1-dot grid pattern (Vertical) 6: 1-dot grid pattern (Horizontal)

			7: 1-dot grid pattern (Fine) 8: 1-dot grid pattern (Rough) 9: 1-dot slant pattern (Fine) 10: 1-dot slant pattern (Rough) 11. 1-dot pattern 12. 2-dot pattern 13. 4-dot pattern 14. 1-dot trimming pattern 15: Cross stitch: sub-scan 16: Cross stitch: main-scan 17: Belt pattern (Horizontal) 18: Belt pattern (Vertical) 19: Checkered flag 20: Gray scale (Vertical) 21: Gray scale (Horizontal) 22: Dual beams density pattern 23: Solid
005	Color Selection	-	Specifies the color for the test pattern. [1 to 4 / **1** / 1/step] 1: All colors, 2: Magenta, 3: Yellow, 4: Cyan
006	Density: Bk	-	Specifies the color density for the test pattern. [0 to 15 / **15** / 1 /step] 0: Lightest density 15: Darkest density
007	Density: M	-	
008	Density: C	-	
009	Density: Y	-	

2111	[Forced Line Position Adj.]		
001	Mode a	-	Executes the fine line position adjustment twice. If this SP is not completed (NG is displayed), do SP2111-003 first and then try this SP again.
002	Mode b	-	Executes the fine line position adjustment once. If this SP is not completed, do SP2111-003 first and then try this SP again.
003	Mode c	-	Executes the rough line position adjustment once. After doing this SP, make sure to execute SP2111-001 or -002. Otherwise, the line position adjustment is not perfectly done.

2112	**[TM/ID Sensor Check]** ID Sensor Check **FA**		
001	Execute		This SP is used to check the ID sensors at the factory. The results of this SP are displayed in SP2140 to SP2145.

2117	**[Skew Adjustment]**		
	Specifies a skew adjustment value for the skew motor M, C or Y. These SPs must be used when a new laser optics housing unit is installed or when SC285 occurs. For details, see "p.3-36 "Laser Optics Housing Unit"" in the "Replacement and Adjustment" section.		
001	Pulse: M	*ENG	[–50 to 50 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]
002	Pulse: C	*ENG	
003	Pulse: Y	*ENG	

2118	[Skew Adjustment]		
001	Pulse: M	*ENG	Changes the current skew adjustment values to the values specified with SP2117. These SPs must be used when a new laser optics housing unit is installed or when SC285 occurs. For details, see "p.3-36 "Laser Optics Housing Unit"" in the "Replacement and Adjustment" section.
002	Pulse: C	*ENG	
003	Pulse: Y	*ENG	

2119	[Skew Adjustment Display]		
	Displays the current skew adjustment value for each skew motor.		
001	M	*ENG	[–50 to 50 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]
002	C	*ENG	
003	Y	*ENG	

2140	[ID Sensor Check Result] DFU		
	Displays the results of the ID sensor check. Bk, M, C, Y: ID sensors for the process control Front, Center, Rear: ID sensors for the automatic line position adjustment		
001	Bk	*ENG	[0 to 1024 / **-** / 1/step]
002	M	*ENG	
003	C	*ENG	
004	Y	*ENG	
005	Front	*ENG	
006	Center	*ENG	
007	Rear	*ENG	

2141	**[ID Sensor Check Result: Ave.] DFU**		
	Displays the average result values of the ID sensor check. Bk, M, C, Y: ID sensors for the process control Front, Center, Rear: ID sensors for the automatic line position adjustment		
001	Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5.5 / **0** / 0.01V/step]
002	M	*ENG	
003	C	*ENG	
004	Y	*ENG	
005	Front	*ENG	
006	Center	*ENG	
007	Rear	*ENG	

2142	**[ID Sensor Check Result] DFU**		
	Displays the maximum result values of the ID sensor check. Bk, M, C, Y: ID sensors for the process control Front, Center, Rear: ID sensors for the automatic line position adjustment		
001	Maximum: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5.5 / **0** / 0.01V/step]
002	Maximum: M	*ENG	
003	Maximum: C	*ENG	
004	Maximum: Y	*ENG	
005	Maximum: Front	*ENG	
006	Maximum: Center	*ENG	
007	Maximum: Rear	*ENG	

2143	**[ID Sensor Check Result] DFU**		
	Displays the minimum result values of the ID sensor check. Bk, M, C, Y: ID sensors for the process control Front, Center, Rear: ID sensors for the automatic line position adjustment		
001	Minimum: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5.5 / **0** / 0.01V/step]
002	Minimum: M	*ENG	
003	Minimum: C	*ENG	
004	Minimum: Y	*ENG	
005	Minimum: Front	*ENG	
006	Minimum: Center	*ENG	
007	Minimum: Rear	*ENG	

2144	**[ID Sensor Check Result] DFU**		
	Displays the maximum result 2 values of the ID sensor check. Bk, M, C, Y: ID sensors for the process control Front, Center, Rear: ID sensors for the automatic line position adjustment		
001	Maximum 2: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5.5 / **0** / 0.01V/step]
002	Maximum 2: M	*ENG	
003	Maximum 2: C	*ENG	
004	Maximum 2: Y	*ENG	
005	Maximum 2: Front	*ENG	
006	Maximum 2: Center	*ENG	
007	Maximum 2: Rear	*ENG	

2145	**[ID Sensor Check Result] DFU**		
	Displays the minimum result 2 values of the ID sensor check. Bk, M, C, Y: ID sensors for the process control Front, Center, Rear: ID sensors for the automatic line position adjustment		
001	Minimum 2: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5.5 / **0** / 0.01V/step]
002	Minimum 2: M	*ENG	
003	Minimum 2: C	*ENG	
004	Minimum 2: Y	*ENG	
005	Minimum 2: Front	*ENG	
006	Minimum 2: Center	*ENG	
007	Minimum 2: Rear	*ENG	

2150	**[Area Mag. Correction]** LD Pulse Area Correction (Color, Area) **FA**		
	Adjusts the magnification for each area. The main scan (297 mm) is divided into 8 areas. Area 1 is at the front side of the machine (left side of the image) and area 8 is at the rear side of the machine (right side of the image). Decreasing a value makes the image shift to the left side on the print. Increasing a value makes the image shift to the right side on the print. 1 pulse = 1/16 dot		
027	Area0: Bk	*ENG	**DFU**
028	Area1: Bk	*ENG	Adjusts the area magnification for LD 0. [–256 to 255 / **0** / 1 sub-dot/step]
029	Area2: Bk	*ENG	
030	Area3: Bk	*ENG	
031	Area4: Bk	*ENG	
032	Area5: Bk	*ENG	

033	Area6: Bk	*ENG	
034	Area7: Bk	*ENG	
035	Area8: Bk	*ENG	
036	Area9: Bk	*ENG	Not used
037	Area10: Bk	*ENG	
038	Area11: Bk	*ENG	
039	Area12: Bk	*ENG	
040	Area0: Bk	*ENG	Not used
041	Area1: Bk	*ENG	Adjusts the area magnification for LD 1. [–256 to 255 / **0** / 1 sub-dot/step]
042	Area2: Bk	*ENG	
043	Area3: Bk	*ENG	
044	Area4: Bk	*ENG	
045	Area5: Bk	*ENG	
046	Area6: Bk	*ENG	
047	Area7: Bk	*ENG	
048	Area8: Bk	*ENG	
049	Area9: Bk	*ENG	Not used
050	Area10: Bk	*ENG	
051	Area11: Bk	*ENG	
052	Area12: Bk	*ENG	
079	Area0: M	*ENG	Not used
080	Area1: M	*ENG	Adjusts the area magnification for LD 0. [–256 to 255 / **0** / 1 sub-dot/step]
081	Area2: M	*ENG	

082	Area3: M	*ENG	
083	Area4: M	*ENG	
084	Area5: M	*ENG	
085	Area6: M	*ENG	
086	Area7: M	*ENG	
087	Area8: M	*ENG	
088	Area9: M	*ENG	Not used
089	Area10: M	*ENG	
090	Area11: M	*ENG	
091	Area12: M	*ENG	
092	Area0: M	*ENG	Not used
093	Area1: M	*ENG	Adjusts the area magnification for LD 1. [–256 to 255 / **0** / 1 sub-dot/step]
094	Area2: M	*ENG	
095	Area3: M	*ENG	
096	Area4: M	*ENG	
097	Area5: M	*ENG	
098	Area6: M	*ENG	
099	Area7: M	*ENG	
100	Area8: M	*ENG	
101	Area9: M	*ENG	Not used
102	Area10: M	*ENG	
103	Area11: M	*ENG	
104	Area12: M	*ENG	

131	Area0: C	*ENG	Not used
132	Area1: C	*ENG	Adjusts the area magnification for LD 0. [–256 to 255 / **0** / 1 sub-dot/step]
133	Area2: C	*ENG	
134	Area3: C	*ENG	
135	Area4: C	*ENG	
136	Area5: C	*ENG	
137	Area6: C	*ENG	
138	Area7: C	*ENG	
139	Area8: C	*ENG	
140	Area9: C	*ENG	Not used
141	Area10: C	*ENG	
142	Area11: C	*ENG	
143	Area12: C	*ENG	
144	Area0: C	*ENG	Not used
145	Area1: C	*ENG	Adjusts the area magnification for LD 1. [–256 to 255 / **0** / 1 sub-dot/step]
146	Area2: C	*ENG	
147	Area3: C	*ENG	
148	Area4: C	*ENG	
149	Area5: C	*ENG	
150	Area6: C	*ENG	
151	Area7: C	*ENG	
152	Area8: C	*ENG	
153	Area9: C	*ENG	Not used

154	Area10: C	*ENG	
155	Area11: C	*ENG	
156	Area12: C	*ENG	
183	Area0: Y	*ENG	Not used
184	Area1: Y	*ENG	Adjusts the area magnification for LD 0. [–256 to 255 / **0** / 1 sub-dot/step]
185	Area2: Y	*ENG	
186	Area3: Y	*ENG	
187	Area4: Y	*ENG	
188	Area5: Y	*ENG	
189	Area6: Y	*ENG	
190	Area7: Y	*ENG	
191	Area8: Y	*ENG	
192	Area9: Y	*ENG	Not used
193	Area10: Y	*ENG	
194	Area11: Y	*ENG	
195	Area12: Y	*ENG	
196	Area0: Y	*ENG	Not used
197	Area1: Y	*ENG	Adjusts the area magnification for LD 0. [–256 to 255 / **0** / 1 sub-dot/step]
198	Area2: Y	*ENG	
199	Area3: Y	*ENG	
200	Area4: Y	*ENG	
201	Area5: Y	*ENG	
202	Area6: Y	*ENG	

203	Area7: Y	*ENG	
204	Area8: Y	*ENG	
205	Area9: Y	*ENG	Not used
206	Area10: Y	*ENG	
207	Area11: Y	*ENG	
208	Area12: Y	*ENG	

2152	**[Area Shad. Correct. Setting] FA**		
	Adjusts the area correction value for each LD power. The main scan is divided into 16 areas. However, the image areas are limited from area 1 to area 14. For BK and Magenta, area 1 is at the rear side of the machine (left side of the image) and area 14 is at the front side of the machine (right side of the image). For Cyan and Yellow, area 1 is at the front side of the machine (right side of the image) and area 14 is at the rear side of the machine (left side of the image).		
001	Area 0: Bk	*ENG	This is for the synchronizing detection board.
002	Area 1: Bk	*ENG	[50 to 150 / **100** / 1 %/step]
003	Area 2: Bk	*ENG	
004	Area 3: Bk	*ENG	
005	Area 4: Bk	*ENG	
006	Area 5: Bk	*ENG	
007	Area 6: Bk	*ENG	
008	Area 7: Bk	*ENG	
009	Area 8: Bk	*ENG	
010	Area 9: Bk	*ENG	

011	Area 10: Bk	*ENG	
012	Area 11: Bk	*ENG	
013	Area 12: Bk	*ENG	
014	Area 13: Bk	*ENG	
015	Area 14: Bk	*ENG	
016	Area 15: Bk	*ENG	This is out of the image area.
033	Area 0: M	*ENG	This is for the synchronizing detection board.
034	Area 1: M	*ENG	[50 to 150 / **100** / 1 %/step]
035	Area 2: M	*ENG	
036	Area 3: M	*ENG	
037	Area 4: M	*ENG	
038	Area 5: M	*ENG	
039	Area 6: M	*ENG	
040	Area 7: M	*ENG	
041	Area 8: M	*ENG	
042	Area 9: M	*ENG	
043	Area 10: M	*ENG	
044	Area 11: M	*ENG	
045	Area 12: M	*ENG	
046	Area 13: M	*ENG	
047	Area 14: M	*ENG	
048	Area 15: M	*ENG	This is out of the image area.
065	Area 0: C	*ENG	This is for the synchronizing detection

			board.
066	Area 1: C	*ENG	[50 to 150 / **100** / 1 %/step]
067	Area 2: C	*ENG	
068	Area 3: C	*ENG	
069	Area 4: C	*ENG	
070	Area 5: C	*ENG	
071	Area 6: C	*ENG	
072	Area 7: C	*ENG	
073	Area 8: C	*ENG	
074	Area 9: C	*ENG	
075	Area 10: C	*ENG	
076	Area 11: C	*ENG	
077	Area 12: C	*ENG	
078	Area 13: C	*ENG	
079	Area 14: C	*ENG	
080	Area 15: C	*ENG	This is out of the image area.
097	Area 0: Y	*ENG	This is for the synchronizing detection board.
098	Area 1: Y	*ENG	[50 to 150 / **100** / 1 %/step]
099	Area 2: Y	*ENG	
100	Area 3: Y	*ENG	
101	Area 4: Y	*ENG	
102	Area 5: Y	*ENG	
103	Area 6: Y	*ENG	

104	Area 7: Y	*ENG	
105	Area 8: Y	*ENG	
106	Area 9: Y	*ENG	
107	Area 10: Y	*ENG	
108	Area 11: Y	*ENG	
109	Area 12: Y	*ENG	
110	Area 13: Y	*ENG	
111	Area 14: Y	*ENG	
112	Area 15: Y	*ENG	This is out of the image area.

2180	**[Line Position Adj. Setting Clear]**		
001	Color Regist	-	**DFU**
002	Main Scan Length Detection	-	**DFU**
003	MUSIC Result	-	**DFU**
004	Area Magnification Correction	-	**DFU**

2181	**[Line Position Adj. Result]**
	Displays the values for each correction. ▪ "Paper Int. Mag: Subdot" indicates the magnification correction value between two sheets of paper. ▪ "Mag.Cor. Subdot" indicates the magnification correction value. ▪ "M. Scan Erro." indicates the shift correction value in the main scan direction. ▪ "S. Scan Erro." Indicates the shift correction value in the sub scan direction.

	▪ "M. Cor.: Dot" indicates the dot correction value in the main scan direction. ▪ "M. Cor.: Subdot" indicates the sub dot correction value in the main scan direction.		
001	Paper Int. Mag: Subdot: Bk	*ENG	[–32768 to 32767 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]
002	Mag.Cor. Subdot: Bk	*ENG	[–32768 to 32767 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]
003	Skew: M	*ENG	[–5000 to 5000 / **0** / 0.001 um/step]
004	Bent: M	*ENG	
005	M. Scan Erro.: Left: M	*ENG	[–5000 to 5000 / **0** / 0.001 um/step]
006	M. Scan Erro.: Center: M	*ENG	
007	M. Scan Erro.: Right: M	*ENG	
008	S. Scan Erro.: Left: M	*ENG	
009	S. Scan Erro.: Center: M	*ENG	
010	S. Scan Erro.: Right: M	*ENG	
011	M. Cor.: Dot: M	*ENG	[–512 to 511 / **0** / 1 dot/step]
012	M. Cor.: Subdot: M	*ENG	
013	Paper Int. Mag: Subdot: M	*ENG	[–32768 to 32767 / 0 / 1 pulse/step]
014	Mag.Cor. Subdot: M	*ENG	
015	M. Left Mag.: Subdot: M	*ENG	
016	M. Right Mag.: Subdot: M	*ENG	
017	S. Cor.: 600 Line: M	*ENG	[–16384 to 16383 / **0** / 1 line/step]
018	S. Cor.: 600 Sub: M	*ENG	[–1 to 1 / **0** / 0.001 line/step]
019	S. Cor.: 1200 Line: M	*ENG	[–16384 to 16383 / **0** / 1 line/step]
020	S. Cor.: 1200 Sub: M	*ENG	[–1 to 1 / **0** / 0.001 line/step]

021	Skew: C	*ENG	[–5000 to 5000 / **0** / 0.001 um/step]
022	Bent: C	*ENG	
023	M. Scan Erro.: Left: C	*ENG	[–5000 to 5000 / **0** / 0.001 um/step]
024	M. Scan Erro.: Center: C	*ENG	
025	M. Scan Erro.: Right: C	*ENG	
026	S. Scan Erro.: Left: C	*ENG	[–5000 to 5000 / **0** / 0.001 um/step]
027	S. Scan Erro.: Center: C	*ENG	
028	S. Scan Erro.: Right: C	*ENG	
029	M. Cor.: Dot: C	*ENG	[–512 to 511 / **0** / 1 dot/step]
030	M. Cor.: Subdot: C	*ENG	[–15 to 15 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]
031	Paper Int. Mag: Subdot: C	*ENG	[–32768 to 32767 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]
032	Mag.Cor. Subdot: C	*ENG	
033	M. Left Mag.: Subdot: C	*ENG	
034	M. Right Mag.: Subdot: C	*ENG	
035	S. Cor.: 600 Line: C	*ENG	[–16384 to 16383 / **0** / 1 line/step]
036	S. Cor.: 600 Sub: C	*ENG	[–1 to 1 / **0** / 0.001 line/step]
037	S. Cor.: 1200 Line: C	*ENG	[–16384 to 16383 / **0** / 1 line/step]
038	S. Cor.: 1200 Sub: C	*ENG	[–1 to 1 / **0** / 0.001 line/step]
039	Skew: Y	*ENG	[–5000 to 5000 / **0** / 0.001 um/step]
040	Bent: Y	*ENG	
041	M. Scan Erro.: Left: Y	*ENG	[–5000 to 5000 / **0** / 0.001 um/step]
042	M. Scan Erro.: Center: Y	*ENG	
043	M. Scan Erro.: Right: Y	*ENG	

044	S. Scan Erro.: Left: Y	*ENG	[–5000 to 5000 / **0** / 0.001 um/step]
045	S. Scan Erro.: Center: Y	*ENG	
046	S. Scan Erro.: Right: Y	*ENG	
047	M. Cor.: Dot: Y	*ENG	[–512 to 511 / **0** / 1 dot/step]
048	M. Cor.: Subdot: Y	*ENG	[–15 to 15 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]
049	Paper Int. Mag: Subdot: Y	*ENG	[–32768 to 32767 / **0** / 1 dot/step]
050	Mag.Cor. Subdot: Y	*ENG	
051	M. Left Mag.: Subdot: Y	*ENG	
052	M. Right Mag.: Subdot: Y	*ENG	
053	S. Cor.: 600 Line: Y	*ENG	[–16384 to 16383 / **0** / 1 line/step]
054	S. Cor.: 600 Sub: Y	*ENG	[–1 to 1 / **0** / 0.001 line/step]
055	S. Cor.: 1200 Line: Y	*ENG	[–16384 to 16383 / **0** / 1 line/step]
056	S. Cor.: 1200 Sub: Y	*ENG	[–1 to 1 / **0** / 0.001 line/step]

2182	**[Line Position Adj. Offset]** (Color) M. Scan: Main scan, S. Scan: Sub-scan High: 154 (B222)/ 205 (B224) mm/sec, Medium: 115 mm/sec, Low: 77 mm/sec		
001	M Magnification	*ENG	Adjusts the line position manually. [-1 to 1 / **0** / 0.001%/step] When line shifts are not corrected by the automatic line position adjustment, do this SP. Increasing a value reduces the image in the main scan direction. Decreasing a value enlarges the image in the main scan direction.
002	C Magnification	*ENG	
003	Y Magnification	*ENG	
004-021	Adjusts the main scan registration for each color and speed.		

	Decreasing a value makes the image shift to the left side on the print. Increasing a value makes the image shift to the right side on the print. 1 dot = 21μm, 1 pulse = 1.3μm Dot: Rough adjustment, Subdot: Fine adjustment. Adjust 'dot' first, then adjust 'subdot'.		
004	M. Scan: High: Dot: M	*ENG	[-512 to 512 / **0** / 1 dot/step]
005	M. Scan: High: Subdot: M	*ENG	[-15 to 15 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]
006	M. Scan: Medium: Dot: M	*ENG	[-512 to 512 / **0** / 1 dot/step]
007	M. Scan: Medium: Subdot: M	*ENG	[-15 to 15 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]
008	M. Scan: Low: Dot: M	*ENG	[-512 to 512 / **0** / 1 dot/step]
009	M. Scan: Low: Subdot: M	*ENG	[-15 to 15 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]
010	M. Scan: High: Dot: C	*ENG	[-512 to 512 / **0** / 1 dot/step]
011	M. Scan: High: Subdot: C	*ENG	[-15 to 15 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]
012	M. Scan: Medium: Dot: C	*ENG	[-512 to 512 / **0** / 1 dot/step]
013	M. Scan: Medium: Subdot: C	*ENG	[-15 to 15 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]
014	M. Scan: Low: Dot: C	*ENG	[-512 to 512 / **0** / 1 dot/step]
015	M. Scan: Low: Subdot: C	*ENG	[-15 to 15 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]
016	M. Scan: High: Dot: Y	*ENG	[-512 to 512 / **0** / 1 dot/step]
017	M. Scan: High: Subdot: Y	*ENG	[-15 to 15 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]
018	M. Scan: Medium: Dot: Y	*ENG	[-512 to 512 / **0** / 1 dot/step]
019	M. Scan: Medium: Subdot: Y	*ENG	[-15 to 15 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]
020	M. Scan: Low: Dot: Y	*ENG	[-512 to 512 / **0** / 1 dot/step]
021	M. Scan: Low: Subdot: Y	*ENG	[-15 to 15 / **0** / 1 pulse/step]

022-039	Adjusts the sub-scan registration for each color and speed. Decreasing a value makes the image shift to the leading edge side on the print. Increasing a value makes the image shift to the trailing edge side on the print. 1 line = 42μm		
022	S. Scan: High: Line: M	*ENG	[-16384 to 16384 / **0** / 1 line/step]
023	S. Scan: High: Subline: M	*ENG	[–1 to 1 / **0** / 0.001 /line]
024	S. Scan: Medium: Line: M	*ENG	[-16384 to 16384 / **0** / 1 line/step]
025	S. Scan: Medium: Subline: M	*ENG	[–1 to 1 / **0** / 0.001 /line]
026	S. Scan: Low: Line: M	*ENG	[-16384 to 16384 / **0** / 1 line/step]
027	S. Scan: Low: Subline: M	*ENG	Not used
028	S. Scan: High: Line: C	*ENG	[-16384 to 16384 / **0** / 1 line/step]
029	S. Scan: High: Subline: C	*ENG	[–1 to 1 / **0** / 0.001 /line]
030	S. Scan: Medium: Line: C	*ENG	[-16384 to 16384 / **0** / 1 line/step]
031	S. Scan: Medium: Subline: C	*ENG	[–1 to 1 / **0** / 0.001 /line]
032	S. Scan: Low: Line: C	*ENG	[-16384 to 16384 / **0** / 1 line/step]
033	S. Scan: Low: Subline: C	*ENG	Not used
034	S. Scan: High: Line: Y	*ENG	[-16384 to 16384 / **0** / 1 line/step]
035	S. Scan: High: Subline: Y	*ENG	[–1 to 1 / **0** / 0.001 /line]
036	S. Scan: Medium: Line: Y	*ENG	[-16384 to 16384 / **0** / 1 line/step]
037	S. Scan: Medium: Subline: Y	*ENG	[–1 to 1 / **0** / 0.001 /line]
038	S. Scan: Low: Line: Y	*ENG	[-16384 to 16384 / **0** / 1 line/step]
039	S. Scan: Low: Subline: Y	*ENG	Not used

2183	[Main Scan Length Detection] DFU		
001	Execute: High: Bk	-	Executes the adjustment for the main scan length detection manually.
002	Execute: Medium: Bk	-	
003	Execute: Low: Bk	-	
004	Execute: High: M	-	
005	Execute: Medium: M	-	
006	Execute: Low: M	-	
007	Execute: High: C	-	
008	Execute: Medium: C	-	
009	Execute: Low: C	-	
010	Execute: High: Y	-	
011	Execute: Medium: Y	-	
012	Execute: Low: Y	-	

2184	[Main Scan Length Detection Target] DFU		
001	Execute: Bk	-	Executes the target value for the main scan length detection.
002	Execute: M	-	
003	Execute: C	-	
004	Execute: Y	-	

2185	[Main Scan Length Detection Disp.]
	Displays/adjusts the target value for the main scan magnification correction of the line position adjustment. After replacing the laser optics housing unit, input the standard value for Bk provided with the new unit. For details, see "p.3-36 "Laser Optics Housing

	Unit"" in the "Replacement Adjustment" section. It is not necessary to input the values for the other colors; these are automatically adjusted after doing the line position adjustment.		
001	Bk	*ENG	[0 to 266667 / **249449** / 1 sub-dot/step]
002	M	*ENG	**DFU**
003	C	*ENG	
004	Y	*ENG	

2186	**[Main Scan Length Detection] DFU**		
001	Selection	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1/step] 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Enables or disables the main scan length detection for the laser.		
002	Paper Interval	*ENG	[0 to 999 / **1** / 1 sec/step]
	Adjusts the interval of the main scan length detection for the laser.		
003	Freq. Selection	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: D-phase, 1: D-phase and PLL
	Selects the correction method of the main scan length detection for the laser.		
004	Freq. Threshold	*ENG	Not used

2190	**[Line Position Adj.]**		
001	Paper Int. Mag.: Subdot: Bk	*ENG	**DFU**
002	Paper Int. Mag.: Subdot: M	*ENG	
003	Paper Int. Mag.: Subdot: C	*ENG	

004	Paper Int. Mag.: Subdot: Y	*ENG	
005	M. Scan Mag.: Subdot: M	*ENG	**DFU** [0 or 1 / **1** / 1/step] 0: Disable correction, 1: Enable correction
006	M. Scan Mag.: Subdot: C	*ENG	
007	M. Scan Mag.: Subdot: Y	*ENG	
008	Area Mag.: Subdot: M	*ENG	**DFU**
009	Area Mag.: Subdot: C	*ENG	
010	Area Mag.: Subdot: Y	*ENG	
011	S. Scan Cor. Setting	*ENG	**DFU** [0 or 1 / **1** / 1/step] 0: Adjusted with Bk 1: Adjusted in minimum shift among four colors
012	1 Line Shift Control	*ENG	**DFU**

2191	**[MUSIC Coefficient Setting]** Line Position Adjustment: Coefficient Setting **DFU** ch 0: ID sensor at rear, ch 1: ID sensor at center, ch 2: ID sensor at front		
001	ch 0: Filter: Front: a1	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **125869** / 1 bit/step]
002	ch 0: Filter: Front: a2	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **–60488** / 1 bit/step]
003	ch 0: Filter: Front: b0	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **39** / 1 bit/step]
004	ch 0: Filter: Front: b1	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **77** / 1 bit/step]
005	ch 0: Filter: Front: b2	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **39** / 1 bit/step]
006	ch 0: Filter: Rear: a1	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **128596** / 1 bit/step]
007	ch 0: Filter: Rear: a2	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **–63398** / 1 bit/step]
008	ch 0: Filter: Rear: b0	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **84** / 1 bit/step]

009	ch 0: Filter: Rear: b1	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **168** / 1 bit/step]
010	ch 0: Filter: Rear: b2	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **84** / 1 bit/step]
011	ch 1: Filter: Front: a1	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **125869** / 1 bit/step]
012	ch 1: Filter: Front: a2	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **–60488** / 1 bit/step]
013	ch 1: Filter: Front: b0	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **39** / 1 bit/step]
014	ch 1: Filter: Front: b1	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **77** / 1 bit/step]
015	ch 1: Filter: Front: b2	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **39** / 1 bit/step]
016	ch 1: Filter: Rear: a1	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **128596** / 1 bit/step]
017	ch 1: Filter: Rear: a2	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **–63398** / 1 bit/step]
018	ch 1: Filter: Rear: b0	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **84** / 1 bit/step]
019	ch 1: Filter: Rear: b1	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **168** / 1 bit/step]
020	ch 1: Filter: Rear: b2	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **84** / 1 bit/step]
021	ch 2: Filter: Front: a1	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **125869** / 1 bit/step]
022	ch 2: Filter: Front: a2	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **–60488** / 1 bit/step]
023	ch 2: Filter: Front: b0	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **39** / 1 bit/step]
024	ch 2: Filter: Front: b1	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **77** / 1 bit/step]
025	ch 2: Filter: Front: b2	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **39** / 1 bit/step]
026	ch 2: Filter: Rear: a1	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **128596** / 1 bit/step]
027	ch 2: Filter: Rear: a2	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **–63398** / 1 bit/step]
028	ch 2: Filter: Rear: b0	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **84** / 1 bit/step]
029	ch 2: Filter: Rear: b1	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **168** / 1 bit/step]
030	ch 2: Filter: Rear: b2	*ENG	[–131071 to 131071 / **84** / 1 bit/step]
031	Q Format Selection	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **3** / 1/step]

2192	**[MUSIC Threshold Setting]** Line Position Adjustment: Threshold Setting **DFU** ch 0: ID sensor at rear, ch 1: ID sensor at center, ch 2: ID sensor at front		
001	ch 0: 1st	*ENG	[0.5 to 3 / **1.3** / 0.1 V/step]
002	ch 0: 2nd	*ENG	
003	ch 0: 3rd	*ENG	
004	ch 0: 4th	*ENG	
005	ch 1: 1st	*ENG	[0.5 to 3 / **1.3** / 0.1 V/step]
006	ch 1: 2nd	*ENG	
007	ch 1: 3rd	*ENG	
008	ch 1: 4th	*ENG	
009	ch 2: 1st	*ENG	[0.5 to 3 / **1.3** / 0.1 V/step]
010	ch 2: 2nd	*ENG	
011	ch 2: 3rd	*ENG	
012	ch 2: 4th	*ENG	

2193	**[MUSIC Condition Set]** Line Position Adjustment: Condition Setting		
001	Auto Execution	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / –] 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Enables/disables the automatic line position adjustment		
002	Page: Job End: BW+FC	*ENG	[0 to 999 / **500** / 1 page/step]
	Adjusts the threshold of the line position adjustment for BW and color printing mode after job end.		
003	Page: Job End: FC	*ENG	[0 to 999 / **200** / 1 page/step]
	Adjusts the threshold of the line position adjustment for color printing mode after job end.		

004	Page: Interrupt: BW+FC	*ENG	[0 to 999 / **200** / 1 page/step]
	Adjusts the threshold of the line position adjustment for BW and color printing mode during job.		
005	Page: Interrupt: FC	*ENG	[0 to 999 / **200** / 1 page/step]
	Adjusts the threshold of the line position adjustment for color printing mode during jobs.		
006	Page: Stand-By: BW	*ENG	[0 to 999 / **100** / 1 page/step]
	Adjusts the threshold of the line position adjustment for BW printing mode in stand-by mode. The line position adjustment is done when the number of outputs in BW printing mode reaches the value specified with this SP and the condition of SP2-193-008 or SP2-193-009 is satisfied.		
007	Page: Stand-By: FC	*ENG	[0 to 999 / **100** / 1 page/step]
	Adjusts the threshold of the line position adjustment for BW printing mode in stand-by mode. The line position adjustment is done when the number of outputs in color printing mode reaches the value specified with this SP and the condition of SP2-193-008 or SP2-193-009 is satisfied.		
008	Temp.	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **5** / 1°C/step]
	Adjust the temperature change threshold for the line position adjustment (Mode b: adjustment once). The timing for line position adjustment depends on the combinations of several conditions. For details, see ‘p.6-29 "Automatic Line Position Adjustment"’ in the "Detailed Section Descriptions" section.		
009	Time	*ENG	[1 to 1440 / **300** / 1 minute/step]
	Adjust the time threshold for the line position adjustment (Mode b: adjustment once). The timing for line position adjustment depends on the combinations of several conditions. For details, see ‘p.6-29 "Automatic Line Position Adjustment"’ in the "Detailed Section Descriptions" section.		
010	Magnification	*ENG	[0 to 10 / **1** / 0.1%/step]
	Adjusts the magnification threshold for line position adjustment. If the length of the main scan is changed by this amount since the previous MUSIC, then		

	MSUIC is done again.		
011	Temp. 2	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **10** / 1°C/step]
	Adjust the temperature change threshold for the line position adjustment (Mode a: adjustment twice). The timing for line position adjustment depends on the combinations of several conditions. For details, see 6.5.5 "Automatic Line Position Adjustment"' in the "Detailed Section Descriptions" section.		
012	Time 2	*ENG	[1 to 9999 / **600** / 1 minute/step]
	Adjust the time threshold for the line position adjustment (Mode a: adjustment twice). The timing for line position adjustment depends on the combinations of several conditions. For details, see 6.5.5 "Automatic Line Position Adjustment"' in the "Detailed Section Descriptions" section.		

2194	**[MUSIC Execution Result]** Line Position Adjustment: Execution Result		
001	Year	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **0** / 1 year/step]
002	Month	*ENG	[1 to 12 / **1** / 1 month/step]
003	Day	*ENG	[1 to 31 / **1** / 1 day/step]
004	Hour	*ENG	[0 to 23 / **0** / 1 hour/step]
005	Minute	*ENG	[0 to 59 / **0** / 1 minute/step]
006	Temperature	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **0** / 1 page/step]
007	Execution Result	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: Completed successfully, 1: Failed
008	Number of Execution	*ENG	[0 to 999999 / **0** / 1 time/step]
009	Number of Failure	*ENG	[0 to 999999 / **0** / 1 /step]
010	Error Result: M	*ENG	[0 to 9 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: Not done 1: Completed successfully 2: Cannot detect patterns
011	Error Result: C	*ENG	
012	Error Result: Y	*ENG	

			3: Fewer lines on the pattern than the target 4: Not used 5: Out of the adjustment range 6 to 9: Not used

2197	**[MUSIC Start Time]**		
	DFU		
001	MUSIC Start Time (EDT)	*ENG	[10 to 40 / **20** / 10ms/step]
002	TM Sensor Position	*ENG	[50 to 500 / **105.5** / 0.1mm/step]

2198	**[Music A/D Interval]**		
	DFU		
001	ADC Trigger Counter	*ENG	[7.5 to 20 / **10** / 0.1 μm/step]

2199	**[Music Error Time Setting]**		
	DFU		
001	Error Detection Counter	*ENG	[0.5 to 3 / **2.5** / 0.1 sec /step]

2221	**[LD Power] LD Power Control**		
	Adjusts the fixed LD power for each line speed and color. These SPs are activated only when SP3-041-002 is set to "0". Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Thick 1: 115 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Plain: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **100** / 1%/step] Increasing this value makes the image density darker.
002	Plain: M	*ENG	
003	Plain: C	*ENG	
004	Plain: Y	*ENG	

005	Thick 1: Bk	*ENG	
006	Thick 1: M	*ENG	
007	Thick 1: C	*ENG	
008	Thick 1: Y	*ENG	
009	Thick 2&FINE: Bk	*ENG	
010	Thick 2&FINE: M	*ENG	
011	Thick 2&FINE: C	*ENG	
012	Thick 2&FINE: Y	*ENG	

2229	**[Development DC Bias]** Development DC Bias Adjustment		
	Adjusts the development bias. Development bias is automatically adjusted during process control; therefore, adjusting these settings has no effect while Process Control (SP3-041-001 Default: ON) is activated. After deactivating Process Control with SP3-041-001, the values in these SP modes are used for printing. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Thick 1: 115 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Plain: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 700 / **550** / 10 –V/step]
002	Plain: M	*ENG	
003	Plain: C	*ENG	
004	Plain: Y	*ENG	
005	Thick 1: Bk	*ENG	
006	Thick 1: M	*ENG	
007	Thick 1: C	*ENG	
008	Thick 1: Y	*ENG	

009	Thick 2: Bk	*ENG	
010	Thick 2: M	*ENG	
011	Thick 2: C	*ENG	
012	Thick 2: Y	*ENG	
013	Fine: Bk	*ENG	
014	Fine: M	*ENG	
015	Fine: C	*ENG	
016	Fine: Y	*ENG	

2241	**[Temperature/Humidity: Display]**		
	Displays the environment temperature and humidity.		
001	Temperature	-	[–128 to 127 / - / 0.1°C/step]
002	Relative Humidity	-	[0 to 100 / - / 0.1 %RH/step]
003	Absolute Humidity	-	[0 to 100 / - / 0.01 g/m^3/step]

2302	**[Environmental Correction: Transfer]** Environmental Correction: Image Transfer Belt Unit		
002	Forced Setting	*ENG	Sets the environment condition manually. [0 to 5 / **0** / 1/step] 0: Automatic environment control 1: LL (Low temperature/ Low humidity) 2: ML (Middle temperature/ Low humidity) 3: MM (Middle temperature/ Middle humidity) 4: MH (Middle temperature/ High humidity) 5: HH (High temperature/ High humidity)
003	Absolute Humidity:	*ENG	Adjusts the threshold value between LL and

	Threshold 1		ML. [0 to 100 / **4.3** / 0.01 g/m^3/step]
004	Absolute Humidity: Threshold 2	*ENG	Adjusts the threshold value between ML and MM. [0 to 100 / **11.3** / 0.01 g/m^3/step]
005	Absolute Humidity: Threshold 3	*ENG	Adjusts the threshold value between MM and MH. [0 to 100 / **18** / 0.01 g/m^3/step]
006	Absolute Humidity: Threshold 4	*ENG	Adjusts the threshold value between MH and HH. [0 to 100 / **24** / 0.01 g/m^3/step]

2308	**[Paper Size Correction]**		
	Adjusts the threshold value for the paper size correction.		
001	Threshold 1	*ENG	[0 to 350 / **297** / 1 mm/step] Threshold 1 ≤ paper: Paper is detected as "S1" size.
002	Threshold 2	*ENG	[0 to 350 / **257** / 1 mm/step] Threshold 2 ≤ paper ≤ Threshold 1: Paper is detected as "S2" size.
003	Threshold 3	*ENG	[0 to 350 / **210** / 1 mm/step] Threshold 3 ≤ paper ≤ Threshold 2: Paper is detected as "S3" size.
004	Threshold 4	*ENG	[0 to 350 / **148** / 1 mm/step] Threshold 4 ≤ paper ≤ Threshold 3: Paper is detected as "S4" size. Paper ≤ Threshold 4: Paper is detected as "S5" size.

2311	**[Non Image Area: Bias]**		
001	Image Transfer	*ENG	Adjusts the bias of the image transfer belt between images. This value is added to the value of the image transfer belt bias. [10 to 250 / **100** / 5 %/step]
002	Paper Transfer	*ENG	Adjusts the bias of the paper transfer roller between images. [0 to 200 / **5** / 1 –μA/step]
003	Paper Transfer: Resistance FB	*ENG	Adjusts the bias of the paper transfer roller for measuring the resistance of the paper transfer roller when the image processing starts. [0 to 200 / **30** / 1 –μA/step]

2314	**[P/M Pattern: Bias]** Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Thick 1: 115 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Image Transfer: Plain	*ENG	Adjusts the bias of the image transfer belt during the process control and automatic line position control. [0 to 80 / **B222: 24, B224: 32** / 1 μA /step]
002	Image Transfer: Thick 1	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **18** / 1 μA /step]
003	Image Transfer: Thick 2 & FINE	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **12** / 1 μA /step]

2316	**[Power ON: Bias]**		
001	Image Transfer	*ENG	Adjusts the bias of the image transfer belt at warming up mode after a machine has been turned on or any door has been closed. [0 to 80 / **5** / 1 μA /step]

2326	**[Transfer Roller CL: Bias]** Transfer Roller Cleaning: Bias Adjustment		
001	Positive	*ENG	[0 to 5000 / **2000** / 1 V /step]
	Adjusts the positive voltage of the paper transfer roller for cleaning the paper transfer roller.		
002	Negative	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **50** / 1 –μA /step]
	Adjusts the negative current of the paper transfer roller for cleaning the paper transfer roller.		
003	Negative: Limit Voltage	*ENG	[0 to 5000 / **2000** / 1 –V /step]
	Adjusts the negative current limit of the paper transfer roller for cleaning the paper transfer roller.		

2351	**[Common: BW: Bias]** Image Transfer Belt: B/W: Bias Adjustment Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Thick 1: 115 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Image Transfer: Plain	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **B222: 28, B224: 38** / 1 μA]
	Adjusts the current for the image transfer belt in B/W mode for plain paper.		
002	Image Transfer: Thick 1	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **21** / 1 μA]
	Adjusts the current for the image transfer belt in B/W mode for thick 1 paper.		

003	Image Transfer: Thick 2 & FINE	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **14** / 1 μA]
	Adjusts the current for the image transfer belt in B/W mode for thick 2 paper or FINE mode.		

2357	**[Common: FC: Bias]** Image Transfer Belt: Full Color: Bias Adjustment Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Thick 1: 115 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Image Transfer: Plain: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **B222: 22, B224: 30** / 1 μA]
	Adjusts the current for the image transfer belt for Black in full color mode for plain paper.		
002	Image Transfer: Plain: M	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **B222: 22, B224: 30** / 1 μA]
	Adjusts the current for the image transfer belt for Magenta in full color mode for plain paper.		
003	Image Transfer: Plain: C	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **B222: 25, B224: 33** / 1 μA]
	Adjusts the current for the image transfer belt for Cyan in full color mode for plain paper.		
004	Image Transfer: Plain: Y	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **B222: 28, B224: 38** / 1 μA]
	Adjusts the current for the image transfer belt for Yellow in full color mode for plain paper.		
005	Image Transfer: Thick 1: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **17** / 1 μA]
	Adjusts the current for the image transfer belt for Black in full color mode for thick 1 paper.		

006	Image Transfer: Thick 1: M	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **17** / 1 μA]
	Adjusts the current for the image transfer belt for Magenta in full color mode for thick 1 paper.		
007	Image Transfer: Thick 1: C	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **18** / 1 μA]
	Adjusts the current for the image transfer belt for Cyan in full color mode for thick 1 paper.		
008	Image Transfer: Thick 1: Y	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **21** / 1 μA]
	Adjusts the current for the image transfer belt for Yellow in full color mode for thick 1 paper.		
009	Image Transfer: Thick 2 & FINE: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **11** / 1 μA]
	Adjusts the current for the image transfer belt for Black in full color mode for Thick 2 and fine.		
010	Image Transfer: Thick 2 & FINE: M	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **11** / 1 μA]
	Adjusts the current for the image transfer belt for Magenta in full color mode for Thick 2 and fine.		
011	Image Transfer: Thick 2 & FINE: C	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **12** / 1 μA]
	Adjusts the current for the image transfer belt for Cyan in full color mode for Thick 2 and fine.		
012	Image Transfer: Thick 2 & FINE: Y	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **15** / 1 μA]
	Adjusts the current for the image transfer belt for Yellow in full color mode for Thick 2 and fine.		

2381	**[Common: LL]**		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as LL, SP2351 and SP2357 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Thick 1: 115 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Image Transfer: Plain	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **70** / 5%/step]
002	Image Transfer: Thick 1	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **80** / 5%/step]
003	Image Transfer: Thick 2 & FINE	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **80** / 5%/step]
004	Image Transfer: P/M Pattern	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **100** / 5%/step] P/M Pattern: When doing process control or automatic line position adjustment.

2382	**[Common: ML]**		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as ML, SP2351 and SP2357 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Thick 1: 115 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Image Transfer: Plain	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **90** / 5%/step]
002	Image Transfer: Thick 1	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **90** / 5%/step]
003	Image Transfer: Thick 2 & FINE	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **90** / 5%/step]
004	Image Transfer: P/M Pattern	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **100** / 5%/step] P/M Pattern: When doing the process control or automatic line position adjustment.

2383	**[Common: MM]**		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as MM, SP2351 and SP2357 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Thick 1: 115 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Image Transfer: Plain	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Image Transfer: Thick 1	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **100** / 5%/step]
003	Image Transfer: Thick 2 & FINE	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **100** / 5%/step]
004	Image Transfer: P/M Pattern	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **100** / 5%/step] P/M Pattern: When doing the process control or automatic line position adjustment.

2384	**[Common: MH]**		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as MH, SP2351 and SP2357 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Thick 1: 115 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Image Transfer: Plain	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **90** / 5%/step]
002	Image Transfer: Thick 1	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **90** / 5%/step]
003	Image Transfer: Thick 2 & FINE	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **90** / 5%/step]
004	Image Transfer: P/M Pattern	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **100** / 5%/step] P/M Pattern: When doing the process control or automatic line position adjustment.

2385	**[Common: HH]**		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as HH, SP2351 and SP2357 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Thick 1: 115 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Image Transfer: Plain	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **80** / 5%/step]
002	Image Transfer: Thick 1	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **80** / 5%/step]
003	Image Transfer: Thick 2 & FINE	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **80** / 5%/step]
004	Image Transfer: P/M Pattern	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **100** / 5%/step] P/M Pattern: When doing the process control or automatic line position adjustment.

2401	**[Plain: Bias]**		
	Adjusts the DC voltage of the discharge plate for plain paper. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 5000 / **1500** / 10 –V/step]
002	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Separation DC: Fine: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 5000 / **1000** / 10 –V/step]
004	Separation DC: Fine: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2403	**[Plain: Bias: BW]**		
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for plain paper in black-and-white mode. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **B222: 22, B224: 30** / 1 –μA /step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **B222: 22, B224: 30** / 1 –μA /step]
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **12** / 1 –μA /step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2407	**[Plain: Bias: FC]**		
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for plain paper in full color mode. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **B222: 33, B224: 40** / 1 –μA /step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **B222: 33, B224: 40** / 1 –μA /step]
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **15** / 1 –μA /step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2411	**[Plain: Paper Size Correction]**		
	Adjusts the size correction coefficient for the paper transfer roller current for each paper size. SP2403 and SP2407 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain : 1st Side: S1	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **100** / 5%/step] S1 size ≥ 297 mm (Paper width)
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side: S1	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side: S1	*ENG	
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side: S1	*ENG	
005	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **120** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
006	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **130** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
007	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **120** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
008	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side: S2	*ENG	
009	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **140** / 5%/step] 275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)
010	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **200** / 5%/step] 275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)
011	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **130** / 5%/step] 275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)

012	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side: S3	*ENG	
013	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **160** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
014	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **220** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
015	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **140** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
016	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side: S4	*ENG	
017	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **180** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)
018	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **240** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)
019	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **150** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)
020	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side: S5	*ENG	

2421	**[Plain: Leading Edge Correction]** Plain Paper: Leading Edge Correction		
	Adjusts the correction to the paper transfer roller current at the paper leading edge in each mode. SP2403 and SP2407 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2422.		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain:	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **150** / 5%/step]

	2nd Side		
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	
2421	Adjusts the correction to the discharge plate current at the paper leading edge in each mode. SP2401 is multiplied by these SPs values. Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2422.		
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Page	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Page	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Fine: 1st Page	*ENG	
008	Separation DC: Fine 2nd Page	*ENG	

2422	**[Plain: Switch Timing: Lead. Edge]**		
	Adjusts the bias/ voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/ discharge plate at the paper leading edge between the erase margin area and the image area. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 30 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	[0 to 30 / **20** / 1 mm/step]
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 30 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Page	*ENG	[0 to 30 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Page	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Fine: 1st Page	*ENG	
008	Separation DC: Fine: 2nd Page	*ENG	

2423	**[Plain: Trailing Edge Correction]** Plain Paper: Trailing Edge Correction		
	Adjusts the correction coefficient to the paper transfer roller current for the paper trailing edge in each mode. SP2403 and SP2407 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec Note ▪ The paper trailing edge area can be adjusted with SP2424.		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2424	**[Plain: Switch Timing: Trail. Edge]**		
	Adjusts the bias/voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/discharge plate at the paper trailing edge between the erase margin area and the image area. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[–100 to 0 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE (: 1st Side	*ENG	
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2431	**[Plain: LL]** Plain Paper: LL Environment Coefficient Adjustment		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as LL, SP2403 and SP2407 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **80** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **90** / 5%/step]
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **80** / 5%/step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	
2431	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as LL, SP2401 is multiplied by these SP values.		
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **200** / 5%/step]
006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side:	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **120** / 5%/step]
008	Separation DC: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2432	**[Plain: ML]** Plain Paper: ML Environment Coefficient Adjustment		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as ML, SP2403 and SP2407 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **90** / 5%/step]

	Side		
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	
2432	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as ML, SP2401 is multiplied by these SP values.		
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **200** / 5%/step]
006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side:	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **170** / 5%/step]
007	Separation DC: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **110** / 5%/step]
008	Separation DC: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2433	**[Plain: MM]** Plain Paper: MM Environment Coefficient Adjustment		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as MM, SP2403 and SP2407 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	

004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	
2433	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as MM, SP2401 is multiplied by these SP values.		
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **170** / 5%/step]
006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side:	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **140** / 5%/step]
007	Separation DC: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **100** / 5%/step]
008	Separation DC: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2434	**[Plain: MH]** Plain Paper: MH Environment Coefficient Adjustment		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as MH, SP2403 and SP2407 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **110** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	
2434	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as MH, SP2401 is multiplied by these SP values.		
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **100** / 5%/step]

006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side:	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **90** / 5%/step]
007	Separation DC: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **90** / 5%/step]
008	Separation DC: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2435	**[Plain: HH]** Plain Paper: HH Environment Coefficient Adjustment		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as HH, SP2403 and SP2407 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **120** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	
2435	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as HH, SP2401 is multiplied by these SP values.		
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **50** / 5%/step]
006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side:	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **80** / 5%/step]
007	Separation DC: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **80** / 5%/step]
008	Separation DC: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2451	**[Thin: Bias]**		
	Adjusts the DC voltage of the discharge plate for thin paper. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 5000 / **1500** / 10 –V/step]
002	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Separation DC: Fine: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 5000 / **1000** / 10 –V/step]
004	Separation DC: Fine: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2453	**[Thin: Bias: BW]**		
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for thin paper in black-and-white mode. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **B222: 22, B224: 30** / 1 –μA /step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **12** / 1 –μA /step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2457	**[Thin: Bias: FC]**		
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for thin paper in full color mode. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **B222: 33, B224: 40** / 1 –μA /step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **B222: 33, B224: 45** / 1 –μA /step]
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **15** / 1 –μA /step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2461	**[Thin: Paper Size Correction]**		
	Adjusts the size correction coefficient for the paper transfer roller current for each paper size. SP2453 and SP2457 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S1	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **100** / 5%/step] S1 size ≥ 297 mm (Paper width)
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side: S1	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side: S1	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **100** / 5%/step] S1 size ≥ 297 mm (Paper width)
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side: S1	*ENG	
005	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **120** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
006	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **130** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)

Copy Service Mode

007	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **120** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
008	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side: S2	*ENG	
009	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **140** / 5%/step] 275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)
010	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **200** / 5%/step] 275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)
011	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **130** / 5%/step] 275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)
012	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side: S3	*ENG	
013	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **160** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
014	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **220** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
015	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **140** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
016	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side: S4	*ENG	
017	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **180** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)
018	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **240** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)
019	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **150** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)
020	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side: S5	*ENG	

2471	**[Thin: Leading Edge Correction]** Thin Paper: Leading Edge Correction		
	Adjusts the correction to the paper transfer roller current at the paper leading edge in each mode. SP2453 and SP2457 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2472.		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	
2471	Adjusts the correction to the discharge plate current at the paper leading edge in each mode. SP2451 is multiplied by these SP values. Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2472.		
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Page	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Page	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Fine: 1st Page	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
008	Separation DC: Fine: 2nd Page	*ENG	

2472	**[Thin: Switch Timing: Lead. Edge]**		
	Adjusts the bias/ voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/ discharge plate at the paper leading edge between the erase margin area and the image area. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 30 / **0** / 2 mm/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 30 / **0** / 2 mm/step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Page	*ENG	[0 to 30 / **0** / 2 mm/step]
006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Page	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Fine: 1st Page	*ENG	[0 to 30 / **0** / 2 mm/step]
008	Separation DC: Fine: 2nd Page	*ENG	

2473	**[Thin: Trailing Edge Correction]** Thin Paper: Trailing Edge Correction		
	Adjusts the correction coefficient to the paper transfer roller current for the paper trailing edge in each mode. SP2453 and SP2457 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec Note ▪ The paper trailing edge area can be adjusted with SP2474.		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2474	**[Thin: Switch Timing: Trail. Edge]**		
	Adjusts the bias/voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/discharge plate at the paper trailing edge between the erase margin area and the image area. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[–100 to 0 / **0** / 2 mm/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[–100 to 0 / **0** / 2 mm/step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2481	**[Thin: LL]** Thin Paper: LL Environment Coefficient Adjustment		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as LL, SP2453 and SP2457 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **80** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **80** / 5%/step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2481	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as LL, SP2451 is multiplied by these SP values.		
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **200** / 5%/step]
006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side:	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **120** / 5%/step]
008	Separation DC: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2482	**[Thin: ML]** Thin Paper: ML Environment Coefficient Adjustment		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as ML, SP2453 and SP2457 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **90** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **90** / 5%/step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	
2482	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as ML, SP2451 is multiplied by these SP values.		
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **200** / 5%/step]

006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side:	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **170** / 5%/step]
007	Separation DC: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **110** / 5%/step]
008	Separation DC: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2483	**[Thin: MM]** Thin Paper: MM Environment Coefficient Adjustment		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as MM, SP2453 and SP2457 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **100** / 5%/step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	
2483	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as MM, SP2451 is multiplied by these SP values.		
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **170** / 5%/step]
006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side:	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **140** / 5%/step]

007	Separation DC: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **100** / 5%/step]
008	Separation DC: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2484	**[Thin: MH]** Thin Paper: MH Environment Coefficient Adjustment		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as MH, SP2453 and SP2457 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **110** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **110** / 5%/step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	
2484	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as MH, SP2451 is multiplied by these SP values.		
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **100** / 5%/step]
006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side:	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **90** / 5%/step]
007	Separation DC: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **90** / 5%/step]
008	Separation DC: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2485	**[Thin: HH]** Thin Paper: HH Environment Coefficient Adjustment		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as HH, SP2453 and SP2457 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **120** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **120** / 5%/step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	
2485	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as HH, SP2451 is multiplied by these SP values.		
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **50** / 5%/step]
006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side:	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **80** / 5%/step]
007	Separation DC: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **80** / 5%/step]
008	Separation DC: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2501	**[Thick 1: Bias]**		
	Adjusts the DC voltage of the discharge plate for thick 1 paper. Thick 1: 115 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Separation DC: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 5000 / **1000** / 10 –V/step]
002	Separation DC: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Separation DC: Fine: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 5000 / **0** / 10 –V/step]
004	Separation DC: Fine: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2502	**[Thick 1: Bias: BW]**		
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for thick 1 paper in black-and-white mode. Thick 1: 115 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **18** / 1 –μA /step]
002	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **12** / 1 –μA /step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2507	**[Thick 1: Bias: FC]**		
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for thick 1 paper in full color mode. Thick 1: 115 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **22** / 1 –μA /step]
002	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **15** / 1 –μA /step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2511	**[Thick 1: Paper Size Correction]**		
	Adjusts the size correction coefficient for the paper transfer roller current for each paper size. SP2502 and SP2507 are multiplied by these SP values. Thick 1: 115 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side: S1	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **100** / 5%/step] S1 size ≥ 297 mm (Paper width)
002	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side: S1	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side: S1	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **100** / 5%/step] S1 size ≥ 297 mm (Paper width)
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side: S1	*ENG	
005	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **130** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
006	Paper Transfer: Thick 1:	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **150** / 5%/step]

	2nd Side: S2		297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
007	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **120** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
008	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side: S2	*ENG	
009	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **180** / 5%/step] 275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)
010	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **240** / 5%/step] 275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)
011	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **130** / 5%/step] 275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)
012	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side: S3	*ENG	
013	Paper Transfer: Thick 1): 1st Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **230** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
014	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **370** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
015	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **140** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
016	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side: S4	*ENG	
017	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **290** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)

018	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **500** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)
019	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **150** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)
020	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side: S5	*ENG	

2521	**[Thick 1: Leading Edge Correction]** Thick 1 Paper: Leading Edge Correction		
	Adjusts the correction to the paper transfer roller current at the paper leading edge in each mode. SP2502 and SP2507 are multiplied by these SP values. Thick 1: 115 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2522.		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	
2521	Adjusts the correction to the discharge plate current at the paper leading edge in each mode. SP2501 is multiplied by these SP values. Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2522.		
005	Separation DC: Thick 1: 1st Page	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]

006	Separation DC: Thick 1: 2nd Page	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Fine: 1st Page	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
008	Separation DC: Fine: 2nd Page	*ENG	

2522	**[Thick 1: Switch Timing: Lead. Edge]**		
	Adjusts the bias/ voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/ discharge plate at the paper leading edge between the erase margin area and the image area. Thick 1: 115 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 30 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 30 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	
005	Separation DC: Thick 1: 1st Page	*ENG	[0 to 30 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
006	Separation DC: Thick 1: 2nd Page	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Fine: 1st Page	*ENG	[0 to 30 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
008	Separation DC: Fine: 2nd Page	*ENG	

2523	**[Thick 1: Trailing Edge Correction]** Thick 1 Paper: Trailing Edge Correction		
	Adjusts the correction coefficient to the paper transfer roller current for the paper trailing edge in each mode. SP2502 and SP2507 are multiplied by these SP values. Thick 1: 115 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec Note ▪ The paper trailing edge area can be adjusted with SP2524.		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2524	**[Thick 1: Switch Timing: Trail. Edge]**		
	Adjusts the bias/voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/discharge plate at the paper trailing edge between the erase margin area and the image area. Thick 1: 115 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[–100 to 0 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[–100 to 0 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2531	**[Thick 1: LL]** Thick 1 Paper: LL Environment Coefficient Adjustment		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as LL, SP2502 and SP2507 are multiplied by these SP values. Thick 1: 115 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **80** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **80** / 5%/step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	
2531	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as LL, SP2501 is multiplied by these SP values.		
005	Separation DC: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **180** / 5%/step]
006	Separation DC: Thick 1: 2nd Side:	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **240** / 5%/step]
007	Separation DC: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **120** / 5%/step]
008	Separation DC: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2532	**[Thick 1: ML]** Thick 1 Paper: ML Environment Coefficient Adjustment		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as ML, SP2502 and SP2507 are multiplied by these SP values. Thick 1: 115 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 1:	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **90** / 5%/step]

	1st Side		
002	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **90** / 5%/step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	
2532	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as ML, SP2501 is multiplied by these SP values.		
005	Separation DC: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **140** / 5%/step]
006	Separation DC: Thick 1: 2nd Side:	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **240** / 5%/step]
007	Separation DC: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **110** / 5%/step]
008	Separation DC: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2533	**[Thick 1: MM]** Thick 1 Paper: MM Environment Coefficient Adjustment		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as MM, SP2502 and SP2507 are multiplied by these SP values. Thick 1: 115 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **100** / 5%/step]

004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	
2533	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as MM, SP2501 is multiplied by these SP values.		
005	Separation DC: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **100** / 5%/step]
006	Separation DC: Thick 1: 2nd Side:	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **200** / 5%/step]
007	Separation DC: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **100** / 5%/step]
008	Separation DC: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2534	**[Thick 1: MH]** Thick 1 Paper: MH Environment Coefficient Adjustment		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as MH, SP2502 and SP2507 are multiplied by these SP values. Thick 1: 115 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **110** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **110** / 5%/step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	
2534	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as MH, SP2501 is multiplied by these SP values. Thick 1: 115 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
005	Separation DC: Thick 1:	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **90** / 5%/step]

	1st Side		
006	Separation DC: Thick 1: 2nd Side:	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **180** / 5%/step]
007	Separation DC: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **90** / 5%/step]
008	Separation DC: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2535	**[Thick 1: HH]** Thick 1 Paper: HH Environment Coefficient Adjustment		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as HH, SP2502 and SP2507 are multiplied by these SP values. Thick 1: 115 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **120** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **120** / 5%/step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	
2535	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as HH, SP2501 is multiplied by these SP values.		
005	Separation DC: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **80** / 5%/step]
006	Separation DC: Thick 1: 2nd Side:	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **80** / 5%/step]

008	Separation DC: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2551	**[Thick 2: Bias]**		
	Adjusts the DC voltage of the discharge plate for thick 2 paper.		
001	Separation DC: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 5000 / **1000** / 10 –V/step]
002	Separation DC: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2553	**[Thick 2: Bias: BW]**		
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for thick 2 paper in black-and-white mode.		
001	Paper Transfer: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **12** / 1 –μA /step]
002	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2558	**[Thick 2: Bias: FC]**		
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for thick 2 paper in full color mode.		
001	Paper Transfer: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **15** / 1 –μA /step]
002	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2561	**[Thick 2: Paper Size Correction]**		
	Adjusts the size correction coefficient for the paper transfer roller current for each paper size. SP2553 and SP2558 are multiplied by these SP values.		
001	Paper Transfer: 1st Side: S1	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **100** / 5%/step] S1 size ≥ 297 mm (Paper width)
002	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side: S1	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: 1st Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **140** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
004	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **160** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
005	Paper Transfer: 1st Side: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **200** / 5%/step] 275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)
006	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **260** / 5%/step] 275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)
007	Paper Transfer: 1st Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **260** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
008	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **430** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
009	Paper Transfer: 1st Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **330** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)
010	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **600** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)

2571	**[Thick 2: Leading Edge Correction]** Thick 2 Paper: Leading Edge Correction		
	Adjusts the correction to the paper transfer roller current at the paper leading edge in each mode. SP2553 and SP2558 are multiplied by these SP values. Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2572.		
001	Paper Transfer: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side	*ENG	
2571	Adjusts the correction to the discharge plate current at the paper leading edge in each mode. SP2551 is multiplied by these SP values. Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2572.		
003	Separation DC: 1st Page	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
004	Separation DC: 2nd Page	*ENG	

2572	**[Thick 2: Switch Timing: Lead. Edge]**		
	Adjusts the bias/ voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/ discharge plate at the paper leading edge between the erase margin area and the image area.		
001	Paper Transfer: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 30 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
002	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Separation DC: 1st Page	*ENG	
004	Separation DC: 2nd Page	*ENG	

2573	**[Thick 2: Trailing Edge Correction]** Thick 2 Paper: Trailing Edge Correction		
	Adjusts the correction to the paper transfer roller current for the paper trailing edge in each mode. SP2553 and SP2558 are multiplied by these SP values. Note ▪ The paper trailing edge area can be adjusted with SP2574.		
001	Paper Transfer: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2574	**[Thick 2: Switch Timing: Trail. Edge]**		
	Adjusts the bias/voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/discharge plate at the paper trailing edge between the erase margin area and the image area.		
001	Paper Transfer: 1st Side	*ENG	[–100 to 0 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
002	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2581	**[Thick 2: LL]** Thick 2 Paper: LL Environment Coefficient Adjustment		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as LL, SP2553 and SP2558 are multiplied by these SP values.		
001	Paper Transfer: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **80** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side	*ENG	
2581	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as LL, SP2551 is multiplied by these SP values.		
003	Separation DC: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **180** / 5%/step]
004	Separation DC: 2nd Side:	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **240** / 5%/step]

2582	**[Thick 2: ML]** Thick 2 Paper: ML Environment Coefficient Adjustment		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as ML, SP2553 and SP2558 are multiplied by these SP values.		
001	Paper Transfer: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **90** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side	*ENG	
2582	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as ML, SP2551 is multiplied by these SP values.		
003	Separation DC: 1st Page	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **140** / 5%/step]
004	Separation DC: 2nd Page	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **240** / 5%/step]

2583	**[Thick 2: MM]** Thick 2 Paper: MM Environment Coefficient Adjustment		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as MM, SP2553 and SP2558 are multiplied by these SP values.		
001	Paper Transfer: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side	*ENG	
2583	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as MM, SP2551 is multiplied by these SP values.		
003	Separation DC: 1st Page	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **100** / 5%/step]
004	Separation DC: 2nd Page	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **200** / 5%/step]

2584	**[Thick 2: MH]** Thick 2 Paper: MH Environment Coefficient Adjustment		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as MH, SP2553 and SP2558 are multiplied by these SP values.		
001	Paper Transfer: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **110** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2584	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as MH, SP2551 is multiplied by these SP values.		
003	Separation DC: 1st Page	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **90** / 5%/step]
004	Separation DC: 2nd Page	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **180** / 5%/step]

2585	**[Thick 2: HH]** Thick 2 Paper: HH Environment Coefficient Adjustment		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as HH, SP2553 and SP2558 are multiplied by these SP values.		
001	Paper Transfer: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **120** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: 2nd Side	*ENG	
2585	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as HH, SP2551 is multiplied by these SP values.		
003	Separation DC: 1st Page	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **80** / 5%/step]
004	Separation DC: 2nd Page	*ENG	

2601	**[OHP: Bias]**		
	Adjusts the DC voltage of the discharge plate for OHP.		
001	Separation DC	*ENG	[0 to 5000 / **1500** / 10 –V/step]

2603	**[OHP: Bias: BW]**		
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for OHP in black-and-white mode.		
001	Paper Transfer	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **12** / 1 –μA /step]

2608	**[OHP: Bias: FC]**		
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for OHP in full color mode.		
001	Paper Transfer	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **15** / 1 –μA /step]

2611	**[OHP: Paper Size Correction]**		
	Adjusts the size correction coefficient for the paper transfer roller current for each paper size. SP2603 and SP2608 are multiplied by these SP values.		
001	Paper Transfer: S1	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **100** / 5%/step] S1 size ≥ 297 mm (Paper width)
002	Paper Transfer: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **140** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
003	Paper Transfer: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **200** / 5%/step] 275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)
004	Paper Transfer: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **260** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
005	Paper Transfer: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **330** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)

2621	**[OHP: Leading Edge Correction]** OHP: Leading Edge Correction
	Adjusts the correction to the paper transfer roller current at the paper leading edge in each mode. SP2603 and SP2608 are multiplied by these SP values. Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2622.

001	Paper Transfer	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
2621	Adjusts the correction to the discharge plate current at the paper leading edge in each mode. SP2601 is multiplied by these SP values. Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2622.		
002	Separation DC	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]

2622	**[OHP: Switch Timing: Lead. Edge]**		
	Adjusts the bias/ voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/ discharge plate at the paper leading edge between the erase margin area and the image area.		
001	Paper Transfer	*ENG	[0 to 30 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
002	Separation DC	*ENG	

2623	**[OHP: Trailing Edge Correction]** OHP: Trailing Edge Correction		
	Adjusts the correction to the paper transfer roller current for the paper trailing edge in each mode. SP2603 and SP2608 are multiplied by these SP values. Note ▪ The paper trailing edge area can be adjusted with SP2624.		
001	Paper Transfer	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]

2624	**[OHP: Switch Timing: Trail. Edge]**		
	Adjusts the bias/voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/discharge plate at the paper trailing edge between the erase margin area and the image area.		
001	Paper Transfer	*ENG	[–100 to 0 / **0** / 1 mm/step]

2631	**[OHP: LL]** OHP: LL Environment Coefficient Adjustment		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as LL, SP2603 and SP2608 are multiplied by these SP values.		
001	Paper Transfer	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **80** / 5%/step]
2631	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as LL, SP2601 is multiplied by these SP values.		
002	Separation DC	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **120** / 5%/step]

2632	**[OHP: ML]** OHP: ML Environment Coefficient Adjustment		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode When the environment is detected as ML, SP2603 and SP2608 are multiplied by these SP values.		
001	Paper Transfer	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **90** / 5%/step]
2632	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as ML, SP2601 is multiplied by these SP values.		
002	Separation DC	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **110** / 5%/step]

2633	**[OHP: MM]** OHP: MM Environment Coefficient Adjustment		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as MM, SP2603 and SP2608 are multiplied by these SP values.		
001	Paper Transfer	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **100** / 5%/step]
2633	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as MM, SP2601 is multiplied by these SP values.		
002	Separation DC	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **100** / 5%/step]

2634	**[OHP: MH]** OHP: MH Environment Coefficient Adjustment		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as MH, SP2603 and SP2608 are multiplied by these SP values.		
001	Paper Transfer	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **110** / 5%/step]
2634	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as MH, SP2601 is multiplied by these SP values.		
002	Separation DC	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **90** / 5%/step]

2635	**[OHP: HH]** OHP Paper: HH Environment Coefficient Adjustment		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as HH, SP2603 and SP2608 are multiplied by these SP values.		
001	Paper Transfer	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **120** / 5%/step]
2635	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as HH, SP2601 is multiplied by these SP values.		
002	Separation DC	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **80** / 5%/step]

2650	**[Thick 3: Bias]**		
	Adjusts the DC voltage of the discharge plate for thick paper 3.		
001	Separation DC: Thick 3: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 5000 / **1000** / 10 –V/step]
002	Separation DC: Thick 3: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2651	**[Thick 3: Bias: BW]**		
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for thick paper 3 in black-and-white mode.		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 3: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **12** / 1 –μA /step]
002	Paper Transfer: Thick 3: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2652	**[Thick 3: Bias: FC]**		
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for thick paper 3 in full color mode.		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 3: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **15** / 1 –μA /step]
002	Paper Transfer: Thick 3: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2653	**[Thick 3: Paper Size Correction]**		
	Adjusts the size correction coefficient for the paper transfer roller current for each paper size. SP2651 and SP2652 are multiplied by these SP values.		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 3: 1st Side: S1	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **100** / 5%/step] S1 size ≥ 297 mm (Paper width)
002	Paper Transfer: Thick 3: 1st Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **140** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
003	Paper Transfer: Thick 3: 1st Side: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **200** / 5%/step] 275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)

004	Paper Transfer: Thick 3: 1st Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **260** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
005	Paper Transfer: Thick 3: 1st Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **330** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)
006	Paper Transfer: Thick 3: 2nd Side: S1	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **100** / 5%/step] S1 size ≥ 297 mm (Paper width)
007	Paper Transfer: Thick 3: 2nd Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **160** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
008	Paper Transfer: Thick 3: 2nd Side: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **260** / 5%/step] 275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)
009	Paper Transfer: Thick 3: 2nd Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **430** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
010	Paper Transfer: Thick 3: 2nd Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **600** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)

2654	**[Thick 3: Leading Edge Correction]** Thick 3 Paper: Leading Edge Correction		
	Adjusts the correction to the paper transfer roller current at the paper leading edge in each mode. SP2651 and SP2652 are multiplied by these SP values. Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2655.		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 3: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Separation DC: Thick 3: 1st Page	*ENG	

2654	Adjusts the correction to the discharge plate current at the paper leading edge in each mode. SP2650 is multiplied by these SP values. Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2655.		
003	Paper Transfer: Thick 3: 2nd Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
004	Separation DC: Thick 3: 2nd Page	*ENG	

2655	**[Thick 3: Switch Timing: Lead. Edge]**		
	Adjusts the bias/ voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/ discharge plate at the paper leading edge between the erase margin area and the image area.		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 3: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 30 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
002	Separation DC: Thick 3: 1st Page	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: Thick 3: 2nd Side	*ENG	
004	Separation DC: Thick 3: 2nd Page	*ENG	

2656	**[Thick 3: Trailing Edge Correction]** Thick 3 Paper: Trailing Edge Correction		
	Adjusts the correction to the paper transfer roller current for the paper trailing edge in each mode. SP2651 and SP2652 are multiplied by these SP values. Note ▪ The paper trailing edge area can be adjusted with SP2657.		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 3: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Thick 3: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2657	**[Thick 3: Switch Timing: Trail. Edge]**		
	Adjusts the bias/voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/discharge plate at the paper trailing edge between the erase margin area and the image area.		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 3: 1st Side	*ENG	[–100 to 0 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Thick 3: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2658	**[Thick 3: LL]** Thick 3 Paper: LL Environment Coefficient Adjustment		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as LL, SP2651 and SP2652 are multiplied by these SP values.		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 3: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **80** / 5%/step]
002	Separation DC: Thick 3: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **180** / 5%/step]

2658	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as LL, SP2650 is multiplied by these SP values.		
003	Paper Transfer: Thick 3: 2nd Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **80** / 5%/step]
004	Separation DC: Thick 3: 2nd Side:	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **240** / 5%/step]

2659	**[Thick 3: ML]** Thick 3 Paper: ML Environment Coefficient Adjustment		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode When the environment is detected as ML, SP2651 and SP2652 are multiplied by these SP values.		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 3: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **90** / 5%/step]
002	Separation DC: Thick 3: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **140** / 5%/step]
2659	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as ML, SP2650 is multiplied by these SP values.		
003	Paper Transfer: Thick 3: 2nd Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **90** / 5%/step]
004	Separation DC: Thick 3: 2nd Side:	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **240** / 5%/step]

2660	**[Thick 3: MM]** Thick 3 Paper: MM Environment Coefficient Adjustment		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as MM, SP2651 and SP2652 are multiplied by these SP values.		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 3: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Separation DC: Thick 3:	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **100** / 5%/step]

	1st Side		
2660	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as MM, SP2650 is multiplied by these SP values.		
003	Paper Transfer: Thick 3: 2nd Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **100** / 5%/step]
004	Separation DC: Thick 3: 2nd Side:	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **200** / 5%/step]

2661	**[Thick 3: MH]** Thick 3 Paper: MH Environment Coefficient Adjustment		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as MH, SP2651 and SP2652 are multiplied by these SP values.		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 3: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **110** / 5%/step]
002	Separation DC: Thick 3: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **90** / 5%/step]
2661	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as MH, SP2650 is multiplied by these SP values.		
003	Paper Transfer: Thick 3: 2nd Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **110** / 5%/step]
004	Separation DC: Thick 3: 2nd Side:	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **180** / 5%/step]

2662	**[Thick 3: HH]** Thick 3 Paper: HH Environment Coefficient Adjustment		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as HH, SP2651 and SP2652 are multiplied by these SP values.		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 3: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **120** / 5%/step]
002	Separation DC: Thick 3: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **80** / 5%/step]
2662	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as HH, SP2650 is multiplied by these SP values.		
003	Paper Transfer: Thick 3: 2nd Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **120** / 5%/step]
004	Separation DC: Thick 3: 2nd Side:	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **80** / 5%/step]

2751	**[Special 1: Bias]**		
	Adjusts the DC voltage of the discharge plate for special paper 1. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 5000 / **1500** / 10 –V/step]
002	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Separation DC: Fine: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 5000 / **1000** / 10 –V/step]
004	Separation DC: Fine: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2753	**[Special 1: Bias: BW]**		
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for special paper 1 in black-and-white mode. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **B222: 22/B224: 30** / 1 –μA /step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **12** / 1 –μA /step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2757	**[Special 1: Bias: FC]**		
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for special paper 1 in full color mode. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain): 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **B222: 33/B224: 40** / 1 –μA /step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **15** / 1 –μA /step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2761	**[Special 1: Paper Size Correction]**		
	Adjusts the size correction coefficient for the paper transfer roller current for each paper size. SP2753 and SP2757 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S1	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **100** / 5%/step] S1 size ≥ 297 mm (Paper width)
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side: S1	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side: S1	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **100** / 5%/step] S1 size ≥ 297 mm (Paper width)
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side: S1	*ENG	
005	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **120** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
006	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **130** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
007	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **120** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
008	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side: S2	*ENG	
009	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **140** / 5%/step] 275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)
010	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **200** / 5%/step] 275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)
011	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **130** / 5%/step] 275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)
012	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side: S3	*ENG	

013	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **160** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
014	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **220** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
015	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **140** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
016	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side: S4	*ENG	
017	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **180** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)
018	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **240** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)
019	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **150** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)
020	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side: S5	*ENG	

2771	**[Special 1: Leading Edge Correction]** Special 1 Paper: Leading Edge Correction		
	Adjusts the correction to the paper transfer roller current at the paper leading edge in each mode. SP2753 and SP2757 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2772.		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **150** / 5%/step]
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]

	Side		
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	
2771	Adjusts the correction to the discharge plate current at the paper leading edge in each mode. SP2751 is multiplied by these SP values. Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2772.		
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Page	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Page	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Fine: 1st Page	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
008	Separation DC: Fine: 2nd Page	*ENG	

2772	**[Special 1: Switch Timing: Lead. Edge]**		
	Adjusts the bias/ voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/ discharge plate at the paper leading edge between the erase margin area and the image area. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 30 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	[0 to 30 / **20** / 1 mm/step]
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 30 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Page	*ENG	[0 to 30 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Page	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Fine: 1st Page	*ENG	[0 to 30 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
008	Separation DC: Fine: 2nd Page	*ENG	

2773	**[Special 1: Trailing Edge Correction]** Special 1 Paper: Trailing Edge Correction		
	Adjusts the correction to the paper transfer roller current for the paper trailing edge in each mode. SP2753 and SP2757 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec Note ▪ The paper trailing edge area can be adjusted with SP2774.		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2774	**[Special 1: Switch Timing: Trail. Edge]**		
	Adjusts the bias/voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/discharge plate at the paper trailing edge between the erase margin area and the image area. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[–100 to 0 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[–100 to 0 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2781	**[Special 1: LL]** Special 1 Paper: LL Environment Coefficient Adjustment		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as LL, SP2753 and SP2757 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **80** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **90** / 5%/step]
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **80** / 5%/step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2781	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as LL, SP2751 is multiplied by these SP values.		
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **200** / 5%/step]
006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side:	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **120** / 5%/step]
008	Separation DC: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2782	**[Special 1: ML]** Special 1 Paper: ML Environment Coefficient Adjustment		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode When the environment is detected as ML, SP2753 and SP2757 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **90** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **90** / 5%/step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2782	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as ML, SP2751 is multiplied by these SP values.		
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **200** / 5%/step]
006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side:	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **170** / 5%/step]
007	Separation DC: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **110** / 5%/step]
008	Separation DC: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2783	**[Special 1: MM]** Special 1 Paper: MM Environment Coefficient Adjustment		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as MM, SP2753 and SP2757 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **100** / 5%/step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2783	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as MM, SP2751 is multiplied by these SP values.		
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **170** / 5%/step]
006	Separation DC: Plain : 2nd Side:	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **140** / 5%/step]
007	Separation DC: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **100** / 5%/step]
008	Separation DC: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2784	**[Special 1: MH]** Special 1 Paper: MH Environment Coefficient Adjustment		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as MH, SP2753 and SP2757 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **110** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **110** / 5%/step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2784	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as MH, SP2751 is multiplied by these SP values.		
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **100** / 5%/step]
006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side:	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **90** / 5%/step]
007	Separation DC: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **90** / 5%/step]
008	Separation DC: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2785	**[Special 1: HH]** Special 1 Paper: HH Environment Coefficient Adjustment		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as HH, SP2753 and SP2757 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **120** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **120** / 5%/step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2785	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as HH, SP2751 is multiplied by these SP values.		
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **50** / 5%/step]
006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side:	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **80** / 5%/step]
007	Separation DC: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **80** / 5%/step]
008	Separation DC: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2801	**[Special 2: Bias]**		
	Adjusts the DC voltage of the discharge plate for special paper 2. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 5000 / **1500** / 10 –V/step]
002	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	[0 to 5000 / **1500** / 10 –V/step]
003	Separation DC: Fine: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 5000 / **1000** / 10 –V/step]
004	Separation DC: Fine: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2803	**[Special 2: Bias: BW]**
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for special paper 2 in black-and-white mode. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec

001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **B222: 22/ B224: 30** / 1 –μA /step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **12** / 1 –μA /step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2807	**[Special 2: Bias: FC]**		
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for special paper 2 in full color mode. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **B222: 33/ B224: 40** / 1 –μA /step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **B222: 33/ B224: 45** / 1 –μA /step]
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **15** / 1 –μA /step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2811	**[Special 2: Paper Size Correction]**		
	Adjusts the size correction coefficient for the paper transfer roller current for each paper size. SP2803 and SP2807 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S1	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **100** / 5%/step] S1 size ≥ 297 mm (Paper width)

002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side: S1	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side: S1	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **100** / 5%/step] S1 size ≥ 297 mm (Paper width)
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side: S1	*ENG	
005	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **120** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
006	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **130** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
007	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **120** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
008	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side: S2	*ENG	
009	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **140** / 5%/step] 275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)
010	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **200** / 5%/step] 275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)
011	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **130** / 5%/step] 275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)
012	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side: S3	*ENG	
013	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **160** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
014	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **220** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
015	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **140** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)

016	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side: S4	*ENG	
017	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **180** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)
018	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **240** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)
019	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **150** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)
020	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side: S5	*ENG	

2821	**[Special 2: Leading Edge Correction]** Special 2 Paper: Leading Edge Correction		
	Adjusts the correction to the paper transfer roller current at the paper leading edge in each mode. SP2803 and SP2807 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2822.		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **150** / 5%/step]
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2821	Adjusts the correction to the discharge plate current at the paper leading edge in each mode. SP2801 is multiplied by these SP values. Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2822.		
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Page	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Page	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Fine: 1st Page	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
008	Separation DC: Fine: 2nd Page	*ENG	

2822	**[Special 2: Switch Timing: Lead. Edge]**		
	Adjusts the bias/ voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/ discharge plate at the paper leading edge between the erase margin area and the image area. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 30 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	[0 to 30 / **20** / 1 mm/step]
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 30 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Page	*ENG	[0 to 30 / **0** / 1 mm/step]

006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Page	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Fine: 1st Page	*ENG	[0 to 30 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
008	Separation DC: Fine: 2nd Page	*ENG	

2823	**[Special 2: Trailing Edge Correction]** Special 2 Paper: Trailing Edge Correction		
	Adjusts the correction to the paper transfer roller current for the paper trailing edge in each mode. SP2803 and SP2807 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec Note ▪ The paper trailing edge area can be adjusted with SP2824.		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2824	**[Special 2: Switch Timing: Trail. Edge]**		
	Adjusts the bias/voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/discharge plate at the paper trailing edge between the erase margin area and the image area. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[–100 to 0 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[–100 to 0 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2831	**[Special 2: LL]** Special 2 Paper: LL Environment Coefficient Adjustment		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as LL, SP2803 and SP2807 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **80** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **90** / 5%/step]
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **80** / 5%/step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	
005-008	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as LL, SP2801 is multiplied by these SP values.		

005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **200** / 5%/step]
006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side:	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **120** / 5%/step]
008	Separation DC: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2832	**[Special 2: ML]** Special 2 Paper: ML Environment Coefficient Adjustment		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode When the environment is detected as ML, SP2803 and SP2807 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **90** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **90** / 5%/step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	
005-008	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as ML, SP2801 is multiplied by these SP values.		
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **200** / 5%/step]
006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side:	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **170** / 5%/step]

007	Separation DC: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **110** / 5%/step]
008	Separation DC: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2833	**[Special 2: MM]** Special 2 Paper: MM Environment Coefficient Adjustment		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as MM, SP2803 and SP2807 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **100** / 5%/step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	
005-008	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as MM, SP2801 is multiplied by these SP values.		
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **170** / 5%/step]
006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side:	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **140** / 5%/step]
007	Separation DC: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **100** / 5%/step]
008	Separation DC: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2834	**[Special 2: MH]** Special 2 Paper: MH Environment Coefficient Adjustment		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as MH, SP2803 and SP2807 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **110** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **110** / 5%/step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	
005-008	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as MH, SP2801 is multiplied by these SP values.		
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **100** / 5%/step]
006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side:	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **90** / 5%/step]
007	Separation DC: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **90** / 5%/step]
008	Separation DC: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2835	**[Special 2: HH]** Special 2 Paper: HH Environment Coefficient Adjustment		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as HH, SP2803 and SP2807 are multiplied by these SP values. Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **120** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Plain: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **120** / 5%/step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	
005-008	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as HH, SP2801 is multiplied by these SP values.		
005	Separation DC: Plain: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **50** / 5%/step]
006	Separation DC: Plain: 2nd Side:	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **80** / 5%/step]
007	Separation DC: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **80** / 5%/step]
008	Separation DC: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2851	**[Special 3: Bias]**		
	Adjusts the DC voltage of the discharge plate for special paper 3. Thick 1: 115 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Separation DC: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 5000 / **1000** / 10 –V/step]
002	Separation DC: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Separation DC: Fine: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 5000 / **0** / 10 –V/step]
004	Separation DC: Fine: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2852	**[Special 3: Bias: BW]**		
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for special paper 3 in black-and-white mode. Thick 1: 115 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **18** / 1 –μA /step]
002	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **12** / 1 –μA /step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2857	**[Special 3: Bias: FC]**		
	Adjusts the current for the paper transfer roller for special paper 3 in full color mode. Thick 1: 115 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **22** / 1 –μA /step]
002	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **15** / 1 –μA /step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2861	**[Special 3: Paper Size Correction]**		
	Adjusts the size correction coefficient for the paper transfer roller current for each paper size. SP2852 and SP2857 are multiplied by these SP values. Thick 1: 115 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side: S1	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **100** / 5%/step] S1 size ≥ 297 mm (Paper width)
002	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side: S1	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side: S1	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **100** / 5%/step] S1 size ≥ 297 mm (Paper width)
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side: S1	*ENG	
005	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **130** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)

006	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **150** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
007	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side: S2	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **120** / 5%/step] 297 mm ≥ S2 size ≥ 275 mm (Paper width)
008	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side: S2	*ENG	
009	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **180** / 5%/step] 275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)
010	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **240** / 5%/step] 275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)
011	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side: S3	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **130** / 5%/step] 275 mm ≥ S3 size ≥ 210 mm (Paper width)
012	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side: S3	*ENG	
013	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **230** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
014	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **370** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
015	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side: S4	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **140** / 5%/step] 210 mm ≥ S4 size ≥ 148 mm (Paper width)
016	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side: S4	*ENG	
017	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **290** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)

018	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **500** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)
019	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side: S5	*ENG	[100 to 600 / **150** / 5%/step] 148 mm ≥ S5 size (Paper width)
020	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side: S5	*ENG	

2871	**[Special 3: Leading Edge Correction]** Special 3 Paper: Leading Edge Correction		
	Adjusts the correction to the paper transfer roller current at the paper leading edge in each mode. SP2852 and SP2857 are multiplied by these SP values. Thick 1: 115 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2872.		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	
005-008	Adjusts the correction to the discharge plate current at the paper leading edge in each mode. SP2851 is multiplied by these SP values. Note ▪ The paper leading edge area can be adjusted with SP2872.		
005	Separation DC: Thick 1: 1st Page	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]

006	Separation DC: Thick 1: 2nd Page	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Fine: 1st Page	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
008	Separation DC: Fine: 2nd Page	*ENG	

2872	**[Special 3: Switch Timing: Lead. Edge]**		
	Adjusts the bias/ voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/ discharge plate at the paper leading edge between the erase margin area and the image area. Thick 1: 115 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 30 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 30 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	
005	Separation DC: Thick 1: 1st Page	*ENG	[0 to 30 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
006	Separation DC: Thick 1: 2nd Page	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: Fine: 1st Page	*ENG	[0 to 30 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
008	Separation DC: Fine: 2nd Page	*ENG	

2873	**[Special 3: Trailing Edge Correction]** Special 3 Paper: Trailing Edge Correction		
	Adjusts the correction to the paper transfer roller current for the paper trailing edge in each mode. SP2852 and SP2857 are multiplied by these SP values. Thick 1: 115 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec Note ▪ The paper trailing edge area can be adjusted with SP2874.		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[0 to 400 / **100** / 5%/step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2874	**[Special 3: Switch Timing: Trail. Edge]**		
	Adjusts the bias/voltage switch timing of the paper transfer roller/discharge plate at the paper trailing edge between the erase margin area and the image area. Thick 1: 115 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[–100 to 0 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[–100 to 0 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2881	**[Special 3: LL]** Special 3 Paper: LL Environment Coefficient Adjustment		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as LL, SP2852 and SP2857 are multiplied by these SP values. Thick 1: 115 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **80** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **80** / 5%/step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	
005-008	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as LL, SP2851 is multiplied by these SP values.		
005	Separation DC: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **180** / 5%/step]
006	Separation DC: Thick 1: 2nd Side:	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **240** / 5%/step]
007	Separation DC: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **120** / 5%/step]
008	Separation DC: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2882	**[Special 3: ML]** Special 3 Paper: ML Environment Coefficient Adjustment		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode When the environment is detected as ML, SP2852 and SP2857 are multiplied by these SP values. Thick 1: 115 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **90** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **90** / 5%/step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	
005-008	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as ML, SP2851 is multiplied by these SP values.		
005	Separation DC: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **140** / 5%/step]
006	Separation DC: Thick 1: 2nd Side:	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **240** / 5%/step]
007	Separation DC: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **110** / 5%/step]
008	Separation DC: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2883	**[Special 3: MM]** Special 3 Paper: MM Environment Coefficient Adjustment		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as MM, SP2852 and SP2857 are multiplied by these SP values. Thick 1: 115 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **100** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **100** / 5%/step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	
005-008	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as MM, SP2851 is multiplied by these SP values.		
005	Separation DC: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **100** / 5%/step]
006	Separation DC: Thick 1: 2nd Side:	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **200** / 5%/step]
007	Separation DC: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **100** / 5%/step]
008	Separation DC: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2884	**[Special 3: MH]** Special 3 Paper: MH Environment Coefficient Adjustment		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as MH, SP2852 and SP2857 are multiplied by these SP values. Thick 1: 115 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **110** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **110** / 5%/step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	
005-008	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as MH, SP2851 is multiplied by these SP values.		
005	Separation DC: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **90** / 5%/step]
006	Separation DC: Thick 1: 2nd Side:	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **180** / 5%/step]
007	Separation DC: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **90** / 5%/step]
008	Separation DC: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2885	**[Special 3: HH]** Special 3 Paper: HH Environment Coefficient Adjustment		
	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as HH, SP2852 and SP2857 are multiplied by these SP values. Thick 1: 115 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **120** / 5%/step]
002	Paper Transfer: Thick 1: 2nd Side	*ENG	
003	Paper Transfer: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **120** / 5%/step]
004	Paper Transfer: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	
005-008	Adjusts the environment coefficient for each mode. When the environment is detected as HH, SP2851 is multiplied by these SP values.		
005	Separation DC: Thick 1: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **80** / 5%/step]
006	Separation DC: Thick 1: 2nd Side:	*ENG	
007	Separation DC: FINE: 1st Side	*ENG	[10 to 250 / **80** / 5%/step]
008	Separation DC: FINE: 2nd Side	*ENG	

2901	**[OPC Drum Brake Time]**		
	Adjusts the time when the OPC drum motor reverses from normal rotation after job end. **DFU** Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Thick 1: 115 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
001	Plain	*ENG	[0 to 1500 / **500** / 10 msec/step]
002	Thick 1	*ENG	
003	Thick 2 & FINE	*ENG	

2902	**[OPC Drum Reverse Time]**		
	Adjusts the time for how long the OPC drum motor reverses after job end. **DFU**		
001	All: BW	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **50** / 10 msec/step]
002	All: FC	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **40** / 10 msec/step]

2903	**[Image Transfer Roller Brake Time]**		
	Adjusts the time when the image transfer belt motor reverses from normal rotation after job end. **DFU** Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Thick 1: 115 mm/sec, Thick 2&Fine: 77 mm/sec		
003	Plain	*ENG	[0 to 1500 / **500** / 10 msec/step]
004	Thick 1	*ENG	
005	Thick 2 & FINE	*ENG	

2904	**[OPC Drum Reverse Time]**		
	Adjusts the time for how long the image transfer belt motor reverses after job end. **DFU**		
003	All	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **30** / 10 msec/step]

2906	**[Drum Stop Angle]**		
	DFU		
001	Y	*ENG	[0 to 359 / **0** / 1 deg/step]
002	C	*ENG	
003	M	*ENG	
004	Bk	*ENG	
*005	Drum Gear Phase Adj. Range	*ENG	

*For Future Use

2907	**[ACS Setting (FC to Bk)]**		
	Adjusts the threshold for moving away the image transfer belt from the color PCUs. This SP moves the image transfer belt away from the color PCUs when the number of B/W image printouts reaches the number of sheets specified with this SP after consecutive full color image printouts in the full color mode. If this SP is set to "0", the image transfer belt does not move away.		
001	Continuous Bk Pages	*ENG	[0 to 10 / **0** / 1 sheet/step]

2908	**[Gain Adjust]** Gain Adjustment of Image Transfer Belt Motor		
	DFU		
001	205 mm/sec	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1/step]] 0: Gain: High 1: Gain:Low
002	154 mm/sec	*ENG	
003	115 mm/sec	*ENG	
004	77 mm/sec	*ENG	

2914	**[Dust Shield Shutter Motor]**		
001	Stop Delay: Open	*ENG	**DFU** [1 to 50 / **38** / 1 ms/step]
002	Stop Delay: Close	*ENG	
003	Open Execution	*ENG	Opens the shutter on the laser optics housing unit manually for test purposes.
004	Close Execution	*ENG	Closes the shutter on the laser optics housing unit manually for test purposes.

2930	**[SecondaryFB: Threshold]** Paper Transfer Roller Feed-back: Threshold Adjustment		
	Adjusts the threshold between high resistance (division 1) and low resistance (division 2) at the paper transfer roller. This SP affects SP2931 to SP2939.		
001	Voltage	*ENG	[0 to 7000 / **5000** / 10 –V/step]

2931	**[SecondaryFB: Plain]**		
	Adjusts the upper limit voltage for the paper transfer roller. These SPs are only used for plain paper use in full color mode.		
001	Limit Voltage: Division 1	*ENG	[0 to 7000 / **6000** / 10 –V/step]
002	Limit Voltage: Division 2	*ENG	[0 to 7000 / **5000** / 10 –V/step]

2932	**[SecondaryFB: Thin]**		
	Adjusts the upper limit voltage for the paper transfer roller. These SPs are only used for thin paper use in full color mode.		
001	Limit Voltage: Division 1	*ENG	[0 to 7000 / **6000** / 10 –V/step]
002	Limit Voltage: Division 2	*ENG	[0 to 7000 / **5000** / 10 –V/step]

2933	**[SecondaryFB: Special 1]**		
	Adjusts the upper limit voltage for the paper transfer roller. These SPs are only used for special 1 paper use in full color mode.		
001	Limit Voltage: Division 1	*ENG	[0 to 7000 / **6000** / 10 –V/step]
002	Limit Voltage: Division 2	*ENG	[0 to 7000 / **5000** / 10 –V/step]

2934	**[SecondaryFB: Special 2]**		
	Adjusts the upper limit voltage for the paper transfer roller. These SPs are only used for special 2 paper use in full color mode.		
001	Limit Voltage: Division 1	*ENG	[0 to 7000 / **6000** / 10 –V/step]
002	Limit Voltage: Division 2	*ENG	[0 to 7000 / **5000** / 10 –V/step]

2935	**[SecondaryFB: Thick 1]**		
	Adjusts the upper limit voltage for the paper transfer roller. These SPs are only used for thick 1 paper use in full color mode.		
001	Limit Voltage: Division 1	*ENG	[0 to 7000 / **6000** / 10 –V/step]
002	Limit Voltage: Division 2	*ENG	[0 to 7000 / **5000** / 10 –V/step]

2936	**[SecondaryFB: Thick 2]**		
	Adjusts the upper limit voltage for the paper transfer roller. These SPs are only used for thick 2 paper use in full color mode.		
001	Limit Voltage: Division 1	*ENG	[0 to 7000 / **6000** / 10 –V/step]
002	Limit Voltage: Division 2	*ENG	[0 to 7000 / **5000** / 10 –V/step]

2937	**[SecondaryFB: Thick 3]**		
	Adjusts the upper limit voltage for the paper transfer roller. These SPs are only used for thick 3 paper use in full color mode.		
001	Limit Voltage: Division 1	*ENG	[0 to 7000 / **6000** / 10 –V/step]
002	Limit Voltage: Division 2	*ENG	[0 to 7000 / **5000** / 10 –V/step]

2938	**[SecondaryFB: OHP]**		
	Adjusts the upper limit voltage for the paper transfer roller. These SPs are only used for OHP paper use in full color mode.		
001	Limit Voltage: Division 1	*ENG	[0 to 7000 / **6000** / 10 –V/step]
002	Limit Voltage: Division 2	*ENG	[0 to 7000 / **5000** / 10 –V/step]

2939	**[SecondaryFB: Special 3]**		
	Adjusts the upper limit voltage for the paper transfer roller. These SPs are only used for special 3 paper use in full color mode.		
001	Limit Voltage: Division 1	*ENG	[0 to 7000 / **6000** / 10 –V/step]
002	Limit Voltage: Division 2	*ENG	[0 to 7000 / **5000** / 10 –V/step]

SP3-XXX (Process)

3011	**[Process Cont. Manual Execution]**		
001	Normal	-	Executes the normal process control manually (potential control). Check the result with SP3-325-001 and 3-012-001 after executing this SP.
002	Density Adjustment	-	Executes the toner density adjustment manually.
003	Pre-ACC	-	Executes the process control that is normally done before ACC. The type of process control is selected with SP3-041-004.
004	Full MUSIC	-	Executes the process control that is normally done at the same time as MUSIC. This SP does the MUSIC (line position adjustment) twice.
005	Normal MUSIC	-	Executes the process control that is normally done at the same time as MUSIC. This SP does the MUSIC (line position adjustment) once.

3012	**[Process Cont. Check Result]** Process Control Self-check Result		
	Displays the result of the latest process control self-check. All colors are displayed. The results are displayed in the order “Y C M K” e.g., 11 (Y) 99 (C) 11 (M) 11 (K): The self-check for Cyan failed but the others were successful. See 4.1.2 in the troubleshooting section for details.		
001	History: Latest	*ENG	[11111111 to 99999999 / - / 1/step]

002	Result: Latest 1	*ENG	
003	Result: Latest 2	*ENG	
004	Result: Latest 3	*ENG	
005	Result: Latest 4	*ENG	
006	Result: Latest 5	*ENG	
007	Result: Latest 6	*ENG	
008	Result: Latest 7	*ENG	
009	Result: Latest 8	*ENG	
010	Result: Latest 9	*ENG	

3013	**[T Sensor Initial Set: Execution]** Developer Initialization Setting		
001	Execution: ALL	-	**DFU**
002	Execution: COL (MCY)	-	
003	Execution: Bk	-	
004	Execution: M	-	
005	Execution: C	-	
006	Execution: Y	-	

3014	**[T Sensor Initial Set Result: Display]** Developer Initialization Result: Display		
	Display: YCMK	*ENG	[0 to 9999 / - / -] 1: Success 2 to 9: Failure
001	Displays the developer initialization result. See 4.1.1 "Developer Initialization Result"" for details on the meaning of each code. All colors are displayed. Values are displayed in the order Y C M Bk. e.g., 1 (Y) 2 (C) 1 (M) 1 (Bk): Initialization of Cyan failed but the others succeeded.		

3015	**[Forced Toner Supply]** Forced Toner Supply ([Color])		
001	Execution: ALL	-	Executes the manual toner supply to the development unit.
002	Execution: COL (MCY)	-	
003	Execution: Bk	-	
004	Execution: M	-	
005	Execution: C	-	
006	Execution: Y	-	

3016	**[Forced Toner Supply: Setting]** Forced Toner Supply Setting ([Color])		
	Specifies the manual toner supply time for each color.		
001	Supply Time: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 30 / **4** / 1 sec/step]
002	Supply Time: M	*ENG	
003	Supply Time: C	*ENG	
004	Supply Time: Y	*ENG	

3020	**[Vt Limit Error]**		
	DFU		
001	Delta Vt Threshold	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **5** / 0.01 V/step]
002	Upper Threshold	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **4.7** / 0.01 V/step]
003	Threshold Number of Upper counter	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **20** / 1 time/step]
004	Lower Threshold	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **0.5** / 0.01 V/step]
005	Number of Lower counter	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **10** / 1 time/step]
006	Upper Counter: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **0** / 1 time/step]
007	Upper Counter: M	*ENG	
008	Upper Counter: C	*ENG	
009	Upper Counter: Y	*ENG	
010	Lower Counter: Bk	*ENG	
011	Lower Counter: M	*ENG	
012	Lower Counter: C	*ENG	
013	Lower Counter: Y	*ENG	

3021	**[TD Sensor Initial Set]** Developer Initialization Setting		
	Specifies the developer agitation time for each color at the developer initialization. **DFU**		
001	Agitation Time: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **30** / 1 sec/step]
002	Agitation Time: M	*ENG	
003	Agitation Time: C	*ENG	

004	Agitation Time: Y	*ENG	
005-008	Sets the execution flag of the developer initialization for each color. **DFU**		
005	Execution Flag: Bk	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: Flag OFF, 1: Flag ON This flag is cleared after executing TD sensor initialization.
006	Execution Flag: M	*ENG	
007	Execution Flag: C	*ENG	
008	Execution Flag: Y	*ENG	
009	Prohibition	*ENG	Enables or disables developer initialization. **DFU** [0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: Enable, 1: Disable

3022	**[Toner Replenishment Mode] DFU**		
	Specifies the toner supply time for each color in the toner supply mode.		
001	Number: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 30 / **8** / 1 sec/step]
002	Number: M	*ENG	[0 to 30 / **6** / 1 sec/step]
003	Number: C	*ENG	
004	Number: Y	*ENG	
005-008	Sets the execution flag for the toner supply mode for each color.		
005	Execution Flag: Bk	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: Flag OFF, 1: Flag ON This flag is cleared after executing TD sensor initialization.
006	Execution Flag: M	*ENG	
007	Execution Flag: C	*ENG	
008	Execution Flag: Y	*ENG	

3041	[Process Control Type]		
001	Voltage Control	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1/step] Alphanumeric 0: FIXED (Use the fixed values for the charge DC bias and development DC bias set with SP2-005 and SP2-229.) 1: CONTROL
	Enables or disables potential control.		
002	LD Power Control	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1/step] Alphanumeric 0: FIXED (at the value in SP2221-xxx) 1: CONTROL (adjusted by process control)
	Selects the LD power control mode.		
004	Pre-ACC Process Control	*ENG	[0 to 2 / **2** / 1/step] 0: Not Executed 1: Process Control 2: TC Control (TD Adjustment) 3: Not used
	Selects the process control mode that is done before ACC.		

3043	[TD Adjustment Mode]		
001	Repeat Number: Power ON	*ENG	[0 to 9 / **4** / 1 time/step]
	Specifies the maximum number of repeats of the toner density adjustment at power on. 0: Disabled, 1 to 3: Repeat number, 4: Repeat three times (No consumption mode) 5: Repeat three times (Toner is supplied only when the toner density is too low, and toner is consumed only when the toner density is too dark.) 6 to 9: Disabled		

002	Repeat Number: Initialization	*ENG	[0 to 9 / **3** / 1 time/step]
	Specifies the maximum number of repeats of the toner density adjustment at the developer initialization. 0: Disabled, 1 to 3: Repeat number, 4: Repeat three times (No consumption mode) 5: Repeat three times (Toner is supplied only when the toner density is too low, and toner is consumed only when the toner density is too dark.) 6 to 9: Disabled		
003	Repeat Number: Non-use	*ENG	[0 to 9 / **0** / 1 time/step]
	Specifies the maximum number of repeats of the toner density adjustment in stand by mode. 0: Disabled, 1 to 3: Repeat number, 4: Repeat three times (No consumption mode) 5: Repeat three times (Toner is supplied only when the toner density is too low, and toner is consumed only when the toner density is too dark.) 6 to 9: Disabled		
004	Repeat Number: ACC	*ENG	[0 to 9 / **3** / 1 time/step]
	Specifies the maximum number of repeats of the toner density adjustment at ACC. 0: Disabled, 1 to 3: Repeat number, 4: Repeat three times (No consumption mode) 5: Repeat three times (Toner is supplied only when the toner density is too low, and toner is consumed only when the toner density is too dark.) 6 to 9: Disabled		
005	Repeat Number: Recovery	*ENG	[0 to 9 / **0** / 1 time/step]
	Not used		

006	Repeat Number: Job End	*ENG	[0 to 9 / **4** / 1 time/step]
	Specifies the maximum number of repeats of the toner density adjustment at job end. 0: Disabled, 1 to 3: Repeat number, 4: Repeat three times (No consumption mode) 5: Repeat three times (Toner is supplied only when the toner density is too low, and toner is consumed only when the toner density is too dark.) 6 to 9: Disabled		
007	Repeat Number: Interrupt	*ENG	[0 to 9 / **0** / 1 time/step]
	Specifies the maximum number of repeats of the toner density adjustment during printing. **DFU**		
008	Toner Supply Coefficient	*ENG	[0 to 25.5 / **10** / 0.1 sec/step]
	Adjusts the time for the toner supply mode when a toner density is detected to be low.		
009	Consumption pattern: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **5** / 1 time/step]
	Specifies the belt mark generating time for checking the black toner density when toner density is detected to be low at the toner density adjustment.		
010	Consumption pattern: M	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **5** / 1 time/step]
	Specifies the belt mark generating time for checking the magenta toner density when toner density is detected to be low at the toner density adjustment.		
011	Consumption pattern: C	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **5** / 1 time/step]
	Specifies the belt mark generating time for checking the cyan toner density when toner density is detected to be low at the toner density adjustment.		
012	Consumption pattern: Y	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **5** / 1 time/step]
	Specifies the belt mark generating time for checking the yellow toner density when toner density is detected to be low at the toner density adjustment.		

013	T1 Bias: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **B222: 22/B224: 30** / 1 µA/step]
	Adjusts the image transfer belt bias for Black.		
014	T1 Bias: M	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **B222: 22/B224: 30**/ 1 µA/step]
	Adjusts the image transfer belt bias for Magenta.		
015	T1 Bias: C	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **B222: 25/B224: 33**/ 1 µA/step]
	Adjusts the image transfer belt bias for Cyan.		
016	T1 Bias: Y	*ENG	[0 to 80 / **B222: 33/B224: 45** / 1 µA/step]
	Adjusts the image transfer belt bias for Yellow.		
017	Developer Mixing Time	*ENG	[0 to 250 / **10** / 1 sec/step]
	Specifies the developer mixing time at the toner density adjustment.		
018	Consumption Pattern: LD: DUTY: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 15 / **15** / 1 /step]
	Adjusts the LD duty for the toner consumption mode at the toner density adjustment. In toner consumption mode, toner is discharged when the detected development gamma values (SP3611-001) exceed the target values (SP3611-005) by more than the specified thresholds (SP3239-009).		
019	Consumption Pattern: LD: DUTY: M	*ENG	[0 to 15 / **15** / 1 /step]
	Adjusts the LD duty for the toner consumption mode at the toner density adjustment. In toner consumption mode, toner is discharged when the detected development gamma values (SP3611-002) exceed the target values (SP3611-006) by more than the specified thresholds (SP3239-009).		

020	Consumption Pattern: LD: DUTY: C	*ENG	[0 to 15 / **15** / 1 /step]
	Adjusts the LD duty for the toner consumption mode at the toner density adjustment. In toner consumption mode, toner is discharged when the detected development gamma values (SP3611-003) exceed the target values (SP3611-007) by more than the specified thresholds (SP3239-009).		
021	Consumption Pattern: LD: DUTY: Y	*ENG	[0 to 15 / **15** / 1 /step]
	Adjusts the LD duty for the toner consumption mode at the toner density adjustment. In toner consumption mode, toner is discharged when the detected development gamma values (SP3611-004) exceed the target values (SP3611-008) by more than the specified thresholds (SP3239-009).		

3044	**[Toner Supply Type]** Toner Supply Type ([Color])		
	Selects the toner supply method type.		
001	Bk	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **2** / 1/step] Alphanumeric 0: FIXED (with the supply rates stored with SP 3401) 1: PID (Vtref_Fixed) 2: PID (Vtref_Control) 3: Not used
002	M	*ENG	
003	C	*ENG	
004	Y	*ENG	

3045	**[Toner End Detection Set]**		
	Enables/disables the toner alert display on the LCD.		
001	ON/OFF	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: Detect, 1: Not Detect

3101	**[Toner End/Near End]**		
	Displays the amount of each color toner. **DFU**		
001	Toner Replenishment: Bk	*ENG	[1 to 600 / **510** / 1 g/step]
002	Toner Replenishment: M	*ENG	[1 to 600 / **400** / 1 g/step]
003	Toner Replenishment: C	*ENG	
004	Toner Replenishment: Y	*ENG	
005-008	Displays the consumed amount of each color toner.		
005	Toner Consumption: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 3000 / **0** / 0.001 g/step]
006	Toner Consumption: M	*ENG	
007	Toner Consumption: C	*ENG	
008	Toner Consumption: Y	*ENG	
009-012	Displays the remaining amount of each color toner. These are calculated by the operating times of the toner supply pumps.		
009	Toner Remaining: Bk	*ENG	[–50000 to 600 / **0** / 0.001 g/step]
010	Toner Remaining: M	*ENG	
011	Toner Remaining: C	*ENG	
012	Toner Remaining: Y	*ENG	

013-016	Adjusts the threshold of toner near end for each color. The toner near end message appears on the LCD when the remaining toner amount reaches this threshold. When one of these SPs (SP3-101-009 to 012 or -032 to -035) reaches this threshold, toner near end is detected.		
013	Near End Threshold: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 600 / **50** / 1 g/step]
014	Near End Threshold: M	*ENG	
015	Near End Threshold: C	*ENG	
016	Near End Threshold: Y	*ENG	
017-020	**DFU**		
017	Cartridge Error Threshold: Bk	*ENG	[–50000 to 0 / **–50000** / 1 g/step]
018	Cartridge Error Threshold: M	*ENG	
019	Cartridge Error Threshold: C	*ENG	
020	Cartridge Error Threshold: Y	*ENG	
021	Delta Vt Threshold	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **0.5** / 0.01 V/step]
	This SP is the threshold for toner end. Delta Vt: Vt-Vtref When both this SP and SP3-101-026 occur at same time, toner end is determined.		
022-025	Displays the total delta Vt (Vt-Vtref) value for each color. These are calculated by pixel counting.		
022	Delta Vt Sum: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 655 / **0** / 0.01 V/step]
023	Delta Vt Sum: M	*ENG	

024	Delta Vt Sum: C	*ENG	
025	Delta Vt Sum: Y	*ENG	
026	Delta Vt Sum Threshold	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **10** / 1 V/step]
027	Gamma Threshold: Coefficient	*ENG	Not used
028-031	Displays the consumed toner amount calculated with the pixel count for each color.		
028	Pixel: Consumption: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 3000 / **0** / 0.001 g/step]
029	Pixel: Consumption: M	*ENG	
030	Pixel: Consumption: C	*ENG	
031	Pixel: Consumption: Y	*ENG	
032-035	Displays the remaining toner amount for each color, using pixel count.		
032	Pixel: Remaining : Bk	*ENG	[-50000 to 600 / **0** / 0.001 g/step]
033	Pixel: Remaining : M	*ENG	
034	Pixel: Remaining : C	*ENG	
035	Pixel: Remaining : Y	*ENG	
036-039	Adjusts the threshold of toner end for each color.		
036	End Threshold: Bk	*ENG	Not used
037	End Threshold: M	*ENG	
038	End Threshold: C	*ENG	
039	End Threshold: Y	*ENG	
040-043	Displays the pixel M/A for each color.		

040	Pixel M/A: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **0.4** / 0.001 mg/cm^2/step]
041	Pixel M/A: M	*ENG	
042	Pixel M/A: C	*ENG	
043	Pixel M/A: Y	*ENG	
044	Delta Vt Threshold Before Near End	*ENG	Adjusts the delta Vt (Vt – Vtref) of toner end before toner near end is detected. [0 to 5 / **0.5** / 0.01 V/step]
045	Delta Vt Sum Threshold Before Near End	*ENG	Adjusts the total delta Vt (Vt – Vtref) of toner end before toner near end is detected. [0 to 255 / **10** / 1 V/step]

3102	**[Toner End Recovery]**		
	Adjusts the number of times toner supply is attempted for each color when the TD sensor continues to detect toner end during toner recovery.		
001	Repeat: Bk	*ENG	[1 to 20 / **5** / 1 time/step]
002	Repeat: M	*ENG	
003	Repeat: C	*ENG	
004	Repeat: Y	*ENG	

3131	[TE Count m: Display]		
	Display the number of toner end detections for each color.		
001	Bk	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **0** / 1 time/step]
002	M	*ENG	
003	C	*ENG	
004	Y	*ENG	

3201	[TD Sensor: Vt Display]		
	Display the current voltage of the TD sensor for each color.		
001	Current: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5.5 / **0.01** / 0.01 V/step]
002	Current: M	*ENG	
003	Current: C	*ENG	
004	Current: Y	*ENG	

3211	[Vt Shift: Display/Set]		
	Adjusts the Vt correction value for each line speed. Thick 1: 115 mm/sec, Thick 2 & FINE: 77 mm/sec		
001	Thick 1 Shift: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **B222: 0.14, B224: 0.67** / 0.01 V/step]
002	Thick 1 Shift: M	*ENG	
003	Thick 1 Shift: C	*ENG	
004	Thick 1 Shift: Y	*ENG	
005	Thick 2 & FINE Shift: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **B222: 0.28, B224: 0.81** / 0.01 V/step]
006	Thick 2 & FINE Shift: M	*ENG	

007	Thick 2 & FINE Shift: C	*ENG	
008	Thick 2 & FINE Shift: Y	*ENG	

3221	**[Vtcnt: Display/Set]**		
	Displays or adjusts the current Vtcnt value for each color.		
001	Current: Bk	*ENG	[2 to 5 / **4** / 0.01 V/step]
002	Current: M	*ENG	
003	Current: C	*ENG	
004	Current: Y	*ENG	
005-008	Displays or adjusts the Vtcnt value for each color at developer initialization. **DFU**		
005	Initial: Bk	*ENG	[2 to 5 / **4** / 0.01 V/step]
006	Initial: M	*ENG	
007	Initial: C	*ENG	
008	Initial: Y	*ENG	

3222	**[Vtref: Display/Set]**		
	Displays or adjusts the current Vtref value for each color.		
001	Current: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5.5 / **3** / 0.01 V/step]
002	Current: M	*ENG	
003	Current: C	*ENG	
004	Current: Y	*ENG	

005-008	Displays or adjusts the Vtref value for each color at developer initialization. **DFU**		
005	Initial: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5.5 / **3** / 0.01 V/step]
006	Initial: M	*ENG	
007	Initial: C	*ENG	
008	Initial: Y	*ENG	
009-012	Displays and adjusts Vtref correction by pixel coverage for each color. **DFU**		
009	Pixel Correction: Bk	*ENG	[-5 to 5.5 / **0** / 0.01 V/step]
010	Pixel Correction: M	*ENG	
011	Pixel Correction: C	*ENG	
012	Pixel Correction: Y	*ENG	

3223	**[Vtref Upper Lower: Set] DFU**		
	Adjusts the lower or upper limit value of Vtref for each color.		
001	Lower: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **2** / 0.01 V/step]
002	Lower: M	*ENG	
003	Lower: C	*ENG	
004	Lower: Y	*ENG	
005	Upper: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **4** / 0.01 V/step]
006	Upper: M	*ENG	
007	Upper: C	*ENG	
008	Upper: Y	*ENG	

009	Initial TC	*ENG	Adjusts the initial toner concentration. [1 to 15 / **7** / 0.1 wt%/step]
010	Upper: TC	*ENG	Adjusts the upper limit of the toner concentration. [1 to 15 / **10.5** / 0.1 wt%/step]
011	Lower: TC	*ENG	Adjusts the lower limit of the toner concentration. [1 to 15 / **4** / 0.1 wt%/step]
012	Upper Sensitivity	*ENG	Adjusts the upper limit of the TD sensor sensitivity. [0.2 to 0.5 / **0.44** / 0.001 V/wt% /step]
013	Lower Sensitivity	*ENG	Adjusts the lower limit of the TD sensor sensitivity. [0.2 to 0.5 / **0.209** / 0.001 V/wt% /step]
014	Toner Density Between H and M	*ENG	[1 to 10 / **3.4** / 0.1 wt%/step]
015	Toner Density Between M and L	*ENG	[1 to 10 / **4.3** / 0.1 wt%/step]

3224	**[Vtref Correction: Pixel] DFU**		
	Adjusts the coefficient of Vtref correction for each coverage and color.		
001	Low Coverage Coefficient: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1** / 0.1 /step]
002	Low Coverage Coefficient: M	*ENG	
003	Low Coverage Coefficient: C	*ENG	
004	Low Coverage Coefficient: Y	*ENG	
005	High Coverage Coefficient: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1** / 0.01 V/step]
006	High Coverage Coefficient: M	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **0.5** / 0.01 V/step]
007	High Coverage Coefficient: C	*ENG	
008	High Coverage Coefficient: Y	*ENG	
009	Low Coverage: Threshold	*ENG	Adjusts the threshold of the low coverage. [0 to 20 / **3** / 0.1 %/step]
010	High Coverage: Threshold	*ENG	Adjusts the threshold of the high coverage. [0 to 100 / **60** / 1 %/step]
011	TC Upper Limit Correction	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **0.5** / 0.1 wt%/step]
012	Upper Limit TC: Display: Bk	*ENG	[1 to 15 / **10** / 0.01 wt% /step]

013	Upper Limit TC: Display: M	*ENG	
014	Upper Limit TC: Display: C	*ENG	
015	Upper Limit TC: Display: Y	*ENG	
016	Process Control Execution Threshold	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **50** / 1 time/step]

3231	**[Toner Supply: Setting]**		
	Adjusts the coefficient of the toner supply time for each color. **DFU**		
001	Conversion Coefficient: Bk	*ENG	[0.5 to 9.99 / **1.48** / 0.01 /step]
002	Conversion Coefficient: M	*ENG	[0.5 to 9.99 / **1.67**/ 0.01 /step]
003	Conversion Coefficient: C	*ENG	[0.5 to 9.99 / **1.45** / 0.01 /step]
004	Conversion Coefficient: Y	*ENG	[0.5 to 9.99 / **1.74** / 0.01 /step]

3232	**[Toner Supply Coefficient: Setting] DFU**		
001	Vt Proportion: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 2550 / **50** / 1 /step]
002	Vt Proportion: M	*ENG	
003	Vt Proportion: C	*ENG	
004	Vt Proportion: Y	*ENG	
005	Pixel Proportion: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 2.55 / **0.47** / 0.01 /step]
006	Pixel Proportion: M	*ENG	

007	Pixel Proportion: C	*ENG	
008	Pixel Proportion: Y	*ENG	
009	Vt Integral Control: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 2550 / **500** / 1 /step]
010	Vt Integral Control: M	*ENG	
011	Vt Integral Control: C	*ENG	
012	Vt Integral Control: Y	*ENG	
013	Vt Sum Times: Bk	*ENG	[1 to 255 / **20** / 1 time/step]
014	Vt Sum Times: M	*ENG	
015	Vt Sum Times: C	*ENG	
016	Vt Sum Times: Y	*ENG	

3233	**[Pixel Proportion Coefficient 2: Setting] DFU**		
001	Correction Coefficient: 1	*ENG	[0 to 2.55 / **1** / 0.01 /step]
002	Correction Coefficient: 2	*ENG	[0 to 2.55 / **0.5** / 0.01 /step]
003	Correction Coefficient: 3	*ENG	[0 to 2.55 / **0** / 0.01 /step]
004	Correction Coefficient: 4	*ENG	[0 to 2.55 / **0.25** / 0.01 /step]
005	Correction Coefficient: 5	*ENG	[0 to 2.55 / **0.5** / 0.01 /step]

3234	**[Pixel Proportion Coefficient 3: Setting] DFU**		
001	Correction Value 1	*ENG	[-0.1 to 0 / -**0.01** / 0.01 /step]
002	Correction Value 2	*ENG	[0 to 0.1 / **0.01** / 0.01 /step]

3235	[Toner Supply Coefficient: Display] DFU		
001	Pixel Proportion 2: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 2.55 / **1** / 0.01 /step]
002	Pixel Proportion 2: M	*ENG	
003	Pixel Proportion 2: C	*ENG	
004	Pixel Proportion 2: Y	*ENG	
005	Pixel Proportion 3: Bk	*ENG	[0.7 to 1.3 / **1** / 0.01 /step]
006	Pixel Proportion 3: M	*ENG	
007	Pixel Proportion 3: C	*ENG	
008	Pixel Proportion 3: Y	*ENG	
009	Vt Integral Value: Bk	*ENG	[-255 to 255 / **0** / 0.01 /step]
010	Vt Integral Value: M	*ENG	
011	Vt Integral Value: C	*ENG	
012	Vt Integral Value: Y	*ENG	

3236	[Toner Supply Consumption: Display] DFU		
	Displays the toner amount of the latest toner supply for each color.		
001	Latest: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 40000 / **0** / 0.1 mg/step]
002	Latest: M	*ENG	
003	Latest: C	*ENG	
004	Latest: Y	*ENG	

3237	**[Developer Mixing Setting]**		
	Displays the toner amount of the latest toner supply for each color. **DFU**		
001	Mixing Time	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **5** / 1 sec/step]

3238	**[Vt Target: Setting]**		
	Displays the Vt target value at developer initialization. **DFU**		
001	Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **2.7** / 0.01 V/step]
002	M	*ENG	
003	C	*ENG	
004	Y	*ENG	

3239	**[Vtref Correction: Setting]**		
	Adjusts the parameter for Vtref correction at the process control.		
001	(+)Consumption: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **0.1** / 0.01 V/step]
002	(+)Consumption: M	*ENG	
003	(+)Consumption: C	*ENG	
004	(+)Consumption: Y	*ENG	
005	(-)Consumption: Bk	*ENG	
006	(-)Consumption: M	*ENG	
007	(-)Consumption: C	*ENG	
008	(-)Consumption: Y	*ENG	
009-012	Threshold for development gamma rank.		

009	P Rank 1 Threshold	*ENG	[0 to 2 / **0.2** / 0.1 /step]
010	P Rank 2 Threshold	*ENG	[0 to 2 / **0.1** / 0.1 /step]
011	P Rank 3 Threshold	*ENG	[-2 to 0 / **-0.1** / 0.1 /step]
012	P Rank 4 Threshold	*ENG	[-2 to 0 / **-0.2** / 0.1 /step]
013-014	Threshold for image density rank on the image transfer belt.		
013	T Rank 1 Threshold	*ENG	[-1 to 0 / **-0.2** / 0.01 V/step]
014	T Rank 2 Threshold	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **0.2** / 0.01 V/step]

3241	**[Background Potential Setting]**		
001	Coefficient: Bk	*ENG	These are parameters for calculating the charge bias referring to the development bias at process control. [-1000 to 1000 / **0** / 1 /step] DC charge bias = Development bias x (1 + 0.001 x these vales) + SP3-241-005 to -008
002	Coefficient: M	*ENG	
003	Coefficient: C	*ENG	
004	Coefficient: Y	*ENG	
005	Offset: Bk	*ENG	These are additional values for calculating the charge bias referring to the development bias at process control. [0 to 255 / **140** / 1 V/step] DC charge bias = Development bias x (1 + 0.001 x SP3-241-001 to -004) + these values
006	Offset: M	*ENG	
007	Offset: C	*ENG	
008	Offset: Y	*ENG	

3242	[LD Power Setting]		
	Adjusts the coefficient for LD power control value at the process control.		
001	Coefficient: Bk	*ENG	[-1000 to 1000 / **75** / 1 /step]
002	Coefficient: M	*ENG	
003	Coefficient: C	*ENG	
004	Coefficient: Y	*ENG	
005	Offset: Bk	*ENG	[-1000 to 1000 / **65** / 1 /step]
006	Offset: M	*ENG	
007	Offset: C	*ENG	
008	Offset: Y	*ENG	

3251	[Coverage]		
	These (-001 to -016) are coefficients for SP3-222-009 to -012.		
001	Latest Pixel: Bk	*ENG	Displays the latest coverage for each color. [0 to 9999 / **0** / 1 cm^2/step]
002	Latest Pixel: M	*ENG	
003	Latest Pixel: C	*ENG	
004	Latest Pixel: Y	*ENG	
005-008	Displays the average coverage of each color for the Vtref correction. "Average S" is defined when the number of developed pages does not reach the number specified with SP3251-017.		
005	Average S: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **5** / 0.01 %/step]
006	Average S: M	*ENG	
007	Average S: C	*ENG	

008	Average S: Y	*ENG	
009-012	Displays the average coverage of each color for the Vtref correction. "Average M" is defined when the number of developed pages does not reach the number specified with SP3251-018.		
009	Average M: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **5** / 0.01 %/step]
010	Average M: M	*ENG	
011	Average M: C	*ENG	
012	Average M: Y	*ENG	
013-016	Displays the average coverage of each color for the Vtref correction. "Average L" is defined when the number of developed pages does not reach the number specified with SP3-251-019.		
013	Average L: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **5** / 0.01 %/step]
014	Average L: M	*ENG	
015	Average L: C	*ENG	
016	Average L: Y	*ENG	
017-019	Adjusts the threshold for SP3-251-005 to -016.		
017	Total Page Setting: S	*ENG	[1 to 100 / **10** / 1 sheet/step]
018	Total Page Setting: M	*ENG	[1 to 500 / **10** / 1 sheet/step]
019	Total Page Setting: L	*ENG	[1 to 999 / **50** / 1 sheet/step]

024-027	Displays the latest coverage ratio for each color.		
024	Latest Coverage: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 100 / - / 0.01 %/step]
025	Latest Coverage: M	*ENG	
026	Latest Coverage: C	*ENG	
027	Latest Coverage: Y	*ENG	

3311	**[ID Sensor Detection Value: Vofset]**		
	Displays the ID sensor (regular) offset voltage for Vsg adjustments.		
001	Voffset reg: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5.5 / **-** / 0.01 V/step]
002	Voffset reg: M	*ENG	
003	Voffset reg: C	*ENG	
004	Voffset reg: Y	*ENG	
005-007	Displays the ID sensor (diffusion) offset voltage for Vsg adjustments.		
005	Voffset dif: M	*ENG	[0 to 5.5 / **-** / 0.01 V/step]
006	Voffset dif: C	*ENG	
007	Voffset dif: Y	*ENG	
008-010	Displays the ID sensor offset voltage for Vsg adjustments.		
008	Voffset TM (Front)	*ENG	[0 to 5.5 / **-** / 0.01 V/step]
009	Voffset TM (Center)	*ENG	
010	Voffset TM (Rear)	*ENG	

3313	[ID Sensor Detection Value: Vsgave]		
	Not used		
001	Vsgave reg: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5.5 / - / 0.01 V/step]
002	Vsgave reg: M	*ENG	
003	Vsgave reg: C	*ENG	
004	Vsgave reg: Y	*ENG	
005-007	Not used		
005	Vsgave dif: M	*ENG	[0 to 5.5 / - / 0.01 V/step]
006	Vsgave dif: C	*ENG	
007	Vsgave dif: Y	*ENG	
008-010	Not used		
008	Vsgave TM (Front)	*ENG	[0 to 5.5 / - / 0.01 V/step]
009	Vsgave TM (Center)	*ENG	
010	Vsgave TM (Rear)	*ENG	

3321	[Vsg Adjustment: Execution]		
010	P/TM Sensor All	-	Execute the ID sensor initialization setting for all sensors

3322	[Vsg Adjustment Result: Vsg]		
	Displays the result value of the Vsg adjustment for each sensor.		
001	Vsg reg: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 5.5 / - / 0.01 V/step]
002	Vsg reg: M	*ENG	
003	Vsg reg: C	*ENG	
004	Vsg reg: Y	*ENG	
005	Vsg dif: M	*ENG	[0 to 5.5 / - / 0.01 V/step]
006	Vsg dif: C	*ENG	
007	Vsg dif: Y	*ENG	
008	Vsg TM (Front)	*ENG	[0 to 5.5 / - / 0.01 V/step]
009	Vsg TM (Center)	*ENG	
010	Vsg TM (Rear)	*ENG	

3323	[Vsg Adjustment Result: Ifsg] DFU		
001	Ifsg: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 50 / - / 0.1 mA/step]
002	Ifsg: M	*ENG	
003	Ifsg: C	*ENG	
004	Ifsg: Y	*ENG	
005	Ifsg TM (Front)	*ENG	[0 to 50 / - / 0.1 mA/step]
006	Ifsg TM (Center)	*ENG	
007	Ifsg TM (Rear)	*ENG	

3324	[Vsg Adjustment: Set] DFU		
002	Vofset Error Counter	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **-** / 0.1 time/step]
003	Vofset Error Counter	*ENG	
004	Vofset Threshold	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1** / 0.01 V/step]
005	Vsg Upper Threshold	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **4.5** / 0.01 V/step]
006	Vsg Lower Threshold	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **3.5** / 0.01 V/step]

3325	[Vsg Adjustment Result] Displays the result of the Vsg adjustment. The displayed numbers mean the result of each sensor (sensor for Front, sensor for Bk, sensor for Cyan, sensor for Center, sensor for Magenta, sensor for Yellow and sensor for Rear).		
001	Latest	*ENG	[1111111 to 9999999 / **9999999** / 1 /step] 9: Unexpected error 3: Offset voltage error 2: Vsg adjustment value error 1: O.K
002	Latest 1	*ENG	
003	Latest 2	*ENG	
004	Latest 3	*ENG	
005	Latest 4	*ENG	
006	Latest 5	*ENG	
007	Latest 6	*ENG	
008	Latest 7	*ENG	
009	Latest 8	*ENG	
010	Latest 9	*ENG	

3361	[ID Sensor Sensitivity: Display] Not Used		
001	K2K (Latest)	*ENG	[0 to 5 / - / 0.0001 /step]
002	K5K (Latest)	*ENG	
003	K2M (Latest)	*ENG	
004	K5M (Latest)	*ENG	
005	K2C (Latest)	*ENG	
006	K5C (Latest)	*ENG	
007	K2Y (Latest)	*ENG	
008	K5Y (Latest)	*ENG	

3362	[ID Sensor Sensitivity: Setting] DFU		
001	K2: Upper	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **0.32** / 0.01 /step]
002	K2: Lower	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **0.22** / 0.01 /step]
003	K5: Upper	*ENG	[0 to 10 / **5** / 0.01 /step]
004	K5: Lower	*ENG	[0 to 10 / **0.5** / 0.01 /step]
005	Kn: Lower	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **0.1** / 0.01 /step]
006	Kn: Upper	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **1** / 0.01 /step]
007	K5 Edit Point	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **0.15** / 0.01 /step]
008	K5 Target Voltage	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1.63** / 0.01 V/step]
009	K5 Approximate Method	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **1** / 1 /step] 0:Linear, 1: Curve
010	K2: Upper/Lower Limit Coefficient 1	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **0** / 0.01 /step]

011	K2: Upper Limit Correction	*ENG	[–0.2 to 0.4 / **0.07** / 0.01 /step]
012	K2: Lower Limit Correction	*ENG	[–0.2 to 0.4 / **–0.07** / 0.01 /step]
013	Diffusion Correction: M	*ENG	[0.75 to 1.35 / **1** / 0.01 /step]
014	Diffusion Correction: C	*ENG	
015	Diffusion Correction: Y	*ENG	
016	K2: Check: M	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **0.25** / 0.001 /step]
017	K2: Check: C	*ENG	
018	K2: Check: Y	*ENG	

3363	**[ID Pattern Timing Setting] DFU**		
001	Scan YCMBk	*ENG	Adjusts the detection timing for the process control pattern. [-500 to 500 / **13.7** / 1 mm/step]
002	Paper Transfer Release Start Time	*ENG	Adjusts the timing when the paper transfer unit is kept away from the image transfer belt. [0 to 2500 / **0** / 1 msec/step]
003	Delay Time	*ENG	Adjusts the processing timing for the process control pattern. [0 to 2500 / **600** / 1 msec/step]
004	MUSIC Delay Time	*ENG	Adjusts the processing timing for the pattern that is used for the line position adjustment. [-2500 to 2500 / **300** / 1 msec/step]

3371	[M/A Calculation] DFU		
001	Correction Coefficient: Bk	*ENG	[0.5 to 2.0 / **1.04** / 0.01 /step]
002	Correction Coefficient: M	*ENG	[0.5 to 2.0 / **0.98** / 0.01 /step]
003	Correction Coefficient: C	*ENG	[0.5 to 2.0 / **1.11** / 0.01 /step]
004	Correction Coefficient: Y	*ENG	[0.5 to 2.0 / **0.91** / 0.01 /step]

3401	[Fixed Supply Mode]		
	Adjusts the toner supply rate in the fixed toner supply mode.		
001	Fixed Rate: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **5** / 1 %/step] These SPs are used only when SP3-044 is set to "1".
002	Fixed Rate: M	*ENG	
003	Fixed Rate: C	*ENG	
004	Fixed Rate: Y	*ENG	

3411	[Toner Supply Rate: Display]		
	Displays the current toner supply rate.		
001	Latest: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **-** / 1 %/step]
002	Latest: M	*ENG	
003	Latest: C	*ENG	
004	Latest: Y	*ENG	

3421	[Toner Supply Range]		
001	Upper Limit: Bk	*ENG	Adjusts the toner supply rate during printing. [0 to 100 / **100** / 1%/step]
002	Upper Limit: M	*ENG	
003	Upper Limit: C	*ENG	
004	Upper Limit: Y	*ENG	
005	Minimum Supply Time: Bk	*ENG	Adjusts the minimum toner supply time. [0 to 1000 / **0** / 1 msec/step]
006	Minimum Supply Time: M	*ENG	
007	Minimum Supply Time: C	*ENG	
008	Minimum Supply Time: Y	*ENG	

3451	[Toner Supply Carry Over: Display] DFU		
001	Bk	*ENG	[0 to 10000 / **0** / 1 msec/step]
002	M	*ENG	
003	C	*ENG	
004	Y	*ENG	

3452	[Toner Supply Carry Over: Setting] DFU		
001	Maximum: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 10000 / **1000** / 1 msec/step]
002	Maximum: M	*ENG	
003	Maximum: C	*ENG	
004	Maximum: Y	*ENG	

3501	[Process Control Target M/A]		
	Adjusts the target M/A.		
001	Maximum M/A: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **0.42** / 0.001 mg/cm^2/step]
002	Maximum M/A: M	*ENG	
003	Maximum M/A: C	*ENG	
004	Maximum M/A: Y	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **0.43** / 0.001 mg/cm^2/step]

3510	[Image Quality Adj. Counter: Display]		
	Displays the total page counter for each adjustment mode.		
001	Potential Control: BW	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / **0** / 1 page/step]
002	Potential Control: FC	*ENG	
003	Power ON: BW	*ENG	
004	Power ON: FC	*ENG	
005	MUSIC: BW	*ENG	
006	MUSIC: FC	*ENG	
007	Vsg Adj.	*ENG	
008	Charge AC Control	*ENG	

3511	[Execution Interval: Setting]		
	Adjusts the threshold for each adjustment mode.		
001	Job End: Potential Control: BW	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / **250** / 1 page/step]
002	Job End: Potential Control: FC	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / **100** / 1 page/step]
003	Interrupt: Potential Control: BW	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / **500** / 1 page/step]
004	Interrupt: Potential Control: FC	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / **200** / 1 page/step]
005	Initial: Potential Control: BW	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / **200** / 1 page/step]
006	Initial: Potential Control: FC	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / **100** / 1 page/step]
007	Vsg Adj. Counter	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / **500** / 1 page/step]
008	Charge AC Control Counter	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / **500** / 1 page/step]
019	Environmental Correction	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1 /step] 0: Not Correct (OFF), 1: Correct (ON)
020	Gamma Correction	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1 /step] 0: Not Correct (OFF), 1: Correct (ON)
021	Non-use Time Correction	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1 /step] 0: Not Correct (OFF), 1: Correct (ON)
022	Correction Coefficient 1: JE: BW	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **0.2** / 0.01 page/step]

023	Correction Coefficient 2: JE: BW	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **1** / 0.01/step]
024	Correction Coefficient 1: JE: FC	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **0.5** / 0.01/step]
025	Correction Coefficient 2: JE: FC	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **1** / 0.01/step]
026	Correction Coefficient 1: Interrupt: BW	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **0.1** / 0.01/step]
027	Correction Coefficient 2: Interrupt: BW	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **1** / 0.01/step]
028	Correction Coefficient 1: Interrupt: FC	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **0.25** / 0.01/step]
029	Correction Coefficient 2: Interrupt: FC	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **1** / 0.01/step]
030	Max. Number Correction Threshold	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **2** / 1/step]
031	Max. Number Correction Counter	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **0** / 1/step]

3512	**[Image Quality Adj.: Interval]**		
	Adjusts the timing for execution of process control and line position adjustment.		
001	During Job	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **30** / 1 page/step]
002	During Stand-by	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **10** / 1 minute/step]

3513	**[PCU Motor Stop Time: Bk]**		
	Displays the last time that the PCU motors stopped. These are used for process control execution timing.		
001	Year	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **0** / 1/step]
002	Month	*ENG	[1 to 12 / **1** / 1/step]
003	Date	*ENG	[1 to 31 / **1** / 1/step]
004	Hour	*ENG	[0 to 23 / **0** / 1/step]
005	Minute	*ENG	[0 to 59 / **0** / 1/step]

3514	**[Environmental Display: Job End]**		
	Displays the environmental conditions for the last job. These are used for process control execution timing.		
001	Temperature	*ENG	[-1280 to 1270 / **0** / 0.1°C/step]
002	Relative Humidity	*ENG	[0 to 1000 / **-** / 0.1%RH/step]
003	Absolute Humidity	*ENG	[0 to 1000 / **-** / 0.1 g/cm^3/step]

3515	**[Execution Interval: Display]**		
	Displays the current interval for process control execution. When the machine calculates the timing for process control, it uses a number of conditions. These are the results after considering all the conditions.		
001	Job End: Potential Control: BW	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / – / 1 page/step]
002	Job End: Potential Control: FC	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / – / 1 page/step]

003	Interrupt: Potential Control: BW	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / – / 1 page/step]
004	Interrupt: Potential Control: FC	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / – / 1 page/step]

3516	**[Refresh Mode] DFU**		
	While making prints with low coverage, the developer is agitated with less toner consumption and the toner carrier attraction tends to increase. This may cause low image density or poor transfer (white dots). To prevent this, the coagulated toner or overcharged toner has to be consumed by performing the refresh mode.		
001	Dev. Motor Rotation: Display: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 1000 / **0** / 1 m/step]
002	Dev. Motor Rotation: Display: M	*ENG	
003	Dev. Motor Rotation: Display: C	*ENG	
004	Dev. Motor Rotation: Display: Y	*ENG	
005	Rotation Threshold	*ENG	[0 to 1000 / **1** / 1 m/step]
006	Pixel Coverage Sum: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 65535 / **0** / 1 cm^2/step]
007	Pixel Coverage Sum: M	*ENG	
008	Pixel Coverage Sum: C	*ENG	

009	Pixel Coverage Sum: Y	*ENG	
010	Required Area: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 65535 / **0** / 1 cm^2/step]
011	Required Area: M	*ENG	
012	Required Area: C	*ENG	
013	Required Area: Y	*ENG	
014	Refresh Threshold: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **34** / 1 cm^2/m/step]
015	Refresh Threshold: M	*ENG	
016	Refresh Threshold: C	*ENG	
017	Refresh Threshold: Y	*ENG	
018	Pattern Generation Number: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **0** / 1 time/step]
019	Pattern Generation Number: M	*ENG	
020	Pattern Generation Number: C	*ENG	
021	Pattern Generation Number: Y	*ENG	
022	Pattern Generation Number: Upper limit	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **0** / 1 time/step]
023	Toner Consumption Pattern Area	*ENG	[10 to 2550 / **320** / 10 cm^2/step]
024	Supply Coefficient	*ENG	[0 to 2.55 / **1** / 0.01/step]
025	Job End Area Coefficient	*ENG	[0.1 to 25.5 / **1** / 0.1/step]
026	Job End Vb Coefficient	*ENG	[0 to 100 / **40** / 1%/step]

027	Job End Length	*ENG	[0 to 56 / **25** / 1mm/step]
028	Job End Supply	*ENG	[0 to 1 / **0.45** / 0.001 mg/cm^2/step]

3517	**[Blade damage prevention mode]**		
	Adjusts the threshold temperature for preventing the cleaning blade at the drum unit from being damaged. If the temperature is above this value, the drum reverses briefly at the end of the job to prevent the blade from flipping over.		
001	Execution Temp. Threshold	*ENG	[0 to 50/ **40** / 1°C/step]

3518	**[Image Quality Adj. Execution Flag] DFU**		
001	Toner End Recovery: Bk	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: OFF. 1: ON
002	Toner End Recovery: M	*ENG	
003	Toner End Recovery: C	*ENG	
004	Toner End Recovery: Y	*ENG	
005	Vsg Adj.	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: OFF. 1: ON
006	Developer Mixing	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: OFF. 1: ON
007	Process Control	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: OFF. 1: ON
008	MUSIC	*ENG	[0 to 2 / **0** / 1/step] 0: OFF. 1: ON (once), 2: ON (twice)
009	Drum Phase Adj.	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: OFF. 1: ON

010	Charge AC Control	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: OFF. 1: ON
011	Blade Damage Prevention	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: OFF. 1: ON

3519	**[Toner End Prohibition Setting]**		
	Enables or disables each adjustment at toner near end.		
001	Process Control	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1/step] 0: Permit (adjustment is done even toner near end condition) 1: Forbid (adjustment is not done at toner near end condition)
002	MUSIC	*ENG	
003	TC Adj.	*ENG	

3522	**[Initial Process Control Setting]**		
	Adjusts the threshold for the process control at power on. When the current condition has changed by more than the values of these SPs when compared with the conditions at the previous operation, the process control at power on is executed.		
002	Non-use Time Setting	*ENG	[0 to 1440 / **360** / 1 minute/step]
003	Temperature Range	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **10** / 1°C/step]
004	Relative Humidity Range	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **50** / 1 %RH/step]
005	Absolute Humidity Range	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **6** / 1 g/m^3/step]

3531	**[Non-use Time Process Control Setting]**		
	Adjusts the threshold for the process control at stand-by. When the current condition has changed by more than the values of these SPs when compared with the conditions at the previous operation, the process control at stand-by is executed.		
001	Non-use Time Setting	*ENG	[0 to 1440 / **360** / 1 minute/step]
002	Temperature Range	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **10** / 1°C/step]
003	Relative Humidity Range	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **50** / 1 %RH/step]
004	Absolute Humidity Range	*ENG	[0 to 99 / **6** / 1 g/m^3/step]
005	Maximum Execution Number	*ENG	Adjusts the maximum execution time for the process control at stand-by. [0 to 99 / **10** / 1 time/step]

3611	**[Development Gamma: Display/Set]**		
001	Bk (Current)	*ENG	Displays the current development gamma for each color. [0 to 5 / - / 0.01 mg/cm^2/kV /step]
002	M (Current)	*ENG	
003	C (Current)	*ENG	
004	Y (Current)	*ENG	
005	Bk (Target Display)	*ENG	Displays the target development gamma for each color. [0 to 5 / **0.85** / 0.01 mg/cm^2/kV /step]
006	M (Target Display)	*ENG	
007	C (Target Display)	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **0.8** / 0.01 mg/cm^2/kV /step]
008	Y (Target Display)	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **0.77** / 0.01 mg/cm^2/kV /step]

009	Bk (Standard Target Set)	*ENG	Displays the standard target development gamma for each color. [0 to 5 / **0.9** / 0.01 mg/cm^2/kV /step]
010	M (Standard Target Set)	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **0.8** / 0.01 mg/cm^2/kV /step]
011	C (Standard Target Set)	*ENG	
012	Y (Standard Target Set)	*ENG	
013	Environmental Correction	*ENG	Turns on or off the environmental correction for target development gamma. [0 or 1 / **1** / -] 0: Not Correct, 1: Correct

3612	**[Vk Display]**		
	Displays Vk for each color.		
001	Bk	*ENG	[-300 to 300 / - / 1 V/step]
002	M	*ENG	
003	C	*ENG	
004	Y	*ENG	

3621	**[Development DC Control: Display]** Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Thick 2 & FINE: 77 mm/sec		
	Displays the development DC bias adjusted with the process control for each line speed and color.		
001	Plain: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 700 / **550** / 1 -V/step]
002	Plain: M	*ENG	
003	Plain: C	*ENG	

004	Plain: Y	*ENG	
009	Thick 2 & FINE: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 700 / **550** / 1 -V/step]
010	Thick 2 & FINE: M	*ENG	
011	Thick 2 & FINE: C	*ENG	
012	Thick 2 & FINE: Y	*ENG	

3631	**[Charge DC Control: Display]** Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Thick 2 & FINE: 77 mm/sec		
	Displays the charge DC voltage adjusted with the process control for each line speed and color.		
001	Plain: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / **690** / 1 -V/step]
002	Plain: M	*ENG	
003	Plain: C	*ENG	
004	Plain: Y	*ENG	
009	Thick 2 & FINE: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 2000 / **690** / 1 -V/step]
010	Thick 2 & FINE: M	*ENG	
011	Thick 2 & FINE: C	*ENG	
012	Thick 2 & FINE: Y	*ENG	

3641	**[Charge AC Control: Display]** Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec		
	Displays the charge AC voltage adjusted with the process control for each color.		
001	Plain: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **1.75** / 0.01 kV/step]
002	Plain: M	*ENG	
003	Plain: C	*ENG	
004	Plain: Y	*ENG	

3651	**[LD Power Control: Display]** Plain: 154 (B222)/205 (B224) mm/sec, Thick 2 & FINE: 77 mm/sec		
	Displays the LD power adjusted for each environment.		
001	Plain: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **100** / 1 %/step]
002	Plain: M	*ENG	
003	Plain: C	*ENG	
004	Plain: Y	*ENG	
005	Thick 1: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **100** / 1 %/step]
006	Thick 1: M	*ENG	
007	Thick 1: C	*ENG	
008	Thick 1: Y	*ENG	

009	Thick 2 & FINE: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **100** / 1 %/step]
010	Thick 2 & FINE: M	*ENG	
011	Thick 2 & FINE: C	*ENG	
012	Thick 2 & FINE: Y	*ENG	

3710	**[HST Concentration Control: Set]** TD Sensor: Toner Concentration Control Setting		
	Selects the toner concentration control method by HST memory, which is in the TD sensor.		
001	Control Method: Selection	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / -] 0: Not Use, 1: Use

3711	**[HST Concentration Control: Bk]**		
	Displays the factory settings of the black PCU.		
001	Vcnt	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **4** / 0.1 V/step]
002	Vt	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **2.5** / 0.1 V/step]
003	Sensitivity: HL	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **2.5** / 0.1 V/step]
004	Sensitivity: HM	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1.3** / 0.1 V/step]
005	Sensitivity: ML	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1.2** / 0.1 V/step]
006	Set Detection	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1** / 0.1 V/step]
007	Without Developer	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1.2** / 0.1 V/step]
008	With Developer	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1.3** / 0.1 V/step]
009	Serial Number 1	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **-** / 1 V/step]

010	Serial Number 2	*ENG	
011	Adjustment: Vt	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **3** / 0.1 V/step]
012	Adjustment: Vtref	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **3** / 0.1 V/step]
013	Adjustment: Vtcnt	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **4** / 0.01 V/step]
014	Adjustment: Gamma	*ENG	[0 to 2.55 / **0** / 0.01 mg/cm^2/kV /step]
015	Adjustment: Vcnt Result	*ENG	[0 to 9 / **9** / 1 /step]

3712	**[HST Concentration Control: M]**		
	Displays the factory settings of the magenta PCU.		
001	Vcnt	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **4** / 0.1 V/step]
002	Vt	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **2.5** / 0.1 V/step]
003	Sensitivity: HL	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **2.5** / 0.1 V/step]
004	Sensitivity: HM	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1.3** / 0.1 V/step]
005	Sensitivity: ML	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1.2** / 0.1 V/step]
006	Set Detection	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1** / 0.1 V/step]
007	Without Developer	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1.2** / 0.1 V/step]
008	With Developer	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1.3** / 0.1 V/step]
009	Serial Number 1	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **-** / 1 V/step]
010	Serial Number 2	*ENG	
011	Adjustment: Vt	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **3** / 0.1 V/step]
012	Adjustment: Vtref	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **3** / 0.1 V/step]
013	Adjustment: Vtcnt	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **4** / 0.01 V/step]

014	Adjustment: Gamma	*ENG	[0 to 2.55 / **0** / 0.01 mg/cm^2/kV /step]
015	Adjustment: Vcnt Result	*ENG	[0 to 9 / **9** / 1 /step]

3713	**[HST Concentration Control: C]**		
	Displays the factory settings of the cyan PCU.		
001	Vcnt	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **4** / 0.1 V/step]
002	Vt	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **2.5** / 0.1 V/step]
003	Sensitivity: HL	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **2.5** / 0.1 V/step]
004	Sensitivity: HM	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1.3** / 0.1 V/step]
005	Sensitivity: ML	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1.2** / 0.1 V/step]
006	Set Detection	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1** / 0.1 V/step]
007	Without Developer	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1.2** / 0.1 V/step]
008	With Developer	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1.3** / 0.1 V/step]
009	Serial Number 1	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **-** / 1 V/step]
010	Serial Number 2	*ENG	
011	Adjustment: Vt	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **3** / 0.1 V/step]
012	Adjustment: Vtref	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **3** / 0.1 V/step]
013	Adjustment: Vtcnt	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **4** / 0.01 V/step]
014	Adjustment: Gamma	*ENG	[0 to 2.55 / **0** / 0.01 mg/cm^2/kV /step]
015	Adjustment: Vcnt Result	*ENG	[0 to 9 / **9** / 1 /step]

3714	[HST Concentration Control: Y]		
	Displays the factory settings of the yellow PCU.		
001	Vcnt	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **4** / 0.1 V/step]
002	Vt	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **2.5** / 0.1 V/step]
003	Sensitivity: HL	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **2.5** / 0.1 V/step]
004	Sensitivity: HM	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1.3** / 0.1 V/step]
005	Sensitivity: ML	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1.2** / 0.1 V/step]
006	Set Detection	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1** / 0.1 V/step]
007	Without Developer	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1.2** / 0.1 V/step]
008	With Developer	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **1.3** / 0.1 V/step]
009	Serial Number 1	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **-** / 1 V/step]
010	Serial Number 2	*ENG	
011	Adjustment: Vt	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **3** / 0.1 V/step]
012	Adjustment: Vtref	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **3** / 0.1 V/step]
013	Adjustment: Vtcnt	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **4** / 0.01 V/step]
014	Adjustment: Gamma	*ENG	[0 to 2.55 / **0** / 0.01 mg/cm^2/kV /step]
015	Adjustment: Vcnt Result	*ENG	[0 to 9 / **9** / 1 /step]

3800	**[Toner Collection Bottle Full Detection]**		
	Displays/ adjusts the toner collection bottle detection settings. These SPs are used for NRS.		
001	Condition	*CTL	[0 to 4 / **0** / 1 /step]
002	Detection Times	*CTL	[0 to 50 / **-** / 1 /step]
003	Print Page After Near Full	*CTL	[0 to 1000 / **0** / 1 sheet/step]
004	Pixel Count After Near Full	*CTL	[0 to 200000 / **-** / 1 cm^2/step]
005	Pixel Count After Replacement	*CTL	Displays the pixel counter after replacement of toner collection bottle. [0 to 200000 / **-** / 1 cm^2/step]
008	Coefficient	*ENG	[0.5 to 1.5 / **1** / 0.1 /step]
011	Notice Setting	*ENG	Enables or disables the calling for NRS. [0 or 1 / **1** / -] 0: Enable NRS calling 1: Disable NRS calling **NOTE:** If the toner collection bottle has been replaced before the machine detects used toner near full when this setting is set to "0", the machine cannot detect toner collection bottle near full. In that case, set SP3-902-017 to "1".

3900	**[Toner Collection Bottle Full Detection]**		
	Turns toner collection bottle full detection on or off.		
001	ON/OFF Setting	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / -] 0: OFF, 1: ON

3901	**[New PCU Detection]**		
	Turns new PCU detection on or off.		
001	ON/OFF Setting	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / -] 0: OFF, 1: ON

3902	**[Manual New Unit Set]**		
	Turns the new unit detection flag for each PM unit on or off. The use of these counters is explained in the PM section and in the relevant parts of section 3 (Replacement and Adjustment).		
001	Development Unit: Bk	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: OFF, 1: ON
002	Development Unit: Y	*ENG	
003	Development Unit: C	*ENG	
004	Development Unit: M	*ENG	
005	Developer: Bk	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: OFF, 1: ON
006	Developer: Y	*ENG	
007	Developer: C	*ENG	
008	Developer: M	*ENG	

009	PCU: Bk	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: OFF, 1: ON
010	PCU: Y	*ENG	
011	PCU: M	*ENG	
012	PCU: C	*ENG	
013	Image Transfer Unit	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: OFF, 1: ON Do not use 3902-013 if you only change the cleaning unit. 3902-015: This is for the image transfer belt cleaning unit.
014	Fusing Unit	*ENG	
015	Cleaning Unit	*ENG	
016	Paper Transfer Unit	*ENG	
017	Toner Collection Bottle	*ENG	

SP4-XXX (Scanner)

4008	**[Sub Scan Magnification Adjustment]**		
	Adjusts the sub-scan magnification by changing the scanner motor speed.		
001	Sub Scan Magnification Adjustment	*CTL	[-1.0 to 1.0 / **0** / 0.1%/step] **FA**

4010	**[Leading Edge Registration Adjustment]**		
	Adjusts the leading edge registration by changing the scanning start timing in the sub-scan direction.		
001		*CTL	[-2.0 to 2.0 / **0** / 0.1 mm/step] **FA**

4011	**[Side-to-Side registration Adjustment]**		
	Adjusts the side-to-side registration by changing the scanning start timing in the main scan direction.		
001	-	*CTL	[-2.5 to 2.5 / **0** / 0.1 mm/step] **FA**

4012	**[Scanner Erase Margin: Scale]** Scanner: Erase Margin: Scale		
	Sets the blank margin at each side for erasing the original shadow caused by the gap between the original and the scale.		
001	Book: Leading Edge	*ENG	[0 to 3.0 / **0** / 0.1 mm/step] **FA**
002	Book: Trailing Edge		
003	Book: Left		
004	Book: Right		
005	ADF: Leading Edge	*ENG	[0 to 3.0 / **0** / 0.1 mm/step] **FA**
007	ADF: Right		
008	ADF: Left		

4013	**[Scanner Free Run]**		
	Performs the scanner free run with the exposure lamp on or off in the following mode. Full color mode / Full Size / A3 or DLT		
001	Lamp: ON	-	-
002	Lamp: OFF		

4014	[Scan]		
	Execute the scanner free fun with each mode.		
001	HP Detection Enable	-	Scanner free run with HP sensor check.
002	HP Detection Disable	-	Scanner free run without HP sensor check.

4020	[Dust Check]		
001	Detection: ON/OFF	*ENG	Turns the ADF scan glass dust check on/ off. [0 or 1 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: OFF, 1: ON
002	Dust Detect: Level	*ENG	Selects the detect level. [0 to 8 / **4** / 1 /step] 0: lowest detection level 8: highest detection level
003	Correction Level	*ENG	Selects the level of the sub scan line correction when using the ARDF. [0 to 4 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: Off 1: Weakest 2: Weak 3: Strong 4: Strongest

4301	**[APS Operation Check]**		
	Displays a code that represents the original size detected by the original sensors. (See 5.2.2 "Input Check Table"".)		
001	APS Operation Check	-	-

4303	**[APS Min Size (A5/HLT/16K)]**		
	Specifies the result of the detection when the outputs from the original sensors are all OFF.		
001	APS Min. Size **(A5/HLT/16K)**	*ENG	[0 to 2 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: No Original 1: A5-Lengthwise (16K SEF if 4305 is set to 3) 2: A5-Sideways (16K LEF if 4305 is set to 3)

4305	**[8K/16K Detection]**	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: Normal Detection (the machine detects A4/LT size as A4 or LT, depending on the paper size setting) 1: A4-Sideways LT-Lengthwise 2: LT-Sideways A4-Lengthwise 3: 8K 16K
001	This program enables the machine to automatically recognize the 8K/16K size.		

4400	**[Scanner Erase Margin]**	*ENG	
	Set the Mask for Original. These SPs set the area to be masked during platen (book) mode scanning.		
001	Book: Leading Edge	[0 to 3.0 / **0** / 0.1 mm/step]	
002	Book: Trailing Edge		
003	Book: Left		
004	Book: Right		
005	ADF: Leading Edge		
007	ADF: Right		
008	ADF: Left		

4417	**[IPU Test Pattern]**		
	Selects the IPU test pattern.		
001	Test Pattern Selection	[0 to 24 / **0** / 1/step] 0: Scanned image 1: Gradation main scan A 2: Gradation main scan B 3: Gradation main scan C 4: Gradation main scan D 5: Gradation sub scan (1) 6: Grid pattern 7: Slant grid pattern 8: Gradation RGBCMYK 9: UCR pattern 10: Color patch 16 (1) 11: Color patch 16 (2) 12: Color patch 64	13: Grid pattern CMYK 14: Color patch CMYK 15: Gray pattern (1) 16: Gray pattern (2) 17: Gray Pattern (3) 18: Shading pattern 19: Thin line pattern 20: Scanned + Grid pattern 21: Scanned + Gray scale 22: Scanned + Color patch 23: Scanned + Slant Grid C 24: Scanned + Slant Grid D

4429	[ICI Output Selection]		
	Adjusts the ICI output density level.		
001	-	*ENG	[32 to 255 / **128** / 1 /step] 255: Strongest density

4440	[Saturation Adjustment]		
	Adjusts the level of saturation for copying.		
001	Saturation Adj. 1	*ENG	[0 to 5 / **3** / 1 /step] 0: High 1: Lowest 2: Lower 3: Default 4: Higher 5: Highest

4450	[Scan Image Path Selection]	
001	Black Subtraction ON/OFF	[0 or 1 / **1** / -] 0: OFF, 1: ON
	Uses or does not use the black reduction image path.	
002	SH ON/OFF	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: ON, 1: OFF
	Uses or does not use the shading image path.	

4460	[Digital AE Set] DFU		
	Specifies the level of deleting the background in the ADS mode. You can adjust its level for each scanning method (platen, ADF).		
001	Lower Limit	*ENG	[0 to 1024 / **364** / 4 digit/step]
002	Background Level	*ENG	[512 to 1532 / **972** / 1 digit/step]

4501	[ACC Target Density]		
	Selects the ACC result.		
001	Copy: Bk: Text	*ENG	[0 to 10 / **5** / 1 /step] 10: Darkest density
002	Copy: M: Text	*ENG	
003	Copy: C: Text	*ENG	
004	Copy: Y: Text	*ENG	
005	Copy: Bk: Photo	*ENG	
006	Copy: M: Photo	*ENG	
007	Copy: C: Photo	*ENG	
008	Copy: Y: Photo	*ENG	

4505	[ACC Offset: Light]		
	Adjusts the offset correction for light areas of the ACC pattern.		
001	Self Machine: Bk	*ENG	[-128 to 127 / **0** / 1 /step]
002	Self Machine: M	*ENG	
003	Self Machine: C	*ENG	
004	Self Machine: Y	*ENG	
005	Other Machine: Bk	*ENG	Reserved
006	Other Machine: M	*ENG	
007	Other Machine: C	*ENG	
008	Other Machine: Y	*ENG	

4506	[ACC Offset: Dark]		
	Adjusts the offset correction for dark areas of the ACC pattern.		
001	Self Machine: Bk	*ENG	[-128 to 127 / **0** / 1 /step]
002	Self Machine: M	*ENG	
003	Self Machine: C	*ENG	
004	Self Machine: Y	*ENG	
005	Other Machine: Bk	*ENG	Reserved
006	Other Machine: M	*ENG	
007	Other Machine: C	*ENG	
008	Other Machine: Y	*ENG	

4540	[Printer Vector Correction]		
	This SP corrects the printer coverage of 12 hues (RY, YR, YG, etc. x 4 Colors [R, G, B, Option]) for a total of 48 parameters.		
001-004	RY Phase: Option/R/G/B	*ENG	Specifies the printer vector correction value. [0 to 255 / **0** / 1 /step]
005-008	YR Phase: Option/R/G/B		
009-012	YG Phase: Option/R/G/B		
013-016	GY Phase: Option/R/G/B		
017-020	GC Phase: Option/R/G/B		
021-024	CG Phase: Option/R/G/B		
025-028	CB Phase: Option/R/G/B		
029-032	BC Phase: Option/R/G/B		
033-036	BM Phase: Option/R/G/B		

037-040	MB Phase: Option/R/G/B		
041-044	MR Phase: Option/R/G/B		
045-048	RM Phase: Option/R/G/B		

4550	**[Scanner Application: text/Printing] DFU**		
4551	**[Scanner Application: text] DFU**		
4552	**[Scanner Application: text (Drop Out Coor)] DFU**		
4553	**[Scanner Application: text･Photo] DFU**		
4554	**[Scanner Application: Photo] DFU**		
4565	**[Scanner Application: GrayScale] DFU**		
4570	**[Scanner Application: Color: Text･Photo] DFU**		
4571	**[Scanner Application: Color: Glossy Photo] DFU**		
4572	**[Scanner Application: AutoColor] DFU**		
-005	MTF: 0 (Off), 1-15 (Strong)	*ENG	[0 to 15 / **8** / 1 /step] 0: MTF Off
	Sets the MTF level (Modulation Transfer Function) designed to improve image contrast. Set higher for stronger effect, lower for weaker effect.		
-006	Smoothing: 0 (x1), 1-7 (Strong)	*ENG	[0 to 7 / **4** / 1 /step]
	Use to remove "jaggies" if they appear. Set higher for smoother images.		
-007	Brightness: 1–255	*ENG	[1 to 255 / **128** / 1 /step]
	Set higher for darker, set lower for lighter.		
-008	Contrast: 1–255	*ENG	[1 to 255 / **128** / 1 /step]
	Set higher for more contrast, set lower for less contrast.		

-009	Independent Dot Erase (0), 1-7 (Strong)	*ENG	[0 to 7 / **0** / 1 /step]
	Sets the erasure level of Irregular Dots. Set higher for stronger effect, lower for weaker effect. 0: Not activated		

4580	**[FAX Application: Text/Chart] DFU**		
4581	**[FAX Application: Text] DFU**		
4582	**[FAX Application: Text/Photo] DFU**		
4583	**[FAX Application: Photo] DFU**		
4584	**[FAX Application: Original 1] DFU**		
4585	**[FAX Application: Original 2] DFU**		
-005	MTF: 0 (Off), 1-15 (Strong)	*ENG	[0 to 15 / **8** / 1 /step] 0: MTF Off
	Sets the MTF level (Modulation Transfer Function) designed to improve image contrast. Set higher for stronger effect, lower for weaker effect.		
-006	Smoothing: 0 (x1), 1-7 (Strong)	*ENG	[0 to 7 / **4** / 1 /step]
	Use to remove "jaggies" if they appear. Set higher for smoother images.		
-007	Brightness: 1–255	*ENG	[1 to 255 / **128** / 1 /step]
	Set higher for darker, set lower for lighter.		
-008	Contrast: 1–255	*ENG	[1 to 255 / **128** / 1 /step]
	Set higher for more contrast, set lower for less contrast.		

-009	Independent Dot Erase (0), 1-7 (Strong)	*ENG	[0 to 7 / **0** / 1 /step]
	Selects the contrast level for B/W the Text mode. Sets the erasure level of Irregular Dots. Set higher for stronger effect, lower for weaker effect. 0: Not activated		
-010	Texture Erase: 0	*ENG	[0 to 2 / **0** / 1 /step]
	Sets the erasure level of textures. Set higher for stronger effect, lower for weaker effect. This SP (suffix "-010") only exists in SP4580, 4582 and 4583. 0: Not activated		

4600	**[SBU Version Display]**		
001	-	-	Displays the ID of the SBU.

4602	**[Scanner Memory Access]**		
001	Scanner Memory Access	-	Enables the read and write check for the SBU registers.
002	Address Set	-	Not used
003	Data Set	-	

4603	**[AGC Execution]**		
001	HP Detection Enable	-	Executes the AGC.
002	HP Detection Disable	-	**DFU**

4604	[FGATE Open/Close] DFU		
001	-	-	Opens or closes the FGATE signal. This SP automatically returns to the default status (close) after exiting this SP. [0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: OFF, 1: ON

4606	[White Balance Target: R] DFU		
001	-	*ENG	This value is the target value of red for the white level adjustment. [0 to 1024 / **784** / 1 digit/step]

4607	[White Balance Target: G] DFU		
001	-	*ENG	This value is the target value of green for the white level adjustment. [0 to 1024 / **784** / 1 digit/step]

4608	[White Balance Target: B] DFU		
001	-	*ENG	This value is the target value of blue for the white level adjustment. [0 to 1024 / **784** / 1 digit/step]

4623	**[Black Level Fine Adj. Display]** RE: Red Even signal, RO: Red Odd signal		
001	Latest: RE Color	-	Displays the black offset value (rough adjustment) for the even red signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 255 / **128** / 1 digit/step]
002	Latest: RO Color	-	Displays the black offset value (rough adjustment) for the odd red signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed).
003	Latest: RE Color	-	Displays the black offset value (fine adjustment) for the even red signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed).
004	Latest: RO Color	-	Displays the black offset value (fine adjustment) for the odd red signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed).
005	Latest: RE BW	-	Displays the black offset value (rough adjustment) for the even red signal in the CCD circuit board (black and white printing speed). [0 to 255 / **128** / 1 digit/step]
006	Latest: RO BW	-	Displays the black offset value (rough adjustment) for the odd red signal in the CCD circuit board (black and white printing speed).
007	Latest: RE BW	-	Displays the black offset value (fine adjustment) for the even red signal in the CCD circuit board (black and white printing speed).

008	Latest: RO BW	-	Displays the black offset value (fine adjustment) for the odd red signal in the CCD circuit board (black and white printing speed).

4624	**[Black Level Rough Adj. Display]** GE: Green Even signal, GO: Green Odd signal		
001	Latest: GE Color	-	Displays the black offset value (rough adjustment) for the even green signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 255 / **128** / 1 digit/step]
002	Latest: GO Color	-	Displays the black offset value (rough adjustment) for the odd green signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed).
003	Latest: GE Color	-	Displays the black offset value (fine adjustment) for the even green signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed).
004	Latest: GO Color	-	Displays the black offset value (fine adjustment) for the odd green signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed).
005	Latest: GE BW	-	Displays the black offset value (rough adjustment) for the even green signal in the CCD circuit board (black and white printing speed). [0 to 255 / **128** / 1 digit/step]

006	Latest: GO BW	-	Displays the black offset value (rough adjustment) for the odd green signal in the CCD circuit board (black and white printing speed).
007	Latest: GE BW	-	Displays the black offset value (fine adjustment) for the even green signal in the CCD circuit board (black and white printing speed).
008	Latest: GO BW	-	Displays the black offset value (fine adjustment) for the odd green signal in the CCD circuit board (black and white printing speed).

4625	**[Black Level Rough Adj. Display]** BE: Blue Even signal, BO: Blue Odd signal		
001	Latest: BE Color	-	Displays the black offset value (rough adjustment) for the even blue signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 255 / **128** / 1 digit/step]
002	Latest: BO Color	-	Displays the black offset value (rough adjustment) for the odd blue signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed).
003	Latest: BE Color	-	Displays the black offset value (fine adjustment) for the even blue signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed).
004	Latest: BO Color	-	Displays the black offset value (fine adjustment) for the odd blue signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed).

005	Latest: BE BW	-	Displays the black offset value (rough adjustment) for the even blue signal in the CCD circuit board (black and white printing speed). [0 to255 / **128** / 1 digit/step]
006	Latest: BO BW	-	Displays the black offset value (rough adjustment) for the odd blue signal in the CCD circuit board (black and white printing speed).
007	Latest: BE BW	-	Displays the black offset value (fine adjustment) for the even blue signal in the CCD circuit board (black and white printing speed).
008	Latest: BO BW	-	Displays the black offset value (fine adjustment) for the odd blue signal in the CCD circuit board (black and white printing speed).

4628	**[Gain Adjustment]**		
	Displays the gain value of the amplifiers on the controller for Red.		
001	Latest: RE Color	-	[0 to 255 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	Latest: RO Color	-	
003	Latest: RE BW	-	
004	Latest: RO BW	-	

4629	**[Gain Adjustment]**		
	Displays the gain value of the amplifiers on the controller for Green.		
001	Latest: GE Color	-	[0 to 255 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	Latest: GO Color	-	
003	Latest: GE BW	-	
004	Latest: GO BW	-	

4630	**[Gain Adjustment]**		
	Displays the gain value of the amplifiers on the controller for Blue.		
001	Latest: BE Color	-	[0 to 255 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	Latest: BO Color	-	
003	Latest: BE BW	-	
004	Latest: BO BW	-	

4640	**[Black Level Adj. Loop]** Black Level Adjustment Loop Counter		
	Displays the black level adjustment time for each mode. The black level adjustment is done twice. The 1st adjustment decides the reference value for the 2nd adjustment.		
001	Adj. 1 Number: Color	-	1st adjustment [0 to 20 / **0** / 1 /step]
002	Adj. 1 Number: BW	-	
003	Adj. 2 Number: Color	-	2nd adjustment [0 to 20 / **0** / 1 /step]
004	Adj. 2 Number: BW	-	

4641	**[White Level Adj. Loop]** White Level Adjustment Loop Counter		
	Displays the white level adjustment time for each mode.		
001	Adj. Number: Color	-	[0 to 20 / **0** / 1 /step]
002	Adj. Number: BW	-	

4646	**[Scan Adj. Time Out Error]**		
	Displays the result of the AGC adjustment. If the AGC adjustment fails, SC141 (B/W mode) or SC142 (Color mode) occurs.		
001	Black Offset Correction 1	-	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: OK, 1: AGC adjustment failure
002	Black Offset Correction 2	-	
003	White Offset Correction	-	

4647	**[Read Hard Error]**		
	Displays the result of the SBU connection check.		
001	Power-ON	-	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: OK, 1: SBU connection check failure If the SBU connection check fails, SC141-001, -002 or -003 occurs.

4654	**[Black Level Fine Adj. Display]** RE: Red Even signal, RO: Red Odd signal		
001	Last Correct Value: RE Color	*ENG	Displays the previous black offset value (rough adjustment) for the even red signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 255 / **112** / 1 digit/step]
002	Last Correct Value: RO Color	*ENG	Displays the previous black offset value (rough adjustment) for the odd red signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed).
003	Last Correct Value: RE Color	*ENG	Displays the previous black offset value (fine adjustment) for the even red signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 255 / **128** / 1 digit/step]
004	Last Correct Value: RO Color	*ENG	Displays the previous black offset value (fine adjustment) for the odd red signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed).
005	Last Correct Value: RE BW	*ENG	Displays the previous black offset value (rough adjustment) for the even red signal in the CCD circuit board (black and white printing speed). [0 to 255 / **112** / 1 digit/step]
006	Last Correct Value: RO BW	*ENG	Displays the previous black offset value (rough adjustment) for the odd red signal in the CCD circuit board (black and white printing speed).

007	Last Correct Value: RE BW	*ENG	Displays the previous black offset value (fine adjustment) for the even red signal in the CCD circuit board (black and white printing speed). [0 to 255 / **128** / 1 digit/step]
008	Last Correct Value: RO BW	*ENG	Displays the previous black offset value (fine adjustment) for the odd red signal in the CCD circuit board (black and white printing speed).

4655	**[Black Level Rough Adj. Display]** GE: Green Even signal, GO: Green Odd signal		
001	Last Correct Value: GE Color	*ENG	Displays the previous black offset value (rough adjustment) for the even green signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 255 / **112** / 1 digit/step]
002	Last Correct Value: GO Color	*ENG	Displays the previous black offset value (rough adjustment) for the odd green signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed).
003	Last Correct Value: GE Color	*ENG	Displays the previous black offset value (fine adjustment) for the even green signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 255 / **128** / 1 digit/step]
004	Last Correct Value: GO Color	*ENG	Displays the previous black offset value (fine adjustment) for the odd green signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed).

005	Last Correct Value: GE BW	*ENG	Displays the previous black offset value (rough adjustment) for the even green signal in the CCD circuit board (black and white printing speed). [0 to 255 / **112** / 1 digit/step]
006	Last Correct Value: GO BW	*ENG	Displays the previous black offset value (rough adjustment) for the odd green signal in the CCD circuit board (black and white printing speed).
007	Last Correct Value: GE BW	*ENG	Displays the previous black offset value (fine adjustment) for the even green signal in the CCD circuit board (black and white printing speed). [0 to 255 / **128** / 1 digit/step]
008	Last Correct Value: GO BW	*ENG	Displays the previous black offset value (fine adjustment) for the odd green signal in the CCD circuit board (black and white printing speed).

4656	**[Black Level Rough Adj. Display]** BE: Blue Even signal, BO: Blue Odd signal		
001	Last Correct Value: BE Color	*ENG	Displays the previous black offset value (rough adjustment) for the even blue signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 255 / **112** / 1 digit/step]
002	Last Correct Value: BO Color	*ENG	Displays the previous black offset value (rough adjustment) for the odd blue signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed).

003	Last Correct Value: BE Color	*ENG	Displays the previous black offset value (fine adjustment) for the even blue signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 255 / **128** / 1 digit/step]
004	Last Correct Value: BO Color	*ENG	Displays the previous black offset value (fine adjustment) for the odd blue signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed).
005	Last Correct Value: BE BW	*ENG	Displays the previous black offset value (rough adjustment) for the even blue signal in the CCD circuit board (black and white printing speed). [0 to 255 / **112** / 1 digit/step]
006	Last Correct Value: BO BW	*ENG	Displays the previous black offset value (rough adjustment) for the odd blue signal in the CCD circuit board (black and white printing speed).
007	Last Correct Value: BE BW	*ENG	Displays the previous black offset value (fine adjustment) for the even blue signal in the CCD circuit board (black and white printing speed). [0 to 255 / **128** / 1 digit/step]
008	Last Correct Value: BO BW	*ENG	Displays the previous black offset value (fine adjustment) for the odd blue signal in the CCD circuit board (black and white printing speed).

4658	**[Gain Adjustment]**		
	Displays the previous gain value of the amplifiers on the controller for Red.		
001	Last Correct Value: RE Color	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	Last Correct Value: RO Color	*ENG	
003	Last Correct Value: RE BW	*ENG	
004	Last Correct Value: RO BW	*ENG	

4659	**[Gain Adjustment]**		
	Displays the previous gain value of the amplifiers on the controller for Green.		
001	Last Correct Value: GE Color	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	Last Correct Value: GO Color	*ENG	
003	Last Correct Value: GE BW	*ENG	
004	Last Correct Value: GO BW	*ENG	

4660	**[Gain Adjustment]**		
	Displays the previous gain value of the amplifiers on the controller for Blue.		
001	Last Correct Value: BE Color	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	Last Correct Value: BO Color	*ENG	
003	Last Correct Value: BE BW	*ENG	
004	Last Correct Value: BO BW	*ENG	

4661	**[Black Level 2 Rough Adj. Display]** RE: Red Even signal, RO: Red Odd signal		
001	Last Correct Value: RE Color	*ENG	Displays the previous 2nd black offset value (rough adjustment) for the even red signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 255 / **112** / 1 digit/step]
002	Last Correct Value: RO Color	*ENG	Displays the previous 2nd black offset value (rough adjustment) for the odd red signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed).
003	Last Correct Value: RE Color	*ENG	Displays the previous 2nd black offset value (fine adjustment) for the even red signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 255 / **128** / 1 digit/step]

004	Last Correct Value: RO Color	*ENG	Displays the previous 2nd black offset value (fine adjustment) for the odd red signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed).
005	Last Correct Value: RE BW	*ENG	Displays the previous 2nd black offset value (rough adjustment) for the even red signal in the CCD circuit board (black and white printing speed). [0 to 255 / **112** / 1 digit/step]
006	Last Correct Value: RO BW	*ENG	Displays the previous 2nd black offset value (rough adjustment) for the odd red signal in the CCD circuit board (black and white printing speed).
007	Last Correct Value: RE BW	*ENG	Displays the previous 2nd black offset value (fine adjustment) for the even red signal in the CCD circuit board (black and white printing speed). [0 to 255 / **128** / 1 digit/step]
008	Last Correct Value: RO BW	*ENG	Displays the previous 2nd black offset value (fine adjustment) for the odd red signal in the CCD circuit board (black and white printing speed).

4662	**[Black Level 2 Rough Adj. Display]** GE: Green Even signal, GO: Green Odd signal		
001	Last Correct Value: GE Color	*ENG	Displays the previous 2nd black offset value (rough adjustment) for the even green signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 255 / **112** / 1 digit/step]

002	Last Correct Value: GO Color	*ENG	Displays the previous 2nd black offset value (rough adjustment) for the odd green signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed).
003	Last Correct Value: GE Color	*ENG	Displays the previous 2nd black offset value (fine adjustment) for the even green signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 255 / **128** / 1 digit/step]
004	Last Correct Value: GO Color	*ENG	Displays the previous 2nd black offset value (fine adjustment) for the odd green signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed).
005	Last Correct Value: GE BW	*ENG	Displays the previous 2nd black offset value (rough adjustment) for the even green signal in the CCD circuit board (black and white printing speed). [0 to 255 / **112** / 1 digit/step]
006	Last Correct Value: GO BW	*ENG	Displays the previous 2nd black offset value (rough adjustment) for the odd green signal in the CCD circuit board (black and white printing speed).
007	Last Correct Value: GE BW	*ENG	Displays the previous 2nd black offset value (fine adjustment) for the even green signal in the CCD circuit board (black and white printing speed). [0 to 255 / **128** / 1 digit/step]

008	Last Correct Value: GO BW	*ENG	Displays the previous 2nd black offset value (fine adjustment) for the odd green signal in the CCD circuit board (black and white printing speed).

4663	**[Black Level 2 Rough Adj. Display]** BE: Blue Even signal, BO: Blue Odd signal		
001	Last Correct Value: BE Color	*ENG	Displays the previous 2nd black offset value (rough adjustment) for the even blue signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 255 / **112** / 1 digit/step]
002	Last Correct Value: BO Color	*ENG	Displays the previous 2nd black offset value (rough adjustment) for the odd blue signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed).
003	Last Correct Value: BE Color	*ENG	Displays the previous 2nd black offset value (fine adjustment) for the even blue signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 255 / **128** / 1 digit/step]
004	Last Correct Value: BO Color	*ENG	Displays the previous 2nd black offset value (fine adjustment) for the odd blue signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed).
005	Last Correct Value: BE BW	*ENG	Displays the previous 2nd black offset value (rough adjustment) for the even blue signal in the CCD circuit board (black and white printing speed). [0 to 255 / **112** / 1 digit/step]

006	Last Correct Value: BO BW	*ENG	Displays the previous 2nd black offset value (rough adjustment) for the odd blue signal in the CCD circuit board (black and white printing speed).
007	Last Correct Value: BE BW	*ENG	Displays the previous 2nd black offset value (fine adjustment) for the even blue signal in the CCD circuit board (black and white printing speed). [0 to 255 / **128** / 1 digit/step]
008	Last Correct Value: BO BW	*ENG	Displays the previous 2nd black offset value (fine adjustment) for the odd blue signal in the CCD circuit board (black and white printing speed).

4673	**[Black Level Rough Adj. Display]** RE: Red Even signal, RO: Red Odd signal		
001	Factory Setting: RE Color	*ENG	Displays the factory setting values of the black level adjustment for the even red signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed).. [0 to 255 / **112** / 1 digit/step]
002	Factory Setting: RO Color	*ENG	Displays the factory setting values of the black level adjustment (rough adjustment) for the odd red signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed).
003	Factory Setting: RE Color	*ENG	Displays the factory setting values of the black level adjustment (fine adjustment) for the even red signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 255 / **128** / 1 digit/step]
004	Factory Setting: RO Color	*ENG	Displays the factory setting values of the black level adjustment (fine adjustment) for the odd red signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed).
005	Factory Setting: RE BW	*ENG	Displays the factory setting values of the black level adjustment (rough adjustment) for the even red signal in the CCD circuit board (black and white printing speed). [0 to 255 / **112** / 1 digit/step]
006	Factory Setting: RO BW	*ENG	Displays the factory setting values of the black level adjustment (rough adjustment) for the odd red signal in the CCD circuit board (black and white printing speed).

007	Factory Setting: RE BW	*ENG	Displays the factory setting values of the black level adjustment (fine adjustment) for the even red signal in the CCD circuit board (black and white printing speed). [0 to 255 / **128** / 1 digit/step]
008	Factory Setting: RO BW	*ENG	Displays the factory setting values of the black level adjustment (fine adjustment) for the odd red signal in the CCD circuit board (black and white printing speed).

4674	**[Black Level Rough Adj. Display]** GE: Green Even signal, GO: Green Odd signal		
001	Factory Setting: GE Color	*ENG	Displays the factory setting values of the black level adjustment (rough adjustment) for the even green signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 255 / **112** / 1 digit/step]
002	Factory Setting: GO Color	*ENG	Displays the factory setting values of the black level adjustment (rough adjustment) for the odd green signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed).
003	Factory Setting: GE Color	*ENG	Displays the factory setting values of the black level adjustment (fine adjustment) for the even green signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 255 / **128** / 1 digit/step]
004	Factory Setting: GO Color	*ENG	Displays the factory setting values of the black level adjustment (fine adjustment) for the odd green signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed).

005	Factory Setting: GE BW	*ENG	Displays the factory setting values of the black level adjustment (rough adjustment) for the even green signal in the CCD circuit board (black and white printing speed). [0 to 255 / **112** / 1 digit/step]
006	Factory Setting: GO BW	*ENG	Displays the factory setting values of the black level adjustment (rough adjustment) for the odd green signal in the CCD circuit board (black and white printing speed).
007	Factory Setting: GE BW	*ENG	Displays the factory setting values of the black level adjustment (fine adjustment) for the even green signal in the CCD circuit board (black and white printing speed). [0 to 255 / **128** / 1 digit/step]
008	Factory Setting: GO BW	*ENG	Displays the factory setting values of the black level adjustment (fine adjustment) for the odd green signal in the CCD circuit board (black and white printing speed).

4675	**[Black Level Rough Adj. Display]** BE: Blue Even signal, BO: Blue Odd signal		
001	Factory Setting: BE Color	*ENG	Displays the factory setting values of the black level adjustment (rough adjustment) for the even blue signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 255 / **112** / 1 digit/step]
002	Factory Setting: BO Color	*ENG	Displays the factory setting values of the black level adjustment (rough adjustment) for the odd blue signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed).

003	Factory Setting: BE Color	*ENG	Displays the factory setting values of the black level adjustment (fine adjustment) for the even blue signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed). [0 to 255 / **128** / 1 digit/step]
004	Factory Setting: BO Color	*ENG	Displays the factory setting values of the black level adjustment (fine adjustment) for the odd blue signal in the CCD circuit board (color printing speed).
005	Factory Setting: BE BW	*ENG	Displays the factory setting values of the black level adjustment (rough adjustment) for the even blue signal in the CCD circuit board (black and white printing speed). [0 to 255 / **112** / 1 digit/step]
006	Factory Setting: BO BW	*ENG	Displays the factory setting values of the black level adjustment (rough adjustment) for the odd blue signal in the CCD circuit board (black and white printing speed).
007	Factory Setting: BE BW	*ENG	Displays the factory setting values of the black level adjustment (fine adjustment) for the even blue signal in the CCD circuit board (black and white printing speed). [0 to 255 / **128** / 1 digit/step]
008	Factory Setting: BO BW	*ENG	Displays the factory setting values of the black level adjustment (fine adjustment) for the odd blue signal in the CCD circuit board (black and white printing speed).

4677	[Gain Adjustment]		
	Displays the factory setting values of the gain adjustment for Red.		
001	Factory Setting: RE Color	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	Factory Setting: RO Color	*ENG	
003	Factory Setting: RE BW	*ENG	
004	Factory Setting: RO BW	*ENG	

4678	[Gain Adjustment]		
	Displays the factory setting values of the gain adjustment for Green.		
001	Factory Setting: GE Color	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	Factory Setting: GO Color	*ENG	
003	Factory Setting: GE BW	*ENG	
004	Factory Setting: GO BW	*ENG	

4679	[Gain Adjustment]		
	Displays the factory setting values of the gain adjustment for Blue.		
001	Factory Setting: BE Color	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	Factory Setting: BO Color	*ENG	
003	Factory Setting: BE BW	*ENG	
004	Factory Setting: BO BW	*ENG	

4685	**[Gray Balance Set: R] DFU**		
	Adjusts the gray balance of the red signal for each scanning mode.		
001	Book Read	*ENG	[-512 to 511 / **-240** / 1 digit/step]
002	DF Read	*ENG	

4686	**[Gray Balance Set: G] DFU**		
	Adjusts the gray balance of the green signal for each scanning mode.		
001	Book Read	*ENG	[-512 to 511 / **-240** / 1 digit/step]
002	DF Read	*ENG	

4687	**[Gray Balance Set: B] DFU**		
	Adjusts the gray balance of the blue signal for each scanning mode.		
001	Book Read	*ENG	[-512 to 511 / **-240** / 1 digit/step]
002	DF Read	*ENG	

4688	**[DF: Density Adjustment]**		
	Adjusts the white shading parameter when scanning an image with the ARDF. Adjusts the density level if the ID of outputs made in the DF and Platen mode is different.		
001	-	*ENG	[50 to 150 / **100** / 1 %/ step]

4690	[White Level Peak Read]		
	Displays the peak level of the white level scanning.		
001	RE	-	[0 to 1024 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	RO	-	
003	RE: Bk	-	
004	RO: Bk	-	

4691	[White Level Peak Read]		
	Displays the peak level of the white level scanning.		
001	GE	-	[0 to 1024 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	GO	-	
003	GE: Bk	-	
004	GO: Bk	-	

4692	[White Level Peak Read]		
	Displays the peak level of the white level scanning.		
001	BE	-	[0 to 1024 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	BO	-	
003	BE: Bk	-	
004	BO: Bk	-	

4693	[Black Level Peak Read]		
	Displays the peak level of the black level scanning.		
001	RE	-	[0 to 1024 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	RO	-	
003	RE: Bk	-	
004	RO: Bk	-	

4694	[Black Level Peak Read]		
	Displays the peak level of the black level scanning.		
001	GE	-	[0 to 1024 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	GO	-	
003	GE: Bk	-	
004	GO: Bk	-	

4695	[Black Level Peak Read]		
	Displays the peak level of the black level scanning.		
001	BE	-	[0 to 1024 / **0** / 1 digit/step]
002	BO	-	
003	BE: Bk	-	
004	BO: Bk	-	

4802	[DF Shading FreeRun]		
001	Lamp ON	-	Executes the scanner free run of shading movement with exposure lamp on or off. Press "OFF" to stop this free run. Otherwise, the free run lasts.
002	Lamp OFF		

4804	[Home Position]		
001	Lamp ON	-	Executes the scanner HP detection.

4806	[Carriage Save]		
001	Lamp ON	-	Moves the carriage from the scanner home position. Dust may fall through the DF exposure glass. Therefore, do this SP when you transport the machine a long distance.

4902	[ACC Data Display]		
	This SP outputs the final data read at the end of ACC execution. A zero is returned if there was an error reading the data. [0 to 255 / **0** / 1 /step]		
001	R DATA1	*ENG	Photo C Patch Level 1 (8-bit)
002	G DATA1	*ENG	Photo M Patch Level 1 (8-bit)
003	B DATA1	*ENG	Photo Y Patch Level 1 (8-bit)
004	R DATA2	*ENG	Photo C Patch Level 17 (8-bit)
005	G DATA2	*ENG	Photo M Patch Level 17(8-bit)
006	B DATA2	*ENG	Photo Y Patch Level 17 (8-bit)

4904	**[Scanner IPU Board Test]**		
001	Test1	-	Bit0: TAURUS register Bit1: ORION register Bit2: LUPUS register Bit3 to 11: Not used Bit12: Ri20 Bit13 to 15: Not used 0: OK, 1: Error
	Performs a write and read check of the ASICs on the IPU board and displays the result.		
002	Test2	-	Bit0: Image path from SBU to TAURUS Bit1: Image path from TAURUS to ORION Bit2: Image path from ORION to TAURUS Bit3: Image path from TAURUS to LUPUS Bit4 to 11: Not used Bit12: Image path from LUPUS to Ri20 Bit13: Image path from Ri20 to GAVD Bit14 and 15: Not used 0: OK, 1: Error
	Performs an image path check on the IPU board and displays the result.		

4905	**[Dither Selection] DFU**		
	Changes the parameters for error diffusion.		
4905 1	Dither Selection	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **0** / 1 /step] **DFU**

4907	**[SBU Test Pattern Change]**		
4907 1	Test Pattern: R	-	[0 to 255 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: Default (Scanning Image) 1: Grid pattern 2: Gradation main scan 3: Gradation sub scan 4 to 250: Default (Scanning Image)
	Selects the test pattern generated by the controller board.		

4918	**[Manual Gamma Adj.]**		
	Adjusts the offset data of the printer gamma for yellow in Photo mode. See 3.3.6 in the Replacement and Adjustment for how to use.		
009	Change	-	Enter the manual gamma adjustment screen (-001 to 008). For details, see 3.3.6 "Printer Gamma Correction"" in the section "Replace and Adjustment".

4991	**[IPU Image Pass Selection]**		
	Selects the image path. Enter the number to be selected using the 10-key pad.		
001	RGB Frame Memory	*ENG	[0 to 14 / **2** / 1 /step]
	0: Scanner input RGB images 1: Scanner I/F RGB images 2: RGB images done by Shading correction (Shading ON, Black offset ON) 3: Shading data 4: Inner pattern data: Gray scale 5: RGB images done by Line skipping correction 6: RGB images done by Digital AE 7: RGB images done by Vertical line correction 8: RGB image done by Scanner gamma correction 9: RGB image done by Filtering correction 10: RGB images done by Full color ADS 11: RGB image done by Color correction		

4993	**[High Light Correction]**		
001	Sensitivity Selection	*ENG	Selects the Highlight correction level. [0 to 9 / **4** / 1 /step] 0: weakest sensitivity 9: strongest sensitivity
002	Range Selection	*ENG	Selects the range level of Highlight correction. [0 to 9 / **4** / 1 /step] 0: weakest skew correction, 9: strongest skew correction

4994	**[Text/Photo Detection Level Adj.]**		
	Selects the definition level between Text and Photo for high compression PDF.		
001	PDF Sensitivity Level text/photo	*ENG	[0 to 2 / **1** / 1 /step] 0: Text priority 1: Normal 2: Photo priority

SP5-XXX (Mode)

5024	**[mm/inch Display Selection]**		
	Display units (mm or inch) for custom paper sizes.		
001	0:mm 1:inch	*CTL	0: mm (Europe/Asia) **1: inch (USA)**

5045	**[Accounting Counter]**		
	Selects the counting method. **NOTE:** The counting method can be changed only once, regardless of whether the counter value is negative or positive.		
001	Counter Method	*CTL	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: Developments 1: Prints

5047	**[Paper Display]**		
	Turns on or off the printed paper display on the LCD.		
001	-	*CTL	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: OFF, 1: ON

5051	[Toner Refill Detection Display]		
	Enables or disables the toner refill detection display.		
5051 1	Toner Refill Detection Display	*CTL	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] Alphanumeric 0: ON 1: OFF

5055	[Display IP Address]		
	Display or does not display the IP address on the LCD.		
001	-	*CTL	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: OFF 1: ON

5056	[Coverage Counter Display]		
	Display or does not display the coverage counter on the LCD.		
001	-	*CTL	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: Not display, 1: Display

5061	[Toner Remaining Icon Display]		
	Display or does not display the remaining toner display icon on the LCD.		
001	-	*CTL	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: Not display, 1: Display

5062	[Parts PM Display Setting]		
	Display or does not display the PM part yield on the LCD. **Not used in this model**		
001	-	*CTL	[0 or 1 / **1** / -] 0: ON, 1: OFF

*5104	[A3/DLT Double Count] SSP		
	Specifies whether the counter is double clicked for A3/DLT size prints. When you have to change this SP, ask your supervisor.		
5104 1	Double Count	*CTL	[0 to 2 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: NO (Normal count) 1: YES (Double count) 2: YES except By-pass (Normal count for unknown size)

*For Future Use

5112	**[Non-Std. Paper Sel.]** Non-Standard Paper Selection
001	Determines whether a non-standard paper size can be input for the universal cassette trays (Tray 2, and Optional paper tray unit trays 1 and 2) [0 or 1/ **0** / -] 0: OFF 1: ON, If “1” is selected, the customer will be able to input a non-standard paper size using the UP mode.

5113	[Optional Counter Type]		
001	Default Optional Counter Type	*CTL	This program specifies the counter type. **0**: **None**, 1: Key card (RK 3, 4) 2: Key card (down), 3: Prepaid card 4: Coin rack, 5: MF key card 8: Key counter + Vendor 9: Bar-code Printer

002	External Optional Counter Type	*CTL	This program specifies the external counter type. **0**: **None** 1: Expansion Device 1 2: Expansion Device 2 3: Expansion Device 3

5114	**[Optional Counter I/F]**		
001	MF Key Card Extension	*CTL	[**0: Not installed/** 1: Installed (scanning accounting)]

5118	**[Disable Copying]**	*CTL	[**0**: Not disabled/ 1: Disabled]
001	This program disables copying.		

5120	**[Mode Clear Opt. Counter Removal]**	*CTL	[**0**: **Yes (removed)**/ 1: Standby (installed but not used)/ 2: No (not removed)]
001	This program updates the information on the optional counter. When you install or remove an optional counter, check the settings.		

5121	**[Counter Up Timing]**	*CTL	[**0: Feed**/ 1: Exit]
001	This program specifies when the counter goes up. The settings refer to “paper feed” and “paper exit” respectively.		

5126	**[F Size Original Setting]**	*ENG	[0 to 2 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: 8 1/2" x 13" (Foolscap) 1: 8 1/4" x 13" (Folio) 2: 8" x 13" (F)
001	Selects F size original setting.		

5127	**[APS Mode]**	*CTL	[**0**: Not disabled/ 1: Disabled]
001	This program disables the APS.		

5128	**[Code Mode With Key/Card Option]**	*CTL	-
001	**DFU**		

5131	**[Paper Size Type Selection]**	*ENG	[0: JP (Japan)/ 1: NA / 2: EU]
001	The program selects a paper size system from the following alternatives: the AB system (0), the LT system (1), and the AF system (2).		

5150	**[By-Pass Length Setting]**	*CTL	[**0**: OFF/ 1: ON]
001	Determines whether the transfer sheet from the by-pass tray is used or not. Normally the paper length for sub scanning paper from the by-pass tray is limited to 600 mm, but this can be extended with this SP to 1260 mm.		

5162	**[App. Switch Method]**	*CTL	[**0**: Soft Key Set/ 1: Hard Key Set]
001	This program specifies the switch that selects an application program.		

5167	**[Fax Printing Mode at Optional]**		
	Enables or disables the automatic print out without an accounting device. This SP is used when the receiving fax is accounted by an external accounting device.		
001	Fax Printing Mode at Optional Counter Off	*CTL	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: Automatic printing 1: No automatic printing

5169	**[CE Login]**		
	If you will change the printer bit switches, you must 'log in' to service mode with this SP before you go into the printer SP mode.		
001	CE Login	*CTL	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: Disabled 1: Enabled

5179	**[By-pass Size Error Detection]**		
	Turns on or off the by-pass tray size error message.		
001	-	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: OFF 1: ON (Paper size error message is displayed when the paper jam occurs due to the wrong direction of set paper in by-pass mode.)

5181	**[Size Adjust]**		
	Adjusts the paper size for each tray.		
001	TRAY 1	*ENG	[0 to 3 / 0 (EU/ASIA), **1 (NA)** / 1 /step] 0: A4 LEF, 1: LT LEF, 2: B5 LEF, 3: A5 LEF
002	TRAY 2: 1	*ENG	[0 or 1 / 0 (EU/ASIA)**, 1 (NA)** / -] 0: A4 LEF, 1: LT LEF
003	TRAY 2: 2	*ENG	[0 or 1 / 0 (EU/ASIA)**, 1 (NA)** / -] 0: A3, 1: DLT
004	TRAY 2: 3	*ENG	[0 or 1 / 0 (EU/ASIA), **1 (NA)** / -] 0: B4, 1: LG

005	TRAY 2: 4	*ENG	[0 or 1 / 0 (EU/ASIA), **1 (NA)** / -] 0: B5 LEF, 1: Exe LEF
006	TRAY 3: 1 (LCT)	*ENG	[0 or 1 / 0 (EU/ASIA), **1 (NA)** / -] 0: A4 LEF, 1: LT LEF
007	TRAY 3: 2 (LCT)	*ENG	[0 or 1 / 0 (EU/ASIA), **1 (NA)** / -] 0: A3, 1: DLT
008	TRAY 3: 3 (LCT)	*ENG	[0 or 1 / 0 (EU/ASIA), **1 (NA)** / -] 0: B4, 1: LG
009	TRAY 3: 4 (LCT)	*ENG	[0 or 1 / 0 (EU/ASIA), **1 (NA)** / -] 0: B5 LEF, 1: Exe LEF
010	TRAY 4: 1	*ENG	[0 or 1 / 0 (EU/ASIA), **1 (NA)** / -] 0: A4 LEF, 1: LT LEF
011	TRAY 4: 2	*ENG	[0 or 1 / 0 (EU/ASIA), **1 (NA)** / -] 0: A3, 1: DLT
012	TRAY 4: 3	*ENG	[0 or 1 / 0 (EU/ASIA), **1 (NA)** / -] 0: B4, 1: LG
013	TRAY 4: 4	*ENG	[0 or 1 / 0 (EU/ASIA), **1 (NA)** / -] 0: B5 LEF, 1: Exe LEF
014	TRAY 5: 1	*ENG	Not used in this machine.
015	TRAY 5: 2	*ENG	
016	TRAY 5: 3	*ENG	
017	TRAY 5: 4	*ENG	

5186	**[RK 4]**		
	Enables or disables the prevention for RK4 (accounting device) disconnection. If the RK4 is disconnected for 10 seconds when this SP is set to "1 (Enable)", the machine automatically jams a sheet of paper and stops.		
001	-	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: Disable 1: Enable

5212	**[Page Numbering]**	*CTL	
	This program adjusts the position of the second side page numbers. A "– value" moves the page number positions to the left edge. A "+ value" moves the page number positions to the right edge.		
003	Duplex Printout Right/Left Position	[–10 to 10 / **0** / 1 mm/step]	
004	Duplex Printout High/Low Position	[–10 to 10 / **0** / 1 mm/step]	

5302	**[Set Time]**		
	Adjusts the RTC (real time clock) time setting for the local time zone. Examples: For Japan (+9 GMT), enter 540 (9 hours x 60 min.) DOM: +540 (Tokyo) **NA: -300 (New York)** EU: + 60 (Paris) CH: +480 (Peking) TW: +480 (Taipei) AS: +480 (Hong Kong)		
002	Time Difference	*CTL #	[-1440 to 1440 / **Area** / 1 min./step]

5307	**[Summer Time]**		
001	Setting		[0 to 1 / **NA, EU, ASIA** / **1** /step] 0: Disabled 1: Enabled NA and EUR: 1, ASIA: 0
	Enables or disables the summer time mode. Note ▪ Make sure that both SP5-307-3 and -4 are correctly set. Otherwise, this SP is not activated even if this SP is set to "1".		
003	Rule Set (Start)		
	Specifies the start setting for the summer time mode. There are 8 digits in this SP. For months 1 to 9, the "0" cannot be input in the first digit, so the eight-digit setting for -2 or -3 becomes a seven-digit setting. 1st and 2nd digits: The month. [1 to 12] 3rd digit: The week of the month. [1 to 5] 4th digit: The day of the week. [0 to 6 = Sunday to Saturday] 5th and 6th digits: The hour. [00 to 23] 7th digit: The length of the advanced time. [0 to 9 / 1 hour /step] 8th digit: The length of the advanced time. [0 to 5 / 10 minutes /step] For example: 3500010 (EU default) The timer is advanced by 1 hour at am 0:00 on the 5th Sunday in March ▪ The digits are counted from the left. ▪ Make sure that SP5-307-1 is set to "1".		

004	Rule Set (End)	-	-
	Specifies the end setting for the summer time mode. There are 8 digits in this SP. 1st and 2nd digits: The month. [1 to 12] 3rd digit: The week of the month. [0 to 5] 4th digit: The day of the week. [0 to 7 = Sunday to Saturday] 5th and 6th digits: The hour. [00 to 23] The 7th and 8 digits must be set to "00". ▪ The digits are counted from the left. ▪ Make sure that SP5-307-1 is set to "1".		

⇒

5401	**[Access Control]**		
	When installing the SDK application, SAS (VAS) adjusts the following settings. DFU		
103	Default Document ACL		Assign default access privileges of users to their own documents on the Document Server. **0**: Read only (default) 1: Edit 2: Edit/delete 3: Full control
200	SDK1 Unique ID	*CTL	This ID is overwritten by SAS (VAS) when you install or uninstall the SDK application.
201	SDK1 Certification Method	*CTL	[0 to 255 / 0 / 1 /step]
210	SDK2 Unique ID	*CTL	-
211	SDK2 Certification Method	*CTL	[0 to 255 / 0 / 1 /step]
220	SDK3 Unique ID	*CTL	-
221	SDK3 Certification Method	*CTL	[0 to 255 / 0 / 1 /step]

5404	**[User Code Counter Clear]**		
001	UCodeCtrClr		Clears all counters for users.

5501	**[PM Alarm]**	*CTL	-
001	PM Alarm Level	[0 to 9999 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: Alarm off 1 to 9999: Alarm goes off when **Value (1 to 9999) x 1000** ≥ **PM counter**	
002	Original Count Alarm	[0 or 1 / **1** / –] 0: No alarm sounds 1: Alarm sounds after the number of originals passing through the ARDF ≥ 10,000	

5504	**[Jam Alarm]**	*CTL	-
001	Sets the alarm to sound for the specified jam level (document misfeeds are not included). [0 to 3 / **3** / 1 /step] 0: Zero (Off) 1: Low (2.5K jams) 2: Medium (3K jams) 3: High (6K jams)		

5505	**[Error Alarm]**		
	Sets the error alarm level. The error alarm counter counts "1" when any SC is detected. However, the error alarm counter decreases by "1" when an SC is not detected during a set number of copied sheets (for example, default 1500 sheets). The error alarm occurs when the SC error alarm counter reaches "5".		
001	-	*CTL	[0 to 255 / **19 (B222/B224)** / 100 copies /step]

5507	**[Supply Alarm]**	*CTL	-
001	Paper Supply Alarm	**0**: Off, 1: On, **DFU**	
002	Staple Supply Alarm	**0**: Off, 1: On, **Japan only**	
003	Toner Supply Alarm	**0**: Off, 1: On, **DFU**	
128	Interval :Others	[250 to 10000 / **1000** / 1 /step] **DFU**	
132	Interval :A3		
133	Interval :A4		
134	Interval :A5		
141	Interval :B4		
142	Interval :B5		
160	Interval :DLT		
164	Interval :LG		
166	Interval :LT		
172	Interval :HLT		

5508*	**[CC Call]**	*CTL	-
001*	Jam Remains	0: Disable, **1**: Enable	
	Enables/disables initiating a call for an unattended paper jam.		
002*	Continuous Jams	0: Disable, **1**: Enable	
	Enables/disables initiating a call for consecutive paper jams.		
003*	Continuous Door Open	0: Disable, **1**: Enable	
	Enables/disables initiating a call when the front door remains open.		
011*	Jam Detection: Time Length	[3 to 30 / **10** / 1 minute /step]	
	Sets the time a jam must remain before it becomes an “unattended paper jam”. This setting is enabled only when SP5508-004 is set to "1".		
012*	Jam Detection: Continuous Count	[2 to 10 / **5** / 1 /step]	
	Sets the number of consecutive paper jams required to initiate a call. This setting is enabled only when SP5508-004 is set to "1".		
013*	Door Open: Time Length	[3 to 30 / **10** / 1 /step]	
	Sets the length of time the door remains open before the machine initiates a call. This setting is enabled only when SP5-508-004 is set to "1".		
021*	Jam Operation: Time Length	0: Automatic Call **1**: Audible Warning at Machine	
	Determines what happens when a paper jam is left unattended.		
022*	Jam Operation: Continuous Count	0: Automatic Call **1**: Audible Warning at Machine	

	Determines what happens when consecutive paper jams occur.	
023*	Door Operation: Time Length	0: OFF, **1**: ON
	Determines what happens if the door remains open (15 min.). Displays a warning if set to ON. Pressing the call button will contact the service center. This setting is available for setting only if SP5508-004 is set to "1".	

5515	**[SC/Alarm Setting]**	*CTL	-
	With NRS (New Remote Service) in use, these SP codes can be set to issue an SC call when an SC error occurs. If this SP is switched off, the SC call is not issued when an SC error occurs.		
001	SC Call	[0 or 1 / **1** / -] 0: Off 1: On	
002	Service Parts Near End Call		
003	Service Parts End Call		
004	User Call		
006	CE Call		

007	Communication Test Call	[0 or 1 / **1** / -] 0: Off 1: On
008	Machine Information Notice	
009	Alarm Notice	
010	Non Genuine Toner Alarm	
011	Supply Automatic Ordering Call	
012	Supply Management Report Call	
*013	Jam/Door Open Call	

*For Future Use

5516	**[Individual PM Part Alarm Call]**	*CTL	-
001	Disable/ Enable Setting	Enables or disables the PM part alarm call. [0 or 1 / **1** / -] 0: Not Send, 1: Send	
002	Alarm Flag	Displays the condition of the PM part alarm call. [0 or 1 / 1 / -] 0: Ready (to send), 1: Already Send	
003	Alarm Flag Clear	Clears the alarm flag (SP5-516-002). Do this SP after servicing for PM parts. So, SP5-516-002 is set to "0".	

5610	[ACC Factory Setting]		
004	Recall	-	-
	Recalls the factory settings.		
005	Overwrite	-	-
	Overwrites the current values onto the factory settings.		
006	Previous Setting	-	-
	Recalls the previous settings.		

5611	[Toner Color in 2C]		
001	B-C	*ENG	[0 to 128 / **100** / 1 /step] 128: Darkest density
	Adjusts the Cyan correction value of the blue signal in two-color mode.		
002	B-M	*ENG	[0 to 128 / **100** / 1 /step] 128: Darkest density
	Adjusts the Magenta correction value of the blue signal in two-color mode.		
003	G-C	*ENG	[0 to 128 / **100** / 1 /step] 128: Darkest density
	Adjusts the Cyan correction value of the blue signal in two-color mode.		
004	G-Y	*ENG	[0 to 128 / **100** / 1 /step] 128: Darkest density
	Adjusts the Yellow correction value of the blue signal in two-color mode.		
005	R-M	*ENG	[0 to 128 / **100** / 1 /step] 128: Darkest density
	Adjusts the Magenta correction value of the blue signal in two-color mode.		

006	R-Y	*ENG	[0 to 128 / **100** / 1 /step] 128: Darkest density
	Adjusts the Yellow correction value of the blue signal in two-color mode.		

5618	**[Color Mode Display Selection]**		
001	-	*CTL	[0 or 1 / **1** / -] 0: ACS, Colour, Black & White, Two Colour, Single colour 1: ACD, Full Colour, Black & White
	Selects the color selection display on the LCD.		

5801	**[Memory Clear]** **NOTE**: For more information, see “NOTE 1” following "SP8-xxx" table.		
001	All Clear		
	Resets all correction data for process control and all software counters, and returns all modes and adjustments to their default values. Use this SP only after replacing the NVRAM, or after the copier has malfunctioned due to a damaged NVRAM.		
002	Engine	-	-
	Clears the engine settings.		
003	SCS	-	-
	Clears the system settings.		
004	IMH Memory Clr	-	-
	Clears IMH data. **DFU**		

005	MCS	-	-
	Clears MCS data. **DFU**		
006	Copier Application	-	-
	Clears the copy application settings.		
007	Fax Application	-	-
	Clears the fax application settings.		
008	Printer Application	-	-
	Clears the printer application settings.		
009	Scanner Application	-	-
	Clears the scanner application settings.		
010	Web Service/Network Application	-	-
	Delete the netfile application management files and thumbnails, and initializes the job login ID.		
011	NCS	-	-
	Initializes the system default and interface settings (IP address also), SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin, WebStatusMonitor settings, and the TELNET settings.		
012	R-FAX	-	-
	Initializes the job login ID, SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin, job history, and local storage file numbers.		
013	IPU	-	-
	Initializes the IPU settings.		

014	Clear DCS Settings	-	-
	Initializes the DCS (Delivery Control Service) settings.		
015	Clear UCS Settings	-	-
	Initializes the UCS (User Information Control Service) settings.		
016	MIRS Setting	-	-
	Initializes the MIRS (Machine Information Report Service) settings.		
017	CCS	-	-
	Initializes the CCS (Certification and Charge-control Service) settings.		
018	SRM Memory Clr	-	-
	Initializes the SRM (System Resource Manager) settings.		
019	LCS	-	-
	Initializes the LCS (Log Count Service) settings.		
020	WebUapl		-
	Initializes the WebUapl settings.		

5802	**[Free Run]**		
	Performs a free run on the copier engine. Note ▪ The machine starts free run in the same condition as the sequence of A4/LT, A3 or A4 SEF printing from the 1st or 2nd tray. Therefore, the correct paper should be loaded in the 1st tray or 2nd tray, but paper is not fed. ▪ The main switch has to be turned off and on after using the free run mode for a test.		
001	TRAY1: A4LEF: FC	-	-
002	TRAY2: A3: FC	-	
003	TRAY2: A4SEF: FC	-	

5803	**[Input Check]**	-	See 5.2.2 "Input Check Table"" in this section.
5804	**[Output Check]**	**-**	See 5.2.3 "Output Check Table"" in this section.

5810	**[SC Reset]**		
	Resets a type A service call condition. Note ▪ Turn the main switch off and on after resetting the SC code.		
001	Fusing SC Reset	-	-

5811	**[Machine Serial]** Machine Serial Number Display		
002	Display	*ENG	Displays the machine serial number.

5812	**[Service Tel. No. Setting]**		
001	Service	*CTL	-
	Sets the telephone number for a service representative. This number is printed on the Counter List, which can be printed with the user's "Counter" menu. This can be up to 20 characters (both numbers and alphabetic characters can be input).		
002	Facsimile	*CTL	-
	Sets the fax or telephone number for a service representative. This number is printed on the Counter List. This can be up to 20 characters (both numbers and alphabetic characters can be input).		
003	Supply	*CTL	-
	Use this to input the telephone number of your supplier for consumables. Enter the number and press #.		
004	Operation	*CTL	-
	Use this to input the telephone number of your sales agency. Enter the number and press #.		

5816	**[Remote Service]**	*CTL	**-**
001	I/F Setting		
	Selects the remote service setting. [0 to 2 / **2** / 1 /step] 0: Remote service off 1: CSS remote service on 2: NRS remote service on		

002	CE Call
	Performs the CE Call at the start or end of the service. [0 or 1 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: Start of the service 1: End of the service **NOTE:** This SP is activated only when SP 5816-001 is set to “1”.
003	Function Flag
	Enables or disables the remote service function. [0 to 1 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: Disabled 1: Enabled
*006	Device Information Call Display Setting
	Displays or does not display the device information call content. [0 to 1 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: Not displayed 1: Displayed
007	SSL Disable
	Uses or does not use the RCG certification by SSL when calling the RCG. [0 to 1 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: Uses the RCG certification 1: Does no use the RCG certification
008	RCG Connect Timeout
	Specifies the connect timeout interval when calling the RCG. [1 to 90 / **10** / 1 second /step]
009	RCG Write Timeout
	Specifies the write timeout interval when calling the RCG. [1 to 100 / **60** / 1 second /step]

* For Future Use

010	RCG Read Timeout	
	Specifies the read timeout interval when calling the RCG. [1 to 100 / **60** / 1 second /step]	
011	Port 80 Enable	-
	Enables/disables access via port 80 to the SOAP method. [0 or 1 / **0** / –] 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	
021	RCG – C Registed	
	This SP displays the Cumin installation end flag. 0: Installation not completed 1: Installation completed	
022	RCG – C Registed Detail	
	This SP displays the Cumin installation status. 0: Basil not registered 1: Basil registered 2: Device registered	
023	Connect Type (N/M)	
	This SP displays and selects the Cumin connection method. [0 or 1 / **0** / 1 /step 0: Internet connection 1: Dial-up connection	
061	Cert. Expire Timing **DFU**	Proximity of the expiration of the certification.
062	Use Proxy	This SP setting determines if the proxy server is used when the machine communicates with the service center.

063	Proxy Host
	This SP sets the address of the proxy server used for communication between Cumin-N and the gateway. Use this SP to set up or display the customer proxy server address. The address is necessary to set up Cumin-N. Note ▪ The address display is limited to 128 characters. Characters beyond the 128 character are ignored. ▪ This address is customer information and is not printed in the SMC report.
064	Proxy Port Number
	This SP sets the port number of the proxy server used for communication between Cumin-N and the gateway. This setting is necessary to set up Cumin-N. Note ▪ This port number is customer information and is not printed in the SMC report.
065	Proxy User Name
	This SP sets the HTTP proxy certification user name. Note ▪ The length of the name is limited to 31 characters. Any character beyond the 31st character is ignored. ▪ This name is customer information and is not printed in the SMC report.
066	Proxy Password
	This SP sets the HTTP proxy certification password. Note ▪ The length of the password is limited to 31 characters. Any character beyond the 31st character is ignored. ▪ This name is customer information and is not printed in the SMC report.

067	CERT: Up State	
	Displays the status of the certification update.	
	0	The certification used by Cumin is set correctly.
	1	The certification request (setAuthKey) for update has been received from the GW URL and certification is presently being updated.
	2	The certification update is completed and the GW URL is being notified of the successful update.
	3	The certification update failed, and the GW URL is being notified of the failed update.
	4	The period of the certification has expired and new request for an update is being sent to the GW URL.
	11	A rescue update for certification has been issued and a rescue certification setting is in progress for the rescue GW connection.
	12	The rescue certification setting is completed and the GW URL is being notified of the certification update request.
	13	The notification of the request for certification update has completed successfully, and the system is waiting for the certification update request from the rescue GW URL.
	14	The notification of the certification request has been received from the rescue GW controller, and the certification is being stored.
	15	The certification has been stored, and the GW URL is being notified of the successful completion of this event.
	16	The storing of the certification has failed, and the GW URL is being notified of the failure of this event.
	17	The certification update request has been received from the GW URL, the GW URL was notified of the results of the update after it was completed, but an certification error has been received, and the rescue certification is being recorded.

	18	The rescue certification of No. 17 has been recorded, and the GW URL is being notified of the failure of the certification update.
068	CERT: Error	
	Displays a number code that describes the reason for the request for update of the certification.	
	0	Normal. There is no request for certification update in progress.
	1	Request for certification update in progress. The current certification has expired.
	2	An SSL error notification has been issued. Issued after the certification has expired.
	3	Notification of shift from a common authentication to an individual certification.
	4	Notification of a common certification without ID2.
	5	Notification that no certification was issued.
	6	Notification that GW URL does not exist.
069	CERT: Up ID	The ID of the request for certification.
083	Firmware Up Status	Displays the status of the firmware update.
084	Non-HDD Firm Up	This setting determines if the firmware can be updated, even without the HDD installed. 0: Not allowed update 1: Allowed update
085	Firm Up User Check	This SP setting determines if the operator can confirm the previous version of the firmware before the firmware update execution. If the option to confirm the previous version is selected, a notification is sent to the system manager and the firmware update is done with the firmware files from the URL.

086	Firmware Size	Allows the service technician to confirm the size of the firmware data files during the firmware update execution.
087	CERT: Macro Version	Displays the macro version of the NRS certification.
088	CERT: PAC Version	Displays the PAC version of the NRS certification.
089	CERT: ID2 Code	Displays ID2 for the NRS certification. Spaces are displayed as underscores (_). Asteriskes () indicate that no NRS certification exists.
090	CERT: Subject	Displays the common name of the NRS certification subject. CN = the following 17 bytes. Spaces are displayed as underscores (_). Asterisks () indicate that no DESS exists.
091	CERT: Serial Number	Displays serial number for the NRS certification. Asterisks () indicate that no DESS exists.
092	CERT: Issuer	Displays the common name of the issuer of the NRS certification. CN = the following 30 bytes. Asteriskes () indicate that no DESS exists.
093	CERT: Valid Start	Displays the start time of the period for which the current NRS certification is enabled.
094	CERT: Valid End	Displays the end time of the period for which the current NRS certification is enabled.
150	Selection Country	
	Select from the list the name of the country where Cumin-M is installed in the machine. After selecting the country, you must also set the following SP codes for Cumin-M: ▪ SP5816-153 ▪ SP5816-154 ▪ SP5816-161 0: Japan, 1: USA, 2: Canada, 3: UK, 4: Germany, 5: France, 6: Italy,	

	7: Netherlands, 8: Belgium, 9: Luxembourg, 10: Spain
151	Line Type Authentication Judgment
	Touch [Execute]. Setting this SP classifies the telephone line where Cumin-M is connected as either dial-up or push type, so Cumin-M can automatically distinguish the number that connects to the outside line. ▪ The current progress, success, or failure of this execution can be displayed with SP5816-152. ▪ If the execution succeeded, SP5816-153 will display the result for confirmation and SP5816-154 will display the telephone number for the connection to the outside line.
152	Line Type Judgment Result
	Displays a number to show the result of the execution of SP5816 151. Here is a list of what the numbers mean. 0: Success 1: In progress (no result yet). Please wait. 2: Line abnormal 3: Cannot detect dial tone automatically 4: Line is disconnected 5: Insufficient electrical power supply 6: Line classification not supported 7: Error because fax transmission in progress – ioctl() occurred. 8: Other error occurred 9: Line classification still in progress. Please wait.
153	Selection Dial/Push
	This SP displays the classification (tone or pulse) of the telephone line to the access point for Cumin-M. The numbered displayed (0 or 1) is the result of the execution of SP5816 151. However, this setting can also be changed manually. [0 to 1/ **0** / 1 /step] 0: Tone Dialing Phone 1: Pulse Dialing Phone

	Inside Japan "2" may also be displayed: 0: Tone Dialing Phone 1: Pulse Dialing Phone 10PPS 2: Pulse Dialing Phone 20PPS
154	Outside Line/Outgoing Number
	The SP sets the number that switches to PSTN for the outside connection for Cumin-M in a system that employs a PBX (internal line). ▪ If the execution of SP5816 151 has succeeded and Cumin-M has connected to the **external** line, this SP display is completely blank. ▪ If Cumin-M has connected to an **internal** line, then the number of the connection to the external line is displayed. ▪ If Cumin-M has connected to an external line, a comma is displayed with the number. The comma is inserted for a 2 sec. pause. ▪ The number setting for the external line can be entered manually (including commas).
156	Dial Up User Name
	Use this SP to set a user name for access to remote dial up. Follow these rules when setting a user name: ▪ Name length: Up to 32 characters ▪ Spaces and # allowed but the entire entry must be enclosed by double quotation marks (").
157	Dial Up Password
	Use this SP to set a password for access to remote dial up. Follow these rules when setting a user name: ▪ Name length: Up to 32 characters ▪ Spaces and # allowed but the entire entry must be enclosed by double quotation marks (").

161	Local Phone Number
	Use this SP to set the telephone number of the line where Cumin-M is connected. This number is transmitted to and used by the Call Center to return calls. Limit: 24 numbers (numbers only)
162	Connection Timing Adjustment: Incoming
	When the Call Center calls out to a Cumin-M modem, it sends a repeating ID tone (*#1#). This SP sets the line remains open to send these ID tones after the number of the Cumin-M modem is dialed up and connected. [0 to 24 / **1** / 1 /step] The actual amount of time is this setting x 2 sec. For example, if you set "2" the line will remain open for 4 sec.
163	Access Point
	This is the number of the dial-up access point for Cumin-M. If no setting is done for this SP code, then a preset value (determined by the country selected) is used. Default: 0 Allowed: Up to 16 alphanumeric characters
164	Line Connecting
	This SP sets the connection conditions for the customer. This setting dedicates the line to Cumin-M only, or sets the line for sharing between Cumin-M and a fax unit. [0 to 1 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: Sharing Fax 1: No Sharing Fax Note ▪ If this setting is changed, the copier must be cycled off and on. ▪ SP5816 187 determines whether the off-hook button can be used to interrupt a Cumin-M transmission in progress to open the line for fax transaction.

173	Modem Serial Number	This SP displays the serial number registered for the Cumin-M.	
174	Retransmission Limit		
	Normally, it is best to allow unlimited time for certification and ID2 update requests, and for the notification that the certification has been completed. However, Cumin-M generates charges based on transmission time for the customer, so a limit is placed upon the time allowed for these transactions. If these transactions cannot be completed within the allowed time, do this SP to cancel the time restriction.		
187	FAX TX Priority	-	
	This SP determines whether pushing the off-hook button will interrupt a Cumin-M transmission in progress to open the line for fax transaction. This SP can be used only if SP5816 164 is set to "0". [0 or 1/ **0** / -] 0: Disable, 1: Enable		
200	Manual Polling	-	Executes the manual polling.
201	Regist: Status		
	Displays a number that indicates the status of the NRS service device. 0: Neither the NRS device nor Cumin device are set. 1: The Cumin device is being set. Only Box registration is completed. In this status the Basil unit cannot answer a polling request. 2: The Cumin device is set. In this status the Basil unit cannot answer a polling request. 3: The NRS device is being set. In this status the Cumin device cannot be set. 4: The NRS module has not started.		
202	Letter Number	Allows entry of the number of the request needed for the Cumin device.	
203	Confirm Execute	Executes the inquiry request to the NRS GW URL.	
204	Confirm Result		
	Displays a number that indicates the result of the inquiry executed with		

	SP5816 203. 0: Succeeded 1: Inquiry number error 2: Registration in progress 3: Proxy error (proxy enabled) 4: Proxy error (proxy disabled) 5: Proxy error (Illegal user name or password) 6: Communication error 7: Certification update error 8: Other error 9: Inquiry executing		
205	Confirm Place		
	Displays the result of the notification sent to the device from the GW URL in answer to the inquiry request. Displayed only when the result is registered at the GW URL.		
206	Register Execute	Executes Cumin Registration.	
207	Register Result		
	Displays a number that indicates the registration result. 0: Succeeded 2: Registration in progress 3: Proxy error (proxy enabled) 4: Proxy error (proxy disabled) 5: Proxy error (Illegal user name or password) 6: Communication error 7: Certification update error 8: Other error 9: Registration executing		
208	Error Code		
	Displays a number that describes the error code that was issued when either SP5816-204 or SP5816-207 was executed.		
	Cause	**Code**	**Meaning**

	Illegal Modem Parameter	-11001	Chat parameter error
		-11002	Chat execution error
		-11003	Unexpected error
	Operation Error, Incorrect Setting	-12002	Inquiry, registration attempted without acquiring device status.
		-12003	Attempted registration without execution of an inquiry and no previous registration.
		-12004	Attempted setting with illegal entries for certification and ID2.
	Error Caused by Response from GW URL	-2385	Attempted dial up overseas without the correct international prefix for the telephone number.
		-2387	Not supported at the Service Center
		-2389	Database out of service
		-2390	Program out of service
		-2391	Two registrations for same device
		-2392	Parameter error
		-2393	Basil not managed
		-2394	Device not managed
		-2395	Box ID for Basil is illegal
		-2396	Device ID for Basil is illegal
		-2397	Incorrect ID2 format
		-2398	Incorrect request number format
209	@Remote Setting Clear	Releases the machine from its Cumin setup.	

250	CommLog Print	Prints the communication log.	

5821	**[Remote Service Address]**		
001	CSS-PI Device Code	*CTL	Sets the PI device code. After you change this setting, you must turn the machine off and on. [0 to 4 / **0** / 1 /step]
002	RCG IP Address		Sets the IP address of the RCG (Remote Communication Gate) destination for call processing at the remote service center.

5824	**[NV-RAM Data Upload]**		
	Uploads the UP and SP mode data (except for counters and the serial number) from the NVRAM to an SD card. For details, see 5.6.6 "NVRAM Data Upload/Download"" in this section.		
5824 1	NV-RAM Data Upload	#	-

5825	**[NV-RAM Data Download]**		
	Downloads the UP and SP mode data from an SD card to the NVRAM. For details, see 5.6.6 "NVRAM Data Upload/Download"" in this section.		
5825 1	NV-RAM Download	#	-

5828	**[Network Setting]**	*CTL	**-**
050	1284 Compatibility (Centro)	Enables or disables 1284 Compatibility. [0 or 1 / **1** / 1 / step] 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled	
052	ECP (Centro)	Enables or disables ECP Compatibility. [0 or 1 / **1** / 1 / step] 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled	

		Note ▪ This SP is activated only when SP5-828-50 is set to "1".
065	Job Spooling	Enables/disables Job Spooling. [0 or 1 / **0** / 1 / step] 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled
066	Job Spooling Clear: Start Time	Treatment of the job when a spooled job exists at power on. 0: ON (Data is cleared) **1**: OFF (Automatically printed)
069	Job Spooling (Protocol)	Validates or invalidates the job spooling function for each protocol. **0**: Validates 1: Invalidates bit0: LPR bit1: FTP bit2: IPP bit3: SMB bit4: BMLinkS bit5: DIPRINT bit6: sftp bit7: (Reserved)
090	TELNET (0: OFF 1: ON)	Enables or disables the Telnet protocol. [0 or 1 / **1** / –] 0: Disable, 1: Enable
091	Web (0: OFF 1: ON)	Enables or disables the Web operation. [0 or 1 / **1** / –] 0: Disable, 1: Enable
145	Active IPv6 Link Local Address	This is the IPv6 local address link referenced on the Ethernet or wireless LAN (802.11b) in the format: "Link Local Address" + "Prefix Length"

		The IPv6 address consists of a total 128 bits configured in 8 blocks of 16 bits each.
147	Active IPv6 Stateless Address 1	These SPs are the IPv6 status addresses (1 to 5) referenced on the Ethernet or wireless LAN (802.11b) in the format: "Status Address" + "Prefix Length" The IPv6 address consists of a total 128 bits configured in 8 blocks of 16 bits each.
149	Active IPv6 Stateless Address 2	
151	Active IPv6 Stateless Address 3	
153	Active IPv6 Stateless Address 4	
155	Active IPv6 Stateless Address 5	
156	IPv6 Manual Address	This SP is the IPv6 manually set address referenced on the Ethernet or wireless LAN (802.11b) in the format: "Manual Set Address" + "Prefix Length" The IPv6 address consists of a total 128 bits configured in 8 blocks of 16 bits each.
158	IPv6 Gateway Address	This SP is the IPv6 gateway address referenced on the Ethernet or wireless LAN (802.11b). The IPv6 address consists of a total 128 bits configured in 8 blocks of 16 bits each.
160	Action Mode (IPv6)	
161	IPv6 Stateless Auto Setting	Enables or disables the automatic setting for IPv6 stateless. [0 or 1 / **1** / 1 /step] 0: Disable, 1: Enable

5832	**[HDD]** HDD Initialization	*CTL	**-**
001	HDD Formatting (ALL)	Initializes the hard disk. Use this SP mode only if there is a hard disk error.	
002	HDD Formatting (IMH)		
003	HDD Formatting (Thumbnail)		
004	HDD Formatting (Job Log)		
005	HDD Formatting (Printer Fonts)		
006	HDD Formatting (User Info)		
007	Mail RX Data		
008	Mail TX Data		
009	HDD Formatting (Data for a Design)		
010	HDD Formatting (Log)		
011	HDD Formatting (Ridoc I/F)		

5836	**[Capture Settings]**	*CTL	-	
001	Capture Function (0:Off 1:On)		**0**: Disable, 1: Enable	
	With this function disabled, the settings related to the capture feature cannot be initialized, displayed, or selected.			
002	Panel Setting		**0**: Displayed, 1: Not displayed	
	Displays or does not display the capture function buttons.			
	5836-71 to 5836-78, Copier and Printer Document Reduction The following 6 SP modes set the default reduction for stored documents sent to the document management server via the MLB. Enabled only when optional MLB (Media Link Board) is installed.			
071	Reduction for Copy Color		0: 1to-1, 1: 1/2, **2: 1/3**, 3: 1/4	
072	Reduction for Copy B&W Text		**0: 1to-1**, 1: 1/2, 2: 1/3, 3: 1/4	
073	Reduction for Copy B&W Other		**0: 1to-1**, 1: 1/2, 2: 1/3, 3: 1/4	
074	Reduction for Printer Color		0: 1to-1, 1: 1/2, **2: 1/3**, 3: 1/4	
075	Reduction for Printer B&W		**0: 1to-1**, 1: 1/2, 2: 1/3, 3: 1/4	
076	Reduction for Printer B&W HQ		**0: 1to-1**, 1: 1/2, 2: 1/3, 3: 1/4	
077	Reduction for Printer Color 1200		1: 1/2, 3: 1/4, **4: 1/6**, 5: 1/8 (2: skipped)	
078	Reduction for Printer B&W 1200		**1: 1/2**, 3: 1/4, 4: 1/6, 5: 1/8 (2: skipped)	

	5836-81 to 5836-86, Stored document format The following 6 SP modes set Sets the default format for stored documents sent to the document management server via the MLB. Enabled only when optional MLB (Media Link Board) is installed.	
081	Format for Copy Color	**0: JFIF/JPEG**, 1: TIFF/MMR, 2: TIFF/MH, 3: TIFF/MR Note ▪ This SP is not used in this model.
082	Format for Copy B&W Text	0: JFIF/JPEG, **1: TIFF/MMR**, 2: TIFF/MH, 3: TIFF/MR
083	Format Copy B&W Other	0: JFIF/JPEG, **1: TIFF/MMR**, 2: TIFF/MH, 3: TIFF/MR
084	Format for Printer Color	**0: JFIF/JPEG**, 1: TIFF/MMR, 2: TIFF/MH, 3: TIFF/MR Note ▪ This SP is not used in this model.
085	Format for Printer B&W	0: JFIF/JPEG, **1: TIFF/MMR**, 2: TIFF/MH, 3: TIFF/MR
086	Format for Printer B&W HQ	0: JFIF/JPEG, 1: TIFF/MMR, **2: TIFF/MH**, 3: TIFF/MR
091	Default for JPEG	[5 to 95 / **50** / 1 /step]
	Sets the JPEG format default for documents sent to the document management server via the MLB with JPEG selected as the format. Enabled only when optional MLB (Media Link Board) is installed.	

5839	**[IEEE1394]**	*CTL	-
007	Cycle Master	Turns the cycle master function on/off. [0 or 1 / **1** / 1 /step] 0: OFF 1: ON	
008	BCR mode	Selects either ‘Standard’, 'IRM Color Copy', or **'Always Effective'.**	
009	IRM 1394a Check	Turns the IRM 1394a check on/off. [0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: OFF 1: ON If the IRM is not defined as 1394a standard, its node is used as IRM.	
010	Unique ID	[0 or 1 / **1** / -] 0: OFF 1: ON	
011	Logout	Prevents initiators from logging on or makes initiators log off. [0 or 1 / **1** / -] 0: OFF (Prevents the initiators, having already logged on, to log on if they try to log on.) 1: ON (Makes initiators, having already logged on, to log off if they try to log on.)	
012	Login	Allows/disallows an initiator to exclusively log on. [0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: OFF (Disallows) 1: ON (Allows)	
013	Login MAX	Specifies the maximum initiators able to log on. [0 to 63 / **8** / 1 /step]	

5840	**[IEEE 802.11b]**		
006	Channel Max	*CTL	[1 to 11 or 13 / **11 or 13** / 1 /step] Europe/Asia: 1 to 13 NA/ Asia: 1 to 11
	Sets the maximum number of channels available for data transmission via the wireless LAN. The number of channels available varies according to location. The default settings are set for the maximum end of the range for each area. Adjust the upper 4 bits to set the maximum number of channels. **DFU** Note ▪ Do not change the setting.		
007	Channel Min	*CTL	[1 to 11 or 13 / **1** / 1 /step] Europe: 1 to 13 NA/ Asia: 1 to 11
	Sets the minimum number of channels available for data transmission via the wireless LAN. The number of channels available varies according to location. The default settings are set for the minimum end of the range for each area. Adjust the lower 4 bits to set the minimum number of channels. **DFU** Note ▪ Do not change the setting.		
011	WEP key Select	*CTL	Selects the WEP key. [00 to 11 / **00** / 1 binary] 00: Key #1 01: Key #2 (Reserved) 10: Key #3 (Reserved) 11: Key #4 (Reserved)

5841	[Supply Name Setting]		
001	Toner Name Setting: Black	*CTL	Specifies supply names. These appear on the screen when the user presses the Inquiry button in the user tools screen.
002	Toner Name Setting: Cyan		
003	Toner Name Setting: Yellow		
004	Toner Name Setting: Magenta		
007	OrgStamp		
011	Staple Std1		
012	Staple Std2		
013	Staple Std3		
014	Staple Std4		
021	Staple Bind 1		
022	Staple Bind 2		
023	Staple Bind 3		

5842	[GWWS Analysis Mode] DFU		
001	Setting 1	*CTL	Default: **00000000** – do not change Netfiles: Jobs to be printed from the document server using a PC and the DeskTopBinder software
002	Setting 2	*CTL	Adjusts the debug program modesetting. Bit7: 5682 mmseg-log setting 0: Date/Hour/Minute/Second 1: Minute/Second/Msec. 0 to 6: Not used

5844	[USB]		
001	Transfer Rate	*CTL	0x01: Full speed **0x04: Auto Change**
	Adjusts the USB transfer rate.		
002	Vendor ID	*CTL	Displays the vendor ID. **DFU**
003	Product ID	*CTL	Displays the product ID. **DFU**
004	Device Release Number	*CTL	Displays the development release version number. **DFU**

5845	**[Delivery Server Setting]**	*CTL	-
	Provides items for delivery server settings.		
001	FTP Port No.	[0 to 65535 / **3670** / 1 /step]	
	Sets the FTP port number used when image files to the Scan Router Server.		
002	IP Address (Primary)	Range: **000.000.000.000** to 255.255.255.255	
	Use this SP to set the Scan Router Server address. The IP address under the transfer tab can be referenced by the initial system setting.		
006	Delivery Error Display Time	[0 to 999 / **300** / 1 second /step]	
	Use this setting to determine the length of time the prompt message is displayed when a test error occurs during document transfer with the NetFile application and an external device.		
008	IP Address (Secondary)	Range: **000.000.000.000** to 255.255.255.255	
	Specifies the IP address assigned to the computer designated to function as the secondary delivery server of Scan Router. This SP allows only the setting of the IP address without reference to the DNS setting.		
009	Delivery Server Model	[0 to 4/ **0** / 1 /step]	
	Allows changing the model of the delivery server registered by the I/O device. 0: Unknown 1: SG1 Provided 2: SG1 Package 3: SG2 Provided 4: SG2 Package		

010	Delivery Svr Capability	[0 to 255 / **0** / 1 /step]	
	Bit7 = 1 Comment information exits		Changes the capability of the registered that the I/O device registered.
	Bit6 = 1 Direct specification of mail address possible		
	Bit5 = 1 Mail RX confirmation setting possible		
	Bit4 = 1 Address book automatic update function exists		
	Bit3 = 1 Fax RX delivery function exists		
	Bit2 = 1 Sender password function exists		
	Bit1 = 1 Function to link MK-1 user and Sender exists		
	Bit0 = 1 Sender specification required (if set to 1, Bit6 is set to “0”)		
011	Delivery Svr Capability (Ext)	[0 to 255 / **0** / 1 /step]	
	Changes the capability of the registered that the I/O device registered.		
	Bit7 = 1 Address book usage limitation (Limitation for each authorized user) Bit6 = 1 RDH authorization link Bit5 to 0: Not used		
013	Server Scheme (Primary) **DFU**		
	This is used for the scan router program.		
014	Server Port Number (Primary) **DFU**		
	This is used for the scan router program.		
015	Server URL Path (Primary) **DFU**		
	This is used for the scan router program.		
016	Server Scheme (Secondary) **DFU**		
	This is used for the scan router program.		

017	Server Port Number (Secondary) **DFU**
	This is used for the scan router program.
018	Server URL Path (Secondary) **DFU**
	This is used for the scan router program.
019	Capture Server Scheme **DFU**
	This is used for the scan router program.
020	Capture Server Port Number **DFU**
	This is used for the scan router program.
021	Capture Server URL Path **DFU**
	This is used for the scan router program.

5846	**[UCS Settings]**	*CTL	-
001	Machine ID (For Delivery Server)		Displays ID
	Displays the unique device ID in use by the delivery server directory. The value is only displayed and cannot be changed. This ID is created from the NIC MAC or IEEE 1394 EUI. The ID is displayed as either 6-byle or 8-byte binary.		
002	Machine ID Clear (For Delivery Server)		Clears ID
	Clears the unique ID of the device used as the name in the file transfer directory. Execute this SP if the connection of the device to the delivery server is unstable. After clearing the ID, the ID will be established again automatically by cycling the machine off and on.		
003	Maximum Entries		[2000 to 20000/ **2000** /1 /step]
	Changes the maximum number of entries that UCS can handle. If a value smaller than the present value is set, the UCS managed data is cleared, and the data (excluding user code information) is displayed.		
006	Delivery Server Retry Timer		[0 to 255 / **0** / 1 /step]
	Sets the interval for retry attempts when the delivery server fails to acquire the delivery server address book.		
007	Delivery Server Retry Times		[0 to 255 / **0** / 1 /step]
	Sets the number of retry attempts when the delivery server fails to acquire the delivery server address book.		
008	Delivery Server Maximum Entries		[2000 to 50000 / **2000** / 1/step]
	Sets the maximum number account entries of the delivery server user information managed by UCS.		

010	LDAP Search Timeout	[1 to 255 / **60** / 1 /step]
	Sets the length of the timeout for the search of the LDAP server.	
040	Addr Book Migration (SD => HDD)	
	Not used in this machine.	
041	Fill Addr Acl Info.	
	This SP must be executed immediately after installation of an HDD unit in a basic machine that previously had no HDD. The first time the machine is powered on with the new HDD installed, the system automatically takes the address book from the NVRAM and writes it onto the new HDD. However, the new address book on the HDD can be accessed only by the system administrator at this stage. Executing this SP by the service technician immediately after power on grants full address book access to all users. Procedure 1. Turn the machine off. 2. Install the new HDD. 3. Turn the machine on. 4. The address book and its initial data are created on the HDD automatically. 5. However, at this point the address book can be accessed by only the system administrator or key operator. 6. Enter the SP mode and do SP5846 041. After this SP executes successfully, any user can access the address book.	
047	Initialize Local Addr Book	Clears the local address book information, including the user code.
048	Initialize Delivery Addr Book	Clears the distribution address book information, except the user code.
049	Initialize LDAP Addr Book	Clears the LDAP address book information, except the user code.

050	Initialize All Addr Book	Clears all directory information managed by UCS, including all user codes.
051	Backup All Addr Book	Uploads all directory information to the SD card.
052	Restore All Addr Book	Downloads all directory information from the SD card.
053	Clear Backup Info	Deletes the address book data from the SD card in the service slot. Deletes only the files that were uploaded from this machine. This feature does not work if the card is write-protected. Note ▪ After you do this SP, go out of the SP mode, and then turn the power off. ▪ Do not remove the SD card until the Power LED stops flashing.
060	Search Option	
	This SP uses bit switches to set up the fuzzy search options for the UCS local address book. Bit: Meaning 0: Checks both upper/lower case characters 1: Japan Only 2: Japan Only 3: Japan Only 4 to 7: Not Used	
062	Complexity Option 1	
	Use this SP to set the conditions for password entry to access the local address book. Specifically, this SP limits the password entry to **upper case** and sets the length of the password. [0 to 32 / **0** / 1 /step]	

	Note ▪ This SP does not normally require adjustment. ▪ This SP is enabled only after the system administrator has set up a group password policy to control access to the address book.	
063	Complexity Option 2 **DFU**	
064	Complexity Option 3 **DFU**	
065	Complexity Option 4 **DFU**	
091	FTP Auth Port Setting	Specifies the FTP port for getting a distribution server address book that is used in the identification mode. [0 to 65535 / **3671** / 1 /step]
094	Encryption Stat	Shows the status of the encryption function for the address book data.

5847	**[Rep Resolution Reduction]**	*CTL	-
	5847 1 through 5847 8 changes the default settings of image data transferred externally by the Net File page reference function. [0 to 5 / **2** / 1 /step] 5847 21 sets the default for JPEG image quality of image files handled by NetFile. “Net files” are jobs to be printed from the document server using a PC and the DeskTopBinder software.		
001	Rate for Copy Color		**2:1/3x**
002	Rate for Copy B&W Text		**0: 1x**
003	Rate for Copy B&W Other		
004	Rate for Printer Color		**2:1/3x**
005	Rate for Printer B&W		**0:1x**

021	Network Quality Default for JPEG
	Sets the default value for the quality of JPEG images sent as NetFile pages. This function is available only with the MLB (Media Link Board) option installed. [5 to 95 / **50** / 1 /step]

5848	**[Web Service]**	*CTL	-
	5848 2 sets the 4-bit switch assignment for the access control setting. Setting of 0001 has no effect on access and delivery from Scan Router. 5848 100 sets the maximum size allowed for downloaded images. The default is equal to 1 gigabyte.		
001	ACC Ctrl: Netfile Protocol (Lower 4 bits only)	Bit switch settings.	
	0000: No access control 0001: Denies access to DeskTop Binder. Access and deliveries from Scan Router have no effect on capture.		
002	Access Ctrl: Repository (only Lower 4 bits)	0000: No access control 0001: Denies access to DeskTop Binder. **0010**: No writing control	
003	Access Control: Doc. Svr. Print (Lower 4 bits)	Switches access control on and off. **0000**: No access control 0001: Denies access to DeskTop Binder.	
004	Access Control: User Directory (only Lower 4 bits)		
005	Access Cntl: For Cherry(only lower 4bits)		
007	Access Ctrl: Comm. Log Fax (Lower 4 bits)		

009	Access Ctrl: Job Ctrl (Lower 4 bits)	
011	Access Ctrl: Device management (Lower 4 bits)	
021	Access Ctrl: Delivery (Lower 4 bits)	
022	Access Ctrl: uAdministration (Lower 4bits)	
100	Repository: Download Image Max. Size	Specifies the max size of the image data that the machine can download. [1 to 1024 / **1024** / 1 MB /step]
210	Setting: LogType: Job1	NIA
211	Setting: LogType: Job2	
212	Setting: LogType: Access	
213	Setting: Primary Srv	
214	Setting: Secondary Srv	
215	Setting: Start Time	
216	Setting: Interval Time	
217	Setting: Timing	

5849	**[Installation Date]**	*CTL	-
5849 1	Display	The “Counter Clear Day” has been changed to “Installation Date” or “Inst. Date”.	
5849 2	Switch to Print	Determines whether the installation date is printed on the printout for the total counter. [0 or 1 / **1** / -] 0: OFF (No Print) 1: ON (Print)	

5850	**[Address Book Function]**	*CTL	-
003	Replacement of Circuit Classification **Japan Only**		
	The machine is sold ready to use with a G3 line. This SP allows you to switch all at once to convert to G4 after you add a G4 line. Conversely, if for some reason the G4 line becomes unusable, you can easily switch back to G3.		

5851	**[Bluetooth Mode]**
	Sets the operation mode for the Bluetooth Unit. Press either key. [0:Public] [1: Private]

5853	**[Stamp Data Download]**
	Use this SP to download the fixed stamp data stored in the firmware of the ROM and copy it to the HDD. This SP can be executed as many times as required. This SP must be executed after replacing or formatting the hard disks. Note ▪ This SP can be executed only with the hard disks installed.

5856	**[Remote ROM Update]**		
	Allows the technician to upgrade the firmware using a local port (IEEE1284) when updating the remote ROM.		
002	Local Port	*CTL	[0 to 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: Disable 1: Enable

5857	**[Save Debug Log]**	*CTL	-
5857 1	On/Off (1:ON 0:OFF)	**0**: OFF, 1: ON	
	Switches the debug log feature on and off. The debug log cannot be captured until this feature is switched on.		
5857 2	Target (2: HDD 3: SD)	**2**: HDD, 3: SD Card	
	Selects the storage device to save debug logs information when the conditions set with SP5-858 are satisfied. [2 to 3 / **2** / 1 /step]		
005	Save to HDD		
	Saves the debug log of the input SC number in memory to the HDD. A unique file name is generated to avoid overwriting existing file names on the SD Card. Up to 4MB can be copied to an SD Card. 4 MB segments can be copied one by one to each SD Card.		
006	Save to SD Card		
	Saves the debug log of the input SC number in memory to the SD card.		
009	Copy HDD to SD Card (Latest 4 MB)		
010	Copy HDD to SD Card (Latest 4 MB Any Key)		
011	Erase HDD Debug Data		

012	Erase SD Card Debug Data
013	Free Space on SD Card
014	Copy SD to SD (Latest 4 MB)
015	Copy SD to SD (Latest 4 MB Any Key)
016	Make HDD Debug
017	Make SD Debug

5858	**[Debug Save When]**	*CTL	-
	These SPs select the content of the debugging information to be saved to the destination selected by SP5857-002. SP5858-3 stores one SC specified by number. Refer to Section 4 for a list of SC error codes.		
001	Engine SC Error	Turns on/off the debug save for SC codes generated by copier engine errors. [0 or 1 / **0** / 1/ step] 0: OFF, 1: ON	
002	Controller SC Error	Turns on/off the debug save for SC codes generated by GW controller errors. [0 or 1 / **0** / 1/ step] 0: OFF, 1: ON	
003	Any SC Error	[0 to 65535 / **0** / 1 /step]	
004	Jam	Turns on/off the debug save for jam errors. [0 or 1 / **0** / 1/ step] 0: OFF, 1: ON	

5859	[Debug Save Key No.]	*CTL	-
001	Key 1	These SPs allow you to set up to 10 keys for log files for functions that use common memory on the controller board. [–9999999 to 9999999 / **0** / –]	
002	Key 2		
003	Key 3		
004	Key 4		
005	Key 5		
006	Key 6		
007	Key 7		
008	Key 8		
009	Key 9		
010	Key 10		

5860	[SMTP/POP3/IMAP4]	*CTL	-
020	Partial Mail Receive Timeout		[1 to 168 / **72** / –]
	Sets the amount of time to wait before saving a mail that breaks up during reception. The received mail is discarded if the remaining portion of the mail is not received during this prescribed time.		
021	MDN Response RFC2298 Compliance		[0 to 1 / **1** / –]
	Determines whether RFC2298 compliance is switched on for MDN reply mail. 0: No **1**: Yes		

022	SMTP Auth. From Field Replacement	[0 to 1 / **0** / –]
	Determines whether the FROM item of the mail header is switched to the validated account after the SMTP server is validated. **0**: No. “From” item not switched. 1: Yes. “From item switched.	
025	SMTP Auth. Direct Setting	[0 or 1 / **0** / –]
	Selects the authentication method for SMPT. **Bit switch:** • Bit 0: LOGIN • Bit 1: PLAIN • Bit 2: CRAM MD5 • Bit 3: DIGEST MD5 • Bit 4 to 7: Not used Note ▪ This SP is activated only when SMTP authorization is enabled by UP mode.	

5866	**[E-mail Alert] Not Used**		
001	Report Validity	-	Enables or disables the E-mail alert function. [0 or 1 / **0** / –] 0: Enabled, 1: Disabled
005	Add Date Field	*CTL	Adds or does not add the date field to the header of the alert mail. [0 or 1 / **0** / –] 0: Not added, 1: Added

5870	[Common Key Info Writing]		
001	Writing	*CTL	Writes to flash ROM the common proof for validating the device for NRS specifications.

5873	[SD Card Appli Move]	
001	Move Exec	This SP copies the application programs from the original SD card in SD card slot 3 to an SD card in SD card slot 1 or 2 (slot 1 has the priority to be copied).
002	Undo Exec	This SP copies back the application programs from an SD card in SD Card Slot 3 to the original SD card in SD card slot 1 or 2 (slot 1 has the priority to be copied). Use this menu when you have mistakenly copied some programs by using "Move Exec" (SP5873-1).

5875	[SC Auto Reboot]		
001	Reboot Setting	*CTL	Enables or disables the automatic reboot function when an SC error occurs. [0 or 1/ **0** / –] 0: The machine reboots automatically when the machine issues an SC error and logs the SC error code. If the same SC occurs again, the machine does not reboot. 1: The machine does not reboot when an SC error occurs. The reboot is not executed for Type A or C SC codes.

002	Reboot Type	*CTL	Selects the reboot method for SC. [0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: Manual reboot, 1: Automatic reboot

5878	**[Option Setup]**		
001	Option Setup	-	Enables the Data Overwrite Security unit. Press "EXECUTE" on the operation panel. Then turn the machine off and on.

5881	**[Fixed Phrase Block Erasing]**		
001	-	-	Deletes the fixed phrase.

5883	**[Line Speed Selection]**		
	Selects the line speed for middle thick paper.		
001	Middle Thick	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / 1 /step] 0: MID CARD: Half Speed (115 mm/sec) 1: MID CARD: Normal Speed (B222: 154, B224: 205 mm/sec)

5885	**[WIM Settings]** Web Image Monitor Settings		
	Close or disclose the functions of web image monitor.		
020	Document Server ACC Ctrl	*CTL	0: OFF, 1: ON Bit Meaning 0: Forbid all document server access (1) 1: Forbid user mode access (1) 2: Forbid print function (1) 3: Forbid fax TX (1) 4: Forbid scan sending (1) 5: Forbid downloading (1) 6: Forbid delete (1) 7: Reserved

5886	**[Permit ROM Updating] DFU**		
	This SP determines whether the ROM can be updated.		
001	-	*CTL	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: ON, 1: OFF

5907	**[Plug & Play Maker/Model Name]** Plug & Play Name Selection		
	Specifies the manufacturer and model name. These names are registered in the NVRAM. If the NVRAM becomes defective, these names should be re-registered.		
001	Plug/Play	*ENG	[0 to 11 / **0** / 1 /step] **FA** 0: RICOH Aficio MP C3500 1: RICOH Aficio MP C4500 2: SAVIN C3535 3: SAVIN C4540 4: Gestetner MPC 3500/DSc535 5: Gestetner MPC 4500/DSc545 6: NRG MP C3500 7: NRG MP C4500 8: infotec ISC3535 9: infotec ISC4540 10: LANIER MP C3500/LD435c 11: LANIER MP C4500/LD445c

5913	**[Switchover Permission Time]**		
002	Print Application Timer	*CTL	[3 to 30 / **3** / 1 second /step]
	Sets the amount of time to elapse while the machine is in standby mode (and the operation panel keys have not been used) before another application can gain control of the display.		

5967	**[Copy Server Set Function]**	*CTL	**0**: ON, 1: OFF
	Enables and disables the document server. This is a security measure that prevents image data from being left in the temporary area of the HDD. After changing this setting, you must switch the main switch off and on to enable the new setting.		

5974	**[Cherry Server]**		
	Specifies which version of ScanRouter, “Lite” or “Full”, is installed.		
001	Cherry Server	*CTL	[0 or 1 / **0** / –] 0: Lite 1: Full

5985	**[Device Setting]**	
	The NIC and USB support features are built into the GW controller. Use this SP to enable and disable these features. In order to use the NIC and USB functions built into the controller board, these SP codes must be set to "1".	
001	On Board NIC	[0 to 2 / **0** / 1 /step] 0: Disable, 1: Enable, 2: Function limitation When the "Function limitation" is set, "On board NIC" is limited only for the NRS or LDAP/NT authentication. Note ▪ Other network applications such as NRS, WebImageMonitor, or LDAP/NT authentication are not available when this SP is set to "2". Even though you can change the initial settings of those network applications, the settings do not work.
002	On Board USB	[0 or 1 / **0** / 1/step] 0: Disable, 1: Enable

Service Tables

5987	[Counter Falsification Prevention]	
001	0: OFF / 1: ON	This SP detects that a mechanical counter device is removed. If it is detected, SC610 occurs. Note ▪ The mechanical counter is provided only for NA model.

5990	[SP print mode]		
	Prints out the SMC sheets.		
001	All (Data List)	-	-
002	SP (Mode Data List)	-	
003	User Program	-	
004	Logging Data	-	
005	Diagnostic Report	-	
006	Non-Default	-	
007	NIB Summary	-	
008	Capture Log	-	
021	Copier User Program	-	
022	Scanner SP	-	
023	Scanner User Program	-	

5998	**[Fusing Cont mode]** Fusing Control Mode		
	Turns the silent fusing warm-up mode on or off.		
001	fast/silent	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **1** / -] 0: Silent (less noise) 1: Fast (less time)

SP6-XXX (Peripherals)

6006	**[ADF Adj.]** ADF Adjustment		
	Adjusts the side-to-side and leading registration of originals with the ARDF.		
001	Side-to-Side Registration	*ENG	[-3.0 to 3.0 / **0** / 0.1 mm/step]
003	Leading Edge Registration		[-5.0 to 5.0 / **0** / 0.1 mm/step]
	Adjusts the amount of paper buckle to correct original skew for the front and rear sides.		
005	Buckle: Duplex Front	*ENG	[-5.0 to 5.0 / **0** / 0.1 mm/step]
006	Buckle: Duplex Rear		
	Adjusts the erase margin at the original trailing edge.		
007	Rear Edge Erase	*ENG	[-5.0 to 5.0 / **0** / 0.1 mm/step]

6007	**[ADF Input Check]**	
	Displays the signals received from the sensors and switches of the ARDF. Only Bit 0 is used for ADF input check.	
001	Original Length 1 (B5 Detection Sensor)	0: Paper not detected 1: Paper detected
002	Original Length 2 (A4 Detection Sensor)	
003	Original Length 3 (LG Detection Sensor)	
004	Original Width 1	
005	Original Width 2	
006	Original Width 3	
007	Original Width 4	
008	Orginal Width 5	
009	Original Detection	
010	Separation	
011	Skew Correction	
012	Scan Orginal	
013	Registration	
014	Exit	
015	Feed Cover	0: ADF cover close 1: ADF cover open
016	Lift Up	0: ADF close 1: ADF open

017	Inverter	
018	Pick Up Roller HP	
019	Orginal Set HP	

6008	**[ADF Output Check]**		
	Activates the electrical components for functional check. It is not possible to activate more than one component at the same time.		
001	Pickup Motor Forward	-	
002	Pickup Motor Reverse		
003	Feed Motor Forward		Feed Motor Forward rotation
004	Feed Motor Reverse		Feed Motor-Reverse rotation
005	Relay Motor Forward		Transport Motor- Forward rotation
006	Relay Motor Reverse		Transport Motor- Forward rotation
007	Inverter Motor Forward		-
008	Inverter Roller Reverse		
*009	Feed Clutch		
*010	Feed Solenoid		Pick-up Solenoid
011	Inverter Solenoid		-
012	Stamp		Stamp Solenoid

* For Future Use

6009	**[ADF Free Run]**		
	Performs a DF free run in simplex, duplex mode or stamp mode.		
001	Free Run Simplex Motion	-	-
002	Free Run Duplex Motion	-	
003	Free Run Stamp Motion	-	

6010	**[Stamp Position Adj.]** Fax Stamp Position Adjustment		
	Adjusts the horizontal position of the stamp on the scanned originals.		
6010 1	Stamp Position Adj.	*ENG	[-5.0 to 5.0 / **0** / 1 mm/step]

6016	**[Original Size Detection Priority]** Original Size Detection Priority			
	Specifies the original size for a size detected by the original sensor, since original sensors cannot recognize all sizes.			
001	Original Size Detection Priority	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: Setting 1 1: Setting 2	
		NA	Setting 1	Setting 2
			DLT SEF	Folio SEF 11" x 15"
			LG SEF	Foolscap SEF
			LT SEF	US EXE 8" x 10"
			LT LEF	US EXE LEF
		EU/ ASIA	DLT SEF	8K 267 x 390 mm
			LT SEF	16K 195 x 267 mm
			LT LEF	16K 267 x 195 mm

6017	**[DF Magnification Adj.]** DF Magnification Adjustment		
	Adjusts the magnification in the sub-scan direction for the ARDF.		
001	DF Magnification Adj.	*CTL	[-5.0 to 5.0 / **0** / 0.1 %/step]

6020	**[Skew Correction Moving Setting]**		
	Turns the original skew correction in the ARDF for all original sizes on or off.		
001	-	*ENG	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: Off (only for small original sizes) 1: On (for all original sizes)

6128	**[Punch Position: Sub Scan]**		
	Adjusts the punching position in the sub scan direction.		
001	Domestic (Japan) 2Hole	*ENG	[-7.5 to 7.5 / **0** / 0.5 mm/step]]
002	North America 3Hole	*ENG	
003	Europe 4Hole	*ENG	
004	North Europe 4Hole	*ENG	
005	North Europe 2Hole	*ENG	

6129	**[Punch Position: Main Scan]**		
	Adjusts the punching position in the main scan direction.		
001	Domestic (Japan) 2Hole	*ENG	[-2.0 to 2.0 / **0** / 0.4 mm/step]]
002	North America 3Hole	*ENG	
003	Europe 4Hole	*ENG	

004	North Europe 4Hole	*ENG	
005	North Europe 2Hole	*ENG	

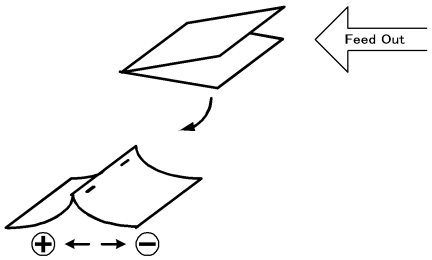
6130	**[Skew Correction: Buckle Adj.]**		
	Adjusts the paper buckle for each paper size.		
001	A3T (SEF)	*ENG	[-5.0 to 5.0 / **0** / 0.25 mm/step]]
002	B4T (SEF)	*ENG	
003	A4T (SEF)	*ENG	
004	A4Y (LEF)	*ENG	
005	B5T (SEF)	*ENG	
006	B5Y (LEF)	*ENG	
007	DLT-T (SEF)	*ENG	
008	LG-T (SEF)	*ENG	
009	LT-T (SEF)	*ENG	
010	LT-Y (LEF)	*ENG	
011	12" x 18"	*ENG	
012	Other	*ENG	

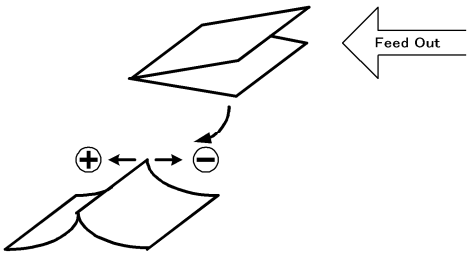
6131	**[Skew Correction Control]**		
	Selects the skew correction control for each paper size. These are only activated for B804/B805.		
001	A3T (SEF)	*ENG	[0 to 2 / **1** / 1/step]] 0: No (No skew correction) 1: Roller Stop Skew Correction 2: Roller Reverse Skew Correction
002	B4T (SEF)	*ENG	

003	A4T (SEF)	*ENG	
004	A4Y (LEF)	*ENG	
005	B5T (SEF)	*ENG	
006	B5Y (LEF)	*ENG	
007	DLT-T (SEF)	*ENG	
008	LG-T (SEF)	*ENG	
009	LT-T (SEF)	*ENG	
010	LT-Y (LEF)	*ENG	
011	12" x 18"	*ENG	
012	Other	*ENG	

6132	**[Jogger Fence Fine Adj]**		
	This SP adjusts the distance between the jogger fences and the sides of the stack on the finisher stapling tray in the (Booklet) Finisher B804/B805. The adjustment is done perpendicular to the direction of paper feed.		
001	A3T (SEF)	*ENG	[-1.5 to 1.5 / **0** / 1/step] + Value: Increases distance between jogger fences and the sides of the stack. - Value: Decreases the distance between the jogger fences and the sides of the stack.
002	B4T (SEF)	*ENG	
003	A4T (SEF)	*ENG	
004	A4Y (LEF)	*ENG	
005	B5T (SEF)	*ENG	
006	B5Y (LEF)	*ENG	
007	DLT-T (SEF)	*ENG	
008	LG-T (SEF)	*ENG	
009	LT-T (SEF)	*ENG	
010	LT-Y (LEF)	*ENG	
011	12" x 18"	*ENG	
012	Other	*ENG	

6133	**[Staple Position Adjustment]**		
	Adjusts the staple position for each finisher (B408/B804/B805). + Value: Moves the staple position to the rear side. - Value: Moves the staple position to the front side.		
001	Finisher (B408/B804/B805)	*ENG	[-3.5 to 3.5 / **0** / 1/step]

6134	[Saddle Stitch Position Adjustment]	
User SP	Use this SP to adjust the stapling position of the booklet stapler when paper is stapled and folded in the Booklet Finisher B804.	
001	A3 SEF	[-3.0 to 3.0 / **0** / 0.2 mm/step] + Value: Shifts staple position toward the crease. - Value: Shifts staple position away from the crease. 
002	B4 SEF	
003	A4 SEF	
004	B5 SEF	
005	DLT-T (SEF)	
006	LG-T (SEF)	
007	LT-T (SEF)	
008	12" x 18"	
009	Other	

6135	[Folder Position Adj.]	
User SP	This SP corrects the folding position when paper is stapled and folded in the Booklet Finisher B804.	
001	A3 SEF	[-3.0 to 3.0 / 0 / 0.2 mm/step] + Value: Shifts staple position toward the crease. - Value: Shifts staple position away from the crease. 
002	B4 SEF	
003	A4 SEF	
004	B5 SEF	
005	DLT-T (SEF)	
006	LG-T (SEF)	
007	LT-T (SEF)	
008	12" x 18"	

009	Other	

6136	**[Folding Number]**	
User SP	Sets the number of times that folding is done in the Booklet Finisher B804.	
001	-	[2 to 30 / **2** / 1 time/step]

6137	**[Finisher Free Run]**	
	These SPs are used only for B793 finisher.	
001	Free Run 1	Free run for paper edge stapling.
002	Free Run 2	Free run for booklet stapling.
003	Free Run 3	Shipping free run. Simulates standby conditions during shipping.
004	Free Run 4	**DFU**

6138	**[FIN (TIG) INPUT Check]** Finisher (B793) Input Check
	Displays the signals received from sensors and switches of the booklet finisher. (☛5.2.2 "Input Check Table"")

6139	**[FIN (KIN) INPUT Check]** Finisher (B408) Input Check
	Displays the signals received from sensors and switches of the booklet finisher. (☛5.2.2"Input Check Table"")

6140	**[FIN (EUP) INPUT Check]** Finisher (B804/B805) Input Check
	Displays the signals received from sensors and switches of the (booklet) finisher. (☛5.2.2"Input Check Table"")

6143	**[FIN (TIG) OUPUT Check]** Finisher (B793) Output Check
	Displays the signals received from sensors and switches of the booklet finisher. (☛5.2.3 "Output Check Table"")

6144	**[FIN (KIN) OUPUT Check]** Finisher (B408) Output Check
	Displays the signals received from sensors and switches of the booklet finisher. (☛5.2.3"Output Check Table"")

6145	**[FIN (EUP) OUPUT Check]** Finisher (B804/B805) Output Check
	Displays the signals received from sensors and switches of the (booklet) finisher. (☛5.2.3"Output Check Table"")

6147	**[FIN (JAK) OUPUT Check]**
	Not used in this machine.

6148	**[Jogger Fine Adj]**	*ENG	Fine Adjust Output Jogger Unit Fences
001	A3T (SEF)	This SP corrects the distance between the jogger fences and the sides of the stack when the output jogger unit attached to the side of the machine jogs sheets as they exit the finisher. + Value: Increases distance between jogger fences and the sides of the stack. - Value: Decreases the distance between the jogger fences and the sides of the stack. [-1.5 to 1.5 / **0** / 0.5 mm/step]	
002	B4T (SEF)		
003	A4T (SEF)		
004	A4Y LEF)		
005	B5Y (LEF)		
006	A5Y (LEF)		
007	DLT-T (SEF)		
008	LG-T (SEF)		
009	LT-T (SEF)		

010	LT-Y (LEF)	
011	HLT-Y (LEF)	
012	Other	

6149	**[Max. Pre-Stack Sheet]**	*ENG	Number of Pre-Stack Sheets
	This SP sets the number of sheets sent to the pre-stack tray. **Note**: You may need to adjust this setting or switch it off when feeding thick or slick paper.		
001	-	[0 to 3 / **3** / 1 sheet/step]	

SP7-XXX (Data Log)

7401	**[Total SC Counter]**		
	Displays the number of SC codes detected.		
7401 1	SC Counter	*CTL	[0 to 9999 / **0** / 1/step]

7403	**[SC History]**		
	Logs the SC codes detected. The 10 most recently detected SC Codes are not displayed on the screen, but can be seen on the SMC (logging) outputs.		
7403 1	Latest	*CTL	-
7403 2	Latest 1		
7403 3	Latest 2		
7403 4	Latest 3		
7403 5	Latest 4		

7403 6	Latest 5		
7403 7	Latest 6		
7403 8	Latest 7		
7403 9	Latest 8		
7403 10	Latest 9		

7502	**[Total Paper Jam Counter]**		
	Displays the total number of jams detected.		
7502 1	Total Jam	* CTL	[0 to 9999 / **0** / 1 sheet/step]

7503	**[Total Original Jam Counter]**		
	Displays the total number of original jams.		
7503 1	Original Jam counter	*CTL	[0 to 9999 / **0** / 1 original/step]

7504	**[Paper Jam Location]** ON: On check, OFF: Off Check		
	Displays the number of jams according to the location where jams were detected. **NOTE:** The LCT is counted as the 3rd feed station.		
7504 1	At Power On	*CTL	For details, see the "p.4-108 "Jam Detection"" in the Troubleshooting (section 4)".
7504 3	Tray 1: ON	*CTL	
7504 4	Tray 2: ON	*CTL	
7504 5	Tray 3: ON	*CTL	
7504 6	Tray 4: ON	*CTL	
7504 8	Bypass: ON	*CTL	

7504 9	Duplex: ON	*CTL	
7504 11	Vertical Transport 1: ON	*CTL	
7504 12	Vertical Transport 2: ON	*CTL	
7504 13	Bank Transport 1	*CTL	
7504 17	Registration: ON	*CTL	
*7504 18	Fusing Entrance: ON	*CTL	
7504 19	Fusing Exit: ON	*CTL	
7504 20	Paper Exit: ON	*CTL	
7504 21	Relay Exit: ON	*CTL	
7504 22	Relay Transport : ON	*CTL	
7504 24	Junction Gate Feed: ON	*CTL	
7504 25	Duplex Exit: ON		
7504 26	Duplex Reverse: ON	*CTL	
7504 27	Duplex Entrance: ON	*CTL	
7504 28	1 Bin Exit Sensor	*CTL	
7504 51	SEF Sensor 1	*CTL	
7504 52	SEF Sensor 2	*CTL	
7504 53	Bank SEF Sensor 1	*CTL	
7504 54	Bank SEF Sensor 2	*CTL	
7504 57	Regist Sensor	*CTL	
*7504 59	Fusing Exit Sensor	*CTL	
7504 60	Exit Sensor	*CTL	
7504 61	Relay Exit Sensor	*CTL	

*For Future Use

7504 62	Relay Sensor	*CTL	
7504 64	Junction Gate Feed:OFF	*CTL	
7504 65	Duplex Exit Sensor		
7504 66	Duplex Entrance Sensor	*CTL	
*7504 68	1-Bin Exit: ON	*CTL	
7504 100	Finisher Entrance	*CTL	
7504 101	Finisher Shift Tray Exit	*CTL	
7504 102	Finisher Staple	*CTL	
7504 103	Finisher Exit	*CTL	
7504 104	Finisher Drive Motor	*CTL	
7504 105	Finisher Tray Lift Motor	*CTL	
7504 106	Finisher Jogger Motor	*CTL	
7504 107	Finisher Shift Motor	*CTL	
7504 108	Finisher Staple Motor	*CTL	
7504 109	Finisher Exit Motor	*CTL	
*7504 130	Finisher Entrance	*CTL	
*7504 131	Finisher Proof Exit	*CTL	
*7504 132	Finisher Shift Tray Exit	*CTL	
*7504 133	Finisher Staple Exit	*CTL	
*7504 134	Finisher Exit	*CTL	

*For Future Use

*7504 135	Finisher Folding	*CTL	
*7504 136	Finisher Folding Exit	*CTL	
*7504 137	Finisher Guide Motor	*CTL	
*7504 138	Finisher Staple Moving Motor	*CTL	
7504 139	Finisher Punch Motor	*CTL	
*7504 140	Finisher Tray Lift Motor	*CTL	
*7504 141	Finisher Jogger Motor	*CTL	
*7504 142	Finisher Shift Roller Motor	*CTL	
*7504 143	Finisher Folding Plate Motor	*CTL	
7504 144	Finisher Staple Motor	*CTL	
*7504 145	Finisher Exit Motor	*CTL	
*7504 146	Finisher Stack 1 Release Motor	*CTL	
*7504 147	Finisher Stack 2 Release Motor	*CTL	
*7504 148	Finisher Stopper Motor	*CTL	
*7504 160	Finisher Entrance: ON	*CTL	
*7504 161	Finisher Entrance: OFF	*CTL	

*For Future Use

*7504 162	Finisher Stack Exit	*CTL	
*7504 163	Finisher Staple	*CTL	
*7504 164	Finisher Staple Cancel	*CTL	
*7504 165	Finisher Jogger Motor	*CTL	
*7504 166	Finisher Pickup Lift Motor	*CTL	
*7504 167	Finisher Staple Slide	*CTL	
*7504 168	Finisher Stack Tray	*CTL	
*7504 169	Finisher Belt Lift Solenoid	*CTL	
7504 230	Finisher Exit No Response	*CTL	
7504 231	Finisher Communication Error	*CTL	

*For Future Use

7505	**[Original Jam Detection]**		
	Displays the total number of original jams by location.		
7505 1	At Power On	*CTL	-
7505 3	Separation : ON		
7505 4	Skew Correction: ON		
7505 5	Reading Entrance: ON		
7505 6	Registration: ON		
7505 7	Read Exit Sensor : ON		
7505 8	Paper Exit: ON		

7505 53	Separation OFF		
7505 54	Skew Correction: OFF		
7505 55	Reading Entrance: OFF		
7505 56	Registration: OFF		
7505 57	Reading Exit Sensor: OFF		
7505 58	Paper Exit: OFF		

7506	**[Jam Count by Paper Size]**		
	Displays the number of jams according to the paper size.		
7506 5	A4 LEF	*CTL	[0 to 9999 / **0** / 1 sheet/step]
7506 6	A5 LEF		
7506 14	B5 LEF		
7506 38	LT LEF		
7506 44	HLT LEF		
7506 132	A3 SEF		
7506 133	A4 SEF		
7506 134	A5 SEF		
7506 141	B4 SEF		
7506 142	B5 SEF		
7506 160	DLT SEF		
7506 164	LG SEF		
7506 166	LT SEF		
7506 172	HLT SEF		
7506 255	Others		

7507	[Plotter Jam History]		
	Displays the 10 most recently detected paper jams.		
7507 1	Latest	*CTL	-
7507 2	Latest 1		
7507 3	Latest 2		
7507 4	Latest 3		
7507 5	Latest 4		
7507 6	Latest 5		
7507 7	Latest 6		
7507 8	Latest 7		
7507 9	Latest 8		
7507 10	Latest 9		

7508	[Original Jam History]		
	Displays the 10 most recently detected original jams.		
7508 1	Latest	*CTL	-
7508 2	Latest-1		
7508 3	Latest-2		
7508 4	Latest-3		
7508 5	Latest-4		
7508 6	Latest-5		
7508 7	Latest-6		
7508 8	Latest-7		

7508 9	Latest-8		
7508 10	Latest-9		

7801	**[ROM No./Firmware Version]**		
7801 255	Engine	-	Displays all versions and ROM numbers in SP7-910 and SP7-911.

7803	**[PM Counter Display]**		
	(Page, Unit, [Color])		
	Displays the number of sheets printed for each current maintenance unit. PM counters click up based on the number of A4 (LT) LEF size sheets printed. Therefore, the A3 (DLT) Double Count is activated. The Double Count cannot be deactivated. When a unit is replaced, the machine automatically detects that the new unit is installed. Then, the current PM counter value is automatically moved to the PM Counter - Previous (SP7-906-1 to 10) and is reset to “0”. The total number of sheets printed with the last unit replaced can be checked with SP7-906-1 to 10. **NOTE**: The LCT is counted as the 3rd feed station.		
7803 1	Paper	*ENG	[0 to 9999999 / **0** / 1 page/step]
7803 2	Page: PCU: Bk		
7803 3	Page: PCU: M		
7803 4	Page: PCU: C		
7803 5	Page: PCU: Y		
7803 6	Page: Development Unit: Bk		
7803 7	Page: Development Unit: M		

7803 8	Page: Development Unit: C		
7803 9	Page: Development Unit: Y		
7803 10	Page: Developer: Bk		
7803 11	Page: Developer: M		
7803 12	Page: Developer: C		
7803 13	Page: Developer: Y		
7803 14	Page: Image Transfer		
7803 15	Page: Cleaning Unit		
7803 16	Page: Fusing Unit		
7803 17	Page: Paper Transfer Unit		
7803 18	Page: Toner Collection Bottle		
	Displays the number of revolutions of motors or clutches for each current maintenance unit. [0 to 9999999 / **0** / 1 revolution/step] When a unit is replaced, the machine automatically detects that the new unit is installed. Then, the current PM counter value is automatically moved to the PM Counter - Previous (SP7-906-11 to 20) and is reset to “0”. The total number of revolutions made with the last unit replaced can be checked with SP7-906-11 to 20.		

7803 31	Rotation: PCU: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 999999999 / - / 1 mm/step]
7803 32	Rotation: PCU: M		
7803 33	Rotation: PCU: C		
7803 34	Rotation: PCU: Y		
7803 35	Rotation: Development Unit: Bk		
7803 36	Rotation: Development Unit: M		
7803 37	Rotation: Development Unit: C		
7803 38	Rotation: Development Unit: Y		
7803 39	Rotation: Developer: Bk		
7803 40	Rotation: Developer: M		
7803 41	Rotation: Developer: C		
7803 42	Rotation: Developer: Y		
7803 43	Rotation: Image Transfer Belt		
7803 44	Rotation: Cleaning Unit		
7803 45	Rotation: Fusing Unit		
7803 46	Rotation: Paper Transfer Unit		

7803 47	Measurement: Toner Collection bottle		
	Displays the value given by the following formula: (Current revolution ÷ Target revolution) × 100. This shows how much of the unit's expected lifetime has been used up. The Rotation% counter is based on rotations, not prints. If the number of rotations reaches the limit, the machine enters the end condition for that unit. If the print count lifetime is reached first, the machine also enters the end condition, even though the R% counter is still less than 100%.		
7803 61	Rotation (%): PCU: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 255 / - / 1 %/step]
7803 62	Rotation (%): PCU: M		
7803 63	Rotation (%): PCU: C		
7803 64	Rotation (%): PCU: Y		
7803 65	Rotation (%): Development Unit: Bk		
7803 66	Rotation (%): Development Unit: M		
7803 67	Rotation (%): Development Unit: C		
7803 68	Rotation (%): Development Unit: Y		
7803 69	Rotation (%): Developer: Bk		
7803 70	Rotation (%): Developer: M		
7803 71	Rotation (%): Developer: C		
7803 72	Rotation (%):		

	Developer: Y		
7803 73	Rotation (%): Image Transfer		
7803 74	Rotation (%): Cleaning Unit		
7803 75	Rotation (%): Fusing Unit		
7803 76	Rotation (%): Paper Transfer Unit		

7803 77	Measurement (%): Toner Collection bottle		
	Displays the value given by the following formula: (Current printouts ÷ Target printouts) × 100. This shows how much of the unit's expected lifetime has been used up. The Page% counter is based on printouts, not revolutions. If the number of printouts reaches the limit, the machine enters the end condition for that unit. If the revolution count lifetime is reached first, the machine also enters the end condition, even though the Page% counter is still less than 100%.		
7803 91	Page (%): PCU: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 255 / - / 1 %/step]
7803 92	Page (%): PCU: M		
7803 93	Page (%): PCU: C		
7803 94	Page (%): PCU: Y		
7803 95	Page (%): Development Unit: Bk		
7803 96	Page (%): Development Unit: M		
7803 97	Page (%): Development Unit: C		
7803 98	Page (%): Development Unit: Y		
7803 99	Page (%): Developer: Bk		
7803 100	Page (%): Developer: M		
7803 101	Page (%): Developer: C		
7803 102	Page (%): Developer: Y		

7803 103	Page (%): Image Transfer		
7803 104	Page (%): Cleaning Unit		
7803 105	Page (%): Fusing Unit		
7803 106	Page (%): Paper Transfer Unit		

7804	**[PM Counter Reset]** PM Counter Clear		
	(Unit, [Color])		
	Clears the PM counter. Press the Enter key after the machine asks “Execute?”, which will store the PM counter value in SP7-906 (PM Counter - Previous) and reset the value of the current PM counter (SP7-803) to “0”.		
7804 1	Paper	-	-
7804 2	PCU: K		
7804 3	PCU: M		
7804 4	PCU: C		
7804 5	PCU: Y		
7804 6	PCU: All		
7804 7	Development Unit: Bk		
7804 8	Development Unit: M		
7804 9	Development Unit: C		
7804 10	Development Unit: Y		
7804 11	Development Unit: All		
7804 12	Developer: Bk		

7804 13	Developer: M		
7804 14	Developer: C		
7804 15	Developer: Y		
7804 16	Developer: All		
7804 17	Image Transfer Belt		
7804 18	Cleaning Unit		
7804 19	Fusing Unit		
7804 20	Paper Transfer Unit		
7804 21	Toner Collection Bottle		
7804 100	All		

7807	**[SC/Jam Counter Reset]**		
	Clears the counters related to SC codes and paper jams.		
7807 1	SC/Jam Clear	-	-

7826	**[MF Error Counter] Japan Only**
7826 1	Error Total
7826 2	Error Staple

7827	**[MF Error Counter Clear] Japan Only**

7832	**[Self-Diagnose Result Display]**		
	Displays the result of the diagnostics.		
7832 1	Diag. Result	*CTL	-

7835	**ACC Counter**		
	.		
7835 1	Copy All	*CTL	-
7835 2	Printer ACC		

7836	**Total Memory Size**
	Displays the memory capacity of the controller system.

7852	**[DF Scan Glass Dust Check Counter]**		
	Counts the number of occurrences (0 to 65,535) when dust was detected on the scanning glass of the ADF or resets the dust detection counter. Counting is done only if SP4-020-1 (ADF Scan Glass Dust Check) is switched on.		
7852 1	Dust Detection Counter	*CTL	[0 to 9999 / - / 1 /step]
7852 2	Dust Detection Clear Counter	*CTL	[0 to 9999 / - / 1 /step]

7853	**[Replacement Counter]**		
	Displays the PM parts replacement number.		
7853 1	PCU: Bk	*CTL	[0 to 255 / - / 1 /step]
7853 2	PCU: M	*CTL	
7853 3	PCU: C	*CTL	
7853 4	PCU: Y	*CTL	
7853 5	Development Unit: Bk	*CTL	
7853 6	Development Unit: M	*CTL	
7853 7	Development Unit: C	*CTL	

7853 8	Development Unit: Y	*CTL	
7853 9	Developer: Bk	*CTL	
7853 10	Developer: M	*CTL	
7853 11	Developer: C	*CTL	
7853 12	Developer: Y	*CTL	
7853 13	Image Transfer	*CTL	
7853 14	Cleaning Unit	*CTL	
7853 15	Fusing Unit	*CTL	
7853 16	Paper Transfer Unit	*CTL	
7853 17	Toner Collection Bottle	*CTL	

7901	**[Assert Info]**		
	Records the location where a problem is detected in the program. The data stored in this SP is used for problem analysis. **DFU**		
7901 1	File Name	*CTL	-
7901 2	Number of Lines		
7901 3	Location		

7906	**[Prev. Unit PM Counter]**		
	(Page or Rotations, Unit, [Color]), Dev.: Development Unit		
	Displays the number of sheets printed with the previous maintenance units.		
7906 1	Page: PCU: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 9999999 / **0** / 1 page/step]
7906 2	Page: PCU: M		
7906 3	Page: PCU: C		
7906 4	Page: PCU: Y		
7906 5	Page: Development Unit: Bk		
7906 6	Page: Development Unit: M		
7906 7	Page: Development Unit: C		
7906 8	Page: Development Unit: Y		
7906 9	Page: Developer: Bk		
7906 10	Page: Developer: M		
7906 11	Page: Developer: C		
7906 12	Page: Developer: Y		
7906 13	Page: Image Transfer		
7906 14	Page: Cleaning Unit		
7906 15	Page: Fusing Unit		
7906 16	Page: Paper Transfer Unit		

7906 17	Page: Toner Collection Bottle		
	Displays the number of revolutions for motors or clutches in the previous maintenance units.		
7906 31	Rotation: PCU: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 9999999 / **0** / 1 mm/step]
7906 32	Rotation: PCU: M		
7906 33	Rotation: PCU: C		
7906 34	Rotation: PCU: Y		
7906 35	Rotation: Development Unit: Bk		
7906 36	Rotation: Development Unit: M		
7906 37	Rotation: Development Unit: C		
7906 38	Rotation: Development Unit: Y		
7906 39	Rotation: Developer: Bk		
7906 40	Rotation: Developer: M		
7906 41	Rotation: Developer: C		
7906 42	Rotation: Developer: Y		
7906 43	Rotation: Image Transfer Belt		
7906 44	Rotation: Cleaning Unit		
7906 45	Rotation: Fusing Unit		
7906 46	Rotation: Paper Transfer Unit		

7906 47	Measurement: Toner Collection bottle		
	Displays the number of sheets printed with the previous maintenance unit or toner cartridge.		
7906 61	Rotation (%): PCU: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **0** / 1 %/step]
7906 62	Rotation (%): PCU: M		
7906 63	Rotation (%): PCU: C		
7906 64	Rotation (%): PCU: Y		
7906 65	Rotation (%): Development Unit: Bk		
7906 66	Rotation (%): Development Unit: M		
7906 67	Rotation (%): Development Unit: C		
7906 68	Rotation (%): Development Unit: Y		
7906 69	Rotation (%): Developer: Bk		
7906 70	Rotation (%): Developer: M		
7906 71	Rotation (%): Developer: C		
7906 72	Rotation (%): Developer: Y		
7906 73	Rotation (%): Image Transfer		
7906 74	Rotation (%): Cleaning Unit		

7906 75	Rotation (%): Fusing Unit		
7906 76	Rotation (%): Paper Transfer Unit		
7906 77	Measurement (%): Toner Collection bottle		
	Displays the value given by the following formula: (Current count ÷ Yield count) x 100, where “Current count” is the current values in the counter for the part, and “Yield count” is the recommended yield.		
7906 91	Page (%): PCU: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **0** / 1 %/step]
7906 92	Page (%): PCU: M		
7906 93	Page (%): PCU: C		
7906 94	Page (%): PCU: Y		
7906 95	Page (%): Development Unit: Bk		
7906 96	Page (%): Development Unit: M		
7906 97	Page (%): Development Unit: C		
7906 98	Page (%): Development Unit: Y		
7906 99	Page (%): Developer: Bk		
7906 100	Page (%): Developer: M		
7906 101	Page (%): Developer: C		
7906 102	Page (%): Developer: Y		
7906 103	Page (%): Image		

	Transfer		
7906 104	Page (%): Cleaning Unit		
7906 105	Page (%): Fusing Unit		
7906 106	Page (%): Paper Transfer Unit		

7931	**[Toner Bottle Bk]**		
	Displays the toner bottle information for Bk.		
7931 1	Machine Serial ID	*ENG	
7931 2	Cartridge Ver		
7931 3	Brand ID		
7931 4	Area ID		
7931 5	Product ID		
7931 6	Color ID		
7931 7	Maintenance ID		
7931 8	New Product Information		
7931 9	Recycle Counter		
7931 10	Date		
7931 11	Serial No.		
7931 12	Toner Remaining		
7931 13	EDP Code		
7931 14	End History		
7931 15	Refill Information		
7931 16	Attachment: Total		

	Counter		
7931 17	Attachment: Color Counter		
7931 18	End: Total Counter		
7931 19	End: Color Counter		
7931 20	Attachment Date		
7931 21	End Date		

7932	**[Toner Bottle M]**		
	Displays the toner bottle information for M.		
7932 1	Machine Serial ID	*ENG	
7932 2	Cartridge Ver		
7932 3	Brand ID		
7932 4	Area ID		
7932 5	Product ID		
7932 6	Color ID		
7932 7	Maintenance ID		
7932 8	New Product Information		
7932 9	Recycle Counter		
7932 10	Date		
7932 11	Serial No.		
7932 12	Toner Remaining		
7932 13	EDP Code		
7932 14	End History		

7932 15	Refill Information		
7932 16	Attachment: Total Counter		
7932 17	Attachment: Color Counter		
7932 18	End: Total Counter		
7932 19	End: Color Counter		
7932 20	Attachment Date		
7932 21	End Date		

7933	**[Toner Bottle C]**		
	Displays the toner bottle information for C.		
7933 1	Machine Serial ID	*ENG	
7933 2	Cartridge Ver		
7933 3	Brand ID		
7933 4	Area ID		
7933 5	Product ID		
7933 6	Color ID		
7933 7	Maintenance ID		
7933 8	New Product Information		
7933 9	Recycle Counter		
7933 10	Date		
7933 11	Serial No.		
7933 12	Toner Remaining		

7933 13	EDP Code		
7933 14	End History		
7933 15	Refill Information		
7933 16	Attachment: Total Counter		
7933 17	Attachment: Color Counter		
7933 18	End: Total Counter		
7933 19	End: Color Counter		
7933 20	Attachment Date		
7933 21	End Date		

7934	**[Toner Bottle Y]**		
	Displays the toner bottle information for Y.		
7934 1	Machine Serial ID	*ENG	
7934 2	Cartridge Ver		
7934 3	Brand ID		
7934 4	Area ID		
7934 5	Product ID		
7934 6	Color ID		
7934 7	Maintenance ID		
7934 8	New Product Information		
7934 9	Recycle Counter		
7934 10	Date		

7934 11	Serial No.		
7934 12	Toner Remaining		
7934 13	EDP Code		
7934 14	End History		
7934 15	Refill Information		
7934 16	Attachment: Total Counter		
7934 17	Attachment: Color Counter		
7934 18	End: Total Counter		
7934 19	End: Color Counter		
7934 20	Attachment Date		
7934 21	End Date		

7935	**[Toner Bottle Log 1/2/3/4/5: Bk]**		
7935 1	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 1 for Bk.
7935 2	Attachment Date		
7935 3	Attachment: Total Counter		
7935 4	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 2 for Bk.
7935 5	Attachment Date		
7935 6	Attachment: Total Counter		
7935 7	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 3 for Bk.
7935 8	Attachment Date		

7935 9	Attachment: Total Counter		
7935 10	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 4 for Bk.
7935 11	Attachment Date		
7935 12	Attachment: Total Counter		
7935 13	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 5 for Bk.
7935 14	Attachment Date		
7935 15	Attachment: Total Counter		

7936	**[Toner Bottle Log 1/2/3/4/5: M]**		
7936 1	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 1 for M.
7936 2	Attachment Date		
7936 3	Attachment: Total Counter		
7936 4	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 2 for M.
7936 5	Attachment Date		
7936 6	Attachment: Total Counter		
7936 7	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 3 for M.
7936 8	Attachment Date		
7936 9	Attachment: Total Counter		
7936 10	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 4 for M.
7936 11	Attachment Date		

7936 12	Attachment: Total Counter		
7936 13	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 5 for M.
7936 14	Attachment Date		
7936 15	Attachment: Total Counter		

7937	**[Toner Bottle Log 1/2/3/4/5: C]**		
7937 1	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 1 for C.
7937 2	Attachment Date		
7937 3	Attachment: Total Counter		
7937 4	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 2 for C.
7937 5	Attachment Date		
7937 6	Attachment: Total Counter		
7937 7	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 3 for C.
7937 8	Attachment Date		
7937 9	Attachment: Total Counter		
7937 10	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 4 for C.
7937 11	Attachment Date		
7937 12	Attachment: Total Counter		

7937 13	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 5 for C.
7937 14	Attachment Date		
7937 15	Attachment: Total Counter		

7938	**[Toner Bottle Log 1/2/3/4/5: Y]**		
7938 1	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 1 for Y.
7938 2	Attachment Date		
7938 3	Attachment: Total Counter		
7938 4	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 2 for Y.
7938 5	Attachment Date		
7938 6	Attachment: Total Counter		
7938 7	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 3 for Y.
7938 8	Attachment Date		
7938 9	Attachment: Total Counter		
7938 10	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 4 for Y.
7938 11	Attachment Date		
7938 12	Attachment: Total Counter		

7938 13	Serial No.	*ENG	Displays the toner bottle information log 5 for Y.
7938 14	Attachment Date		
7938 15	Attachment: Total Counter		

7950	**[Unit Replacement Date]**		
	Displays the replacement date of each PM unit.		
7950 1	Image Transfer Belt	*ENG	
7950 2	Cleaning Unit		
7950 3	Paper Transfer Unit		
7950 4	Fusing Unit		
7950 5	Toner Collection Bottle		

7951	**[Remaining Day Counter]**		
	Displays the remaining unit life of each PM unit.		
7951 1	Page: PCU: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **255** / 1 day/step]
7951 2	Page: PCU: M		
7951 3	Page: PCU: C		
7951 4	Page: PCU: Y		
7951 5	Page: Development Unit: Bk		
7951 6	Page: Development Unit: M		
7951 7	Page: Development Unit: C		

7951 8	Page: Development Unit: Y		
7951 9	Page: Developer: Bk		
7951 10	Page: Developer: M		
7951 11	Page: Developer: C		
7951 12	Page: Developer: Y		
7951 13	Page: Image Transfer Belt		
7951 14	Page: Cleaning Unit		
7951 15	Page: Fusing Unit		
7951 16	Page: Paper Transfer Unit		
7951 31	Rotation: PCU: Bk	*ENG	[0 to 255 / **255** / 1 day/step]
7951 32	Rotation: PCU: M		
7951 33	Rotation: PCU: C		
7951 34	Rotation: PCU: Y		
7951 35	Rotation: Development Unit: Bk		
7951 36	Rotation: Development Unit: M		
7951 37	Rotation: Development Unit: C		
7951 38	Rotation: Development Unit: Y		
7951 39	Rotation: Developer: Bk		
7951 40	Rotation: Developer: M		

7951 41	Rotation: Developer: C		
7951 42	Rotation: Developer: Y		
7951 43	Rotation: Image Transfer Belt		
7951 44	Rotation: Cleaning Unit		
7951 45	Rotation: Fusing Unit		
7951 46	Rotation: Paper Transfer Unit		
7951 47	Measurement: Toner Collection bottle		

7952	**[PM Yield Setting]**		
	Adjusts the unit yield of each PM unit.		
7952 1	Rotation: Image Transfer Belt	*CTL	[0 to 999999999 / **199566000** / 1 mm/step]
7952 2	Rotation: Cleaning Unit	*CTL	[0 to 999999999 / **94783000** / 1 mm/step]
7952 3	Rotation: Fusing Unit	*CTL	[0 to 999999999 / **350000000** / 1 mm/step]
7952 4	Rotation: Paper Transfer Unit	*CTL	[0 to 999999999 / **149674000**/ 1 mm/step]
7952 11	Page: Image Transfer Belt	*CTL	[0 to 999999 / **320000** / 1 sheet/step]
7952 12	Page: Cleaning Unit	*CTL	[0 to 999999 / **160000** / 1 sheet/step]
7952 13	Page: Fusing Unit	*CTL	[0 to 999999 / **160000** / 1 sheet/step]
7952 14	Page: Paper Transfer Unit	*CTL	[0 to 999999 / **240000**/ 1 sheet/step]

7952 21	Day Threshold: PCU: Bk	*CTL	Adjusts the threshold day for the near end fro each PM unit. [1 to 30 / **15** / 1 day/step] These threshold days are used for NRS alarms.
7952 22	Day Threshold: PCU: M		
7952 23	Day Threshold: PCU: C		
7952 24	Day Threshold: PCU: Y		
7952 25	Day Threshold: Development Unit: Bk		
7952 26	Day Threshold: Development Unit: M		
7952 27	Day Threshold: Development Unit: C		
7952 28	Day Threshold: Development Unit: Y		
7952 29	Day Threshold: Developer: Bk		
7952 30	Day Threshold: Developer: M		
7952 31	Day Threshold: Developer: C		
7952 32	Day Threshold: Developer: Y		
7952 33	Day Threshold: Image Transfer Belt		
7952 34	Day Threshold: Cleaning Unit		
7952 35	Day Threshold: Fusing Unit		

7952 36	Day Threshold: Paper Transfer Unit]		
7952 37	Day Threshold: Toner Collection Botte		

7953	**[Operation Env. Log: PCU: Bk]**		
	Displays the PCU rotation distance in each specified operation environment. T: Temperature (°C), H: Relative Humidity (%)		
7953 1	T<=5: 0<=H<30	*CTL	[0 to 99999999 / - / 1 mm/step]
7953 2	T<=5: 30<=H<55		
7953 3	T<=5: 55<=H<80		
7953 4	T<=5: 80<=H<=100		
7953 5	5<T<15: 0<=H<30		
7953 6	5<T<15: 30<=H<55		
7953 7	5<T<15: 55<=H<80		
7953 8	5<T<15: 80<=H<=100		
7953 9	15<=T<25: 0<=H<30		
7953 10	15<=T<25: 30<=H<55		
7953 11	15<=T<25: 55<=H<80		
7953 12	15<=T<25: 80<=H<=100		
7953 13	25<=T<30: 0<=H<30		
7953 14	25<=T<30: 30<=H<55		
7953 15	25<=T<30: 55<=H<80		
7953 16	25<=T<30:		

	80<=H<=100		
7953 17	30<=T: 0<=H<30		

7953 18	30<=T: 30<=H<55		
7952 19	30<=T: 55<=H<80		
7952 20	30<=T: 80<=H<=100		

7954	**[Operation Env. Log Clear]**		
	Clears the operation environment log.		
7954 1			

SP8-xxx: Data Log2

Many of these counters are provided for features that are currently not available, such as sending color faxes, and so on. However, here are some Group 8 codes that when used in combination with others, can provide useful information.

SP Numbers	What They Do
SP8 211 to SP8 216	The number of pages scanned to the document server.
SP8 401 to SP8 406	The number of pages printed from the document server
SP8 691 to SP8 696	The number of pages sent from the document server

Specifically, the following questions can be answered:

- How is the document server actually being used?
- What application is using the document server most frequently?
- What data in the document server is being reused?

Most of the SPs in this group are prefixed with a letter that indicates the mode of operation (the mode of operation is referred to as an “application”). Before reading the Group 8 Service Table, make sure that you understand what these prefixes mean.

Prefixes	What it means	
T:	Total: (Grand Total).	Grand total of the items counted for all applications (C, F, P, etc.)..
C:	Copy application.	Totals (pages, jobs, etc.) executed for each application when the job was not stored on the document server.
F:	Fax application.	
P:	Print application.	
S:	Scan application.	
L:	Local storage (document server)	Totals (jobs, pages, etc.) for the document server. The L: counters work differently case by case. Sometimes, they count jobs/pages stored on the document server; this can be in document server mode (from the document server window), or from another mode, such as from a printer driver or by pressing the Store File button in the Copy mode window. Sometimes, they include occasions when the user uses a file that is already on the document server. Each counter will be discussed case by case.
O:	Other applications (external network applications, for example)	Refers to network applications such as Web Image Monitor. Utilities developed with the SDK (Software Development Kit) will also be counted with this group in the future.

The Group 8 SP codes are limited to 17 characters, forced by the necessity of displaying them on the small LCDs of printers and faxes that also use these SPs. Read over the list of abbreviations below and refer to it again if you see the name of an SP that you do not understand.

Key for Abbreviations

Abbreviation	What it means
/	“By”, e.g. “T:Jobs/Apl” = Total Jobs “by” Application
>	More (2> “2 or more”, 4> “4 or more”
AddBook	Address Book
Apl	Application
B/W	Black & White
Bk	Black
C	Cyan
ColCr	Color Create
ColMode	Color Mode
Comb	Combine
Comp	Compression
Deliv	Delivery
DesApl	Designated Application. The application (Copy, Fax, Scan, Print) used to store the job on the document server, for example.
Dev Counter	Development Count, no. of pages developed.
Dup, Duplex	Duplex, printing on both sides
Emul	Emulation
FC	Full Color
FIN	Post-print processing, i.e. finishing (punching, stapling, etc.)
Full Bleed	No Margins

Copy Service Mode

Abbreviation	What it means
GenCopy	Generation Copy Mode
GPC	Get Print Counter. For jobs 10 pages or less, this counter does not count up. For jobs larger than 10 pages, this counter counts up by the number that is in excess of 10 (e.g., for an 11-page job, the counter counts up 11-10 =1)
IFax	Internet Fax
ImgEdt	Image Edit performed on the original with the copier GUI, e.g. border removal, adding stamps, page numbers, etc.
K	Black (YMCK)
LS	Local Storage. Refers to the document server.
LSize	Large (paper) Size
Mag	Magnification
MC	One color (monochrome)
NRS	New Remote Service, which allows a service center to monitor machines remotely. “NRS” is used overseas, “CSS” is used in Japan.
Org	Original for scanning
OrgJam	Original Jam
Palm 2	Print Job Manager/Desk Top Editor: A pair of utilities that allows print jobs to be distributed evenly among the printers on the network, and allows files to moved around, combined, and converted to different formats.
PC	Personal Computer
PGS	Pages. A page is the total scanned surface of the original. Duplex pages count as two pages, and A3 simplex count as two pages if the A3/DLT counter SP is switched ON.

Abbreviation	What it means
PJob	Print Jobs
Ppr	Paper
PrtJam	Printer (plotter) Jam
PrtPGS	Print Pages
R	Red (Toner Remaining). Applies to the wide format model A2 only. This machine is under development and currently not available.
Rez	Resolution
SC	Service Code (Error SC code displayed)
Scn	Scan
Sim, Simplex	Simplex, printing on 1 side.
S-to-Email	Scan-to-E-mail
SMC	SMC report printed with SP5990. All of the Group 8 counters are recorded in the SMC report.
Svr	Server
TonEnd	Toner End
TonSave	Toner Save
TXJob	Send, Transmission
YMC	Yellow, Magenta, Cyan
YMCK	Yellow, Magenta, Cyan, Black

Note

- All of the Group 8 SPs are reset with SP5 801 1 Memory All Clear.

8 001	T:Total Jobs	*CTL	These SPs count the number of times each application is used to do a job. [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1] **Note**: The L: counter is the total number of times the other applications are used to send a job to the document server, plus the number of times a file already on the document server is used.
8 002	C:Total Jobs	*CTL	
8 003	F:Total Jobs	*CTL	
8 004	P:Total Jobs	*CTL	
8 005	S:Total Jobs	*CTL	
8 006	L:Total Jobs	*CTL	

- These SPs reveal the number of times an application is used, not the number of pages processed.
- When an application is opened for image input or output, this counts as one job.
- Interrupted jobs (paper jams, etc.) are counted, even though they do not finish.
- Only jobs executed by the customer are counted. Jobs executed by the customer engineer using the SP modes are not counted.
- When using secure printing (when a password is required to start the print job), the job is counted at the time when either “Delete Data” or “Specify Output” is specified.
- A job is counted as a fax job when the job is stored for sending.
- When a fax is received to fax memory, the F: counter increments but the L: counter does not (the document server is not used).
- A fax broadcast counts as one job for the F: counter (the fax destinations in the broadcast are not counted separately).
- A fax broadcast is counted only after all the faxes have been sent to their destinations. If one transmission generates an error, then the broadcast will not be counted until the transmission has been completed.
- A printed fax report counts as one job for the F: counter.
- The F: counter does not distinguish between fax sending or receiving.
- When a copy job on the document server is printed, SP8022 also increments, and when a print job stored on the document server is printed, SP8024 also increments.
- When an original is both copied and stored on the document server, the C: and L:

counters both increment.

- When a print job is stored on the document server, only the L: counter increments.
- When the user presses the Document Server button to store the job on the document server, only the L: counter increments.
- When the user enters document server mode and prints data stored on the document server, only the L: counter increments.
- When an image received from Palm 2 is received and stored, the L: counter increments.
- When the customer prints a report (user code list, for example), the O: counter increments. However, for fax reports and reports executed from the fax application, the F: counter increments.

8 011	T:Jobs/LS	*CTL	These SPs count the number of jobs stored to the document server by each application, to reveal how local storage is being used for input. [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1] The L: counter counts the number of jobs stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel.
8 012	C:Jobs/LS	*CTL	
8 013	F:Jobs/LS	*CTL	
8 014	P:Jobs/LS	*CTL	
8 015	S:Jobs/LS	*CTL	
8 016	L:Jobs/LS	*CTL	
8 017	O:Jobs/LS	*CTL	

- When a scan job is sent to the document server, the S: counter increments. When you enter document server mode and then scan an original, the L: counter increments.
- When a print job is sent to the document server, the P: counter increments.
- When a network application sends data to the document server, the O: counter increments.
- When an image from Palm 2 is stored on the document server, the O: counter increments.
- When a fax is sent to the document server, the F: counter increments.

8 021	T:Pjob/LS	*CTL	These SPs reveal how files printed from the document server were stored on the document
8 022	C:Pjob/LS	*CTL	

Copy Service Mode

8 023	F:Pjob/LS	*CTL	server originally. [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1] The L: counter counts the number of jobs stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel.
8 024	P:Pjob/LS	*CTL	
8 025	S:Pjob/LS	*CTL	
8 026	L:Pjob/LS	*CTL	
8 027	O:Pjob/LS	*CTL	

- When a copy job stored on the document server is printed with another application, the C: counter increments.
- When an application like DeskTopBinder merges a copy job that was stored on the document server with a print job that was stored on the document server, the C: and P: counters both increment.
- When a job already on the document server is printed with another application, the L: counter increments.
- When a scanner job stored on the document server is printed with another application, the S: counter increments. If the original was scanned from within document server mode, then the L: counter increments.
- When images stored on the document server by a network application (including Palm 2), are printed with another application, the O: counter increments.
- When a copy job stored on the document server is printed with a network application (Web Image Monitor, for example), the C: counter increments.
- When a fax on the document server is printed, the F: counter increments.

8 031	T:Pjob/DesApl	*CTL	These SPs reveal what applications were used to output documents from the document server. [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1] The L: counter counts the number of jobs printed from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel.
8 032	C:Pjob/DesApl	*CTL	
8 033	F:Pjob/DesApl	*CTL	
8 034	P:Pjob/DesApl	*CTL	
8 035	S:Pjob/DesApl	*CTL	
8 036	L:Pjob/DesApl	*CTL	
8 037	O:Pjob/DesApl	*CTL	

- When documents already stored on the document server are printed, the count for the application that started the print job is incremented.
- When the print job is started from a network application (Desk Top Binder, Web Image Monitor, etc.) the L: counter increments.

8 041	T:TX Jobs/LS	*CTL	These SPs count the applications that stored files on the document server that were later accessed for transmission over the telephone line or over a network (attached to an e-mail, or as a fax image by I-Fax). [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1] **Note**: Jobs merged for sending are counted separately. The L: counter counts the number of jobs scanned from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel.
8 042	C:TX Jobs/LS	*CTL	
8 043	F:TX Jobs/LS	*CTL	
8 044	P:TX Jobs/LS	*CTL	
8 045	S:TX Jobs/LS	*CTL	
8 046	L:TX Jobs/LS	*CTL	
8 047	O:TX Jobs/LS	*CTL	

- When a stored copy job is sent from the document server, the C: counter increments.
- When images stored on the document server by a network application or Palm2 are sent as an e-mail, the O: counter increments.

8 051	T:TX Jobs/DesApl	*CTL	These SPs count the applications used to send files from the document server over the telephone line or over a network (attached to an e-mail, or as a fax image by I-Fax). Jobs merged for sending are counted separately. [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1] The L: counter counts the number of jobs sent from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel.
8 052	C:TX Jobs/DesApl	*CTL	
8 053	F:TX Jobs/DesApl	*CTL	
8 054	P:TX Jobs/DesApl	*CTL	
8 055	S:TX Jobs/DesApl	*CTL	
8 056	L:TX Jobs/DesApl	*CTL	
8 057	O:TX Jobs/DesApl	*CTL	

- If the send is started from Desk Top Binder or Web Image Monitor, for example, then the O: counter increments.

8 061	T:FIN Jobs	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs total the finishing methods. The finishing method is specified by the application.		
8 062	C:FIN Jobs	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs total finishing methods for copy jobs only. The finishing method is specified by the application.		
8 063	F:FIN Jobs	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs total finishing methods for fax jobs only. The finishing method is specified by the application. **Note**: Finishing features for fax jobs are not available at this time.		
8 064	P:FIN Jobs	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs total finishing methods for print jobs only. The finishing method is specified by the application.		
8 065	S:FIN Jobs	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs total finishing methods for scan jobs only. The finishing method is specified by the application. **Note**: Finishing features for scan jobs are not available at this time.		
8 066	L:FIN Jobs	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs total finishing methods for jobs output from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel. The finishing method is specified from the print window within document server mode.		

8 067	O:FIN Jobs	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs total finishing methods for jobs executed by an external application, over the network. The finishing method is specified by the application.		
8 06x 1	Sort	Number of jobs started in Sort mode. When a stored copy job is set for Sort and then stored on the document server, the L: counter increments. (See SP8 066 1)	
8 06x 2	Stack	Number of jobs started out of Sort mode.	
8 06x 3	Staple	Number of jobs started in Staple mode.	
8 06x 4	Booklet	Number of jobs started in Booklet mode. If the machine is in staple mode, the Staple counter also increments.	
8 06x 5	Z-Fold	Number of jobs started In any mode other than the Booklet mode and set for folding (Z-fold).	
8 06x 6	Punch	Number of jobs started in Punch mode. When Punch is set for a print job, the P: counter increments. (See SP8 064 6.)	
8 06x 7	Other	Reserved. Not used.	

8 071	T:Jobs/PGS	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the number of jobs broken down by the number of pages in the job, regardless of which application was used.		
8 072	C:Jobs/PGS	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count and calculate the number of copy jobs by size based on the number of pages in the job.		

8 073	F:Jobs/PGS	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count and calculate the number of fax jobs by size based on the number of pages in the job.		
8 074	P:Jobs/PGS	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count and calculate the number of print jobs by size based on the number of pages in the job.		
8 075	S:Jobs/PGS		[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count and calculate the number of scan jobs by size based on the number of pages in the job.		
8 076	L:Jobs/PGS	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count and calculate the number of jobs printed from within the document server mode window at the operation panel, by the number of pages in the job.		
8 077	O:Jobs/PGS	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count and calculate the number of “Other” application jobs (Web Image Monitor, Palm 2, etc.) by size based on the number of pages in the job.		

8 07x 1	1 Page	8 07x 8	21 to 50 Pages
8 07x 2	2 Pages	8 07x 9	51 to 100 Pages
8 07x 3	3 Pages	8 07x 10	101 to 300 Pages
8 07x 4	4 Pages	8 07x 11	301 to 500 Pages
8 07x 5	5 Pages	8 07x 12	501 to 700 Pages
8 07x 6	6 to 10 Pages	8 07x 13	701 to 1000 Pages
8 07x 7	11 to 20 Pages	8 07x 14	1001 to Pages

- For example: When a copy job stored on the document server is printed in document server mode, the appropriate L: counter (SP8076 0xx) increments.
- Printing a fax report counts as a job and increments the F: counter (SP 8073).
- Interrupted jobs (paper jam, etc.) are counted, even though they do not finish.
- If a job is paused and re-started, it counts as one job.
- If the finisher runs out of staples during a print and staple job, then the job is counted at the time the error occurs.
- For copy jobs (SP 8072) and scan jobs (SP 8075), the total is calculated by multiplying the number of sets of copies by the number of pages scanned. (One duplex page counts as 2.)
- The first test print and subsequent test prints to adjust settings are added to the number of pages of the copy job (SP 8072).
- When printing the first page of a job from within the document server screen, the page is counted.

8 111	T:FAX TX Jobs	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of jobs (color or black-and-white) sent by fax, either directly or using a file stored on the document server, on a telephone line. **Note**: Color fax sending is not available at this time.		
8 113	F: FAX TX Jobs	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of jobs (color or black-and-white) sent by fax directly on a telephone line. **Note**: Color fax sending is not available at this time.		
8 11x 1	B/W		
8 11x 2	Color		

- These counters count jobs, not pages.
- This SP counts fax jobs sent over a telephone line with a fax application, including documents stored on the document server.

- If the mode is changed during the job, the job will count with the mode set when the job started.
- If the same document is faxed to both a public fax line and an I-Fax at a destination where both are available, then this counter increments, and the I-Fax counter (8 12x) also increments.
- The fax job is counted when the job is scanned for sending, not when the job is sent.

8 121	T:IFAX TX Jobs	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of jobs (color or black-and-white) sent, either directly or using a file stored on the document server, as fax images using I-Fax. **Note**: Color fax sending is not available at this time.		

8 123	F: IFAX TX Jobs	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the number of jobs (color or black-and-white) sent (not stored on the document server), as fax images using I-Fax. **Note**: Color fax sending is not available at this time.		
8 12x 1	B/W		
8 12x 2	Color		

- These counters count jobs, not pages.
- The counters for color are provided for future use; the color fax feature is not available at this time.
- The fax job is counted when the job is scanned for sending, not when the job is sent.

8 131	T:S-to-Email Jobs	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of jobs (color or black-and-white) scanned and attached to an e-mail, regardless of whether the document server was used or not.		
8 135	S: S-to-Email Jobs	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the number of jobs (color or black-and-white) scanned and attached to e-mail, without storing the original on the document server.		
8 13x 1	B/W		
8 13x 2	Color		
8 13x 3	ACS		

- These counters count jobs, not pages.
- If the job is stored on the document server, after the job is stored it is determined to be color or black-and-white then counted.
- If the job is cancelled during scanning, or if the job is cancelled while the document is waiting to be sent, the job is not counted.
- If the job is cancelled during sending, it may or may not be counted, depending on what stage of the process had been reached when the job was cancelled.
- If several jobs are combined for sending to the Scan Router, Scan-to-Email, or Scan-to-PC, or if one job is sent to more than one destination. each send is counted separately. For example, if the same document is sent by Scan-to-Email as well as Scan-to-PC, then it is counted twice (once for Scan-to-Email and once for Scan-to-PC).

8 141	T:Deliv Jobs/Svr	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of jobs (color or black-and-white) scanned and sent to a Scan Router server.		
8 145	S: Deliv Jobs/Svr	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]

	These SPs count the number of jobs (color or black-and-white) scanned in scanner mode and sent to a Scan Router server.
8 14x 1	B/W
8 14x 2	Color
8 14x 3	ACS

- These counters count jobs, not pages.
- The jobs are counted even though the arrival and reception of the jobs at the Scan Router server cannot be confirmed.
- If even one color image is mixed with black-and-white images, then the job is counted as a “Color” job.
- If the job is cancelled during scanning, or if the job is cancelled while the document is waiting to be delivered, the job is not counted.
- If the job is cancelled during sending, it may or may not be counted, depending on what stage of the process had been reached when the job was cancelled.
- Even if several files are combined for sending, the transmission counts as one job.

8 151	T:Deliv Jobs/PC	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of jobs (color or black-and-white) scanned and sent to a folder on a PC (Scan-to-PC). **Note**: At the present time, 8 151 and 8 155 perform identical counts.		
8 155	S:Deliv Jobs/PC	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of jobs (color or black-and-white) scanned and sent with Scan-to-PC.		
8 15x 1	B/W		
8 15x 2	Color		
8 15x 3	ACS		

- These counters count jobs, not pages.
- If the job is cancelled during scanning, it is not counted.
- If the job is cancelled while it is waiting to be sent, the job is not counted.
- If the job is cancelled during sending, it may or may not be counted, depending on what stage of the process had been reached when the job was cancelled.
- Even if several files are combined for sending, the transmission counts as one job.

8 161	T:PCFAX TX Jobs	*CTL	These SPs count the number of PC Fax transmission jobs. A job is counted from when it is registered for sending, not when it is sent. [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1] **Note**: At the present time, these counters perform identical counts.
8 163	F:PCFAX TX Jobs	*CTL	

- This counts fax jobs started from a PC using a PC fax application, and sending the data out to the destination from the PC through the copier.

8 191	T:Total Scan PGS	*CTL	These SPs count the pages scanned by each application that uses the scanner to scan images. [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
8 192	C:Total Scan PGS	*CTL	
8 193	F:Total Scan PGS	*CTL	
8 195	S:Total Scan PGS	*CTL	
8 196	L:Total Scan PGS	*CTL	

- SP 8 191 to 8 196 count the number of scanned sides of pages, not the number of physical pages.
- These counters do not count reading user stamp data, or reading color charts to adjust color.
- Previews done with a scanner driver are not counted.
- A count is done only after all images of a job have been scanned.
- Scans made in SP mode are not counted.

Examples

- If 3 B5 pages and 1 A3 page are scanned with the scanner application but not stored, the S: count is 4.
- If both sides of 3 A4 sheets are copied and stored to the document server using the Store File button in the Copy mode window, the C: count is 6 and the L: count is 6.
- If both sides of 3 A4 sheets are copied but not stored, the C: count is 6.
- If you enter document server mode then scan 6 pages, the L: count is 6.

8 201	T:LSize Scan PGS	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of large pages input with the scanner for scan and copy jobs. Large size paper (A3/DLT) scanned for fax transmission are not counted. **Note**: These counters are displayed in the SMC Report, and in the User Tools display.		
8 203	F: LSize Scan PGS	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of large pages input with the scanner for fax transmission. **Note**: These counters are displayed in the SMC Report, and in the User Tools display.		
8 205	S:LSize Scan PGS	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of large pages input with the scanner for scan jobs only. Large size paper (A3/DLT) scanned for fax transmission are not counted. **Note**: These counters are displayed in the SMC Report, and in the User Tools display.		

8 211	T:Scan PGS/LS	*CTL	These SPs count the number of pages scanned into the document server . [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1] The L: counter counts the number of pages stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel, and with the Store File button from within the Copy mode screen
8 212	C:Scan PGS/LS	*CTL	
8 213	F:Scan PGS/LS	*CTL	
8 215	S:Scan PGS/LS	*CTL	
8 216	L:Scan PGS/LS	*CTL	

- Reading user stamp data is not counted.
- If a job is cancelled, the pages output as far as the cancellation are counted.
- If the scanner application scans and stores 3 B5 sheets and 1 A4 sheet, the S: count is 4.
- If pages are copied but not stored on the document server, these counters do not change.
- If both sides of 3 A4 sheets are copied and stored to the document server, the C: count is 6 and the L: count is 6.
- If you enter document server mode then scan 6 pages, the L: count is 6.

8 221	ADF Org Feeds	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the number of pages fed through the ADF for front and back side scanning.		
8 221 1	Front	Number of front sides fed for scanning: With an ADF that can scan both sides simultaneously, the Front side count is the same as the number of pages fed for either simplex or duplex scanning. With an ADF that cannot scan both sides simultaneously, the Front side count is the same as the number of pages fed for duplex front side scanning. (The front side is determined by which side the user loads face up.)	

8 221 2	Back	Number of rear sides fed for scanning: With an ADF that can scan both sides simultaneously, the Back count is the same as the number of pages fed for duplex scanning. With an ADF that cannot scan both sides simultaneously, the Back count is the same as the number of pages fed for duplex rear-side scanning.

- When 1 sheet is fed for duplex scanning the Front count is 1 and the Back count is 1.
- If a jam occurs during the job, recovery processing is not counted to avoid double counting. Also, the pages are not counted if the jam occurs before the first sheet is output.

8 231	Scan PGS/Mode	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the number of pages scanned by each ADF mode to determine the work load on the ADF.		
8 231 1	Large Volume	Selectable. Large copy jobs that cannot be loaded in the ADF at one time.	
8 231 2	SADF	Selectable. Feeding pages one by one through the ADF.	
8 231 3	Mixed Size	Selectable. Select “Mixed Sizes” on the operation panel.	
8 231 4	Custom Size	Selectable. Originals of non-standard size.	
8 231 5	Platen	Book mode. Raising the ADF and placing the original directly on the platen.	

- If the scan mode is changed during the job, for example, if the user switches from ADF to Platen mode, the count is done for the last selected mode.
- The user cannot select mixed sizes or non-standard sizes with the fax application so if the original’s page sizes are mixed or non-standard, these are not counted.

- If the user selects “Mixed Sizes” for copying in the platen mode, the Mixed Size count is enabled.
- In the SADF mode if the user copies 1 page in platen mode and then copies 2 pages with SADF, the Platen count is 1 and the SADF count is 3.

8 241	T:Scan PGS/Org	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of scanned pages by original type for all jobs, regardless of which application was used.		
8 242	C:Scan PGS/Org	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the number of pages scanned by original type for Copy jobs.		
8 243	F:Scan PGS/Org	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the number of pages scanned by original type for Fax jobs.		
8 245	S:Scan PGS/Org	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the number of pages scanned by original type for Scan jobs.		
8 246	L:Scan PGS/Org	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the number of pages scanned and stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel, and with the Store File button from within the Copy mode screen		

	8 241		**8 242**	**8 243**	**8 245**	**8 246**	
8 24x 1: Text		Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	
8 24x 2: Text/Photo		Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	
8 24x 3: Photo		Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	
8 24x 4: GenCopy, Pale		Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	

8 24x 5: Map	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	
8 24x 6: Normal/Detail	Yes	No	Yes	No	No	
8 24x 7: Fine/Super Fine	Yes	No	Yes	No	No	
8 24x 8: Binary	Yes	No	No	Yes	No	
8 24x 9: Grayscale	Yes	No	No	Yes	No	
8 24x 10: Color	Yes	No	No	Yes	No	
8 24x 11: Other	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	

- If the scan mode is changed during the job, for example, if the user switches from ADF to Platen mode, the count is done for the last selected mode.

8 251	T:Scan PGS/ImgEdt	*CTL	These SPs show how many times Image Edit features have been selected at the operation panel for each application. Some examples of these editing features are: ▪ Erase> Border ▪ Erase> Center ▪ Image Repeat ▪ Centering ▪ Positive/Negative [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1] Note: The count totals the number of times the edit features have been used. A detailed breakdown of exactly which features have been used is not given.
8 252	C:Scan PGS/ImgEdt	*CTL	
8 254	P:Scan PGS/ImgEdt	*CTL	
8 256	L:Scan PGS/ImgEdt	*CTL	
8 257	O:Scan PGS/ImgEdt	*CTL	

The L: counter counts the number of pages stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel, and with the Store File button from within the Copy mode screen.

8 261	T:Scan PGS/ColCr	*CTL	-
8 262	C:Scan PGS/ ColCr	*CTL	-
8 266	L:Scn PGS/ColCr	*CTL	-
8 26x 1	Color Conversion	These SPs show how many times color creation features have been selected at the operation panel.	
8 26x 2	Color Erase		
8 26x 3	Background		
8 26x 4	Other		

8 281	T:Scan PGS/TWAIN	*CTL	These SPs count the number of pages scanned using a TWAIN driver. These counters reveal how the TWAIN driver is used for delivery functions. [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1] **Note**: At the present time, these counters perform identical counts.
8 285	S:Scan PGS/TWAIN	*CTL	

8 291	T:Scan PGS/Stamp	*CTL	These SPs count the number of pages stamped with the stamp in the ADF unit. [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1] The L: counter counts the number of pages stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel, and with the Store File button from within the Copy mode screen
8 293	F:Scan PGS/Stamp	*CTL	
8 295	S:Scan PGS/Stamp	*CTL	
8 296	L:Scan PGS/Stamp	*CTL	

8 301	T:Scan PGS/Size	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by size the total number of pages scanned by all applications. Use these totals to compare original page size (scanning) and output (printing) page size [SP 8-441].		
8 302	C:Scan PGS/Size	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by size the total number of pages scanned by the Copy application. Use these totals to compare original page size (scanning) and output (printing) page size [SP 8-442].		
8 303	F:Scan PGS/Size	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by size the total number of pages scanned by the Fax application. Use these totals to compare original page size (scanning) and output page size [SP 8-443].		
8 305	S:Scan PGS/Size	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by size the total number of pages scanned by the Scan application. Use these totals to compare original page size (scanning) and output page size [SP 8-445].		
8 306	L:Scan PGS/Size	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by size the total number of pages scanned and stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel, and with the Store File button from within the Copy mode screen. Use these totals to compare original page size (scanning) and output page size [SP 8-446].		

8 30x 1	A3	-
8 30x 2	A4	
8 30x 3	A5	
8 30x 4	B4	
8 30x 5	B5	
8 30x 6	DLT	
8 30x 7	LG	
8 30x 8	LT	
8 30x 9	HLT	
8 30x 10	Full Bleed	
8 30x 254	Other (Standard)	
8 30x 255	Other (Custom)	

8 311	T:Scan PGS/Rez	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by resolution setting the total number of pages scanned by applications that can specify resolution settings.		
8 315	S: Scan PGS/Rez	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by resolution setting the total number of pages scanned by applications that can specify resolution settings. **Note**: At the present time, SP8-311 and SP8-315 perform identical counts.		
8 31x 1	1200dpi <		
8 31x 2	600dpi to 1199dpi		

8 31x 3	400dpi to 599dpi		
8 31x 4	200dpi to 399dpi		
8 31x 5	< 199dpi		

- Copy resolution settings are fixed so they are not counted.
- The Fax application does not allow finely-adjusted resolution settings so no count is done for the Fax application.

8 381	T:Total PrtPGS	*CTL	These SPs count the number of pages printed by the customer. The counter for the application used for storing the pages increments. [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1] The L: counter counts the number of pages stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel. Pages stored with the Store File button from within the Copy mode screen go to the C: counter.
8 382	C:Total PrtPGS	*CTL	
8 383	F:Total PrtPGS	*CTL	
8 384	P:Total PrtPGS	*CTL	
8 385	S:Total PrtPGS	*CTL	
8 386	L:Total PrtPGS	*CTL	
8 387	O:Total PrtPGS	*CTL	

- When the A3/DLT double count function is switched on with SP5104, 1 A3/DLT page is counted as 2.
- When several documents are merged for a print job, the number of pages stored are counted for the application that stored them.
- These counters are used primarily to calculate charges on use of the machine, so the following pages are not counted as printed pages:
  - Blank pages in a duplex printing job.
  - Blank pages inserted as document covers, chapter title sheets, and slip sheets.
  - Reports printed to confirm counts.
  - All reports done in the service mode (service summaries, engine maintenance reports, etc.)
  - Test prints for machine image adjustment.
  - Error notification reports.
  - Partially printed pages as the result of a copier jam.

8 391	LSize PrtPGS	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count pages printed on paper sizes A3/DLT and larger. **Note**: In addition to being displayed in the SMC Report, these counters are also displayed in the User Tools display on the copy machine.		

8 401	T:PrtPGS/LS	*CTL	These SPs count the number of pages printed from the document server. The counter for the application used to print the pages is incremented. The L: counter counts the number of jobs stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel. [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
8 402	C:PrtPGS/LS	*CTL	
8 403	F:PrtPGS/LS	*CTL	
8 404	P:PrtPGS/LS	*CTL	
8 405	S:PrtPGS/LS	*CTL	
8 406	L:PrtPGS/LS	*CTL	

- Print jobs done with Web Image Monitor and Desk Top Binder are added to the L: count.
- Fax jobs done with Web Image Monitor and Desk Top Binder are added to the F: count.

8 411	Prints/Duplex	*CTL	This SP counts the amount of paper (front/back counted as 1 page) used for duplex printing. Last pages printed only on one side are not counted. [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]

8 421	T:PrtPGS/Dup Comb		*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by binding and combine, and n-Up settings the number of pages processed for printing. This is the total for all applications.			
8 422	C:PrtPGS/Dup Comb		*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by binding and combine, and n-Up settings the number of pages processed for printing by the copier application.			
8 423	F:PrtPGS/Dup Comb		*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by binding and combine, and n-Up settings the number of pages processed for printing by the fax application.			
8 424	P:PrtPGS/Dup Comb		*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by binding and combine, and n-Up settings the number of pages processed for printing by the printer application.			
8 425	S:PrtPGS/Dup Comb		*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by binding and combine, and n-Up settings the number of pages processed for printing by the scanner application.			
8 426	L:PrtPGS/Dup Comb		*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by binding and combine, and n-Up settings the number of pages processed for printing from within the document server mode window at the operation panel.			
8 427	O:PrtPGS/Dup Comb		*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by binding and combine, and n-Up settings the number of pages processed for printing by Other applications			
8 42x 1	Simplex> Duplex			
8 42x 2	Duplex> Duplex			
8 42x 3	Book> Duplex			

8 42x 4	Simplex Combine			
8 42x 5	Duplex Combine			
8 42x 6	2>	2 pages on 1 side (2-Up)		
8 42x 7	4>	4 pages on 1 side (4-Up)		
8 42x 8	6>	6 pages on 1 side (6-Up)		
8 42x 9	8>	8 pages on 1 side (8-Up)		
8 42x 10	9>	9 pages on 1 side (9-Up)		
8 42x 11	16>	16 pages on 1 side (16-Up)		
8 42x 12	Booklet			
8 42x 13	Magazine			

- These counts (SP8 421 to SP8 427) are especially useful for customers who need to improve their compliance with ISO standards for the reduction of paper consumption.
- Pages that are only partially printed with the n-Up functions are counted as 1 page.
- Here is a summary of how the counters work for Booklet and Magazine modes:

Booklet			**Magazine**	
Original Pages	**Count**		**Original Pages**	**Count**
1	1		1	1
2	2		2	2
3	2		3	2
4	2		4	2

5	3		5	4
6	4		6	4
7	4		7	4
8	4		8	4

8 431	T:PrtPGS/ImgEdt	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of pages output with the three features below, regardless of which application was used.		
8 432	C:PrtPGS/ImgEdt	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of pages output with the three features below with the copy application.		
8 434	P:PrtPGS/ImgEdt	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of pages output with the three features below with the print application.		
8 436	L:PrtPGS/ImgEdt	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of pages output from within the document server mode window at the operation panel with the three features below.		
8 437	O:PrtPGS/ImgEdt	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of pages output with the three features below with Other applications.		
8 43x 1	Cover/Slip Sheet	Total number of covers or slip sheets inserted. The count for a cover printed on both sides counts 2.	

8 43x 2	Series/Book	The number of pages printed in series (one side) or printed as a book with booklet right/left pagination.
8 43x 3	User Stamp	The number of pages printed where stamps were applied, including page numbering and date stamping.

8 441	T:PrtPGS/Ppr Size	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by print paper size the number of pages printed by all applications.		
8 442	C:PrtPGS/Ppr Size	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by print paper size the number of pages printed by the copy application.		
8 443	F:PrtPGS/Ppr Size	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by print paper size the number of pages printed by the fax application.		
8 444	P:PrtPGS/Ppr Size	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by print paper size the number of pages printed by the printer application.		
8 445	S:PrtPGS/Ppr Size	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by print paper size the number of pages printed by the scanner application.		
8 446	L:PrtPGS/Ppr Size	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by print paper size the number of pages printed from within the document server mode window at the operation panel.		

8 447	O:PrtPGS/Ppr Size		*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by print paper size the number of pages printed by Other applications.			
8 44x 1	A3			
8 44x 2	A4			
8 44x 3	A5			
8 44x 4	B4			
8 44x 5	B5			
8 44x 6	DLT			
8 44x 7	LG			
8 44x 8	LT			
8 44x 9	HLT			
8 44x 10	Full Bleed			
8 44x 254	Other (Standard)			
8 44x 255	Other (Custom)			

- These counters do not distinguish between LEF and SEF.

8 451	PrtPGS/Ppr Tray		*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the number of sheets fed from each paper feed station.			
8 451 1	Bypass	Bypass Tray		
8 451 2	Tray 1	Copier		
8 451 3	Tray 2	Copier		

8 451 4	Tray 3	Paper Tray Unit (Option)
8 451 5	Tray 4	Paper Tray Unit (Option)
8 451 6	Tray 5	LCT (Option)
8 451 7	Tray 6	Currently not used.
8 451 8	Tray 7	Currently not used.
8 451 9	Tray 8	Currently not used.
8 451 10	Tray 9	Currently not used.

8 461	T:PrtPGS/Ppr Type	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by paper type the number pages printed by all applications. ▪ These counters are not the same as the PM counter. The PM counter is based on feed timing to accurately measure the service life of the feed rollers. However, these counts are based on output timing. ▪ Blank sheets (covers, chapter covers, slip sheets) are also counted. ▪ During duplex printing, pages printed on both sides count as 1, and a page printed on one side counts as 1.		
8 462	C:PrtPGS/Ppr Type	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by paper type the number pages printed by the copy application.		
8 463	F:PrtPGS/Ppr Type	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by paper type the number pages printed by the fax application.		
8 464	P:PrtPGS/Ppr Type	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by paper type the number pages printed by the printer application.		

Copy Service Mode

8 466	L:PrtPGS/Ppr Type	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by paper type the number pages printed from within the document server mode window at the operation panel.		
8 46x 1	Normal		
8 46x 2	Recycled		
8 46x 3	Special		
8 46x 4	Thick		
8 46x 5	Normal (Back)		
8 46x 6	Thick (Back)		
8 46x 7	OHP		
8 46x 8	Other		

8 471	PrtPGS/Mag	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by magnification rate the number of pages printed.		
8 471 1	< 49%		
8 471 2	50% to 99%		
8 471 3	100%		
8 471 4	101% to 200%		
8 471 5	201% <		

- Counts are done for magnification adjusted for pages, not only on the operation panel but performed remotely with an external network application capable of performing magnification adjustment as well.
- Magnification adjustments done with printer drivers with PC applications such as Excel are also counted.
- Magnification adjustments done for adjustments after they have been stored on the document server are not counted.

- Magnification adjustments performed automatically during Auto Reduce/Enlarge copying are counted.
- The magnification rates of blank cover sheets, slip sheets, etc. are automatically assigned a rate of 100%.

8 481	T:PrtPGS/TonSave	*CTL	
8 484	P:PrtPGS/TonSave	*CTL	
	These SPs count the number of pages printed with the Toner Save feature switched on. **Note**: These SPs return the same results as this SP is limited to the Print application. [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]		

8 491	T:PrtPGS/Col Mode	*CTL	These SPs count the number of pages printed in the Color Mode by each application.
8 492	C:PrtPGS/Col Mode	*CTL	
8 493	F:PrtPGS/Col Mode	*CTL	
8 496	L:PrtPGS/Col Mode	*CTL	
8 497	O:PrtPGS/Col Mode	*CTL	
8 49x 1	B/W		
8 49x 2	Single Color		
8 49x 3	Two Color		
8 49x 4	Full Color		

8 501	T:PrtPGS/Col Mode	*CTL	These SPs count the number of pages printed in the Color Mode by the print application.
8 504	P:PrtPGS/Col Mode	*CTL	
8 507	O:PrtPGS/Col Mode	*CTL	
8 50x 1	B/W		
8 50x 2	Mono Color		
8 50x 3	Full Color		
8 50x 4	Single Color		
8 50x 5	Two Color		

8 511	T:PrtPGS/Emul		*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by printer emulation mode the total number of pages printed.			
8 514	P:PrtPGS/Emul		*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by printer emulation mode the total number of pages printed.			
8 514 1	RPCS			
8 514 2	RPDL			
8 514 3	PS3			
8 514 4	R98			
8 514 5	R16			
8 514 6	GL/GL2			

8 514 7	R55			
8 514 8	RTIFF			
8 514 9	PDF			
8 514 10	PCL5e/5c			
8 514 11	PCL XL			
8 514 12	IPDL-C			
8 514 13	BM-Links	Japan Only		
8 514 14	Other			

- SP8 511 and SP8 514 return the same results as they are both limited to the Print application.
- Print jobs output to the document server are not counted.

8 521	T:PrtPGS/FIN	*CTL	[0 to 9999999 / **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by finishing mode the total number of pages printed by all applications.		
8 522	C:PrtPGS/FIN	*CTL	[0 to 9999999 / **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by finishing mode the total number of pages printed by the Copy application.		
8 523	F:PrtPGS/FIN	*CTL	[0 to 9999999 / **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by finishing mode the total number of pages printed by the Fax application. **NOTE**: Print finishing options for received faxes are currently not available.		

8 524	P:PrtPGS/FIN	*CTL	[0 to 9999999 / **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by finishing mode the total number of pages printed by the Print application.		
8 525	S:PrtPGS/FIN	*CTL	[0 to 9999999 / **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by finishing mode the total number of pages printed by the Scanner application.		
8 526	L:PrtPGS/FIN	*CTL	[0 to 9999999 / **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by finishing mode the total number of pages printed from within the document server mode window at the operation panel.		
8 52x 1	Sort		
8 52x 2	Stack		
8 52x 3	Staple		
8 52x 4	Booklet		
8 52x 5	Z-Fold		
8 52x 6	Punch		
8 52x 7	Other		

Note

- If stapling is selected for finishing and the stack is too large for stapling, the unstapled pages are still counted.
- The counts for staple finishing are based on output to the staple tray, so jam recoveries are counted.

8 531	Staples	*CTL	This SP counts the amount of staples used by the machine. [0 to 9999999 / **0** / 1]

8 581	T:Counter	*CTL	[0 to 9999999 / **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total output broken down by color output, regardless of the application used. In addition to being displayed in the SMC Report, these counters are also displayed in the User Tools display on the copy machine.		
8 581 1	Total		
8 581 2	Total: Full Color		
8 581 3	B&W/Single Color		
8 581 4	Development: CMY		
8 581 5	Development: K		
8 581 6	Copy: Color		
8 581 7	Copy: B/W		
8 581 8	Print: Color		
8 581 9	Print: B/W		
8 581 10	Total: Color		
8 581 11	Total: B/W		
8 581 12	Full Color: A3		
8 581 13	Full Color: B4 JIS or Smaller		
8 581 14	Full Color Print		

8 581 15	Mono Color Print
8 581 16	Full Color GPC

8 582	C:Counter	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total output of the copy application broken down by color output.		
8 582 1	B/W		
8 582 2	Single Color		
8 582 3	Two Color		
8 582 4	Full Color		

8 583	F:Counter	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total output of the fax application broken down by color output.		
8 583 1	B/W		
8 583 2	Single Color		

8 584	P:Counter	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total output of the print application broken down by color output.		
8 584 1	B/W		
8 584 2	Mono Color		
8 584 3	Full Color		

8 584 4	Single Color
8 584 5	Two Color

8 586	L:Counter	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total output of the local storage broken down by color output.		
8 582 1	B/W		
8 582 2	Single Color		
8 582 3	Two Color		
8 582 4	Full Color		

8 591	O:Counter		*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the totals for A3/DLT paper use, number of duplex pages printed, and the number of staples used. These totals are for Other (O:) applications only.			
8 591 1	A3/DLT			
8 591 2	Duplex			

8 601	Coverage Counter	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the total coverage for each color and the total printout pages for each printing mode.		
8 601 1	B/W		
8 601 2	Color		
8 601 11	B/W Printing Pages		
8 601 12	Color Printing Pages		

8 631	T:FAX TX PGS	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by color mode the number of pages sent by fax to a telephone number.		
8 633	F:FAX TX PGS	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by color mode the number of pages sent by fax to a telephone number.		
8 63x 1	B/W		
8 63x 2	Color		

- If a document has color and black-and-white pages mixed, the pages are counted separately as B/W or Color.
- At the present time, this feature is provided for the Fax application only so SP8631 and SP8633 are the same.
- The counts include error pages.
- If a document is sent to more than one destination with a Group transmission, the count is done for each destination.
- Polling transmissions are counted but polling RX are not.
- Relay, memory, and confidential mailbox transmissions and are counted for each destination.

8 641	T:IFAX TX PGS	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by color mode the number of pages sent by fax to as fax images using I-Fax.		
8 643	F:IFAX TX PGS	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by color mode the number of pages sent by Fax as fax images using I-Fax.		
8 64x 1	B/W		
8 64x 2	Color		

- If a document has color and black-and-white pages mixed, the pages are counted separately as B/W or Color.
- At the present time, this feature is provided for the Fax application only so SP8641 and SP8643 are the same.
- The counts include error pages.
- If a document is sent to more than one destination with a Group transmission, the count is done for each destination.
- Polling transmissions are counted but polling RX are not.
- Relay, memory, and confidential mailbox transmissions and are counted for each destination.

8 651	T:S-to-Email PGS	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by color mode the total number of pages attached to an e-mail for both the Scan and document server applications.		
8 655	S-to-Email PGS	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by color mode the total number of pages attached to an e-mail for the Scan application only.		
8 65x 1	B/W		
8 65x 2	Color		

Note

- The count for B/W and Color pages is done after the document is stored on the HDD. If the job is cancelled before it is stored, the pages are not counted.
- If Scan-to-Email is used to send a 10-page document to 5 addresses, the count is 10 (the pages are sent to the same SMTP server together).
- If Scan-to-PC is used to send a 10-page document to 5 folders, the count is 50 (the document is sent to each destination of the SMB/FTP server).
- Due to restrictions on some devices, if Scan-to-Email is used to send a 10-page document to a large number of destinations, the count may be divided and counted separately. For example, if a 10-page document is sent to 200 addresses, the count is 10 for the first 100 destinations and the count is also 10 for the second 100 destinations, for a total of 20.).

8 661	T:Deliv PGS/Svr	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by color mode the total number of pages sent to a Scan Router server by both Scan and LS applications.		
8 665	Deliv PGS/Svr	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by color mode the total number of pages sent to a Scan Router server by the Scan application.		
8 66x 1	B/W		
8 66x 2	Color		

Note

- The B/W and Color counts are done after the document is stored on the HDD of the Scan Router server.
- If the job is canceled before storage on the Scan Router server finishes, the counts are not done.
- The count is executed even if regardless of confirmation of the arrival at the Scan Router server.

8 671	T:Deliv PGS/PC	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by color mode the total number of pages sent to a folder on a PC (Scan-to-PC) with the Scan and LS applications.		
8 675	Deliv PGS/PC	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count by color mode the total number of pages sent with Scan-to-PC with the Scan application.		
8 67x 1	B/W		
8 67x 2	Color		

8 681	T:PCFAX TXPGS	*CTL	These SPs count the number of pages sent by PC Fax. These SPs are provided for the Fax application only, so the counts for SP8 681 and SP8 683 are the same. [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
8 683	F:PCFAX TXPGS	*CTL	

- This counts pages sent from a PC using a PC fax application, from the PC through the copier to the destination.
- When sending the same message to more than one place using broadcasting, the pages are only counted once. (For example, a 10-page fax is sent to location A and location B. The counter goes up by 10, not 20.)

8 691	T:TX PGS/LS	*CTL	These SPs count the number of pages sent from the document server. The counter for the application that was used to store the pages is incremented. [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1] The L: counter counts the number of pages stored from within the document server mode screen at the operation panel. Pages stored with the Store File button from within the Copy mode screen go to the C: counter.
8 692	C:TX PGS/LS	*CTL	
8 693	F:TX PGS/LS	*CTL	
8 694	P:TX PGS/LS	*CTL	
8 695	S:TX PGS/LS	*CTL	
8 696	L:TX PGS/LS	*CTL	

Note

- Print jobs done with Web Image Monitor and Desk Top Binder are added to the count.
- If several documents are merged for sending, the number of pages stored are counted for the application that stored them.
- When several documents are sent by a Fax broadcast, the F: count is done for the number of pages sent to each destination.

8 701	TX PGS/Port	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the number of pages sent by the physical port used to send them. For example, if a 3-page original is sent to 4 destinations via ISDN G4, the count for ISDN (G3, G4) is 12.		
8 701 1	PSTN-1		
8 701 2	PSTN-2		
8 701 3	PSTN-3		
8 701 4	ISDN (G3,G4)		
8 701 5	Network		

8 711	T:Scan PGS/Comp	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
8 715	S:Scan PGS/Comp	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the number of pages sent by each compression mode.		
8 715 1	JPEG/JPEG2000		
8 715 2	TIFF(Multi/Single)		
8 715 3	PDF		
8 715 4	Other		

8 741	RX PGS/Port	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the number of pages received by the physical port used to receive them.		
8 741 1	PSTN-1		
8 741 2	PSTN-2		
8 741 3	PSTN-3		
8 741 4	ISDN (G3,G4)		
8 741 5	Network		

8 771	Dev Counter	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the frequency of use (number of rotations of the development rollers) for black and other color toners.		
8 771 1	Total		
8 771 2	K		
8 771 3	Y		
8 771 4	M		
8 771 5	C		

8 781	Toner Bottle Info.	*ENG	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs display the number of already replaced toner bottles. **NOTE:** Currently, the data in SP7-833-011 through 014 and the data in SP8-781-001 through 004 are the same.		
8 781 1	Toner: BK	The number of black-toner bottles	

8 781 2	Toner: Y	The number of yellow-toner bottles
8 781 3	Toner: M	The number of magenta-toner bottles
8 781 4	Toner: C	The number of cyan-toner bottles

8 791	LS Memory Remain	*CTL	This SP displays the percent of space available on the document server for storing documents. [0 to 100 / **0** / 1]

8 801	Toner Remain	*CTL	[0 to 100/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs display the percent of toner remaining for each color. This SP allows the user to check the toner supply at any time. **Note:** This precise method of measuring remaining toner supply (1% steps) is better than other machines in the market that can only measure in increments of 10 (10% steps).		
8 801 1	K		
8 801 2	Y		
8 801 3	M		
8 801 4	C		

8 851	Coverage Count: 0-10%	*ENG	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs display the number of scanned sheets on which the coverage of each color is from 0% to 10%.		
8 851 11	0 to 2%: BK	8 851 31	5 to 7%: BK
8 851 12	0 to 2%: Y	8 851 32	5 to 7%: Y

8 851 13	0 to 2%: M	8 851 33	5 to 7%: M
8 851 14	0 to 2%: C	8 851 34	5 to 7%: C
8 851 21	3 to 4%: BK	8 851 41	8 to 10%: BK
8 851 22	3 to 4%: Y	8 851 42	8 to 10%: Y
8 851 23	3 to 4%: M	8 851 43	8 to 10%: M
8 851 24	3 to 4%: C	8 851 44	8 to 10%: C

8 861	Coverage Count: 11-20%	*ENG	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs display the number of scanned sheets on which the coverage of each color is from 11% to 20%.		
8 861 1	BK		
8 861 2	Y		
8 861 3	M		
8 861 4	C		

8 871	Coverage Count: 21-30%	*ENG	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs display the number of scanned sheets on which the coverage of each color is from 21% to 30%.		
8 871 1	BK		
8 871 2	Y		
8 871 3	M		
8 871 4	C		

8 881	Coverage Count: 31%-	*ENG	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs display the number of scanned sheets on which the coverage of each color is 31% or higher.		
8 881 1	BK		
8 881 2	Y		
8 881 3	M		
8 881 4	C		

8 891	Printing PGS: Present Ink	*ENG	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs display the amount of the remaining current toner for each color.		
8 891 1	BK		
8 891 2	Y		
8 891 3	M		
8 891 4	C		

8 901	Printing PGS: Log: Latest 1	*ENG	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs display the amount of the remaining previous toner for each color.		
8 901 1	BK		
8 901 2	Y		

8 901 3	M
8 901 4	C

8 911	Printing PGS: Log: Latest 2	*ENG	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs display the amount of the remaining 2nd previous toner for each color.		
8 911 1	BK		
8 911 2	Y		
8 911 3	M		
8 911 4	C		

8 921	Coverage Count: Total	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	Displays the total coverage and total printout number for each color.		
8 921 1	BK (%)		
8 921 2	Y (%)		
8 921 3	M (%)		
8 921 4	C (%)		
8 921 14	BK (Page)		
8 921 15	Y (Page)		
8 921 16	M (Page)		
8 921 17	C (Page)		

8 941	Machine Status	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	These SPs count the amount of time the machine spends in each operation mode. These SPs are useful for customers who need to investigate machine operation for improvement in their compliance with ISO Standards.		
8 941 1	Operation Time	Engine operation time. Does not include time while controller is saving data to HDD (while engine is not operating).	
8 941 2	Standby Time	Engine not operating. Includes time while controller saves data to HDD. Does not include time spent in Energy Save, Low Power, or Off modes.	
8 941 3	Energy Save Time	Includes time while the machine is performing background printing.	
8 941 4	Low Power Time	Includes time in Energy Save mode with Engine on. Includes time while machine is performing background printing.	
8 941 5	Off Mode Time	Includes time while machine is performing background printing. Does not include time machine remains powered off with the power switches.	
8 941 6	SC	Total time when SC errors have been staying.	
8 941 7	PrtJam	Total time when paper jams have been staying during printing.	
8 941 8	OrgJam	Total time when original jams have been staying during scanning.	
8 941 9	Supply PM Unit End	Total time when toner end has been staying	

8 951	AddBook Register	*CTL		
	These SPs count the number of events when the machine manages data registration.			
8 951 1	User Code	User code registrations.		[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
8 951 2	Mail Address	Mail address registrations.		
8 951 3	Fax Destination	Fax destination registrations.		
8 951 4	Group	Group destination registrations.		
8 951 5	Transfer Request	Fax relay destination registrations for relay TX.		
8 951 6	F-Code	F-Code box registrations.		
8 951 7	Copy Program	Copy application registrations with the Program (job settings) feature.		[0 to 255 / **0** / 255]
8 951 8	Fax Program	Fax application registrations with the Program (job settings) feature.		
8 951 9	Printer Program	Printer application registrations with the Program (job settings) feature.		
8 951 10	Scanner Program	Scanner application registrations with the Program (job settings) feature.		

8 999	Adomin. Counter List	*CTL	[0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]
	Displays the total coverage and total printout number for each color.		
8 999 1	Total		
8 999 2	Copy: Full Color		

8 999 3	Copy: BW		
8 999 4	Copy: Single Color		
8 999 5	Copy: Two Color		
8 999 6	Printer Full Color		
8 999 7	Printer BW		
8 999 8	Printer Single Color		
8 999 9	Printer Two Color		
8 999 10	Fax Print: BW		
8 999 12	A3/DLT		
8 999 13	Duplex		
8 999 14	Coverage: Color (%)		
8 999 15	Coverage: BW (%)		
8 999 16	Coverage: Color Print Page (%)		
8 999 17	Coverage: BW Print Page (%)		
8 999 101	Transmission Total: Color		
8 999 102	Transmission Total: BW		
8 999 103	FAX Transmission		

8 999 104	Scanner Transmission: Color		
8 999 105	Scanner Transmission: BW		

SP9-XXX: Others

9511	Skew Origin Set	*CTL	
001	M: Skew Motor	These SPs reset the skew correction value (SP2-119-001 to -003) to "0".	
002	C: Skew Motor		
003	Y: Skew Motor		

9911	**[Pressure Roller Condition]**		
001	Normal: Threshold: Upper Limit	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **140** / 1 deg/step]
	Specifies the threshold temperature of the pressure roller between M (middle) and H (high). This SP is referred when the input voltage of the IH inverter is more than 93% (adjustable with SP1-916-026).		
002	Normal: Threshold: Lower Limit	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **120** / 1 deg/step]
	Specifies the threshold temperature of the pressure roller between L (low) and M (middle). This SP is referred when the input voltage of the IH inverter is more than 93% (adjustable with SP1-916-026).		

003	Coefficient: Low	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **2** / 1 /step] 0: No effect 1: Normal 2: High 3: Highest
	DFU Adjusts the coefficient value of the temperature correction for ferrite roller rotation when the the fusing unit is in the low temperature.		
004	Coefficient: Mid.	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **1** / 1 /step] **DFU**
005	Coefficient: High	*ENG	[0 to 3 / **0** / 1 /step] **DFU**
006	Stand-by: Threshold: Upper Limit	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **180** / 1 deg/step]
	Specifies the threshold temperature of the pressure roller between M (middle) and H (high). This SP is referred when the input voltage of the IH inverter is 93% or less (adjustable with SP1-916-026).		
007	Stand-by: Threshold: Lower Limit	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **120** / 1 deg/step]
	Specifies the threshold temperature of the pressure roller between L (low) and M (middle). This SP is referred when the input voltage of the IH inverter is 93% or less (adjustable with SP1-916-026).		
008	Mid. Thick: A3: Threshold: Upper Limit	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **200** / 1 deg/step]
	Specifies the threshold temperature of the pressure roller between M (middle) and H (high). This SP is referred when the paper of 275 mm width or more is used in the middle thick paper and 205/154 mm/sec line speed mode.		

009	Mid. Thick: A3: Threshold: Lower Limit	*ENG	[0 to 200 / **190** / 1 deg/step]
	Specifies the threshold temperature of the pressure roller between L (low) and M (middle). This SP is referred when the paper of 275 mm width or more is used in the middle thick paper and 205/154 mm/sec line speed mode.		

9912	**[Target Angle]** Ferrite Roller Paper Size Adjustment **DFU**		
001	A3/DLT	*ENG	[0 to 960 / **323** / 1 PULSE/step]
002	B4	*ENG	[0 to 960 / **381** / 1 PULSE/step]
003	A4/LT	*ENG	[0 to 960 / **400** / 1 PULSE/step]
004	B5	*ENG	[0 to 960 / **498** / 1 PULSE/step]
005	A5/HLT	*ENG	[0 to 960 / **525** / 1 PULSE/step]
006	B6	*ENG	[0 to 960 / **525** / 1 PULSE/step]
007	A6	*ENG	[0 to 960 / **525** / 1 PULSE/step]

9921	Page Correction Setting	*CTL	Not used in this machine. [0 to 9999999/ **0** / 1]

9965	**[Repeat Print Temp.Correction]**		
	These SPs are used for Preventing the fusing temperature overheating due to a multiple printing job.		
001	JOB Interval: Plain	*ENG	[0 to 120 / **30** / 1 sec/step]
	Specifies the job interval time in plain paper mode. The machine does not enter the temperature correction mode for preventing the overheating for the time specified with this SP.		

002	JOB Interval: M-Thick	*ENG	[0 to 120 / **30** / 1 sec/step]
	Specifies the job interval time in middle thick paper mode. The machine does not enter the temperature correction mode for preventing the overheating for the time specified with this SP.		
003	Shift Time	*ENG	[0 to 1200 / **600** / 10 sec/step]
	Specifies the threshold time for entering the temperature correction mode. If a job continues for the time specified with this SP, the machine enteres the temperature correction mode.		
004	Offset Value: Plain: Low Temp.	*ENG	[0 to 20 / **5** / 1 deg/step]
	Specified the offset temperature for the plain paper in the low temperature. The machine decreases this temperature when a job continues for 600 seconds (adjustable with SP9-965-003) and the environment temperature is 17°C or less.		
005	Offset Value: Plain: Normal/High Temp.	*ENG	[0 to 20 / **5** / 1 deg/step]
	Specified the offset temperature for the plain paper in the low temperature. The machine decreases this temperature when a job continues for 600 seconds (adjustable with SP9-965-003) and the environment temperature is more than 17°C and 30°C or less.		
006	Offset Value: M-Thick: Low Temp.	*ENG	[0 to 20 / **5** / 1 deg/step]
	Specified the offset temperature for the middle thick paper in the middle temperature. The machine decreases this temperature when a job continues for 600 seconds (adjustable with SP9-965-003) and the environment temperature is 17°C or less.		

007	Offset Value: M-Thick: Normal/High Temp.	*ENG	[0 to 20 / **5** / 1 deg/step]
	Specified the offset temperature for the middle thick paper in the middle temperature. The machine decreases this temperature when a job continues for 600 seconds (adjustable with SP9-965-003) and the environment temperature is more than 17°C and 30°C or less.		

Note

- Memory Clear (SP5-801)
- The following tables list the items that are cleared. The serial number information, meter charge setting and meter charge counters (SP8-581, 582, 583, 584, and 586) are not cleared.

5801	**[Memory Clear]**	
5801 1	All Clear	Resets all correction data for process control and all software counters, and returns all modes and adjustments to their default values.
5801 2	ENG All	Clears the engine settings.
5801 3	SCS	Initializes default system settings, SCS (System Control Service) settings, operation display coordinates, and ROM update information.
5801 4	IMH	No SP modes are cleared. But, all files stored in the HDD are cleared. (IMH: Image Memory Handler)
5801 5	MCS	No SP modes are cleared. (MCS: Memory Control Service)
5801 6	Copier application	Initializes all copier application settings.
5801 7	Fax application	Initializes the fax reset time, job login ID, all TX/RX settings, local storage file numbers, and off-hook timer.

Copy Service Mode

5801 8	Printer application	The following service settings: ▪ Bit switches ▪ Gamma settings (User & Service) ▪ Toner Limit The following user settings: ▪ Tray Priority ▪ Menu Protect ▪ System Setting except for setting of Energy Saver ▪ I/F Setup (I/O Buffer and I/O Timeout) ▪ PCL Menu
5801 9	Scanner application	Initializes the scanner defaults for the scanner and all the scanner SP modes.
5801 10	Netfile application	Deletes the network file application management files and thumbnails, and initializes the job login ID.
5801 11	NCS	All setting of Network Setup (User Menu) (NCS: Network Control Service)
5801 12	R-Fax	Initializes the job login ID, SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin, job history, and local storage file numbers.
5801 13	IPU	Initilaize the IPU setting.
5801 14	Clear DCS Settings	Initializes the DCS (Delivery Control Service) settings.
5801 15	Clear UCS Settings	Initializes the UCS (User Information Control Service) settings.
5801 16	MIRS Setting	Initializes the MIRS (Machine Information Report Service) settings.
5801 17	CCS	Initializes the CCS (Certification and Charge-control Service) settings.

5998	[Memory Clear]	
5998 1	ENG Setting	All engine related SP modes except for the following: ▪ Serial number information ▪ SP modes related to meter charge ▪ Counters and logging data
5998 2	ENG Counter	All counters and logging data related to engine

5.2.2 INPUT CHECK TABLE

When entering the Input Check mode, 8 digits display the result for a section. Each digit corresponds to a different device as shown in the table.

Bit No.	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Result	0 or 1	0 or 1	0 or 1	0 or 1	0 or 1	0 or 1	0 or 1	0 or 1

Copier

5803	Bit	Description	Reading	
			0	1
5803 1	**Interlock Release Detection**			
	0	Interlock Release Detection 1	Front door open	Front door closed
	4	Interlock Release Detection 2	Front door open	Front door closed
5803 2	Right Cover Open/Closed		Closed	Open

5803 3	Toner Collection Bottle Set	Set	Not set
5803 4	Image Transfer Contact/Release Position	Not contact	Contact
5803 9	Paper Transfer Contact/Release Position	Not contact	Contact
5803 10	Drum Motor: Bk: Lock	Normal	Lock error
5803 13	Toner Relay Motor: Lock	Normal	Lock error
5803 14	Fusing Exit Motor: Lock	Normal	Lock error
5803 15	Image Transfer Motor: Lock	Normal	Lock error
5803 16	Laser Optics Fan: Front Lock	Normal	Lock error
5803 17	Laser Optics Fan: Rear Lock	Normal	Lock error
5803 18	Fusing Exhaust Fan: Lock	Normal	Lock error
5803 20	IH Power Cooling Fan: Lock	Normal	Lock error
5803 27	Toner Collection Full Sensor	Not full	Full
5803 28	Drum Phase Sensor: Bk	Actuator not detected	Actuator detected
5803 29	Drum Phase Sensor: M	Actuator not detected	Actuator detected
5803 30	Drum Phase Sensor: C	Actuator not detected	Actuator detected
5803 31	Drum Phase Sensor: Y	Actuator not detected	Actuator detected
5803 33	IH Magnetic Field Switch HP Sensor 1	Not HP	HP

5803 34	Fusing Rotation Sensor	Actuator not detected	Actuator detected
5803 35	Toner End Sensor: Bk	Toner end	Toner remaining
5803 36	Toner End Sensor: M	Toner end	Toner remaining
5803 37	Toner End Sensor: C	Toner end	Toner remaining
5803 38	Toner End Sensor: Y	Toner end	Toner remaining
5803 39	Fusing Destination Detection: DOM	Set	Not set
5803 40	Fusing Destination Detection: NA	Set	Not set
5803 41	Fusing Destination Detection: EU	Set	Not set
5803 42	Keycard: Set	Set	Not set
5803 43	Mechanical Counter Bk: Set	Not set	Set
5803 44	Mechanical Counter FC: Set	Not set	Set
5803 45	Key Counter: Set	Set	Not set
5803 46	Fusing New Unit Detection	New	Not new
5803 48	Tray 1 Set Detection	Set	Not set
5803 49	Tray 1 Paper End	No paper	Paper remaining
5803 50	Tray 1 Paper Height Detection 1	See table 1 following this table.	
5803 51	Tray 1 Paper Height Detection 2	See table 1 following this table.	
5803 52	Tray 1 Lift Detection	Not upper limit	Upper limit
5803 53	Tray 2 Set Detection	Set	Not set
5803 54	Tray 2 Paper End	No paper	Paper remaining

5803 55	Tray 2 Paper Height Detection 1	See table 1 following this table.	
5803 56	Tray 2 Paper Height Detection 2	See table 1 following this table.	
5803 57	Tray 2 Lift Detection	Not upper limit	Upper limit
5803 58	Tray 2 Paper Size	See table 2 following this table.	
5803 59	Registration Sensor	Paper detected	Paper not detected
5803 60	Relay Sensor 1 (Paper feed sensor 1)	Paper detected	Paper not detected
5803 61	Relay Sensor 2 (Paper feed sensor 2)	Paper detected	Paper not detected
5803 62	Paper Feed Sensor 1	Paper detected	Paper not detected
5803 63	Paper Feed Sensor 2	Paper detected	Paper not detected
5803 64	Fusing Entrance Sensor	Paper detected	Paper not detected
5803 65	Fusing Exit Sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
5803 66	Exit Sensor	Paper detected	Paper not detected
5803 67	Exit Full Detection	Paper not full	Paper full
5803 68	Junction Gate Relay Detection	Paper detected	Paper not detected
5803 69	Junction Gate HP Detection	Not HP	HP
5803 70	By-pass Tray Paper End	Paper remaining	No paper

5803 71	By-Pass Paper Size	See table 3 following this table.	
5803 72	Bridge Exit	Paper detected	Paper not detected
5803 73	Bridge Relay Sensor	Paper detected	Paper not detected
5803 74	Bridge Paper Full	Paper not full	Paper full
5803 75	Bridge Unit Set	Set	Not set
5803 76	Bridge Exit Cover Detection	Closed	Open
5803 77	Bridge Relay Cover Detection	Closed	Open
5803 78	Duplex Entrance Sensor	Paper detected	Paper not detected
5803 79	Duplex Exit Sensor	Paper detected	Paper not detected
5803 80	Duplex Open/Closed Detection	Closed	Open
5803 81	Duplex Feed Cover	Open	Closed
5803 82	1 Bin Tray Set Detection	Set	Not set
5803 83	1 Bin Tray Sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
5803 87	Bank SEF (Vertical transport sensor 1/ Relay sensor) Sensor3	Paper not detected	Paper detected
5803 88	Bank SEF (Vertical transport sensor 2) Sensor4	Paper not detected	Paper detected
5803 89	Bank Feed Sensor 3	Paper not detected	Paper detected

5803 90	Bank Feed Sensor 4	Paper not detected	Paper detected
5803 91	Bank Relay Cover Detection	Closed	Open
5803 92	Bank Vertical Transport Sensor 5	Not used	
5803 93	Bank Feed Sensor 5	Not used	
5803 94	GAVD Open/Closed Detection	Closed (LD5V ON)	Open (LD5V OFF)
*5803 95	Tube Cooling Fan: Lock	Normal	Lock error
5803 96	New Transfer Detection	Not new	New
5803 101	PP: D: SC Detection	SC detected	No SC
5803 102	PP: CB: SC Detection	SC detected	No SC
5803 103	PP: TTS: SC Detection	SC detected	No SC
5803 104	Fusing Coil Fan: Lock	Normal	Lock error
5803 105	Exit Fan: Lock	Normal	Lock error
5803 106	Duct Fan 2: Lock	Normal	Lock error
5803 107	Duct Fan 3: Lock	Normal	Lock error
5803 108	Laser Optics Shutter Sensor 1	Shutter open	Shutter closed
5803 109	Laser Optics Shutter Sensor 2	Shutter closed	Shutter open
5803 110	Interlock Detection 2	Switch off (Power off)	Switch on (Power on)
5803 111	Drum Motor: M: Lock	Normal	Lock error
5803 112	Drum Motor: Y: Lock	Normal	Lock error
5803 113	Drum Motor: C: Lock	Normal	Lock error

5803 200	Scanner HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
5803 201	Platen Cover Sensor	Open	Closed

*For Future Use

1000-Sheet Booklet Finisher (B793)

Not used in this machine.

2000/3000-Sheet (Booklet) Finisher (B804, B805)

6140	Bit	Description	Reading	
			0	1
6140 1		Entrance Sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6140 2		Proof Exit Sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6140 3		Proof Full Detection Sensor	Not Full	Full
6140 4		Trailing Edge Detection: Shift	Paper not detected*1	Paper detected*1
6140 5		Staple Exit Sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6140 6		Shift HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
6140 7		Shift Exit Sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6140 8		Exit Guide Plate HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
6140 9		Paper Detection Sensor: Staple	Paper not detected	Paper detected

6140 10	Paper Detection Sensor: Shift	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6140 11	Paper Full Sensor: 2000-Sheet	Not Full	Full
6140 12	Oscillating Back Roller HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
6140 13	Jogger HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
6140 14	Exit Junction Gate HP Sensor	HP	Not HP
6140 15	Staple Tray Paper Sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6140 16	Staple Moving HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
6140 17	Skew HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
6140 18	Limit SW	Not Limit	Limit
6140 19	DOOR SW	Closed	Open
6140 20	Stapler 1 Rotation	Not HP	HP
6140 21	Staple Detection	Staple not detected	Staple detected
6140 22	Staple Leading Edge Detection	Staple not detected	Staple detected
6140 23	Punch Moving HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
6140 24	Punch Registration HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
6140 25	Punch Registratioin Detection Sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6140 26	Punch Chad Full Sensor	Not Full	Full
6140 27	Punch HP	Not HP	HP

6140 28	Punch Selection DIPSW 1	See *1	
6140 29	Punch Selection DiPSW 2	See *1	
6140 30	Stack Junction Gate Open/Closed HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
6140 31	Leading Edge Detection Sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6140 32	Drive Roller HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
6140 33	Arrival Sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6140 34	Rear Edge Fence HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
6140 35	Folder Cam HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
6140 36	Folder Plate HP Sensor	Not HP	HP
6140 37	Folder Pass Sensor	Paper not detected	Paper detected
6140 38	Saddle Full Sensor: Front	Paper not detected*2	Paper detected*2
6140 39	Saddle Full Sensor: Rear	Paper not detected*2	Paper detected*2
6140 40	Saddle Stitch Stapler 1 Rotation: Front	Not HP	HP
6140 41	Saddle Stitch Detection: Front	Staple not detected	Staple detected
6140 42	Saddle Stitch Leading Edge Detection: Front	Staple not detected	Staple detected

6140 43	Saddle Stitch Stapler 1 Rotation: Rear	Not HP	HP
6140 44	Saddle Stitch Detection: Rear	Staple not detected	Staple detected
6140 45	Saddle Stitch Leading Edge Detection: Rear	Staple not detected	Staple detected
6140 46	Full Sensor: 3000-Sheet	Not Full	Full
6140 47	Exit Jogger HP Sensor: Front	Not used in the machine	
6140 48	Exit Jogger HP Sensor: Rear	Not used in the machine	
6140 49	Exit Jogger HP Sensor: Rear	Not used in the machine	

*1: Combination of DIP SW 1 and SW 2

DIP SW 1	DIP SW 2	Punch Type
0	0	Japan
1	0	Europe
0	1	North America
1	1	North Europe

*2: Please refer to "Lower Tray (B804 Only)" in the Service Manual for the "2000/3000 (Booklet) Finisher".

1000-Sheet Finisher (B408)

6139	Bit	Description	Reading	
			0	1
6139 1	Entrance Sensor		Paper detected	Paper not detected
6139 2	Shift Exit Sensor (Lower Tray Exit Sensor)		Paper not detected	Paper detected
6139 3	Staple Entrance Sensor (Stapler Tray Entrance Sensor)		Paper detected	Paper not detected
6139 4	Staple Moving HP Sensor (Stapler HP Sensor)		Not home position	Home position
6139 5	Jogger HP Sensor (Jogger Fence HP Sensor)		Not home position	Home position
6139 6	Stack Feed-out Belt HP Sensor		Home position	Not home position
6139 7	Staple Tray Paper Sensor		Paper not detected	Paper detected
6139 8	Staple Rotation Sensor (Staple Rotation HP Sensor)		Not home position	Home position
6139 9	Staple Sensor		Staple detected	Staple not detected
6139 10	Staple READY Detection		Staple detected	Staple not detected
6139 11	Exit Guide Plate HP (Exit Guide Plate HP Sensor)		Not home position	Home position

6139 12	Shift HP Sensor	Not home position	Home position
6139 13	Paper Sensor (Stack Height Sensor)	Output tray not detected	Output tray detected
6139 14	Tray Lower Sensor (Lower Tray Lower Limit Sensor)	Lower limit	Not lower limit
6139 15	Proof Full Sensor (Paper Limit Sensor)	Not full	Full
*6141 12	Pick Roller Sensor (Pick-Up Roller Unit HP Sensor)	Not home position	Home position
*6141 13	Staple HP Sensor	Not home position	Home position
*6141 14	Staple Near Empty Sensor	Staple near empty	Staple remaining
*6141 15	Staple Self Prime Sensor (End Fence Detection Sensor)	Staple not detected	Staple detected
*6141 16	Top Cover Sensor	Closed	Open
*6141 17	Staple Cover Sensor (Front Cover Switch)	Closed	Open

*For Future Use

Table 1: Paper Height Sensor

0: Deactivated, 1: Activated (actuator inside sensor)

Remaining paper	Paper height sensor 1	Paper height sensor 2
Full	0	0
Nearly full	1	0
Near end	1	1
Almost empty	0	1

Table 2: Paper Size Switch (Tray 2)

Switch 1 is used for tray set detection.

0: Pushed, 1: Not pushed

Models		Switch Location		
North America	**Europe/Asia**	**4**	**3**	**2**
11" x 17" SEF*1 (A3 SEF)	A3 SEF*1 (11" x 17" SEF)	0	0	1
8.5" x 14" SEF *2 (B4 SEF)	B4 SEF *2 (8.5" x 14" SEF)	0	0	0
A4 SEF	A4 SEF	1	1	0
8.5" x 11" SEF	8.5" x 11" SEF	1	1	1
B5 SEF	B5 SEF	0	1	1
11" x 81/2" LEF*3 (A4 LEF)	A4 LEF*3 (11" x 81/2" LEF)	1	0	0
10.5" x 7.25" LEF*4 (B5 LEF)	B5 LEF*4 (10.5" x 7.25" LEF)	0	1	0
A5 LEF	A5 LEF	1	0	1

Note

- *1: The machine detects either 11" x 17" SEF or A3 SEF, depending on the setting of SP 5-181-003.
- *2: The machine detects either 8.5" x 14" SEF or B4 SEF, depending on the setting of SP 5-181-004.
- *3: The machine detects either 11" x 81/2" LEF or A4 LEF, depending on the setting of SP 5-181-002.
- *4: The machine detects either B5 LEF or 10.5" x 7.25" LEF, depending on the setting of SP 5-181-005.

Table 3: Paper Size (By-pass Table)

0: Pushed, 1: Not pushed

Models		Bit No.			
North America	**Europe/Asia**	**3**	**2**	**1**	**0**
11" x 17" SEF*[1] (11" x 8.5" LEF)	A3 SEF*[1] (A4 LEF)	1	1	1	0
11" x 17" SEF*[1] (11" x 8.5" LEF)	A3 SEF*[1] (A4 LEF)	1	1	0	0
8.5" x 11" SEF*[1] (8.5" x 11" SEF*[2])	A4 SEF*[1] (A5 LEF)	1	1	0	1
8.5" x 11" SEF*[1] (8.5" x 11" SEF*[2])	A4 SEF*[1] (B5 LEF)	1	0	0	1
5.5" x 8.5" SEF	A5 LEF	1	0	1	1
5.5" x 8.5" SEF	A5 LEF	0	0	1	1
5.5" x 8.5" SEF	A5 LEF	0	1	1	1
5.5" x 8.5" SEF	A6 LEF	1	1	1	1

Note

- *1: When the machine determines that the paper feed direction is "LEF", it considers that the paper size is bracketed size.

Table 4: APS Original Size Detection

Original Size		Length Sensor			Width Sensor		SP4-301 display
Metric version	**Inch version**	L3	L2	L1	W1	W2	
A3	11" x 17"	O	O	O	O	O	00011111
B4	10" x 14"	O	O	O	O	X	00011110
F4 8.5" x 13", 8.25" x 13", or 8" x 13" SP 5126 controls the size that is detected	8.5” x 14”	O	O	O	X	X	00011100
A4 LEF	8.5" x 11"	X	X	X	O	O	00000011
B5 LEF	-	X	X	X	O	X	00000010
A4 SEF	11" x 8.5"	X	O	O	X	X	00001100
B5 SEF	-	X	X	O	X	X	00000100
A5 LEF/ SEF	5.5" x 8.5", 8.5" x 5.5"	X	X	X	X	X	00000000

5.2.3 OUTPUT CHECK TABLE

Copier

5804	Display	Description
5804 1	Image Transfer Motor	Image Transfer Belt Contact Motor
5804 2	Drum Motor: Bk: Full Speed	Drum/Development Drive Motor-K: 154/205 mm/s
5804 3	Drum Motor: Bk: Medium Speed	Drum/Development Drive Motor-K: 115 mm/s
5804 4	Drum Motor: Bk: Low Speed	Drum/Development Drive Motor-K: 77 mm/s
5804 5	Drum Motor: M: Full Speed	Drum/Development Drive Motor-M: 154/205 mm/s
5804 6	Drum Motor: M: Middle Speed	Drum/Development Drive Motor-M: 115 mm/s
5804 7	Drum Motor: M: Low Speed	Drum/Development Drive Motor-M: 77 mm/s
5804 8	Drum Motor: C: Full Speed	Drum/Development Drive Motor-C: 154/205 mm/s
5804 9	Drum Motor: C: Middle Speed	Drum/Development Drive Motor-C: 115 mm/s
5804 10	Drum Motor: C: Low Speed	Drum/Development Drive Motor- C: 77 mm/s
5804 11	Drum Motor: Y: Full Speed	Drum/Development Drive Motor-Y: 154/205 mm/s

5804 12	Drum Motor: Y: Middle Speed	Drum/Development Drive Motor-Y: 115 mm/s
5804 13	Drum Motor: Y: Low Speed	Drum/Development Drive Motor-Y: 77 mm/s
5804 20	Toner Relay Motor	Toner Transport Motor
5804 21	IH Magnetic Field Switch Motor: Forward	Ferrite Roller Motor - Forward
5804 22	IH Magnetic Field Switch Motor: Reverse	Ferrite Roller Motor - Reverse
5804 23	Paper Transfer Motor	Paper Transfer Roller Contact Motor
5804 24	Image Transfer Motor: Full Speed	Image Transfer Belt Unit Drive Motor: 154/205 mm/s
5804 25	Image Transfer Motor: Medium Speed	Image Transfer Belt Unit Drive Motor: 115 mm/s
5804 26	Image Transfer Motor: Low Speed	Image Transfer Belt Unit Drive Motor: 77 mm/s
5804 27	Fusing Exit Motor: Full Speed	Fusing/Paper Exit Motor: 154/205 mm/s
5804 28	Fusing Exit Motor: Medium Speed	Fusing/Paper Exit Motor: 115 mm/s
5804 29	Fusing Exit Motor: Low Speed	Fusing/Paper Exit Motor: 77 mm/s
5804 30	Development Clutch: Bk	Development Clutch-K
5804 31	Development Clutch: M	Development Clutch-M
5804 32	Development Clutch: C	Development Clutch-C

5804 33	Development Clutch: Y	Development Clutch-Y
5804 36	Toner Supply Pump: Bk	Toner Supply Clutch: Bk
5804 37	Toner Supply Pump: M	Toner Supply Clutch: M
5804 38	Toner Supply Pump: C	Toner Supply Clutch: C
5804 39	Toner Supply Pump: Y	Toner Supply Clutch: Y
5804 40	Front Laser Optics Fan: High Speed	Ventilation Fan - Front
5804 42	Rear Laser Optics Fan: High Speed	Ventilation Fan - Rear
5804 44	Fusing Exhaust Fan: High Speed	Fusing Fan: High Speed
5804 45	Fusing Exhaust Fan: Low Speed	Fusing Fan: Low Speed
5804 46	Drive Unit Cooling Fan: High Speed	-
5804 47	Electrical Section Cooling Fan: High Speed	IH Inverter Fan
5804 54	PSU Fan1: High Speed	PSU Fan 1: High Speed
5804 56	Dust Shield Shutter Motor	Shutter Motor (Laser Optics Housing Unit)
5804 57	TM Sensor Shutter SOL	ID Sensor Shutter Solenoid
5804 58	TM Sensor LED Output: F	ID Sensor LED Output: Front

5804 59	TM Sensor LED Output: C	ID Sensor LED Output: Center
5804 60	TM Sensor LED Output: R	ID Sensor LED Output: Rear
5804 61	P Sensor LED Output: Bk	ID Sensor (mirror reflection) - K: LED Output
5804 62	P Sensor LED Output: M	ID Sensor (mirror reflection) - M: LED Output
5804 63	P Sensor LED Output: C	ID Sensor (mirror reflection) - C: LED Output
5804 64	P Sensor LED Output: Y	ID Sensor (mirror reflection) - Y: LED Output
5804 65	ST Sensor Output: Bk	ID Sensor (diffusion) - K: LED Output
5804 66	ST Sensor Output: M	ID Sensor (diffusion) - M: LED Output
5804 67	ST Sensor Output: C	ID Sensor (diffusion) - C: LED Output
5804 68	ST Sensor Output: Y	ID Sensor (diffusion) - Y: LED Output
5804 69	Toner End Sensor: Bk	Toner End Sensor - K
5804 70	Toner End Sensor: M	Toner End Sensor - M
5804 71	Toner End Sensor: C	Toner End Sensor - C
5804 72	Toner End Sensor: Y	Toner End Sensor - Y
5804 73	Separation Voltage	Discharge Plate Voltage
5804 74	Image Transfer Output: Bk	Image Transfer Belt Unit Bias Output: K

5804 75	Image Transfer Output: M	Image Transfer Belt Unit Bias Output: M
5804 76	Image Transfer Output: C	Image Transfer Belt Unit Bias Output: C
5804 77	Image Transfer Output: Y	Image Transfer Belt Unit Bias Output: Y
5804 78	Charge DC Output: Bk	Drum Charge DC Voltage Output: K
5804 79	Charge DC Output: M	Drum Charge DC Voltage Output: M
5804 80	Charge DC Output: C	Drum Charge DC Voltage Output: C
5804 81	Charge DC Output: Y	Drum Charge DC Voltage Output: Y
5804 82	Charge AC Output: Bk: Full Speed	Drum Charge AC Voltage Output: K: 154/205 mm/s
5804 83	Charge AC Output: Bk: Medium Speed	Drum Charge AC Voltage Output: K: 115 mm/s
5804 84	Charge AC Output: Bk: Low Speed	Drum Charge AC Voltage Output: K: 77 mm/s
5804 85	Charge AC Output: M: Full Speed	Drum Charge AC Voltage Output: M: 154/205 mm/s
5804 86	Charge AC Output: M: Medium Speed	Drum Charge AC Voltage Output: M: 115 mm/s
5804 87	Charge AC Output: M: Low Speed	Drum Charge AC Voltage Output: M: 77 mm/s
5804 88	Charge AC Output: C: Full Speed	Drum Charge AC Voltage Output: C: 154/205 mm/s
5804 89	Charge AC Output: C: Medium Speed	Drum Charge AC Voltage Output: C: 115 mm/s

5804 90	Charge AC Output: C: Low Speed	Drum Charge AC Voltage Output: C: 77 mm/s
5804 91	Charge AC Output: Y: Full Speed	Drum Charge AC Voltage Output: Y: 154/205 mm/s
5804 92	Charge AC Output: Y: Medium Speed	Drum Charge AC Voltage Output: Y: 115 mm/s
5804 93	Charge AC Output: Y: Low Speed	Drum Charge AC Voltage Output: Y: 77 mm/s
5804 94	Development Output: Bk	Development Bias Output: Bk
5804 95	Development Output: M	Development Bias Output: M
5804 96	Development Output: C	Development Bias Output: C
5804 97	Development Output: Y	Development Bias Output: Y
5804 98	Paper Transfer Output +	Paper Transfer Roller Output: Positive current
5804 99	Paper Transfer Output –	Paper Transfer Roller Output: Negative current
5804 100	PCL: Bk	Toner Supply Motor Clutch: K
5804 101	PCL: M	Toner Supply Motor Clutch: M
5804 102	PCL: C	Toner Supply Motor Clutch: C
5804 103	PCL: Y	Toner Supply Motor Clutch: Y
5804 104	Polygon Motor: LL	Polygon Motor: 77 mm/s
5804 105	Polygon Motor: L	Polygon Motor: 115 mm/s
5804 107	Polygon Motor: HH	Polygon Motor: 154/205 mm/s

5804 109	Feed Motor: 77mm/s	Paper Feed Motor: 77 mm/s
5804 110	Feed Motor: 115mm/s	Paper Feed Motor: 115 mm/s
5804 112	Feed Motor: 154mm/s	Paper Feed Motor: 154 mm/s
5804 114	Feed Motor: 205mm/s	Paper Feed Motor: 205 mm/s
5804 115	Feed Motor: 215mm/s	Paper Feed Motor: 215 mm/s
5804 117	Feed Motor: 265mm/s	Paper Feed Motor: 265 mm/s
5804 118	Feed CL1	Tray 1 Paper Feed Clutch
5804 119	Feed CL2	Tray 2 Paper Feed Clutch
5804 121	Pick-Up Solenoid 1	Pick-up Solenoid: Tray 1
5804 122	Pick-Up Solenoid 2	Pick-up Solenoid: Tray 2
5804 123	Regist Motor: 77mm/s	Registration Motor: 77 mm/s
5804 124	Regist Motor: 115mm/s	Registration Motor: 115 mm/s
5804 126	Regist Motor: 154/mm/s	Registration Motor: 154 mm/s
5804 127	Right Motor: 205mm/s	Right Motor 205 mm/s
5804 128	Tray Lock SOL	Tray Lock Solenoid
5804 129	Up Motor1: Up	Tray Lift Motor 1: Lift Up
5804 130	Up Motor1: Down	Tray Lift Motor 1: Lift Down
5804 131	Up Motor2: Up	Tray Lift Motor 2: Lift Up
5804 132	Up Motor2: Down	Tray Lift Motor 2: Lift Down
5804 133	Junction Gate Motor: Clockwise	Junction Gate 2 Motor: Clockwise

5804 134	Junction Gate Motor: Counterclockwise	Junction Gate 2 Motor: Counterclockwise
5804 135	Junction Gate SOL	DuplexInverter Solenoid
5804 136	By-pass Feed Clutch	By-pass Feed Clutch
5804 137	By-pass Pick-Up Solenoid	By-pass Pick-Up Solenoid
5804 138	Duplex Motor CW: 77mm/s	Duplex/By-pass Motor: CW 77 mm/s
5804 139	Duplex Motor CW: 115mm/s	Duplex/By-pass Motor: CW 115 mm/s
5804 140	Duplex Motor CW: 138mm/s	Duplex/By-pass Motor: CW 138 mm/s
5804 141	Duplex Motor CW: 205mm/s	Duplex/By-pass Motor: CW 205 mm/s
5804 143	Duplex Motor CCW: 77mm/s	Duplex/By-pass Motor: CCW 77 mm/s
5804 144	Duplex Motor CCW: 115mm/s	Duplex/By-pass Motor: CCW 115 mm/s
5804 146	Duplex Motor CCW: 154mm/s	Duplex/By-pass Motor: CCW 154 mm/s
5804 147	Duplex Motor CCW: 205mm/s	Duplex/By-pass Motor: CCW 205 mm/s
5804 149	Inverter Motor CW: 77mm/s	Duplex Inverter Motor: CW 77 mm/s
5804 151	Inverter Motor CCW: 77mm/s	Duplex Inverter Motor: CCW 77 mm/s

5804 153	Relay Motor: 77mm/s	Bridge Unit Transport Motor: 77 mm/s
5804 154	Relay Motor: 115mm/s	Bridge Unit Transport Motor: 115 mm/s
5804 156	Relay Motor: 154mm/s	Bridge Unit Transport Motor: 154 mm/s
5804 157	Relay Motor: 205mm/s	Bridge Unit Transport Motor: 205 mm/s
5804 158	Relay Junction gate Solenoid	Bridge Unit Junction Gate Solenoid
5804 159	Relay Cooling Fan: Strong	Not used
5804 160	Relay Cooling Fan: weak	Not used
5804 161	1 Bin Junction Gate Solenoid	Junction Gate Solenoid: Bridge Unit/ Junction Gate 1 Solenoid
5804 163	Bank Motor: 77mm/s	Paper Feed (Tray) Motor: 77 mm/s (Optional Paper Feed Unit or LCT)
5804 164	Bank Motor: 115mm/s	Paper Feed (Tray)Motor: 115 mm/s (Optional Paper Feed Unit or LCT)
5804 165	Bank Motor: 154mm/s	Paper Feed (Tray)Motor: 154 mm/s (Optional Paper Feed Unit or LCT)
5804 166	Bank Motor: 205mm/s	Paper Feed (Tray)Motor: 205 mm/s (Optional Paper Feed Unit or LCT)
5804 167	Bank Motor: 215mm/s	Paper Feed (Tray)Motor: 215 mm/s (Optional Paper Feed Unit or LCT)
5804 168	Bank Motor: 265mm/s	Paper Feed (Tray)Motor: 265 mm/s (Optional Paper Feed Unit or LCT)
5804 169	Bank Feed CL3	Paper Feed Clutch 3 (Optional Paper Feed Unit: Tray 3 or LCT)

5804 170	Bank Feed CL4	Paper Feed Clutch 4 (Optional Paper Feed Unit: Tray 4)
5804 171	Bank Pickup SOL3	Pickup Solenoid 3 (Optional Paper Feed Unit: Tray 3 or LCT)
5804 172	Bank Pickup SOL4	Pickup Solenoid 4 (Optional Paper Feed Unit: Tray 4)
5804 173	Bank Tray Lock SO	Tray Lock Solenoid for Tray 3 and Tray 4
5804 176	Toner Bottle Clutch: K	Toner Bottle Clutch - K
5804 177	Toner Bottle Clutch: M	Toner Bottle Clutch - M
5804 178	Toner Bottle Clutch: C	Toner Bottle Clutch - C
5804 179	Toner Bottle Clutch: Y	Toner Bottle Clutch - Y
5804 180	Bank Motor 2: 77mm/s	Paper Feed Motor 2: 77 mm/s (Optional Paper Feed Unit)
5804 181	Bank Motor 2: 115mm/s	Paper Feed Motor 2: 115 mm/s (Optional Paper Feed Unit)
5804 182	Bank Motor 2: 154mm/s	Paper Feed Motor 2: 154 mm/s (Optional Paper Feed Unit)
5804 183	Bank Motor 2: 205mm/s	Paper Feed Motor 2: 205 mm/s (Optional Paper Feed Unit)
5804 184	Bank Motor 2: 215mm/s	Paper Feed Motor 2: 215 mm/s (Optional Paper Feed Unit)
5804 185	Bank Motor 2: 265mm/s	Paper Feed Motor 2: 265 mm/s (Optional Paper Feed Unit)
5804 186	Bank Feed Clutch 5	-

5804 187	Bank Pick-Up Solenoid 5	-
5804 188	Bank Tray Lock Solenoid 2	-
5804 190	Relay Motor: Reset	Drive Motor (Bridge Unit): Reset
5804 191	Relay Motor: Enable	Drive Motor (Bridge Unit): Enable
5804 192	RFID ON/OFF:K	RFID ON/OFF - K
5804 193	RFID ON/OFF:M	RFID ON/OFF - M
5804 194	RFID ON/OFF:C	RFID ON/OFF - C
5804 195	RFID ON/OFF:Y	RFID ON/OFF - Y
5804 196	RFID COM ON:K	RFID Communication ON - K
5804 197	RFID COM ON:M	RFID Communication ON - M
5804 198	RFID COM ON:C	RFID Communication ON - C
5804 199	RFID COM ON:Y	RFID Communication ON - Y
5804 202	Scanner Lamp	Scanner Exposure Lamp
5804 208	Fusing Coil Fan	IH Coil Fan
5804 209	IH Power Fan	IH Inverter Fan
5804 210	Exit Fan: High Speed	Paper Exit Fan: High Speed
5804 211	Exit Fan: Low Speed	Paper Exit Fan: Low Speed
5804 212	Duct Fan 2: High Speed	Second Fan: High Speed
5804 213	Duct Fan 2: Low Speed	Second Fan: Low Speed
5804 214	Duct Fan 3: High Speed	Third Fan: High Speed

5804 215	Duct Fan 3: Low Speed	Third Fan: Low Speed
5804 216	LD1: K	LD1: K
5804 217	LD2: K	LD2: K
5804 218	LD1: M	LD1: M
5804 219	LD2: M	LD2: M
5804 220	LD1: C	LD1: C
5804 221	LD2: C	LD2: C
5804 222	LD1: Y	LD1: Y
5804 223	LD2: Y	LD2: Y
5804 224	Duplex Inverter Motor: CW: 205mm/s	Duplex Inverter Motor: CW 205 mm/s
5804 225	Duplex Inverter Motor: CW: 154mm/s	Duplex Inverter Motor: CW 154 mm/s
5804 226	Duplex Inverter Motor: CW: 115mm/s	Duplex Inverter Motor: CW 115 mm/s
5804 227	Duplex Inverter Motor: CCW: 205mm/s	Duplex Inverter Motor: CCW 205 mm/s
5804 228	Duplex Inverter Motor: CCW: 154mm/s	Duplex Inverter Motor: CCW 154 mm/s
5804 229	Duplex Inverter Motor: CCW: 115mm/s	Duplex Inverter Motor: CCW 115 mm/s

1000-Sheet Booklet Finisher (B793)

SP6-143-xxx are not used in this machine.

1000-Sheet Finisher (B408)

6144	Display	Description
6144 1	Relay Up Motor	Upper Transport Motor
6144 2	Relay Down Motor	Lower Transport Motor
6144 3	Exit Motor	-
6144 4	Proof Junction Gate SOL	Tray Junction Gate Solenoid
6144 5	Tray Up Motor	Lower Tray Lift Motor
6144 6	Jogger Motor	Jogger Fence Motor
6144 7	Staple Moving Motor	Stapler Motor
6144 8	Staple Motor	Stapler Hammer
6144 9	Staple Junction Gate SOL	Stapler Junction Gate Solenoid
6144 10	Positioning Roller Solenoid	Positioning Roller Solenoid
6144 11	Stack Feed-out Motor	-
6144 12	Shift Motor	-
6144 13	Exit Guide Plate Motor	-

2000/3000-Sheet (Booklet) Finisher

6145	Display	Description
6145 1	Entrance Motor	Finisher Entrance Motor
6145 2	Upper Feed Motor	Upper Transport Motor
6145 3	Lower Feed Motor	Lower Transport Motor
6145 4	Exit Motor	Upper/Proof Tray Exit Motor
6145 5	Knock Roller Motor	Clamp Roller Retraction Motor
6145 6	Shift Motor	Shift Roller Motor
6145 7	Exit Guide Plate Open/Close Motor	Exit Guide Plate Motor
6145 8	Tray Lift Motor	Upper Tray Lift Motor
6145 9	Oscillating Back Roller Motor	Stacking Sponge Roller Motor
6145 10	Jogger Motor	Jogger Fence Motor
6145 11	Stack Feed-out Motor	Feed Out Belt Motor
6145 12	Staple Moving Motor	Corner Stapler Movement Motor
6145 13	Staple Skew Motor	Corner Stapler Rotation Motor
6145 14	Staple Motor	Corner Stapler EH530
6145 15	Upper Junction Gate Solenoid	Proof Junction Gate Solenoid

6145 16	Lower Junction Gate Solenoid	Stapling Tray Junction Gate Solenoid
6145 17	Knock Solenoid	Stapling Edge Pressure Plate Solenoid
6145 18	Trailing Edge Hold Solenoid	Positioning Roller Solenoid
6145 19	Saddle Stitch Hold Solonoid	Booklet Pressure Roller Solenoid
6145 20	Stack Junction Gate Open/Close Motor	Stack Junction Gate Motor
6145 21	Trailing Edge Fence Moving Motor	Fold Unit Bottom Fence Lift Motor
6145 22	Saddle Stitch Staple Motor: Front	Booklet Stapler EH185R: Front
6145 23	Saddle Stitch Staple Motor: Rear	Booklet Stapler EH185R: Rear
6145 24	Folder Plate Motor	Fold Plate Motor
6145 25	Folder Roller Motor	Fold Roller Motor
6145 26	Drive Roller Oscillating Motor	Positioning Roller Motor
6145 27	Punch Motor	Punch Drive Motor
6145 28	Punch Moving Motor	Punch Movement Motor

6145 29	Punch Registration Detection Motor	Paper Position Sensor Slide Motor
6145 30	Exit Jogger Motor: Front	-
6145 31	Exit Jogger Motor: Rear	-
6145 32	Exit Jogger Release Motor	-

5.2.4 TEST PATTERN PRINTING

Printing Test pattern: SP2-109

Some of these test patterns are used for copy image adjustments but most are used primarily for design testing.

Note

- Do not operate the machine until the test pattern is printed out completely. Otherwise, an SC occurs.

1. Enter the SP mode and select **SP2-109-003**.
2. Enter the number for the test pattern that you want to print and press [#].
3. When you want to select the single color of Magenta, Yellow or Cyan for printing a test pattern, select the color with SP2-109-005 (2: Magenta, 3: Yellow, 4: Cyan).
4. When you want to change the density of printing a test pattern, select the density with SP2-109-006 to -009 for each color.

   Note

   - If you select "0" with SP2-109-006 to -009, the color to be adjusted to "0" does not come up on a test pattern.
5. When you are prompted to confirm your selection, touch "Yes" to select the test pattern for printing.
6. Touch "Copy Window" to open the copy window, then select the settings for the test print (paper size etc.).

Note

- If you want to use black and white printing, touch "Black & White" on the LCD. If you want to use color printing, touch "Full Colour" on the LCD.

7. Press the "Start" key to start the test print.
8. After checking the test pattern, touch "SP Mode" on the LCD to return to the SP mode display.
9. Reset all settings to the default values.
10. Touch "Exit" twice to exit SP mode.

No.	Pattern	No.	Pattern
0	None	12	2-dot pattern
1	1-dot line pattern (Vertical)	13	4-dot pattern
2	2-dot line pattern (Vertical)	14	1-dot trimming pattern
3	1-dot line pattern (Horizontal)	15	Cross stitch: sub-scan
4	2-dot line pattern (Horizontal)	16	Cross stitch: main-scan
5	1-dot grid pattern (Vertical)	17	Belt pattern (Horizontal)
6	1-dot grid pattern (Horizontal)	18	Belt pattern (Vertical)
7	1-dot grid pattern (Fine)	19	Checkered flag
8	1-dot grid pattern (Rough)	20	Gray scale (Vertical)
9	1-dot slant pattern (Fine)	21	Gray scale (Horizontal)
10	1-dot slant pattern (Rough)	22	Dual beam density pattern
11	1-dot pattern	23	Solid

5.3 PRINTER SERVICE MODE

5.3.1 SP1-XXX (SERVICE MODE)

1001	Bit Switch			
001	Bit Switch 1		0	1
	bit 0	DFU	-	-
	bit 1	DFU	-	-
	bit 2	DFU	-	-
	bit 3	**No I/O Timeout**	0: Disable	1: Enable
		Enable: The MFP I/O Timeout setting will have no effect. I/O Timeouts will never occur.		
	bit 4	**SD Card Save Mode**	0: Disable	1: Enable
		Enable: Print jobs will be saved to an SD Card in the GW SD slot (☛ "Card Save Function" in "System Maintenance Reference" section of the Field Service Manual).		
	bit 5	DFU	-	-
	bit 6	DFU	-	-
	bit 7	**[RPCS,PCL]: Printable area frame border**	0: Disable	1: Enable
		Enable: The machine prints all RPCS and PCL jobs with a border on the edges of the printable area.		

1001	Bit Switch			
002	Bit Switch 2		0	1
	bit 0	DFU	-	-
	bit 1	DFU	-	-

Service Tables

	bit 2	**Applying a collation Type**	Shift Collate	Normal Collate
		A collation type (shift or normal) will be applied to all jobs that do not already have a 'Collate Type' configured. Note ▪ If #5-0 is enabled, this Bit Switch has no effect.		
	bit 3	**[PCL5e/c,PS]: PDL Auto Switching**	0: Enable	1: Disable
		Disable: The MFPs ability to change the PDL processor mid-job. Some host systems submit jobs that contain both PS and PCL5e/c. If Auto PDL switching is disabled, these jobs will not be printed properly.		
	bit 4	DFU	-	-
	bit 5	DFU	-	-
	bit 6	DFU	-	-
	bit 7	DFU	-	-

1001	**Bit Switch**			
003	Bit Switch 3		0	1
	bit 0	DFU	-	-
	bit 1	DFU	-	-
	bit 2	**[PCL5e/c]: Legacy HP compatibility**	0: Disable	1: Enable
		Enable: Uses the same left margin as older HP models such as HP4000/HP8000. In other words, the left margin defined in the job (usually "<ESC>*r0A") will be changed to "<ESC>*r1A"		
	bit 3	DFU	-	-
	bit 4	DFU	-	-
	bit 5	DFU	-	-

	bit 6	DFU	-	-
	bit 7	DFU	-	-

1001	**Bit Switch**		
004	Bit Switch 4 **DFU**	-	-

1001	**Bit Switch**			
005	Bit Switch 5		0	1
	bit 0	**Show "Collate Type", "Staple Type" and "Punch Type" buttons on the operation panel.**	Disable	Enable
		If enabled, users will be able to configure a Collate Type, Staple Type, and Punch Type from the operation panel. The available types will depend on the device and configured options. After enabling the function, the settings will appear under: "User Tools > Printer Features > System"		
	bit 1	DFU	-	-
	bit 2	DFU	-	-
	bit 3	**[PS] PS Criteria**	Pattern3	Pattern1
		Change the number of PS criterion used by the PS interpreter to determine whether a job is PS data or not. Pattern3: includes most PS commands. Pattern1: A small number of PS tags and headers		
	bit 4	**Increase max number of the stored jobs to 1000 jobs.**	Disable (100)	Enable (1000)
		Enable: Changes the maximum number of jobs that can be stored on the HDD via Job Type settings to 1000. The default is 100.		
	bit 5	DFU	-	-

	bit 6	DFU	-	-
	bit 7	DFU	-	-
1001	**Bit Switch**			
006	Bit Switch 6 **DFU**		-	-
1001	**Bit Switch**			
007	Bit Switch 7 **DFU**		-	-
1001	**Bit Switch**			
008	Bit Switch 8		0	1
	bit 0	DFU	-	-
	bit 1	DFU	-	-
	bit 2	DFU	-	-
	bit 3	**[PCL,PS]: Allow BW jobs to print without requiring User Code**	Disable	Enable
		Enable: BW jobs submitted without a user code will be printed even if usercode authentication is enabled. Note ▪ Color jobs will not be printed without a valid user code.		
	bit 4	DFU	-	-
	bit 5	DFU	-	-
	bit 6	[PS]: Orientation Auto Detect Fuction	Disable	Enable
		Automatically chooses page orientations of PostScript jobs (Landscape or Portrait) based on the content. Note Applied to PS firmware ver 1.01		
	bit 7	DFU	-	-

1003	[Clear Setting]		
1003 1	Initialize Printer System		
	Initializes settings in the “System” menu of the user mode.		
1003 3	Delete Program		

1004	[Print Summary]		
1004 1	Print Summary		
	Prints the service summary sheet (a summary of all the controller settings).		
1005	[Display Version]		
1005 1	Disp. Version		
	Displays the version of the controller firmware.		
1006	[Sample/Locked Print]	*CTL	**0**: Linked, 1: On
1006 1	Enables and disables the document server. When you select “0,” the document server is enabled or disabled in accordance with Copy Service Mode SP5-967. When you select “1,” the document server is enabled regardless of Copy Service Mode SP5-967.		
1101	[Data Recall]		
	Recalls a set of gamma settings. This can be either a) the factory setting, b) the previous setting, or c) the current setting.		
1101 1	Factory	*CTL	
1101 2	Previous		
1101 3	Current		
1101 4	ACC		

1102	[Resolution Setting]
	Selects the printing mode (resolution) for the printer gamma adjustment.
1102 1	**2400x600 Photo**, 1800x600 Photo, 600 x 600 Photo, 2400x600 Text, 1800x600, Text, 600x600 Text

1103	[Test Page]
	Prints the test page to check the color balance before and after the gamma adjustment.
1103 1	Color Gray Scale
1103 2	Color Pattern

1104	[Gamma Adjustment]		
	Adjusts the printer gamma for the mode selected in the “Mode Selection” menu.		
1104 1	Black: Highlight	*CTL	[0 to 30 / **15** / 1/step]
1104 2	Black: Shadow		
1104 3	Black: Middle		
1104 4	Black: IDmax		
1104 21	Cyan: Highlight		
1104 22	Cyan: Shadow		
1104 23	Cyan: Middle		
1104 24	Cyan: IDmax		
1104 41	Magenta: Highlight		
1104 42	Magenta: Shadow		

1104 43	Magenta: Middle		
1104 44	Magenta: IDmax		
1104 61	Yellow: Highlight		
1104 62	Yellow: Shadow		
1104 63	Yellow: Middle		
1104 64	Yellow: IDmax		

1105	[Save Tone Control Value]		
	Stores the print gamma adjusted with the “Gamma Adj.” menu item as the current setting. Before the machine stores the new “current setting", it moves the data currently stored as the “current setting” to the “previous setting” memory storage location.		
1105 1	Save Tone Control Value		

1106	[Toner Limit]		
	Adjusts the maximum toner amount for image development.		
1106 1	Toner Limit Value	*CTL	[100 to 400 / **260** / 1 %/step]

5.4 SCANNER SP MODE

5.4.1 SP1-XXX (SYSTEM AND OTHERS)

1004	**[Compression Type]**		
	Selects the compression type for binary picture processing.		
1004 1	Compression Type	*CTL	[1 to 3 / **1** / 1/step] 1: MH, 2: MR, 3: MMR

1005	**[Erase margin]**		
	Creates an erase margin for all edges of the scanned image. If the machine has scanned the edge of the original, create a margin. This SP is activated only when the machine uses TWAIN scanning.		
1005 1	Range from 0 to 5 mm	*CTL	[0 to 5 / **0** / 1 mm/step]

1009	**[Remote scan disable]**	*CTL	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: enable, 1: disable
1009 1	Enable or disable remote scan.		

1010	**[Non Display Clear Light PDF]**	*CTL	[0 or 1 / **0** / -] 0: Display, 1: No display
1010 1	Enable or disable remote scan.		

5.4.2 SP2-XXX (SCANNING-IMAGE QUALITY)

2021	**[Compression Level (Gray-scale)]**		
	Selects the compression ratio for grayscale processing mode (JPEG) for the three settings that can be selected at the operation panel.		
2021 1	Level 3 (Middle Image Quality)	*CTL	[5 to 95 / **40** / 1 /step]
2021 2	Level 2 (High Image Quality)		[5 to 95 / **50** / 1 /step]
2021 3	Level 4 (Low Image Quality)		[5 to 95 / **30** / 1 /step]
2021 4	Level 1 (Highest Image Quality)		[5 to 95 / **60** / 1 /step]
2021 5	Level 5 (Lowest Image Quality)		[5 to 95 / **20** / 1 /step]

2024	**[Compression ratio of ClearLight PDF]**

	Selects the compression ratio for clearlight PDF for the two settings that can be selected at the operation panel.		
2024 1	Compression Ratio (Normal image)	*CTL	[5 to 95 / **25** / 1 /step]
2024 2	Compression Ratio (High comp image)		[5 to 95 / **20** / 1 /step]

5.5 REBOOT/SYSTEM SETTING RESET

5.5.1 SOFTWARE RESET

You can reboot the software with one of the following two procedures:

1. Turn the main power switch off and on.
2. Press and hold down together for over 10 seconds. When the machine beeps once, release both buttons. After “Now loading. Please wait” shows for a few seconds, the copy window will open. The machine is ready for normal operation.

5.5.2 SYSTEM SETTINGS AND COPY SETTING RESET

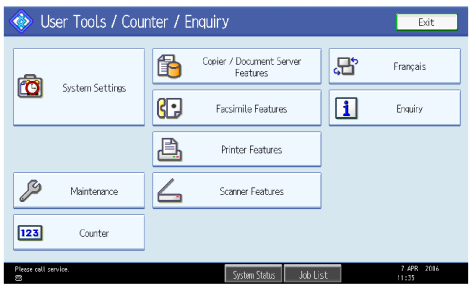
System Setting Reset

The system settings in the UP mode can be reset to their defaults. Use the following procedure.

1. Press User Tools/Counter .
2. Hold down and then press System Settings.

Note

- You must press first.



3. Press yes when the message prompts you to confirm that you want to reset the system settings.
4. Press exit when the message tells you that the settings have been reset.

Service Tables

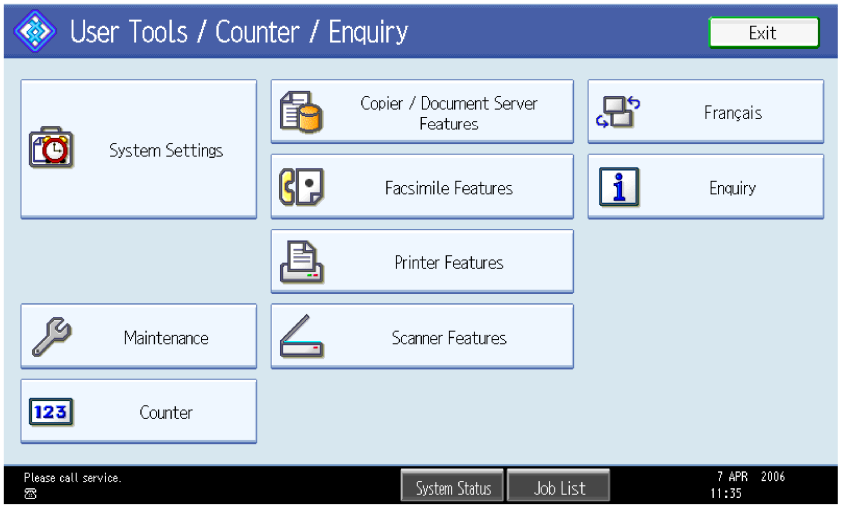
Copier Setting Reset

Use the following procedure to reset the copy settings in the UP mode to their defaults.

1. Press User Tools/Counter .
2. Hold down and then press Copier/Document Server Settings.

Note

- You must press first.



3. Press “Yes” when the message prompts you to confirm that you want to reset the Copier Document Server settings.
4. Press exit when the message tells you that the settings have been reset.

5.6 FIRMWARE UPDATE

To update the firmware for this machine, you must have the new version of the firmware downloaded onto an SD (Secure Digital) Card. The SD Card is inserted into SD Card Slot 3 on the right side of the controller box.

5.6.1 TYPE OF FIRMWARE

There are 19 types of firmware as shown below.

Type of firmware	Function	Location of firmware	Message shown
Engine	Printer engine control	BCU Flash ROM	Engine
System/Copy	Operating system	Flash ROM on the	System/Copy

Application		controller board	
Netfile Application	Feature application	Printer/scanner SD card	NetworkDocBox
Printer Application	Feature application	Printer/scanner SD card	SD Printer
Scanner Application	Feature application	Printer/scanner SD card	SD Scanner
Fax Application	Feature application	Flash ROM on the controller board	Fax
NIB	Network Interface	Flash ROM on the controller board	Network
Operation Panel	Panel control	Operation Panel	OpePanel.
Jam Animation	Jam animation	Flash ROM on the controller board	Animation
Fax FCU	Fax control	FCU	GWFCU 3-3
Remote Fax	Fax control	Printer/scanner SD card	Fax (option)
Language (16 languages)	Language firmware Two languages can be selected from 16 languages.	Operation Panel	LANG
WebDocBox	Document server application	Printer/scanner SD card	Web Uapl
WebSys	Web Service application	Printer/scanner SD card	Web Support
PS3	Page description language (PostScript3)	PS3 SD card	Option PS3
PictBridge	PictBridge control	PictBridge SD	Option PctBrgd

		card	
DESS	Security control	Flash ROM on the controller board	Security Module
ARDF	ARDF control	ARDF	ADF
Finisher (B804/805 only)	Finisher control	Finisher (B793 only)	Finisher

5.6.2 BEFORE YOU BEGIN

An SD card is a precision device. Always observe the following precautions when you handle SD cards:

- Always switch the machine off before you insert an SD card. Never insert the SD card into the slot with the power on.
- Do not remove the SD card from the service slot after the power has been switched on.
- Never switch the machine off while the firmware is downloading from the SD card.
- Keep SD cards in a safe location where they are not exposed to high temperature, high humidity, or exposure to direct sunlight.
- Always handle SD cards with care. Do not bend or scratch them. Do not let the SD card get exposed to shock or vibration.
- Make sure that the write protection of an SD card is unlocked when you download an application to it. If not, downloading fails and a download error (e.g. Error Code 44) occurs during a firmware upgrade.

Keep the following points in mind when you use the firmware update software:

- “Upload” means to send data from the machine to the SD card. “Download” means to send data from the SD card to the machine.
- To select an item on the LCD, touch the appropriate button on the soft touch-screen of the LCD, or, press the appropriate number key on the 10-key pad of the operation panel. For example, when “Exit (0)” shows on the screen you can touch the Exit button on the screen, or, press the ⓪ button on the operation panel of the copier.
- Make sure that the machine is disconnected from the network to prevent a print job for arriving while the firmware update is in progress before you start the firmware update procedure.

5.6.3 UPDATING FIRMWARE

Preparation

1. If the SD card is blank, copy the entire “romdata” folder onto the SD card.
2. If the card already contains the “romdata” folder, copy the “B221” folder onto the card.

If the card already contains folders up to “B221”, copy the necessary firmware files (e.g. B221xxxx.fwu) into this folder.

Note

- Do not put multiple machine firmware programs on the same SD card. Copy the only model firmware you want.

1. **Turn the main power switch off.**
2. **Remove the slot cover (x 1).**
3. **Insert the SD card into SD Card Slot 3. Make sure the label on the SD card faces the rear side of the machine.**
4. **Slowly push the SD card into the slot so it locks in place. You will hear it click. Make sure the SD card locks in place.**

Note

- To remove the SD, push it in to unlock the spring lock. Then release it so it pops out of the slot.

5. **Disconnect the network cable from the copier if the machine is connected to a network.**
6. **Open The Front Cover (See Note)**
7. **Switch the main power switch on. After about 45 seconds, the initial version update screen appears on the LCD in English.**

Note

- If the front cover is not open, the firmware update may not complete correctly

8. **On the screen, touch the button or press the corresponding number key on the operation panel to select the item in the menu that you want to update.**

ROM/NEW	What it means
ROM:	Tells you the number of the module and name of the version currently installed. The first line is the module number, the second line the version name.
NEW:	Tells you the number of the module and name version on the SD card.

Service Tables

	The first line is the module number, the second line the version name.

Note

- Controller, engine and operation panel firmware cannot be updated at the same time. It is recommended to update firmware modules one by one.

9. **Touch "UpDate (#)" (or ⓗ) to start the update.**

Note

- The progress bar does not show for the operation panel firmware after you touch "OpPanel". The power on key flashes on and off at 0.5 s intervals when the LCDC firmware is updating. The power key flashes on and off at 3 s intervals when the update is finished.

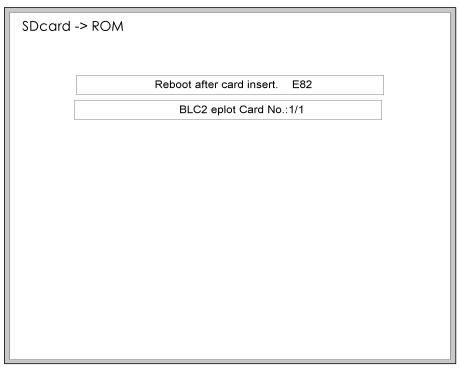
10. **The "Update is Done" message appears on the operation panel after completing the updating. The message differs depending on the firmware that has been updated.**
11. **Switch the copier main power switch off when you see the "Update is Done" message or follow the procedure that is displayed on the operation panel.**
12. **Press in the SD card to release it. Then remove it from the slot.**
13. **Switch the copier on for normal operation.**

Error Messages

An error message shows in the first line if an error occurs during the download. The error code consists of the letter "E" and a number. The example above shows error "E24" displayed. For details, refer to the Error Message Table. (☛ 5.6.9 "Handling Firmware Update Errors")

Firmware Update Error

If a firmware update error occurs, this means the update was cancelled during the update because the module selected for update was not on the SD card.



Recovery after Power Loss

If the ROM update is interrupted as a result of accidental loss of power while the firmware is updating, then the correct operation of the machine cannot be guaranteed after the machine is switched on again. If the ROM update does not complete successfully for any reason, then in order to ensure the correct operation of the machine, the ROM update error will continue to show until the ROM is updated successfully.

In this case, insert the card again and switch on the machine to continue the firmware download automatically from the card without the menu display.

5.6.4 UPDATING THE LCDC FOR THE OPERATION PANEL

Do the following procedure to update the LCDC (LCD Control Board).

1. **Turn the copier main switch off.**
2. **Remove the SD slot cover (🔧 x 1).**
3. **Insert the SD card into SD Card Slot 3.**
4. **Switch the copier main switch on.**
5. **The initial screen opens in English after about 45 seconds.**
6. **Touch "Ope Panel.xx".**
7. **"xx" differs depending on the destination.**
8. **Touch "UpDate(#) or (#) to start the update.**
9. **Downloading starts after about 9 seconds.**
10. **The operation panel goes off and the main power on key flashes in red at 0.5 s intervals when the data is downloading. The same key starts flashing in green at 1 s intervals when the update is finished.**
11. **Switch the copier main power switch off and remove the SD card. Then switch the copier on.**

5.6.5 DOWNLOADING STAMP DATA

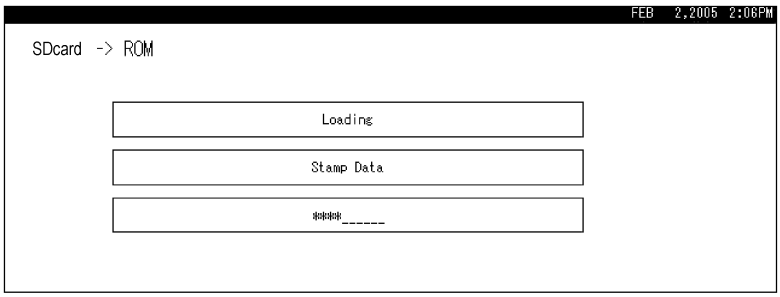
The stamp data should be downloaded from the controller firmware to the hard disks at the following times:

- After the hard disks have been replaced.

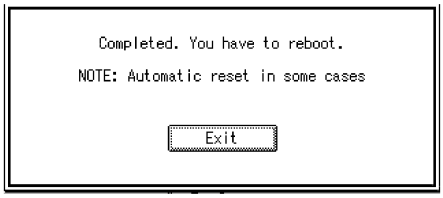
The print data contains the controller software. Execute SP 5853 to download the fixed stamp data required by the hard disks.

1. **Enter the SP mode.**
2. **Select SP5853 and then press "EXECUTE". The following screen opens while**

the stamp data is downloading.



The download is finished when the message prompts you to close.



3. **Press the "Exit" button. Then turn the copier off and on again.**

5.6.6 NVRAM DATA UPLOAD/DOWNLOAD

Uploading Content of NVRAM to an SD card

Do the following procedure to upload SP code settings from NVRAM to an SD card.

Note

- This data should always be uploaded to an SD card before the NVRAM is replaced.
- Make sure that the write protection of an SD card is unlocked

1. **Do SP5990-001 (SMC Print) before you switch the machine off. You will need a record of the NVRAM settings if the upload fails.**
2. **Switch the copier main power switch off.**
3. **Remove the SD slot cover (🔧 x 1).**
4. **Insert the SD card into SD card slot 3. Then switch the copier on.**
5. **Execute SP5824-001 (NVRAM Data Upload) and then press the "Execute" key.**
6. **The following files are coped to an NVRAM folder on the SD card when the upload procedure is finished. The file is saved to the path and the following filename:**

NVRAM¥<serial number>.NV

Here is an example with Serial Number “K5000017114”:

NVRAM¥K5000017114.NV

7. **In order to prevent an error during the download, be sure to mark the SD card that holds the uploaded data with the number of the machine from which the data was uploaded.**

Note

- You can upload NVRAM data from more than one machine to the same SD card.

Downloading an SD Card to NVRAM

Do the following procedure to download SP data from an SD card to the NVRAM in the machine.

- The NVRAM data down load may fail if the SD card with the NVRAM data is damaged, or if the connection between the controller and BCU is defective.
- Do the download procedure again if the download fails.
- Do the following procedure if the second attempt fails:
- Enter the NVRAM data manually using the SMC print you created before uploading the NVRAM data.

1. **Switch the copier main power switch off.**
2. **Remove the SD slot cover (🔧 x 1).**
3. **Insert the SD card with the NVRAM data into SD Card Slot 3.**
4. **Switch the copier main power switch on.**
5. **Do SP5825-001 (NVRAM Data Download) and press the “Execute” key.**

Note

- The serial number of the file on the SD card must match the serial number of the machine for the NVRAM data to download successfully. The download fails if the serial numbers do not match.

This procedure does not download the following data to the NVRAM:

- Total Count
- C/O, P/O Count

5.6.7 ADDRESS BOOK UPLOAD/DOWNLOAD

Information List

The following information is possible to be uploaded and downloaded.

Information	
▪ Registration No. ▪ User Code ▪ E-mail ▪ Protection Code ▪ Fax Destination ▪ Fax Option ▪ Group Name ▪ Key Display	▪ Select Title ▪ Folder ▪ Local Authentication ▪ Folder Authentication ▪ Account ACL ▪ New Document Initial ACL ▪ LDAP Authentication

Download

1. **Prepare a formatted SD card.**
2. **Make sure that the write-protection on the SD card is off.**
3. **Turn off the main power switch of the main machine.**
4. **Remove the SD slot cover at the left rear side of the machine (🔧 x 1).**
5. **Install the SD card into the SD card slot 3 (for service use).**
6. **Turn on the main power switch.**
7. **Enter the SP mode.**
8. **Do SP5-846-051 (Backup All Addr Book).**
9. **Exit the SP mode, and then turn off the main power switch.**
10. **Remove the SD card form the SD card slot 3.**
11. **Install the SD slot cover.**

Note

- If the capacity of SD card is not enough to store the local user information, an error message is displayed.
- Carefully handle the SD card, which contains user information. Do not take it back to your location.

Upload

1. **Turn off the main power switch of the main machine.**
2. **Remove the SD slot cover at the left rear side of the machine (🔧 x 1).**
3. **Install the SD card, which has already been uploaded, into the SD card slot 3.**
4. **Turn on the main power switch.**
5. **Enter the SP mode.**
6. **Do SP5-846-052 (Restore All Addr Book).**
7. **Exit the SP mode, and then turn off the main power switch.**
8. **Remove the SD card form the SD card slot 3.**
9. **Install the SD slot cover.**

Note

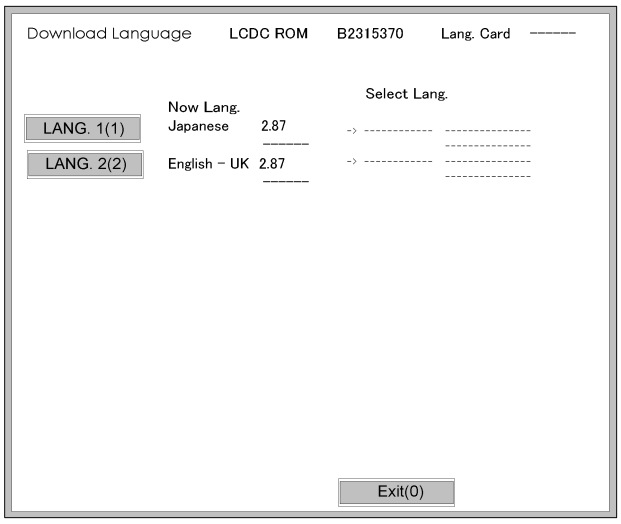
- The counter in the user code information is initialized after uploading.
- The information of an administrator and supervisor cannot be downloaded nor uploaded.
- If there is no data of address book information in the SD card, an error message is displayed.

5.6.8 INSTALLING ANOTHER LANGUAGE

Many languages are available. But you can only switch between two languages at a time. Do the following procedure to select the two languages you want. You can select both of the languages you want from the user interface on the operation panel.

1. **Switch the copier main power switch off.**
2. **Remove the SD slot cover (🔧 x 1).**
3. **Insert the SD card with the language data into SD Card Slot 3.**
4. **Switch the copier main power switch on. The initial screen opens after about 45 seconds.**
5. **Touch “Language Data (2)” on the screen (or press ②).**

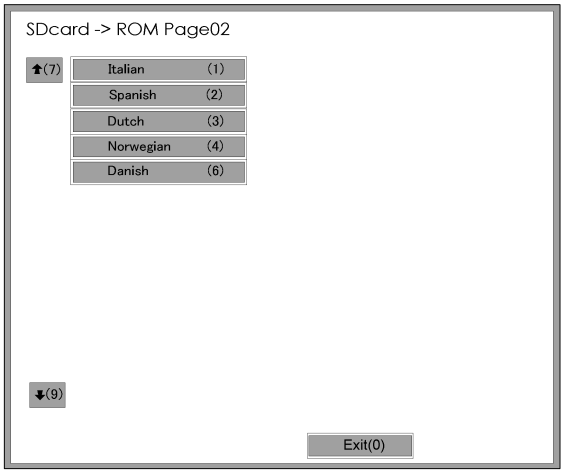
Service Tables



6. Touch “LANG. 1(1)” or “LANG. 2(2)"

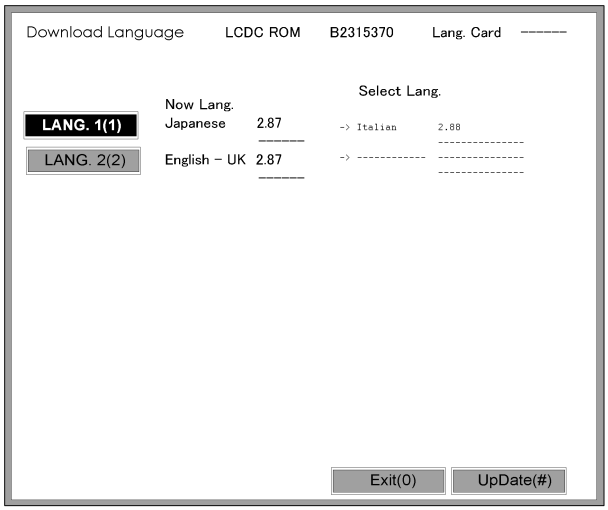
Key	What it does
LANG. 1(1)	Touch this button on the screen (or press ① on the 10-key pad) to open the next screen so you can select the 1st language.
LANG. 1(2)	Touch this button on the screen (or press ② on the 10-key pad) to open the next screen so you can select the 2nd language.
Exit(0)	Touch this key on the screen (or press ⓪ on the 10-key pad) to quit the update procedure and return to normal screen.

7. Touch “LANG 1(1)” to select the 1st Language. Touch “LANG (2)” to select the 2nd Language.



8. **Touch the appropriate button on the screen (or press the number on the 10-keypad) to select a language as the 1st (or 2nd) language.**
   If a language is already selected, it will show in reverse.
   Touching “Exit (0)” returns you to the previous screen.
9. **If you do not see the language that you want to select, touch “↑(7)” or “↓(9)” on the screen (or press ⑦ or ⑨) to show more choices.**
   The Download Screen opens after you select a language.
   The 1st or 2nd language selected for updating shows.
   1. The following show to right of the selection:
   2. The first column shows the language currently selected

   The 2nd column shows the language selected to replace that language.
   The example below shows that the download will replace “Japanese” with “Italian” as the 1st language.



10. **Touch “Update(#)” on the screen (or press ⑭) to start the download.**
    Another screen with a progress bar does not show when the language is downloading.
    The following occur at the time the language is downloading:
    - The operation panel switches off.
    - The LED on the power on key flashes rapidly.
11. **After the message of installation completed has shown on the LCD, switch the copier main power switch off. Then remove the SD card from the slot.**
12. **Switch the copier main power switch on to resume normal operation.**

5.6.9 HANDLING FIRMWARE UPDATE ERRORS

An error message shows in the first line if an error occurs during a download. The error code consists of the letter “E” and a number (“E20”, for example).

Error Message Table

Code	Meaning	Solution
20	Cannot map logical address	Make sure the SD card is inserted correctly.
21	Cannot access memory	HDD connection incorrect or replace hard disks.
22	Cannot decompress compressed data	Incorrect ROM data on the SD card, or data is corrupted.
23	Error occurred when ROM update program started	Controller program abnormal. If the second attempt fails, replace controller board.
24	SD card access error	Make sure SD card inserted correctly, or use another SD card.
30	No HDD available for stamp data download	HDD connection incorrect or replace hard disks.
31	Data incorrect for continuous download	Insert the SD card with the remaining data required for the download, the re-start the procedure.
32	Data incorrect after download interrupted	Execute the recovery procedure for the intended module download, then repeat the installation procedure.
33	Incorrect SD card version	Incorrect ROM data on the SD card, or data is corrupted.
34	Module mismatch - Correct module is not on the SD	SD update data is incorrect. Acquire the correct data (Japan, Overseas, OEM, etc.) then install

	card)	again.
35	Module mismatch – Module on SD card is not for this machine	SD update data is incorrect. The data on the SD card is for another machine. Acquire correct update data then install again.
36	Cannot write module – Cause other than E34, E35	SD update data is incorrect. The data on the SD card is for another machine. Acquire correct update data then install again.
40	Engine module download failed	Replace the update data for the module on the SD card and try again, or replace the BCU board.
42	Operation panel module download failed	Replace the update data for the module on the SD card and try again, or replace the LCDC.
43	Stamp data module download failed	Replace the update data for the module on the SD card and try again, or replace the hard disks.
44	Controller module download failed	Replace the update data for the module on the SD card and tray again, or replace controller board.
50	Electronic confirmation check failed	SD update data is incorrect. The data on the SD card is for another machine. Acquire correct update data then install again.

5.7 SD CARD APPLI MOVE

5.7.1 OVERVIEW

The service program “SD Card Appli Move” (SP5-873) lets you to copy application programs from one SD card to another SD card.

Slot 1 and Slot 2 are used to store application programs. But there are 3 possible applications (PostScript 3, DOS unit, PictBridge). You cannot run application programs from Slot 3. However you can move application programs from Slot 3 to either Slot 1 or Slot

2 with the following procedure (if there are cards in slots 1 and 2, Slot 1 will be used).

For this model, the printer/scanner card in slot 1 has enough space for the PictBridge and the DOS applications. Use the card that is already in slot 1 (printer/scanner card). Do not remove the printer/scanner card from slot 1.

The procedures in this section will assume that you use slot 1.

If you want to use slot 2, you must first turn the machine power off, remove the SD card from slot 1, and turn the power on again. You can then do the following procedure, and the application will go to the card in slot 2.

1. Choose a SD card with enough space.
2. Enter SP5873 “SD Card Appli Move”. Then move the application from the SD Card in Slot 3 to the Slot you want.

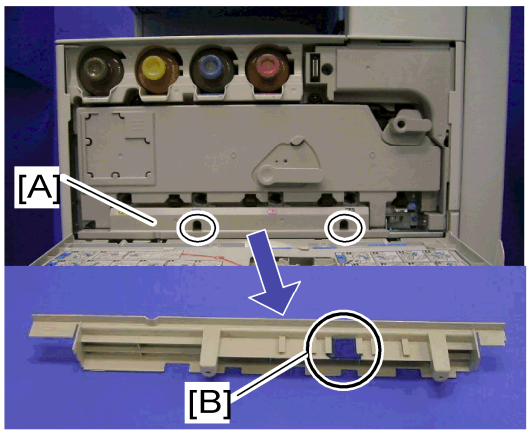
Note

- If you move the application to slot 1, use the card that is already in slot 1 (printer/scanner card). Do not remove the printer/scanner card from slot 1.
- Do steps 1-2 again if you want to move another application program.

3. Exit the SP mode

Use caution when you do the SD Card Appli Move procedure:

1. **The data necessary for authentication is transferred with the application program from an SD card to another SD card. Authentication fails if you try to use the SD card after you copy the application program from one card to another card.**
2. **Do not use the SD card if it has been used by the user on the computer. Normal operation is not guaranteed when such an SD card is used.**



3. **Remove the cover [A] (x 2).**
4. **Keep the SD card in the place [B] after you copy the application program from one card to another card. This is done for the following reasons:**

1. The SD card can be the only proof that the user is licensed to use the application program.
2. You may need to check the SD card and its data to solve a problem in the future.

5. **You cannot copy PostScript data to another SD card. You have to copy other data to the same SD card that stores PostScript data.**

5.7.2 MOVE EXEC

The menu “Move Exec” (SP5-873-001) lets you copy application programs from the original SD card to another SD card.

Important

- Do not turn ON the write protect switch of the system SD card or application SD card on the machine. If the write protect switch is ON, a download error (e.g. Error Code 44) occurs during a firmware upgrade or application merge.

1. **Turn the main switch off.**
2. **Make sure that an SD card is in SD Card Slot 1. The application program is copied into this SD card.**
3. **Insert the SD card (having stored the application program) to SD Card Slot 3. The application program is copied from this SD card.**
4. **Turn the main switch on.**
5. **Start the SP mode.**
6. **Select SP5-873-001 “Move Exec.”**
7. **Follow the messages shown on the operation panel.**
8. **Turn the main switch off.**
9. **Remove the SD card from SD Card Slot 3.**
10. **Turn the main switch on.**
11. **Check that the application programs run normally.**

5.7.3 UNDO EXEC

The menu “Undo Exec” (SP5-873-002) lets you copy back application programs from an SD card to the original SD card. You can use this program when, for example, you have mistakenly copied some programs by using Move Exec (SP5-873-001).

Important

- Do not turn ON the write protect switch of the system SD card or application SD card on the machine. If the write protect switch is ON, a download error (e.g. Error Code 44) occurs during a firmware upgrade or application merge.

1. **Turn the main switch off.**
2. **Insert the original SD card in SD Card Slot 3. The application program is copied back into this card.**
3. **Insert the SD card (having stored the application program) to SD Card Slot 1. The application program is copied back from this SD card.**
4. **Turn the main switch on.**
5. **Start the SP mode.**
6. **Select SP5-873-002 “Undo Exec.”**
7. **Follow the messages shown on the operation panel.**
8. **Turn the main switch off.**
9. **Remove the SD card from SD Card Slot 3.**

   Note

   - This step assumes that the application programs in the SD card are used by the machine.
10. **Turn the main switch on.**
11. **Check that the application programs run normally.**

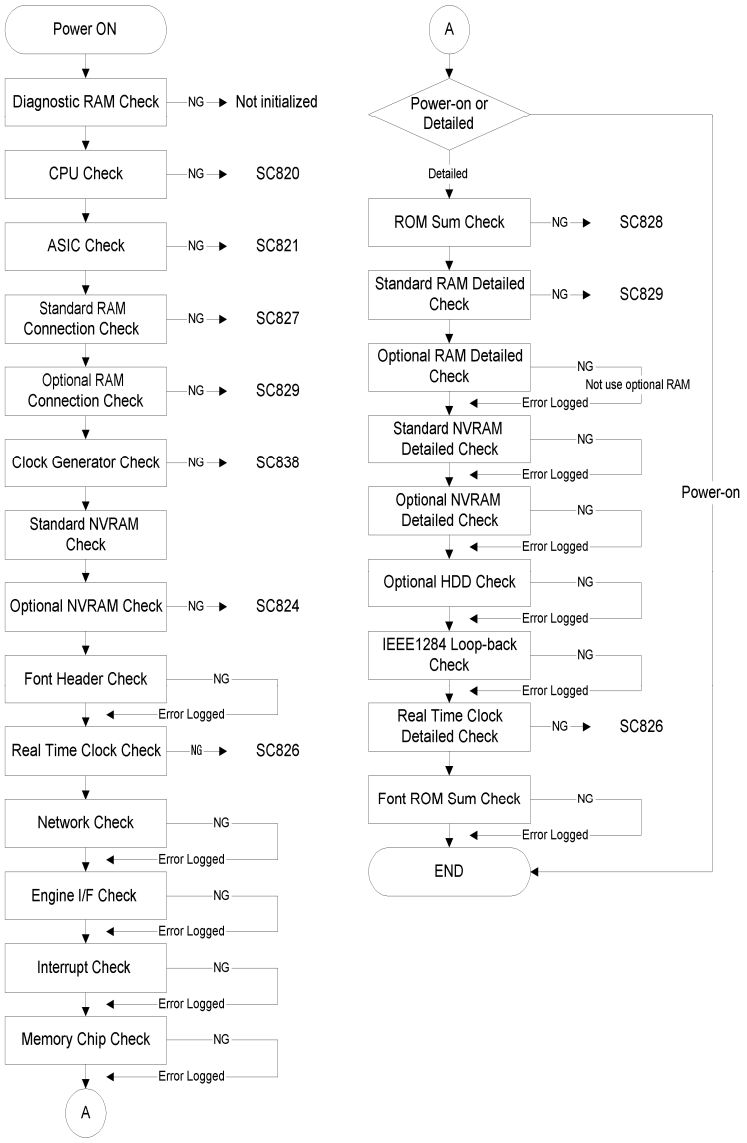
5.8 CONTROLLER SELF-DIAGNOSTICS

5.8.1 OVERVIEW

There are three types of self-diagnostics for the controller.

1. Power-on self-diagnostics: The machine automatically starts the self-diagnostics just after the power has been turned on.
2. SC detection: The machine automatically detects SC conditions at power-on or during operation.

The following shows the workflow of the power-on and detailed self-diagnostics.



5.9 USING THE DEBUG LOG

This machine provides a Save Debug Log feature that allows the Customer Engineer to save and retrieve error information for analysis.

Every time an error occurs, debug information is recorded in volatile memory. But this information is lost when the machine is switched off and on.

To capture this debug information, the Save Debug Log feature provides two main features:

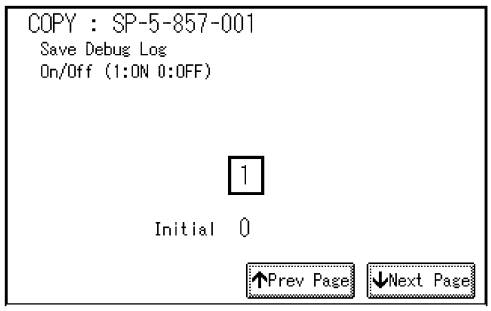
- Switching on the debug feature so error information is saved directly to the HDD for later retrieval.
- Copying the error information from the HDD to an SD card.

Do the following procedure below to set up the machine so the error information is saved automatically to the HDD when a user has problems with the machine. Then ask the user to reproduce the problem.

5.9.1 SWITCHING ON AND SETTING UP SAVE DEBUG LOG

The debug information cannot be saved until the “Save Debug Log” function has been switched on and a target has been selected.

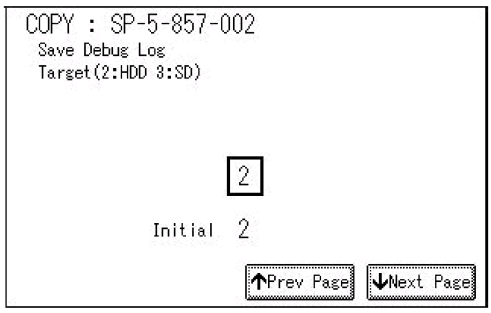
1. **Enter the SP mode and switch the Save Debug Log feature on.**
   - Press then use the 10-key pad to enter 107.
   - Press and hold down for more than 3 seconds.
   - Touch “Copy SP”.
   - On the LCD panel, open SP5857.
2. **Under “5857 Save Debug Log”, touch “1 On/Off”.**



3. **On the control panel keypad, press “1”. Then press . This switches the Save Debug Log feature on.**

Note

- The default setting is “0” (OFF). This feature must be switched on in order for the debug information to be saved.



4. **Select the target destination where the debug information will be saved. Under "5857 Save Debug Log", touch "2 Target", enter "2" with the operation panel key to select the hard disk as the target destination. Then press #.**

Note

- Select "3 SD Card" to save the debug information directly to the SD card if it is inserted in the service slot.

5. **Now touch "5858" and specify the events that you want to record in the debug log. SP5858 (Debug Save When) provides the following items for selection.**

1	Engine SC Error	Saves data when an engine-related SC code is generated.
2	Controller SC Error	Saves debug data when a controller-related SC Code is generated.
3	Any SC Error	Saves data only for the SC code that you specify by entering code number.
4	Jam	Saves data for jams.

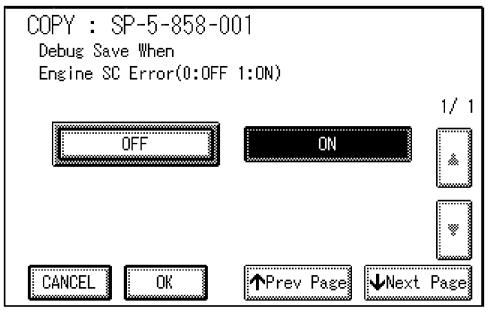
Note

- More than one event can be selected.

Example 1: To Select Items 1, 2, 4

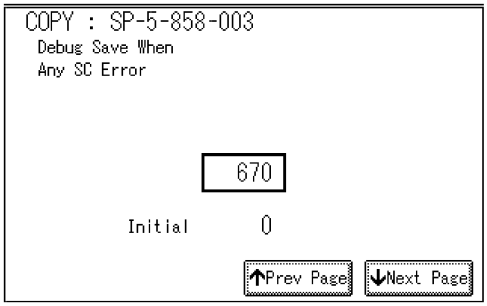
Touch the appropriate items(s). Press "ON" for each selection. This example shows "Engine SC Error" selected.

Service Tables



Example 2: To Specify an SC Code

Touch “3 Any SC Error”, enter the 3-digit SC code number with the control panel number keys. Then press #. This example shows an entry for SC670.



Note

- For details about SC code numbers, please refer to the SC tables in Section 4. “Troubleshooting”.

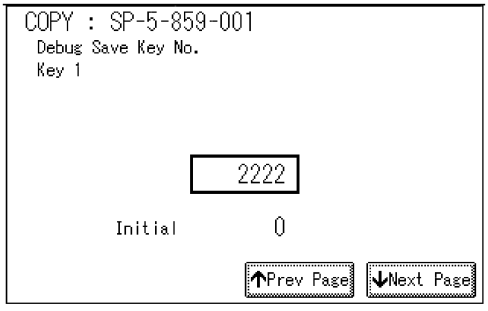
6. **Select one or more memory modules for reading and recording debug information. Touch “5859”.**

Under “5859” press the necessary key item for the module that you want to record. Enter the appropriate 4-digit number. Then press #.

Note

- Refer to the two tables below for the 4-digit numbers to enter for each key.

The example below shows “Key 1” with “2222” entered.



The following keys can be set with the corresponding numbers. (The initials in parentheses indicate the names of the modules.)

4-Digit Entries for Keys 1 to 10

Key No.	Copy	Printer	Scanner	Web
1	2222 (SCS)			
2	14000 (SRM)			
3	256 (IMH)			
4	1000 (ECS)			
5	1025 (MCS)			
6	4848 (COPY)	4400 (GPS)	5375 (Scan)	5682 (NFA)
7	2224 (BCU)	4500 (PDL)	5682 (NFA)	6600 (WebDB)
8		4600 (GPS-PM)	3000 (UCS)	3300 (PTS)
9		2000 (NCS)	2000 (NCS)	6666 (WebSys)
10		2224 (BCU)	4126 (DCS)	2000 (NCS)

Note

- The default settings for Keys 1 to 10 are all zero (“0”).

Key to Acronyms

Acronym	Meaning	Acronym	Meaning
ECS	Engine Control Service	NFA	Net File Application
GPS	GW Print Service	PDL	Printer Design Language
GSP-PM	GW Print Service – Print Module	PTS	Print Server

IMH	Image Memory Handler	SCS	System Control Service
MCS	Memory Control Service	SRM	System Resource Management
NCS	Network Control Service	WebDB	Web Document Box (Document Server)

The machine is now set to record the debugging information automatically on the HDD (the target selected with SP5857-002) for the events that you selected with SP5858 and the memory modules selected with SP5859.

Please keep the following important points in mind when you do this setting:

- Note that the number entries for Keys 1 to 5 are the same for the Copy, Printer, Scanner, and Web memory modules.
- The initial settings are all zero.
- These settings remain in effect until you change them. Be sure to check all the settings, especially the settings for Keys 6 to 10. To switch off a key setting, enter a zero for that key.
- You can select any number of keys from 1 to 10 (or all) by entering the corresponding 4-digit numbers from the table.
- You cannot mix settings for the groups (COPY, PRINTER, etc.) for 006 to 010. For example, if you want to create a PRINTER debug log you must select the settings from the 9 available selections for the “PRINTER” column only.
- One area of the disk is reserved to store the debug log. The size of this area is limited to 4 MB.

5.9.2 RETRIEVING THE DEBUG LOG FROM THE HDD

Retrieve the debug log by copying it from the hard disk to an SD card.

1. **Insert the SD card into the service slot of the copier.**
2. **Enter the SP mode and execute SP5857-009 (Copy HDD to SD Card (Latest 4 MB)) to write the debugging data to the SD card.**
3. **Use a card reader to copy the file and send it for analysis to your local Ricoh representative by email. You can also send the SD card by regular mail if you want.**

5.9.3 RECORDING ERRORS MANUALLY

SC errors and jams only are recorded to the debug log automatically. Please instruct the user to do the following immediately after occurrence to save the debug data for any other errors that occur while the customer engineer is not on site. Such problems also include a controller or panel freeze.

Note

- You must previously switch on the Save Debug Feature (SP5857-001) and select the hard disk as the save destination (SP5857-002) if you want to use this feature.

1. **Press (Clear Modes).on the operation panel when the error occurs.**
2. **On the control panel, enter "01". Then hold down for at least 3 seconds until the machine beeps and then release it. This saves the debug log to the hard disk for later retrieval with an SD card by the service representatives.**
3. **Switch the machine off and on to resume operation.**
   The debug information for the error is saved on the hard disk. This lets the service representative retrieve it on their next visit by copying it from the HDD to an SD card.

5.9.4 NEW DEBUG LOG CODES

SP5857-015 Copy SD Card-to-SD Card: Any Desired Key

This SP copies the log on an SD card (the file that contains the information written directly from shared memory) to a log specified by key number. The copy operation is executed in the log directory of the SD card inserted in the same slot. (This function does not copy from one slot to another.) Each SD card can hold up to 4 MB of file data. Unique file names are created for the data during the copy operation to prevent overwriting files of the same name. This means that log data from more than one machine can be copied onto the same SC card. This command does not execute if there is no log on the HDD for the name of the specified key.

SP5857-016 Create a File on HDD to Store a Log

This SP creates a 32 MB file to store a log on the HDD. However, this is not a completely empty file. The created file will hold the number “2225” as the SCS key number and other non-volatile information. Even if this SP is not executed, a file is created on the HDD when the first log is stored on the HDD (it takes some time to complete this operation). This creates the possibility that the machine may be switched off and on before the log can be created completely. If you execute this SP to create the log file beforehand, this will greatly reduce the amount of time required to acquire the log information and save onto the HDD. With the file already created on the HDD for the log file, the data only needs to be recorded. A new log file does not need to be created. To create a new log file, do SP5857-011 to delete the debug log data from the HDD. Then do SP5857-016.

SP5857-017 Create a File on SD Card to Store a Log

This SP creates a 4 MB file to store a log on an SD card. However, this is not a completely empty file. The created file will hold the number “2225” as the SCS key number and other non-volatile information. Even if this SP is not executed, a file is created on the SD card when the first log is stored on the SD card (it takes some time to complete this operation). This creates the possibility that the machine may be switched off and on before the log can be created completely. If you execute this SP to create the log file beforehand, this will greatly reduce the amount of time required to acquire the log information and save onto the SD card. With the file already created on the SD card for the log file, the data only needs to be recorded; a new log file does not require creation. To create a new log file, do SP5857-012 to delete the debug log data from the SD card. Then do SP5857-017.

5.10 DIP SWITCHES

5.10.1 CONTROLLER BOARD

DIP SW No.	OFF	ON
1	Boot-up from Flash Memory	Boot-up from SD card
2 to 8	Factory Use Only: Do not change the switch settings.	

5.10.2 BCU BOARD

DIP SW No.	OFF	ON
1 and 2	Factory Use Only: Do not change the switch settings.	

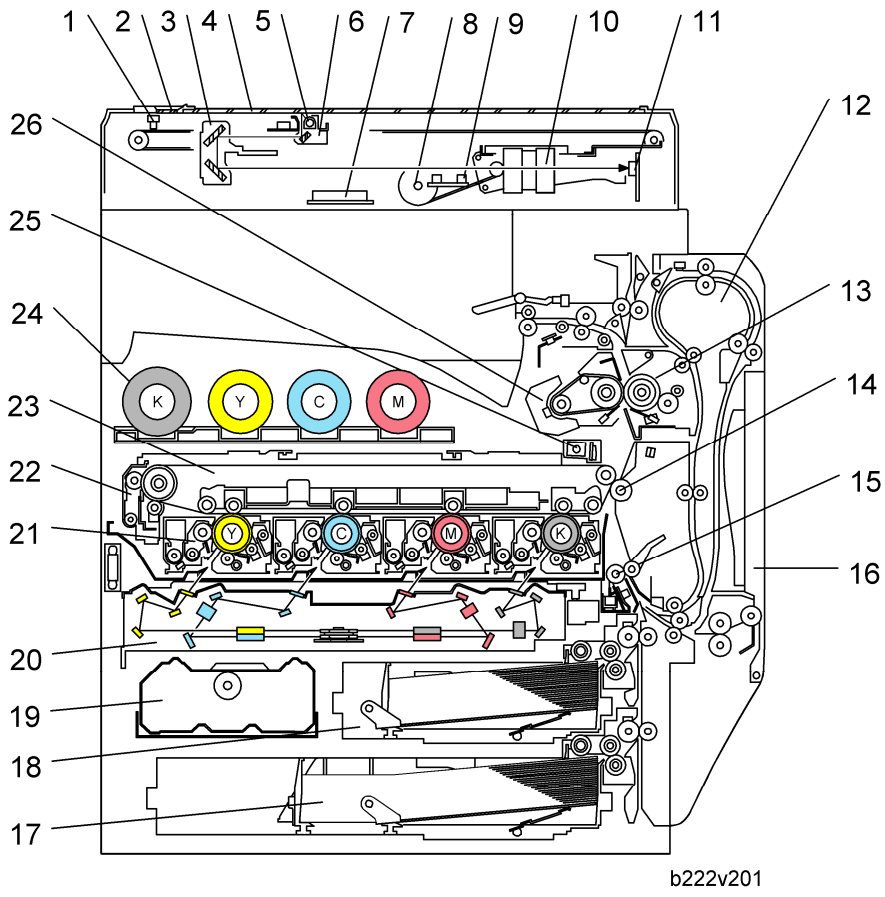
DETAILED SECTION DESCRIPTIONS

SECTION 6 DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS REVISION HISTORY		
Page	**Date**	**Added/Updated/New**
		None

6. DETAILED SECTION DESCRIPTIONS

6.1 OVERVIEW

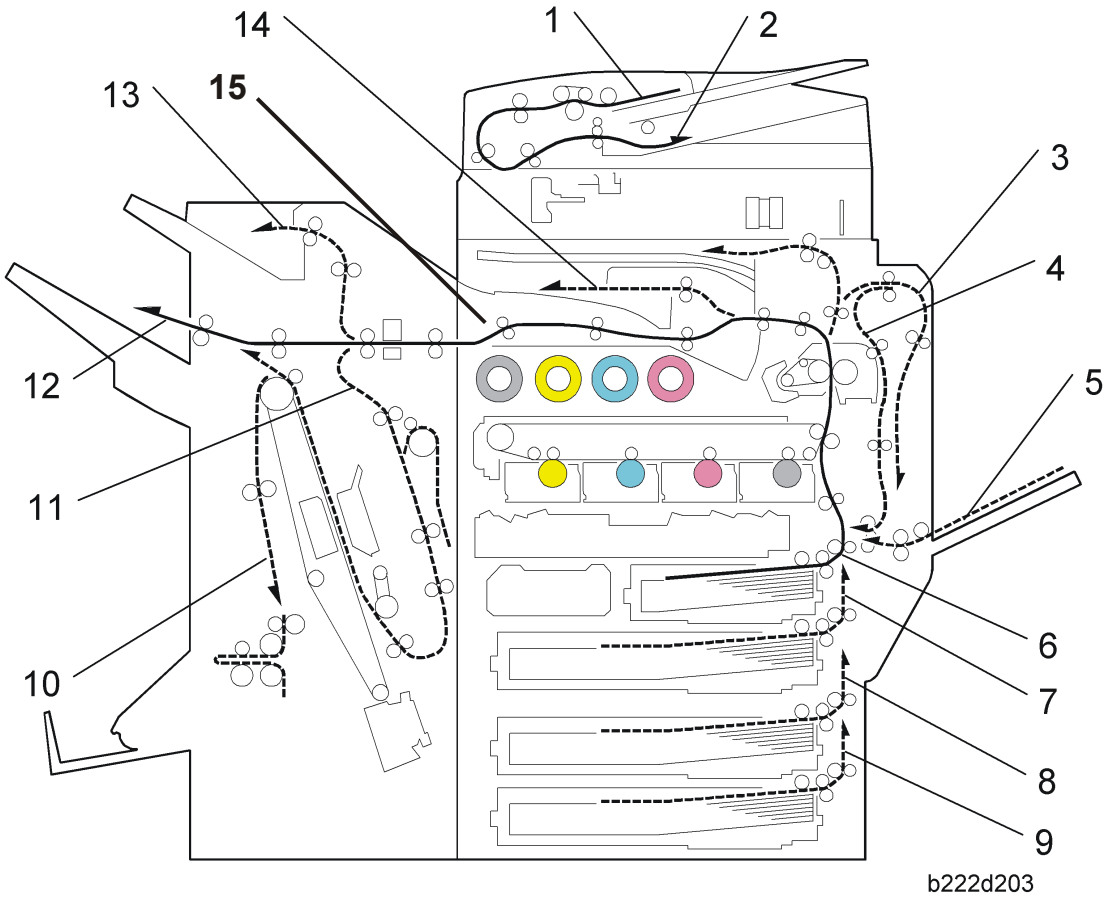
6.1.1 COMPONENT LAYOUT



1. Scanner HP sensor	14. Paper transfer roller
2. ADF exposure glass	15. Registration roller
3. 2nd scanner (2nd carriage)	16. By-pass feed table
4. Exposure glass	17. Tray 2
5. Scanner lamp	18. Tray 1
6. 1st scanner (1st carriage)	19. Toner collection bottle
7. Original width sensor	20. Laser optics housing unit

8. Scanner motor	21. PCU (4 colors)
9. Original length sensor	22. Image transfer belt cleaning unit
10. Lens block	23. Image transfer belt unit
11. Sensor board unit (SBU)	24. Toner bottle (4 colors)
12. Duplex unit	25. ID sensor
13. Fusing unit	26. IH coil unit

6.1.2 PAPER PATH

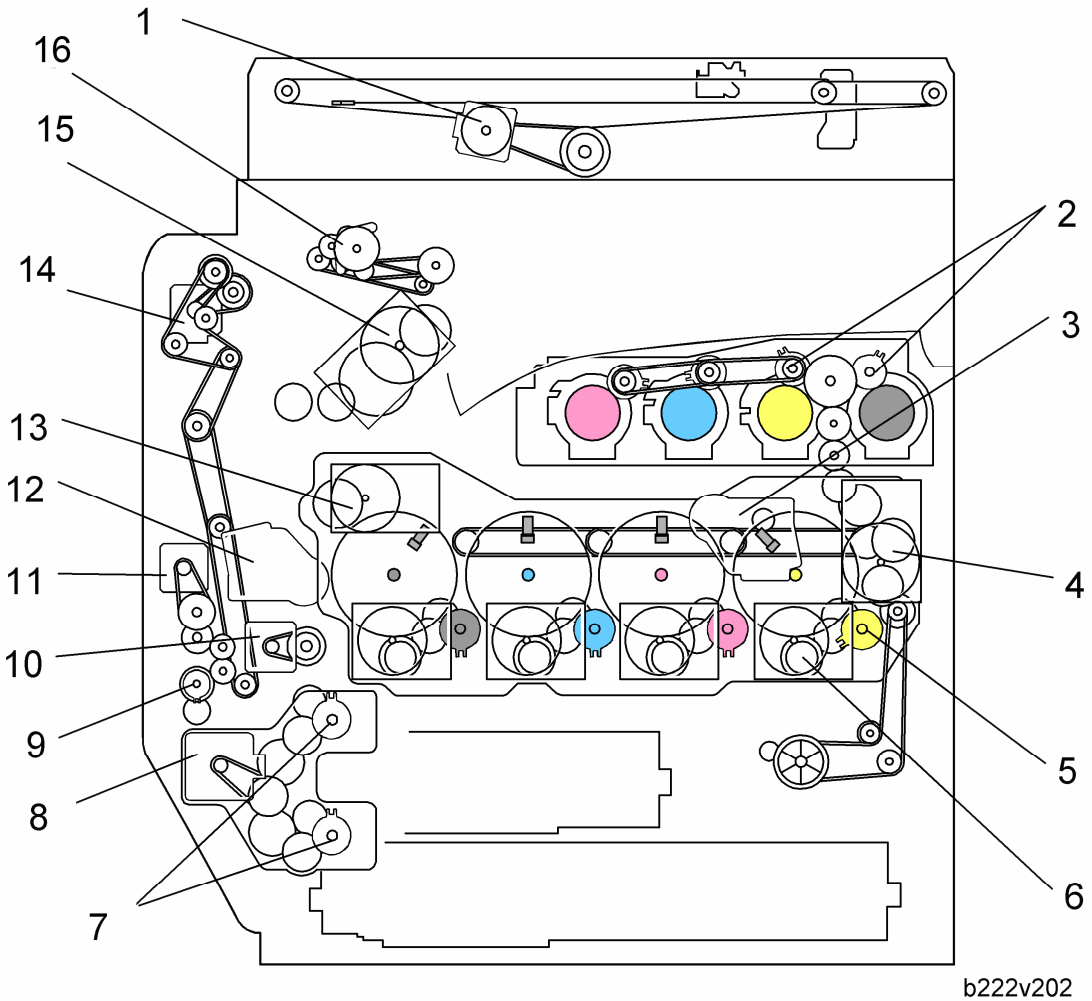


1. Original tray	8. Tray 3: Optional paper feed unit/LCT
2. Original exit tray	9. Tray 4: Optional paper feed unit
3. Duplex inverter	10. Finisher booklet stapler (Optional)
4. Duplex feed	11. Finisher stapler (Optional)

5. By-pass tray feed 6. Tray 1 feed 7. Tray 2 feed	12. Finisher upper tray (Optional) 13. Finisher proof tray (Optional) 14. Inner Tray 15. Bridge Unit

The 2000/3000-sheet (booklet) finisher and 1000-sheet finisher require the bridge unit (B227) and either two-tray paper feed unit (B800) or the LCT (B801).

6.1.3 DRIVE LAYOUT



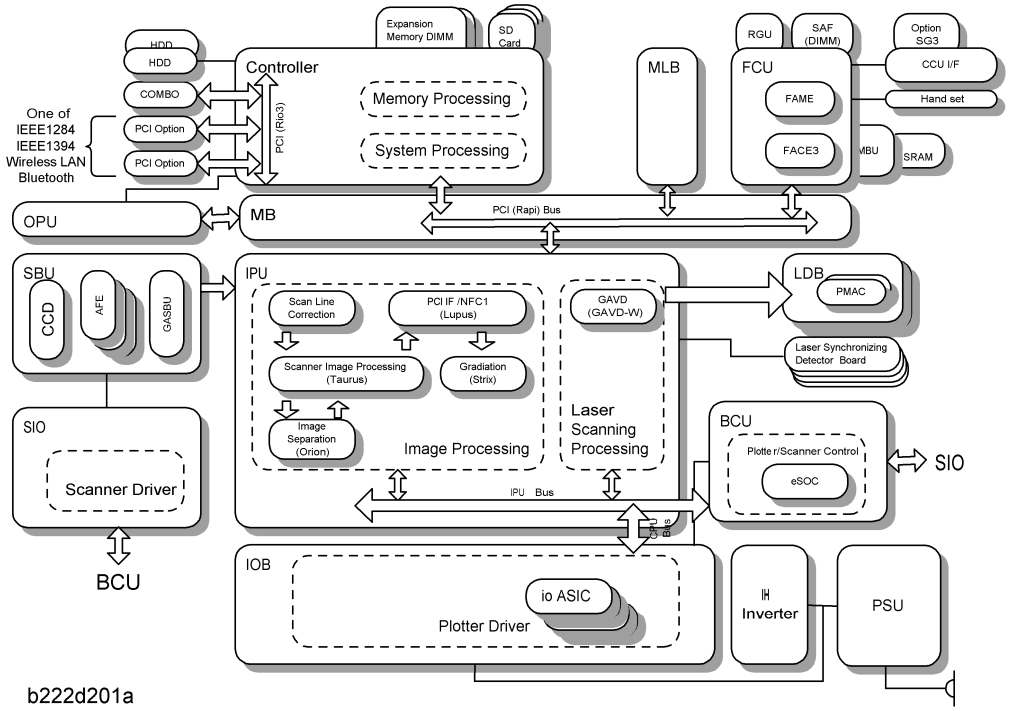
1. Scanner motor:	Drives the scanner unit.
2. Toner supply clutch-K and	Turns on/off the drive power to the toner supply unit (Bk

Overview

-CMY:	and -CMY).
3.ITB (Image Transfer Belt) contact motor:	Moves the ITB into contact and away from the color PCUs.
4. Toner transport motor:	Drives the toner attraction pumps and the toner collection coils from the PCUs, from the transfer belt unit, and inside the toner collection bottle. Also rotates the toner bottles.
5. Development clutch (Bk, Y, M, C):	Turns on/off the drive power to the development unit (Bk, Y, M, C).
6. Drum/Development drive motor (Bk, Y, M, C)	Drives the color drum unit and development unit (Bk, Y, M, C).
7. Paper feed clutch	Switches the drive power between the tray 1 and tray 2.
8. Paper feed motor:	Drives the paper feed mechanisms (tray 1/tray 2/by-pass tray).
9. By-pass feed clutch:	Turns on/off the drive power to the by-pass pick-up, feed and separation rollers.
10. Registration motor:	Drives the registration roller.
11. By-pass/duplex feed motor:	Drives the by-pass pick-up, feed and separation roller, and duplex transport rollers.
12. Paper transfer contact motor:	Moves the paper transfer roller in contact with the image transfer belt.
13. ITB drive motor:	Drives the image transfer belt unit.
14. Duplex Inverter motor:	Drives the duplex inverter gate.
15. Fusing/paper exit motor	Drives the fusing unit and paper exit section
16. Junction gate 1 motor:	Opens and closes junction gate 1.

6.1.4 BOARD STRUCTURE

Overview



b222d201a

Note

- In the diagram, 'MLB' is the File Format Converter

Descriptions

BCU (Base Engine Control Unit):

The BCU controls all the mechanical components and the following functions:

- Engine sequence
- Engine operation
- Polygon motor control

Controller:

The controller connects to the IPU through a PCI bus. The controller handles the following functions:

- Machine-to-host interface
- Operation panel interface
- Network interface
- Interfacing and control of the optional IEEE1284, Bluetooth, IEEE1394, IEEE802.11b (wireless LAN), USB Host, HDD, and DRAM DIMM

IPU:

The Image Processing Unit is a large-scale integrated circuit. This unit processes digital

signals.

LD Drive Board:

This is the laser diode drive circuit board.

SBU:

The Sensor Board Unit has a CCD (charge-coupled device) and an analog-to-digital conversion circuit.

Operation Panel Board:

This controls the display panel, the LED and the keypad.

Scanner I/O Board (SIO):

The scanner I/O board is a circuit board that transmits control signals and image data.

I/O Board (IOB):

Contains drivers for motors and other mechanical components.

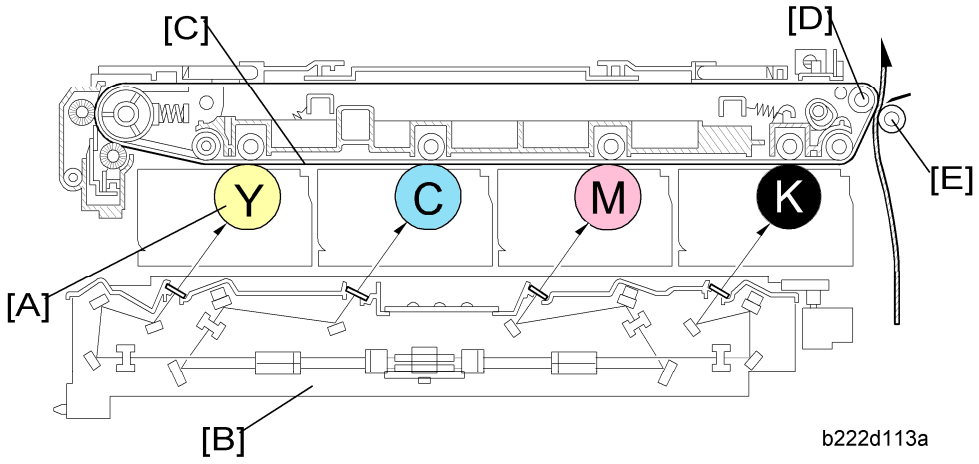
Motherboard:

Connects the controller board to the IPU.

FCU:

The FCU (fax controller unit) controls the fax programs and communicates with the controller to share copier resources.

6.1.5 PRINTING PROCESS

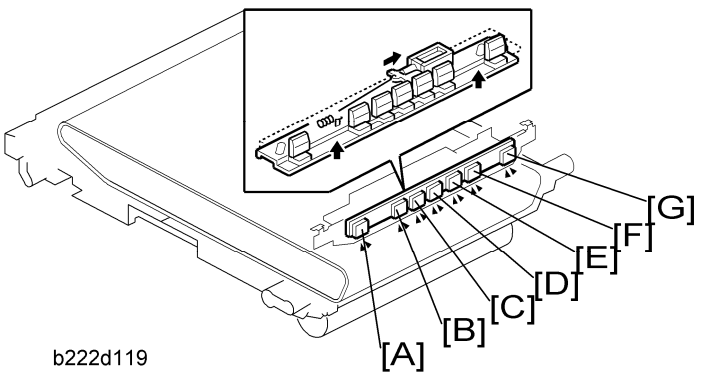


This machine uses four PCUs, and four laser beams for color printing. Each PCU consists of the drum unit and the development unit. Each drum unit has a drum, charge roller, cleaning brush, and blade. From the left, the PCU stations are yellow, cyan, magenta, and black.

The drum [A] is charged with a negative voltage, and is exposed by the laser from the laser optics housing unit [B]. The laser neutralizes the negative charge on the surface of the drum. So, the white parts of the image correspond to areas of the drum that still have a high

negative charge. The toner has a negative charge, and it moves to the areas of the drum that have the smallest negative charge (i.e., the areas written by the laser beam).
The image on each drum is moved to the transfer belt by the positive bias that is applied to the transfer belt [C]. All four toners are put on the belt at the same time. Then, the completed four-color image is moved to the paper by a negative charge applied to the ITB drive roller [D] (the transfer roller [E] is an idle roller).

1. **Drum charge:** The charge roller gives the drum a negative charge
2. **Laser exposure**: The laser beam from the laser diode (LD) goes through the lens and mirrors and reaches the drum. The machine turns the laser beam on and off to make a latent image on the drum.
3. **Development:** The development roller carries negatively charged toner to the latent image on the drum surface. This machine uses four independent development units (one for each color).
4. **Transfer:**
   Image transfer: Bias rollers opposite the OPC drums transfer toner from the drums to the transfer belt. Four toner images are super-imposed onto the belt.
   Paper transfer: Then, the ITB drive roller pushes the toner from the transfer belt to the paper (the transfer roller is an idle roller).
5. **Cleaning for OPC drum**: The cleaning brush and blade remove remaining toner on the drum surface after image transfer to the paper.
6. **Quenching for OPC drum:** Quenching is done by illuminating the whole area of the drum with the laser at the end of every job.
7. **Cleaning and quenching for transfer belt:** The cleaning brush and blade clean the belt surface. The grounding roller inside the transfer belt unit removes the remaining charge on the belt.



8. **ID sensors:** The ID sensors detect the density of ID sensor patterns on the transfer

belt.

The ID sensor board contains three ID sensors for the line position adjustment (front, center, and rear) and four ID sensors for the process control. On this board, there are 7 ID sensors in total, as follows.

- [A]: Line position adjustment (front)
- [B]: Process control (K)
- [C]: Process control (C)
- [D]: Line position adjustment (center)
- [E] Process control (M)
- [F]: Process control (Y)
- [G]: Line position adjustment (rear)

The ID sensor output is used for the following:

- Process control and for automatic line position
- Skew correction
- Color registration adjustments for the latent image.

6.2 PROCESS CONTROL

6.2.1 OVERVIEW

This machine has the following two forms of process control:

- Potential control
- Toner supply control

The following machine components are used for process control:

- Four ID (image density) sensors (black, magenta, cyan and yellow).
- TD sensor.

Normally, process control is not disabled. If process control is disabled, fixed supply mode is used for toner supply, and the V_{REF} stored in SP 3222 is used.

6.2.2 POTENTIAL CONTROL

Overview

The machine determines V_D using the ID sensor output, and then determines V_B and V_L.

- V_D: Drum potential without exposure – to adjust this, the machine adjusts the charge roller voltage.
- V_B: Development bias
- V_L: Drum potential at the strongest exposure – to adjust this, the machine adjusts the laser power

At the same time, the machine also determines V_{REF}: Reference TD sensor output, used for toner supply control.

If potential control is disabled (SP3-041-001 is set to "0"), V_D and V_B are fixed by the following SP mode settings.

- SP2-005 for V_D, SP2-229 for V_B

If LD power control is disabled (SP3-041-002 is set to "0"), the LD power is fixed by the following SP mode setting.

- SP2-221 for V_L

Process Control Self Check

This machine uses the process control self check method to do the potential control. The machine uses seven types of process control self check. These are categorized according to their execution timing.

The counter (SP3-510) is reset if a self-check is done (except for a forced self-check).

Process Control

∆T = Temperature change between the temperature of the previous process control and the current temperature

∆RH = RH (Relative Humidity) change between the relative humidity of the previous process control and the current relative humidity

∆AH = AH (Absolute Humidity) change between the absolute humidity of the previous process control and the current absolute humidity

1. Manual execution (forced): This is done when SP3-011-1 is used.
2. Initial

   This starts automatically when the power is turned on, or, when the machine recovers from energy saver mode.

   This is done automatically if one of these conditions occurs.

   - a) ∆T is greater than or equal to Temperature Threshold (SP3-522-003: 10°C)
   - b) ∆RH is greater than or equal to Relative Humidity Threshold (SP3-522-004: 50%RH)
   - c) ∆AH is greater than or equal to Absolute Humidity Threshold (SP3-522-005: 6 g/m^3)
   - d) If the following conditions both occur.

   BW Counter (SP3-510-003) is greater than or equal to Execution Interval (SP3-511-005)

   OR

   FC Counter (SP3-510-004) is greater than or equal to Execution Interval (SP3-511-006)

   Non-use Time is greater than or equal to SP3522-002 (default: 6 hours)
3. Interval: Job End

   This starts automatically at the end of a print job if the following condition occurs:

   BW Counter (SP3-510-001) is greater than or equal to Execution Interval (SP3-515-001)

   OR

   FC Counter (SP3-510-002) is greater than or equal to Execution Interval (SP3-515-002)
4. Interval: During a Job

   This interrupts printing and then starts automatically if the following condition occurs:

   BW Counter (SP3-510-001) is greater than or equal to Execution Interval (SP3-515-003)

   OR

   FC Counter (SP3-510-002) is greater than or equal to Execution Interval

(SP3-515-004)

After process control is completed, the machine continues to make prints.

5. In standby mode

   This is done automatically if one of these conditions occurs.

   - a) ∆T is greater than or equal to Temperature Threshold (SP3-531-002: 10°C)
   - b) ∆RH is greater than or equal to Relative Humidity Threshold (SP3-531-003: 50%RH)
   - c) ∆AH is greater than or equal to Absolute Humidity Threshold (SP3-531-004: 6 g/m^3)
   - d) Non-use Time is greater than or equal to SP3-531-001 (default: 6 hours)

   It is not done if the machine is in energy saver mode.

   The default non-use time is 6 hours (see condition d above), so normally it will only be done if the user disables energy saver mode.

6. After Toner End Recovery

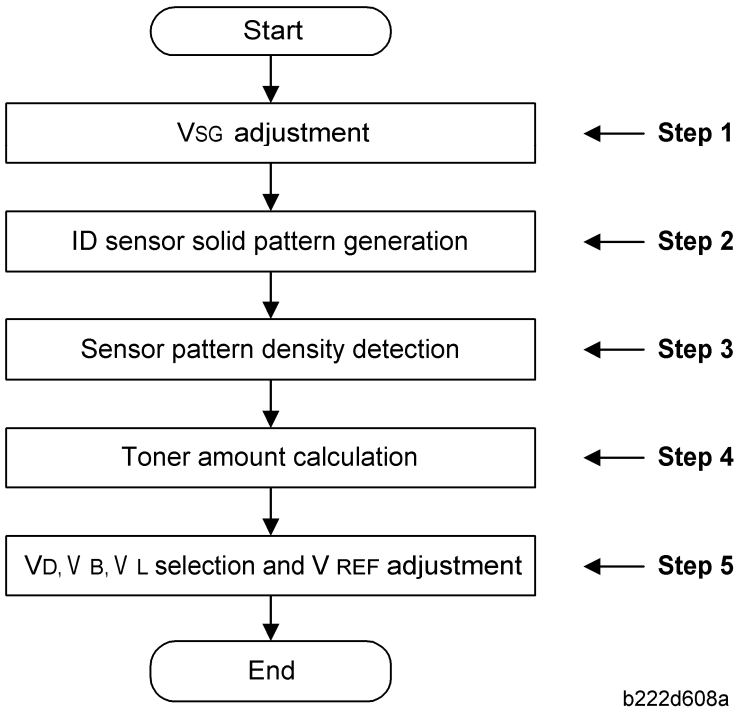
   This starts after recovery from a toner end condition.

7. After Developer Initialization

   Developer initialization occurs automatically in the following conditions:

   - After a new development unit has been installed
   - After new developer is installed and 3902-005 to 008 is done, depending on the color (see 'Maintenance' for details).

6.2.3 PROCESS CONTROL SELF CHECK PROCEDURE



Step 1: VSG Adjustment

This machine uses four ID sensors (direct reflection type) for the process control. Each sensor detects a pattern for each color (see the 'Printing Process' section).

The ID sensor checks the bare transfer belt's reflectivity. Then the machine calibrates the ID sensor until its output when reading the bare transfer belt (known as VSG) is as follows.

- VSG = 4.0 ± 0.5 Volts

This calibration compensates for the transfer belt's condition and the ID sensor condition. For example, dirt on the surface of the belt or ID sensor.

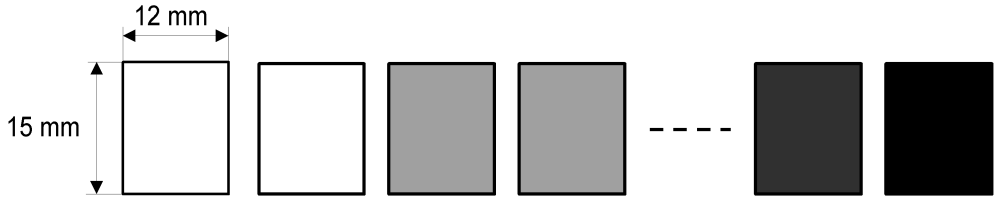
VSG adjustment is always done during initial process control. But, at other times, it is only done if the VSG adjustment counter (SP3-510-007) is more than the value set with SP3-511-007 (default: 500) during a job or at job end.

SC400 is displayed if VSG is out of adjustment range sequentially 3 times.

SP3-321: Forced VSG Adjustment for each sensor

SP 3-325: Shows the results of the VSG adjustment (automatic or forced VSG adjustment) - 7 digits (Front, Bk, C, Center, M, Y, Rear)

Step 2: ID Sensor Solid Pattern Generation



First, the machine agitates the developer for between 15 and 30 seconds until the fluctuation in TD sensor output becomes less than 0.3V.

Second, the machine makes the grade patterns (see the diagram). This 10-grade pattern is made in black, yellow, cyan, and magenta (40 squares in total).

- The machine first makes the first five grades for each color (the first 20 squares), and then the second five grades for each color (the remaining 20 squares).

The patterns are made by changing the development bias and charge roller voltage. The difference between development bias and charge roller voltage is always the same. But, the development potential changes for each pattern.

- The development potential is the difference between the development bias and the charge remaining on the drum where the laser writes a black area. The development bias changes for each grade, and the charge on black areas of the image is always the same, so the development potential also changes.

Step 3: Sensor Pattern Detection

The ID sensor measures the light reflected from each grade of the pattern, to detect the densities of each grade. This data goes to memory.

Step 4: Toner Amount Calculation

The machine calculates the amount of toner on the transfer belt that is required to make each of the 10 grades of the sensor pattern. To do this, the machine uses the output values of the ID sensor from each grade of the pattern.

The amounts of toner are expressed as M/A (mass per unit area, mg/cm^2)

Step 5: V_D, V_B, V_L Selection and V_{TREF} Adjustment

The machine determines the relationship between the amount of toner on the transfer belt and the development bias for each of the 10 grades.

From this, the machine determines the best V_D to get the target M/A for each color. Then, based on this V_D, the machine determines the best V_B and V_L. This process ensures that enough toner is deposited to make black pixels.

The machine also adjusts V_{TREF} (toner density target) at the same time so that the development gamma used by the machine fall within the target development gamma range

stored in the machine's software. If it does not fall within this range, the amount of toner deposited on the latent image will be too high or too low.

6.2.4 TONER DENSITY ADJUSTMENT MODE

If the toner density becomes too high or too low because of an incorrect development gamma, this is corrected by process control (see the previous section). But sometimes, it takes many copies before the toner density comes to the correct value.

Toner density adjustment mode can be used to bring the toner concentration to the correct level much more quickly, if users complain about the toner density.

SP 3-043 controls when the toner density adjustment mode is done.

To do the toner density adjustment mode manually, execute SP 3-011-2.

It is also done automatically before ACC, if SP3-041-4 is set to "2: TC Control" (this is the default setting).

During this procedure, the machine generates ID sensor patterns and detects the current development gamma. The gamma must be within ± 0.2 of the target development gamma.

If the current gamma is too high (above the target by 0.2 or more: 0.2 limit is set with SP3-239-009), the machine consumes toner in the development unit until the development gamma is within the correct range. To consume toner, the machine generates solid patterns.

If the current gamma is too low (below the target by more than 0.2: 0.2 limit is set with SP3-239-012), the machine supplies toner to the development unit until the development gamma is within the correct range.

6.2.5 TONER SUPPLY CONTROL

Overview

Toner supply control determines how long the toner supply clutch turns on. This determines the amount of toner supplied. This is done before every development for each color.

Toner supply control uses the following factors:

- Density of the toner in the developer (detected by the TD sensor) - V_{REF}, V_T
- Pixel count: Determines how much toner was used for the page

The image density is kept constant by adjusting the density of toner in the development unit. At the same time, it accommodates changes in the development conditions through the potential control mechanism. Environmental changes and the number of prints made are also used in the calculation.

The amount of toner supplied is determined by the 'on' time of the toner supply clutch. The

total ‘on’ time for each toner supply clutch is stored in the memory chip for the relevant toner cartridge. The machine supplies the calculated amount of toner for each color.

Toner Supply Control Modes

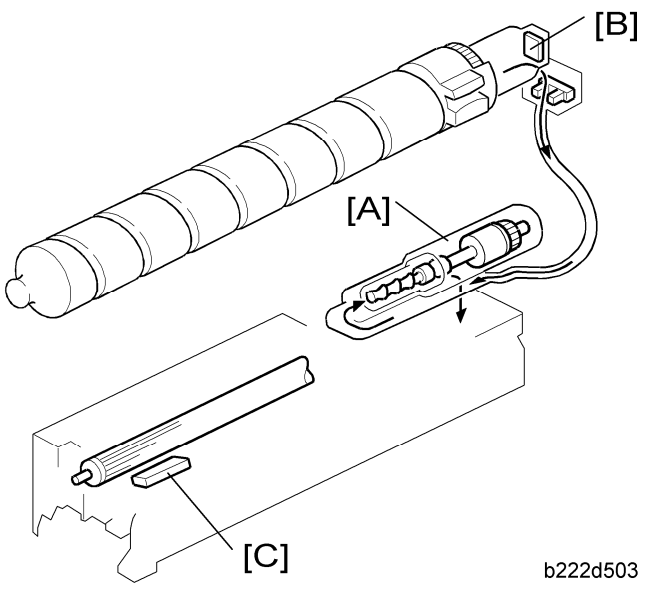
This machine has three toner supply control modes. You can select them with SP3-044-1 to -4.

1. Fixed supply mode
   This mode is used when the TD sensor becomes faulty. You can adjust the amount of toner supply with SP3-401-1 to -4 if the image density is incorrect (the default setting is 5%).
2. PID (Proportional Integral Differential) control mode (Fixed V_{TREF})
   This mode is used when the ID sensor becomes faulty. Only the TD sensor is used to control toner supply. The machine uses the V_{TREF} that is stored in SP3-222-1 to -4.
3. PID (Proportional Integral Differential) control mode
   This is the default toner supply control mode. The TD sensor, ID sensor, and pixel count are used in this mode. V_{TREF} is adjusted by process control.

The machine automatically changes the toner supply mode to fixed supply mode if the TD sensor is broken. However, the supply amount will be 70% of the normal fixed value to prevent too high image density.

The machine automatically changes the toner supply mode to PID control mode (Fixed Vtref) if the ID sensors are broken.

6.2.6 TONER NEAR END/TONER END DETECTION



Process Control

Toner Near End

The controller considers the following information to determine the toner near end status:

- Operation time counter of the toner attraction pump [A]
- Pixel counter

These values are both stored in the memory chip [B] on the toner cartridge, and copied from the memory chip to the NVRAM on the BCU.

If either value indicates that the amount of remaining toner is 50g or less, the machine enters the near-end condition.

Toner End

To determine the toner end status, the machine uses the TD sensor [C] in the development unit. The machine must first be in a toner near-end condition, or toner end cannot be detected.

Toner end is detected if both the following conditions occur:

- $V_T - V_{TREF}$ greater than or equal to "0.5" (SP3-101-021)
- SUM ($V_T - V_{TREF}$) greater than or equal to "10" (SP3-101-026)

The machine cannot print until the toner cartridge is replaced after it detects toner end for black. The machine can print in black and white only if cyan, magenta, or yellow are in a toner end condition during standby mode. At this time the machine cannot do color print jobs.

Note

- If the yellow, cyan, or magenta toner ends during a color-printing job, the job is suspended until toner is supplied. If new color toner is not installed, the user can print black-and-white jobs only.

Toner End Recovery

The machine assumes that the toner cartridge has been replaced if either of the following occurs when the near-end or end status exists:

- The front door is opened and closed.
- The main switch is turned off and on.

Then the machine starts to supply toner to the development unit. After supplying toner, the machine clears the toner near-end or end status if the following condition is detected:

- Toner end sensor detects that toner is supplied.

The machine tries to supply toner for a maximum of 5 times (SP 3-102).

6.2.7 DEVELOPER INITIALIZATION

When is it done?

When you install new developer, you must set the following SPs to "1" before you turn the

power off. Then, the machine will reset the PM counters automatically. Developer initialization will also be done automatically.

- Black: SP3902-005
- Yellow: SP3902-006
- Cyan: SP3902-007
- Magenta: SP3902-008

When a new development unit or PCU is installed, the machine detects the new unit automatically and initializes the developer.

How is it done?

The procedure is as follows.

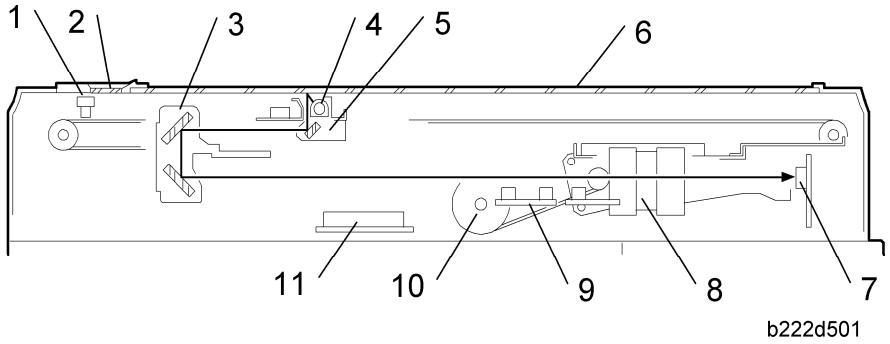
1. The machine agitates the developer for 30 seconds.
2. The machine adjusts V_{CNT} (control voltage for TD sensor) so that V_T (TD sensor output) becomes within 2.7 ± 0.2.
3. The machine keeps this as V_{TREF} if it is successful. SC372 to SC375 is displayed if it fails sequentially 3 times.

The result of developer initialization can be checked with SP3-014.

During developer initialization, the machine forcibly supplies toner because there is no toner inside the toner transport tube at installation. Then the machine does the process control self check.

6.3 SCANNING

6.3.1 OVERVIEW



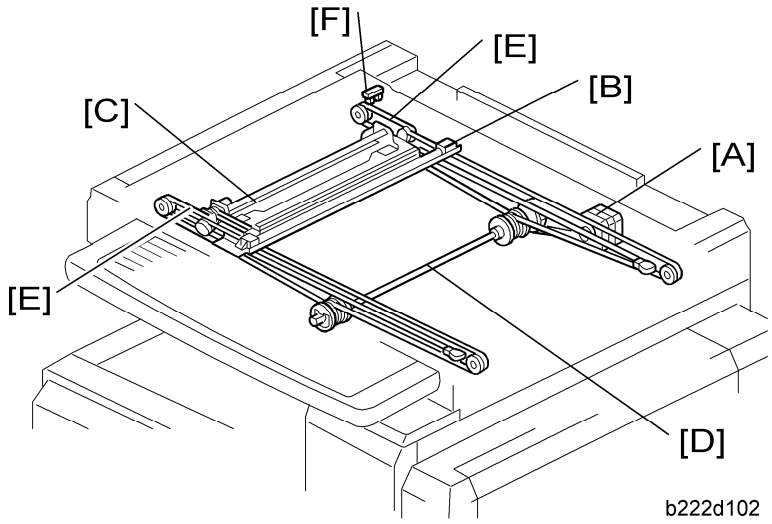
1. Scanner HP sensor 2. ADF exposure glass 3. 2nd scanner (2nd carriage) 4. Scanner lamp 5. 1st scanner (1st carriage) 6. Exposure glass	7. Sensor board unit (SBU) 8. Lens block 9. Original length sensor 10. Scanner motor 11. Original width sensor

The original on the exposure glass or ARDF exposure glass reflects the light emitted from the scanner lamp. The reflected light goes to the CCD on the sensor board by way of the 1st and 2nd scanners. The sensor board converts the CCD analog signals into digital signals.

When the original is manually placed on the exposure glass, the scanner motor pulls the 1st and 2nd scanners via mechanical linkage. The original is scanned from left to right.

When the original is fed from the optional ARDF, it is automatically transported onto the ARDF exposure glass, and to the original exit. The original does not stay on the glass; but goes to the exit. The 1st and 2nd scanners stay at their home positions.

6.3.2 SCANNER DRIVE



The scanner motor [A] drives the 1st scanner [B] and the 2nd scanner [C] through the scanner drive pulley, scanner drive shaft [D], and two scanner wires [E].

Book mode -

The SBU board controls the scanner drive motor. The 2nd scanner speed is half that of the 1st scanner.

In reduction or enlargement mode, the scanning speed depends on the magnification ratio. The returning speed is always the same, whether in full size or magnification mode. The image length change in the sub scan direction is done by changing the scanner motor speed. In the main scan direction it is done by image processing on the IPU board.

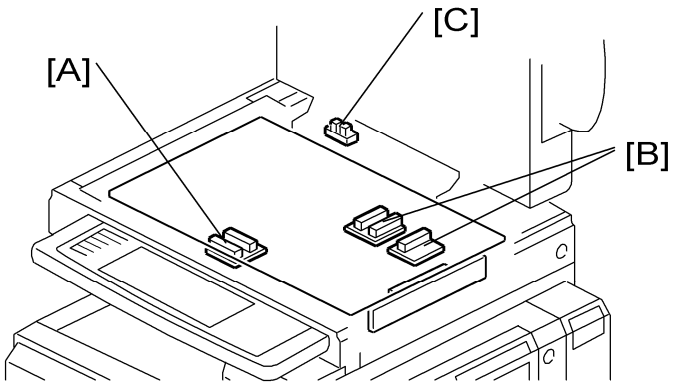
You can adjust the magnification in the sub-scan direction by changing the scanner motor speed with SP4-008.

ARDF mode -

The scanners always stay in their home position (the scanner HP sensor [F] detects the 1st scanner) to scan the original. The ARDF motor feeds the original through the ARDF. In reduction/enlargement mode, the image length change in the sub-scan direction is done by changing the ARDF motor speed. Magnification in the main scan direction is done in the IPU board. This is the same as for book mode.

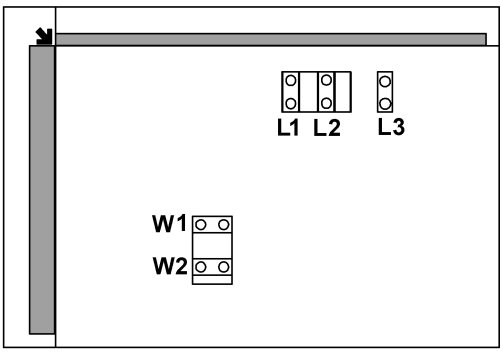
You can adjust magnification in the sub-scan direction by changing the ARDF motor speed with SP6-017.

6.3.3 ORIGINAL SIZE DETECTION



b222d103

- The original width sensors [A] detect the original width. The original length sensors [B] detect the original length.
- The SBU controller on the SBU board checks each sensor status when the platen cover sensor [C] is activated as it is closed. It detects the original size by the on/off signals it gets from each sensor.
- If the copy is made with the platen cover fully open, the SBU controller on the SBU determines the original size from the sensor outputs after the Start key is pressed.



b222d514

Original Size		Length Sensor			Width Sensor		SP4-301 display
Metric version	Inch version	L3	L2	L1	W1	W2	
A3	11" x 17"	O	O	O	O	O	00011111
B4	10" x 14"	O	O	O	O	X	00011110

F4 8.5" x 13", 8.25" x 13", or 8" x 13" SP 5126 controls the size that is detected	8.5” x 14”	O	O	O	X	X	00011100
A4 LEF	8.5" x 11"	X	X	X	O	O	00000011
B5 LEF	-	X	X	X	O	X	00000010
A4 SEF	11" x 8.5"	X	O	O	X	X	00001100
B5 SEF	-	X	X	O	X	X	00000100
A5 LEF/ SEF	5.5" x 8.5", 8.5" x 5.5"	X	X	X	X	X	00000000

Note

- O: Paper present, X: Paper not present

The above table shows the outputs of the sensors for each original size. This original size detection method eliminates the necessity for a pre-scan and increases the machine’s productivity.

However, if the by-pass tray is used, the machine assumes that the copy paper is lengthwise (L). For example, if A4 sideways paper is placed on the by-pass tray, the machine assumes it is A3 paper and scans a full A3 area. Information from the original size sensors is disregarded.

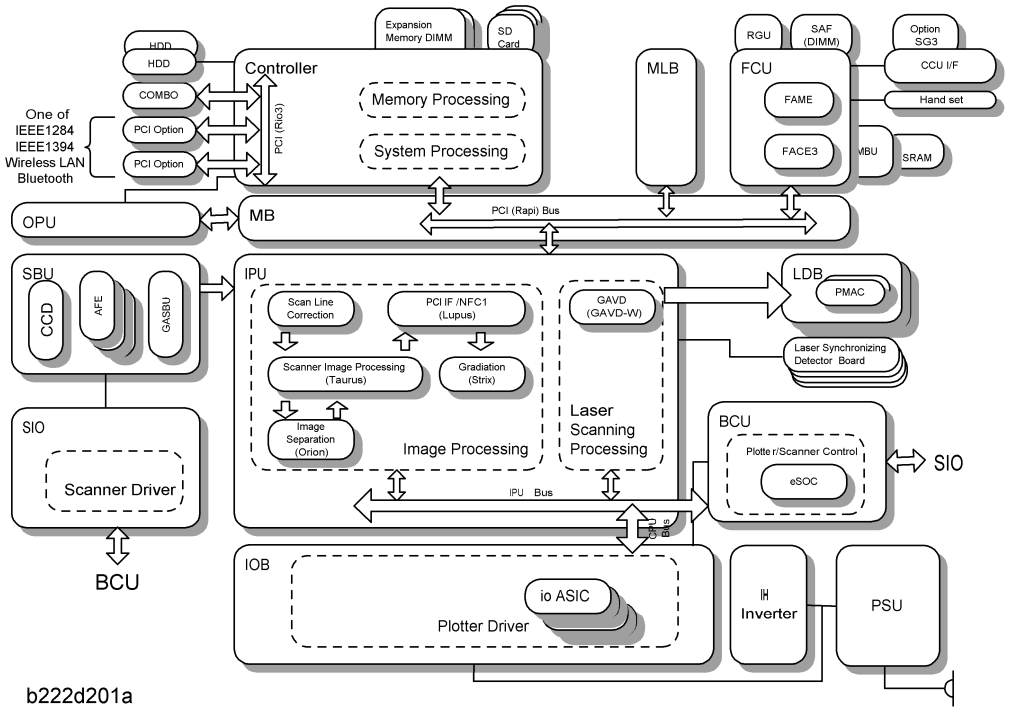
Refer to the ARDF manual for more information on original size detection with the ARDF.

6.3.4 ANTI-CONDENSATION HEATER

The anti-condensation heater is available as an optional unit. The anti-condensation heater prevents condensation on the mirrors. Condensation can occur when the scanner unit is, for example, moved from a cold room to a warm room. Condensation can cause abnormal images.

6.4 IMAGE PROCESSING

6.4.1 OVERVIEW



6.4.2 SBU (SENSOR BOARD UNIT)

SBU

The VPU (Video Processor Unit) does the following functions:

- Black level correction
- White level correction
- Gradation calibration
- ADS control (Background Density)
- Creating the SBU test pattern

Operation Summary

The signals from the 3-line CCD, one line for each color (R, G, B) and 2 analog signals per line (ODD, EVEN), are sampled by the ASIC and converted to digital signals in the 10-bit A/D converter. This is the first phase of processing the data scanned from the original.

Storing Operation Settings

The controller stores the SBU settings. These values must be restored after the lens block is replaced:

SP4-008-001	Sub Scan Mag	Sub Scan Magnification Adjustment
SP4-010-001	Sub Scan Reg	Sub Scan Registration Adjustment
SP4-011-001	Main Scan Reg	Main Scan Registration Adjustment

SBU Test Mode

There is an SP code to create a test pattern which can be used as a diagnostic tool to troubleshoot problems in the SBU:

- SP4907-001 SBU Pattern - Test Pattern

To print the pattern:

- Select the pattern to print.
- Touch "Copy Window" then press the Start key twice.

6.4.3 IPU (IMAGE PROCESSING UNIT)

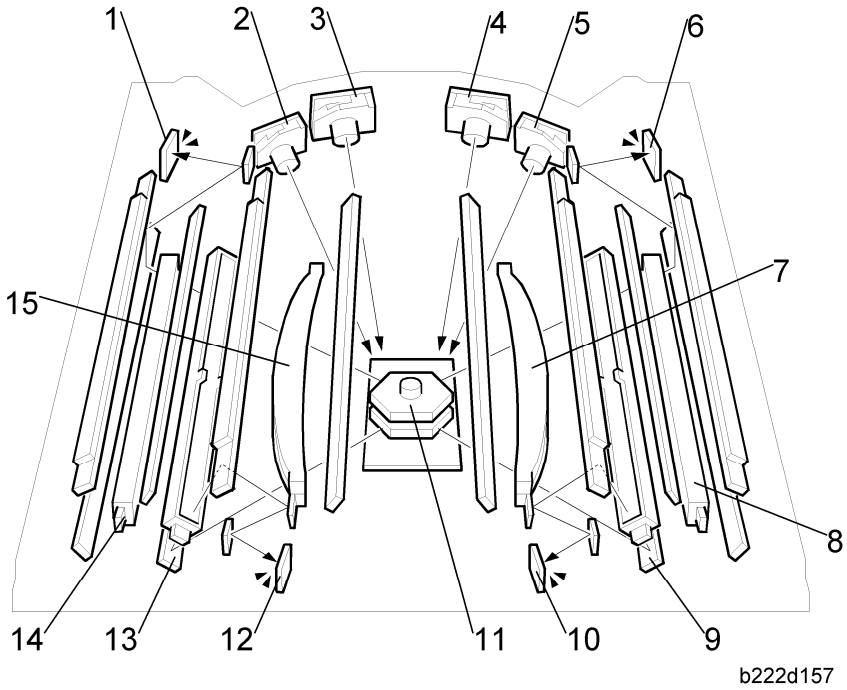
The IPU does the following:

- Controls the scanner
- Processes the image signals from the SBU and sends them over the PCI bus to the controller memory
- Receives the image processing signals sent over the PCI bus from the controller memory, processes them, then outputs them to the VGAVD.
- Outputs the control signals for the ARDF
- Controls the relay of power and signals

Image processing, ADS correction, and line width correction are done on the IPU board for all the digital data sent from the SBU. Finally, the processed data is sent to the printer as digital signals (4 bits/pixel).

6.5 LASER EXPOSURE

6.5.1 OVERVIEW

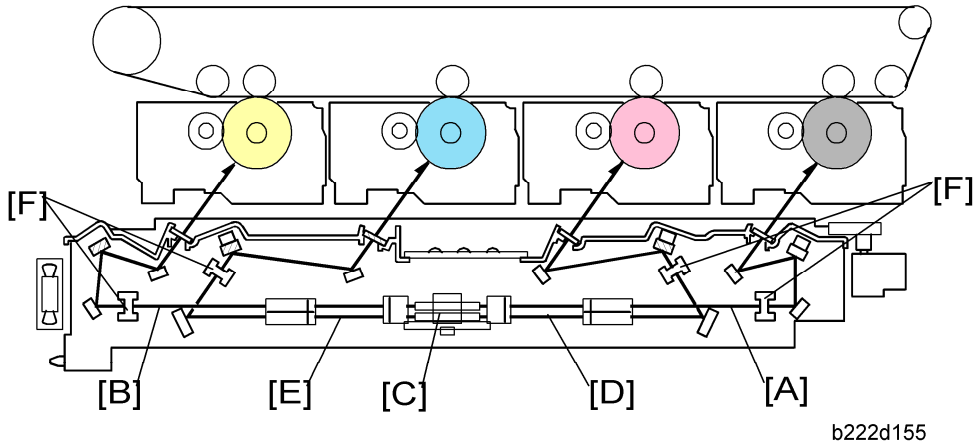


1. Synchronizing detector board: Y/C-E 2. LD unit-Y 3. LD unit-C 4. LD unit-Bk 5. LD unit-M 6. Synchronizing detector board: Bk/M-S 7. L1 lens-Bk/M 8. L2 lens-Bk	9. L2 lens-M 10. Synchronizing detector board: Bk/M-E 11. Polygon mirror motor 12. Synchronizing detector board: Y/C-S 13. L2 lens-C 14. L2 lens-Y 15. L1 lens-Y/C

This machine uses four LD units and one polygon mirror motor to produce latent images on four OPC drums (one drum for each color toner). In the B224 model, two laser beams are used for each color except for OHP/Thick paper type in 600 x 600 dpi mode.
There are two hexagonal mirrors. Each mirror reflects beams from two LD units.
Laser exposure for black and magenta starts from the rear side of the drum. But for yellow and cyan it starts from the front side of the drum. This is because the units for black and

magenta are on the other side of the polygon mirror from the units for yellow and cyan.

6.5.2 OPTICAL PATH



The laser beams for black [A] and yellow [B] are directed to the upper part of the polygon mirror [C]. Laser beams for magenta [D] and cyan [E] are directed to the lower part of the polygon mirror [C].

The L2 lens [F] corrects the main scan line. Without this component, the line bends out towards the middle of the main scan. The central bend of the L2 lens is adjusted in the factory.

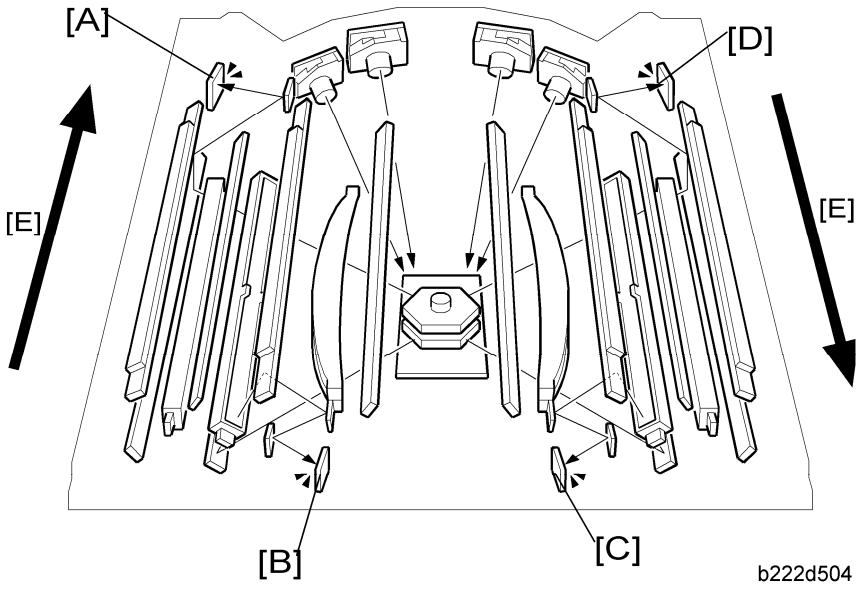
The speed of the polygon mirror depends on the selected mode and model (see below).

Mode	Resolution (dpi)	Polygon motor speed (rpm)	Process line speed (mm/s)	Copy speed (cpm)	Remarks
B/W (except OHP/Thick paper)	600 x 600	B222: 36,377 B224: 24,212	B222: 154 B224: 205	B222: 35 B224: 45	Only B224: 2 beams
	600 x 600 4bits	36,377	77	B222: 17.5 B224: 17.5	
Color (except OHP/Thick paper)	600 x 600	B222: 36,377 B224: 24,212	B222: 154 B224: 205	B222: 35 B224: 40	Only B224: 2 beams
	600 x 600 4bits	36,377	77	B222: 17.5 B224: 17.5	

Laser Exposure

OHP/Thick	600 x 600	27,165	115	25 (B/W) 22.5 (Color)	
	600 x 600 4bits	36,377	77	17.5	

6.5.3 LASER SYNCHRONIZING DETECTORS



Overview

The machine has four laser synchronizing detector boards (LSD). There is one at each corner of the laser optics-housing unit.

The four LSD boards detect the following:

- [A]: Scanning end position for yellow and cyan
- [B]: Scanning start position for yellow and cyan
- [C]: Scanning end position for magenta and black
- [D]: Scanning start position for magenta and black.

The machine recognizes each color from the time that they are detected.

Main Scan Start Detection

For magenta and black, the LSD at the rear detects the start of the main scan. For yellow and cyan, the LSD at the front detects the start of the main scan. The arrow [E] indicates the scanning direction.

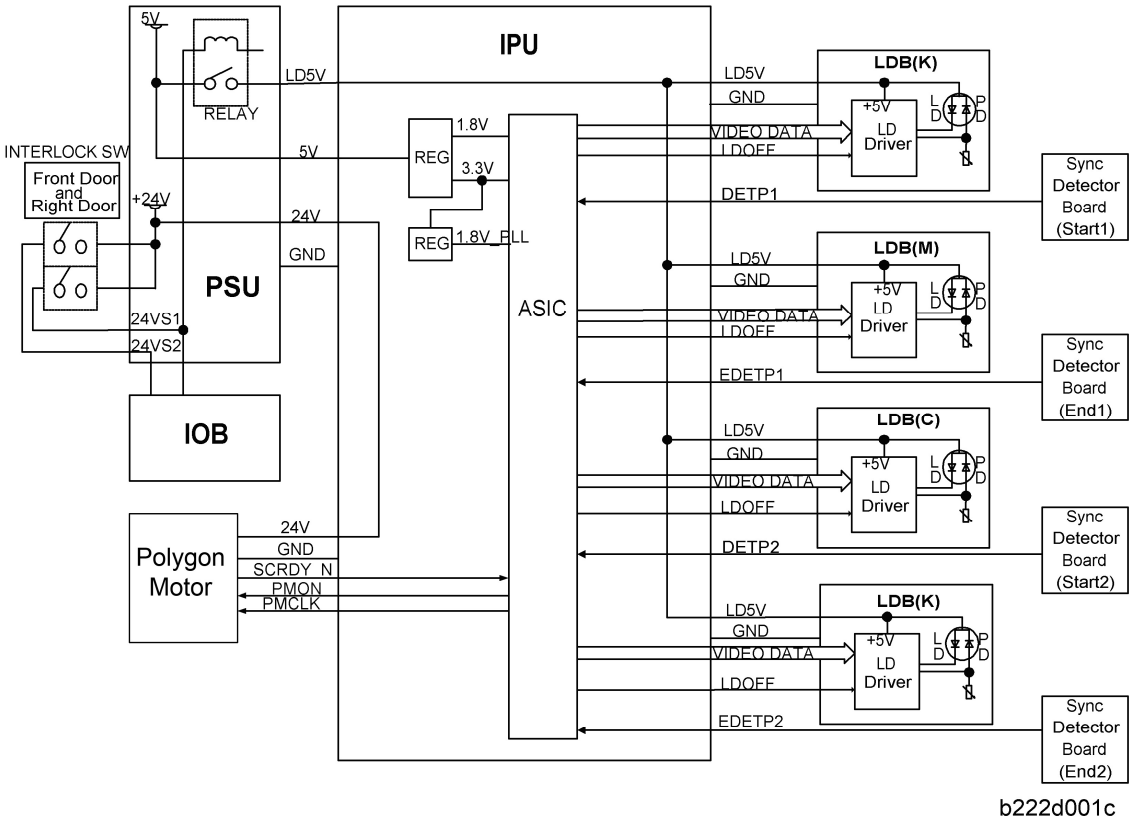
Clock Frequency Adjustment

Each LSD ensures that the number of laser clock pulses in the main scan is constant. If the count for one particular beam varies from normal, the LD clock frequency for that beam is adjusted.

If the board at the end position is defective, the clock frequency cannot be adjusted. At this time, you must disable the detection feature with SP2-186-1.

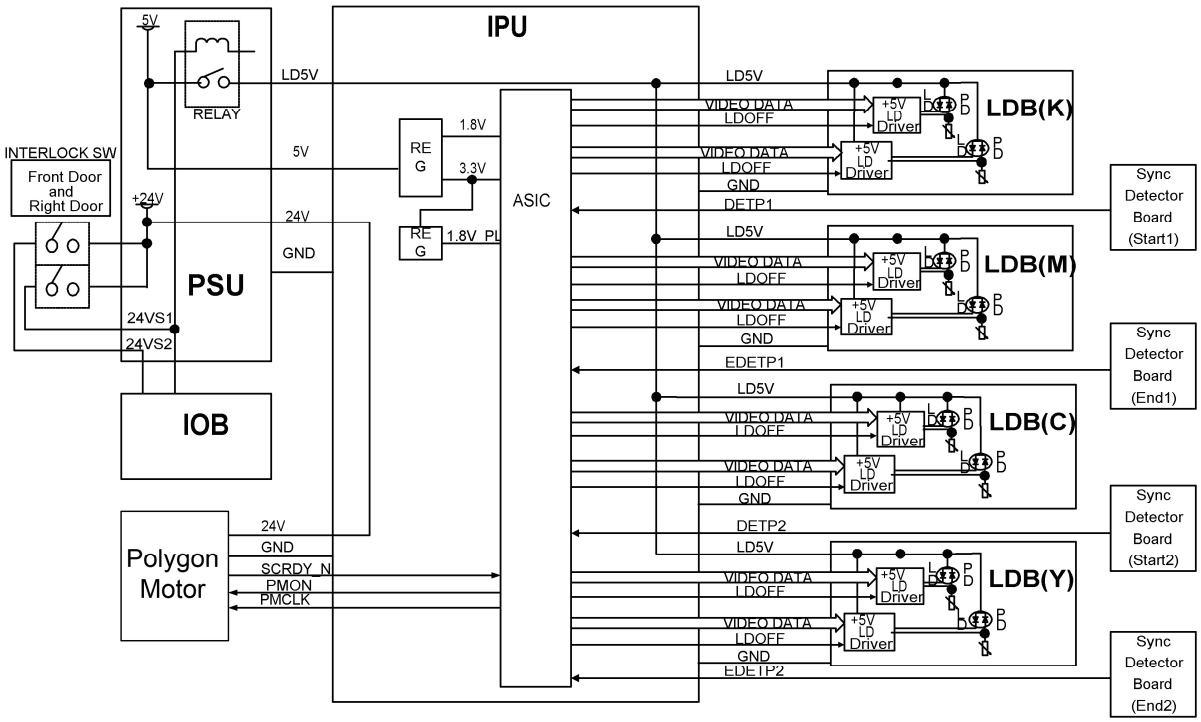
6.5.4 LD SAFETY SWITCH

Model B222



b222d001c

Model B224



b222d001c

A relay on the PSU ensures technician and user safety. It also prevents the laser beam from turning on during servicing. This relay turns off when the front cover, upper left cover, or right door is opened. At this time it cuts the power (+5V) supplied to the LD board for each color through the IPU.

The safety switches are opened or closed by the front door or right door, and this opens the relay.

- PMAC: Precise Pulse Modulation ASIC on C-MOS technology
- LDB: LD Drive Board (included in the LD Unit)

Error Messages

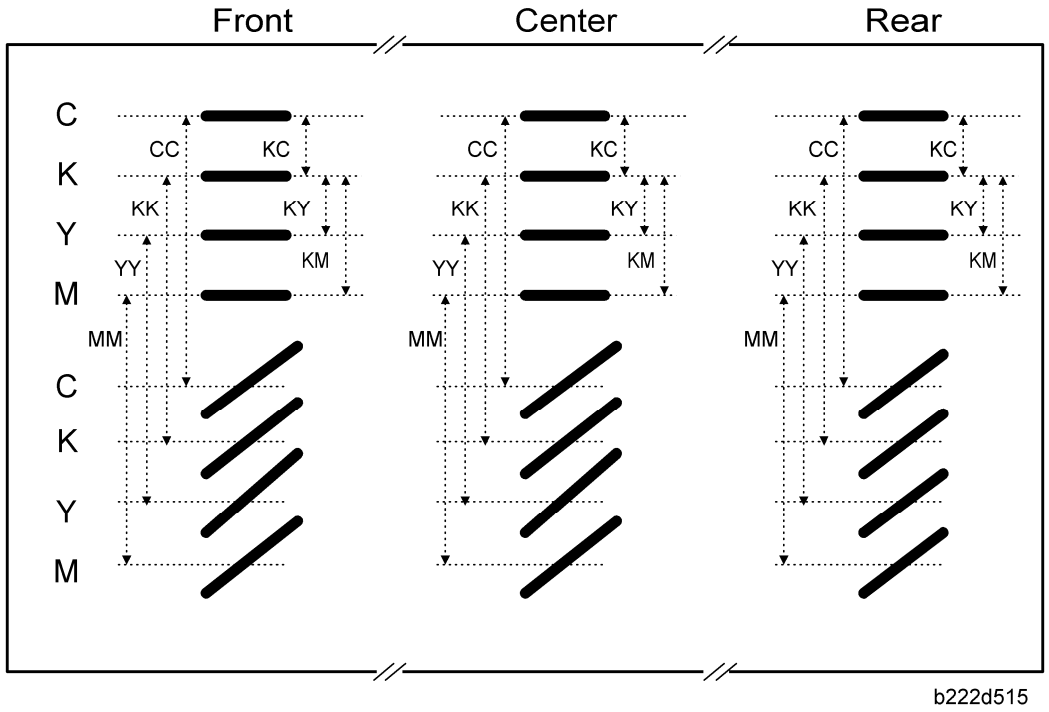
Along with other switches, the LD safety switches help show error messages related to external covers. When one or more covers are open, the messages, “Cover is open.” and “Close the indicated cover,” show with a diagram. The diagram shows which cover is open.

6.5.5 AUTOMATIC LINE POSITION ADJUSTMENT

Overview

CC, KK, YY, MM: Spaces between two lines of the same color

KC, KY, KM: Spaces between a black line and a color line



During automatic line position adjustment, the line patterns above are created eight times on the transfer belt. The spaces between the lines (CC, KK, YY, MM, KC, KY, KM) are measured by the front, center, and rear ID sensors. The controller takes the average of the spaces. Then it adjusts the following positions and magnification:

- Sub scan line position for CMY
- Main scan line position for CMY
- Magnification ratio for CKMY
- Skew for CMY

The transfer belt-cleaning unit cleans the transfer belt after the patterns are measured.

SC285 shows if an error is detected four times consecutively.

Summary of Each Adjustment

Sub scan line position for YCM

The adjustment of the sub-scan line position for YCM is based on the line position for K (color registration). The machine measures the gaps between the lines of each color in the pattern on the transfer belt. If the gaps for a color are not correct, the machine moves the

image of the color up or down the sub scan axis. To do this, it changes the laser write timing for that color.

Main scan line position for YCM

If the machine detects that the image is out of position in the main scan direction, it changes the laser write start timing for each scan line.

Magnification adjustment for KYCM

If the machine detects that magnification adjustment is necessary, it changes the LD clock frequency for the required color.

Skew for YCM

The adjustment of the skew for YCM is based on the line position for K.

Adjustment Conditions

Line position adjustment can be turned on or off with SP2-193-001. However, it is normally recommended to turn on this function.

Line position adjustment timing depends on several SP mode settings. These are described below.

Δt = Time since the previous line position adjustment

ΔT = Temperature change between the temperature of the previous line position adjustment and the current temperature

Forced (SP2-111-001 to -003):

This activates the line position adjustment manually. There are three types of line position adjustment mode. See the SP table for details.

Initial:

This starts automatically when the power is turned on, or when the machine recovers from the energy saver mode.

Line position adjustment is automatically done **twice** if one of these conditions occurs:

1. Δt > Time threshold (SP2-193-012: [default: 600 minutes])
2. ΔT > Temperature threshold (SP2-193-011: [default: 10°C])

Line position adjustment is automatically done **once** if one of these conditions occurs:

1. Δt > Time threshold (SP2-193-009: [default: 300 minutes])
2. ΔT > Temperature threshold (SP2-193-008: [default: 5°C])

Interval: During job:

This interrupts printing and then starts automatically if one of these conditions occurs when the machine checks at the sheet interval specified with SP3-512-001 (default: 30 pages).

Line position adjustment is automatically done **once** if one of these conditions occurs:

1. Δt > Time threshold (SP2-193-009: [default: 300 minutes])

2. ΔT > Temperature threshold (SP2-193-008: [default: 5°C])
3. B/W counter (SP3-510-005) + Color counter (SP3-510-006) > Output threshold for all outputs (SP2-193-004: [default: 200 pages])
4. Color counter > Output threshold for color outputs (SP2-193-005: [default: 200 pages])

Interval: Job end:

This starts automatically at the end of a print job.

Line position adjustment is automatically done **once** if one of these conditions occurs:

1. Δt > Time threshold (SP2-193-009: [default: 300 minutes])
2. ΔT > Temperature threshold (SP2-193-008: [default: 5°C])
3. B/W counter (SP3-510-005) + Color counter (SP3-510-006) > Output threshold for all outputs (SP2-193-002: [default: 500 pages])
4. Color counter > Output threshold for color outputs (SP2-193-003: [default: 200 pages])

Front door open/close:

This starts automatically when the front door is opened/closed.

Line position adjustment is automatically done **once** if one of these conditions occurs:

1. Δt > Time threshold (SP2-193-009: [default: 300 minutes])
2. ΔT > Temperature threshold (SP2-193-008: [default: 5°C])

In stand-by mode:

This is automatically done **once** if both conditions occur at the same time. However, it is not done if the machine is in the energy saver mode.

1. Δt > Time threshold (SP2-193-009: [default: 300 minutes]) or ΔT > Temperature threshold (SP2-193-008: [default: 5°C])
2. B/W counter (SP3-510-005) > Output threshold for B/W outputs (SP2-193-002: [default: 500 pages]) or Color counter > Output threshold for color outputs (SP2-193-003: [default: 200 pages])

After new PCU or Image Transfer Belt Unit detection

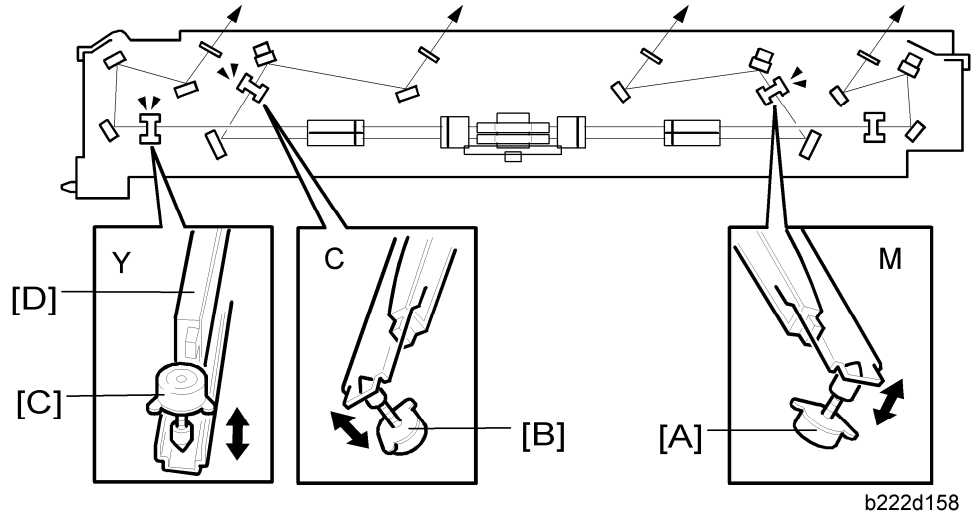
When the machine detects a new unit (one of the PCUs or the Image Transfer Belt Unit), line position adjustment is automatically done **twice**.

If the main scan magnification changes

This is detected by the main scan synchronization detectors at each end of the scan line for each color.

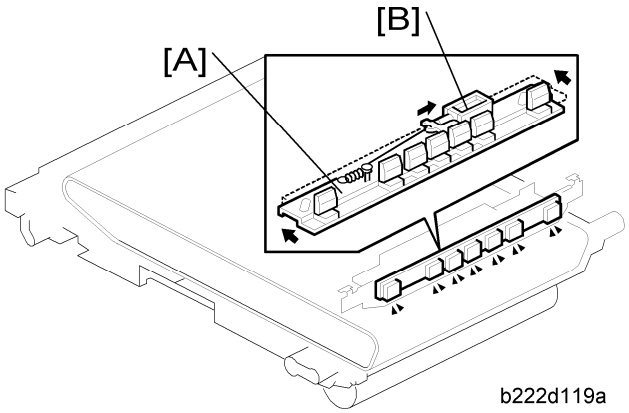
If the magnification changes by more than 1% (threshold adjustable SP2-193-010), line position adjustment is done again.

Main Scan Skew Adjustment



The L2 lens positioning motors for magenta [A], cyan [B], and yellow [C] adjust the angle of the L2 lens [D] respectively, based on the L2 lens position for black. This mechanism corrects main scan skew.

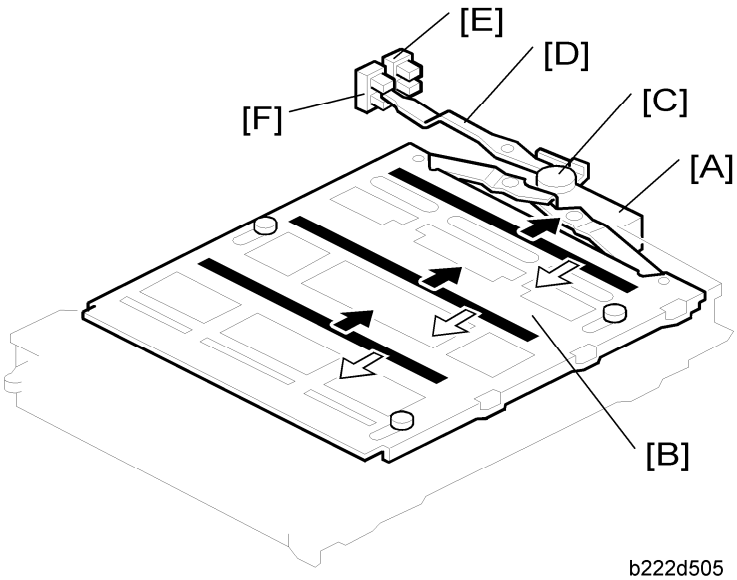
ID Sensors



There are seven ID sensors. Three of them are for the line position adjustment. Four of them are for process control. The ID sensor shutter [A] covers the sensors when the machine is idle.

When the ID sensor shutter solenoid [B] is activated, ID sensor shutter [A] slides to the left. This mechanism prevents the ID sensors from becoming dirty with toner or dust.

6.5.6 SHUTTER MECHANISM



b222d505

The laser optics housing unit has a shutter. As a result, toner and other dust do not fall on the glass of the laser optics housing. The shutter motor [A] moves the shutter [B] in the direction of the arrow with the cam [C] (to open: black arrow direction, to close: white arrow direction).

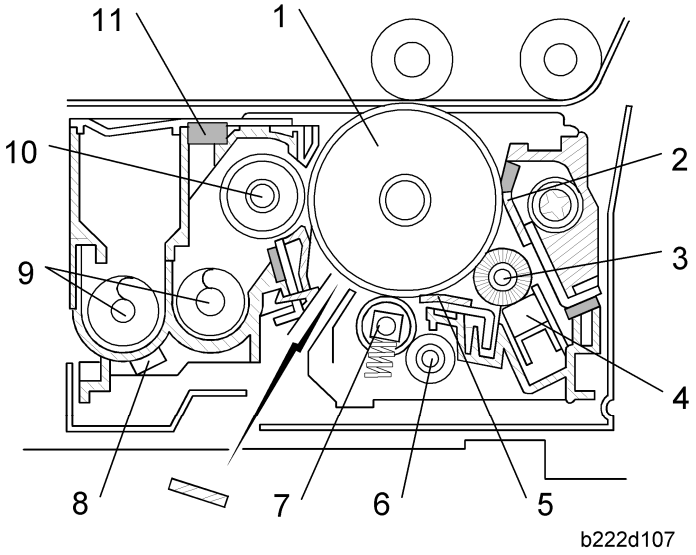
First, the actuator [D] stays at the shutter closed sensor [E]. The shutter motor opens the shutter and the actuator moves to the shutter open sensor position [F] after the polygon motor has turned on.

Finally, the shutter motor closes the shutter and the actuator moves back to the shutter closed sensor position [E] after the polygon motor has turned off.

One of SC290 to 296 occurs if the output of the shutter open [F] or closed sensor [E] does not change after the shutter motor turned on.

6.6 PCU (PHOTO CONDUCTOR UNIT)

6.6.1 OVERVIEW

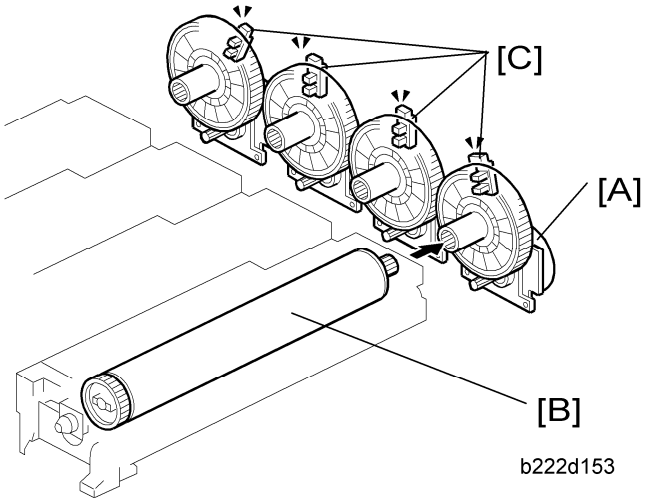


1. OPC drum 2. Cleaning blade 3. Brush roller 4. Lubricant bar 5. Lubricant application blade 6. Cleaning roller (charge roller)	7. Charge roller (non-contact) 8. TD sensor/ID chip 9. Mixing auger 10. Development roller 11. Inner pressure adjustment filter

This machine has four tandem PCUs. Therefore, four color developments are possible during one paper path. This improves the productivity of outputs in color printing mode.
Each PCU contains identical components (drum unit, development unit and so on), but the PCUs are not interchangeable.
The diameter of the drum is 40 mm (circumference: about 125.7 mm).
The photoconductor gap between a drum and the corresponding development roller is not possible to adjust because these are assembled as a PCU at the factory.
The ID chip is part of the TD sensor assembly. The ID chip contains counters and other data about the PCU, drum unit, and development unit. If you replace the development unit with a new one, the counter information for the drum unit is not kept on the new ID chip.

6.6.2 AROUND THE DRUM

Drum Drive



Each PCU has its own drum/development drive motor [A]. The drum/development motor drives the drum [B] of each PCU.

Also, each drive gear has its own drum gear position sensor [C]. The drum gear position sensor detects the position of each drum gear, so that the four PCUs are aligned. The signal from these sensors are used for "Phase Control" as described next. This motor is a brushless DC motor. This helps to reduce the drive noise.

Phase Control Mechanism

The machine uses the drum gear position sensors to detect if the drum motors rotate. SC380 shows when it detects that the drum motor is not moving. These sensors also help the machine to initialize the relative positions of the gears when the main switch is turned on, and during initializing. This prevents phase fluctuation between printouts that is caused by incorrect gear meshing at the start of the job.

There is an interrupter on each drum gear. The drum gear position sensors [C] detect the positions of these interrupters. This mechanism makes sure that output quality does not vary.

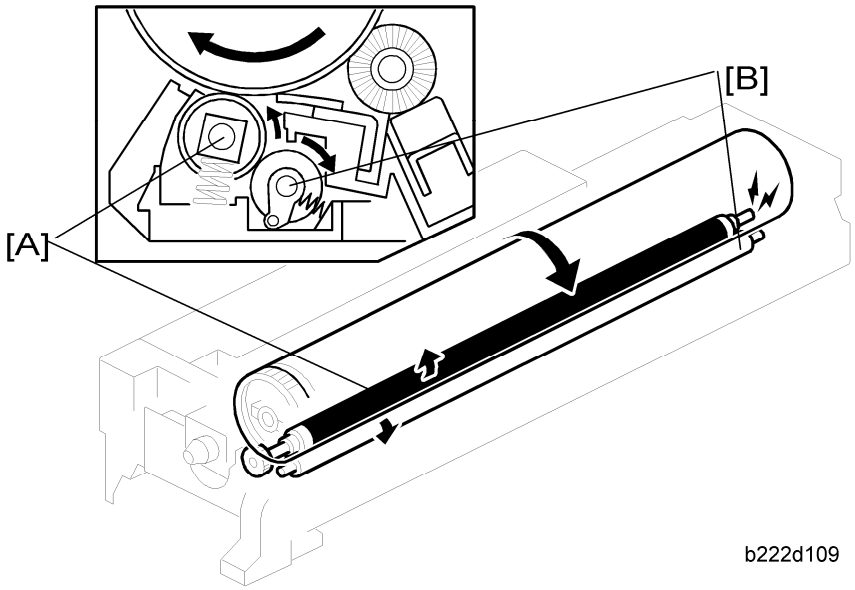
Immediately after the machine power turns on, recovers from the energy saver mode, or the front door is opened and closed, the machine executes the drum phase adjustment if one of the following conditions occurs:

- When a new PCU is installed.
- When a new image transfer belt unit is installed.

Also, if the machine detects a shift in the drum positions during the line position adjustment, the machine executes the drum phase adjustment.

PCU (Photo Conductor Unit)

Drum Charge and Quenching



This machine uses a non-contact charge roller [A] to reduce ozone. The non-contact charge roller gives the drum surface a negative charge. The high voltage supply board, which is located at the rear of the machine, applies a dc and ac voltage (at a constant current) to the roller. The ac voltage helps to ensure that the charge given to the drum is as uniform as possible.

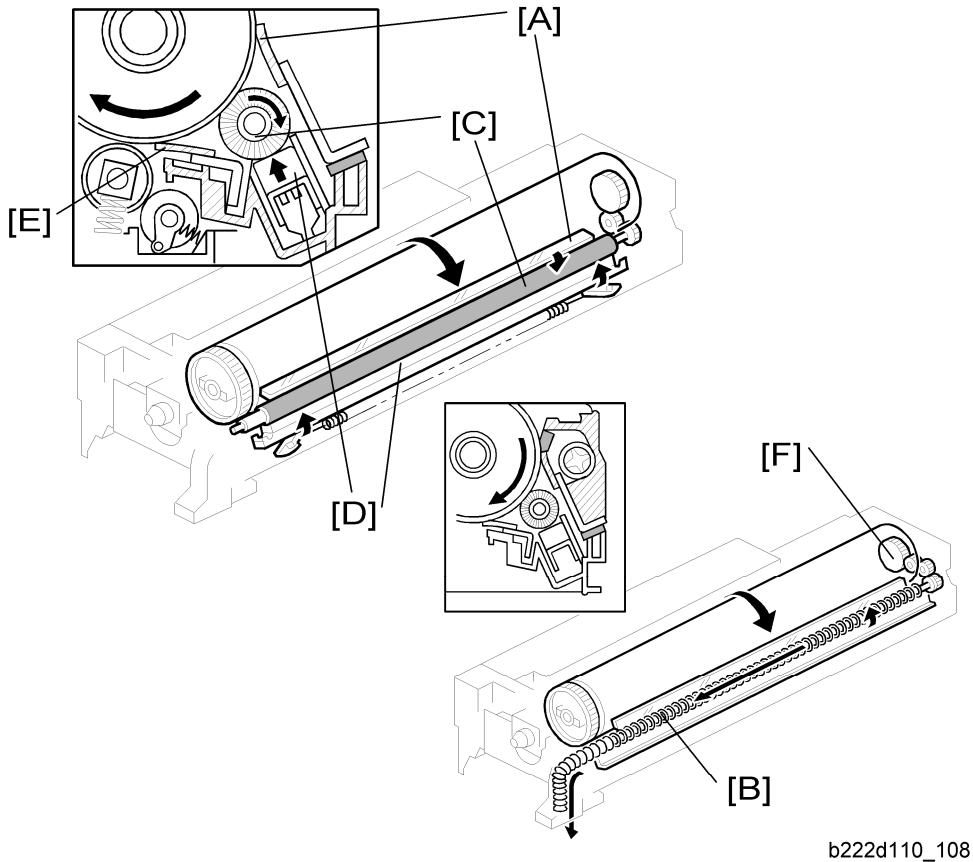
The machine automatically controls the charge roller voltage if automatic process control is enabled (i.e., if SP3-041-1 is set to "CONTROL"). However, if process control is switched off, (i.e., if SP3-041-1 is set to "FIXED"), the dc voltage is the value stored in SP2-001-1 to -12 (do not adjust in the field unless advised to do so).

The diameter of the charge roller is 12.5 mm (circumference about 39.3 mm). The gap between a drum and the corresponding charge roller is about 50 micrometers.

The cleaning roller [B], which always contacts the charge roller, cleans the charge roller.

Quenching is done by illuminating the whole area of the drum with the laser at the end of every job.

Drum Cleaning



The cleaning blade [A] scrapes off the used toner that stays on the drum. The toner collection auger [B] transports the used toner towards the toner collection duct. Then it goes to the toner collection duct. The brush roller [C] put lubricant on the drum to make toner removal easy the next time the drum rotates past the cleaning blade.

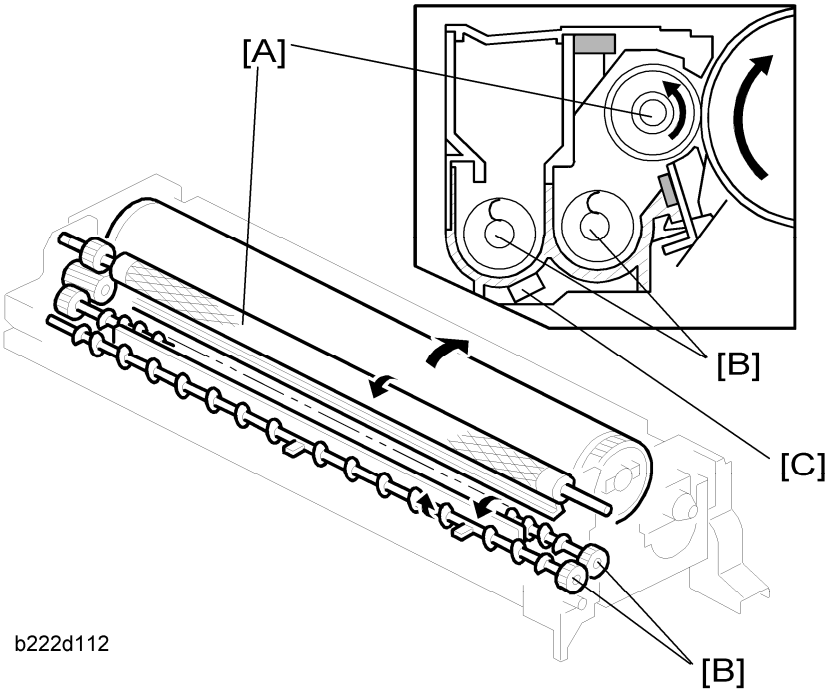
If the temperature is above the value of SP3-517, the drum reverses briefly at the end of the job to prevent the blade from flipping over.

The brush roller rubs against the lubricant bar [D] and lubricates the drum surface. Lubricant is uniformly applied on the surface of the drum by the lubricant application blade [E].

The toner collection auger [B] in each PCU is driven by gears [F] at the end of the drum. This toner then goes to the toner collection bottle (☛" 6.8.1 "Toner Collection Path and Drive"" in this section).

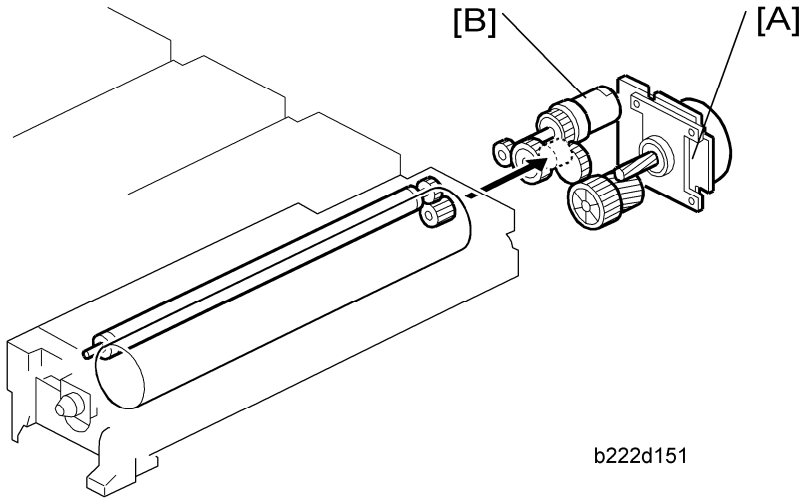
6.6.3 DEVELOPMENT

Development Operation



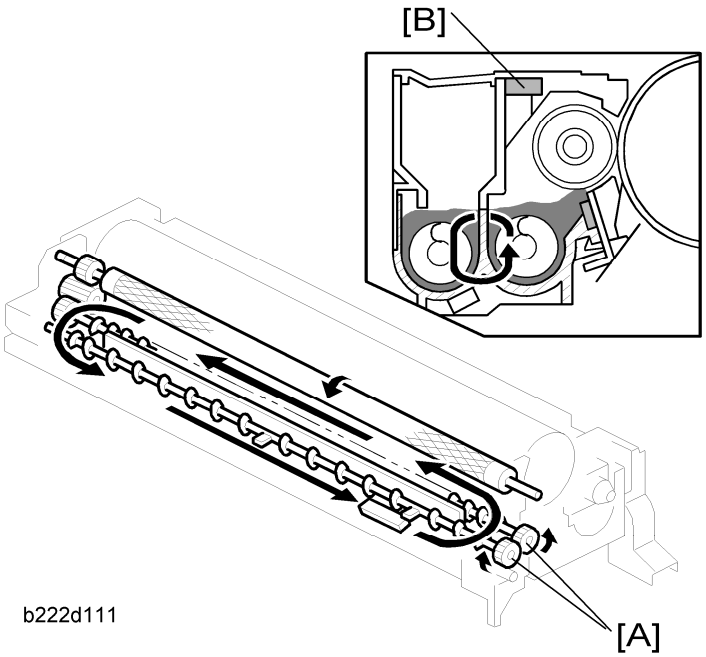
This machine uses a dual-component development system and has four development units (which are included in the drum units), one for each color. Each contains 225 g of developer when it is new. The developer in each unit is supplied to the development roller [A] by the two mixing augers [B] and attracted onto the surface of its roller.
The TD sensor [C] in the development unit and four ID sensors above the ITB control toner density. Each development unit has a TD sensor. The TD sensor contains an ID chip in which some information about the development unit is stored.
The diameter of the development roller is 18 mm (circumference about 56.5 mm).

Drive



Each color (K, Y, M, C) has its own drum/development drive motor [A] and development clutch [B]. Each drum/development motor drives the development roller through gears and development clutch. The gear trains are shown in the diagram.

Developer Agitation



Two mixing augers [A] circulate the developer forward and backward to agitate the developer.

This happens at the following times:

PCU (Photo Conductor Unit)

- During process control self check
- During toner supply
- During development.

Filters [B] on the top of the developer hopper make sure that the internal pressure does not become too high. These ducts are sealed not to let the toner solidify before installing.

This development unit does not operate very well if it has been placed in the condition of over 50°C during transportation. The toner inside the development unit can become solid at temperatures higher that this value. A developer initialization error shows if the toner does become solid. At this time, you must do the following procedure:

Note

- You should also do this procedure when you install a new development unit.

1. Remove the (old) development unit.
2. Keep the (new) development unit level and shake it several times from side to side.
3. Install it in the machine.

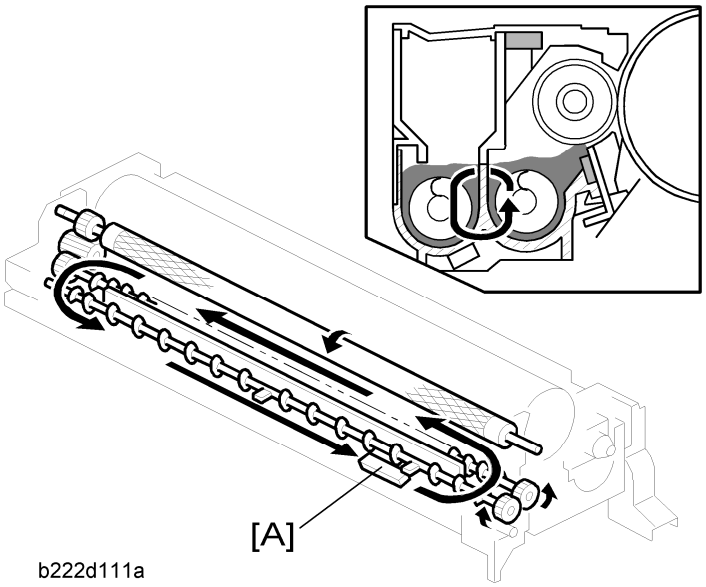
Development Bias

The PSU supplies development bias to the development roller via the receptacle at the rear of each development unit.

There is a dc bias voltage.

The machine automatically controls the dc bias if the automatic process control is enabled (i.e., if SP3-041-001 is set to "1: CONTROL"). However, if process control is switched off, (i.e., if SP3-041-001 is set to "0: FIXED"), the dc bias is the value stored in SP3-621-001 to -012 (do not adjust in the field unless advised to do so).

New Unit Detection



The TD sensor [A] in the development unit has an ID chip that contains the new unit detection flag. The machine detects that a PCU is new if the flag in the ID chip is activated. The machine automatically does the following adjustments when detecting the new unit detection flag.

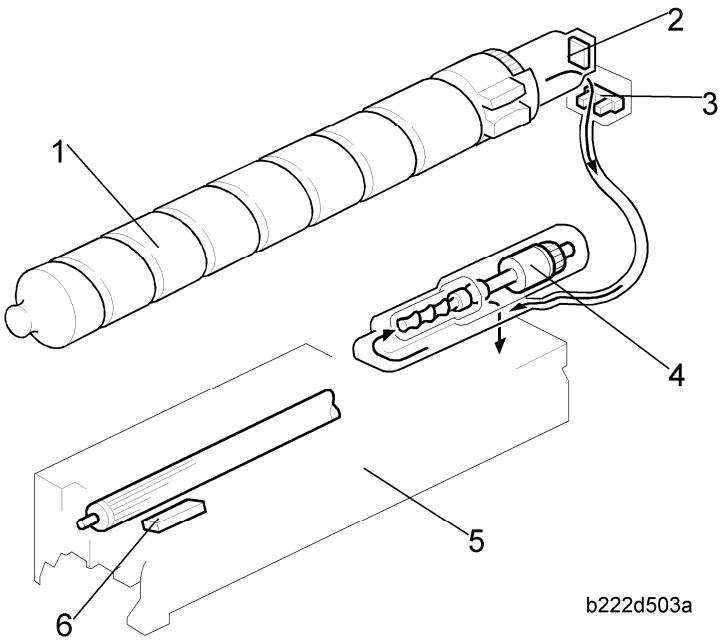
- PM counter clear for items related to the PCU
- Developer initialization
- Charge roller voltage control
- Process control
- Line position adjustment

If the PM counter clear fails, clear the following SPs manually.

- SP3-902-1 to -4
- SP3-902-5 to -8
- SP3-902-9 to -12

6.7 TONER SUPPLY

6.7.1 OVERVIEW



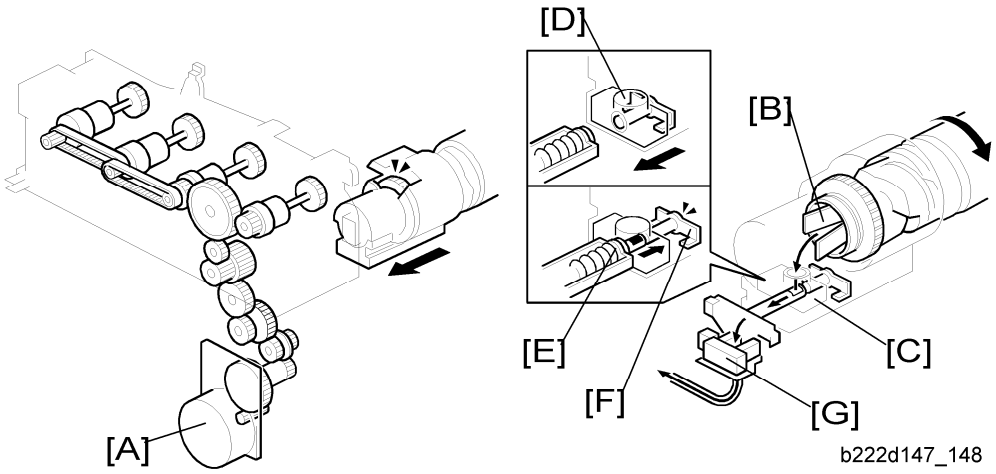
1. Toner bottle (each color)	4. Toner attraction pump (each color)
2. Memory chip (each color)	5. Development unit (each color)
3. Toner end sensor (each color)	6. TD sensor (each color)

This machine uses four toner bottles. Each bottle has a spiral groove in it and its groove moves toner to the toner attraction pump. And the toner attraction pump transports the toner to the development unit.

The toner end sensor is attached to the toner supply tube. The toner end sensor and the output from the process control define when the machine detects toner end.

6.7.2 TONER SUPPLY MECHANISM

Toner supply from toner bottle to toner attraction pump

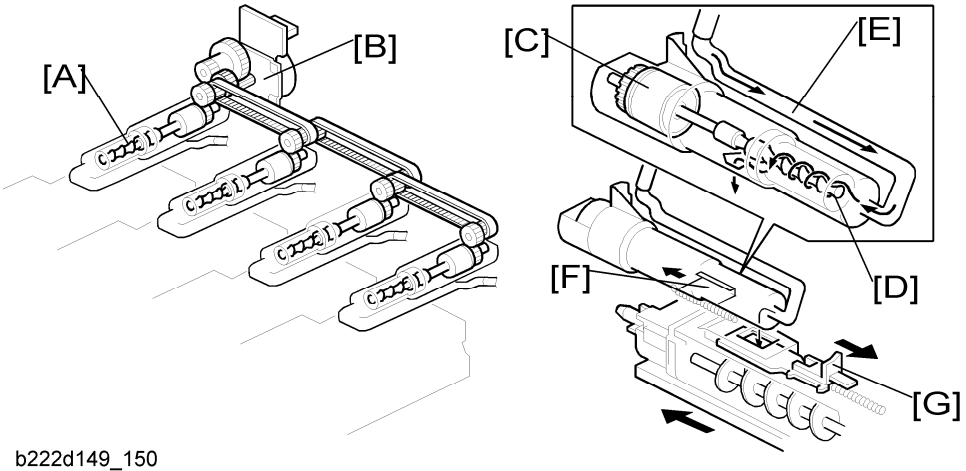


The toner transport motor [A] rotates the toner bottle-Bk via gears and a clutch. It also rotates the toner bottle-Y, -C, -M via gears, clutches and timing belts.
Each bottle has a spiral groove, and this groove moves toner to the mouth [B] of the bottle. Here, toner spills into a hopper [C]. The opening [D] of the toner hopper is normally closed if the toner bottle is not installed in the machine. When the toner bottle is installed in the machine, the transport tube [E] pushes the toner hopper shutter [F] and then the opening of the toner hopper is open.
The toner passes part of the way along the transport tube towards the toner attraction pump. The toner goes through the toner end sensor [G].

Toner Near End Detection

The toner end sensors [G] detect toner near end conditions (☛"6.2.6 "Toner Near End/Toner End Detection"").

Toner supply from toner attraction pump to development unit



b222d149_150

Each toner attraction pump [A] is driven by the toner transport motor [B]. Each toner attraction pump has the same mechanism. The pump (toner attraction pump) has the following components:

- Toner supply clutch [C]
- Rubber tube
- Rotor [D]

The above components attract the toner in the toner transport tube [E] toward the development unit.

The toner supply clutch controls the rotor, which draws the toner in from the cartridge and passes it to the development unit. When supplying toner, the clutch turns on and off as many times as necessary to supply the necessary amount of toner. The amount of toner depends on the results of toner supply control.

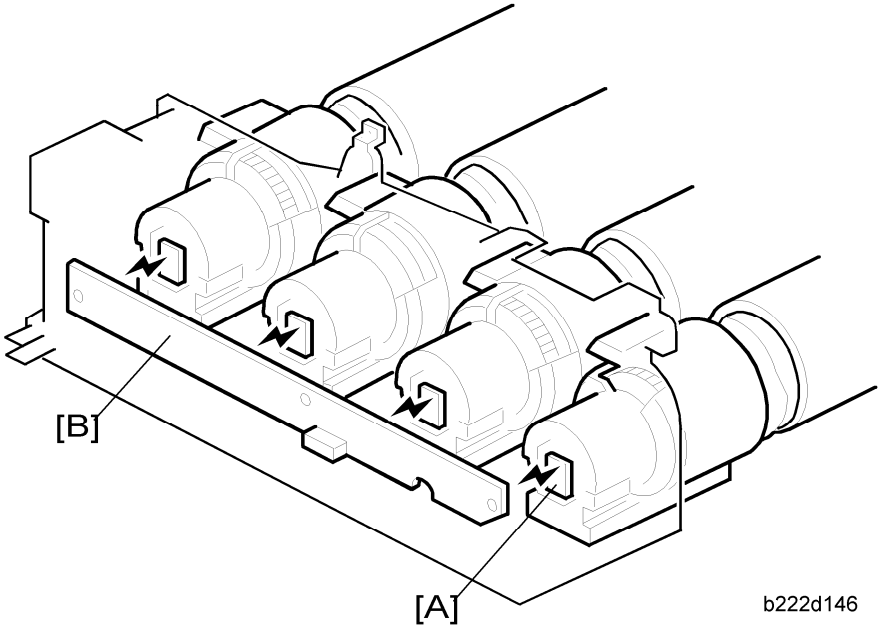
Shutter Mechanism

The development unit and toner attraction pump each have a shutter mechanism. The shutter [F] on the pump opens when the development unit is placed in the machine. At the same time, the pump opens the shutter [G] in the development unit. When both shutters are open, toner can enter the development unit from the toner attraction pump.

The shutter springs pull and close the shutter when the development unit is removed.

6.7.3 TONER CARTRIDGE

RFID (Radio Frequency ID)

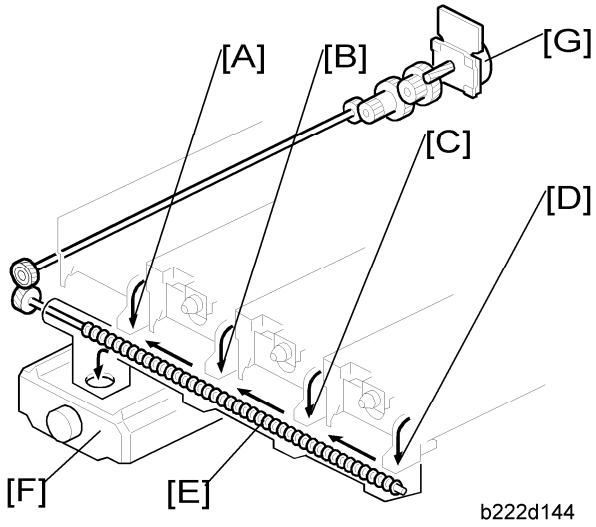


Each toner cartridge of this machine has a RFID chip [A]. This stores the total “on” time of the toner supply clutch. This is used to calculate the amount of toner remaining in the toner cartridge. The chip is also used to detect whether the cartridge is installed (if the cartridge is not installed, the machine does not detect a signal from the memory chip).
The RFID transmits its data to the RFID antenna board [B] without any contact.

6.8 WASTE TONER COLLECTION

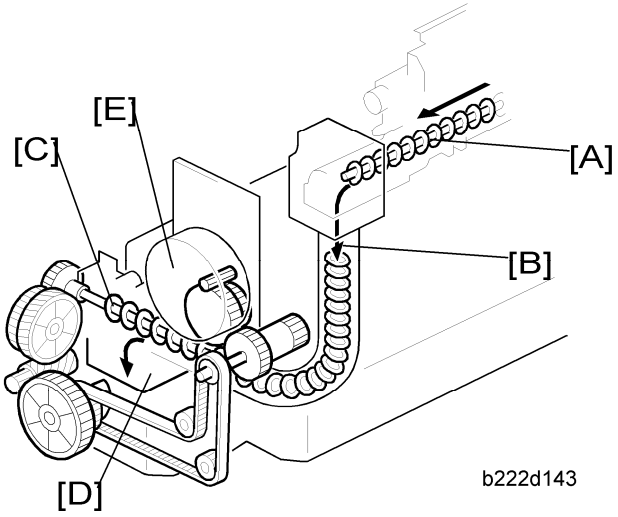
6.8.1 TONER COLLECTION PATH AND DRIVE

From PCU



The used toner from the collection augers in the four PCUs drops into the toner collection duct from the four openings [A][B][C][D] at the front of the PCUs. The toner collection auger [E] in the duct transports this used toner towards the toner collection bottle [F]. The coil [E] is driven by the toner transport motor [G]. The openings and PCUs correspond as follows: Yellow → [A], Cyan → [B], Magenta → [C], Black → [D].

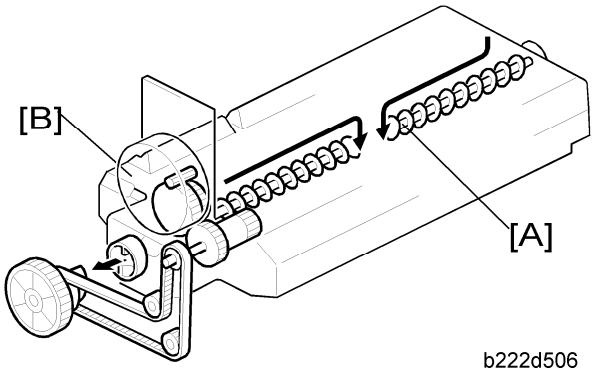
From Image Transfer Belt Unit



The toner collection auger [A] moves the used toner from the image transfer belt and the

used toner drops into the toner collection duct [B]. The toner collection coil [C] moves the used toner to the opening [D] at the rear of the toner collection bottle. The toner transport motor [E] drives the toner collection coil.

Used Toner Distribution Mechanism

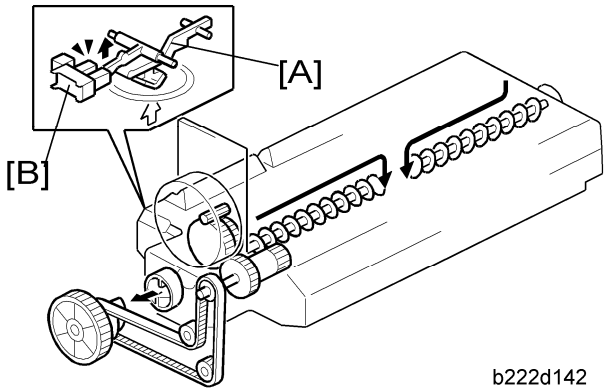


b222d506

The toner collection bottle has two openings (front and rear). The opening at the front is for the toner from the PCUs, and the opening at the rear is for the toner from the image transfer belt.

To distribute the toner inside the bottle evenly, the auger [A] moves the toner to the center area. The mixing auger has two spirals in different directions. As a result, it is possible to gather the toner in the center area of the toner collection bottle even if the mixing auger always rotates in the same direction. The toner transport motor [B] drives the mixing auger via a timing belt and gears.

6.8.2 TONER COLLECTION BOTTLE SET/ NEAR-FULL/ FULL DETECTION



b222d142

The toner collection bottle has a projection at its rear side. When the toner collection bottle is set, this projection pushes the waste toner bottle set switch at the rear of the machine. As a result, the machine detects that the toner collection bottle is installed.

Waste Toner Collection

The bottle near-full/full detection mechanism is above the bottle. When the used toner pushes up the used toner feeler [A], the waste toner sensor [B] turns off

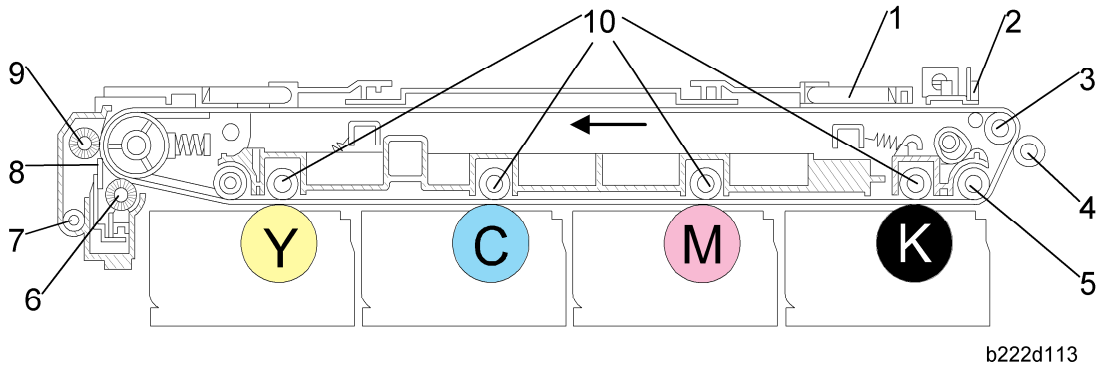
At this time, the machine detects that the toner collection bottle is almost full, and displays a message.

After this, when 500 sheets of paper have been copied, the machine detects that the toner collection bottle is full, and the machine stops.

6.9 IMAGE TRANSFER AND PAPER SEPARATION

6.9.1 IMAGE TRANSFER

Overview

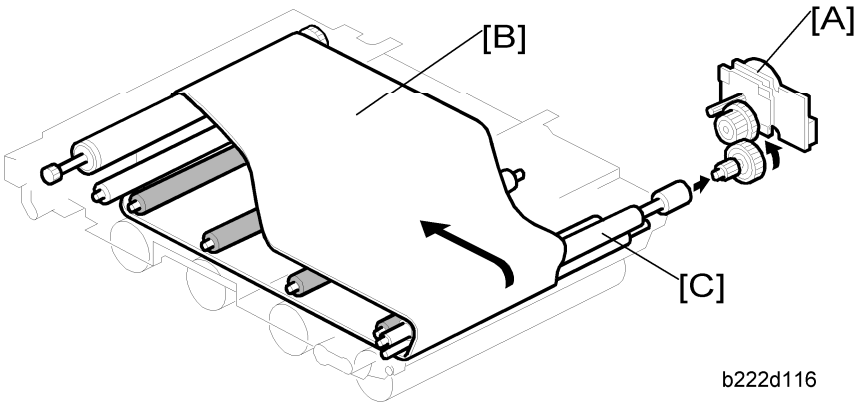


1. Image transfer belt (ITB)	6. Lubricant application roller
2. ID sensor	7. Toner collection auger
3. ITB drive roller	8. Cleaning blade
4. Paper transfer roller	9. Cleaning roller
5. Rotation encoder	10. Image transfer roller

The toner is moved from the four drums to the ITB by the four image transfer rollers. This is done with one rotation of the ITB (four toner images are super-imposed onto the belt). The arrow above the C and M drums on the diagram shows the direction of ITB rotation.
The ITB drive roller then moves the four-color toner image from the transfer belt to the paper. The paper transfer roller is an idle roller.
The cleaning unit in the transfer unit cleans the belt surface with the cleaning blade and roller. The used toner collected from the belt is transported to the toner collection bottle.
There are seven ID sensors. Three of them are for the line position adjustment. Four of them are for process control.

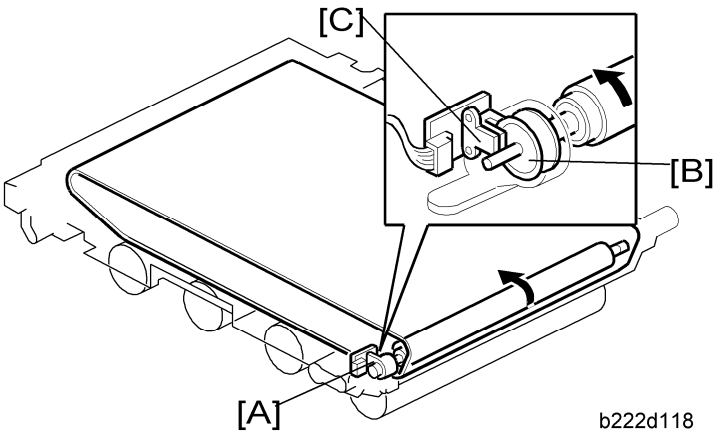
ITB (Image Transfer Belt) Drive

Drive Motor



The ITB drive motor [A] drives the image transfer belt [B] and the cleaning unit via gears and the ITB drive roller [C]. The speed of ITB drive depends on the process line speed (☛ '6.5.2 "Optical Path"').

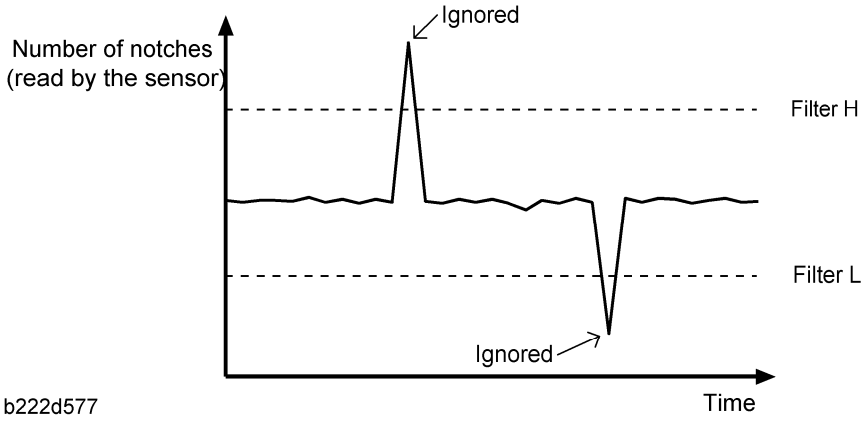
Transfer belt speed control



This machine uses the rotation encoder to control the transfer belt speed.

The encoder [A] is on one of the rollers. This encoder checks the rotation speed of the image transfer belt. The controller analyzes the signals from the encoder. Then it adjusts the rotation speed of the image transfer belt.

The encoder contains a disk that has 550 notches on its surface [B]. These notches are read by the sensor [C]. The controller counts the number of notches that the sensor has read in the unit of time. If the sensor has read an unusually large number of notches or an unusually small number of notches, the controller ignores such unusual signals. Therefore, incorrect reading does not affect the rotation speed.



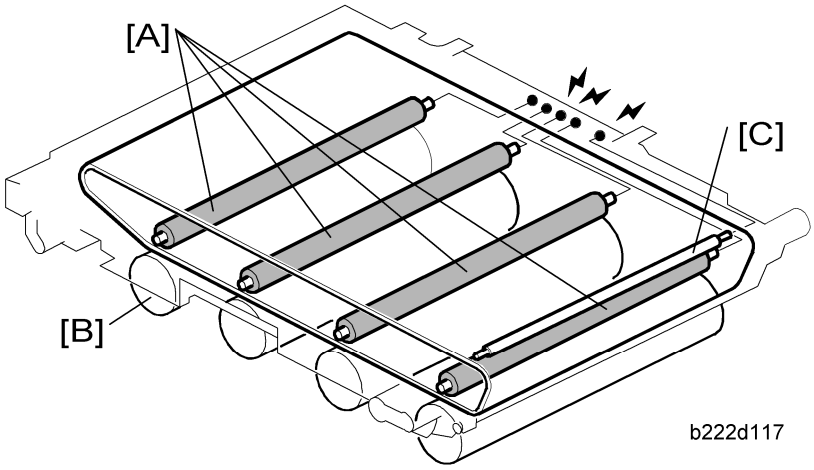
Filter H:

The number of notches read by the sensor when the rotation speed of the transfer belt is at its highest possible value.

Filter L:

The number of notches read by the sensor when the rotation speed of the transfer belt is at its lowest possible value.

ITB Current

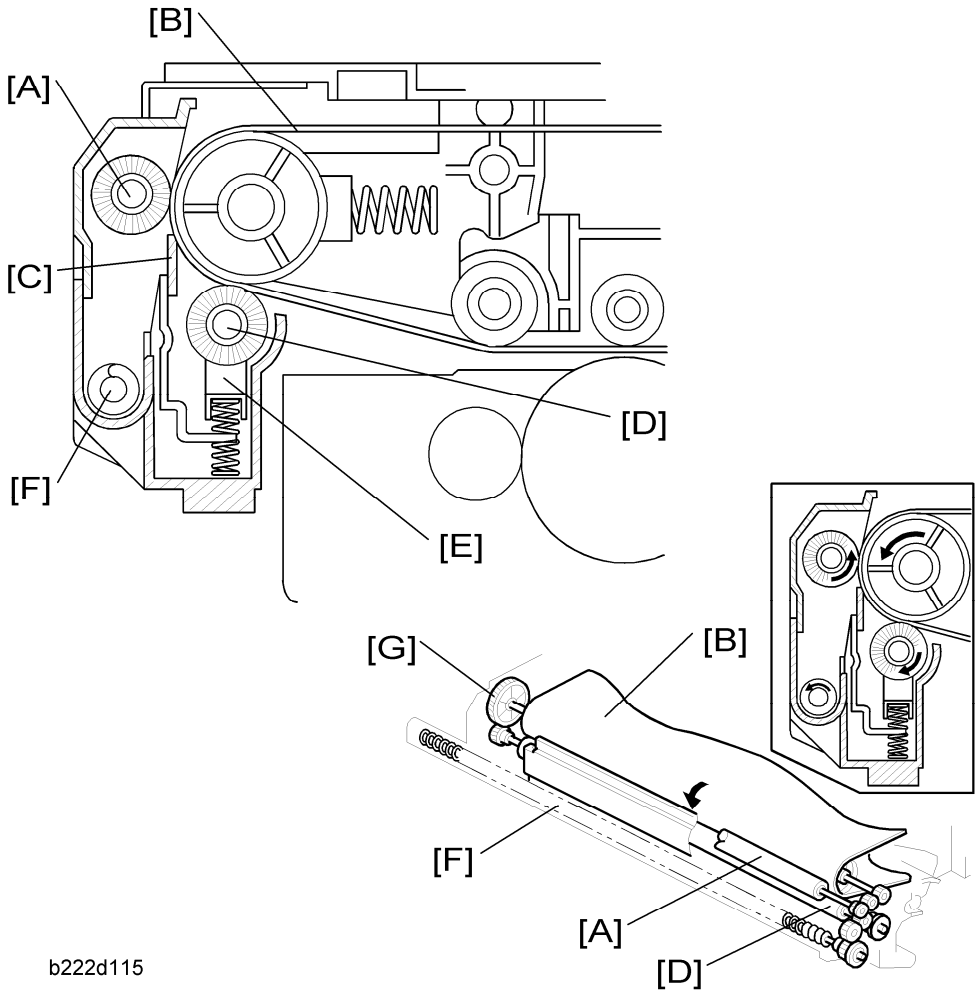


Each image transfer roller [A] applies current to the image transfer belt to attract the toner from each drum [B]. The high voltage supply board supplies current to the image transfer rollers and grounds the belt at roller [C].

The bias that is applied to the image transfer belt is automatically corrected for paper size, temperature (measured by the temperature/humidity sensor at the rear lower right side of the machine).

The other rollers are grounded to neutralize the belt surface.

Transfer belt cleaning



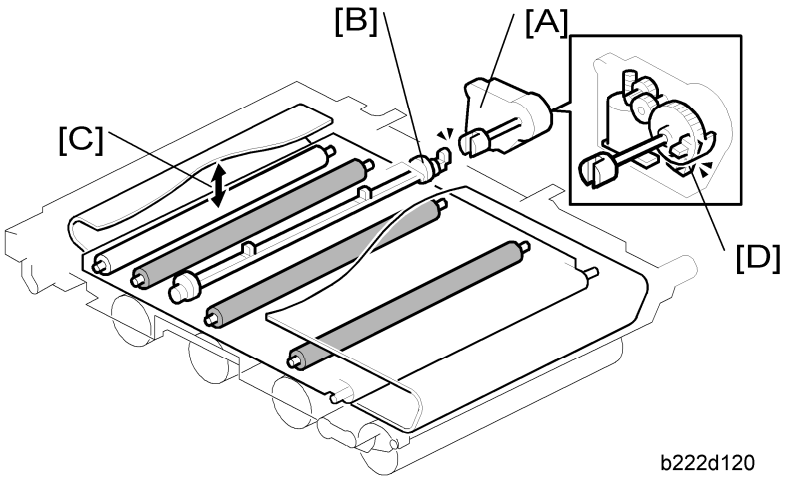
The ITB-cleaning unit removes toner (during printing) and the ID sensor patterns (during process control or automatic line position adjustment) on the belt. Belt cleaning is completed while the image transfer belt makes one rotation. The ITB drive motor drives the ITB-cleaning unit.

The cleaning brush [A] always contacts the image transfer belt [B], and removes used toner from the belt. The cleaning blade [C] in the cleaning unit scrapes the toner off the image transfer belt. Then the toner collection auger [F] transports the toner towards the toner collection duct.

The lubricant application roller [D] applies lubricant [E] to the image transfer belt to make toner removal easy.

To drive the cleaning unit, the transfer belt rotates gear [G], and gears at the front of the transfer unit drive the auger [F] and the rollers [A, D] in the cleaning unit.

ITB (Image Transfer Belt) Contact



Mechanism

The ITB contact and release mechanism increases the lifetime of the image transfer belt and drums.

The drum for black always contacts the belt. But the image transfer belt moves away from the other drums during monochrome printing.

In the standby mode, the image transfer belt contacts only the black drum. It moves away from the black drum when you turn the release lever counterclockwise.

When the machine prints a color page, the machine waits until the previous page has gone through the paper transfer unit. Then the ITB contact motor [A] turns on and a cam [B] moves the left side [C] of the image transfer belt downward, so that it contacts the other three drums.

The machine does not release the image transfer belt from the color drums during the job, even if a monochrome page comes again. This is because the total printing speed reduces if the ITB changes position.

But, if you change SP2-907-001 away from the default setting of zero, the image transfer belt will move away from the color drums if the number of consecutive black-and-white prints reaches the value of SP 2907-001.

The belt moves away from the color drums if the job is interrupted by any error except a power failure.

The image transfer belt contact sensor [D] detects if the image transfer belt contacts the color PCUs.

Note

- If a power failure occurs when the image transfer belt is in contact with the drums, the belt stays in this position. If you want to remove the image transfer belt unit

while the power is still off, you must release the belt. To do this, swing out the controller box. Then turn the drive gear [B] manually.

Transfer Belt Sensor

The ITB contact sensor [D] operates as the detection sensor during machine initialization, and also as the position sensor during machine operations.

Before machine initialization, the left side of the image transfer belt is in the home position. When initialization starts, the ITB contact motor lowers the left side until the actuator has passed the sensor. Then ITB contact motor lifts up the left side to its home position. This action actuates the sensor in a certain pattern.

The table lists the sensor actuation patterns.

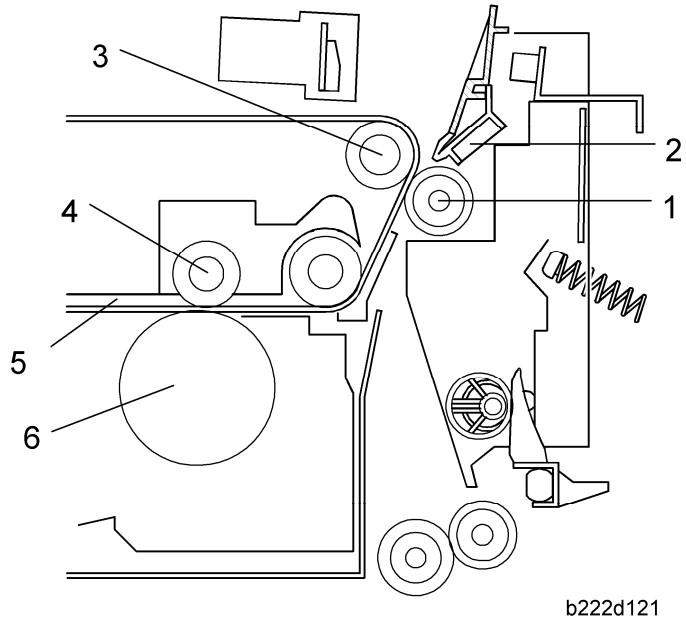
Machine status		Sensor pattern
Initialization		On → Off → On → Off → On
Operation	Standby (Default)	On
	B/W printing	On
	Color Printing	Off

On: The actuator is out of the sensor.

Off: The actuator is interrupting the sensor.

6.9.2 PAPER TRANSFER AND SEPARATION

Overview



1. Paper transfer roller	4. Image transfer roller
2. Discharge plate	5. Image transfer belt
3. ITB drive roller	6. OPC drum

The paper transfer unit consists of the paper transfer roller and discharge plate. This unit completes the toner transfer to the paper.

PTR (Paper Transfer Roller) Drive

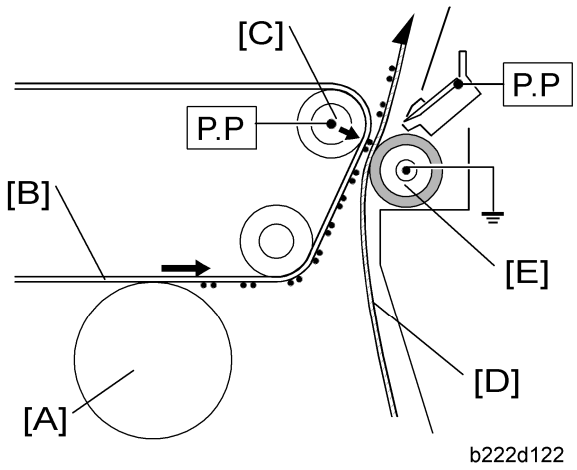


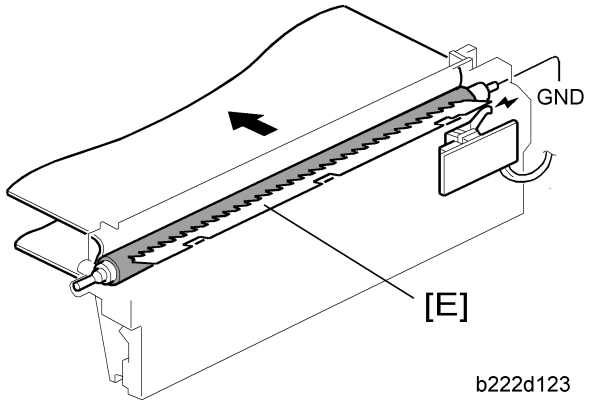
Image Transfer and Paper Separation

Note

- P.P.: Power Pack (ITB power supply board)

The toner is moved from the OPC [A] onto the surface of the image transfer belt [B] by a positive charge from the image transfer roller (immediately above the drum, not shown here). The ITB drive roller [C], which is given a negative charge, pushes the toner to the paper [D].

The paper transfer roller [E] presses the paper against the image transfer belt [B] (with a spring that is under tension from the paper transfer roller contact motor), and grounds the charge from the ITB drive roller [C]. (The paper transfer roller does not have a drive mechanism. This roller is driven by the image transfer belt.)

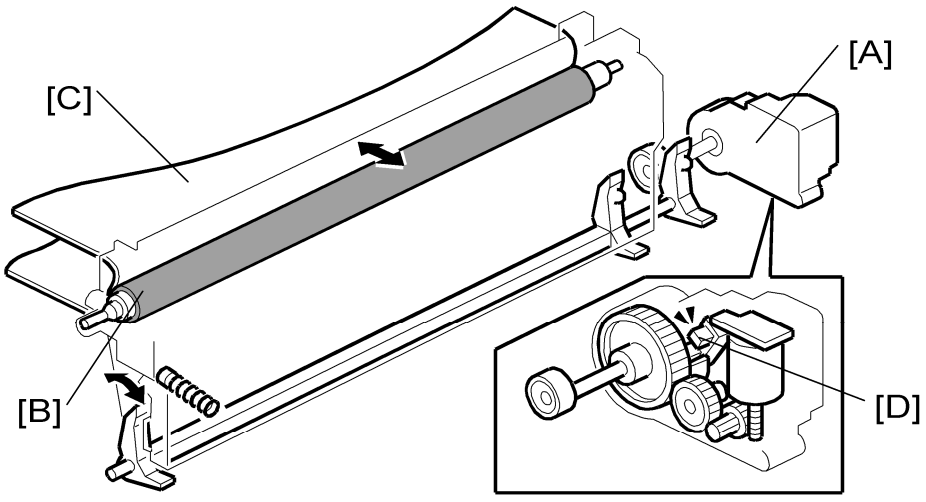


b222d123

Finally, the discharge plate [E], which is given an AC charge, discharges the paper.

The discharge plate receives its charge from a different high voltage power supply board than the ITB drive roller.

PTR (Paper Transfer Roller) Contact and Separation

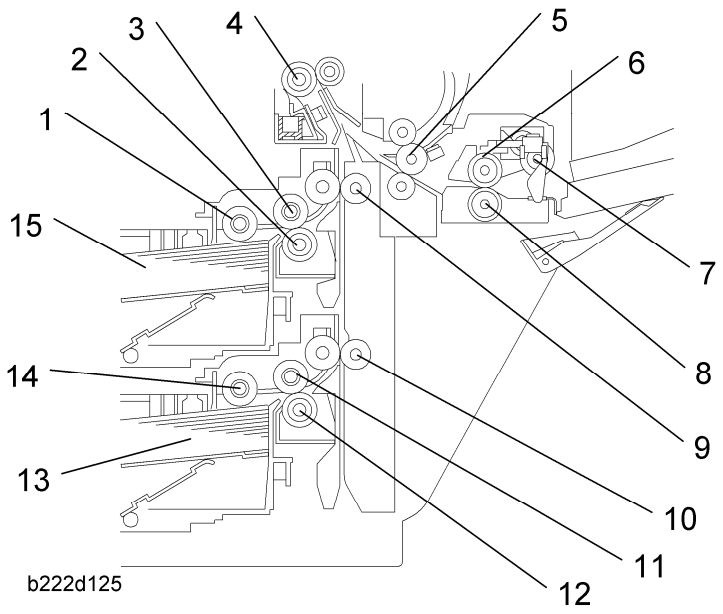


b222d124

The paper transfer contact motor [A] keeps the paper transfer roller [B] in contact with the image transfer belt [C]. This motor has the paper transfer HP sensor [D] inside. The paper transfer HP sensor detects if the paper transfer roller is in contact with the image transfer belt. Only when the machine executes the line position adjustment or process control, the paper transfer unit keeps away from the image transfer belt.

6.10 PAPER FEED

6.10.1 OVERVIEW

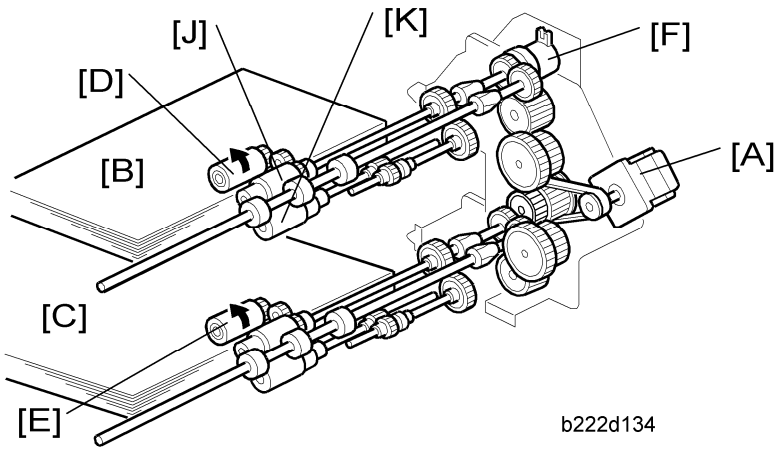


1. Pick-up roller - tray 1 2. Separation roller - tray 1 3. Feed roller - tray 1 4. Registration roller 5. Transport roller - By-pass feed 6. Feed roller - By-pass feed 7. Pick-up roller - By-pass feed	8. Separation roller - By-pass feed 9. Vertical transport roller 1 10. Vertical transport roller 2 11. Feed roller - tray 2 12. Separation roller - tray 2 13. Paper tray 2 14. Pick-up roller - tray 2 15. Paper tray 1

There are two paper trays (500 sheets each), and a by-pass feed table (100 sheets).
The paper feed mechanism uses an FRR system for tray 1, 2 and by-pass tray.
Tray 1 can hold A4 or letter paper only. Tray 2 can hold a range of sizes.

6.10.2 DRIVE – TRAY 1, TRAY 2, AND BY-PASS TRAY

Tray 1 and Tray2



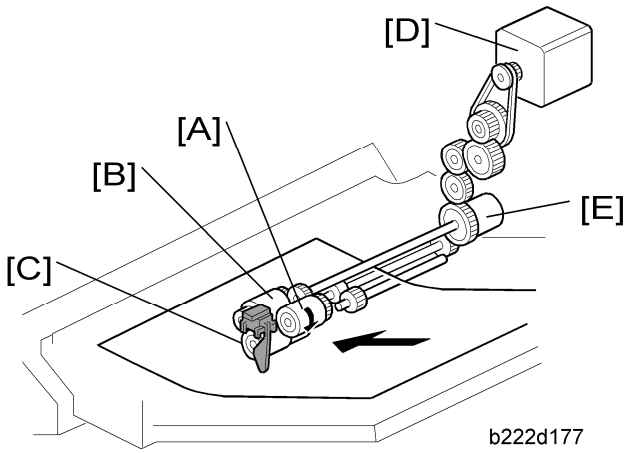
The paper feed motor [A] drives the pick-up and feed mechanisms in tray 1 [B], tray 2 [C]. It uses clutches and complex trains of gears to do this.

When tray 1 and tray 2 are inside the machine, their pick-up rollers [D][E] are always in contact with each top sheet of the paper stack (☛6.10.4 "Paper Lift – Trays 1 and 2").

When the paper feed clutch [F] for tray 1 turns on, the pick-up, feed [J] and separation [K] rollers start rotating to feed the paper. The paper from tray 2 is also fed in the same way.

The paper feed clutch stays on until shortly after the registration sensor activates.

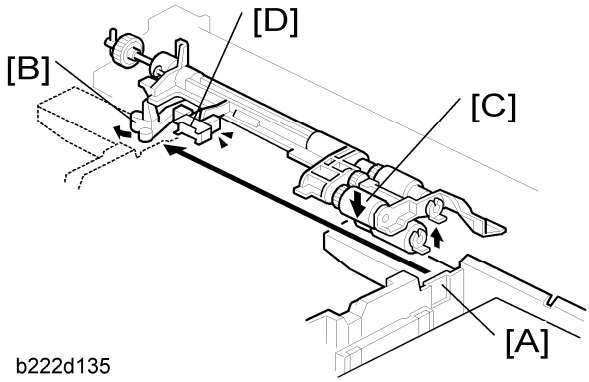
By-pass Tray



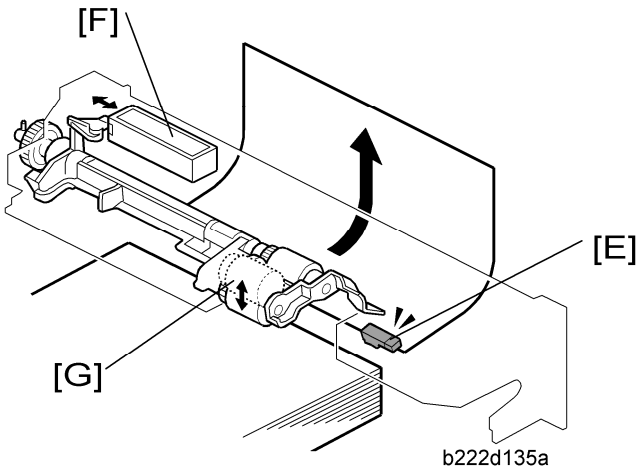
The pick-up roller [A] of the by-pass tray stays away from the top of the stack of paper until the by-pass pick-up solenoid turns on.

The duplex/by-pass motor [D] drives the pick-up, feed [B] and separation roller [C] through the by-pass clutch [E] and gears.

6.10.3 PAPER PICK-UP

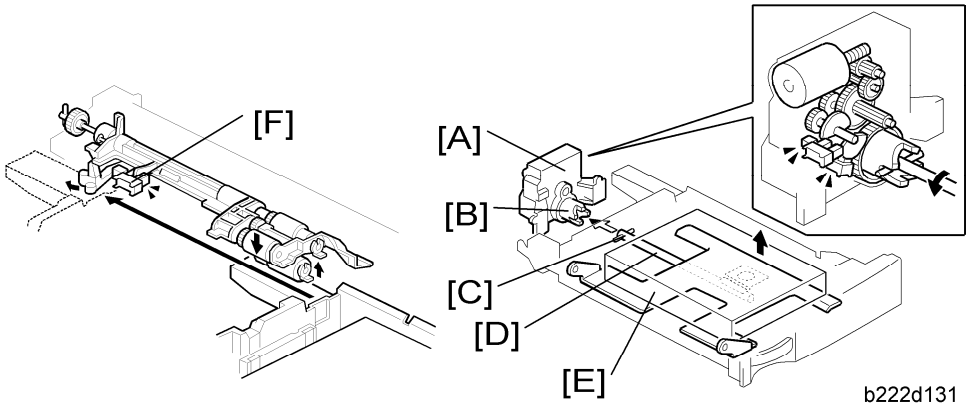


When the tray is installed in the machine, the rear [A] of the tray pushes the lever [B], and this lever pushes down the pick-up roller [C] onto the paper. This turns the paper lift sensor [D] "OFF".



When the paper feed sensor [E] detects the trailing edge of the paper, the pick-up solenoid [F] turns on and off. This lifts the pick-up roller from the top of the stack paper briefly and then releases the pick-up roller. This makes paper pick-up more effective.
The paper feed sensor [E] also controls the paper feed clutch "ON" and "OFF" timing.

6.10.4 PAPER LIFT – TRAYS 1 AND 2

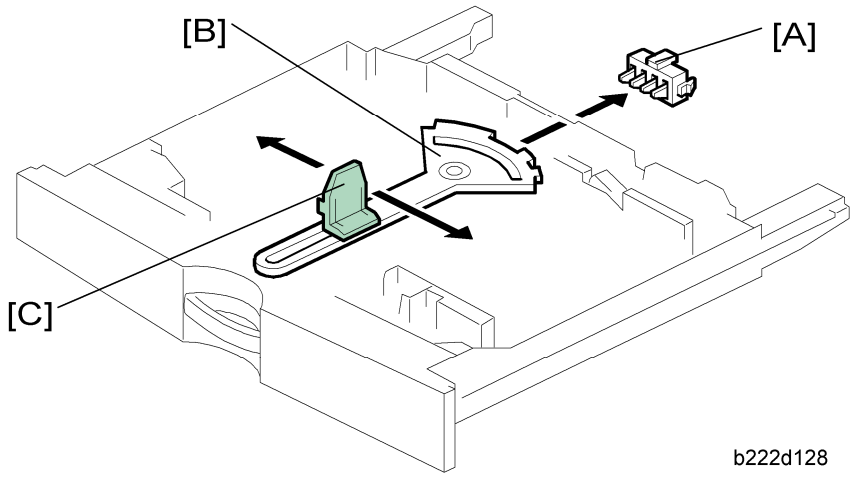


The rear end of the paper tray pushes the tray set switch (for tray 2, this is the paper size switch). As a result, the machine detects that the paper tray is installed.

When the machine detects that a tray has been placed in the machine, the tray lift motor [A] rotates and the coupling gear [B] on the tray lift motor engages the pin [C] on the lift arm shaft [D]. Then the tray lift arm lifts the tray bottom plate [E] until the paper lift sensor [F] for the tray detects that the top of the stack is at the paper feed position.

When the tray is removed from the machine, the connection between the coupling gear and lift arm shaft is disengaged, and the tray bottom plate lowers. After that, the coupling gear is moved to its home position.

6.10.5 PAPER SIZE DETECTION – TRAYS 1 & 2



There is no size switch for tray 1. The paper size is fixed at either A4 or LT (LEF for both sizes). You can change the size setting with SP5-181-1.

Paper Feed

For tray 2, there are four paper size switches [A] working in combination. Switch 1 (right end) is for tray set detection. The other three switches detect the paper size as shown in the table below. The actuator [B] is moved by the end plate [C].

0: Pushed, 1: Not pushed

Models		Switch Location		
North America	**Europe/Asia**	**SW4**	**SW3**	**SW2**
DLT (A3) SEF*1	A3 (DLT) SEF*1	0	0	1
LG (B4) SEF*2	B4 (LG) SEF*2	0	0	0
A4 SEF	A4 SEF	1	1	0
LT SEF	LT SEF	1	1	1
B5 SEF	B5 SEF	0	1	1
LT (A4) LEF*3	A4 (LT) LEF*3	1	0	0
Exe (B5) LEF*4	B5 (Exe) LEF*4	0	1	0
A5 LEF	A5 LEF	1	0	1

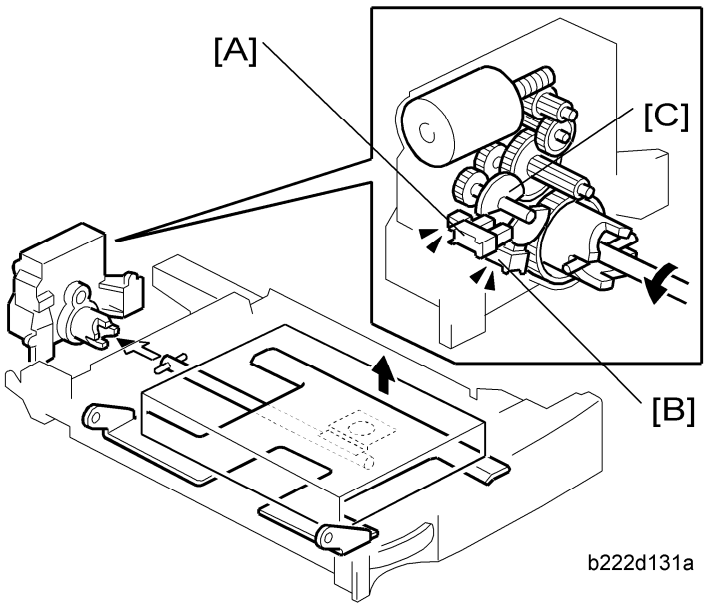
Note

- *1: The machine detects either DLT SEF or A3 SEF, depending on the setting of SP5-181-3.
- *2: The machine detects either LG SEF or B4 SEF, depending on the setting of SP5-181-4.
- *3: The machine detects either LT LEF or A4 LEF, depending on the setting of SP5-181-2.
- *4: The machine detects either Exe LEF or B5 LEF, depending on the setting of SP5-181-5
- SP 5-181-6 to –13 does similar functions for the optional paper trays.

The machine disables paper feed from a tray if the paper size cannot be detected (if the paper size actuator is broken or no tray is installed).

For non-standard paper sizes, if they are not visible on the user tool screen for selecting paper sizes, then set SP 5112 to "1". If the user selects one of these sizes, auto paper size selection is disabled.

6.10.6 PAPER HEIGHT DETECTION – TRAYS 1 & 2



Two paper height sensors [A] [B] and actuator [C] are built into the paper tray lift motor. The paper height sensors, detect the amount of paper in the tray.

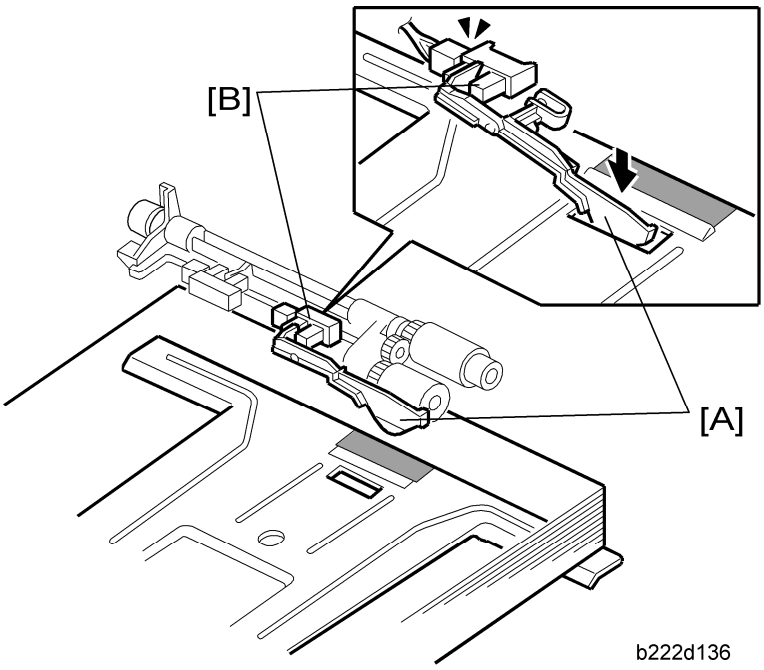
The actuator [C] has two semi-circles, and it is engaged with the lift arm shaft via gears. The paper height sensors detect the paper amount depending on the position of the two semi-circles. The list shown below shows the detection combination of the two sensors.

The paper remaining status bar is displayed in the tray selection icon on the LCD.

Remaining paper	Paper height sensor 1 [A]	Paper height sensor 2 [B]
100% (Status bar x 4)	OFF	OFF
70% (Status bar x 3)	ON	OFF
30% (Status bar x 2)	ON	ON
10% (Status bar x 1)	OFF	ON

OFF: No actuator

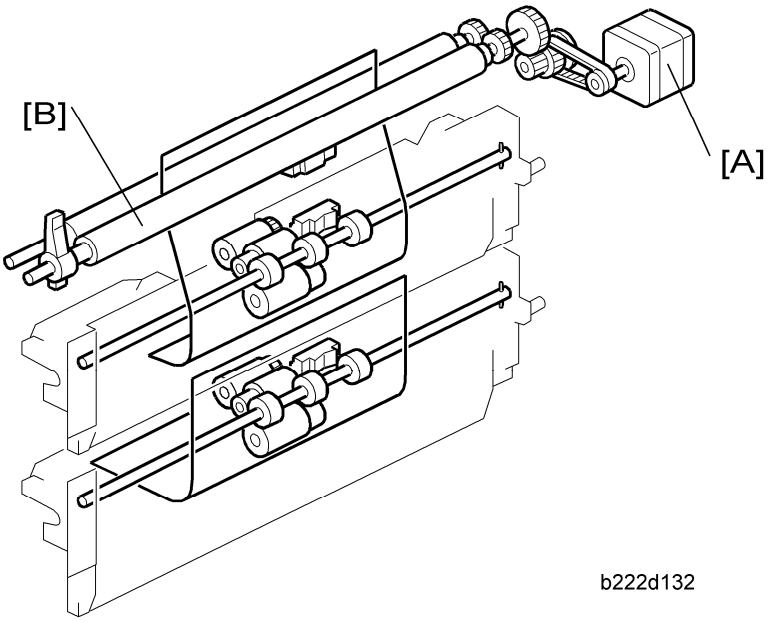
6.10.7 PAPER END DETECTION – TRAYS 1 & 2



The paper stack raises the paper end feeler [A] and the paper end sensor [B] deactivates if there is some paper in the paper tray.

When the paper tray runs out of paper, the paper end feeler [A] drops into the cutout in the tray bottom plate. At this time the paper end sensor [B] activates.

6.10.8 REGISTRATION



The registration motor [A] drives the registration roller [B] with a complex train of gears.

The machine makes a paper buckle at the registration roller to correct paper skew. You can adjust the paper buckle with SP1-003.

6.10.9 PAPER FEED LINE SPEED

This machine has three process line speeds (for feed from registration roller to fusing unit). The line speeds depend on the selected mode.

Model B222

Mode	Resolution	Line speed (mm/s)	Print speed (cpm)
Plain/ Middle Thick	600 x 600 dpi	154	35
	600 x 600 dpi 4-bits	77	17.5
OHP/Thick	600 x 600 dpi	115	25 (B/W) 22.5 (Color)
	600 x 600 dpi 4-bits	77	17.5

Paper Feed

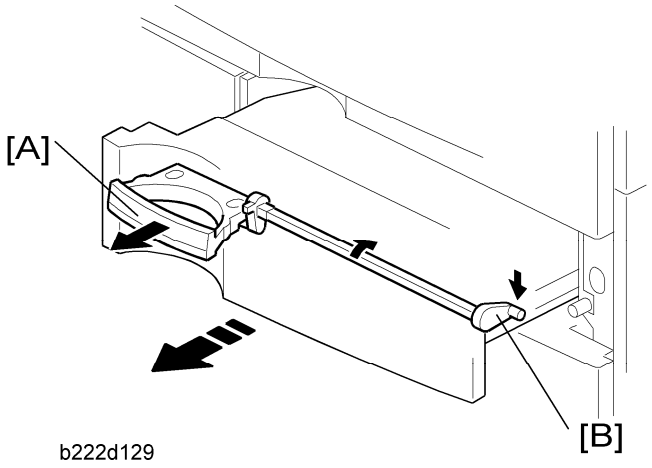
Model B224

Mode	Resolution	Line speed (mm/s)	Print speed (cpm)
Plain/ Middle Thick	600 x 600 dpi	205	45 (B/W) 40 (Color)
	600 x 600 dpi 4-bits	77	17.5
OHP/Thick	600 x 600 dpi	115	25 (B/W) 22.5 (Color)
	600 x 600 dpi 4-bits	77	17.5

6.10.10 TRAY LOCK MECHANISM

This machine has two types of tray lock mechanism.

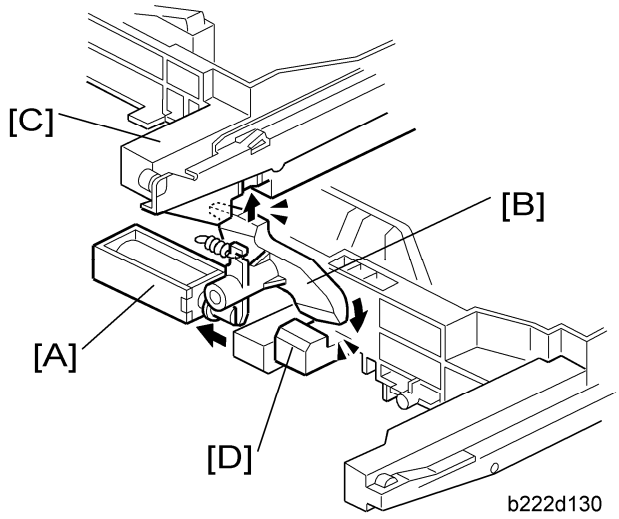
Tray Lock at the Front



b222d129

The lock at the front prevents the tray from coming out of the machine during transporting or shipping. When you pull the handle [A], the lock lever [B] is lowered. As a result, you can pull out the tray.

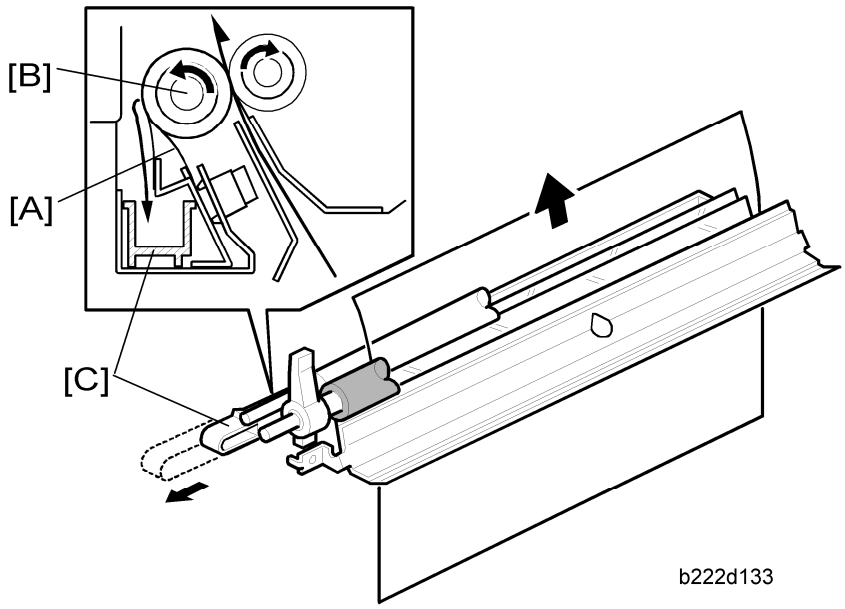
Tray Lock at the Rear



This mechanism is only activated when the machine detects a paper jam. The lock at the rear prevents the tray from coming out from the machine when the paper is jammed. If the tray is removed while the paper is jammed, the paper may be split in two pieces. This makes it difficult to remove the jammed paper.

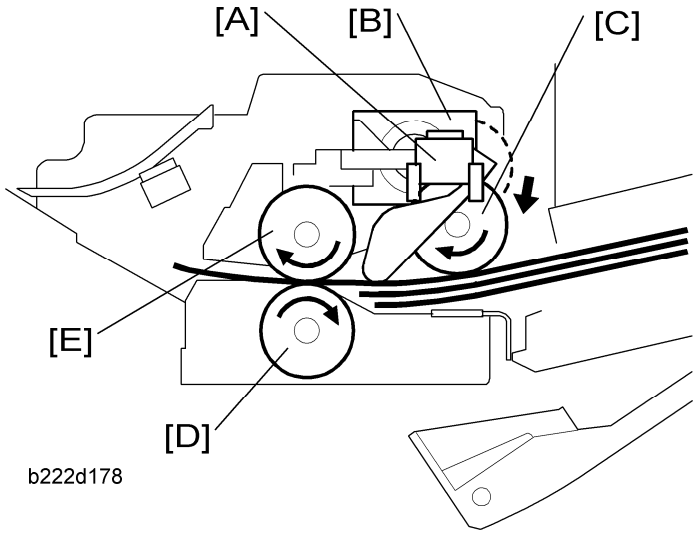
If the paper is jammed, the tray lock solenoid [A] turns on and activates the lock lever [B]. The lock lever [B] locks tray 1 [C] and tray 2 [D].

6.10.11 PAPER DUST COLLECTION



The two mylars [A] scrape the paper dust from the registration idle roller [B]. The paper dust falls down into the paper dust container [C].

6.10.12 BY-PASS PAPER SEPARATION

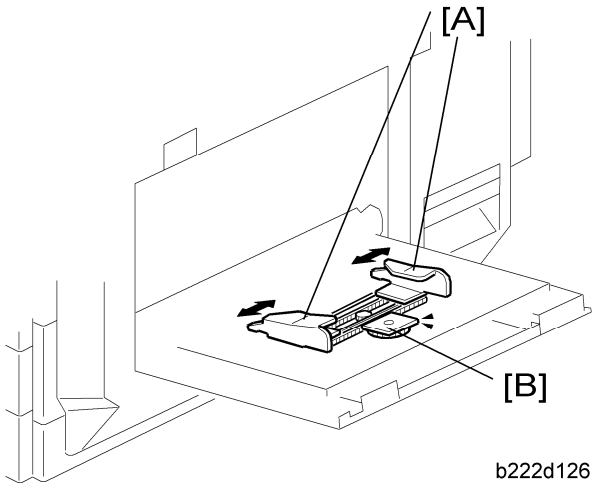


When the by-pass paper detection [A] sensor detects paper and the machine gets a by-pass printing job, the by-pass solenoid [B] drops the pick-up roller [C] onto the top of the paper stack on the by-pass tray. After that, the pick-up roller moves one sheet of paper to the feed roller.

This machine uses an FRR (Feed and Reverse Roller) system for feeding paper.

There is friction between the feed roller [E] and separation roller [D]. This friction separates the top sheet of paper from the stack.

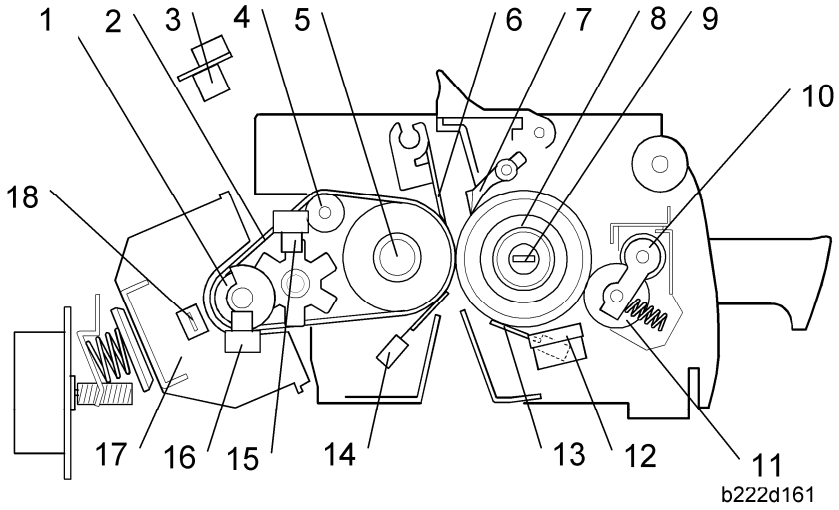
6.10.13 BY-PASS PAPER SIZE DETECTION



There are two paper side plates [A] on the by-pass tray. These connect with the paper size sensor [B] through a rack-and-pinion mechanism.

6.11 FUSING

6.11.1 OVERVIEW



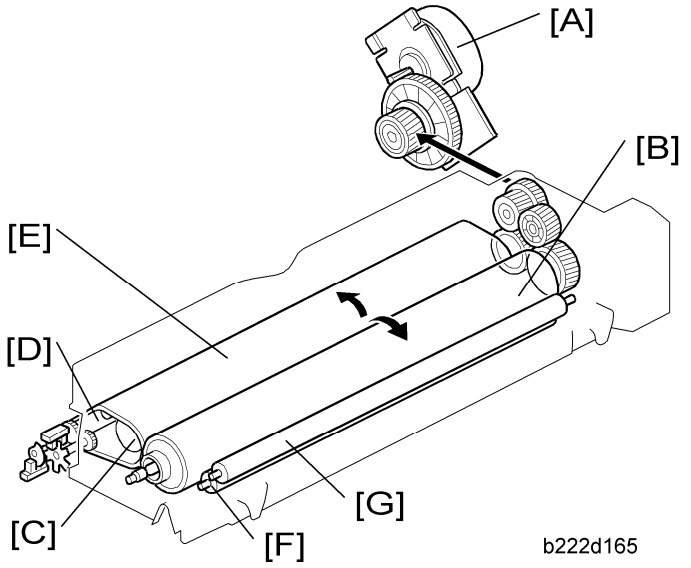
1. Heating roller	10. Cleaning roller
2. Fusing belt	11. Lubricant roller
3. Thermopile	12. Pressure roller thermostat
4. Tension roller	13. Pressure roller thermistor
5. Fusing roller	14. Fusing belt thermistor
6. Stripper plate	15. Fusing belt sensor
7. Stripper pawl	16. Ferrite roller HP sensor
8. Pressure roller	17. IH coil unit
9. Pressure roller fusing lamp	18. Heating roller thermostat

- This machine uses an IH (Induction Heating) system for the heating roller. This system increases the temperature more quickly than a fusing lamp heating system.
- A belt fusing system is used. This has a faster warm-up time than a conventional fusing and pressure roller system.
- The fusing roller is made of sponge, which flattens slightly, also increasing the fusing nip. This roller does not contain a fusing lamp.
- The fusing belt thermistor, pressure roller thermistor and thermopile control the temperature of heating roller and pressure roller. The thermopile is a non-contact

sensor. The thermopile detects the temperature at the center of the fusing belt, and the thermistor detects the temperature at the end.

- Temperature is normally controlled by turning the fusing lamp and the IH system on and off.
- The lubricant roller supplies a small amount of oil to the pressure roller through the cleaning roller. An oil supply unit is not necessary because the amount of oil supplied to the pressure roller is small.

6.11.2 FUSING UNIT DRIVE



Belt and Rollers

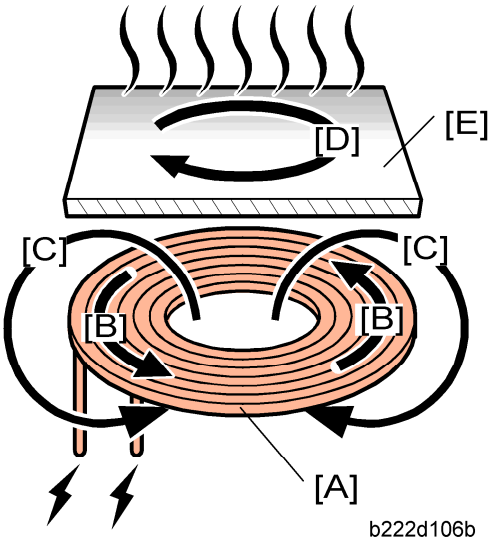
The fusing/paper exit motor [A] drives the pressure roller [B] and the fusing roller [C] through the gear train. The heating roller [D] is driven by the pressure with the fusing belt [E]. The lubricant roller [F] and cleaning roller [G] are driven by the friction with the pressure roller.

Lubricant Mechanism

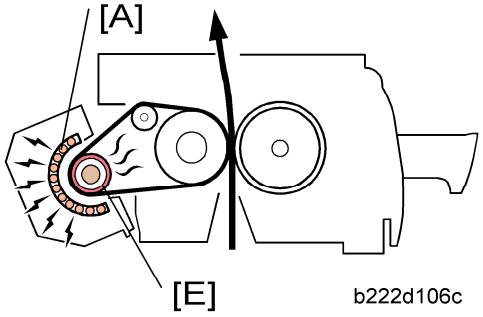
The lubricant roller [F] contains silicone oil in its material. The lubricant roller applies small amount of silicone oil to the pressure roller to reduce the friction between the pressure roller and thermistor, and stripper pawl so that white lines on the output are reduced.
The cleaning roller [G] cleans the lubricant roller to remove the residual toner stuck to the lubricant roller.

6.11.3 IH (INDUCTION HEATING) SYSTEM

Basic IH System



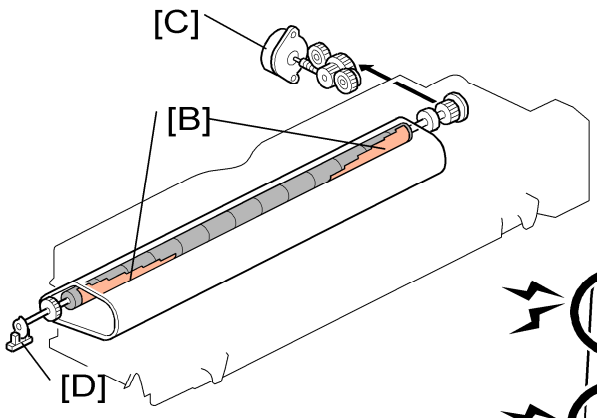
b222d106b



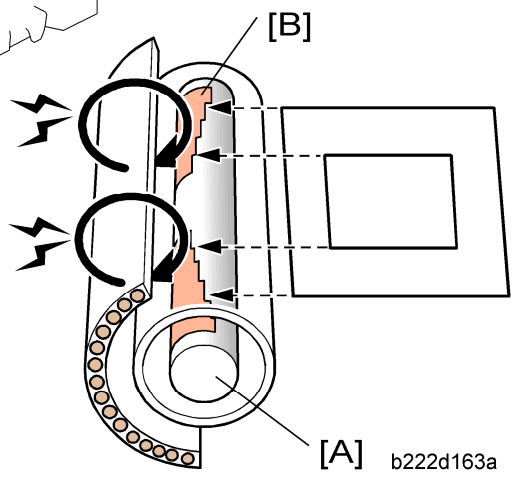
b222d106c

When high frequency current [B] is applied to the IH coil unit, a magnetic field [C] occurs around the IH coil [A]. This magnetic field makes eddy currents [D] and the heating roller [E] becomes hot. (During warm up, 1250 W is applied to the IH coil unit and during paper feed, 950 W is applied.)

Paper Size Correction



b222d163



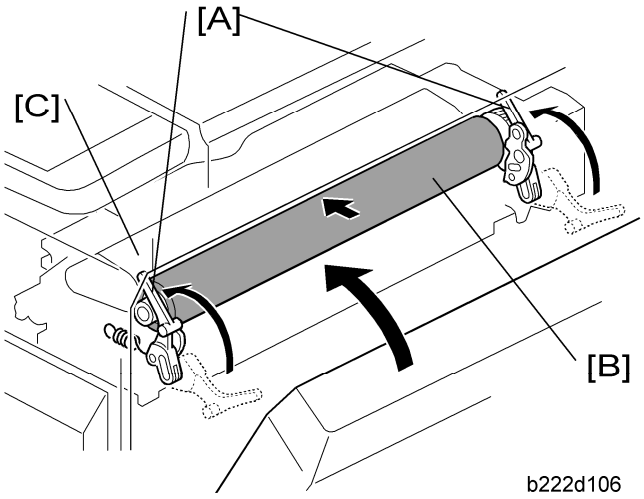
b222d163a

The ferrite roller [A] in the heating roller has a bronze plate [B] for paper size temperature

correction. The area that is covered with the bronze plate does not generate the same amount of heat as other parts. The temperature correction for paper size is used for seven paper sizes (A3, B4, A4, B5, A5, B6, and A6). The ferrite roller motor [C] rotates the ferrite roller [A] to the correct position for the selected paper size.

The ferrite roller HP sensor [D] detects when this roller is at home position. The ferrite roller is moved to its home position at the end of every job.

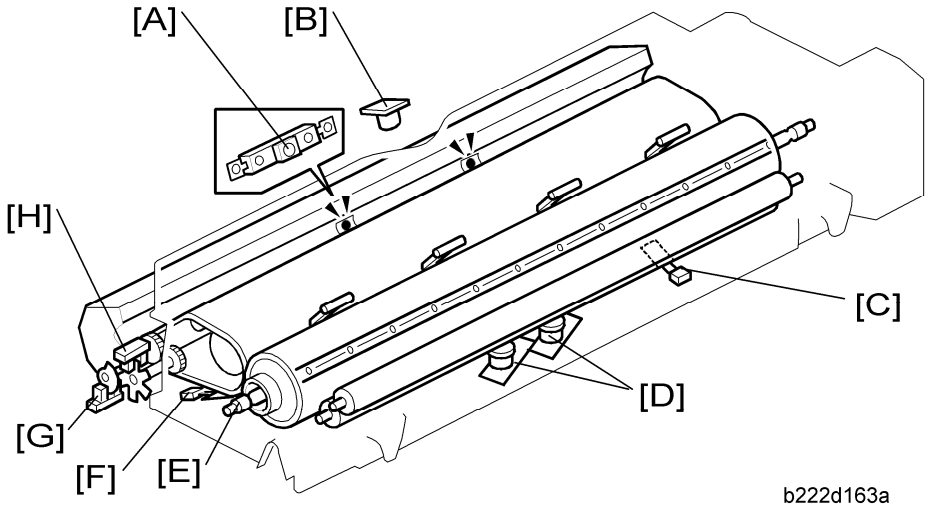
6.11.4 PRESSURE RELEASE MECHANISM



The pressure levers [A] put the proper pressure to the nip between the pressure roller [B] and fusing belt [C]. When releasing these levers, the pressure roller moves away from the fusing belt. If a paper jam occurs in the fusing unit, releasing these levers make jammed paper easily removed.

6.11.5 FUSING TEMPERATURE CONTROL

Components



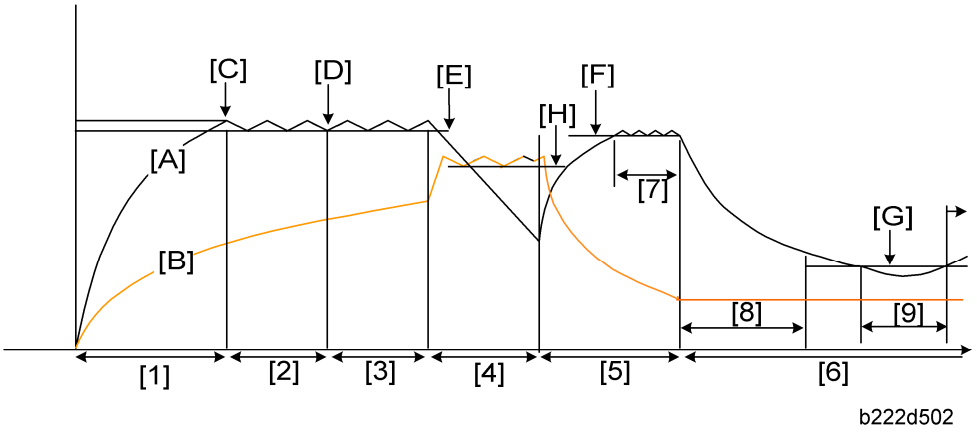
[A]: Thermostat (Heating roller)	[E]: Pressure roller fusing lamp
[B]: Thermopile	[F]: Thermistor (non-contact)
[C]: Thermistor (contact)	[G]: Ferrite roller HP sensor
[D]: Thermostat: (Pressure roller)	[H]: Fusing belt sensor

When the main switch turns on, the CPU turns on the IH coil unit and the fusing lamp. The IH coil unit and lamp stay on until the thermistor detects the standby temperature. Then the CPU raises the temperature to the printing temperature.

The fusing temperature for each mode is as follows. These are set by SP 1105.

If the ferrite roller does not rotate, it will overheat. The fusing belt sensor [H] detects if the ferrite roller stops rotating, and an SC occurs.

Fusing Temperatures



[A]: Heating roller temperature

[B]: Pressure roller temperature

[C]: Heating roller target temperature for the ready condition

[D]: Extra idling target temperature

[E]: Idling target temperature

[F]: Heating roller target temperature for the print condition

[G]: CPM down threshold temperature

[H]: Pressure roller target temperature

Warm-up mode [1]:

The machine uses the following formulas to decide the actual heating roller target temperature for the warm-up mode.

- If the ambient temperature ≤ 17°C (adjustable with SP1-112-001)
  T1 = T2 + T3
  T1: Actual target temperature
  T2: Heating roller target temperature for the ready condition (adjustable with SP1-105-001, default: 138°C)
  T3: Environment correction (adjustable with SP1-112-003, default: 5°C)
- If the ambient temperature ≥ 30°C (adjustable with SP1-112-002)
  T1 = T2 - T4
  T1: Actual target temperature
  T2: Heating roller target temperature for the ready condition (adjustable with SP1-105-001, default: 138°C)
  T4: Environment correction (adjustable with SP1-112-004, default: 0°C)
- If 17°C (adjustable with SP1-112-001) < Ambient temperature < 30°C (adjustable with SP1-112-002)

T1 = T2

T1: Actual target temperature

T2: Heating roller target temperature for the ready condition (adjustable with SP1-105-001, default: 138°C)

The machine determines that the temperature of the fusing unit is at the target temperature for the ready condition when all the conditions below occur.

- The thermopile detects the specified temperature.
  Specified temperature = T2 - T4
  T2: Heating roller target temperature for the ready condition (adjustable with SP1-105-001, default: 138°C)
  T4: Offset temperature for the ready condition (adjustable with SP1-105-002, default: 0°C)
- The thermistor of the heating roller detects the specified temperature.
  T5 ≤ Specified temperature ≤ T6
  T5 = T2 (default: 138°C) - 70°C (adjustable with SP1-105-003)
  T6 = 200°C (adjustable with SP1-105-004)
- The thermistor of the pressure roller detects the specified temperature.
  T7 ≤ Specified temperature ≤ T8
  T7 = T2 (default: 138°C) - 70°C (B222)/90°C (B224) (adjustable with SP1-105-005)
  T8 = 180°C (adjustable with SP1-105-006)

Extra idling mode [2]:

The machine uses the extra idling when some conditions occur.

- If the ambient temperature ≤ 17°C (adjustable with SP1-112-001)
  In this condition, the temperature of the heating roller is kept at 165°C (adjustable with SP1-105-106) for 60 seconds (adjustable with SP1-103-016).
- If the ambient temperature ≥ 30°C (adjustable with SP1-112-002)
  In this condition, the temperature of the heating roller is kept at 160°C (adjustable with SP1-105-108) for 10 seconds (B222)/25 seconds (B224) (adjustable with SP1-103-017).
- If 17°C ≤ Ambient temperature ≤ 30°C
  In this condition, the temperature of the heating roller is kept at 160°C (adjustable with SP1-105-107) for 10 seconds (B222)/25 seconds (B224) (adjustable with SP1-103-018).

Maintain mode for the ready condition temperature [3]:

The temperature of the heating roller is kept at 160°C (adjustable with SP1-105-082) for 60 seconds (adjustable with SP1-113-001) after the temperature of the fusing unit reaches the

temperature for the ready condition.

Stand-by mode [4]:

The machine turns off the IH coil unit (heating roller) and then turns on the pressure roller lamp. The temperature of the pressure roller is kept at 150°C (adjustable with SP1-105-012).

The machine also executes the idling rotation in the stand-by mode for 0.7 seconds (adjustable with SP1-115-002) every 60 minutes (adjustable with SP SP1-115-001).

Print ready mode [5]:

The machine turns off the pressure roller lamp and turns on the IH coil unit (heating roller) when the machine recovers.

If the machine does not get any printing/copying job, the target temperature after recovery is 170°C (adjustable with SP1-105-083). But if the machine does not get any printing/copying job for 10 seconds (adjustable with SP1-113-002), the machine turns off the IH coil unit (heating roller), turns on the pressure roller lamp, and then returns to the stand-by mode.

If the machine gets a printing/copying job, the machine uses the following formulas to decide the actual heating roller target temperature for feeding paper and processing the image (this is the print ready mode).

- If the ambient temperature ≤ 17°C (adjustable with SP1-112-001)
  Ta = Tb + Tc
  Ta: Actual target temperature for printing
  Tb: Heating roller target temperature for each paper type (adjustable with SP1-105-030 to -080)
  Tc: Environment correction (adjustable with SP1-112-003, default: 5°C)
- If the ambient temperature ≥ 30°C (adjustable with SP1-112-002)
  Ta = Tb - Tc
  Ta: Actual target temperature for printing
  Tb: Heating roller target temperature for each paper type (adjustable with SP1-105-030 to -080)
  Tc: Environment correction (adjustable with SP1-112-004, default: 0°C)
- If 17°C (adjustable with SP1-112-001) ≤ Ambient temperature ≤ 30°C (adjustable with SP1-112-002)
  Ta = Tb
  Ta: Actual target temperature
  Tb: Heating roller target temperature for each paper type (adjustable with SP1-105-030 to -080)

The machine starts to feed paper after an interval of S1 (Feeding wait mode [7]) after one of the conditions below has occurred. However, the machine automatically starts to feed paper if one of conditions below does not occur for 300 seconds after the machine has entered the stand-by mode.

S1 is adjustable with SP1-910-001 to -003 and -007 to -009.

- The thermopile detects the specified temperature after the machine has recovered.
  Specified temperature = Ta - 5°C (adjustable with SP1-105-086)
  Ta = Tb + Tc
  Ta: Actual target temperature for printing
  Tb: Heating roller target temperature for each paper type (adjustable with SP1-105-030 to -080)
  Tc: Environment correction (adjustable with SP1-112-003, default: 5°C)
- The thermopile detects the specified temperature in the maintain mode for the ready condition temperature [3].
  Specified temperature = Ta - 100°C (adjustable with SP1-105-104)
  Ta = Tb - Tc
  Ta: Actual target temperature for printing
  Tb: Heating roller target temperature for each paper type (adjustable with SP1-105-030 to -080)
  Tc: Environment correction (adjustable with SP1-112-004, default: 0°C)

The machine starts to process the image when one of the conditions below occurs. However, the machine automatically starts to process the image if one of the conditions below does not occur for 300 seconds after the machine has entered the stand-by mode.

- The thermopile detects the specified temperature.
  Specified temperature = Ta - 5°C (adjustable with SP1-105-085)
  Ta = Tb + Tc
  Ta: Actual target temperature for printing
  Tb: Heating roller target temperature for each paper type (adjustable with SP1-105-030 to -080)
  Tc: Environment correction (adjustable with SP1-112-003, default: 5°C)
- The thermopile detects the specified temperature in the maintain mode for the ready condition temperature [3].
  Specified temperature = Ta - 100°C (adjustable with SP1-105-105)
  Ta = Tb - Td
  Ta: Actual target temperature for printing
  Tb: Heating roller target temperature for each paper type (adjustable with

Fusing

SP1-105-030 to -080)

Td: Environment correction (adjustable with SP1-112-004, default: 0°C)

Print mode [6]:

The machine prints or makes copies, keeping the temperature at Ta.

If the machine stays in the maintain mode for the ready condition temperature [3], the machine waits until the fusing temperature reaches the specified temperature and then keeps this temperature for 20 seconds (adjustable with SP1-915-002, -004 or -006).

Specified temperature = Ta + 10°C (adjustable with SP1-915-001, -003 or -005).

CPM down limit mode [8]:

CPM down mode is not allowed for a certain time interval.

CPM down mode [9]:

This machine uses CPM down mode to prevent image offset on outputs when the fusing temperature goes below a specified temperature in some conditions. This mode is only used at line speeds of 205 or 154 mm/sec.

Mode	Temperature of Heating Roller (°C)	Temperature of Pressure Roller (°C)
Warm-up mode	138°C - 0°C (SP1105-002)	138°C - 70°C (B222)/ - 90°C (B224) (SP1105-005)
Print start	Actual target temperature for each paper type - 0°C (SP1105-085)	--
Feed start	Actual target temperature for each paper type - 5°C (SP1105-086)	-
Standby mode	-	150°C (SP1105-012)
Energy saver (panel off) mode	-	100°C (B222)/ 140°C (B224) (SP1105-016)
Plain paper	B222: 155°C / B224: 160°C (SP1105-030, -032, -034 and -036)	--

Mode	Temperature of Heating Roller (°C)	Temperature of Pressure Roller (°C)
Thin paper	150°C (SP1105-038, -40, -42 and -044)	--
Middle thick paper (middle speed)	145°C (SP1105-095, -097 and -099)	--
Middle thick paper (High speed)	Middle thick (middle speed) + 15°C (B222)/ 20°C (B224) (SP1105-103)	--
Thick 1 paper	170°C (SP1105-046, -048, -050 and -052)	--
Thick 2 paper	170°C (SP1105-054, -055)	--
Thick 3 paper	175°C (SP1105-089 and -091)	--
OHP (full color)	165°C (SP1105-056)	--
OHP (black-and-white)	160°C (SP1105-057)	--
Special paper	160°C (SP1105-058 to -080)	--

- Paper Weights -

- Thin paper: Below 60 g/m^2 (16 lb.)
- Normal plain paper: 60 – 90 g/m^2 (16 – 24 lb.)
- Middle Thick: 90 – 105 g/m^2 (24 – 28 lb.)
- Thick 1: 106 – 169 g/m^2 (28.5 – 44.9 lb.)
- Thick 2: 170 – 219 g/m^2 (45 – 58 lb.)
- Thick 3: 220 – 253 g/m^2 (58.5 – 67 lb.)

Temperature Corrections

- Corrections for ambient temperature (SP 1112) -

- If the room temperature is below 17°C, the heating roller temperature is increased by 5°C with SP1112-003 (default: 5°C).
- If the room temperature is above 30°C, the heating roller temperature can be

Fusing

decreased with SP1112-004 (default: 0°C).

Overheat Protection

The CPU cuts power to the fusing lamp at the following times:

- The heating roller or pressure roller temperature becomes higher than 215°C for one second or more. SC 543 and SC 553 for the heating roller or SC 563 for the pressure roller show for this condition.
- The heating roller or pressure roller temperature reaches 220°C. SC 544 and SC 554 for the heating roller or SC 564 for the pressure roller show for this condition.

The following components are used if thermistor or thermopile overheat protection fails.

- Two thermostats for the IH inverter (heating roller) and two thermofuses for the pressure roller in series with the common ground line of the fusing lamp.

  Important

  - Do not push the two thermostats for the heating roller at the IH coil unit. Otherwise, these thermostats are opened. As a result, the IH coil unit must be replaced.
  - If one of the thermostat temperatures becomes higher than 234°C, it opens and cuts power to the IH inverter.

    If the other thermostat temperature becomes higher than 235°C, it also opens and cuts power to the IH inverter.
  - If either of the two thermofuse temperatures becomes higher than 149°C, the thermofuse opens and cuts power to the fusing lamp.

    Note

    - These thermofuses make a series circuit.

In either case, the machine stops operation.

6.11.6 CPM DOWN SYSTEM

CPM Down Control

When this machine gets a sequence of coping/printing jobs at a high line speed mode (B222: 154 mm/sec, B224: 205 mm/sec) and some conditions occur, the machine decreases the CPM to prevent offset on outputs due to insufficient fusing temperature. This mode can be turned on or turned off with SP1-916-025 (default: "OFF" for B222, "ON" for B224).

CPM down mode has two steps (1 and 2).

For a full-color printing job using middle-thick paper, the machine enters step 1, and then step 2. For other types of printing job, the machine enters step 2 only.

Step 1 (Only for full color mode using middle thick paper)

If the input voltage from IH inverter to the IH coil > 93% (adjustable with SP1-916-23) and ambient temperature ≤ 17°C (adjustable with SP1-112-001):

- The machine decreases the CPM to 25cpm (B222) or 30cpm (B224) (adjustable with SP1-916-022) for 20 seconds (adjustable with SP1-916-023).

If input voltage ≤ 93% (adjustable with SP1-916-23) and ambient temperature > 17°C (adjustable with SP1-112-001):

- The machine decreases the CPM to 25cpm (B222) or 30cpm (B224) (adjustable with SP1-916-022) for 20 seconds (adjustable with SP1-916-023).

If input voltage ≤ 93% (adjustable with SP1-916-23) and ambient temperature ≤ 17°C (adjustable with SP1-112-001):

- The machine decreases the CPM to 20cpm (B222) or 25cpm (B224) (adjustable with SP1-916-022 and SP1-916-024) for 20 seconds (adjustable with SP1-916-023).

Step 2

When the fusing temperature goes below the print ready temperature for plain paper:

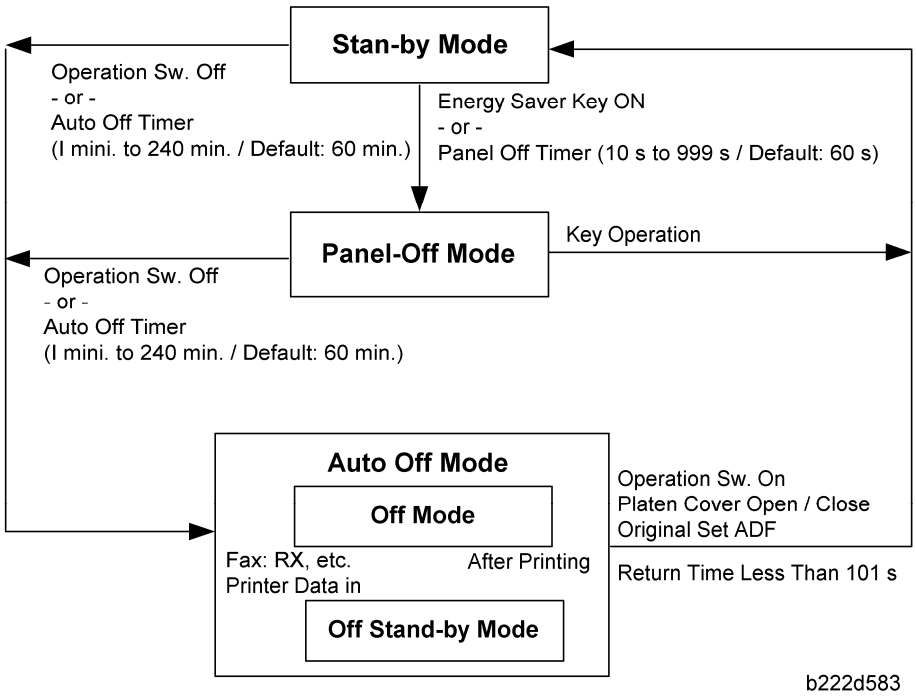
- The machine decreases the CPM to 25cpm (B222) or 30cpm (B224) (adjustable with SP1-916-020).

When the fusing temperature goes below the print ready temperature for middle thick paper in B/W mode:

- The machine decreases the CPM to 25cpm (B222) or 30cpm (B224) (adjustable with SP1-916-021).

6.11.7 ENERGY SAVER MODES

Overview



When the machine is not being used, the energy saver function reduces power consumption by decreasing the fusing temperature.

This machine has the following two types of energy saver modes:

1. Panel-off mode
2. Auto Off mode

These modes are controlled by the following UP mode:

- Panel off timer: User Tools – System Settings – Timer Setting – Panel Off Timer
- Auto off timer: User Tools – System Settings – Timer Setting – Auto Off Timer

Panel Off Mode

Entering the panel off mode

The machine enters the panel off mode when one of the following is done:

- The panel off timer runs out.
- The Clear Mode/Energy Saver Key is held down for one second.

If the value in the panel off timer is larger than that in the auto off timer, the machine goes into the auto off mode. At this time it does not go into the panel off mode. To make the panel off mode effective, specify a value smaller than the values in the auto off timer.

What happens in panel off mode

When the machine is in the panel off mode, the fusing lamp is kept at the temperatures

indicated in the table at the bottom of the page. The operation panel indicators are turned off except for the Energy Saver LED and the Power LED.

If the controller receives an image print out command from an application program (e.g. to print incoming fax data or to print data from a PC), the temperature of heating roller (IH coil unit) rises to print the data.

Return to stand-by mode

The machine returns to stand-by mode if one of the following is done:

- The Clear Mode/Energy Saver Mode key is pressed
- Any key on the operation panel or touch panel screen is pressed
- An original is placed in the ADF
- The ADF is lifted
- A sheet of paper is placed in the by-pass feed table

The return time from the panel off mode is less than 30 seconds.

Mode	Operation Switch	Energy Saver LED	Fusing Temperature	+24V	System +5V
Panel off	On	On	Pressure roller: 150°C	On	On

Auto Off Mode

There are two Auto Off modes: Off Stand-by mode and Off mode. The difference between Off Stand-by mode and Off mode is the machine's condition when it enters the Auto Off mode.

Entering off stand-by and off modes

The machine enters the Off Stand-by mode or Off Mode when one of the following is done.

- The auto off timer runs out.
- The operation switch is pressed to turn the power off.

If one or more of the following conditions exists, the machine enters Off Stand-by mode. If none of these conditions exist, the machine enters the Off Mode.

- Error or SC condition
- Image data is stored in the memory
- During memory TX or polling RX
- The handset is off hook
- An original is in the ARDF
- The ARDF is open

Fusing

Off Stand-by mode

The system +5V is still supplied to all components. When the machine detects a ringing signal or receives a stream of data for a print job, the +24V supply is activated. At this time the machine automatically prints the incoming message or executes the print job.

Off Mode

The system +5V supply also turns off. However, +5VE (+5V for energy saver mode) is still activated. When the machine detects a ringing signal, off-hook signal, or receives a print job, the machine returns to the Off Stand-by mode and the system +5V and +24V supplies are activated.

Returning to stand-by mode

The machine returns to stand-by mode when the operation switch is pressed. The return time is less than 45 seconds.

Mode	Operation Switch	Energy Saver LED	Fusing Lamp	+24V	System +5V	Note
Off Stand-by	Off	Off	Off (On when printing)	On	On	
Off	Off	Off	Off	Off	Off	+5VE is supplied

6.11.8 NEW UNIT DETECTION

Fusing Unit, Image Transfer Belt Unit

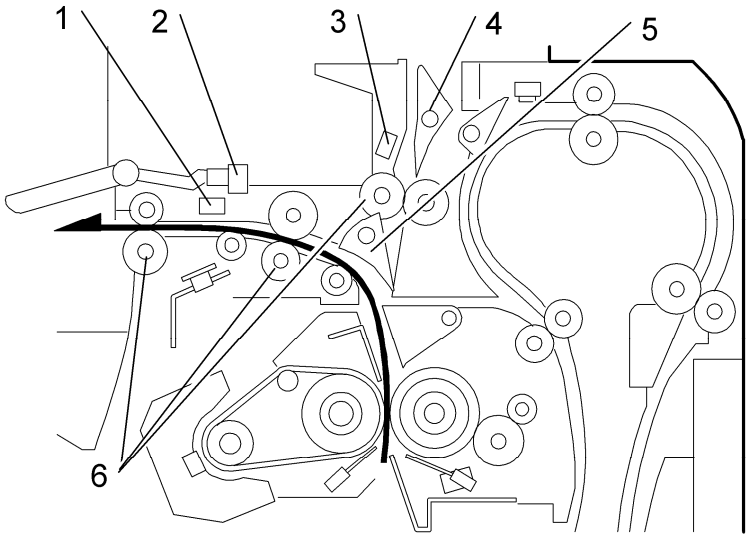
The fusing unit and image transfer belt unit each have a fuse. When the machine detects that the fuse is intact, the machine determines that a new unit is installed. Then a short time later, the fuse blows.

PCU, Development Unit

The development unit (as part of the PCU, or as a separate development unit) contains an ID chip. The ID chip contains information that tells the machine that the unit is new.

6.12 PAPER EXIT

6.12.1 OVERVIEW



1. Paper exit sensor	4. Junction gate 2
2. Paper overflow sensor	5. Junction gate 1
3. Junction gate jam sensor	6: Paper exit rollers

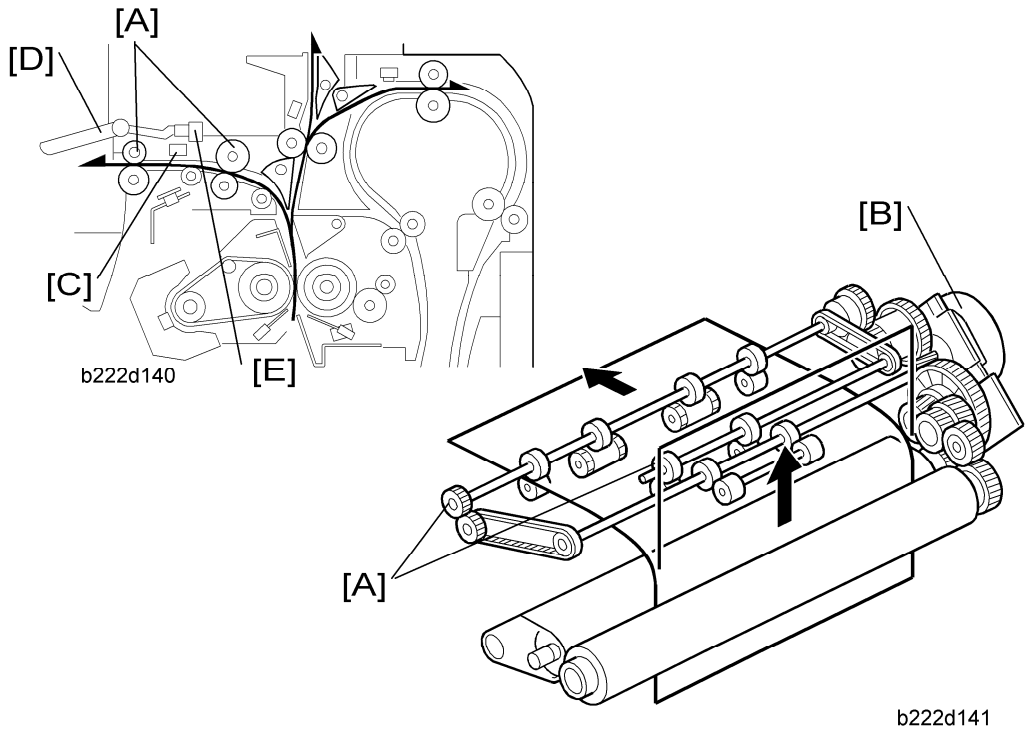
This machine has two junction gates:

- Junction gate 1 switches the paper feed direction to the standard output tray path or the duplex unit path/1-bin tray path. This gate is controlled by the junction gate 1 motor. When the junction gate 1 HP sensor detects that the gate is at home position, the standard output tray path is opened.
- Junction gate 2 switches the paper feed direction to the 1-bin tray path or duplex unit path. This gate is controlled by the junction gate solenoid in the 1-bin tray. If the 1-bin tray is not installed, junction gate 2 does not move (the 1-bin tray path is always closed).

The fusing/paper exit motor drives the paper exit rollers.

6.12.2 JUNCTION GATE MECHANISM

To the Standard Tray

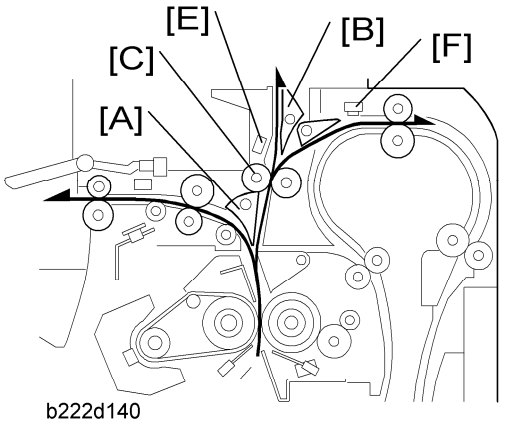


The paper exit rollers [A] feed paper to the standard output tray. These rollers are driven by the fusing/paper exit motor [B].

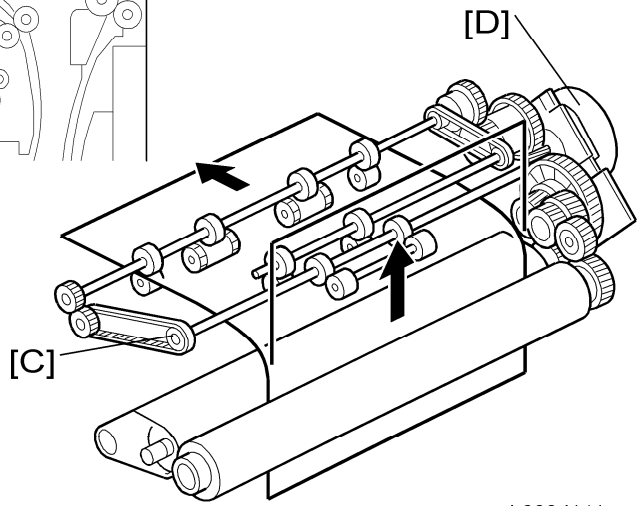
When a sheet of paper stays in the paper exit unit, the paper exit sensor [C] detects the paper jam and a jam message is displayed.

When outputs push up the tray full actuator [D], the paper overflow sensor [E] detects that standard output tray is full,a jam message is displayed.

To the 1-bin Tray or Duplex Unit



b222d140

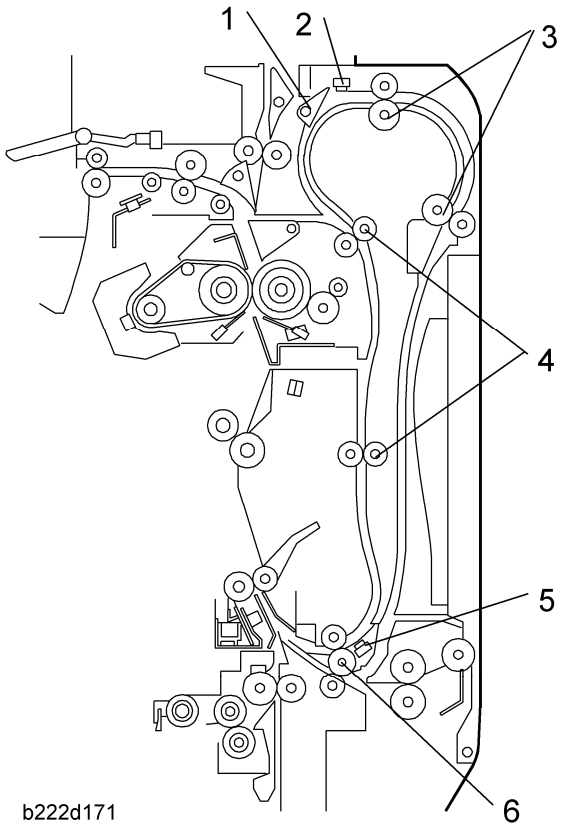


b222d141

When duplex mode or 1-bin tray mode is selected, junction gate 1 [A] closes the paper path to the standard tray. And then, junction gate 2 [B] switches the paper feed direction to the 1-bin tray or the duplex unit. The paper transport roller [C] is driven by the fusing/paper exit motor [D]. The junction gate jam sensor [E] in the 1-bin tray path detects paper jams in the path to the 1-bin tray. The duplex entrance sensor [F] detects paper jams in the path to the duplex unit.

6.13 DUPLEX UNIT

6.13.1 OVERVIEW



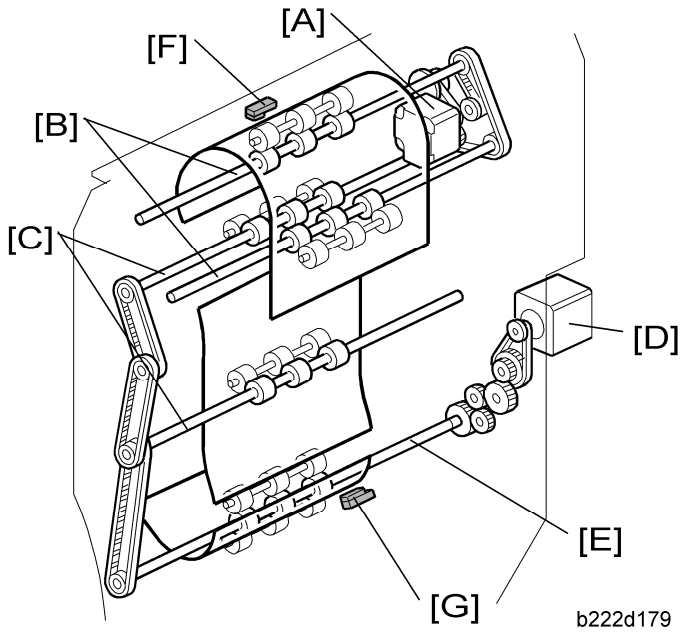
1. Duplex inverter plate	4. Duplex transport rollers
2. Duplex entrance sensor	5: Duplex exit sensor
3. Duplex inverter rollers	6. Duplex/by-pass transport roller

The duplex inverter rollers move the paper to the inverter path, and then feed it backwards to the duplex paper feed path. The duplex transport rollers move paper to the waiting position (just before the duplex/by-pass transport roller).

The duplex/by-pass transport roller moves the paper to the registration roller. This roller is also used for by-pass mode as the by-pass transport roller. But the by-pass tray cannot be used with duplex mode.

The duplex entrance sensor and duplex exit sensor control the timing for duplex paper feed.

6.13.2 DUPLEX DRIVE



The duplex inverter motor [A] drives the following:

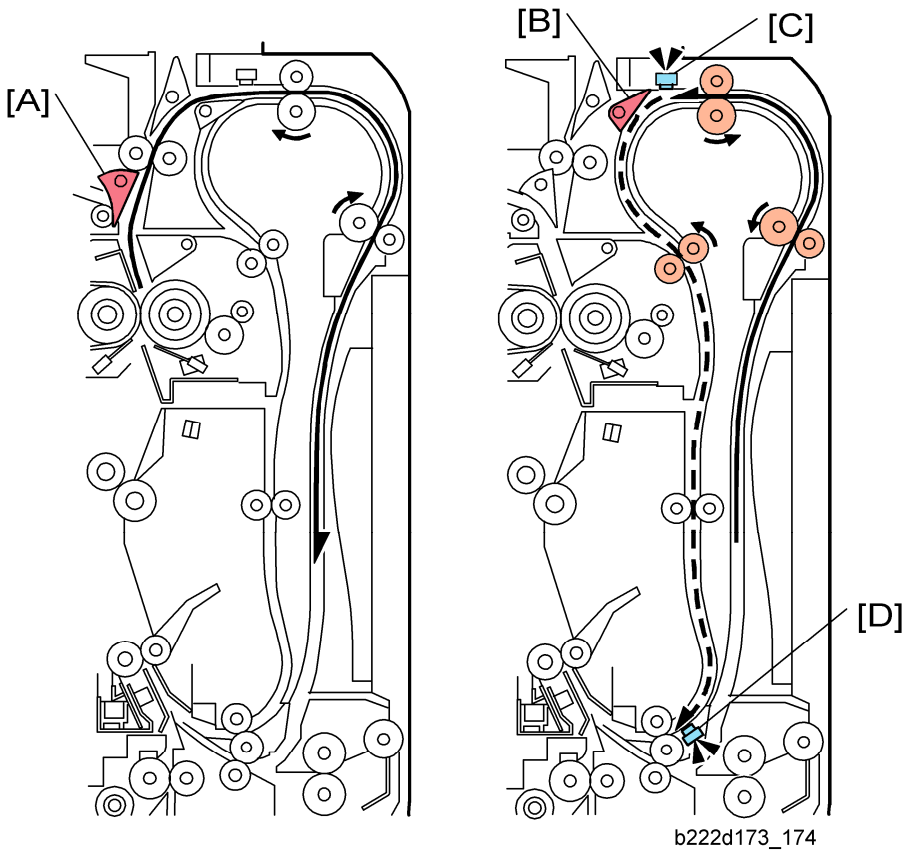
- Duplex inverter rollers [B]
- Duplex transport rollers [C]

The duplex/by-pass motor [D] drives the following:

- Duplex/by-pass transport roller [E]

The duplex entrance sensor [F] and duplex exit sensor [G] control the interleave movement and detect paper jams.

6.13.3 INVERTER MECHANISM



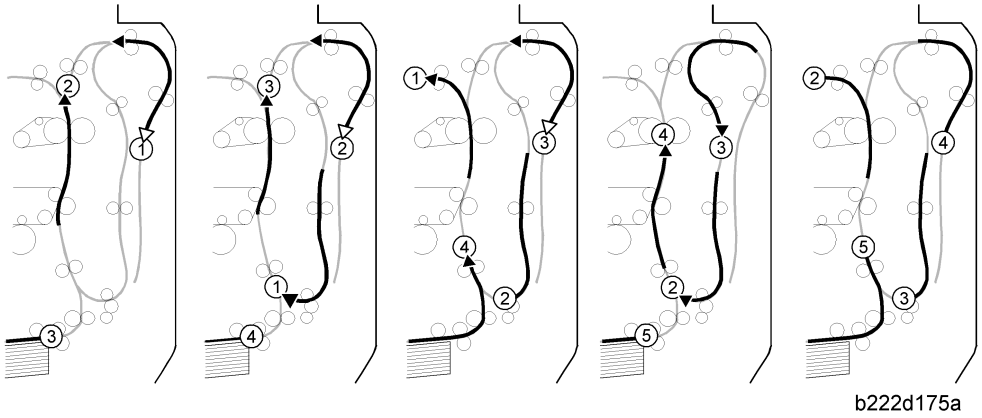
The paper is fed to the duplex path in duplex mode after junction gate 1 [A] opens the duplex path. The duplex inverter motor moves the paper into the inverter, as far as the switching back position.

Then, after the duplex entrance sensor [C] detects the trailing edge of the paper, the duplex inverter motor stops, and the duplex inverter plate [B] opens the duplex feed path (the plate is opened by the duplex inverter solenoid). Then, the duplex inverter motor reverses and moves the paper from the switching position to the duplex feed path.

In the duplex feed path, the paper is fed by the transport rollers (these rollers are driven by the duplex inverter motor) and the duplex/by-pass transport roller (this roller is driven by the duplex/by-pass motor). When the machine gets a multi-page duplex printing job, the duplex exit sensor [D] controls the duplex inverter motor and duplex/by-pass motor to synchronize the duplex feed timing.

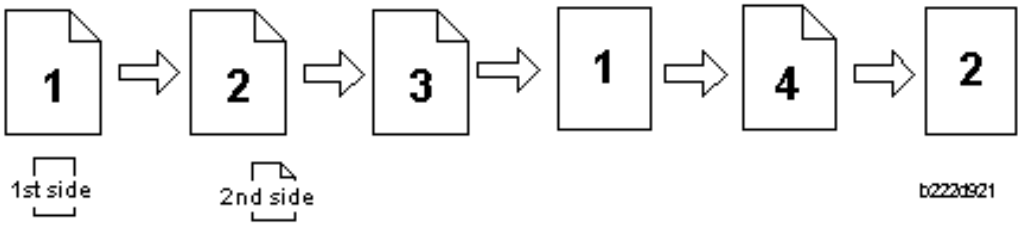
6.13.4 DUPLEX OPERATION

Up to A4/LT (81/2" x 11") LEF

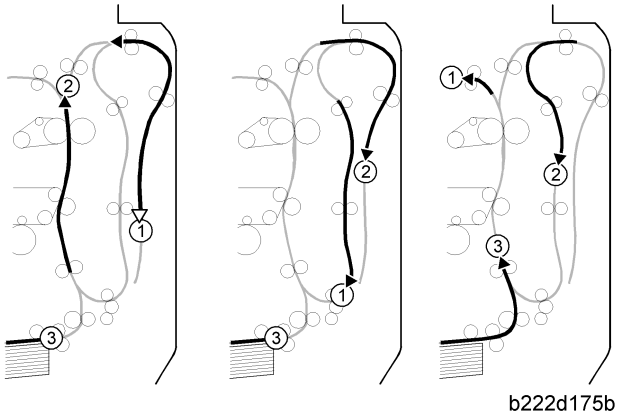


There are four sheets of paper in the paper feed path at the same time. The interleave method is used.

The drawing above shows the paper movement with the interleave method for five sheets of paper. The printing is done as follows:



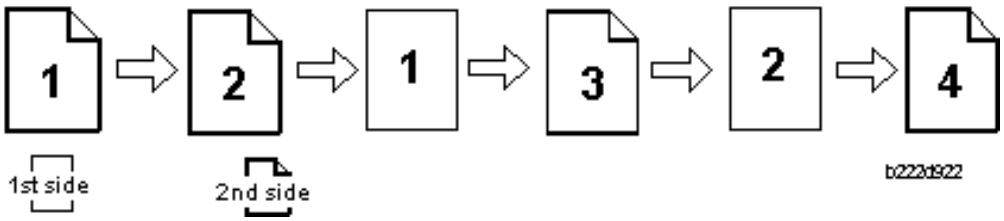
From A4/LT (8 1/2" x 11") LEF to 400mm length



There are two sheets of paper in the paper feed path at the same time. The interleave method is used. For sheets longer than 400 mm, there is no interleaving.

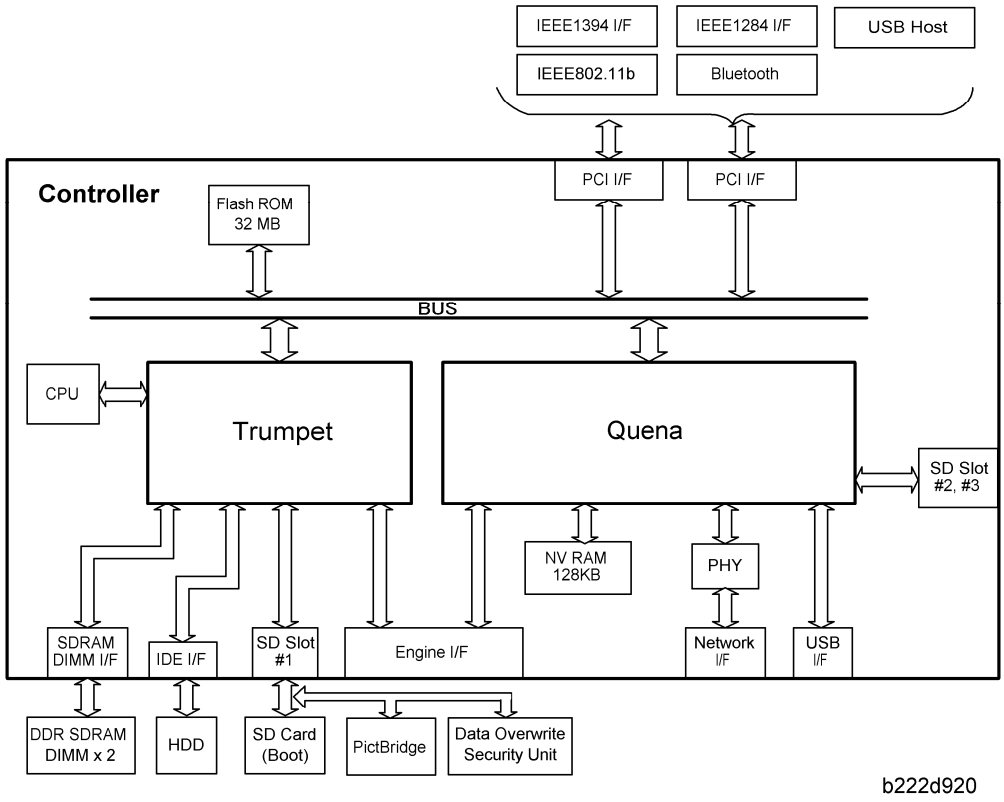
The drawing above shows the paper movement with the interleave method for three sheets of paper. The printing is done as follows:

Duplex Unit



6.14 PRINTER FUNCTIONS

6.14.1 OVERVIEW



The controller is based on the GW architecture.

CPU: RM7935C-835 MHz

TRUMPET:

This is one of the GW-architecture ASICs:

GW architecture ASIC. It controls the interface with the CPU and controls these functions: memory, local bus interrupts, PCI bus, video data, HDD, SD card for booting and image processing.

QUENA:

IO control ASIC. It controls the network, operation panel, USB port, SD cards.

SDRAM DIMM (2 slots):

The controller has 1024-MB resident SDRAM.

Flash ROM:

32 MB flash ROM programmed for the boot system.

SD card:

The 32 MB SD card installed in the SD card slot #1 includes the program for network

application, printer, PCL5c, PS3 and RPCS applications and internal printer fonts.

NVRAM:

128 KB for the machine parameters, logged data and a record of the number of pages printed for each “User Code”.

Network Interface:

100BASE-TX/10BASE-T

USB Interface:

USB2.0

IEEE 1394 Interface (option):

Supports a data transfer speed of up to 400 Mbps.

IEEE 1284 Interface (option):

This is a parallel printer port.

IEEE 802.11b (option):

This lets you connect the machine to a wireless network.

Bluetooth (option):

This lets you connect the machine to a Bluetooth network.

USB Host (option):

This is for the connection of an external device (digital camera etc.).

I/F Slot	Item
Slot A	IEEE 1394, IEEE 1284, IEEE 802.11b or Bluetooth
Slot B	USB Host
Slot C	Not used
Slot D	File format converter

HDD:

3.5” HDD x 2 (80 GB) can be connected using the IDE interface.

SD Card slots:

- Slot 1: Standard SD card (standard printer/scanner application SD card)
- Slot 2: Optional application (for PostScript 3, Data Overwrite Security Unit or PictBridge)
- Slot 3: Firmware upgrade or Browser Unit (RDS – Ricoh Document Server)

6.14.2 HARD DISK

Overview

The capacity of the hard disk is 80 GB (40 GB x 2). The controller partitions it into several drives and allocates them for different functions. You can initialize these partitions as necessary (☛SP5-832). The table lists the contents of the hard disk.

Contents	Capacity (MB)	Volatile/ Nonvolatile	Initialization (SP5-832)
Images (IMH)	21,528	Nonvolatile	002
	39,176	Volatile	
Thumbnails	2400	Nonvolatile	003
Job Logs	200	Nonvolatile	004
Printer fonts	500	Nonvolatile	005
User information	300	Nonvolatile	006
Mail RX data	200	Nonvolatile	007
Mail TX data	1,000	Nonvolatile	008
Designer data	512	Nonvolatile	009
Logs	150	Nonvolatile	-
Net interfaces	500	Nonvolatile	011

Volatile: The data is lost when you turn the main switch off.
Nonvolatile: The data is not lost when you turn the main switch off.

6.14.3 CONTROLLER FUNCTIONS

Sample Print

This feature was formerly known as “Proof Print.” This function gives users a chance to check the print results before starting a multiple-set print run.

- The size of the hard disk partition for the sample print feature is 38 GB. This partition is

also used by the collation and locked print features.

- The partition can hold up to 2000 files, including files stored using locked print.
- The partition can hold a log containing up to 30 errors, excluding jobs stored using locked print.
- The maximum number of pages is 9,000, including jobs using locked print and collation.

Locked Print

Using this feature, the print job is stored in the machine but will not be printed until the user inputs an ID and a password at the machine's operation panel. These ID and password must match the ID and password that has been input with the printer driver.

- Stored data is automatically deleted after it is printed.
- Stored data can be manually deleted at the operation panel.
- The partition can hold up to 2,000 files, including files stored using sample print.
- The partition can hold a log containing up to 30 errors, excluding logs stored using locked print.
- The maximum number of pages is 9,000, including jobs using sample print and collation.
- Locked print uses the same hard disk partition (38 GB) as sample print and collation.

Hold Print

Using this feature, the print job is stored in the machine but will not be printed until the user inputs an ID at the machine's operation panel. This ID must match the ID that has been input with the printer driver.

- Stored data is automatically deleted after it is printed.

Stored Print/ Store and Print

Using this feature, the same stored files can be printed repeatedly without PC operation or stored files can be printed during receiving files even the file data has not been received completely.

6.14.4 JOB SPOOLING

Print data can be spooled (stored) in the machine's HDD, and the machine starts to print when data transfer is complete. Since the machine stores all data first before printing, the host computer is freed up more quickly.

Note

- The supported print protocols are IPP, LPR, SMB, BM LinkS, DIPRINT, FTP and sftp. The default setting for this feature is “off”. The user must use web image monitor to enable this feature.

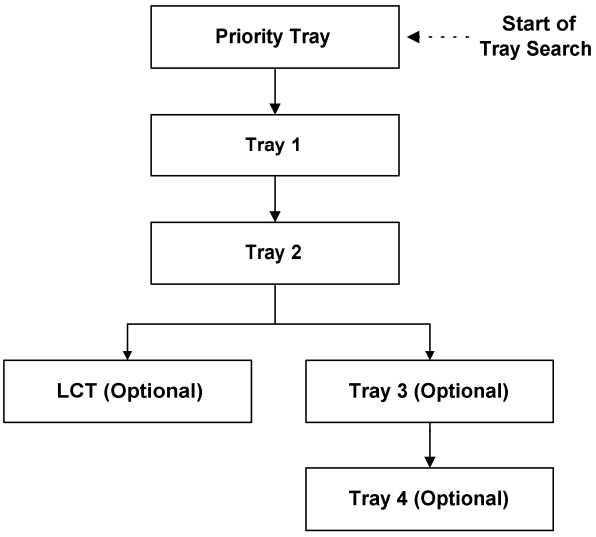
- The size of the HDD partition for job spooling is 1 GB.
- The partition can hold up to 5000 files.

Related SP Modes

Job spooling can be turned on and off using the SP mode (SP5-828-069) for each protocol. The machine does not spool jobs when job spooling is switched off with the SP mode, even when the customer switches it on with the user mode.

Paper Source Selection

Tray Priority (Auto Tray Select)



The “Tray Priority” setting determines the start of the tray search when the user selects “Auto Tray Select” with the driver. The machine searches paper trays for the specified paper size and type.

When no tray contains paper that matches the paper size and type specified by the driver, the controller stops printing until the user loads the correct paper.

The “Tray Priority” setting can be specified in the following menu: > System Settings > Tray Paper Settings > Paper Tray Priority: Printer.

Note

- The by-pass feed table is not part of the tray search.

Tray Locking

If “Tray Locking” is enabled for a tray, the controller skips the “locked” tray in the tray search process.

The “Tray Locking” setting can be specified in the following menu: > System Settings > Tray Paper Settings > Paper Type: Tray # > Apply Auto Paper Select (where the “#” indicates the tray number).

The by-pass feed table cannot be unlocked (Tray Locking is always enabled).

Manual Tray Select

If the selected tray does not have the paper size and type specified by the driver, the controller stops printing until the user loads the correct paper.

Auto Continue

Overview

When this function is enabled, the machine waits for a specified period (0, 1, 5, 10, 15 minutes) for the correct paper size and type to be set in the tray. If the timer runs out, the machine starts printing, even if there is no paper tray which matches the paper size and paper type specified by the driver.

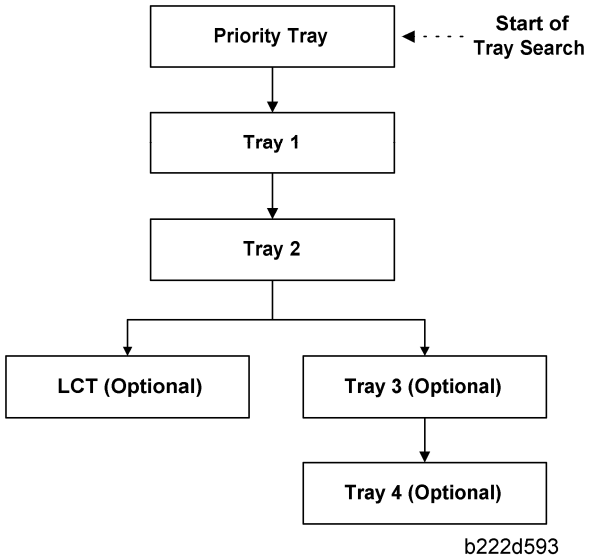
The machine searches for a paper tray in the following way:

- The interval can be set with the following menu: > Printer Features > System > Auto Continue.

Note

- The default setting for this feature is “Off.”

Auto Tray Select



b222d593

When there is no paper tray that matches the paper size and type specified by the driver, the machine searches for any tray that has paper, and prints from the first tray it finds. The start of the tray search is the tray selected as the priority tray.

Manual Tray Select

The machine prints from the selected tray even if the paper size and type do not match the setting specified from the driver.

If “Auto Continue” is disabled, the machine waits until the user loads the correct paper in the tray.

6.15 PICTBRIDGE

6.15.1 GENERAL FUNCTION

The PictBridge function can make a PictBridge-standard DSC (Digital Still Camera) connect with the machine using a USB cable. As a result, photographs in the DSC can be printed directly with a machine that has the PictBridge application.

Photo image format

- Exif/JPEG
- JFIF
- TIFF/MMR (Ricoh cameras only)

Note

- It is possible to connect more than one DSC at the same time, but it is only possible to print from one DSC. If more than one DSC is connected, you can only print from the first DSC that was connected.

6.15.2 PRINTING FUNCTION LIST

The availability of these functions depends on each DSC function. If the DSC has the same functions as below, these functions are available.

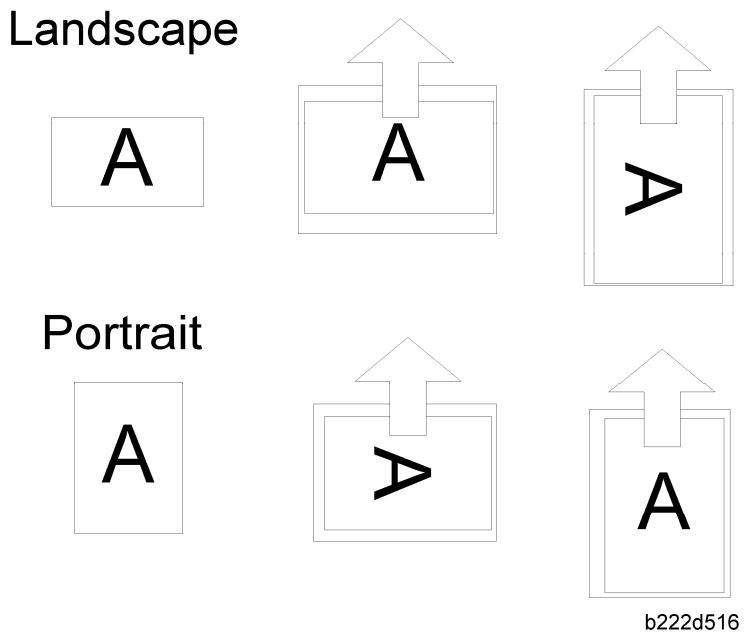
Name	Requirement for PictBridge Standard	B222/B244
Single image printing	Must	Available
Selected image printing	Must	Available
DPOF printing	Recommended	Not available
All image printing	Must	Available
Index printing	Recommended	Available
Trimming	Recommended	Available
Multiple number printing	Must	Available

Date and file name printing	Recommended	Available
Paper size	Must	Available
Image print size	Recommended	Available
Multi-Image-Layout (N-up)	Recommended	Available
Edge-to-edge borderless printing	Recommended	Not available
Printing quality	Optional	Available
Color matching	Optional	Available
Paper type specification	Optional	Available
Form printing	Ricoh	Available
Camera memo printing	Ricoh	Available

6.15.3 PRINTING FUNCTION DESCRIPTION

Single image printing

This function can print an image displayed on the DSC. The image is enlarged and rotated to match the paper, but the image aspect ratio is not changed.



b222d516

PictBridge

Selected image printing

This function can print two or more images selected from the display on the DSC. If landscape and portrait images are mixed in one job, the paper feed direction is fixed following the first image direction.

DPOF (Digital Print Order Format) printing

This function is not available in this machine.

All image printing

This function can print all images in the DSC.

Index printing

This function can print all images as thumbnail photos with index format. The size of the photos is fixed at 20 mm x 20 mm.

Paper Size	Number of Photos	
A3	192	16 x 12
A4	96	12 x 8
A5	40	8 x 5
Letter	80	10 x 8
B4	140	14 x 10

Note

- Some digital cameras have a limitation on the maximum photo number in a print job. If the number of photos in a page is more than the maximum photo number in a job, a form feed may be inserted between the thumbnail photos.

Trimming

This function can print a part of an image by specifying a clip area.

Multiple number printing

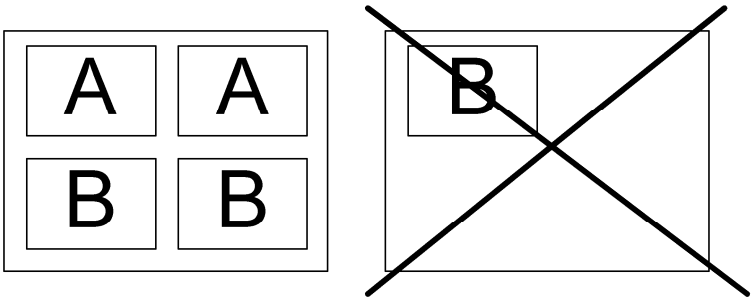
This function can print multiple images from the same image according to ordered number and layout. If the photos are printed with a multiple number printing function, and there are an odd number of photos in a page, the photo will not be printed.

Note

- If a layout is not selected (like 2 up or 4 up for example), each image will be printed on one page.

Example 1: Photo A: 2, Photo B: 3 with 4-up printing

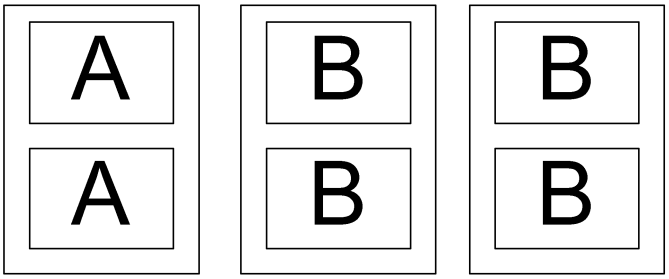
In this case, Page 2 will not be printed.



b222d517

Example 2: Photo A: 2, Photo B: 4 with 2-up printing

In this case, all photos will be printed.



b222d518

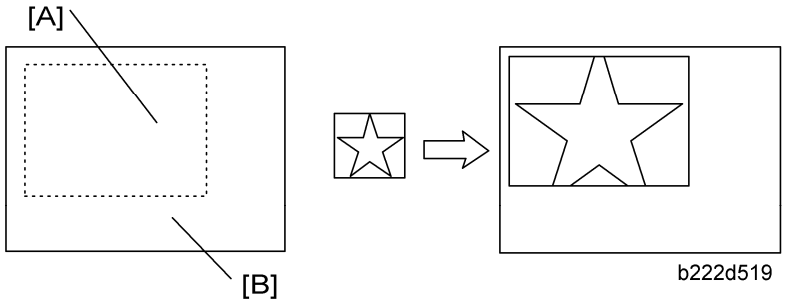
Date and file name printing

This function can impose a date stamp and file name under each image. A data stamp and file name are imposed in the following style:

- Position: It is centered under each image.
- Font color: Black
- Font type: Arial
- Font size: 6 pt to 16 pt depending on printing size

PictBridge

Image print size (Fixed size printing)



[A]: Specified printing size, [B]: Paper

This function can print images with the size specified on the camera.

- The image is enlarged to match the specified size.
- The image is not rotated.
- The image aspect ratio is not changed.
- If the specified aspect ratio is different from the image aspect ratio, the image aspect ratio is automatically adjusted to the specified aspect ratio even this deletes part of the image.

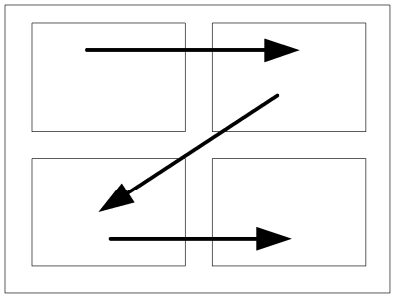
  Note

  - If the new ratios of height and width magnification are different, the larger magnification ratio is used to adjust the image to the specified printing size.
- An error occurs if the specified size is larger than the actual paper size.

3.25” x 2.5”	8cm x 6cm
5” x 2.5”	10cm x 7cm
6” x 4”	13cm x 9cm
7” x 5”	15cm x 10cm
10” x 8”	18cm x 13cm
254mm x 178mm	21cm x 15cm
110mm x 74mm	24cm x 18
89mm x 55mm	
148mm x 100mm	

Multi-Image-Layout (N-up)

This function can print multiple images on the specified paper.



4-up b222d520

The number and arrangement of images can be specified as shown in the following list.

Number of images	Vertical x Horizontal images	Paper direction
2	2 x 1	Portrait
4	2 x 2	Landscape
8	4 x 2	Portrait
9	3 x 3	Landscape
16	4 x 4	Landscape
25	5 x 5	Landscape
32	8 x 4	Portrait
36	6 x 6	Landscape
49	7 x 7	Landscape
64	8 x 8	Landscape

The number of images printed on a page can be as shown in the following list.

Paper size	Number of images
2L (5” x 7”)	2, 4, 8, 9

PictBridge

Postcard	2, 4
100mm x 150mm	2, 4
4“ x 6”	2, 4, 8, 9
8“ x 10”	2, 4, 8, 9, 16, 25, 32
Letter	2, 4, 8, 9, 16, 25, 32
11“ x 17”	2, 4, 8, 9, 16, 25, 32, 49, 64
A3	2, 4, 8, 9, 16, 25, 32, 49, 64
A4	2, 4, 8, 9, 16, 25, 32
A5	2, 4, 8, 9, 16
A6	2, 4, 8
B4	2, 4, 8, 9, 16, 25, 32, 49
B5	2, 4, 8, 9, 16, 25
B6	2, 4, 8, 9

Note

- A form feed may be inserted between images depending on the DSC in use. Also, printing in the specified way may not be possible depending on the specification for the number of images to be printed.

Edge-to-edge borderless printing

This function is not available in this machine.

Printing quality

This function can print images in the selected printing quality.

Normal or Default	600dpi x 600dpi (2bit)
Fine	600dpi x 600dpi (4bit)

Color matching

This function can optimize colors when printing images.

OFF or Default	Gradation
ON	Saturation

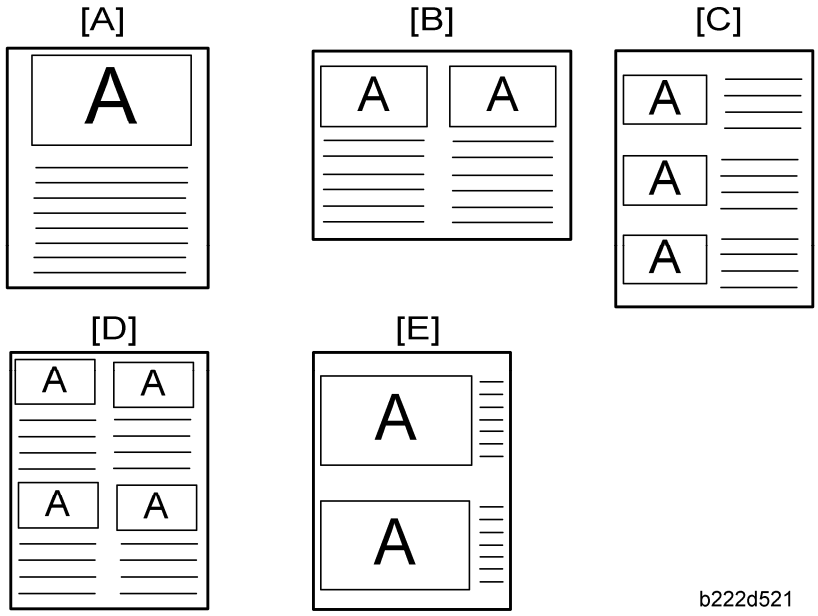
Paper type specification

This function can match the paper type names between the machine and DSC. When this function sends the machine's paper type information to the DSC, the names of paper types displayed on the DSC's screen are different from the names displayed on the machine. So, it is possible to match the paper type names with this function.

Default	Auto tray selection
Plain paper	Plain or recycled paper

Form printing

This function can print images in a predetermined layout format.



[A]: Image size A4: 170mm x 128mm LT: 174.5mm x 120mm

[B]: Image size A4: 120mm x 90mm LT: 112.5mm x 92mm

PictBridge

[C]: Image size A4: 86mm x 65mm LT: 88mm x 61mm

[D]: Image size A4: 86mm x 65mm LT: 88mm x 61mm

[E]: Image size A4: 152.4mm x 108mm LT: 156.7mm x 102.6mm

Camera memo printing

This function can print text data with an image if it is attached to the image.

6.16 COPY DATA SECURITY UNIT

6.16.1 GENERAL FUNCTION

This function can prevent unauthorized copying by making a special masking pattern with an embedded message when an original is printed. This enables the machine to make grayed-out output when it is copied.

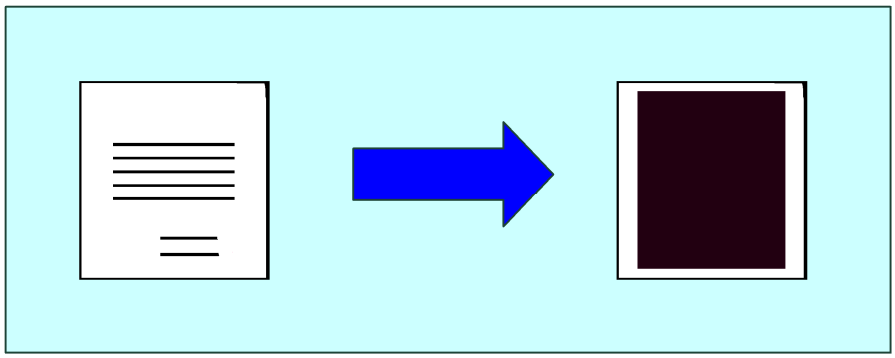
Confidential documents can never be duplicated on a machine that has the optional Copy Data Security Unit.

The embedded messages appear when a confidential document is copied on a machine without an optional Copy Data Security Unit.

However, some MFP functions are disabled if this function is enabled.

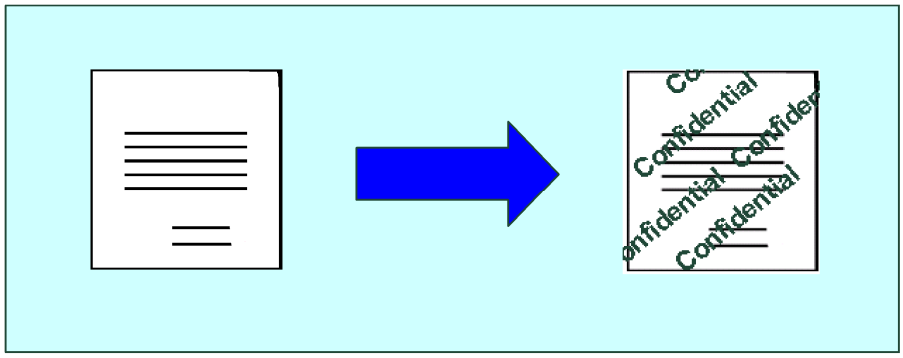
- Reduction less than 50% is disabled.
- Scanner/Fax application is disabled.

When copying on a machine with an optional Copy Data Security Unit



b222d522

When copying on a machine without an optional Copy Data Security Unit



b222d523

Setting

This function can be turned on or off with a user tool (User Tools < System Settings <Administrator Tool).

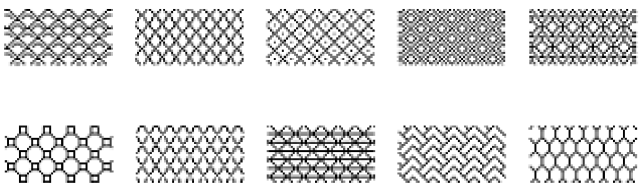
Related SC

If the "Copy Data Security Unit" is removed when the Copy Data Security Setting is On, SC165 occurs. This SC prevents someone from removing the Copy Data Security Unit "illegally".

6.16.2 MASK TYPE FOR COPYING

This function can prevent unauthorized copying by making masking patterns with an embedded message when making an original print. Masking patterns are good for printing documents that must not be copied. The embedded messages appear when the document is copied.

Five print densities (level 1 to 5) can be selected for the masking patterns. (Default: level 3) and 10 masking patterns can be selected from the RPCS driver.



b222d524

Note

- Some digital MFPs might not be able to detect the masking patterns. If the density of masking patterns on the output print is too light due to the settings of the machine or a mechanical problem, the pattern might not be detected.

6.17 FILE FORMAT CONVERTER (MLB)

In this machine, this conversion is hardware-based, using the optional File Format Converter. Without the File Format Converter, copy and print jobs cannot be downloaded to a PC (or e-Cabinet) from the document server.

Two common target formats are provided for conversion to files that can be selected by the SP modes: These are JPEG and TIFF.

In scanner mode, users can select file format from TIFF, JPEG, or PDF. The time to create TIFF and JPEG files is shortened with the File Format Converter, especially for high scanning resolution and large image size. When the customer selects PDF, the machine creates a TIFF or JPEG file from the scanned image first. Then it converts it to PDF. Therefore, the total time to create a PDF is also shortened with the File Format Converter.

6.18 DATA OVERWRITE SECURITY UNIT (B735)

6.18.1 AUTO ERASE MEMORY

A document scanned in the copier or scanner mode, or data sent from a printer driver for printing, is stored temporarily on the hard disk of the machine. The document stays in the hard disk as temporary data even after the copy or print job is completed. Auto Erase Memory erases the temporary data on the hard disk by writing over it.

Types of Data Overwritten and Not Overwritten

The following table shows the types of data that can or cannot be overwritten by Auto Erase Memory.

Data overwritten by Auto Erase Memory	Copier	Copy jobs
	Printer	1) Print jobs 2) Sample Print/Locked Print jobs(*1) 3) Spool Printing jobs
	Scanner(*2)	1) Scanned files sent by e-mail 2) Files sent by Scan to Folder 3) Documents sent or retrieved by using Web Image Monitor, Desk Top Binder, or Scan Router
	Fax	PC fax print jobs, Internet fax transmission jobs
	Document Server	Temporary data that still remains in the Document Server even after user erases the data in the Document Server.
Data not overwritten by Auto Erase Memory	1) Documents stored by the user in the Document Server using the Copier, Printer or Scanner functions 2) Information registered in the Address Book (*3) 3) Counters stored under each user code 4) Network setting	

Note

Data Overwrite Security Unit (B735)

- *1: A Sample Print or Locked Print job can only be overwritten after it has been executed.
- *2: Temporary data via TWAIN scanner function are not originally stored in HDD. You can use TWAIN scanner functions together with the DOS unit.
- *3: Data stored in the Address Book can be encrypted for security.

Overwrite timing

Overwriting starts automatically once a copy, print or scanner job is completed.
Copier, printer and scanner functions take priority over the Data Overwrite function. If a copier, printer or scanner job comes while a previous job is being overwritten, the overwrite process is automatically interrupted until the next job is completed.

SPECIFICATIONS

SECTION 7 SPECIFICATIONS REVISION HISTORY		
Page	**Date**	**Added/Updated/New**
		None

7. SPECIFICATIONS

7.1 GENERAL SPECIFICATIONS

7.1.1 MAIN FRAME

Configuration:	Desktop
Print Process:	Laser beam scanning & Dry electrostatic transfer system 4 drums tandem method
Number of scans:	1
Resolution:	Scan: 600 dpi Print: 600 dpi
Gradation:	Scan: 600dpi 4 bits/pixel Print: 600dpi 4 bits/pixel, 2 bits/pixel, 1 bit/pixel
Original type:	Sheets, book, objects
Maximum original size:	A3/11" x 17"
Original reference position:	Left rear corner, ad hoc lists
Copy speed:	Normal (ADF 1 to 1, LT/ A4 LEF) B222: 35 cpm (color/black & white) B224: 45 cpm (black & white) or 40 cpm (color) Thick 1 (169 g/m^2 or less) B222: 25 cpm (color/black & white) B224 25 cpm (color/black & white) Thick 2 (220 g/m^2 or less) B222: 17.5 cpm (color/black & white) B224 17.5 cpm (color/black & white) Thick 3 (253 g/m^2 or less) B222: 15 cpm (color/black & white)

General Specifications

	B224 15 cpm (color/black & white)		
First copy (normal mode):	B222 Color: 8 seconds or less (A4/LT LEF) Black & white: 4.9 seconds or less (A4/LT LEF) B224 Color: 7 seconds or less (A4/LT LEF) Black & white: 4.5 seconds or less (A4/LT LEF)		
Warm-up time:	B222: 45 seconds or less (23°C, 50%) B224: 60 seconds or less (23°C, 50%)		
Print Paper Capacity: (80 g/m^2, 20 lb)	Standard tray: 550 sheets x 2 By-pass tray: 100 sheets Optional paper feed tray: 550 sheets x 2 LCT: 2000 sheets		
Print Paper Size:	(Refer to “Supported Paper Sizes”.)		
	-	Minimum	Maximum
	Tray 1	A4/8.5" x 11" (LEF)	
	Tray 2	A5 (LEF)/ 8.5" x 11"	A3/11" x 17"
	By-pass	90 x 148 mm	305 x 600 mm
	Optional Tray	A5 (LEF)/ 8.5" x 11"	A3/11" x 17"
	LCT	A4/8.5" x 11" (LEF)	
Printing Paper Weight:	Standard tray: 60 to 216 g/m^2 (16 to 57 lb.) Optional paper tray: 60 to 216 g/m^2 (16 to 57 lb.) By-pass tray: 52 to 253 g/m^2 (14 to 67 lb.) Duplex unit: 60 to 169 g/m^2 (16 to 45 lb.)		
Output Paper Capacity:	Standard exit tray: 500 sheets or more (face down)*[1] 1-bin Tray: 125 (80 g/m^2) 1000-sheet finisher 250 + 1000 sheets (80 g/m^2)		

	2000-sheet booklet finisher: 250 + 2000 sheets (80 g/m^2) 3000-sheet booklet finisher: 250 + 3000 sheets (80 g/m^2) *1: T6200, A4 LEF		
Continuous copy:	Up to 999 sheets		
Zoom:	Arbitrary: From 25 to 400% (1% step)		
	Fixed:		
	North America	Europe	
	25%	25%	
	50%	50%	
	65%	61%	
	73%	71%	
	78%	82%	
	85%	87%	
	93%	93%	
	100%	100%	
	121%	115%	
	129%	122%	
	155%	141%	
	200%	200%	
	400%	400%	
Memory:	Standard: 1024 MB		
Power Source:	120 V, 60 Hz: More than 12A (for North America) 220 V – 240 V, 50/60 Hz: More than 8A (for Europe/ASIA)		
Power Consumption:	-	120V	220 - 240V

General Specifications

	Maximum		1440 W or less	1500 W or less
	Energy Saver		8 W or less	8 W or less
Noise Emission: (Sound Power Level)	Model	State	Mainframe	Complete system (*1)
	B222	Standby	44 dB(A) or Less	44 dB(A) or Less
		Operating	68 dB(A) or Less	72 dB(A) or Less
	B224	Standby	47 dB(A) or Less	47 dB(A) or Less
		Operating	68 dB(A) or Less	72 dB(A) or Less
(*1) The complete system consists of mainframe, ARDF, finisher, and LCT. The above measurements were made in accordance with Ricoh standard methodology.				
Dimensions (W x D x H): Copier: 670 x 677 x 760 mm (26.4" x 26.7" x 29.9") Copier + PFU or LCT: 670 x 677 x 1020 mm (26.4" x 26.7" x 40.2")				
Weight:	Less than 130 kg (286 lb.) [with ARDF excluding toner]			

7.2 PRINTER

Printer Languages:	PCL 6/5c RPCS (Refined Printing Command Stream) Adobe PostScript 3 (optional) PDF Direct (optional) PictBridge (optional)
Resolution and Gradation:	PCL 5c: 300 x 300 dpi : Available only in B/W mode 600 x 600 dpi : Fast (1 bit), Standard (2 bits), Fine (4 bits) PCL 6: 600 x 600 dpi : Fast (1 bit), Standard (2 bits), Fine (4 bits) RPCS: 600 x 600 dpi, 1,800 x 600 dpi*, 9600 dpi x 600 dpi* *1,800 x 600 dpi = 600 x 600 dpi (2 bits) *9600 dpi x 600 dpi* = 600 x 600 dpi (4 bits) PS3: 600 x 600 dpi : Fast (1 bit), Standard (2 bits), Fine (4 bits)
Printing speed:	B222: 35 ppm in Plain/Middle Thick mode 25/17.5/15 ppm in Thick/OHP mode (depending on paper type) B224: 45 ppm (black and white) in Plain/Middle Thick mode 40 ppm (color) in Plain/Middle Thick mode 25/17.5/15 ppm in Thick/OHP mode (depending on paper type)
Resident Fonts:	PCL 6/5c (Standard): 35 Intelli fonts 10 TrueType fonts 13 International fonts 1 Bitmap font Adobe PostScript 3 (Optional): 136 fonts (24 Type 2 fonts, 112 Type 14 fonts)

Printer

Host Interfaces:	USB 2.0: Standard Ethernet (100 Base-TX/10 Base-T): Standard IEEE1284 parallel x 1: Optional IEEE1394: Optional IEEE802.11b (Wireless LAN): Optional Bluetooth (Wireless): Optional USB Host: Optional
Network Protocols:	TCP/IP (IPv4, IPv6), IPX/SPX, AppleTalk (Auto Switching)

7.3 SCANNER

Standard Scanner Resolution:	Main scan/Sub scan 600 dpi
Available scanning Resolution Range:	Twain Mode: 100 to1200 dpi Delivery Mode: 100/200/300/400/600 dpi
Grayscales:	1 bit or 8 bits/pixel each for RGB
Scanning Throughput (ARDF mode):	Scan to E-mail / Folder: BW: 63 ppm (A4LEF / BW Text / Line Art / 200dpi /Compression: On (MH)) FC: 38 ppm (A4LEF / FC Text / Photo / 200dpi / Compression: Standard)
Interface:	Ethernet (100 Base-TX/10 Base-T for TCP/IP), IEEE 1394 (IP Over 1394), Wireless LAN
Compression Method:	B&W: TIFF (MH, MR, MMR) Gray Scale, Full Color: JPEG

7.4 SUPPORTED PAPER SIZES

7.4.1 PAPER FEED

BT: By-pass Tray, T1: Tray 1, T2/3/4: Tray 2/3/4, LCT: Large Capacity Tray,
DU: Duplex Unit

Paper	Size (W x L)	North America				Europe/Asia				DU
		BT	T1	T2/3/4	LCT	BT	T1	T2/3/4	LCT	
A3 W	12" x 18"	M	-	-	-	M	-	-	-	-
A3 SEF	297 x 420mm	M	-	M	-	A	-	A	-	M
A4 SEF	210 x 297mm	M	-	A	-	A	-	A	-	M
A4 LEF	297 x 210mm	M	S	M	S	M	M	A	M	M
A5 SEF	148 x 210mm	M	-	-	-	A	-	-	-	-
A5 LEF	210 x 148mm	M	S	A	-	M	S	A	-	M
A6 SEF	105 x 148mm	M	-	-	-	A	-	-	-	-
B4 SEF	257 x 364mm	M	-	M	-	M	-	A	-	M
B5 SEF	182 x 257mm	M	-	A	-	M	-	A	-	M
B5 LEF	257 x 182mm	M	S	M	-	M	S	A	-	M
B6 SEF	128 x	M	-	-	-	M	-	-	-	-

Paper	Size (W x L)	North America				Europe/Asia				DU
		BT	T1	T2/3/4	LCT	BT	T1	T2/3/4	LCT	
	182mm									
Ledger	11" x 17"	A	-	A	-	M	-	M	-	M
Letter SEF	8.5" x 11"	A	-	A	-	M	-	A	-	M
Letter LEF	11" x 8.5"	M	M	A	M	M	S	M	S	M
Legal SEF	8.5" x 14"	M	-	A	-	M	-	M	-	M
Government Legal SEF	8.25" x 14"	M	-	M	-	M	-	M	-	M
Half Letter SEF	5.5" x 8.5"	A	-	-	-	M	-	-	-	-
Executive SEF	7.25" x 10.5"	M	-	M	-	M	-	M	-	M
Executive LEF	10.5" x 7.25"	M	-	A	-	M	-	M	-	M
F SEF	8" x 13"	M	-	M	-	M	-	M	-	M
Foolscap SEF	8.5" x 13"	M	-	M	-	M	-	M	-	M
Folio SEF	8.25" x 13"	M	-	M	-	M	-	M	-	M
	11" x 15"	M	-	M	-	M	-	M	-	M
	10" x 14"	M	-	M	-	M	-	M	-	M
	8" x 10"	M	-	M	-	M	-	M	-	M
8K	267 x 390mm	M	-	M	-	M	-	M	-	M
16K SEF	195 x 267mm	M	-	M	-	M	-	M	-	M

Supported Paper Sizes

Paper	Size (W x L)	North America				Europe/Asia				DU
		BT	T1	T2/3/4	LCT	BT	T1	T2/3/4	LCT	
16K LEF	267 x 195mm	M	-	M	-	M	-	M	-	M
Custom		M	-	M	-	M	-	M	-	-
Com10 Env.	4.125" x 9.5"	M	-	-	-	M	-	-	-	-
Monarch Env.	3.875" x 7.5"	M	-	-	-	M	-	-	-	-
C6 Env.	114 x 162mm	M	-	-	-	M	-	-	-	-
C5 Env.	162 x 229mm	M	-	-	-	M	-	-	-	-
DL Env.	110 x 220mm	M	-	-	-	M	-	-	-	-

Remarks:

A	Supported: the sensor detects the paper size.
M	Supported: the user specifies the paper size.
S	Supported: depends on a technician adjustment
-	Not supported

7.4.2 PAPER EXIT

2000/3000 Sheet Booklet Finisher

MF: Main Frame, Prf: Proof, Clr: Clear, Shf: Shift, Stp: Staple, SS: Saddle Stitch,
2P: 2 Holes Punch, N2P: North Europe 2 Holes, 3P: 3 Holes Punch,

Punch 4 P: 4 Holes Punch, N4P: North Europe 4 Holes Punch

Paper	Size (W x L)	MF	2000/3000-sheet booklet finisher								
			Prf	Clr	Shf	Stp	SS	2P/N2P	3P	4P	N4P
A3 W	12" x 18"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	15	-	-	-	-
A3 SEF	297 x 420 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	15	Y	Y	Y	Y
A4 SEF	210 x 297 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	15	Y	-	-	Y
A4 LEF	297 x 210 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	-	Y	Y	Y	Y
A5 SEF	148 x 210 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	-	-	Y	-	-	Y
A5 LEF	210 x 148 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	-	-	Y	-	-	Y
A6 SEF	105 x 148 mm	Y	Y	Y	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
B4 SEF	257 x 364 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	15	Y	Y	Y*[4]	Y*[4]
B5 SEF	182 x 257 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	15	Y	-	-	Y
B5 LEF	257 x 182 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
B6 SEF	128 x 182 mm	Y	Y	Y	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Ledger	11" x 17"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	15	Y	Y	Y	Y
Letter SEF	8.5" x 11"	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	15	Y	-	-	Y
Letter LEF	11" x 8.5"	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	-	Y	Y	Y	Y

Supported Paper Sizes

Paper	Size (W x L)	MF	2000/3000-sheet booklet finisher								
			Prf	Clr	Shf	Stp	SS	2P/N2P	3P	4P	N4P
Legal SEF	8.5" x 14"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	15	Y	-	-	Y
Government Legal SEF	8.25" x 14"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	-	Y	-	-	Y
Half Letter SEF	5.5" x 8.5"	Y	Y	Y	Y	-	-	Y	-	-	Y
Executive SEF	7.25" x 10.5"	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	-	Y	-	-	Y
Executive LEF	10.5" x 7.25"	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	-	Y	Y	Y	Y
F SEF	8" x 13"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	-	Y	-	-	Y
Foolscap SEF	8.5" x 13"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	-	Y	-	-	Y
Folio SEF	8.25" x 13"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	-	Y	-	-	Y
	11" x 15"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	-	Y	Y	Y	Y
	10" x 14"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	-	Y	Y	-	Y
	8" x 10"	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	-	Y	-	-	Y
8K	267 x 390 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	-	Y	Y	Y	Y
16K SEF	195 x 267 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	-	Y	-	-	Y
16K LEF	267 x 195 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	-	Y	Y	Y	Y
Custom		Y	Y	Y	-	-	-	Y*[3]	Y*[3]	Y*[3]	Y*[3]
Com10 Env.	4.125" x 9.5"	Y	Y	Y	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Paper	Size (W x L)	MF	2000/3000-sheet booklet finisher								
			Prf	Clr	Shf	Stp	SS	2P/N2P	3P	4P	N4P
			*1	*2							
Monarch Env.	3.875" x 7.5"	Y	-	Y	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
C6 Env.	114 x 162 mm	Y	-	Y	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
C5 Env.	162 x 229 mm	Y	-	Y	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
DL Env.	110 x 220 mm	Y	-	Y	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Remarks:

Y	Supported
15	Output up to 15 sheets
30	Output up to 30 sheets
50	Output up to 50 sheets
-	Not supported

*1: Minimum 100 mm or more, Maximum 600 mm or less

*2: Minimum 100 mm or more, Maximum 600 mm or less

- Longer paper (feed length) than DLT (432 mm) is not guaranteed in this mode.

*3: Minimum 100 mm for 2P, 230 mm for 3P, 255 mm for 4P, 125 mm for N4P

*4: Corner stapling is not available in this mode.

1000-Sheet Finisher

MF: Main Frame, Prf: Proof, Clr: Clear, Shf: Shift, Stp: Staple

Supported Paper Sizes

Paper	Size (W x L)	MF	1000-sheet finisher				1 Bin
			Prf	Clr	Shf	Stp	
A3 W	12" x 18"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	-
A3 SEF	297 x 420 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	Y
A4 SEF	210 x 297 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	Y
A4 LEF	297 x 210 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	Y
A5 SEF	148 x 210 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	-	Y
A5 LEF	210 x 148 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	-	-
A6 SEF	105 x 148 mm	Y	Y	-	-	-	Y
B4 SEF	257 x 364 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	Y
B5 SEF	182 x 257 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	Y
B5 LEF	257 x 182 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	Y
B6 SEF	128 x 182 mm	Y	Y	-	-	-	N
Ledger	11" x 17"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	Y
Letter SEF	8.5" x 11"	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	Y
Letter LEF	11" x 8.5"	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	Y
Legal SEF	8.5" x 14"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	Y
Government Legal SEF	8.25" x 14"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	Y
Half Letter SEF	5.5" x 8.5"	Y	Y	Y	Y	-	Y
Executive SEF	7.25" x 10.5"	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	Y
Executive LEF	10.5" x 7.25"	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	Y
F SEF	8" x 13"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	Y

Paper	Size (W x L)	MF	1000-sheet finisher				1 Bin
			Prf	Clr	Shf	Stp	
Foolscap SEF	8.5" x 13"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	Y
Folio SEF	8.25" x 13"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	Y
	11" x 15"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	Y
	10" x 14"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	Y
	8" x 10"	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	Y
8K	267 x 390 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	30	Y
16K SEF	195 x 267 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	Y
16K LEF	267 x 195 mm	Y	Y	Y	Y	50	Y
Custom		Y	Y	-	-	-	-
Com10 Env.	4.125" x 9.5"	Y	-	-	-	-	-
Monarch Env.	3.875" x 7.5"	Y	-	-	-	-	-
C6 Env.	114 x 162 mm	Y	-	-	-	-	-
C5 Env.	162 x 229 mm	Y	-	-	-	-	-
DL Env.	110 x 220 mm	Y	-	-	-	-	-

Remarks:

Y	Supported
30	Output up to 30 sheets
50	Output up to 50 sheets
-	Not supported

7.4.3 PLATEN/ARDF ORIGINAL SIZE DETECTION

Size (width x length) [mm]	Platen	ARDF	Platen	ARDF
	Inches	Inches	Metric	Metric
A3 (297 x 420) SEF	-	Y	Y*3	Y
B4 (257 x 364) SEF	-	-	Y*3	Y
A4 (210 x 297) SEF	Y*1	Y	Y*3	Y
A4 (297 x 210) LEF	Y*3	Y	Y*3	Y
B5 (182 x 257) SEF	-	-	Y*3	Y
B5 (257 x 182) LEF	-	-	Y*3	Y
A5 (148 x 210) SEF	-	-	-*1	Y
A5 (210 x 148) LEF	-	-	-*1	Y
B6 (128 x 182) SEF	-	-	-	Y
B6 (182 x 128) LEF	-	-	-	Y
11" x 17" (DLT)	Y	Y*2	-	Y*2
11" x 15"	-	y*2	-	-
10" x 14"	-	Y	-	-
8.5" x 14" (LG)	Y	Y*2	-	-
8.5" x 13" (F4)	-	y*2	Y*4	Y*4
8.25" x 13"	-	-	Y*4	Y*4
8" x 13"(F)	-	-	Y*4	Y*4
8.5" x 11" (LT)	Y*3	Y*2	Y*3	Y*2
11" x 8.5" (LT)	Y*3	Y*2	Y*3	Y*2
8" x 10"	-	y*2	-	-

5.5" x 8.5" (HLT)	-*1	Y	-	-
8.5" x 5.5" (HLT)	-*1	Y	-	-
8K (267 x 390)	-	-	Y*3	y*2
16K L (195 x 267)	-	-	Y*3	y*2
16K S (267 x 195)	-	-	Y*3	y*2
7.25" x 10.5" (Executive)	-	Y	-	-
10.5" x 7.25" (Executive)	-	y*2	-	-

*1: Use SP4-303 to detect original sizes as A5 lengthwise/HLT when the message “Can-t detect original size” shows.

*2: The machine can detect the paper size depending on the setting of SP6-016-1. In default setting, "Y" is detected. "y" can be detected if you change setting of SP6-016-1.

*3: The machine can detect the paper size depending on the setting of SP4-305-1.

*4: The machine can detect the paper size depending on the setting of SP5-126-1.

7.5 SOFTWARE ACCESSORIES

The printer drivers and utility software are provided as following two CD-ROMs

1: Printer Drivers and Utilities CD-ROM

2: Scanner/PostScript® Drivers and Utilities CD-ROM.

An auto-run installer lets you to select the components you want to install.

7.5.1 PRINTER DRIVERS

Printer Language	Windows 95/98/ME	Windows NT4.0	Windows 2000/XP/2003	Macintosh
PCL 5c / PCL6	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
PS3 *2)	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
RPCS	Yes	Yes	Yes	No

Note

- The PCL5c/6 and RPCS drivers are provided on the printer drivers CD-ROM
- The PS drivers are provided on the Scanner/PostScript® Drivers and Utilities CD-ROM.
- The printer drivers for Windows NT 4.0 are only for the Intel x86 platform. There is no Windows NT 4.0 printer driver for the PowerPC, Alpha, or MIPS platforms.
- The PS3 drivers are all genuine AdobePS drivers, except for Windows 2000/XP/2003. Windows 2000 uses Microsoft PS. A PPD file for each operating system is provided with the driver.
- The PS3 driver for Macintosh supports Mac OS X 10.1 or later versions.

7.5.2 SCANNER AND LAN FAX DRIVERS

Printer Language	Windows 95/98/ME	Windows NT4.0	Windows 2000/XP/2003	Macintosh
Network TWAIN	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
LAN-FAX	Yes	Yes	Yes	No

Note

- The Network TWAIN and LAN FAX drivers are provided on the scanner drivers CD-ROM.
- This software lets you fax documents directly form your PC. Address Book Editor and Cover Sheet Editor are to be installed as well. (These require the optional fax unit.)

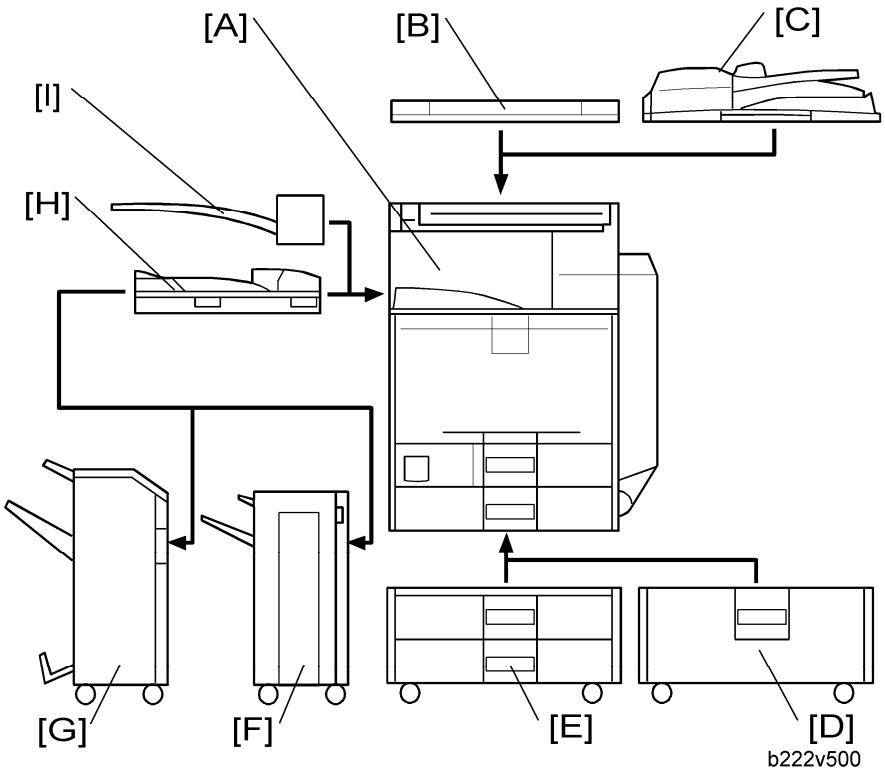
7.5.3 UTILITY SOFTWARE

Software	Description
Font Manager 2000 (Win9x/ME, 2000/XP/2003, NT4)	A font management utility with screen fonts for the printer This is provided on the printer drivers CD-ROM
SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin (Win9x/ME, 2000/XP/2003, NT4)	A printer management utility for network administrators. NIB setup utilities are also available. This is provided on the printer drivers CD-ROM
DeskTopBinder – SmartDeviceMonitor for Client (Win9x/ME, 2000/XP/2003, NT4)	A printer management utility for client users. A utility for peer-to-peer printing over a NetBEUI or TCP/IP network. A peer-to-peer print utility over a TCP/IP network. This provides the parallel printing and recovery printing features. This is provided on the printer drivers CD-ROM

Software Accessories

IEEE1394 Utility (Win2000/XP)	This utility deletes a print port for IEEE1394 in Win2000. This is provided on the printer drivers CD-ROM
Printer Utility for Mac (Mac)	A utility for peer-to-peer printing over a NetBEUI or TCP This software provides several convenient functions for printing from Macintosh clients. This is provided on the scanner drivers CD-ROM
DeskTopBinder Lite (Win9x/ME, 2000/XP/2003, NT4)	DeskTopBinder Lite itself can be used as personal document management software and can manage both image data converted from paper documents and application files saved in each client's PC. This is provided on the scanner drivers CD-ROM

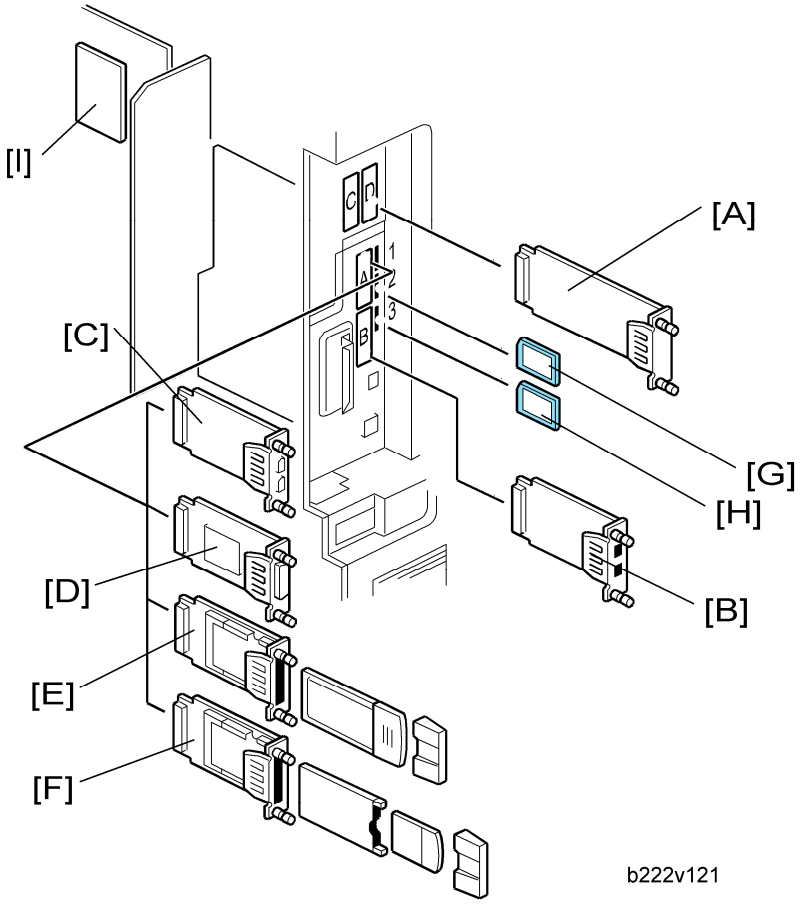
7.6 MACHINE CONFIGURATION



Item	Machine Code	Call out	Remarks
Mainframe	B222/B224	[A]	-
Platen cover	G329	[B]	One from the two
ARDF	B802	[C]	
2000/3000-sheet (booklet) finisher	B804/B805	[G]	One from [F] and [G]; Requires [H] and one from [D] and [E]
Punch unit: 3/2 holes	B702-17	-	Requires [G]
Punch unit: 4/2 holes	B702-27	-	Requires [G]
Punch unit: 4 holes	B702-28	-	Requires [G]

Machine Configuration

Item	Machine Code	Call out	Remarks
1000-sheet finisher	B408	[F]	One from [F] and [G]; Requires [H] and one from [D] and [E]
LCT	B801	[D]	One from the two
Two-tray paper feed unit	B800	[E]	
1-bin tray	B803	[I]	-
Bridge unit	B227	[H]	-
Scanner Accessibility Option	B838		



Item	Machine code	Call out	Remark
USB 2.0:	-	-	Standard
Ethernet:	-	-	Standard
IEEE 1284	B679-17	[C]	You can only install one of these at a time.
IEEE 1394	B581-41	[D]	
Wireless LAN	G813-45	[E]	
Bluetooth	B826-17	[F]	
Remote Communication Gate Type CM1	B818-17	-	
USB Host	B825-17	[B]	
File Format Converter	B609-04	[A]	
Hard Disk Drive	-	-	Standard
Copy Data Security Unit	B770-17	[I]	
PostScript 3	B839-04	[G]	You can only install one of these in SD slot 2 at a time.
Data Overwrite Security Unit	B735-18		
PictBridge	B824-01		
Browser Unit	B828-01	[H]	In SD slot 3

7.7 OPTIONAL EQUIPMENT

7.7.1 ARDF

Paper Size/Weight:	Simplex	Size	A3 to A5, DLT to HLT
		Weight	40 to 128 g/m^2 (11 to 34 lb.)
	Duplex	Size	A3 to A5, DLT to HLT
		Weight	52 to 128 g/m^2 (14 to 34 lb.)
Table Capacity:	100 sheets (81.4 g/m^2, 22 lb)		
Original Standard Position:	Rear left corner		
Separation:	Feed belt and separation roller		
Original Transport:	Roller transport		
Original Feed Order:	From the top original		
Supported Magnification Ratios:	Copy	-	32 to 200 %
	Fax	Color	32.6 to 200 %
		Black & white	48.9 to 200 %
Power Source:	DC 24V, 5V from the scanner unit		
Power Consumption:	Less than 60W		
Dimensions (W × D × H):	570 mm x 520 mm x 135 mm (22.4”x20.5”x5.3”)		
Weight:	Less than 12kg (26.5 lb.)		

7.7.2 PAPER FEED UNIT

Paper Feed System:	FRR
Paper Height Detection:	5 steps (100%, 70%, 30%, 10% (Near end), and Empty)
Capacity:	500 sheets x 2 trays
Paper Weight:	60 to 169 g/m^2 (16 to 45 lb.)
Paper Size:	A3 SEF to A5, DLT SEF to HLT
Power Source:	DC 24V, 5V (from the main frame)
Power Consumption:	Less than 50 W (Max.)/ Less than 35 W (Ave,)
Dimensions (W x D x H):	580 mm x 620 mm x 260 mm (22.8" x 24.4" x 10.2")
Weight:	25 kg (55 lb.)

7.7.3 LARGE CAPACITY TRAY

Paper Size:	A4 LEF/LT LEF
Paper Weight:	60 g/m^2 to 169 g/m^2, 16 lb. to 45 lb.
Tray Capacity:	2,000 sheets (80 g/m^2, 20lb.)
Remaining Paper Detection:	5 steps (100%, 67%, 32%, 6%, Empty): Right Tray
Power Source:	DC 24 V, 5 V (from copier/printer)
Power Consumption:	50 W (Max.)/30 W (Ave.)
Weight:	25 kg (55 lb.)
Size (W x D x H):	580 mm x 620 mm x 260 mm (22.8" x 24.4" x 10.2")

7.7.4 3000-SHEET FINISHER

Finisher				
Dimension (w x d x h)		657 mm x 613 mm x 960 mm (25.9” x 24.1” x 37.8”)		
Weight		Less than 54 kg (119 lb.) (no punch unit) Less than 56 kg (123.5 lb.) (with punch unit)		
Power Consumption		Less than 96 W		
Noise		Less than 75 db		
Configuration		Console type attached base-unit		
Power Source		From base-unit		
Proof Tray	Stack Capacity	250 sheets: A4, 8.5” x 11” or smaller 50 sheets: B4, 8.5” x 14 or larger		
	Paper Size	A5-A3 SEF, A6 SEF, A6 SEF 5.5” x 8.5”-11” x 17” SEF, 12” x 18” SEF		
	Paper Weight	52 g/m^2 - 163 g/m^2 (14 lb. - 43 lb.)		
Shift Tray	Stack Capacity	3,000 sheets	A4 LEF, 8.5" x 11” LEF	
		1,500 sheets	A3 SEF, A4 SEF, B4 SEF, B5, 11” x 17” SEF, 8.5” x 14” SEF, 8.5” x 11” SEF, 12” x 18” SEF	
		500 sheets	A5 LEF	
		100 sheets	A5 SEF, B6 SEF, A6 SEF, 5.5” x 8.5” SEF	
	Paper Size	A5 - A3 SEF, A6 SEF, B6 SEF, 5.5” x 8.5”- 11” x 17” SEF, 12” x 18” SEF		
	Paper Weight	52 g/m^2 - 256 g/m^2 (14 lb. - 68 lb.)		

Staples			
Paper Size		B5 - A3 8.5” x 11” - 11” x 17”, 12” x 18”	
Paper Weight		64 g/m^2 - 90 g/m^2 (14 lb. - 24 lb.)	
Staple Position		Top, Bottom, 2 Staple, Top-slant	
Stapling Capacity	Same Paper Size	50 sheets	A4, 8.5" x 11” or smaller
		30 sheets	B4, 8.5" x 14" or larger
	Mixed Paper Size	30 sheets	A4 LEF + A3 SEF, B5 LEF + B4 SEF, 8.5" x11” LEF + 11” x 17” SEF

Staple Replenishment	Cartridge exchange / 5000 pins per cartridge		
Stapled Stack Capacity (same size)	Paper Size	Pages/Set	Sets
	A4 LEF, 8.5” x 11” LEF	20 - 50 pages	150 - 60 sets
		2 - 19 pages	150 sets
	A4 SEF, B5, 8.5” x 11” SEF	15 - 50 pages	100 - 30 sets
		2 - 14 pages	100 sets
	Others	15 - 30 pages	100 - 33 sets
		2 - 14 pages	100 sets
Stapled Stack Capacity (mixed sizes)	A4 LEF & A3 SEF, B5 LEF & B4 SEF, 8.5” x11” LEF & 11” x 17” SEF	2 - 30 pages	50 set

7.7.5 2000-SHEET BOOKLET FINISHER

Finisher			
Dimension W x D x H		657 mm x 613 mm x 960 mm (25.9 x 24.1 x 37.8")	
Weight		Less than 63 kg (138.6 lb.) (no punch unit) Less than 65 kg (143 lb.) (with punch unit)	
Power Consumption		Less than 96 W	
Noise		Less than 75 db	
Configuration		Console type attached base-unit	
Power Source		From base-unit	
Proof Tray	Stack Capacity	250 sheets: A4, 8.5” x 11” or smaller 50 sheets: B4, 8.5” x 14 or larger	
	Paper Size	A5 - A3 SEF, A6 SEF, A6 LEF 5.5" x 8.5" to 11” x 17” SEF, 12”x18” SEF	
	Paper Weight	52 g/m^2 - 163 g/m^2 (14 lb. - 43 lb.)	
Shift Tray	Stack Capacity	2,000 sheets	A4 LEF, 8.5” x 11” LEF
		1,000 sheets	A3 SEF, A4 SEF, B4 SEF, B5 11” x 17” SEF, 8.5" x 14” SEF, 8.5" x 11” SEF, 12”x18” SEF
		500 sheets	A5 LEF
		100 sheets	A5 SEF, B6 SEF, A6 SEF, 5.5" x 8.5" SEF
	Paper Size	A5 - A3 SEF, A6 SEF, B6 SEF 5.5" x 8.5" to 11” x 17” SEF, 12” x 18” SEF	

	Paper Weight	52 g/m^2 - 256 g/m^2 (14 lb. - 68 lb.)	
Staple			
Paper Size		B5-A3, 8.5" x 11” - 11” x 17”, 12” x 18”	
Paper Weight		64 g/m^2 - 90 g/m^2, 17 lb. Bond - 28 lb. Bond	
Staple Position		Top, Bottom, 2 Staple, Top-slant	
Staples Capacity	Same Paper Size	50 sheets	A4, 8.5" x 11” or smaller
		30 sheets	B4, 8.5" x 14” or larger
	Mixed Paper Size	30 sheets	A4 LEF & A3 SEF, B5 LEF & B4 SEF, 8.5" x 11” LEF & 11” x 17” SEF
	Booklet Stapling	15 sheets	A4 SEF, A3 SEF, B5 SEF, B4 SEF, 8.5" x 11” SEF, 8.5” x 14” SEF, 11” x 17” SEF, 12” x 18” SEF

Staple Replenishment		Corner staple	5,000 staples per cartridge
		Booklet staple	2,000 staples per cartridge
Corner Staple Capacity	Same Size	A4 LEF, 8.5” x 11” LEF	13 - 50 pages
			2 - 12 pages
		A4 SEF, B5, 8.5” x 11” SEF	10 - 50 pages
			2 - 9 pages
		Others	10 - 30 pages
			2 - 9 pages
	Mixed Size	A4 LEF + A3 SEF B5 LEF + B4 SEF	2 - 30 pages

Optional Equipment

		8.5” x 11” LEF + 11” x 17” SEF	
Booklet Staple Capacity	A4 SEF, A3 SEF, B5 SEF, B4 SEF 8.5” x 11” SEF, 8.5” x 14” SEF, 11” x 17” SEF 12” x 18” SEF		2 - 5 pages
			6 - 10 pages
			11 - 15 pages

7.7.6 PUNCH UNIT FOR 2000/3000-SHEET (BOOKLET) FINISHER

Available Punch Units		NA	2/3 holes switchable
		EU	2/4 holes switchable
		Scandinavia	4 holes
Punch Waste Replenishment		NA 2-holes	Up to 5,000 sheets
		NA 3-holes	Up to 5,000 sheets
		EU 2-holes	Up to 14,000 sheets
		EU 4-holes	Up to 7,000 sheets
		Scandinavia 4-holes	Up to 7,000 sheets
Paper Weight		52 g/m^2 - 163 g/m^2, 14 lb Bond - 43 lb Bond / 90 lb Index / 60 lb Cover	
Paper Sizes	NA 2-holes	SEF	A5 to A3, 5.5" x 8.5" to 11” x 17”
		LEF	A5 to A4, 5.5" x 8.5" , 8.5" x 11”
	NA 3-holes	SEF	A3, B4, 11” x 17”
		LEF	A4, B5, 8.5" x 11”
	EU 2-holes	SEF	A5 to A3, 5.5" x 8.5" to 11” x 17”

		LEF	A5 to A4, 5.5" x 8.5", 8.5" x 11”
	EU 4-holes	SEF	A3, B4, 11”x17”
		LEF	A4, B5, 8.5" x 11”
	Scandinavia 4-holes	SEF	A5 to A3, 5.5" x 8.5" to 11” x 17”
		LEF	A5 to A4, 5.5" x 8.5", 8.5" x 11”

7.7.7 1000-SHEET FINISHER

Upper Tray

Paper Size:	A3 to A6 11" x 17" to 5.5" x 8.5"
Paper Weight:	60 to 157 g/m^2 (16 to 42 lb.)
Paper Capacity:	250 sheets (A4 LEF/8.5" x 11" SEF or smaller) 50 sheets (A4, 8.5" x 11" or smaller) 30 sheets (B4, 8.5" x 14" or larger)

Lower Tray

Paper Size:	No staple mode: A3 to B5, DLT to HLT Staple mode: A3, B4, A4, B5, DLT to LT
Paper Weight:	No staple mode: 60 to 157 g/m^2 (16 to 42 lb) Staple mode: 64 to 90 g/m^2 (17 to 24 lb)
Stapler Capacity:	30 sheets (A3, B4, DLT, LG) 50 sheets (A4, B5 LEF, LT)

<table>
<tr><td rowspan="6">Paper Capacity:</td><td colspan="4">No staple mode:
1,000 sheets (A4/LT or smaller: 80 g/m^2, 20 lb.)
500 sheets (A3, B4, DLT, LG: 80 g/m^2, 20 lb.)
Staple mode: (80 g/m^2, 20 lb., number of sets)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Set Size</td><td rowspan="2">2 to 9</td><td colspan="2">10 to 50</td></tr>
<tr><td>Size</td><td>10 to 30</td><td>31 to 50</td></tr>
<tr><td>A4/LT LEF
B5 LEF</td><td>100</td><td>100 to 20</td><td>100 to 20</td></tr>
<tr><td>A4/LT SEF</td><td>100</td><td>50 to 10</td><td>50 to 10</td></tr>
<tr><td>A3, B4, DLT, LG</td><td>50</td><td>50 to 10</td><td>-</td></tr>
<tr><td>Staple positions:</td><td colspan="4">1 Staple: 2 positions (Front, Rear)
2 Staples: 2 positions (Upper, Left)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Staple Replenishment:</td><td colspan="4">Cartridge (5,000 staples/cartridge)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Power Source:</td><td colspan="4">DC 24 V, 5 V (from the copier/printer)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Power Consumption:</td><td colspan="4">50 W</td></tr>
<tr><td>Weight:</td><td colspan="4">25 kg (55.2 lbs)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Dimensions (W x D x H):</td><td colspan="4">527 x 520 x 790 mm (20.8" x 20.5" x 31.1")</td></tr>
</table>

7.7.8 BRIDGE UNIT

Paper Size:	Standard sizes A6 SEF to A3, HLT to DLT Non-standard sizes Width: 90 to 305 mm Length: 148 to 600 mm
Paper Weight:	52 g/m^2 to 253 g/m^2, 16 lb. to 78 lb.

Power Source:	DC 24 V, 5 V (form the copier/printer)
Dimensions (W x D x H):	415 mm x 412 mm x 111 mm (16.3" x 16.2" x 4.4")
Weight	5 kg (11 lb.)

7.7.9 1-BIN TRAY UNIT

Paper Size:	Standard Size: A3 /DLT to A6/ HLT SEF
Paper Weight:	60 to 169 g/m^2, 16 to 45 lb.
Tray Capacity:	125 sheets (80 g/m^2, 20 lb., A4)
Power Source:	DC 24 V, 5 V (from the copier)
Power Consumption:	Less than 1 W
Weight:	2 kg
Size (W x D x H):	465 mm x 440 mm x 219 mm (18.3”x17.3”x8.6”)

FAX OPTION TYPE C4500

B771

B771 FAX OPTION TYPE C4500 REVISION HISTORY		
Page	**Date**	**Added/Updated/New**
38	10/14/2009	Error Code 31-21 added.
166 ~ 167	04/24/2007	Service Ram Addresses

FAX OPTION TYPE C4500 B771

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. INSTALLATION 1

1.1 FAX UNIT (B771) 1

1.1.1 COMPONENT CHECK 1

1.1.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 2

1.2 G3 INTERFACE UNIT (B772) 8

1.2.1 COMPONENT CHECK 8

1.2.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 9

1.3 FAX UNIT OPTIONS 15

1.3.1 MEMORY UNIT (G578) 15

1.3.2 HANDSET (B433) 15

2. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT 18

2.1 FCU 18

3. TROUBLESHOOTING 19

3.1 ERROR CODES 19

3.2 IFAX TROUBLESHOOTING 39

3.3 IP-FAX TROUBLESHOOTING 42

3.3.1 IP-FAX TRANSMISSION 42

3.3.2 IP-FAX RECEPTION 45

4. SERVICE TABLES 49

4.1 BEFOREHAND 49

4.2 SERVICE TABLES 50

4.2.1 SP1-XXX (BIT SWITCHES) 50

4.2.2 SP2-XXX (RAM DATA) 51

4.2.3 SP3-XXX (TEL LINE SETTINGS) 52

4.2.4 SP4-XXX (ROM VERSIONS) 54

4.2.5 SP5-XXX (INITIALIZING) 55

4.2.6 SP6-XXX (REPORTS) 56

4.2.7 SP7-XXX (TEST MODES) 58

4.2.8 SP9-XXX (DESIGN SWITCH MODE) 60

4.3 BIT SWITCHES 61

4.3.1 SYSTEM SWITCHES 61
4.3.2 I-FAX SWITCHES 76
4.3.3 PRINTER SWITCHES 83
4.3.4 COMMUNICATION SWITCHES 92
4.3.5 G3 SWITCHES 103
4.3.6 G3-2/3 SWITCHES 114
4.3.7 IP FAX SWITCHES 123
4.4 NCU PARAMETERS 133
4.5 DEDICATED TRANSMISSION PARAMETERS 149
4.5.1 PROGRAMMING PROCEDURE 149
4.5.2 PARAMETERS 149
4.6 SERVICE RAM ADDRESSES 158

5. DETAILED SECTION DESCRIPTIONS 168
5.1 OVERVIEW 168
5.2 BOARDS 169
5.2.1 FCU 169
5.2.2 MBU 170
5.2.3 SG3 BOARD 171
5.3 VIDEO DATA PATH 173
5.3.1 TRANSMISSION 173
5.3.2 RECEPTION 175
5.4 FAX COMMUNICATION FEATURES 176
5.4.1 MULTI-PORT 176
5.4.2 DOCUMENT SERVER 176
5.4.3 INTERNET MAIL COMMUNICATION 177
5.5 IP-FAX 188
5.5.1 WHAT IS IP-FAX? 188

6. SPECIFICATIONS 189
6.1 GENERAL SPECIFICATIONS 189
6.1.1 FCU 189
6.1.2 CAPABILITIES OF PROGRAMMABLE ITEMS 190
6.2 IFAX SPECIFICATIONS 192
6.3 IP-FAX SPECIFICATIONS 194
6.4 FAX UNIT CONFIGURATION 195

Read This First

Important Safety Notices

⚠WARNING

- Never install telephone wiring during a lightning storm.
- Never install telephone jacks in wet locations unless the jack is specifically designed for wet locations.
- Never touch uninsulated telephone wires or terminals unless the telephone line has been disconnected at the network interface.
- Use caution when installing or modifying telephone lines.
- Avoid using a telephone (other than a cordless type) during an electrical storm. There may be a remote risk of electric shock from lightning.
- Do not use a telephone or cellular phone to report a gas leak in the vicinity of the leak.

⚠CAUTION

- Before installing the fax unit, switch off the main switch, and disconnect the power cord.
- The fax unit contains a lithium battery. The danger of explosion exists if a battery of this type is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or an equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer. Discard batteries in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and local regulations.

Note

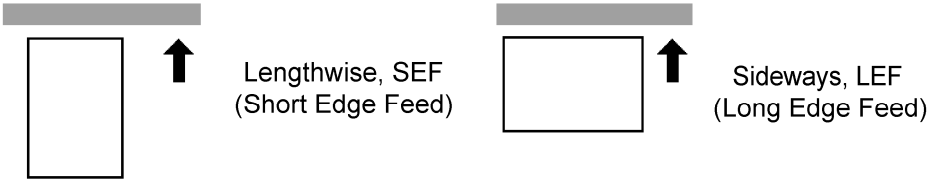
- **Note for Australia**:
- Unit must be connected to Telecommunication Network through a line cord which meets the requirements of ACA Technical Standard TS008.

Symbols and Abbreviations

Conventions Used in this Manual

This manual uses several symbols.

Symbol	What it means
	Refer to section number
	Screw
	Connector
	E-ring
	Clip ring
	Clamp



Cautions, Notes, etc.

The following headings provide special information:

⚠WARNING

- Failure to obey warning information could result in serious injury or death.

⚠CAUTION

- Obey these guidelines to ensure safe operation and prevent minor injuries.

Important

- Obey these guidelines to avoid problems such as misfeeds, damage to originals, loss of valuable data and to prevent damage to the machine.
- Always obey these guidelines to avoid serious problems such as misfeeds, damage to originals, loss of valuable data and to prevent damage to the machine. bold is added for emphasis.

Note

- This document provides tips and advice about how to best service the machine.

1. INSTALLATION

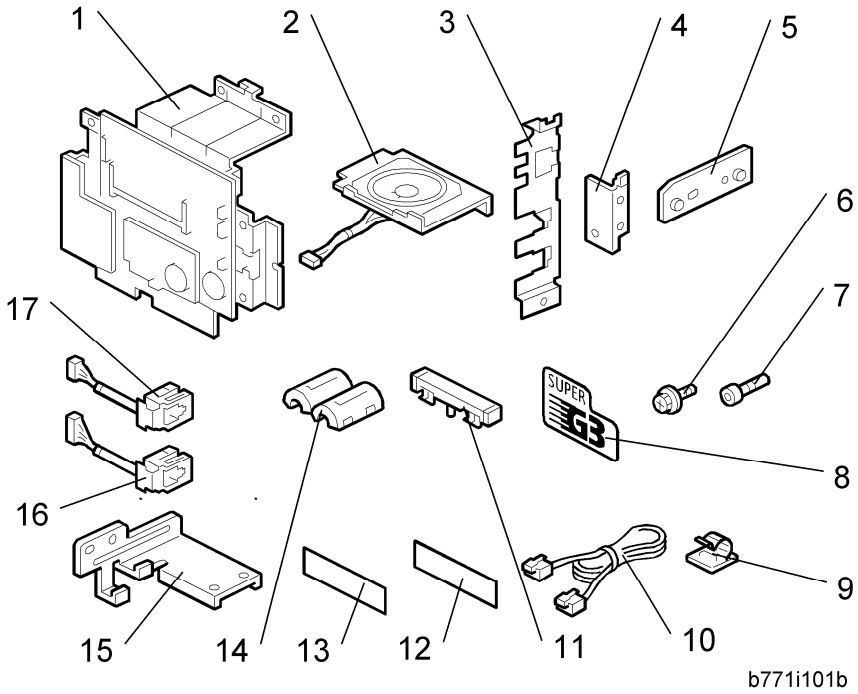
1.1 FAX UNIT (B771)

1.1.1 COMPONENT CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the components against the following list.

No.	Description	Q'ty
1	FCU	1
2	Speaker	1
3	Modular Bracket	1
4	Support Bracket	1
5	Handset Support Bracket (NA only)	1
6	Screw	7 or 9 (NA only)
7	Stamp	1
8	G3 Decal	1
9	Clamp (NA only)	1
10	Telephone Cable (NA only)	1
11	Fax Key	1
12	Serial Number Decal	1
13	FCC Decal (NA only)	1
14	Ferrite Core	1 or 2 (NA only)
15	Handset Bracket (NA only)	1
16	Harness: TEL	1
17	Harness: LINE	1

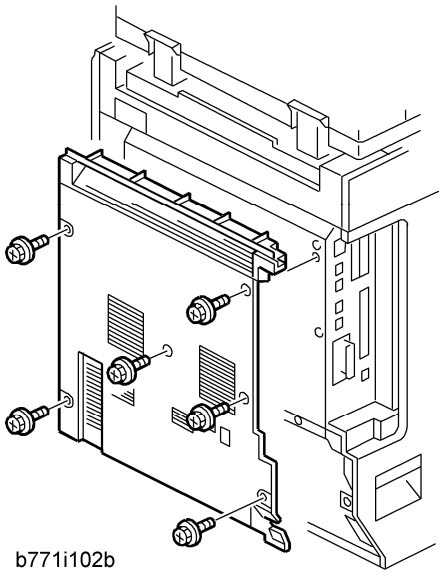
Fax Unit (B771)



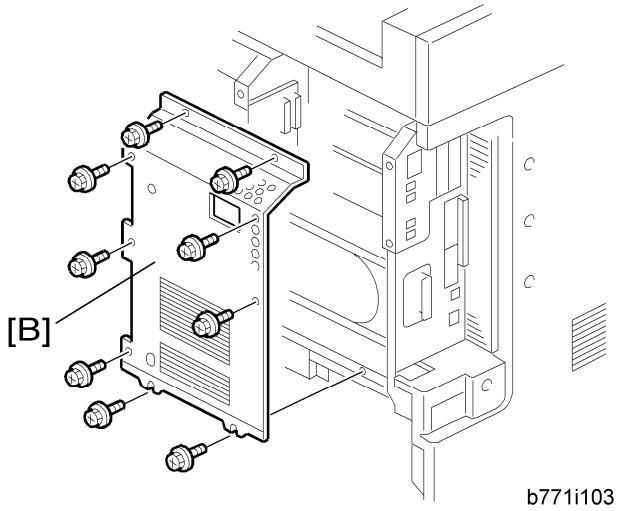
1.1.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

⚠CAUTION

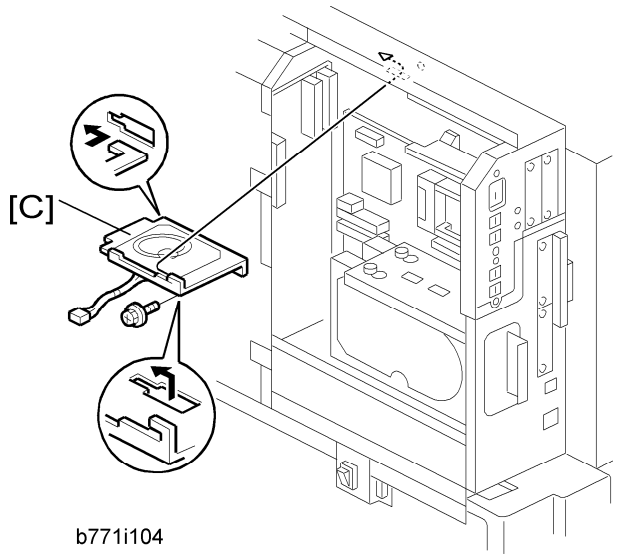
- **Before installing this fax unit,**
  - Print out all data in the printer buffer.
  - Turn off the main power switch and disconnect the power cord and the network cable.



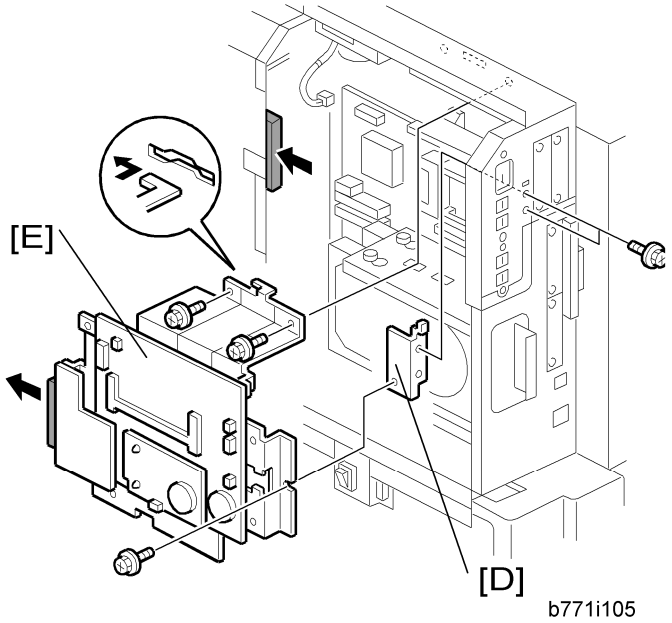
1. **Remove the rear cover [A] (🔩 x 6).**



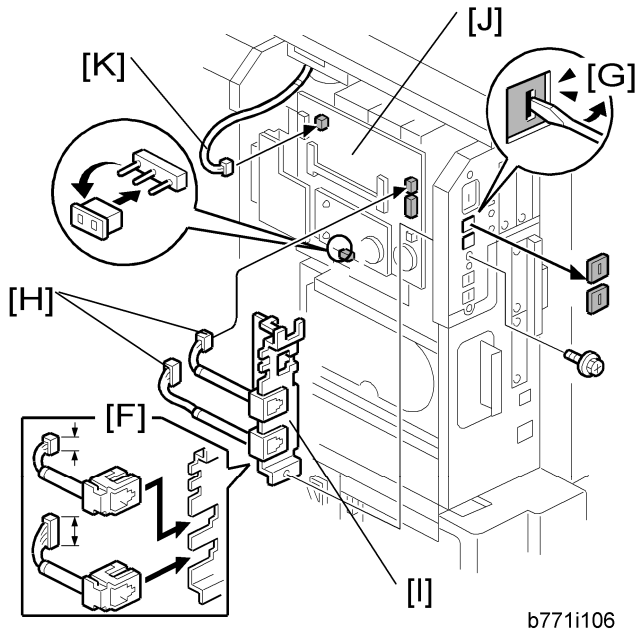
2. **Remove the controller box cover [B] (🔩 x 9).**



3. **Install the speaker [C] to the controller box (x 1).**



4. **Attach the support bracket [D] to the controller box (x 2).**
5. **Install the fax unit [E] to the controller board (x 3).**



6. **Change the MBU battery jumper switch connector [F] from the "OFF" position to the "ON" position.**
7. **Press down the MBU.**

Note

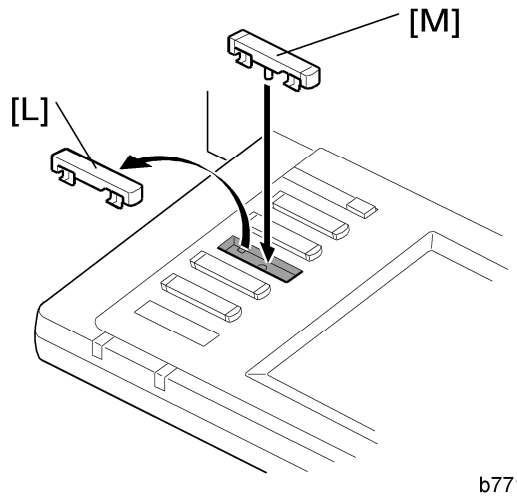
- Make sure that the MBU is seated correctly. If not, SC occurs (SC672).

8. **Remove the "TEL" and "LINE" covers [G] with a screw driver.**
9. **Attach the harnesses [H] (for TEL and LINE) to the modular bracket [I].**
10. **Attach the modular bracket [I] to the controller box (x 1).**
11. **Reattach the controller box cover (x 9) and rear cover (x 5).**
12. **Attach the handset bracket and clamp to the copier, and then connect the handset cord with the ferrite core to the "TEL" jack if you install the handset to the machine.**

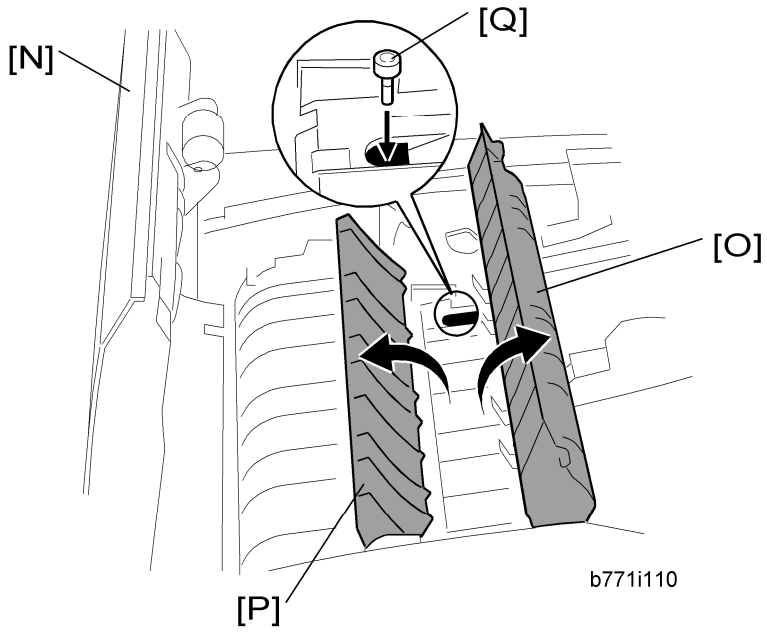
Note

- For details, refer to the "Hand Set Installation" in the Service Manual for the Fax Unit (B771).

13. **Attach the ferrite core to the telephone cord.**
14. **Connect the telephone cord to the "LINE 1" jack.**



15. Replace the third key-slot cover [L] with the fax key [M].

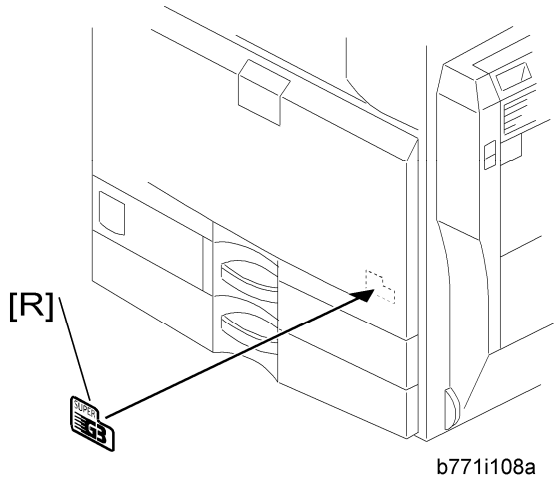


16. Open the ARDF cover [N].

17. Open the feed-in guide plate [O] and feed-out guide plate [P].

18. Install the stamp [Q] into the ARDF.

19. Close two guide plates and ARDF cover.



b771i108a

20. **Attach the decal [R] (SUPER G3) to the front door.**
21. **Attach the FCC decal and serial number decal under the copier serial number decal at the rear cover of the machine.**
22. **The FCC decal is for the U.S. and Canada only.**
23. **Put the power plug into the outlet and turn on the main power of the machine.**

Note

- Make sure that the outlet is grounded.
- "SRAM formatted" shows on the operation panel after you have turned the main switch on. Turn the main switch off and on again for normal use.

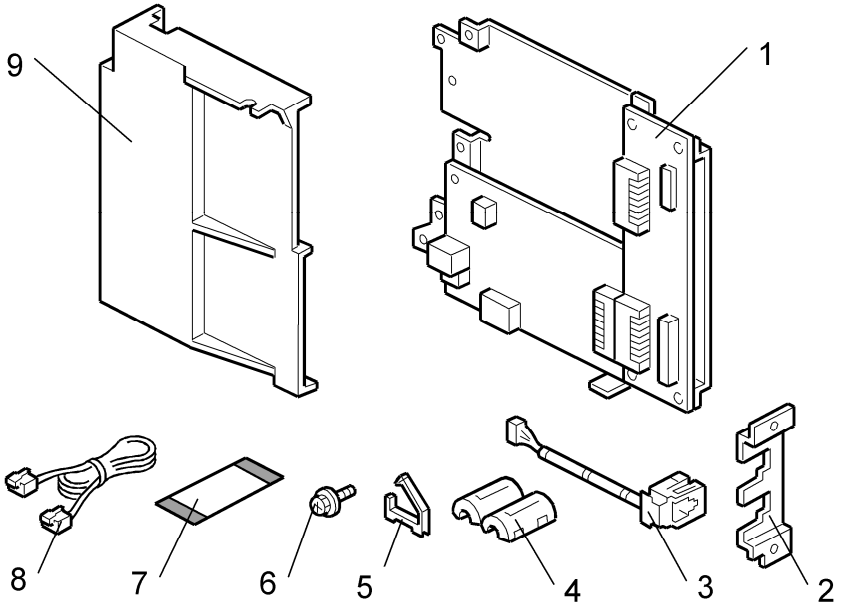
24. **Make sure that the date and time are correctly set.**

1.2 G3 INTERFACE UNIT (B772)

1.2.1 COMPONENT CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the components against the following list.

No.	Description	Q'ty
1	SG3 Interface Unit	1
2	Modular Bracket for SG3	1
3	Harness	1
4	Ferrite Core	1
5	Edge Saddle	1
6	Screw	10
7	Flat Cable	1
8	Telephone Cable (NA only)	1
9	SG3 Cover	1

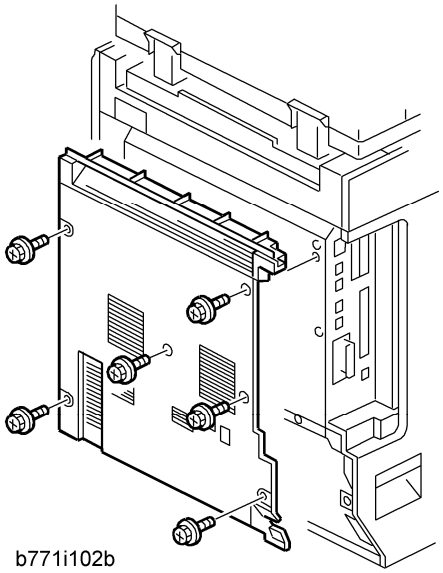


1.2.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

⚠CAUTION

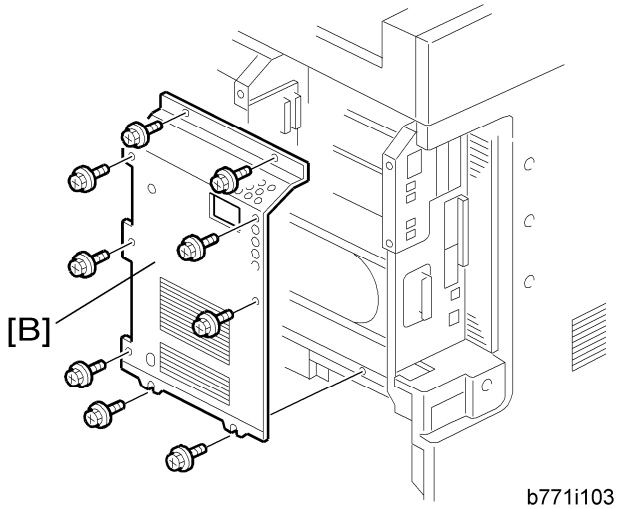
- **Before installing this optional unit,**
  - Print out all data in the printer buffer.
  - Turn off the main switch and disconnect the power cord and the network cable.

You can add two more SG3 boards to this model. Follow the procedures for adding the single SG3 board installation or double SG3 boards installation as a customer needs.



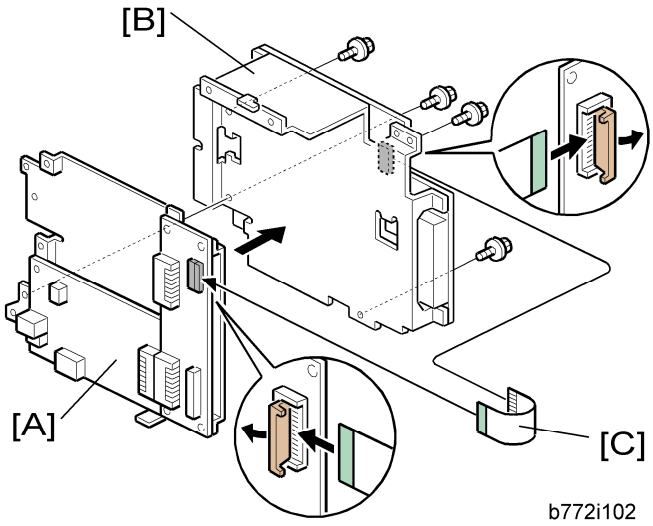
G3 Interface Unit (B772)

1. **Remove the rear cover [A] (x 6).**

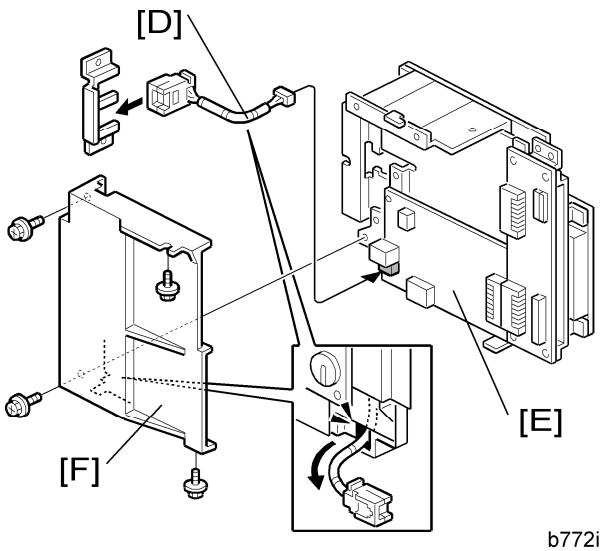


2. **Remove the controller box cover [B] (x 9).**
   If the fax unit has already been installed, do the following steps 3 and 4. If not, skip those steps.
3. **Remove the speaker harness.**
4. **Remove the modular bracket (x 1), and then the fax unit (x 3).**

For Installing the Single G3 Board



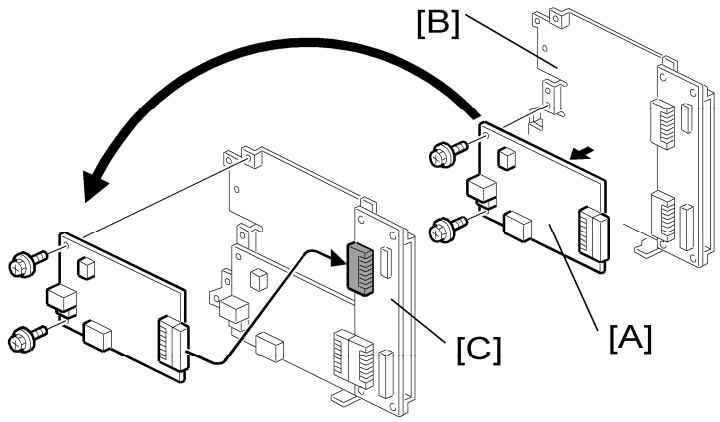
1. **Attach the SG3 interface unit [A] unit to the rear side of the fax unit [B] (x 4).**
2. **Connect the interface board to the fax controller board with the flat cable [C].**



b772i103

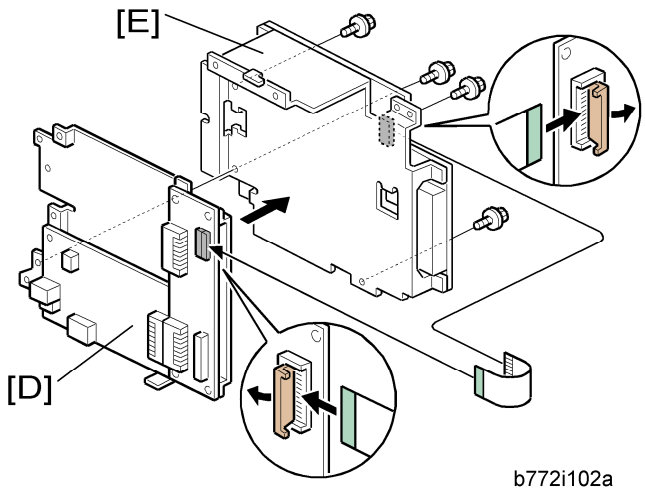
3. **Connect the harness [D] to the SG3 board [E].**
4. **Attach the socket of harness [D] (LINE2) to the modular bracket for SG3.**
5. **Attach the cover [F] to the rear side of the fax unit.**

For Installing the Double G3 Boards

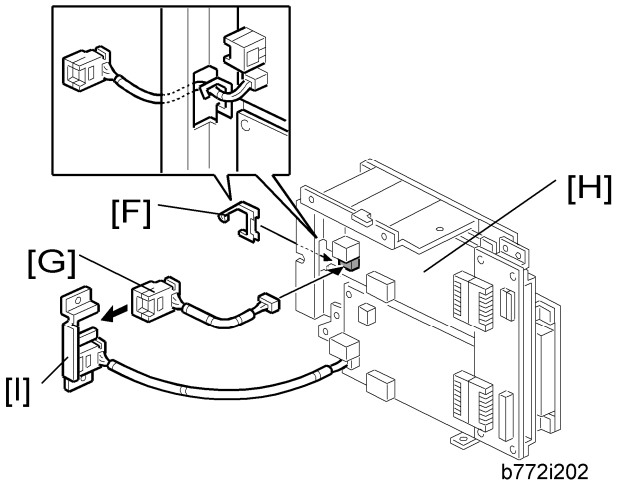


b772i201

1. **Remove the SG3 board [A] from the second SG3 interface unit [B] for the double-SG3 board installation (🔩 x 2).**
2. **Attach the SG3 board [A] to the interface board [C] of the first SG3 interface unit (🔩x 2).**

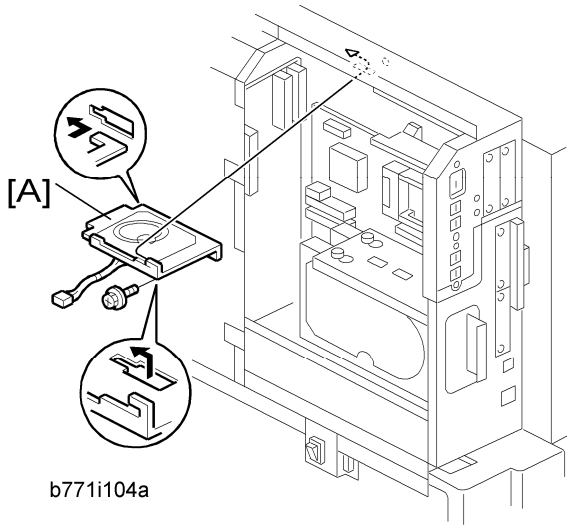


3. **Attach the SG3 interface unit [D] to the rear side of the fax unit [E] (🔩 x 4).**

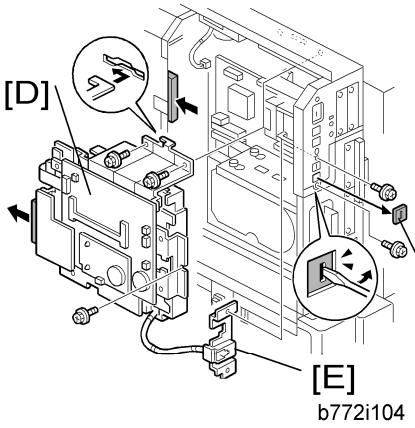


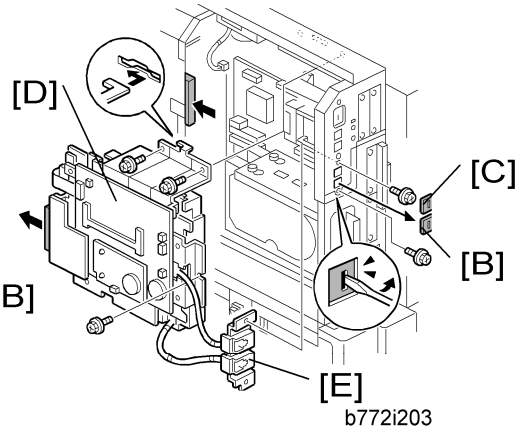
4. **Attach the edge saddle [F] to the fax unit.**
5. **Connect the harness [G] to the second SG3 board [H] (🖃 x 1).**
6. **Attach the socket of harness [G] (LINE3) to modular bracket [I] for SG3.**
7. **Attach the cover to the rear side of the fax unit (see step 5 in "For installing the single SG3 board").**

For Single G3 Board and Double G3 Boards



1. **Install the speaker [A] on the controller box if the fax unit has not been installed (☞ x 1).**





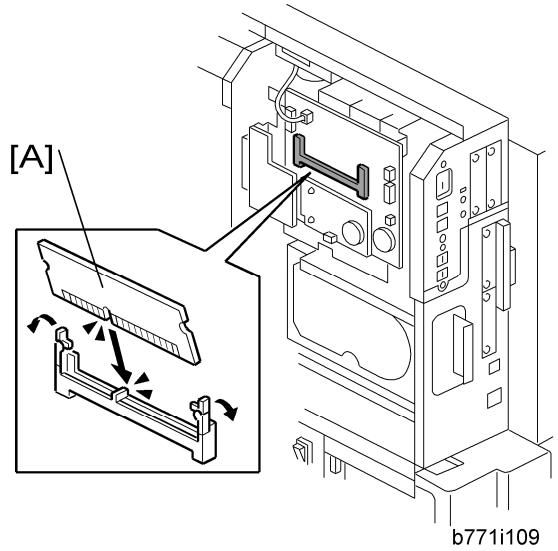
2. **Remove the "LINE2" cover [B] for single SG3 board installation or the "LINE2" and "LINE3" covers [B], [C] for double-SG3 board installation.**
3. **Install the fax unit [D] on the controller board (☞ x 3).**
4. **Attach the modular bracket [E] to the controller box (☞ x 2).**
5. **Attach the controller box cover to the controller box (☞ x 9).**
6. **Attach the rear cover to the copier (☞ x 5).**
7. **Attach the ferrite core to the telephone cord for single SG3 board installation, or the two ferrite cores to the telephone cords for double-SG3 board installation.**
8. **Connect the telephone cord to the "LINE 2" jack for single SG3 board installation, or connect the telephone cords to the "LINE2" and "LINE3" jacks for double-SG3 board installation.**

9. **Connect the power plug to a power outlet and turn on the main power switch.**
10. **Enter the service mode. Set bit 1 of communication switch 16 to “1” (SP1-104-023).**
11. **Set bit 3 of communication switch 16 to "1" (SP1-104-023) if you have installed two SG3 boards.**
12. **Exit the service mode.**
13. **Turn the main power switch off and on.**
14. **Print out the system parameter list. Then check that “G3” shows as an option.**
15. **Set up and program the items required for PSTN-2 communications.**

1.3 FAX UNIT OPTIONS

1.3.1 MEMORY UNIT (G578)

1. **Rear cover (✉ "Installation Procedure" in the "Fax Unit (B771)")**
2. **Controller box left cover (✉ "Installation Procedure" in the "Fax Unit (B771)")**

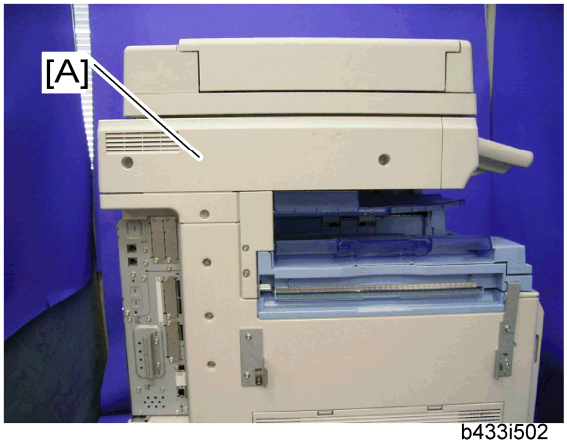


3. **Intall the memory option [A] to the FCU.**
4. **Reaasemble the machine.**

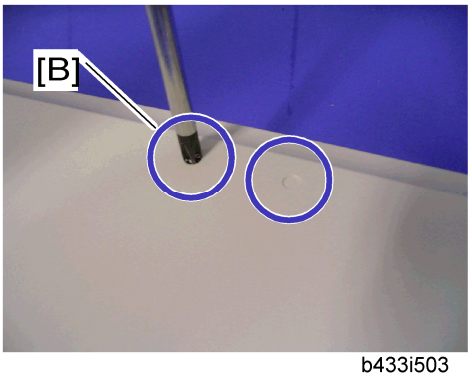
1.3.2 HANDSET (B433)

Note

- The optional handset is available for the U.S. version only.



1. **Remove the scanner left cover [A] (🔩 x 2).**

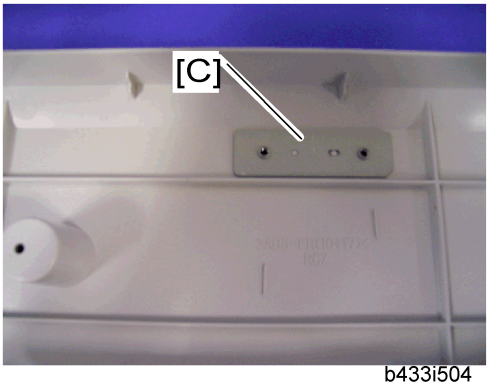


b433i503

2. **Make two holes in the scanner left cover.**

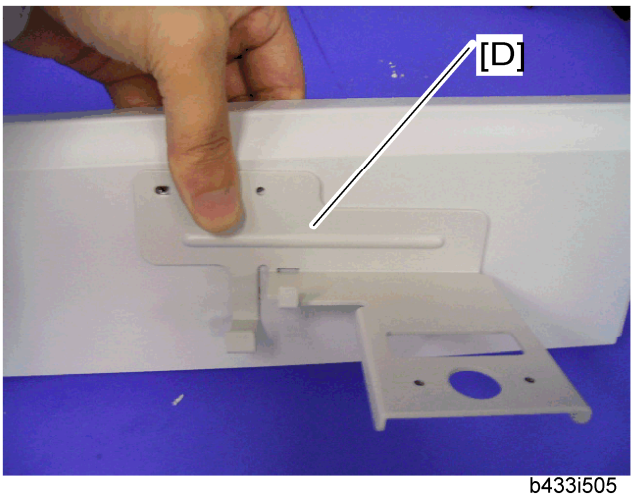
Note

- Drill a hole from the outside of the cover with a screwdriver.



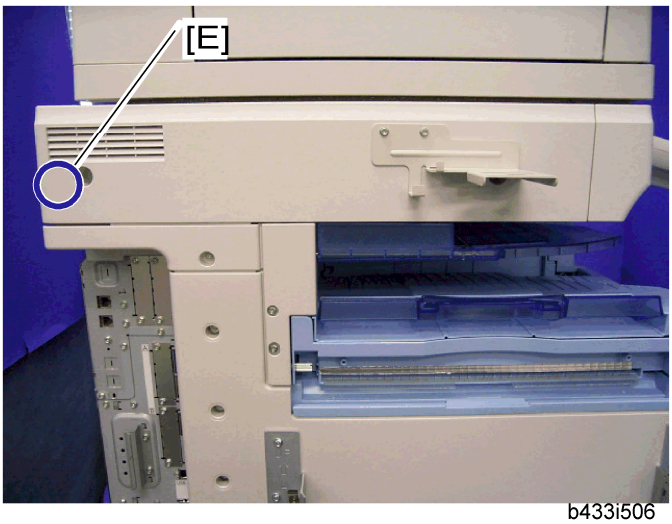
b433i504

3. **Attach the hand set support bracket [C] inside the scanner left cover.**



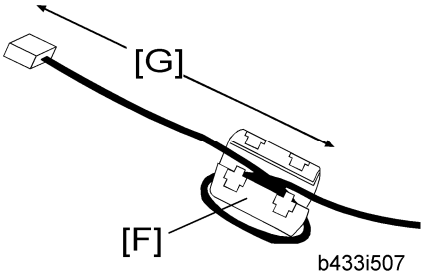
b433i505

4. **Hold the handset bracket [D] and handset support bracket (set inside the scanner left cover).**
5. **Secure the handset bracket [D] (x 2).**



b433i506

6. **Install the scanner left cover on the machine.**
7. **Attach the clamp to the location [E].**
8. **Set the handset on the handset bracket.**



b433i507

9. **Put the ferrite core [F] on the handset cord as shown. The length [G] must be 90 mm.**
10. **Clamp the hand set cord.**
11. **Connect the handset cable to the "TEL" jack at the rear of the machine.**

2. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

2.1 FCU

1. **When you replace the FCU board, remove the MBU board from the old FCU board and install it on the new FCU board.**
2. **Set the correct date and time with the User Tools: User Tools > System Settings > Timer Setting > Set Date/Time.**

Note

- Do not turn off the battery switch (SW1).
- Do SP6101 to print the system parameters, and check the settings.

3. TROUBLESHOOTING

3.1 ERROR CODES

If an error code occurs, retry the communication. If the same problem occurs, try to fix the problem as suggested below. Note that some error codes appear only in the error code display and on the service report.

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
0-00	DIS/NSF not detected within 40 s of Start being pressed	▪ Check the line connection. ▪ The machine at the other end may be incompatible. ▪ Replace the FCU. ▪ Check for DIS/NSF with an oscilloscope. ▪ If the rx signal is weak, there may be a bad line.
0-01	DCN received unexpectedly	▪ The other party is out of paper or has a jammed printer. ▪ The other party pressed Stop during communication.
0-03	Incompatible modem at the other end	The other terminal is incompatible.
0-04	CFR or FTT not received after modem training	▪ Check the line connection. ▪ Try changing the tx level and/or cable equalizer settings. ▪ Replace the FCU. ▪ The other terminal may be faulty; try sending to another machine. ▪ If the rx signal is weak or defective, there may be a bad line. **Cross reference** Tx level - NCU Parameter 01 (PSTN)

Error Codes

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
		Cable equalizer - G3 Switch 07 (PSTN) Dedicated Tx parameters in Service Program Mode
0-05	Modem training fails even G3 shifts down to 2400 bps.	▪ Check the line connection. ▪ Try adjusting the tx level and/or cable equalizer. ▪ Replace the FCU. ▪ Check for line problems. **Cross reference** See error code 0-04.
0-06	The other terminal did not reply to DCS	▪ Check the line connection. ▪ Try adjusting the tx level and/or cable equalizer settings. ▪ Replace the FCU. ▪ The other end may be defective or incompatible; try sending to another machine. ▪ Check for line problems. **Cross reference** See error code 0-04.
0-07	No post-message response from the other end after a page was sent	▪ Check the line connection. ▪ Replace the FCU. ▪ The other end may have jammed or run out of paper. ▪ The other end user may have disconnected the call. ▪ Check for a bad line. ▪ The other end may be defective; try sending to another machine.
0-08	The other end sent RTN or PIN after receiving a page, because there were too many errors	▪ Check the line connection. ▪ Replace the FCU. ▪ The other end may have jammed, or run out of paper or memory space.

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
		▪ Try adjusting the tx level and/or cable equalizer settings. ▪ The other end may have a defective modem/FCU; try sending to another machine. ▪ Check for line problems and noise. **Cross reference** ▪ Tx level - NCU Parameter 01 (PSTN) ▪ Cable equalizer - G3 Switch 07 (PSTN) ▪ Dedicated Tx parameters in Service Program Mode
0-14	Non-standard post message response code received	▪ Incompatible or defective remote terminal; try sending to another machine. ▪ Noisy line: resend. ▪ Try adjusting the tx level and/or cable equalizer settings. ▪ Replace the FCU. **Cross reference** See error code 0-08.
0-15	The other terminal is not capable of specific functions.	The other terminal is not capable of accepting the following functions, or the other terminal's memory is full. ▪ Confidential rx ▪ Transfer function ▪ SEP/SUB/PWD/SID
0-16	CFR or FTT not detected after modem training in confidential or transfer mode	▪ Check the line connection. ▪ Replace the FCU. ▪ Try adjusting the tx level and/or cable equalizer settings. ▪ The other end may have disconnected, or it may be defective; try calling another machine. ▪ If the rx signal level is too low, there may be a

Error Codes

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
		line problem. **Cross reference** See error code 0-08.
0-20	Facsimile data not received within 6 s of retraining	▪ Check the line connection. ▪ Replace the FCU. ▪ Check for line problems. ▪ Try calling another fax machine. ▪ Try adjusting the reconstruction time for the first line and/or rx cable equalizer setting. **Cross reference** Reconstruction time - G3 Switch 0A, bit 6 Rx cable equalizer - G3 Switch 07 (PSTN)
0-21	EOL signal (end-of-line) from the other end not received within 5 s of the previous EOL signal	▪ Check the connections between the FCU and line. ▪ Check for line noise or other line problems. ▪ Replace the FCU. ▪ The remote machine may be defective or may have disconnected. **Cross reference** Maximum interval between EOLs and between ECM frames - G3 Bit Switch 0A, bit 4
0-22	The signal from the other end was interrupted for more than the acceptable modem carrier drop time (default: 200 ms)	▪ Check the line connection. ▪ Replace the FCU. ▪ Defective remote terminal. ▪ Check for line noise or other line problems. ▪ Try adjusting the acceptable modem carrier drop time. **Cross reference** Acceptable modem carrier drop time - G3 Switch 0A, bits 0 and 1
0-23	Too many errors during reception	▪ Check the line connection. ▪ Replace the FCU.

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
		▪ Defective remote terminal. ▪ Check for line noise or other line problems. ▪ Try asking the other end to adjust their tx level. ▪ Try adjusting the rx cable equalizer setting and/or rx error criteria. **Cross reference** Rx cable equalizer - G3 Switch 07 (PSTN) Rx error criteria - Communication Switch 02, bits 0 and 1
0-30	The other terminal did not reply to NSS(A) in AI short protocol mode	▪ Check the line connection. ▪ Try adjusting the tx level and/or cable equalizer settings. ▪ The other terminal may not be compatible. **Cross reference** Dedicated tx parameters - Section 4
0-32	The other terminal sent a DCS, which contained functions that the receiving machine cannot handle.	▪ Check the protocol dump list. ▪ Ask the other party to contact the manufacturer.
0-33	The data reception (not ECM) is not completed within 10 minutes.	▪ Check the line connection. ▪ The other terminal may have a defective modem/FCU.
0-52	Polarity changed during communication	▪ Check the line connection. Retry communication.
0-55	FCU does not detect the SG3.	▪ FCU firmware or board defective. ▪ SG3 firmware or board defective.
0-56	The stored message data exceeds the capacity of the mailbox in the SG3.	▪ SG3 firmware or board defective.
0-70	The communication mode	▪ The other terminal did not have a compatible

Error Codes

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
	specified in CM/JM was not available (V.8 calling and called terminal)	communication mode (e.g., the other terminal was a V.34 data modem and not a fax modem.) ▪ A polling tx file was not ready at the other terminal when polling rx was initiated from the calling terminal.
0-74	The calling terminal fell back to T.30 mode, because it could not detect ANSam after sending CI.	▪ The calling terminal could not detect ANSam due to noise, etc. ▪ ANSam was too short to detect. ▪ Check the line connection and condition. ▪ Try making a call to another V.8/V.34 fax.
0-75	The called terminal fell back to T.30 mode, because it could not detect a CM in response to ANSam (ANSam timeout).	▪ The terminal could not detect ANSam. ▪ Check the line connection and condition. ▪ Try receiving a call from another V.8/V.34 fax.
0-76	The calling terminal fell back to T.30 mode, because it could not detect a JM in response to CM (CM timeout).	▪ The called terminal could not detect a CM due to noise, etc. ▪ Check the line connection and condition. ▪ Try making a call to another V.8/V.34 fax.
0-77	The called terminal fell back to T.30 mode, because it could not detect a CJ in response to JM (JM timeout).	▪ The calling terminal could not detect a JM due to noise, etc. ▪ A network that has narrow bandwidth cannot pass JM to the other end. ▪ Check the line connection and condition. ▪ Try receiving a call from another V.8/V.34 fax.

0-79	The called terminal detected CI while waiting for a V.21 signal.	▪ Check for line noise or other line problems. ▪ If this error occurs, the called terminal falls back to T.30 mode.
0-80	The line was disconnected due to a timeout in V.34 phase 2 – line probing.	▪ The guard timer expired while starting these phases. Serious noise, narrow bandwidth, or low signal level can cause these errors. If these errors happen at the transmitting terminal: ▪ Try making a call at a later time. ▪ Try using V.17 or a slower modem using dedicated tx parameters. ▪ Try increasing the tx level. ▪ Try adjusting the tx cable equalizer setting. If these errors happen at the receiving terminal: ▪ Try adjusting the rx cable equalizer setting. ▪ Try increasing the tx level. ▪ Try using V.17 or a slower modem if the same error is frequent when receiving from multiple senders.
0-81	The line was disconnected due to a timeout in V.34 phase 3 – equalizer training.	
0-82	The line was disconnected due to a timeout in the V.34 phase 4 – control channel start-up.	
0-83	The line was disconnected due to a timeout in the V.34 control channel restart sequence.	
0-84	The line was disconnected due to abnormal signaling in V.34 phase 4 – control channel start-up.	▪ The signal did not stop within 10 s. ▪ Turn off the machine, then turn it back on. ▪ If the same error is frequent, replace the FCU.
0-85	The line was disconnected due to abnormal signaling in V.34 control channel restart.	▪ The signal did not stop within 10 s. ▪ Turn off the machine, then turn it back on. ▪ If the same error is frequent, replace the FCU.

Error Codes

0-86	The line was disconnected because the other terminal requested a data rate using MPh that was not available in the currently selected symbol rate.	▪ The other terminal was incompatible. ▪ Ask the other party to contact the manufacturer.
0-87	The control channel started after an unsuccessful primary channel.	▪ The receiving terminal restarted the control channel because data reception in the primary channel was not successful. ▪ This does not result in an error communication.
0-88	The line was disconnected because PPR was transmitted/received 9 (default) times within the same ECM frame.	▪ Try using a lower data rate at the start. ▪ Try adjusting the cable equalizer setting.
2-11	Only one V.21 connection flag was received	▪ Replace the FCU.
2-12	Modem clock irregularity	▪ Replace the FCU.
2-13	Modem initialization error	▪ Turn off the machine, then turn it back on. ▪ Update the modem ROM. ▪ Replace the FCU.
2-23	JBIG compression or reconstruction error	▪ Turn off the machine, then turn it back on.
2-24	JBIG ASIC error	▪ Turn off the machine, then turn it back on.
2-25	JBIG data reconstruction error (BIH error)	▪ JBIG data error ▪ Check the sender's JBIG function. ▪ Update the MBU ROM.
2-26	JBIG data reconstruction error (Float marker error)	

2-27	JBIG data reconstruction error (End marker error)	
2-28	JBIG data reconstruction error (Timeout)	
2-29	JBIG trailing edge maker error	▪ FCU defective ▪ Check the destination device.
2-50	The machine resets itself for a fatal FCU system error	▪ If this is frequent, update the ROM, or replace the FCU.
2-51	The machine resets itself because of a fatal communication error	▪ If this is frequent, update the ROM, or replace the FCU.
2-53	Snd msg() in the manual task is an error because the mailbox for the operation task is full.	▪ The user did the same operation many times, and this gave too much load to the machine.
4-01	Line current was cut	▪ Check the line connector. ▪ Check for line problems. ▪ Replace the FCU.
4-10	Communication failed because of an ID Code mismatch (Closed Network) or Tel. No./CSI mismatch (Protection against Wrong Connections)	▪ Get the ID Codes the same and/or the CSIs programmed correctly, then resend. ▪ The machine at the other end may be defective.
5-10	DCR timer expired	▪ Replace the FCU.
5-20	Storage impossible because of a lack of memory	▪ Temporary memory shortage. ▪ Test the SAF memory.

Error Codes

5-21	Memory overflow	
5-23	Print data error when printing a substitute rx or confidential rx message	▪ Test the SAF memory. ▪ Ask the other end to resend the message.
5-25	SAF file access error	▪ Replace an SD card or HDD. ▪ Replace the FCU.
6-00	G3 ECM - T1 time out during reception of facsimile data	▪ Try adjusting the rx cable equalizer. ▪ Replace the FCU.
6-01	G3 ECM - no V.21 signal was received	
6-02	G3 ECM - EOR was received	
6-04	G3 ECM - RTC not detected	▪ Check the line connection. ▪ Check for a bad line or defective remote terminal. ▪ Replace the FCU.
6-05	G3 ECM - facsimile data frame not received within 18 s of CFR, but there was no line fail	▪ Check the line connection. ▪ Check for a bad line or defective remote terminal. ▪ Replace the FCU. ▪ Try adjusting the rx cable equalizer **Cross reference** ▪ Rx cable equalizer - G3 Switch 07 (PSTN)
6-06	G3 ECM - coding/decoding error	▪ Defective FCU. ▪ The other terminal may be defective.
6-08	G3 ECM - PIP/PIN received in reply to PPS.NULL	▪ The other end pressed Stop during communication. ▪ The other terminal may be defective.
6-09	G3 ECM - ERR received	▪ Check for a noisy line.

		▪ Adjust the tx levels of the communicating machines. ▪ See code 6-05.
6-10	G3 ECM - error frames still received at the other end after all communication attempts at 2400 bps	▪ Check for line noise. ▪ Adjust the tx level (use NCU parameter 01 or the dedicated tx parameter for that address). ▪ Check the line connection. ▪ Defective remote terminal.
6-21	V.21 flag detected during high speed modem communication	▪ The other terminal may be defective or incompatible.
6-22	The machine resets the sequence because of an abnormal handshake in the V.34 control channel	▪ Check for line noise. ▪ If the same error occurs frequently, replace the FCU. ▪ Defective remote terminal.
6-99	V.21 signal not stopped within 6 s	▪ Replace the FCU.
13-17	SIP user name registration error	▪ Double registration of the SIP user name. ▪ Capacity for user-name registration in the SIP server is not sufficient.
13-18	SIP server access error	▪ Incorrect initial setting for the SIP server. ▪ Defective SIP server.
14-00	SMTP Send Error	▪ Error occurred during sending to the SMTP server. Occurs for any error other than 14-01 to 16. For example, the mail address of the system administrator is not registered.
14-01	SMTP Connection Failed	▪ Failed to connect to the SMTP server (timeout) because the server could not be found. ▪ The PC is not ready to transfer files. ▪ SMTP server not functioning correctly. ▪ The DNS IP address is not registered.

Error Codes

		▪ Network not operating correctly. ▪ Destination folder selection not correct.
14-02	No Service by SMTP Service (421)	▪ SMTP server operating incorrectly, or the destination for direct SMTP sending is not correct. ▪ Contact the system administrator and check that the SMTP server has the correct settings and operates correctly. ▪ Contact the system administrator for direct SMTP sending and check the sending destination.
14-03	Access to SMTP Server Denied (450)	▪ Failed to access the SMTP server because the access is denied. ▪ SMTP server operating incorrectly. Contact the system administrator to determine if there is a problem with the SMTP server and to check that the SMTP server settings are correct. ▪ Folder send destination is incorrect. Contact the system administrator to determine that the SMTP server settings and path to the server are correct. ▪ Device settings incorrect. Confirm that the user name and password settings are correct. ▪ Direct SMTP destination incorrect. Contact the system administrator to determine if there is a problem at the destination at that the settings at the destination are correct.
14-04	Access to SMTP Server Denied (550)	▪ SMTP server operating incorrectly ▪ Direct SMTP sending not operating correctly
14-05	SMTP Server HDD Full (452)	▪ Failed to access the SMTP server because the HDD on the server is full. ▪ Insufficient free space on the HDD of the

		SMTP server. Contact the system administrator and check the amount of space remaining on the SMTP server HDD. ▪ Insufficient free space on the HDD where the destination folder is located. Contact the system administrator and check the amount of space remaining on the HDD where the target folder is located. ▪ Insufficient free space on the HDD at the target destination for SMTP direct sending. Contact the system administrator and check the amount of space remaining on the target HDD.
14-06	User Not Found on SMTP Server (551)	▪ The designated user does not exist. ▪ The designated user does not exist on the SMTP server. ▪ The designated address is not for use with direct SMTP sending.
14-07	Data Send to SMTP Server Failed (4XX)	▪ Failed to access the SMTP server because the transmission failed. ▪ PC not operating correctly. ▪ SMTP server operating incorrectly ▪ Network not operating correctly. ▪ Destination folder setting incorrect. ▪ Direct SMTP sending not operating correctly.
14-08	Data Send to SMTP Server Failed (5XX)	▪ Failed to access the SMTP server because the transmission failed. ▪ SMTP server operating incorrectly ▪ Destination folder setting incorrect. ▪ Direct SMTP sending not operating correctly. ▪ Software application error.
14-09	Authorization Failed for Sending to SMTP Server	▪ POP-Before-SMTP or SMTP authorization failed.

Error Codes

		▪ Incorrect setting for file transfer
14-10	Addresses Exceeded	▪ Number of broadcast addresses exceeded the limit for the SMTP server.
14-11	Buffer Full	▪ The send buffer is full so the transmission could not be completed. Buffer is full due to using Scan-to-Email while the buffer is being used send mail at the same time.
14-12	Data Size Too Large	▪ Transmission was cancelled because the detected size of the file was too large.
14-13	Send Cancelled	▪ Processing is interrupted because the user pressed Stop.
14-14	Security Locked File Error	▪ Update the software because of the defective software.
14-15	Mail Data Error	▪ The transmitting a mail is interrupted via DCS due to the incorrect data. ▪ Update the software because of the defective software.
14-16	Maximum Division Number Error	▪ When a mail is divided for the mail transmission and the division number of a mail are more than the specified number, the mail transmission is interrupted. ▪ Update the software because of the defective software.
14-17	Incorrect Ticket	▪ Update the software because of the defective software.
14-18	Access to MCS File Error	▪ The access to MCS file is denied due to the no permission of access. ▪ Update the software because of the defective software.
14-30	MCS File Creation Failed	Failed to create the MCS file because:

		▪ The number of files created with other applications on the Document Server has exceeded the limit. ▪ HDD is full or not operating correctly. ▪ Software error.
14-31	UFS File Creation Failed	UFS file could not be created: ▪ Not enough space in UFS area to handle both Scan-to-Email and IFAX transmission. ▪ HDD full or not operating correctly. ▪ Software error.
14-32	Cancelled the Mail Due to Error Detected by NFAX	▪ Error detected with NFAX and send was cancelled due to a software error.
14-33	No Mail Address For the Machine	▪ Neither the mail address of the machine nor the mail address of the network administrator is registered.
14-34	Address designated in the domain for SMTP sending does not exist	▪ Operational error in normal mail sending or direct SMTP sending. ▪ Check the address selected in the address book for SMTP sending. ▪ Check the domain selection.
14-50	Mail Job Task Error	Due to an FCU mail job task error, the send was cancelled: ▪ Address book was being edited during creation of the notification mail. ▪ Software error.
14-51	UCS Destination Download Error	Not even one return notification can be downloaded: ▪ The address book was being edited. ▪ The number for the specified destination does not exist (it was deleted or edited after the job was created).
14-60	Send Cancel Failed	▪ The cancel operation by the user failed to

		cancel the send operation.
14-61	Notification Mail Send Failed for All Destinations	▪ All addresses for return notification mail failed.
14-62	Transmission Error due to the existence of zero line page	▪ When the 0 line page exists in received pages with G3 communication, the transmission is interrupted.
15-01	POP3/IMAP4 Server Not Registered	▪ At startup, the system detected that the IP address of the POP3/IMAP4 server has not been registered in the machine.
15-02	POP3/IMAP4 Mail Account Information Not Registered	▪ The POP3/IMAP4 mail account has not been registered.
15-03	Mail Address Not Registered	▪ The mail address has not been registered.
15-10	DCS Mail Receive Error	▪ Error other than 15-11 to 15-18.
15-11	Connection Error	The DNS or POP3/IMAP4 server could not be found: ▪ The IP address for DNS or POP3/IMAP4 server is not stored in the machine. ▪ The DNS IP address is not registered. ▪ Network not operating correctly.
15-12	Authorization Error	POP3/IMAP4 send authorization failed: ▪ Incorrect IFAX user name or password. ▪ Access was attempted by another device, such as the PC. ▪ POP3/IMAP4 settings incorrect.
15-13	Receive Buffer Full	▪ Occurs only during manual reception. Transmission cannot be received due to insufficient buffer space. The buffer is being used for mail send or Scan-to-Email.
15-14	Mail Header Format Error	▪ The mail header is not standard format. For

		example, the Date line description is incorrect.
15-15	Mail Divide Error	▪ The e-mail is not in standard format. There is no boundary between parts of the e-mail, including the header.
15-16	Mail Size Receive Error	▪ The mail cannot be received because it is too large.
15-17	Receive Timeout	▪ May occur during manual receiving only because the network is not operating correctly.
15-18	Incomplete Mail Received	▪ Only one portion of the mail was received.
15-31	Final Destination for Transfer Request Reception Format Error	▪ The format of the final destination for the transfer request was incorrect.
15-39	Send/Delivery Destination Error	The transmission cannot be delivered to the final destination: ▪ Destination file format is incorrect. ▪ Could not create the destination for the file transmission.
15-41	SMTP Receive Error	▪ Reception rejected because the transaction exceeded the limit for the “Auth. E-mail RX” setting.
15-42	Off Ramp Gateway Error	▪ The delivery destination address was specified with Off Ramp Gateway OFF.
15-43	Address Format Error	▪ Format error in the address of the Off Ramp Gateway.
15-44	Addresses Over	▪ The number of addresses for the Off Ramp Gateway exceeded the limit of 30.
15-61	Attachment File Format Error	▪ The attached file is not TIFF format.
15-62	TIFF File Compatibility	Could not receive transmission due to:

Error Codes

	Error	▪ Resolution error ▪ Image of resolution greater than 200 dpi without extended memory. ▪ Resolution is not supported. ▪ Page size error ▪ The page size was larger than A3. ▪ Compression error ▪ File was compressed with other than MH, MR, or MMR.
15-63	TIFF Parameter Error	The TIFF file sent as the attachment could not be received because the TIFF header is incorrect: ▪ The TIFF file attachment is a type not supported. ▪ The TIFF file attachment is corrupted. ▪ Software error.
15-64	TIFF Decompression Error	The file received as an attachment caused the TIFF decompression error: ▪ The TIFF format of the attachment is corrupted. ▪ Software error.
15-71	Not Binary Image Data	▪ The file could not be received because the attachment was not binary image data.
15-73	MDN Status Error	▪ Could not find the Disposition line in the header of the Return Receipt, or there is a problem with the firmware.
15-74	MDN Message ID Error	▪ Could not find the Original Message ID line in the header of the Return Receipt, or there is a problem with the firmware.
15-80	Mail Job Task Read Error	▪ Could not receive the transmission because the destination buffer is full and the destination could not be created (this error may occur when receiving a transfer request or a request

		for notification of reception).
15-81	Repeated Destination Registration Error	▪ Could not repeat receive the transmission because the destination buffer is full and the destination could not be created (this error may occur when receiving a transfer request or a request for notification of reception).
15-91	Send Registration Error	Could not receive the file for transfer to the final destination: ▪ The format of the final destination or the transfer destination is incorrect. ▪ Destinations are full so the final and transfer destinations could not be created.
15-92	Memory Overflow	▪ Transmission could not be received because memory overflowed during the transaction.
15-93	Memory Access Error	▪ Transaction could not complete due to a malfunction of SAF memory.
15-94	Incorrect ID Code	▪ The machine rejected an incoming e-mail for transfer request, because the ID code in the incoming e-mail did not match the ID code registered in the machine.
15-95	Transfer Station Function	▪ The machine rejected an incoming e-mail for transfer because the transfer function was unavailable.
22-00	Original length exceeded the maximum scan length	▪ Divide the original into more than one page. ▪ Check the resolution used for scanning. Lower the scan resolution if possible. ▪ Add optional page memory.
22-01	Memory overflow while receiving	▪ Wait for the files in the queue to be sent. ▪ Delete unnecessary files from memory. ▪ Transfer the substitute reception files to an another fax machine, if the machine's printer is

		busy or out of order. ▪ Add an optional SAF memory card or hard disk.
22-02	Tx or Rx job stalled due to line disconnection at the other end	▪ The job started normally but did not finish normally; data may or may not have been received fully. ▪ Restart the machine.
22-04	The machine cannot store received data in the SAF	▪ Update the ROM ▪ Replace the FCU.
22-05	No G3 parameter confirmation answer	▪ Defective FCU board or firmware.
23-00	Data read timeout during construction	▪ Restart the machine. ▪ Replace the FCU.
25-00	The machine software resets itself after a fatal transmission error occurred	▪ Update the ROM ▪ Replace the FCU.
⇒ 31-21	LAN Fax Error	• It was cancelled received LAN Fax images during store the image to SAF of FCU. • The LAN Fax transmission of a message was cancelled by the LAN Fax driver.
F0-xx	V.34 modem error	▪ Replace the FCU.
F6-xx	SG3 modem error	▪ Update the SG3 modem ROM. ▪ Replace the SG3 board. ▪ Check for line noise or other line problems. ▪ Try communicating another V.8/V.34 fax.

3.2 IFAX TROUBLESHOOTING

Use the following procedures to determine whether the machine or another part of the network is causing the problem.

Communication Route	Item	Action [Remarks]
General LAN	1. Connection with the LAN	▪ Check that the LAN cable is connected to the machine. ▪ Check that the LEDs on the hub are lit.
	2. LAN activity	Check that other devices connected to the LAN can communicate through the LAN.
Between IFAX and PC	1. Network settings on the PC	▪ Check the network settings on the PC. [Is the IP address registered in the TCP/IP properties in the network setup correct? Check the IP address with the administrator of the network.]
	2. Check that PC can connect with the machine	▪ Use the “ping” command on the PC to contact the machine. [At the MS-DOS prompt, type ping then the IP address of the machine, then press Enter.]
	3. LAN settings in the machine	▪ Check the LAN parameters ▪ Check if there is an IP address conflict with other PCs. [Use the “Network” function in the User Tools. If there is an IP address conflict, inform the administrator.]

Between machine and e-mail server	1. LAN settings in the machine	▪ Check the LAN parameters ▪ Check if there is an IP address conflict with other PCs. [Use the “Network” function in the User Tools. If there is an IP address conflict, inform the administrator.]
	2. E-mail account on the server	▪ Make sure that the machine can log into the e-mail server. ▪ Check that the account and password stored in the server are the same as in the machine. [Ask the administrator to check.]
	3. E-mail server	▪ Make sure that the client devices which have an account in the server can send/receive e-mail. [Ask the administrator to check. Send a test e-mail with the machine’s own number as the destination. The machine receives the returned e-mail if the communication is performed successfully.]

Between e-mail server and internet	1. E-mail account on the Server	▪ Make sure that the PC can log into the e-mail server. ▪ Check that the account and password stored in the server are the same as in the machine. [Ask the administrator to check.]
	2. E-mail server	▪ Make sure that the client devices which have an account in the server can send/receive e-mail. [Ask the administrator to check. Send a test e-mail with the machine's own number as the destination. The machine receives the returned e-mail if the communication is performed successfully.]
	3. Destination e-mail address	▪ Make sure that the e-mail address is actually used. ▪ Check that the e-mail address contains no incorrect characters such as spaces.
	4. Router settings	▪ Use the "ping" command to contact the router. ▪ Check that other devices connected to the router can sent data over the router. [Ask the administrator of the server to check.]
	5. Error message by e-mail from the network of the destination.	▪ Check whether e-mail can be sent to another address on the same network, using the application e-mail software. ▪ Check the error e-mail message. [Inform the administrator of the LAN.]

3.3 IP-FAX TROUBLESHOOTING

3.3.1 IP-FAX TRANSMISSION

Cannot send by IP Address/Host Name

Check Point		Action
1	LAN cable connected?	Check the LAN cable connection.
2	Specified IP address/host name correct?	Check the IP address/host name.
3	Firewall/NAT is installed?	Cannot breach the firewall. Send by using another method (Fax, Internet Fax)
4	Transmission sent manually?	Manual sending not supported.
5	IP address of local machine registered?	Register the IP address.
6	Remote terminal port number setting other than 1720?	Send by specifying the port number.
7	Specified port number correct?	Confirm the port number of the remote fax.
8	DNS server registered when host name specified?	Contact the network administrator.
9	Remote fax a T.38 terminal?	Check whether the remote fax is a T38 terminal.
10	Remote fax switched off or busy?	Check that the remote fax is switched on.

11	Network bandwidth too narrow?	Request the network administrator to increase the bandwidth.
		Raise the delay level. IPFAX SW 01 Bit 0 to 3
		IP-Fax bandwidth is the same as the DCS speed. Set IP-Fax SW00 Bit 6 to 1.
12	Remote fax cancelled transmission?	Check whether the remote fax cancelled the transmission.

Cannot send via VoIP Gateway

Check Point		Action
1	LAN cable connected?	Check the LAN cable connection.
2	VoIP Gateway T.38 standard?	Contact the network administrator.
3	VoIP Gateway installed correctly?	Contact the network administrator.
4	VoIP Gateway power switched on?	Contact the network administrator.
5	Is the IP address/host name of the specified Gateway correct?	Check the IP address/host name.
6	Number of the specified fax correct?	Check the remote fax number.
7	Firewall/NAT is installed?	Cannot breach the firewall. Send by using another method (Fax, Internet Fax)
8	Transmission sent manually?	Manual sending not supported.
9	IP address of local fax registered?	Register the IP address.
10	DNS registered when host name	Contact the network administrator.

	specified?	
11	Remote fax a G3 fax?	Check that the remote fax is a G3 fax.
12	G3 fax is connected to VoIP gateway?	Check that G3 fax is connected.
13	Remote G3 fax turned on?	Check that G3 fax is switched on.
14	Network bandwidth too narrow?	Request the network administrator to increase the bandwidth.
		Raise the network delay level. IPFAX SW 01 Bit 0 to 3
		IP-Fax bandwidth is the same as the DCS speed. Set IP-Fax SW00 Bit 6 to 1.

Cannot send by Alias Fax number.

Check Point		Action
1	LAN cable connected?	Check the LAN cable connection.
2	Number of specified Alias fax correct?	Confirm the Alias of the remote fax. Error Code: 13-14
3	Firewall/NAT installed?	Cannot breach the firewall. Send by using another method (Fax, Internet Fax)
4	Transmission sent manually?	Manual sending not supported.
5	Gatekeeper installed correctly?	Contact the network administrator.
6	Gatekeeper power switched on?	Contact the network administrator.
7	IP address/host name of Gatekeeper correct?	Check the IP address/host name.
8	DNS server registered when Gatekeeper	Contact the network administrator.

	host name specified?	
9	Enable H.323 SW is set to on?	Check the settings. See User Parameter SW 34 Bit 0
10	IP address of local fax registered?	Register the IP address of the local fax.
11	Alias number of local fax registered?	Register the Alias number of the local fax.
12	Remote fax registered in Gatekeeper?	Contact the network administrator.
13	Remote fax a T.38 terminal?	Check whether the remote fax is a T38 terminal.
14	Remote fax switched off or busy?	Contact the network administrator.
15	Network bandwidth too narrow?	Request the system administrator to increase the bandwidth.
		Raise the delay level. IPFAX SW 01 Bit 0 to 3
		Lower the modem transmission baud rate. IPFAX SW 05
16	Remote fax cancelled transmission?	Check whether the remote fax cancelled the transmission.

3.3.2 IP-FAX RECEPTION

Cannot receive via IP Address/Host Name.

Check Point		Action
1	LAN cable connected?	Check the LAN cable connection.
2	Firewall/NAT is installed?	Cannot breach the firewall. Send by using another method (Fax, Internet Fax)

3	IP address of local fax registered?	Register the IP address.
4	Port number specified at remote sender fax (if required)?	Request the sender to specify the port number.
5	Specified port number correct (if required)?	Request the sender to check the port number.
6	DNS server registered when host name specified on sender side?	Contact the network administrator. Note ▪ The sender machine displays this error code if the sender fax is a Ricoh model.
7	Network bandwidth too narrow?	Request the system administrator to increase the bandwidth.
		Lower the start modem reception baud rate on the receiving side. IPFAX SW06
8	Remote fax cancelled transmission?	Check whether the remote fax cancelled the transmission.

Cannot receive by VoIP Gateway.

Check Point		Action
1	LAN cable connected?	Check the LAN cable connection.
2	Firewall/NAT is installed?	Cannot breach the firewall. Request the remote fax to send by using another method (Fax, Internet Fax)
3	VoIP Gateway installed correctly?	Contact the network administrator.
4	VoIP Gateway power switched on?	Contact the network administrator.
5	IP address/host name of specified VoIP	Request the remote fax to check the IP

	Gateway correct on sender's side?	address/host name.
6	DNS server registered when host name specified on sender side?	Contact the network administrator.
7	Network bandwidth too narrow?	Request the network administrator to increase the bandwidth.
8	G3 fax connected?	Check that G3 fax is connected.
9	G3 fax power switched on?	Check that G3 fax is switched on.

Cannot receive by Alias Fax number.

Check Point		Action
1	LAN cable connected?	Check the LAN cable connection.
2	Firewall/NAT is installed?	Cannot the breach firewall. Request the remote fax to send by using another method (Fax, Internet Fax)
3	Gatekeeper installed correctly?	Contact the network administrator. Note ▪ The sender machine displays this error code when the sender fax is a Ricoh model.
4	Power to Gatekeeper switched on?	Contact the network administrator. Note ▪ The sender machine displays this error code when the sender fax is a Ricoh model.
5	IP address/host name of Gatekeeper correct on the sender's side?	Request the sender to check the IP address/host name. Note ▪ The sender machine displays this

		error code when the sender fax is a Ricoh model.
6	DNS server registered when Gatekeeper host name specified on sender's side?	Contact the network administrator. Note ▪ The sender machine displays this error code when the sender fax is a Ricoh model.
7	Enable H.323 SW is set to on?	Request the sender to check the settings. User Parameter SW 34 Bit 0 Note ▪ Only if the remote sender fax is a Ricoh fax.
8	Local fax IP address registered?	Register the IP address.
9	Local fax Alias number registered?	Register the Alias number.
10	Network bandwidth too narrow?	Request the system administrator to increase the bandwidth.
		Lower the start modem reception baud rate on the receiving side. IPFAX SW06
11	Remote fax cancelled transmission?	Check whether the remote fax cancelled the transmission.
12	Local fax registered in Gatekeeper?	Contact the network administrator. Note ▪ The sender machine displays this error code when the sender fax is a Ricoh model.

4. SERVICE TABLES

4.1 BEFOREHAND

CAUTION

- Never turn off the main power switch when the power LED is lit or flashing. To avoid damaging the hard disk or memory, press the operation power switch to switch the power off, wait for the power LED to go off, and then switch the main power switch off.

Note

- The main power LED ( ) lights or flashes while the platen cover or ARDF is open, while the main machine is communicating with a facsimile or the network server, or while the machine is accessing the hard disk or memory for reading or writing data.

4.2 SERVICE TABLES

4.2.1 SP1-XXX (BIT SWITCHES)

☛ Bit Switches

1	Mode No.		Function
101	System Switch		
	001 – 032	00 – 1F	Change the bit switches for system settings for the fax option ☛ "Bit Switches"
102	Ifax Switch		
	001 – 016	00 – 0F	Change the bit switches for internet fax settings for the fax option ☛ "Bit Switches"
103	Printer Switch		
	001 – 016	00 – 0F	Change the bit switches for printer settings for the fax option ☛ "Bit Switches"
104	Communication Switch		
	001 – 032	00 – 1F	Change the bit switches for communication settings for the fax option ☛ "Bit Switches"
105	G3-1 Switch		
	001 – 016	00 – 0F	Change the bit switches for the protocol settings of the standard G3 board ☛ "Bit Switches"
106	G3-2 Switch		
	001 – 016	00 – 0F	Change the bit switches for the protocol settings of

			the optional G3 board ☛ "Bit Switches"
107	G3-3 Switch		
	001 – 016	00 – 0F	Change the bit switches for the protocol settings of the optional G3 board ☛ "Bit Switches"
108	G4 Internal Switch		
	001 – 032	00 – 1F	**Not used** (Do not change the bit switches)
109	G4 Parameter Switch		
	001 – 016	00 – 0F	**Not used** (Do not change the bit switches)
111	IP fax Switch		
	001 – 016	00 – 0F	Change the bit switches for optional IP fax parameters ☛ "Bit Switches"

4.2.2 SP2-XXX (RAM DATA)

2	Mode No.		Function
101	RAM Read/Write		
	001		Change RAM data for the fax board directly. ☛ "Service RAM Addresses"
102	Memory Dump		
	001	G3-1 Memory Dump	Print out RAM data for the fax board. ☛ "Service RAM Addresses"
	002	G3-2 Memory Dump	Print out RAM data for the optional SG3 board.

	003	G3-3 Memory Dump	Print out RAM data for the optional SG3 board.
	004	G4 Memory Dump	Not used
103	G3-1 NCU Parameters		
	001 – 023	CC, 01 – 22	NCU parameter settings for the standard G3 board. ☛ "NCU Parameters"
104	G3-2 NCU Parameters		
	001 – 023	CC, 01 – 22	NCU parameter settings for the optional G3 board. ☛ "NCU Parameters"
105	G3-3 NCU Parameters		
	001 – 023	CC, 01 – 22	NCU parameter settings for the optional G3 board. ☛ "NCU Parameters"

4.2.3 SP3-XXX (TEL LINE SETTINGS)

3	Mode No.		Function
101	Service Station		
	001	Fax Number	Enter the fax number of the service station.
	002	Select Line	Select the line type.
102	Serial Number		
	000		Enter the fax unit's serial number.
103	PSTN-1 Port Settings		
	001	Select Line	Select the line type setting for the G3-1 line. If the machine is installed on a PABX line, select "PABX", "PABX(GND)" or "PABX(FLASH)".

	002	PSTN Access Number	Enter the PSTN access number for the G3-1 line.
	003	Memory Lock Disabled	Not used
104	PSTN-2 Port Settings		
	001	Select Line	Select the line setting for the G3-2 line. If the machine is installed on a PABX line, select “PABX”, “PABX(GND)” or “PABX(FLASH)”.
	002	PSTN Access Number	Enter the PSTN access number for the G3-2 line.
	003	Memory Lock Disabled	Not used
	004	Transmission Disabled	If you turn this SP on, the machine does not send any fax messages on the G3-2 line.
105	PSTN-3 Port Settings		
	001	Select Line	Select the line setting for the G3-3 line. If the machine is installed on a PABX line, select “PABX”, “PABX(GND)” or “PABX(FLASH)”.
	002	PSTN Access Number	Enter the PSTN access number for the G3-3 line.
	003	Memory Lock Disabled	Not used
	004	Transmission Disabled	If you turn this SP on, the machine does not send any fax messages on the G3-3 line.
106	ISDN Port Settings		
	001	Select Line	**Not used** (Do not change the settings.)
	002	PSTN Access Number	

	003	Memory Lock Disabled	
106	004	Transmission Disabled	
107	IPFAX Port Settings		
	001	H323 Port	Sets the H323 port number.
	002	SIP Port	Sets the SIP port number.
	003	RAS Port	Sets the RAS port number.
	004	Gatekeeper port	Sets the Gatekeeper port number.
	005	T.38 Port	Sets the T.38 port number.
	006	SIP Server Port	Sets the SIP port number.
	007	IPFAX Protocol Priority	Select "H323" or "SIP".
201	FAX SW		
	001 – 032	00 – 1F	

4.2.4 SP4-XXX (ROM VERSIONS)

4	Mode No.		Function
101	001	FCU ROM Version	Displays the FCU ROM version.
102	001	Error Codes	Displays the latest 64 fax error codes.
103	001	G3-1 ROM Version	Displays the G3-1 modem version.
104	001	G3-2 ROM Version	Displays the G3-2 modem version.
105	001	G3-3 ROM Version	Displays the G3-3 modem version.

106	001	G4 ROM Version	**Not used** (Do not change the settings.)
107	001	Charge ROM Version	**Not used** (Do not change the settings.)

4.2.5 SP5-XXX (INITIALIZING)

5	Mode No.	Function
101	Initialize SRAM	
	000	Initializes the bit switches and user parameters, user data in the SRAM, files in the SAF memory, and clock.
102	Erase All Files	
	000	Erases all files stored in the SAF memory.
103	Reset Bit Switches	
	000	Resets the bit switches and user parameters.
104	Factory setting	
	000	Resets the bit switches and user parameters, user data in the SRAM and files in the SAF memory.
105	Initialize All Bit Switches	
	000	Initializes all the current bit switch settings.
106	Initialize Security Bit Switches	
	000	Initializes only the security bit switches. If you select automatic output/display for the user parameter switches, the security settings are initialized.

4.2.6 SP6-XXX (REPORTS)

6	Mode No.		Function
101	System Parameter List		
	000	-	Touch the “ON” button to print the system parameter list.
102	Service Monitor Report		
	000	-	Touch the “ON” button to print the service monitor report.
103	G3 Protocol Dump List		
	001	G3 All Communications	Prints the protocol dump list of all communications for all G3 lines.
	002	G3-1 (All Communications)	Prints the protocol dump list of all communications for the G3-1 line.
	003	G3-1 (1 Communication)	Prints the protocol dump list of the last communication for the G3-1 line.
	004	G3-2 (All Communications)	Prints the protocol dump list of all communications for the G3-2 line.
	005	G3-2 (1 Communication)	Prints the protocol dump list of the last communication for the G3-2 line.
	006	G3-3 (All Communications)	Prints the protocol dump list of all communications for the G3-3 line.
	007	G3-3 (1 Communication)	Prints the protocol dump list of the last communication for the G3-3 line.

<table>
<tr><td rowspan="7">104</td><td colspan="3">G4 Protocol Dump List</td></tr>
<tr><td>001</td><td>Dch + Bch 1</td><td rowspan="6">Not used (Do not change the settings.)</td></tr>
<tr><td>002</td><td>Dch</td></tr>
<tr><td>003</td><td>Bch 1 Link Layer</td></tr>
<tr><td>004</td><td>Dch Link Layer</td></tr>
<tr><td>005</td><td>Dch +Bch 2</td></tr>
<tr><td>006</td><td>Bch 2 Link Layer</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">105</td><td colspan="3">All Files print out</td></tr>
<tr><td>000</td><td>-</td><td>Prints out all the user files in the SAF memory, including confidential messages.
Note
▪ Do not use this function, unless the customer is having trouble printing confidential messages or recovering files stored using the memory lock feature.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">106</td><td colspan="3">Journal Print out</td></tr>
<tr><td>001</td><td>All Journals</td><td>The machine prints all the communication records on the report.</td></tr>
<tr><td>002</td><td>Specified Date</td><td>The machine prints all communication records after the specified date.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="5">107</td><td colspan="3">Log List Print out</td></tr>
<tr><td>001</td><td>All log files</td><td rowspan="4">These log print out functions are for designer use only.</td></tr>
<tr><td>002</td><td>Printer</td></tr>
<tr><td>003</td><td>SC/TRAP Stored</td></tr>
<tr><td>004</td><td>Decompression</td></tr>
</table>

	005	Scanner	
	006	JOB/SAF	
	007	Reconstruction	
	008	JBIG	
	009	Fax Driver	
	010	G3CCU	
	011	Fax Job	
	012	CCU	
	013	Scanner Condition	
108	IP Protocol Dump List		
	001	All Communications	Prints the protocol dump list of all communications for the IP fax line.
	002	1 Communication	Prints the protocol dump list of the last communication for the IP fax line.

4.2.7 SP7-XXX (TEST MODES)

These are the test modes for PTT approval.

7	Function
101	G3-1 Modem Tests
102	G3-1 DTMF Tests
103	Ringer Test
104	G3-1 V34 (S2400baud)
105	G3-1 V34 (S2800baud)

106	G3-1 V34 (S3000baud)
107	G3-1 V34 (S3200baud)
108	G3-1 V34 (S3429baud)
109	Recorded Message Test
110	G3-2 Modem Tests
111	G3-2 DTMF Tests
112	G3-2 V34 (S2400baud)
113	G3-2 V34 (S2800baud)
114	G3-2 V34 (S3000baud)
115	G3-2 V34 (S3200baud)
116	G3-2 V34 (S3429baud)
117	G3-3 Modem Tests
118	G3-3 DTMF Tests
119	G3-3 V34 (S2400baud)
120	G3-3 V34 (S2800baud)
121	G3-3 V34 (S3000baud)
122	G3-3 V34 (S3200baud)
123	G3-3 V34 (S3429baud)
124	IG3-1 Modem Tests - **Not used**
125	IG3-1 DTMF Tests - **Not used**
126	IG3-1 V34 (S2400baud) - **Not used**
127	IG3-1 V34 (S2800baud) - **Not used**
128	IG3-1 V34 (S3000baud) - **Not used**

129	IG3-1 V34 (S3200baud) - **Not used**
130	IG3-1 V34 (S3429baud) - **Not used**
131	IG3-2 Modem Tests - **Not used**
132	IG3-2 DTMF Tests - **Not used**
133	IG3-2 V34 (S2400baud) - **Not used**
134	IG3-2 V34 (S2800baud) - **Not used**
135	IG3-2 V34 (S3000baud) - **Not used**
136	IG3-2 V34 (S3200baud) - **Not used**
137	IG3-2 V34 (S3429baud) - **Not used**

4.2.8 SP9-XXX (DESIGN SWITCH MODE)

9	Mode No.	Function
702	Design Switch **DFU**	

4.3 BIT SWITCHES

⚠WARNING

- Do not adjust a bit switch or use a setting that is described as “Not used”, as this may cause the machine to malfunction or to operate in a manner that is not accepted by local regulations. Such bits are for use only in other areas, such as Japan.

Note

- Default settings for bit switches are not listed in this manual. Refer to the System Parameter List printed by the machine.

4.3.1 SYSTEM SWITCHES

System Switch 00 [SP No. 1-101-001]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	Dedicated transmission parameter programming 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled	Set this bit to 1 before changing any dedicated transmission parameters. Reset this bit to 0 after programming dedicated transmission parameters.
1	**Not used**	Do not change

Bit Switches

<table>
<tr><td rowspan="3">2</td><td>Technical data printout on the Journal
0: Disabled
1: Enabled</td><td>1: Instead of the personal name, the following data are listed on the Journal for each G3 communication.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">e.g. 0000 (1) // 32 (2) V34 (3) // 288 (4) // 264 (5) // L0100 (6) 03 (7) 04 (8)
(1): EQM value (Line quality data). A larger number means more errors.
(2): Symbol rate (V.34 only)
(3): Final modem type used
(4): Starting data rate (for example, 288 means 28.8 kbps)
(5): Final data rate
(6): Rx revel (refer to the note after this table for how to read the rx level)
(7): Total number of error lines that occurred during non-ECM reception.
(8): Total number of burst error lines that occurred during non-ECM reception.
Note
▪ EQM and rx level are fixed at “FFFF” in tx mode.
▪ The seventh and eighth numbers are fixed at “00” for transmission records and ECM reception records.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Rx level calculation
Example: 0000 // 32 V34 // 288/264 // L 01 00 03 04
The four-digit hexadecimal value (N) after “L” indicates the rx level.
The high byte is given first, followed by the low byte. Divide the decimal value of N by -16 to get the rx level.
In the above example, the decimal value of N (= 0100 [H]) is 256.
So, the actual rx level is 256/-16 = -16 dB</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td>Not used</td><td>Do not change this setting.</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td>Line error mark print
0: OFF, 1: ON (print)</td><td>When "1" is selected, a line error mark is printed on the printout if a line error occurs during reception.</td></tr>
</table>

5	G3/G4 communication parameter display 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	This is a fault-finding aid. The LCD shows the key parameters (see below). This is normally disabled because it cancels the CSI display for the user. Be sure to reset this bit to 0 after testing.
6	Protocol dump list output after each communication 0: Off 1: On	This is only used for communication troubleshooting. It shows the content of the transmitted facsimile protocol signals. Always reset this bit to 0 after finishing testing. If system switch 09 bit 6 is at “1”, the list is only printed if there was an error during the communication.
7	Not used	Do not change the setting.

System Switch 01 - Not used (Do not change the factory settings.)

System Switch 02 [SP No. 1-101-003]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-1	**Not used**	Do not change these settings.
2	Force after transmission stall 0: Off 1: On	With this setting on, the machine resets itself automatically if a transmission stalls and fails to complete the job.
3	**Not used**	Do not change these settings.
4	File retention time 0: Depends on User Parameter 24 [18(H)] 1: No limit (until the year 2126)	1: A file that had a communication error will not be erased unless the communication is successful.
5	**Not used**	Do not change this setting.

Bit Switches

6-7	Memory read/write by RDS Bit 7: 0, Bit 6: 0 Always disabled Bit 7: 0, Bit 6: 1 User selectable Bit 7: 1, Bit 6: 0 User selectable Bit 7: 1, Bit 6: 1 Always enabled	(0,0): All RDS systems are always locked out. (0,1), (1,0): Normally, RDS systems are locked out, but the user can temporarily switch RDS on to allow RDS operations to take place. RDS will automatically be locked out again after a certain time, which is stored in System Switch 03. Note that if an RDS operation takes place, RDS will not switch off until this time limit has expired. (1,1): At any time, an RDS system can access the machine.

System Switch 03 [SP No. 1-101-004]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-7	Length of time that RDS is temporarily switched on when bits 6 and 7 of System Switch 02 are set to “User selectable”	00 - 99 hours (BCD). This setting is only valid if bits 6 and 7 of System Switch 02 are set to “User selectable”. The default setting is 24 hours.

System Switch 04 [SP No. 1-101-005]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-2	**Not used**	Do not change these settings.
3	Printing dedicated tx parameters on Quick/Speed Dial Lists 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	1: Each Quick/Speed dial number on the list is printed with the dedicated tx parameters.
4-7	**Not used**	Do not change these settings.

System Switch 05 - Not used (Do not change the factory settings.)

System Switch 06 - Not used (Do not change the factory settings.)
System Switch 07 - Not used (Do not change the factory settings.)
System Switch 08 - Not used (Do not change the factory settings.)

System Switch 09 [SP No. 1-101-010]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	Addition of image data from confidential transmissions on the transmission result report 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	If this feature is enabled, the top half of the first page of confidential messages will be printed on transmission result reports.
1	Inclusion of communications on the Journal when no image data was exchanged. 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0: Communications that reached phase C (message tx/rx) of the T.30 protocol are listed on the Journal. 1: Communications that reached phase A (call setup) of T.30 protocol are listed on the Journal. This will include telephone calls.
2	Automatic error report printout 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0: Error reports will not be printed. 1: Error reports will be printed automatically after failed communications.
3	Printing of the error code on the error report 0: No 1: Yes	1: Error codes are printed on the error reports.
4	**Not used**	Do not change this setting.
5	Power failure report 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	1: A power failure report will be automatically printed after the power is switched on if a fax message disappeared from the memory when the power was turned off last.

Bit Switches

6	Conditions for printing the protocol dump list 0: Print for all communications 1: Print only when there is a communication error	This switch becomes effective only when system switch 00 bit 6 is set to 1. 1: Set this bit to 1 when you wish to print a protocol dump list only for communications with errors.
7	Priority given to various types of remote terminal ID when printing reports 0: RTI > CSI > Dial label > Tel. Number 1: Dial label > Tel. number > RTI > CSI	This bit determines which set of priorities the machine uses when listing remote terminal names on reports. Dial Label: The name stored, by the user, for the Quick/Speed Dial number.

System Switch 0A [SP No. 1-101-011]

No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	Automatic port selection 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled	When "1" is selected, a suitable port is automatically selected if the selected port is not used.
1-3	**Not used**	Do not change these settings.
4	Dialing on the ten-key pad when the external telephone is off-hook 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0: Prevents dialing from the ten-key pad while the external telephone is off-hook. Use this setting when the external telephone is not by the machine, or if a wireless telephone is connected as an external telephone. 1: The user can dial on the machine's ten-key pad when the handset is off-hook.
5	On hook dial 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0: On hook dial is disabled.

6-7	**Not used**	Do not change the factory settings

System Switch 0B - Not used (Do not change the factory settings.)
System Switch 0C - Not used (Do not change the factory settings.)
System Switch 0D - Not used (Do not change the factory settings.)

System Switch 0E [SP No. 1-101-015]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-1	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.
2	Enable/disable for direct sending selection 0: Direct sending off 1: Direct sending on	Direct sending cannot operate when the capture function is on during sending. Setting this switch to "1" enables direct sending without capture. Setting this switch to "0" masks the direct sending function on the operation panel so it cannot be selected.
3	Action when the external handset goes off-hook 0: Manual tx and rx operation 1: Memory tx and rx operation (the display remains the same)	0: Manual tx and rx are possible while the external handset is off-hook. However, memory tx is not possible. 1: The display stays in standby mode even when the external handset is used, so that other people can use the machine for memory tx operation. Note that manual tx and rx are not possible with this setting.
4-7	**Not used**	Do not change these settings.

Bit Switches

System Switch 0F [SP No. 1-101-016]			
No	FUNCTION		COMMENTS
0-7	Country/area code for functional settings (Hex)		This country/area code determines the factory settings of bit switches and RAM addresses. However, it has no effect on the NCU parameter settings and communication parameter RAM addresses. **Cross reference** NCU country code: SP No. 2-103-001 for G3-1 SP No. 2-104-001 for G3-2 SP No. 2-105-001 for G3-3
	00: France	11: USA	
	01: Germany	12: Asia	
	02: UK	12: Asia	
	03: Italy	13: Japan	
	04: Austria	14: Hong Kong	
	05: Belgium	15: South Africa	
	06: Denmark	16: Australia	
	07: Finland	17: New Zealand	
	08: Ireland	18: Singapore	
	09: Norway	19: Malaysia	
	0A: Sweden	1A: China	
	0B: Switzerland	1B: Formosa	
	0C: Portugal	1C: Korea	
	0D: Netherland	20: Turkey	
	0E: Spain	21: Greece	
	0F: Israel	22: Hungary	
	10: ---	23: Czech	
	11: USA	24: Poland	

System Switch 10 [SP No. 1-101-017]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-7	Threshold memory level for parallel memory transmission	Threshold = N x 128 KB + 256 KB N can be between 00 - FF(H) Default setting: 02(H) = 512 KB

System Switch 11 [SP No. 1-101-018]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	TTI printing position 0: Superimposed on the page data 1: Printed before the data leading edge	Change this bit to 1 if the TTI overprints information that the customer considers to be important (G3 transmissions).
1	**Not used**	Japan Only
2	**Not used**	Do not change the factory settings.
3	TTI printing type 0: Address unit 1: File unit	TTI printing unit can be selected.
4-6	**Not used**	Do not change the factory settings.
7	**Not used**	Japan Only

Bit Switches

System Switch 12 [SP No. 1-101-019]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-7	TTI printing position in the main scan direction	TTI: 08 to 92 (BCD) mm Input even numbers only. This setting determines the print start position for the TTI from the left edge of the paper. If the TTI is moved too far to the right, it may overwrite the file number which is on the top right of the page. On an A4 page, if the TTI is moved over by more than 50 mm, it may overwrite the page number.

System Switch 13 - Not used (do not change these settings)
System Switch 14 - Not used (do not change these settings)

System Switch 15 [SP No. 1-101-022]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.
1	Going into the Energy Saver mode automatically 0: Enabled 1: Disabled	1: The machine will restart from the Energy Saver mode quickly, because the +5V power supply is active even in the Energy Saver mode.
2-3	**Not used**	Do not change these settings.

4-5	Interval for preventing the machine from entering Energy Saver mode if there is a pending transmission file. Bit 5: 0, Bit 4: 0 1 min Bit 5: 0, Bit 4: 1 30 min1 Bit 5: 1, Bit 4: 0 1 hour Bit 5: 1, Bit 4: 1 24 hours	If there is a file waiting for transmission, the machine does not go to Energy Saver mode during the selected period. After transmitting the file, if there is no file waiting for transmission, the machine goes to the Energy Saver mode.
6-7	**Not used**	Do not change

System Switch 16 [SP No. 1-101-023]

No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	Parallel Broadcasting 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	1: The machine sends messages simultaneously using all available ports during broadcasting.
1	Priority setting for the G3 line. 0: PSTN-1 > PSTN-2 or 3 1: PSTN-2 or 3 > PSTN-1	This function allows the user to select the default G3 line type. The optional SG3 unit(s) are required to use the PSTN-2 or 3 setting.
2-7	**Not used**	Do not change these settings.

System Switch 17 - Not used (do not change these settings)
System Switch 18 - Not used (do not change these settings)

Bit Switches

System Switch 19 [SP No. 1-101-026]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-5	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.
6	Extended scanner page memory after memory option is installed 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0: After installing the memory expansion option, the scanner page memory is extended to 4 MB from 2 MB. 1: If this bit is set to 1 after installing the memory expansion option, the scanner page memory is extended to 12 MB. But the SAF memory decreases to 18 MB.
7	Special Original mode 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	1: If the customer frequently wishes to transmit a form or letterhead which has a colored or printed background, change this bit to “1”. “Original 1” and “Original 2” can be selected in addition to the “Text”, “Text/Photo” and “Photo” modes.

System Switch 1A [SP No. 1-101-027]			
No.	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**	
0-7	LS RX memory remaining refresh value setting	Sets a value of 4K. If the amount of memory remaining falls below 4K, documents received in memory are printed to create more space in memory. Initial value: 0x80 (512K) 00-FF (0-1020 KB: Hex)	

System Switch 1B - Not used (do not change these settings)
System Switch 1C - Not used (do not change these settings)

System Switch 1D [SP No. 1-101-030]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	RTI/CSI/CPS code display 0: Enable 1: Disable	0: RTI, CSI, CPS codes are displayed on the top line of the LCD panel during communication. 1: Codes are switched off (no display)
1	**Not used**	Do not change this setting.
2	Destination telephone number display limitation 0: OFF, 1: ON	When "1" is selected, the destination telephone number display is limited and redial is disabled.
3	Operation selection without PIN code registered 0: Transmission interrupted 1: No interrupted transmission	0: When "0" is selected without PIN code registration, transmission is interrupted and an alert message shows on the LCD.
4-7	**Not used**	Do not change these settings.

Bit Switches

System Switch 1E [SP No. 1-101-031]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	Communication after the Journal data storage area has become full 0: Impossible 1: Possible	0: When this switch is on and the journal history becomes full, the next report prints. If the journal history is not deleted, the next transmission cannot be received. This prevents overwriting communication records before the machine can print them. 1: If the buffer memory of the communication records for the Journal is full, fax communications are still possible. But the machine will overwrite the oldest communication records. Note: This setting is effective only when Automatic Journal printout is enabled but the machine cannot print the report (e.g., no paper).
1	Action when the SAF memory has become full during scanning 0: The current page is erased. 1: The entire file is erased.	0: If the SAF memory becomes full during scanning, the successfully scanned pages are transmitted. 1: If the SAF memory becomes full during scanning, the file is erased and no pages are transmitted. This bit switch is ignored for parallel memory transmission.
2	RTI/CSI display priority 0: RTI 1: CSI	This bit determines which identifier, RTI or CSI, is displayed on the LCD while the machine is communicating in G3 non-standard mode.
3	File No. printing 0: Enabled 1: Disabled	1: File numbers are not printed on any reports.

4	Action when authorized reception is enabled but authorized RTIs/CSIs are not yet programmed 0: All fax reception is disabled 1: Faxes can be received if the sender has an RTI or CSI	If authorized reception is enabled but the user has stored no acceptable sender RTIs or CSIs, the machine will not be able to receive any fax messages. If the customer wishes to receive messages from any sender that includes an RTI or CSI, and to block messages from senders that do not include an RTI or CSI, change this bit to “1”, then enable Authorized Reception. Otherwise, keep this bit at “0 (default setting)”.
5-7	**Not used**	Do not change the settings

System Switch 1F [SP No. 1-101-032]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.
1	Report printout after an original jam during SAF storage or if the SAF memory fills up 0: Enabled 1: Disabled	0: When an original jams, or the SAF memory overflows during scanning, a report will be printed. Change this bit to “1” if the customer does not want to have a report in these cases. Memory tx – Memory storage report Parallel memory tx – Transmission result report
2	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.
3	Received fax print start timing (G3 reception) 0: After receiving each page 1: After receiving all pages	0: The machine prints each page immediately after the machine receives it. 1: The machine prints the complete message after the machine receives all the pages in the memory.
4-6	**Not used**	Do not change the factory settings.

7	Action when a fax SC has occurred 0: Automatic reset 1: Fax unit stops	0: When the fax unit detects a fax SC code other than SC1201 and SC1207, the fax unit automatically resets itself. 1: When the fax unit detects any fax SC code, the fax unit stops. Cross Reference Fax SC codes - See “Troubleshooting”

4.3.2 I-FAX SWITCHES

I-fax Switch 00 [SP No. 1-102-001]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
	Original Width of TX Attachment File	This setting sets the maximum size of the original that the destination can receive. (Bits 3~7 are reserved for future use or not used.)
0	A4	0: Off (not selected), 1: On (selected) If more than one of these three bits is set to “1”, the larger size has priority. For example, if both Bit 2 and Bit 1 are set to “1” then the maximum size is “A3” (Bit 2). When mail is sent, there is no negotiation with the receiving machine at the destination, so the sending machine cannot make a selection for the receiving capabilities (original width setting) of the receiving machine. The original width selected with this switch is used as the RX machine’s original width setting, and the original is reduced to this size before sending. The default is A4. If the width selected with this switch is higher than the receiving machine can accept, the machine detects this and this causes an error.
1	B4	
2	A3	
3-6	Reserved	
7	**Not used**	

I-fax Switch 01 [SP No. 1-102-002]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
	Original Line Resolution of TX Attachment File	These settings set the maximum resolution of the original that the destination can receive.
0	200x100 Standard	0: Not selected 1: Selected If more than one of these three bits is set to “1”, the higher resolution has priority. For example, if both Bit 0 and Bit 2 are set to “1” then the resolution is set for "Bit 2 200 x 400.
1	200x200 Detail	
2	200x400 Fine	
3	300 x 300 Reserve	
4	400 x 400 Super Fine	
5	600 x 600 Reserve	
6	Reserve	
7	mm/inch	
	This setting selects mm/inch conversion for mail transmission. 0: Off (No conversion), 1: On (Conversion) When on (set to “1”), the machine converts millimeters to inches for sending mail. There is no switch for converting inches to millimeters. Unlike G3 fax transmissions which can negotiate between sender and receiver to determine the setting, mail cannot negotiate between terminals; the mm/inch selection is determined by the sender fax. When this switch is Off (0): Images scanned in inches are sent in inches. Images scanned in mm are sent in mm. Images received in inches are transmitted in inches. Images received in mm are transmitted in mm. When this switch is On (1): Images scanned in inches are sent in inches. Images scanned in mm are converted to inches. Images received in inches are transmitted in inches. Images received in mm are converted to inches.	

Bit Switches

I-fax Switch 02 [SP No. 1-102-003]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	RX Text Mail Header Processing	
	This setting determines whether the header information is printed with text e-mails when they are received. 0: Prints only text mail. 1: Prints mail header information attached to text mail. When a text mail is received with this switch On (1), the “From” address and “Subject” address are printed as header information. When a mail with only binary data is received (a TIFF-F file, for example), this setting is ignored and no header is printed.	
1	Output from Attached Document at E-mail TX Error	
	This setting determines whether only the first page or all pages of an e-mail attachment are printed at the sending station when a transmission error occurs. This allows the customer to see which documents have not reached their intended destinations if sent to the wrong e-mail addresses, for example. 0: Prints 1st page only. 1: Prints all pages.	
2-3	Text String for Return Receipt	
	This setting determines the text string output for the Return Receipt that confirms the transmission was received normally at the destination.	
	00: “Dispatched” Sends from PC mail a request for a Return Receipt. Receives the Return Receipt with “dispatched” in the 2nd part: Disposition: Automatic-action/MDN-send automatically; dispatched The “dispatched” string is included in the Subject string. 01: “Displayed” Sends from PC mail a request for a Return Receipt. Receives the Return Receipt with “displayed” in the 2nd part: Disposition: Automatic-action/MDN-send automatically; displayed	

	The “displayed” string is included in the Subject string. 10: Reserved 11: Reserved A mail requesting a Return Receipt sent from an IFAX with this switch set to “00” (for “dispatched”) received by Microsoft Outlook 2000 may cause an error. If any setting other than “displayed” (01) causes a problem, change the setting to “01” to enable normal sending of the Return Receipt.
4	Media accept feature
	This setting adds or does not add the media accept feature to the answer mail to confirm a reception. 0: Does not add the media accept feature to the answer mail 1: Adds the media accept feature to the answer mail. Use this bit switch if a problem occurs when the machine receives an answer mail, which contains the media accept feature field.
5-6	**Not Used**
7	Image Resolution of RX Text Mail
	This setting determines the image resolution of the received mail. 0: 200 x 200 1: 400 x 400 The “1” setting requires installation of the Function Upgrade Card in order to have enough SAF (Store and Forward) memory to receive images at 400 x 400 resolution.

I-fax Switch 03 - Not used (do not change the settings) [SP No. 1-102-004]

Bit Switches

I-fax Switch 04 [SP No. 1-102-005]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	Subject for Delivery TX/Memory Transfer	
	This setting determines whether the RTI/CSI registered on this machine or the RTI/CSI of the originator is used in the subject lines of transferred documents. 0: Puts the RTI/CSI of the originator in the Subject line. If this is used, either the RTI or CSI is used. Only one of these can be received for use in the subject line. 1: Puts the RTI/CSI registered on this machine in the Subject line. When this switch is used to transfer and deliver mail to a PC, the information in the Subject line that indicates where the transmission originated can be used to determine automatically the destination folder for each e-mail.	
1	Subject corresponding to mail post database 0: Standard subject 1: Mail post database subject The standard subject is replaced by the mail post database subject in the following three cases: 1) When the service technician sets the service (software) switch. 2) When memory sending, delivery specified by F code or SMTP reception is done. 3) With relay broadcasting (1st stage without the Schmidt 4 function). Note ▪ This switch does not apply for condition 3) when the RX system is set up for memory sending, delivery by F-code, sending with SMTP RX and when operators are using FOL (to prevent problems when receiving transmissions).	
2-7	**Not Used**	

I-fax Switch 05 [SP No. 1-102-006]

No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	Mail Addresses of SMTP Broadcast Recipients	
	Determines whether the e-mail addresses of the destinations that receive transmissions broadcasted using SMTP protocol are recorded in the Journal. For example: "1st destination + Total number of destinations: 9" in the Journal indicates a broadcast to 9 destinations. 0: Not recorded 1: Recorded	
1	I-Fax Automatic Re-dial Setting 0: OFF 1: ON	Determines whether the I-fax automatically redials when an error occurs.
2-7	**Not Used**	

I-fax Switch 06 - Not used (do not change the settings) [SP No. 1-102-007]
I-fax Switch 07 - Not used (do not change the settings) [SP No. 1-102-008]

Bit Switches

I-fax Switch 08 [SP No. 1-102-009]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-7	Memory Threshold for POP Mail Reception	
	This setting determines the amount of SAF (Store and Forward) memory. (SAF stores fax messages to send later for transmission to more than one location, and also holds incoming messages if they cannot be printed.) When the amount of SAF memory available falls below this setting, mail can no longer be received; received mail is then stored on the mail server. 00-FF (0 to 1024 KB: HEX) Note ▪ The hexadecimal number you enter is multiplied by 4 KB to determine the amount of memory.	

I-fax Switch 09 [SP No. 1-102-010]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-3	**Not used**	Do not change the settings
4-7	Restrict TX Retries	This setting determines the number of retries when connection and transmission fails due to errors. 01-F (1-15 Hex)

I-fax Switch 0A - Not used (do not change the settings) **[SP No. 1-102-011]**
I-fax Switch 0B - Not used (do not change the settings) **[SP No. 1-102-012]**
I-fax Switch 0C - Not used (do not change the settings) **[SP No. 1-102-013]**
I-fax Switch 0D - Not used (do not change the settings) **[SP No. 1-102-014]**
I-fax Switch 0E - Not used (do not change the settings) **[SP No. 1-102-015]**

I-fax Switch 0F [SP No. 1-102-016]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	Delivery Method for SMTP RX Files	
	This setting determines whether files received with SMTP protocol are delivered or output immediately. 0: Off. Files received via SMTP are output immediately without delivery. 1: On. Files received via SMTP are delivered immediately to their destinations.	
1-7	**Not used**	

4.3.3 PRINTER SWITCHES

Printer Switch 00 [SP No. 1-103-001]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	Select page separation marks 0: Off 1: On	0: If a 2 page RX transmission is split, [*] is printed in the bottom right corner of the 1st page and only a [2] is printed in the upper right corner of the 2nd page. 1: If a 2 page RX transmission is split into two pages, for example, [*] [2] is printed in the bottom right corner of the 1st page and only a [2] is printed in the upper right corner of the 2nd page. Note ▪ This helps the user to identify pages that have been split because the size of the paper is smaller than the size of the document received. (When A5 is used to print an A4 size document, for example.)

Bit Switches

1	Repetition of data when the received page is longer than the printer paper 0: Off 1: On	1: Default. 10 mm of the trailing edge of the previous page are repeated at the top of the next page. 0: The next page continues from where the previous page stopped without any repeated text.
2	Prints the date and time on received fax messages 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	This switch is only effective when user parameter 02 - bit 2 (printing the received date and time on received fax messages) is enabled. 1: The machine prints the received and printed date and time at the bottom of each received page.
3-7	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.

Printer Switch 01 [SP No. 1-103-002]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-2	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.
3-4	Maximum print width used in the setup protocol Bit 4: 0, Bit 3: 0 = Not used Bit 4: 0, Bit 3: 1 = A3 Bit 4: 1, Bit 3: 0 = B4 Bit 4: 1, Bit 3: 1 = A4	These bits are only effective when bit 7 of printer switch 01 is “1”.
5-6	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.

7	Received message width restriction in the protocol signal to the sender 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0: The machine informs the transmitting machine of the print width depending on the paper size available from the paper feed stations. Refer to the table on the next page for how the machine chooses the paper width used in the setup protocol (NSF/DIS). 1: The machine informs the transmitting machine of the fixed paper width which is specified by bits 3 and 4 above.

Bit Switches

Printer Switch 02 [SP No. 1-103-003]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	1st paper feed station usage for fax printing 0: Enabled 1: Disabled	0: The paper feed station can be used to print fax messages and reports. 1: The specified paper feed station will not be used for printing fax messages and reports. Note ▪ Do not disable usage for a paper feed station which has been specified by User Parameter Switch 0F (15), or which is used for the Specified Cassette Selection feature.
1	2nd paper feed station usage for fax printing 0: Enabled 1: Disabled	
2	3rd paper feed station usage for fax printing 0: Enabled 1: Disabled	
3	4th paper feed station usage for fax printing 0: Enabled 1: Disabled	
4	LCT usage for fax printing 0: Enabled 1: Disabled	
5-7	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.

Printer Switch 03 [SP No. 1-103-004]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	Length reduction of received data 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0: Incoming pages are printed without length reduction. (Page separation threshold: Printer Switch 03, bits 4 to 7) 1: Incoming page length is reduced when printing. (Maximum reducible length: Printer Switches 04, bits 0 to 4)
1-3	Not used	Do not change the settings
4-7	Page separation setting when sub scan compression is forbidden 00-0F (0-15 mm: Hex) Default: 6 mm	Page separation threshold (with reduction disabled with switch 03-0 above). For example, if this setting is set to "10", and A4 is the selected paper size: If the received document is 10 mm or less longer than A4, then the 10 mm are cut and only 1 page prints. If the received document is 10 mm longer than A4, then the document is split into 2 pages.

Bit Switches

Printer Switch 04
SP No. 1-103-005

<table>
<tr><th>No</th><th>FUNCTION</th><th>COMMENTS</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="9">0-4</td><td colspan="2">Maximum reducible length when length reduction is enabled with switch 03-0 above.
<Maximum reducible length> = <Paper length> + (N x 5mm)
“N” is the decimal value of the binary setting of bits 0 to 4.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2"><table>
<tr><th>Bit 4</th><th>Bit 3</th><th>Bit 2</th><th>Bit 1</th><th>Bit 0</th><th>Setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0 mm</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>5 mm</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>20 mm</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>155 mm</td></tr>
</table></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">For A5 sideways and B5 sideways paper
<Maximum reducible length> = <Paper length> + 0.75 x (N x 5mm)</td></tr>
<tr><td>5-6</td><td colspan="2">Length of the duplicated image on the next page, when page separation has taken place.
Bit 6: 0, Bit 5: 0 = 4 mm
Bit 6: 1, Bit 5: 0 = 10 mm
Bit 6: 0, Bit 5: 1 = 15 mm
Bit 6: 1, Bit 5: 1 = Not used</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td>Not used.</td><td>Do not change the setting.</td></tr>
</table>

Printer Switch 05 - Not used (do not change the settings)

Printer Switch 06 [SP No. 1-103-007]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	Printing while a paper cassette is pulled out, when the Just Size Printing feature is enabled. 0: Printing will not start 1: Printing will start if another cassette has a suitable size of paper, based on the paper size selection priority tables.	Cross reference Just size printing on/off – User switch 05, bit 5
1-7	**Not used.**	Do not change the settings.

Printer Switch 07 [SP No. 1-103-008]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-3	**Not used.**	Do not change the settings.
4	List of destinations in the Communication Failure Report for broadcasting 0: All destinations 1: Only destinations where communication failure occurred	1: Only destinations where communication failure occurred are printed on the Communication Failure Report.
5-7	**Not used.**	Do not change the settings.

Printer Switch 08 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Printer Switch 09 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Printer Switch 0A - Not used (do not change the settings)

Bit Switches

Printer Switch 0B - Not used (do not change the settings)
Printer Switch 0C - Not used (do not change the settings)
Printer Switch 0D - Not used (do not change the settings)

Printer Switch 0E [SP No. 1-103-015]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	Paper size selection priority 0: Width 1: Length	0: A paper size that has the same width as the received data is selected first. 1: A paper size which has enough length to print all the received lines without reduction is selected first.
1	Paper size selected for printing A4 width fax data 0: 8.5" x 11" size 1: A4 size	This switch determines which paper size is selected for printing A4 width fax data, when the machine has both A4 and 8.5" x 11" size paper.
2	Page separation 0: Enabled 1: Disabled	1: If all paper sizes in the machine require page separation to print a received fax message, the machine does not print the message (Substitute Reception is used). After a larger size of paper is set in a cassette, the machine automatically prints the fax message.

3-4	Printing the sample image on reports Bit 4: 0, Bit 3: 0 = The upper half only Bit 4: 0, Bit 3: 1 = 50% reduction in sub-scan only Bit 4: 1, Bit 3: 0 = Same size Bit 4: 1, Bit 3: 1 = **Not used**	"Same size" means the sample image is printed at 100%, even if page separation occurs. User Parameter Switch 19 (13H) bit 4 must be set to "0" to enable this switch. Refer to Detailed Section Descriptions for more on this feature.
5-6	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.
7	Equalizing the reduction ratio among separated pages (Page Separation) 0: Enabled 1: Disabled	0: When page separation has taken place, all the pages are reduced with the same reduction ratio. 1: Only the last page is reduced to fit the selected paper size when page separation has taken place. Other pages are printed without reduction.

Printer Switch 0F [SP No. 1-103-016]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-1	Smoothing feature Bit 1: 0 Bit 0: 0 = Disabled Bit 1: 0 Bit 0: 1 = Disabled Bit 1: 1 Bit 0: 0 = Enabled Bit 1: 1 Bit 0: 1 = **Not used**	(0, 0) (0, 1): Disable smoothing if the machine receives halftone images from other manufacturers fax machines frequently.
2	Duplex printing 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	1: The machine always prints received fax messages in duplex printing mode:

3	Binding direction for Duplex printing 0: Left binding 1: Top binding	0: Sets the binding for the left edge of the stack. 1: Sets the binding for the top of the stack.
4-7	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.

4.3.4 COMMUNICATION SWITCHES

Communication Switch 00 [SP No. 1-104-001]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-1	Compression modes available in receive mode Bit 1: 0 Bit 0: 0 = MH only Bit 1: 0 Bit 0: 1 = MH/MR Bit 1: 1 Bit 0: 0 = MH/MR/MMR Bit 1: 1 Bit 0: 1 = MH/MR/MMR/JBIG	These bits determine the compression capabilities to be declared in phase B (handshaking) of the T.30 protocol.
2-3	Compression modes available in transmit mode Bit 3: 0 Bit 2: 0 = MH only Bit 3: 0 Bit 2: 1 = MH/MR Bit 3: 1 Bit 2: 0 = MH/MR/MMR Bit 3: 1 Bit 2: 1 = MH/MR/MMR/JBIG	These bits determine the compression capabilities to be used in the transmission and to be declared in phase B (handshaking) of the T.30 protocol.
4	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.

5	JBIG compression method: Reception 0: Only basic supported 1: Basic and optional both supported	Change the setting when communication problems occur using JBIG compression.
6	JBIG compression method: Transmission 0: Basic mode priority 1: Optional mode priority	Change the setting when communication problems occur using JBIG compression.
7	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.

Communication Switch 01 [SP No. 1-104-002]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	ECM 0: Off 1: On	If this bit is set to 0, ECM is switched off for all communications. In addition, V.8 protocol and JBIG compression are switched off automatically.
1	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.

Bit Switches

2-3	Wrong connection prevention method Bit 3: 0, Bit 2: 0 = None Bit 3: 0, Bit 2: 1 = 8 digit CSI Bit 3: 1, Bit 2: 0 = 4 digit CSI Bit 3: 1, Bit 2: 1 = CSI/RTI	(0,1) - The machine will disconnect the line without sending a fax message, if the last 8 digits of the received CSI do not match the last 8 digits of the dialed telephone number. This does not work when manually dialed. (1,0) - The same as above, except that only the last 4 digits are compared. (1,1) - The machine will disconnect the line without sending a fax message, if the other end does not identify itself with an RTI or CSI. (0,0) - Nothing is checked; transmission will always go ahead. Note ▪ This function does not work when dialing is done from the external telephone.
4-5	**Not used**	Do not change the setting.
6-7	Maximum printable page length available Bit 7: 0 Bit 6: 0 = No limit Bit 7: 0 Bit 6: 1 = B4 (364 mm) Bit 7: 1 Bit 6: 0 = A4 (297 mm) Bit 7: 1 Bit 6: 1 = **Not used**	The setting determined by these bits is informed to the transmitting terminal in the pre-message protocol exchange (in the DIS/NSF frames).

Communication Switch 02 [SP No. 1-104-003]			
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**	
0	G3 Burst error threshold 0: Low 1: High	If there are more consecutive error lines in the received page than the threshold, the machine will send a negative response. The Low and High threshold values depend on the sub-scan resolution, and are as follows.	
		100 dpi	6(L) ⇒ 12(H)
		200 dpi	12(L) ⇒ 24(H)
		300 dpi	18(L) ⇒ 36(H)
		400 dpi	24(L) ⇒ 48(H)
1	Acceptable total error line ratio 0: 5% 1: 10%	If the error line ratio for a page exceeds the acceptable ratio, RTN will be sent to the other end.	
2	Treatment of pages received with errors during G3 reception 0: Deleted from memory without printing 1: Printed	0: Pages received with errors are not printed.	
3	Hang-up decision when a negative code (RTN or PIN) is received during G3 immediate transmission 0: No hang-up, 1: Hang-up	0: The next page will be sent even if RTN or PIN is received. 1: The machine will send DCN and hang up if it receives RTN or PIN. This bit is ignored for memory transmissions or if ECM is being used.	
4-7	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.	

Bit Switches

Communication Switch 03 [SP No. 1-104-004]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-7	Maximum number of page retransmissions in a G3 memory transmission	00 - FF (Hex) times. This setting is not used if ECM is switched on. Default setting - 03(H)

Communication Switch 04 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Communication Switch 05 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Communication Switch 06 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Communication Switch 07 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Communication Switch 08 - Not used (do not change the settings)

Communication Switch 09 [SP No. 1-104-010]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-7	IP-Fax dial interval setting	Adjusts the interval of the I-fax dialing. The interval of I-fax dialing is calculated by following formula. [Interval time = specified value with this switch x 0.2 msec]

Communication Switch 0A [SP No. 1-104-011]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	Point of resumption of memory transmission upon redialing 0: From the error page 1: From page 1	0: The transmission begins from the page where transmission failed the previous time. 1: Transmission begins from the first page, using normal memory transmission.
1-7	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.

Communication Switch 0B - Not used (do not change the settings)
Communication Switch 0C - Not used (do not change the settings)

Communication Switch 0D [SP No. 1-104-014]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-7	The available memory threshold, below which ringing detection (and therefore reception into memory) is disabled	00 to FF (Hex), unit = 4 kbytes (e.g., 06(H) = 24 kbytes) One page is about 24 kbytes. The machine refers to this setting before each fax reception. If the amount of remaining memory is below this threshold, the machine cannot receive any fax messages. If this setting is kept at 0, the machine will detect ringing signals and go into receive mode even if there is no memory available. This will result in communication failure.

Communication Switch 0E [SP No. 1-104-015]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-7	Minimum interval between automatic dialing attempts	06 to FF (Hex), unit = 2 s (e.g., 06(H) = 12 s) This value is the minimum time that the machine waits before it dials the next destination.

Communication Switch 0F – Not used (do not change the settings.)

Bit Switches

Communication Switch 10 [SP No. 1-104-017]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-7	Memory transmission: Maximum number of dialing attempts to the same destination	01 – FE (Hex) times

Communication Switch 11 – Not used (do not change the settings.)

Communication Switch 12 [SP No. 1-104-019]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-7	Memory transmission: Interval between dialing attempts to the same destination	01 – FF (Hex) minutes

Communication Switch 13 – Not used (do not change the settings.)

Communication Switch 14 [SP No. 1-104-021]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	Inch-to-mm conversion during transmission 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0: In immediate transmission, data scanned in inch format are transmitted without conversion. In memory transmission, data stored in the SAF memory in mm format are transmitted without conversion. Note: When storing the scanned data into SAF memory, the fax unit always converts the data into mm format. 1: The machine converts the scanned data or stored data in the SAF memory to the format which was specified in the set-up protocol (DIS/NSF) before transmission.
1-5	**Not used**	Do not change the factory settings.
6-7	Available unit of resolution in which fax messages are received Bit 7: 0, Bit 6: 0 = mm Bit 7: 0, Bit 6: 1 = inch Bit 7: 1, Bit 6: 0 = mm and inch (default) Bit 7: 1, Bit 6: 1 = **Not used**	For the best performance, do not change the factory settings. The setting determined by these bits is informed to the transmitting terminal in the pre-message protocol exchange (in the DIS/NSF frames).

Communication Switch 15 – Not used (do not change the settings)

Bit Switches

Communication Switch 16 [SP No. 1-104-023]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	**Not used**	Do not change the factory settings.
1	Optional G3 unit (G3-2) 0: Off 1: On	Change this bit to "1" when installing the first optional G3 unit (G3-2).
2	**Not used**	Do not change the factory settings.
3	Optional G3 unit (G3-3) 0: Off 1: On	Change this bit to "1" when installing the second optional G3 unit (G3-3).
4-7	**Not used**	Do not change the factory settings.

Communication Switch 17 [SP No. 1-104-024]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	SEP reception 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0: Polling transmission to another maker's machine using the SEP (Selective Polling) signal is disabled.
1	SUB reception 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0: Confidential reception to another maker's machine using the SUB (Sub-address) signal is disabled.
2	PWD reception 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0: Disables features that require PWD (Password) signal reception.
3-6	**Not used**	Do not change the factory settings.

7	Action when there is no box with an F-code that matches the received SUB code 0: Disconnect the line 1: Receive the message (using normal reception mode)	Change this setting when the customer requires.

Communication Switch 18 [SP No. 1-104-025]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-4	**Not used**	Do not change the factory settings.
5	IP-Fax dial-in routing selection 0: Off 1: On	1: Transfers receiving data to each IP-Fax dial-in number. IP-Fax dial-in number is 4 digit-number.
6-7	**Not used**	Do not change the factory settings.

Communication Switch 19 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Communication Switch 1A - Not used (do not change the settings)

Communication Switch 1B [SP No. 1-104-028]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-7	Extension access code (0 to 7) to turn V.8 protocol On/Off 0: On 1: Off	If the PABX does not support V.8/V.34 protocol procedure, set this bit to “1” to disable V.8. Example: If “0” is the PSTN access code, set bit 0 to 1. When the machine detects “0” as the first dialed number, it automatically disables V.8 protocol. (Alternatively, if “3” is the PSTN access code, set bit 3 to 1.)

Bit Switches

Communication Switch 1C [SP No. 1-104-029]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-1	Extension access code (8 and 9) to turn V.8 protocol On/Off 0: On 1: Off	Refer to communication switch 1B. Example: If “8” is the PSTN access code, set bit 0 to 1. When the machine detects “8” as the first dialed number, it automatically disables V.8 protocol. (If “9” is the PSTN access code, use bit 1.)
2-7	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.

Communication Switch 1D - Not used (do not change the settings)
Communication Switch 1E - Not used (do not change the settings)
Communication Switch 1F - Not used (do not change the settings)

4.3.5 G3 SWITCHES

G3 Switch 00 [SP No. 1-105-001]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0 1	Monitor speaker during communication (tx and rx) Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 0 = Disabled Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 1 = Up to Phase B Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 0 = All the time Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 1 = **Not used**	(0, 0): The monitor speaker is disabled all through the communication. (0, 1): The monitor speaker is on up to phase B in the T.30 protocol. (1, 0): Used for testing. The monitor speaker is on all through the communication. Make sure that you reset these bits after testing.
2	Monitor speaker during memory transmission 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	1: The monitor speaker is enabled during memory transmission.
3-5	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.
6	G3 mode selection for direct line 0: Off 1:On	1: G3 communication through the direct line is enabled.
7	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.

G3 Switch 01 [SP No. 1-105-002]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-1	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.
2-3	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.

Bit Switches

4	DIS frame length 0: 10 bytes 1: 4 bytes	1: The bytes in the DIS frame after the 4th byte will not be transmitted (set to 1 if there are communication problems with PC-based faxes which cannot receive the extended DIS frames).
5	**Not used**	Do not change the setting.
6	Forbid CED/AMsam output 0: Off 1: On (Forbid output)	Do not change this setting (Default: 0: Off), unless communication problem is caused by a CED or ANSam transmission.
7	**Not used**	Do not change the setting.

G3 Switch 02 [SP No. 1-105-003]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	G3 protocol mode used 0: Standard and non-standard 1: Standard only	Change this bit to 1 only when the other end can only communicate with machines that send T.30-standard frames only. 1: Disables NSF/NSS signals (these are used in non-standard mode communication)
1-6	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.
7	Short preamble 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	Refer to Appendix B in the Group 3 Facsimile Manual for details about Short Preamble.

G3 Switch 03 [SP No. 1-105-004]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	DIS detection number (Echo countermeasure) 0: 1 1: 2	0: The machine will hang up if it receives the same DIS frame twice. 1: Before sending DCS, the machine will wait for the second DIS which is caused by echo on the line.
1	**Not Used**	Do not change the settings.
2	V.8 protocol 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0: V.8/V.34 communications will not be possible. Note: Do not set to 0 unless the line condition is always bad enough to slow down the data rate to 14.4 kbps or lower.
3	ECM frame size 0: 256 bytes 1: 64 bytes	Keep this bit at “0” in most cases.
4	CTC transmission conditions 0: After one PPR signal received 1: After four PPR signals received (ITU-T standard)	0: When using ECM in non-standard (NSF/NSS) mode, the machine sends a CTC to drop back the modem rate after receiving a PPR, if the following condition is met in communications at 14.4, 12.0, 9.6, and 7.2 kbps. $\sqrt{\text{NTransmit} \leq \text{NResend}}$ NTransmit- Number of transmitted frames NResend- Number of frames to be retransmitted 1: When using ECM, the machine sends a CTC to drop back the modem rate after receiving four PPRs. PPR, CTC: These are ECM protocol signals. This bit is not effective in V.34 communications.

Bit Switches

5	Modem rate used for the next page after receiving a negative code (RTN or PIN) 0: No change 1: Fallback	1: The machine's tx modem rate will fall back before sending the next page if a negative code is received. This bit is ignored if ECM is being used.
6	**Not Used**	Do not change the settings
7	Select detection of reverse polarity in ringing 0: Off 1: On	This switch is used to prevent reverse polarity in ringing on the phone line (applied to PSTN-G3 ringing). Do not change this setting 0: No detection ⇒ Outside Japan 1: Detection ⇒ Inside Japan only

G3 Switch 04 [SP No. 1-105-005]

No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0-3	Training error detection threshold	0 - F (Hex); 0 - 15 bits If the number of error bits in the received TCF is below this threshold, the machine informs the sender that training has succeeded.
4-7	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.

G3 Switch 05 [SP No. 1-105-006]

<table>
<tr><th>No</th><th>FUNCTION</th><th>COMMENTS</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="18">0-3</td><td>Initial Tx modem rate
<table>
<tr><td>Bit 3</td><td>Bit 2</td><td>Bit 1</td><td>Bit 0</td><td>bps</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>2.4k</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>4.8k</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>7.2k</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>9.6k</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>12.0k</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>14.4k</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>16.8k</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>19.2k</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>21.6k</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>24.0k</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>26.4k</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>28.8k</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>31.2k</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>33.6k</td></tr>
</table>
Other settings - Not used</td><td rowspan="18">These bits set the initial starting modem rate for transmission.
Use the dedicated transmission parameters if you need to change this for specific receivers.
If a modem rate 14.4 kbps or slower is selected, V.8 protocol should be disabled manually.
Cross reference
V.8 protocol on/off - G3 switch 03, bit2</td></tr>
<tr><td>4-5</td><td>Initial modem type for 9.6 k or 7.2 kbps.
Bit 5: 0, Bit 4: 0 = V.29
Bit 5: 0, Bit 4: 1 = V.17
Bit 5: 1, Bit 4: 0 = V.34</td><td>These bits set the initial modem type for 9.6 and 7.2 kbps, if the initial modem rate is set at these speeds.</td></tr>
</table>

Bit Switches

	Bit 5: 1, Bit 4: 1 = **Not used**	
6-7	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.

G3 Switch 06 [SP No. 1-105-007]

No	FUNCTION					COMMENTS
0-3	Initial Rx modem rate					▪ These bits set the initial starting modem rate for reception. ▪ Use a lower setting if high speeds pose problems during reception. ▪ If a modem rate 14.4 kbps or slower is selected, V.8 protocol should be disabled manually. Cross reference: V.8 protocol on/off - G3 switch 03, bit2
	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	bps	
	0	0	0	1	2.4k	
	0	0	1	0	4.8k	
	0	0	1	1	7.2k	
	0	1	0	0	9.6k	
	0	1	0	1	12.0k	
	0	1	1	0	14.4k	
	0	1	1	1	16.8k	
	1	0	0	0	19.2k	
	1	0	0	1	21.6k	
	1	0	1	0	24.0k	
	1	0	1	1	26.4k	
	1	1	0	0	28.8k	
	1	1	0	1	31.2k	
	1	1	1	0	33.6k	
	Other settings - **Not used**					

<table>
<tr><td rowspan="8">4-7</td><td colspan="5">Modem types available for reception</td><td rowspan="8">▪ The setting of these bits is used to inform the transmitting terminal of the available modem type for the machine in receive mode.
▪ If V.34 is not selected, V.8 protocol must be disabled manually.
Cross reference:
V.8 protocol on/off - G3 switch 03, bit2</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit 7</td><td>Bit 6</td><td>Bit 5</td><td>Bit 4</td><td>Setting</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>V.27ter</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>V.27ter,V.29</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>V.27ter, V.29, V.33</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>V.27ter, V.29, V.17/V.33</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>V.27ter, V.29, V.17/V33, V.34</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">Other settings - Not used</td></tr>
</table>

Bit Switches

G3 Switch 07 [SP No. 1-105-008]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-1	PSTN cable equalizer (tx mode: Internal) Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 0 = None Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 1 = Low Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 0 = Medium Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 1 = High	Use a higher setting if there is signal loss at higher frequencies because of the length of wire between the modem and the telephone exchange. Use the dedicated transmission parameters for specific receivers. Also, try using the cable equalizer if one or more of the following symptoms occurs. Communication error Modem rate fallback occurs frequently. Note ▪ This setting is not effective in V.34 communications.
2-3	PSTN cable equalizer (rx mode: Internal) Bit 3: 0, Bit 2: 0 = None Bit 3: 0, Bit 2: 1 = Low Bit 3: 1, Bit 2: 0 = Medium Bit 3: 1, Bit 2: 1 = High	Use a higher setting if there is signal loss at higher frequencies because of the length of wire between the modem and the telephone exchange. Also, try using the cable equalizer if one or more of the following symptoms occurs. Communication error with error codes such as 0-20, 0-23, etc. Modem rate fallback occurs frequently. Note ▪ This setting is not effective in V.34 communications.
4	PSTN cable equalizer (V.8/V.17 rx mode: External) 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	Keep this bit at “1”.
5	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.

6	Parameter selection for dial tone detection 0: Normal parameter 1: Specific parameter	0: This uses the fixed table in the ROM for dial tone detection. 1: This uses the specific parameter adjusted with SRAM (69ECBEH - 69ECDEH). Select this if the dial tone cannot be detected when the "Normal parameter: 0" is selected.
7	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.

G3 Switch 08 - Not used (do not change the settings)
G3 Switch 09 - Not used (do not change the settings)

G3 Switch 0A [SP No. 1-105-011]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-1	Maximum allowable carrier drop during image data reception Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 0 = 200 (ms) Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 1 = 400 (ms) Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 0 = 800 (ms) Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 1 = **Not used**	These bits set the acceptable modem carrier drop time. Try using a longer setting if error code 0-22 is frequent.
2	Select cancellation of high-speed RX if carrier signal lost while receiving 0: Off 1: On	This switch setting determines if high-speed receiving ends if the carrier signal is lost when receiving during non-ECM mode
3	**Not used**	Do not change the settings

Bit Switches

4	Maximum allowable frame interval during image data reception. 0: 5 s 1: 13 s	This bit set the maximum interval between EOL (end-of-line) signals and the maximum interval between ECM frames from the other end. Try using a longer setting if error code 0-21 is frequent.
5	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.
6	Reconstruction time for the first line in receive mode 0: 6 s 1: 12 s	When the sending terminal is controlled by a computer, there may be a delay in receiving page data after the local machine accepts set-up data and sends CFR. This is outside the T.30 recommendation. But, if this delay occurs, set this bit to 1 to give the sending machine more time to send data. Refer to error code 0-20. ITU-T T.30 recommendation: The first line should come within 5 s of CFR.
7	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.

G3 Switch 0B - Not used (do not change the settings).
G3 Switch 0C - Not used (do not change the settings)
G3 Switch 0D - Not used (do not change the settings).

G3 Switch 0E [SP No 1-105-015]		
0-7	Set CNG send time interval Some machines on the receiving side may not be able to automatically switch the 3-second CNG interval.	
	High order bit	3000-2250ms: 3000-50xNms 3000 – 50 x Nms 0F (3000 ms) ≤ N ≤ FF (2250 ms)
	Low order bit	00-0E(3000-3700ms: 3000+50xNms 3000 – 50 x Nms 0F (3000 ms) ≤ N ≤ 0F (3700 ms)

G3 Switch 0F [SP No. 1-105-016]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	Alarm when an error occurred in Phase C or later 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	If the customer wants to hear an alarm after each error communication, change this bit to “1”.
1	Alarm when the handset is off-hook at the end of communication 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	If the customer wants to hear an alarm if the handset is off-hook at the end of fax communication, change this bit to “1”.
2	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.
4	Sidaa manual calibration setting 0: Off 1: On	1: manually calibrates for communication with a line, whose current change occurs such as an optical fiber line.
5-7	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.

4.3.6 G3-2/3 SWITCHES

These switches require an optional G3 interface unit.

G3-3 switches are the same as for G3-2 switches.

G3-2 Switch 00 [SP No. 1-106-001]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-1	Monitor speaker during communication (tx and rx) Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 0 = Disabled Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 1 = Up to Phase B Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 0 = All the time Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 1 = Not used	(0, 0): The monitor speaker is disabled all through the communication. (0, 1): The monitor speaker is on up to phase B in the T.30 protocol. (1, 0): Used for testing. The monitor speaker is on all through the communication. Make sure that you reset these bits after testing.
2	Monitor speaker during memory transmission 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	1: The monitor speaker is enabled during memory transmission.
3-6	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.

G3-2 Switch 01 [SP No. 1-106-002]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-3	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.
4	DIS frame length 0: 10 bytes, 1: 4 bytes	1: The bytes in the DIS frame after the 4th byte will not be transmitted (set to 1 if there are communication problems with PC-based faxes which cannot receive the extended DIS frames).
5	**Not used**	Do not change the setting.

6	CED/ANSam transmission 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	Do not change this setting, unless the communication problem is caused by the CED/ANSam transmission.
7	**Not used**	Do not change the setting.

G3-2 Switch 02 [SP No. 1-106-003]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	G3 protocol mode used 0: Standard and non-standard 1: Standard only	Change this bit to 1 only when the other end can only communicate with machines that send T.30-standard frames only. 1: Disables NSF/NSS signals (these are used in non-standard mode communication)
1-4	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.
5	Use of modem rate history for transmission using Quick/Speed Dials 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0: Communications using Quick/Speed Dials always start from the highest modem rate. 1: The machine refers to the modem rate history for communications with the same machine when determining the most suitable rate for the current communication.

6	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.
7	Short preamble 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled	Refer to Appendix B in the Group 3 Facsimile Manual for details about Short Preamble.

Bit Switches

G3-2 Switch 03 [SP No. 1-106-004]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	DIS detection number (Echo countermeasure) 0: 1 1: 2	0: The machine will hang up if it receives the same DIS frame twice. 1: Before sending DCS, the machine will wait for the second DIS which is caused by echo on the line.
1	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.
2	V.8 protocol 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0: V.8/V.34 communications will not be possible. Note ▪ Do not set to 0 unless the line condition is always bad enough to slow down the data rate to 14.4 kbps or lower.
3	ECM frame size 0: 256 bytes 1: 64 bytes	Keep this bit at “0” in most cases.

4	CTC transmission conditions 0: After one PPR signal received 1: After four PPR signals received (ITU-T standard)	0: When using ECM in non-standard (NSF/NSS) mode, the machine sends a CTC to drop back the modem rate after receiving a PPR, if the following condition is met in communications at 14.4, 12.0, 9.6, and 7.2 kbps. $\sqrt{\ }$ NTransmit ≤ NResend NTransmit- Number of transmitted frames NResend- Number of frames to be retransmitted 1: When using ECM, the machine sends a CTC to drop back the modem rate after receiving four PPRs. PPR, CTC: These are ECM protocol signals. This bit is not effective in V.34 communications.
5	Modem rate used for the next page after receiving a negative code (RTN or PIN) 0: No change, 1: Fallback	1: The machine's tx modem rate will fall back before sending the next page if a negative code is received. This bit is ignored if ECM is being used.
6	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.
7	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.

G3-2 Switch 04 [SP No. 1-106-005]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-3	Training error detection threshold	0 - F (Hex); 0 - 15 bits If the number of error bits in the received TCF is below this threshold, the machine informs the sender that training has succeeded.
4-7	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.

Bit Switches

G3-2 Switch 05 [SP No. 1-106-006]

No	FUNCTION					COMMENTS
0-3	Initial Tx modem rate					These bits set the initial starting modem rate for transmission. Use the dedicated transmission parameters if you need to change this for specific receivers. If a modem rate 14.4 kbps or slower is selected, V.8 protocol should be disabled manually. **Cross reference** V.8 protocol on/off - G3 switch 03, bit2
	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	bps	
	0	0	0	1	2.4k	
	0	0	1	0	4.8k	
	0	0	1	1	7.2k	
	0	1	0	0	9.6k	
	0	1	0	1	12.0k	
	0	1	1	0	14.4k	
	0	1	1	1	16.8k	
	1	0	0	0	19.2k	
	1	0	0	1	21.6k	
	1	0	1	0	24.0k	
	1	0	1	1	26.4k	
	1	1	0	0	28.8k	
	1	1	0	1	31.2k	
	1	1	1	0	33.6k	
	Other settings - **Not used**					

4-5	Initial modem type for 9.6 k or 7.2 kbps. Bit 5: 0, Bit 4: 0 = V.29 Bit 5: 0, Bit 4: 1 = V.17 Bit 5: 1, Bit 4: 0 = V.34 Bit 5: 1, Bit 4: 1 = **Not used**	These bits set the initial modem type for 9.6 and 7.2 kbps, if the initial modem rate is set at these speeds.
6-7	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.

G3-2 Switch 06 [SP No. 1-106-007]

No	FUNCTION					COMMENTS
0-3	Initial Rx modem rate					▪ These bits set the initial starting modem rate for reception. ▪ Use a lower setting if high speeds pose problems during reception. ▪ If a modem rate 14.4 kbps or slower is selected, V.8 protocol should be disabled manually. **Cross reference**: V.8 protocol on/off - G3 switch 03, bit2
	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	bps	
	0	0	0	1	2.4k	
	0	0	1	0	4.8k	
	0	0	1	1	7.2k	
	0	1	0	0	9.6k	
	0	1	0	1	12.0k	
	0	1	1	0	14.4k	
	0	1	1	1	16.8k	
	1	0	0	0	19.2k	
	1	0	0	1	21.6k	
	1	0	1	0	24.0k	
	1	0	1	1	26.4k	
	1	1	0	0	28.8k	
	1	1	0	1	31.2k	

Bit Switches

<table>
<tr><td></td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>33.6k</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="5">Other settings - Not used</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="9">4-7</td><td colspan="5">Modem types available for reception</td><td rowspan="9">▪ The setting of these bits is used to inform the transmitting terminal of the available modem type for the machine in receive mode.
▪ If V.34 is not selected, V.8 protocol must be disabled manually.
Cross reference:
V.8 protocol on/off - G3 switch 03, bit2</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit 7</td><td>Bit 6</td><td>Bit 5</td><td>Bit 4</td><td>Setting</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>V.27ter</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>V.27ter,V.29</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>V.27ter, V.29, V.33</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>V.27ter, V.29, V.17/V.33</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>V.27ter, V.29, V.17/V33, V.34</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">Other settings - Not used</td></tr>
</table>

G3-2 Switch 07 [SP No. 1-106-008]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-1	PSTN cable equalizer (tx mode: Internal) Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 0 = None Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 1 = Low Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 0 = Medium Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 1 = High	Use a higher setting if there is signal loss at higher frequencies because of the length of wire between the modem and the telephone exchange. Use the dedicated transmission parameters for specific receivers. Also, try using the cable equalizer if one or more of the following symptoms occurs. Communication error Modem rate fallback occurs frequently. Note ▪ This setting is not effective in V.34 communications.
2-3	PSTN cable equalizer (rx mode: Internal) Bit 3: 0, Bit 2: 0 = None Bit 3: 0, Bit 2: 1 = Low Bit 3: 1, Bit 2: 0 = Medium Bit 3: 1, Bit 2: 1 = High	Use a higher setting if there is signal loss at higher frequencies because of the length of wire between the modem and the telephone exchange. Also, try using the cable equalizer if one or more of the following symptoms occurs. Communication error with error codes such as 0-20, 0-23, etc. Modem rate fallback occurs frequently. Note ▪ This setting is not effective in V.34 communications.
4	PSTN cable equalizer (V.8/V.17 rx mode: External) 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	Keep this bit at “1”.

5	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.
6	Parameter selection for dial tone detection 0: Normal parameter 1: Specific parameter	0: This uses the fixed table in the ROM for dial tone detection. 1: This uses the specific parameter adjusted with SRAM (69ECBEH - 69ECDEH). Select this if the dial tone cannot be detected when the "Normal parameter: 0" is selected.
7	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.

G3-2 Switch 08 - Not used (do not change the settings)
G3-2 Switch 09 - Not used (do not change the settings)

G3-2 Switch 0A [SP No. 1-106-011]		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-1	Maximum allowable carrier drop during image data reception Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 0 = 200 (ms) Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 1 = 400 (ms) Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 0 = 800 (ms) Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 1 = **Not used**	These bits set the acceptable modem carrier drop time. Try using a longer setting if error code 0-22 is frequent.
2	Select cancellation of high-speed RX if carrier signal lost while receiving 0: Off 1: On	This switch setting determines if high-speed receiving ends if the carrier signal is lost when receiving during non-ECM mode
3	**Not used**	Do not change the settings

4	Maximum allowable frame interval during image data reception. 0: 5 s 1: 13 s	This bit set the maximum interval between EOL (end-of-line) signals and the maximum interval between ECM frames from the other end. Try using a longer setting if error code 0-21 is frequent.
5	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.
6	Reconstruction time for the first line in receive mode 0: 6 s 1: 12 s	When the sending terminal is controlled by a computer, there may be a delay in receiving page data after the local machine accepts set-up data and sends CFR. This is outside the T.30 recommendation. But, if this delay occurs, set this bit to 1 to give the sending machine more time to send data. Refer to error code 0-20. ITU-T T.30 recommendation: The first line should come within 5 s of CFR.
7	**Not used**	Do not change the settings.
G3-2 Switch 0B - Not used (do not change the settings.)		
G3-2 Switch 0C - Not used (do not change the settings.)		
G3-2 Switch 0D - Not used (do not change the settings)		
G3-2 Switch 0E - Not used (do not change the settings)		
G3-2 Switch 0F - Not used (do not change the settings)		

4.3.7 IP FAX SWITCHES

IP Fax Switch 00 [SP No. 1-111-001]		
No.	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	**Not used**	Do not change this setting.

Bit Switches

1	IP Fax Transport 0: TCP, 1: UDP	Selects TCP or UDP protocol for IP-Fax
2	IP Fax single port selection 0: OFF, 1: ON (enable)	Selects single data port.
3	IP Fax double ports (single data port) selection 0: OFF, 1: ON (enable)	Selects whether IP-Fax uses a double port.
4	IP Fax Gatekeeper 0: OFF, 1: ON (enable)	Enables/disables the communication via the gatekeeper for IP-Fax.
5	IP Fax T30 bit signal reverse 0: LSB first, 1: MSB first	Reverses the T30 bit signal.
6	IP Fax max bit rate setting 0: Not affected, 1: Affected	When "0" is selected, the max bit rate does not affect the value of the DIS/DCS. When "1" is selected, the max bit rate affects the value of the DIS/DCS.
7	IP Fax received telephone number confirmation 0: No confirmation, 1: Confirmation	When "0" is selected, fax data is received without checking the telephone number. When "1" is selected, fax data is received only when confirming that the telephone number from the sender matches the registered telephone number in this machine. If this confirmation fails, the line is disconnected.

IP-Fax Switch 01

No.	FUNCTION					COMMENTS
0-3	Select IP FAX Delay Level					Raise the level by selecting a higher setting if too many transmission errors are occurring on the network. If TCP/UDP is enabled on the network, raise this setting on the T.30 machine. Increasing the delay time allows the recovery of more lost packets. If only UDP is enabled, increase the number of redundant packets. Level 1~2: 3 Redundant packets Level 3: 4 Redundant packets
	Bit3	Bit2	Bit1	Bit0	Setting	
	0	0	0	0	Level 0	
	0	0	0	1	Level 1	
	0	0	1	0	Level 2	
	0	0	1	1	Level 3	
4-7	IP Fax preamble wait time setting					Selects the preamble wait time. [00 to 0f] There are 16 values in this 4-bit binary switch combination. Waiting time: set value level x 100 ms Max: 0f (1500 ms) Min: 00 (No wait time) The default is "0000" (00H).

IP Fax Switch 02 [SP No. 1-111-003]

No.	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	IP Fax bit signal reverse setting 0: Maker code setting 1: Internal bit switch setting	When "0" is selected, the bit signal reverse method is decided by the maker code. When "1" is selected, the bit signal reverse method is decided by the internal bit switch. When communicating between IP Fax devices, LSB first is selected.)

Bit Switches

1	IP Fax transmission speed setting 0: Modem speed 1: No limitation	Selects the transmit speed for IP Fax communication.
2	SIP transport setting 0: TCP 1: UDP	This bit switch sets the transport that has priority for receiving IP Fax data. This function is activated only when the sender has both TCP and UDP.
3	CCM connection 0: No CCM connection 1: CCM connection	When "1" is selected, only the connection call message with H.323 or no tunneled H.245 is transmitted via CCM.
4	Message reception selection from non-registered SIP server 0: Answer 1: Not answer	0: This answers the INVITE message from the SIP server not registered for the machine. 1: This does not receive the INVITE message from the SIP server not registered for the machine and send a refusal message.
5	ECM communication setting 0: No limit for image compression 1: Limit for image compression	0: This does not limit the type of the image compression with ECM communication. 1: When the other end machine is Ciscco, this permits the image compression other than JBIG or MMR with ECM communication.
6-7	**Not used**	Do not change these settings.

IP Fax Switch 03 [SP No. 1-111-004]		
No.	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	Effective field limitation for G3 standard function information 0: OFF, 1: 4byte (DIS)	Limits the effective field for standard G3 function information.
1	Switching between G3 standard and G3 non standard 0: Enable switching 1: G3 standard only	Enables/disables switching between G3 standard and G3 non-standard.
2	Not used.	Do not change this setting.
3	ECM frame size selection at transmitting 0: 256byte, 1: 64byte	Selects the ECM frame size for sending.
4	DIS detection times for echo prevention 0: 1 time, 1: 2 times	Sets the number of times for DIS to detect echoes.
5	CTC transmission selection 0: PPRx1 1: PPRx4	When "0" is selected, the transmission condition is decided by error frame numbers. When "1" is selected, the transmission condition is based on the ITU-T method.
6	Shift down setting at receiving negative code 0: OFF, 1: ON	Selects whether to shift down when negative codes are received.
7	**Not used**	Do not change this setting.

Bit Switches

IP Fax Switch 04 [SP No. 1-111-005]		
No.	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	TCF error threshold	Sets the TCF error threshold level. [00 to 0f] The default is "1111" (0fH).
1		
2		
3		
4-7	**Not used**	Do not change these settings.

IP Fax Switch 05 [SP No. 1-111-006]					
No.	**FUNCTION**			**COMMENTS**	
0-3	Modem bit rate setting for transmission Sets the modem bit rate for transmission. The default is "0110" (14.4K bps).				
	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
	0	0	0	1	2400 bps
	0	0	1	1	4800 bps
	0	0	1	1	7200 bps
	0	1	0	0	9600 bps
	0	1	0	1	12.0 Kbps
	0	1	1	0	14.4 Kbps
	0	1	1	1	16.8 Kbps
	1	0	0	0	19.2 Kbps
	1	0	0	1	21.6 Kbps
	1	0	1	0	24.0 Kbps

	1	0	1	1	26.4 Kbps
	1	1	0	0	28.8 Kbps
	1	1	0	1	31.2 Kbps
	1	1	1	0	33.6 Kbps
4-5	Modem setting for transmission Sets the modem for transmission. The default is "00" (V29). Bit 5: 0, Bit 4: 0 = V29 Bit 5: 0, Bit 4: 1 = V17 Bit 5: 1, Bit 4: 0 = V34* Bit 5: 1, Bit 4: 1 = **Not used** *V34 is not supported for IP-Fax communication.				
6-7	**Not used**	Do not change these settings.			

IP Fax Switch 06 [SP No. 1-111-007]					
No.	**FUNCTION**			**COMMENTS**	
0-3	Modem bit rate setting for reception Sets the modem bit rate for reception. The default is "0110" (14.4K bps).				
	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
	0	0	0	1	2400 bps
	0	0	1	0	4800 bps
	0	0	1	1	7200 bps
	0	1	0	0	9600 bps
	0	1	0	1	12.0 Kbps
	0	1	1	0	14.4 Kbps
	0	1	1	1	16.8 Kbps

Bit Switches

	1	0	0	0	19.2 Kbps
	1	0	0	1	21.6 Kbps
	1	0	1	0	24.0 Kbps
	1	0	1	1	26.4 Kbps
	1	1	0	0	28.8 Kbps
	1	1	0	1	31.2 Kbps
	1	1	1	0	33.6 Kbps
4-7	Modem setting for reception Sets the modem type for reception. The default is "0100" (V27ter, V29, V17).				
	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	
	0	0	0	1	V27ter
	0	0	1	0	V27ter, V29
	0	0	1	1	V27ter, V29, V33 (invalid)
	0	1	0	0	V27ter, V29, V17
	0	1	0	1	V27ter, V29, V17, V34*
	*V34 is not supported for IP-Fax communication.				

IP Fax Switch 07 [SP No. 1-111-008]		
No.	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	TSI information 0: Not added, 1: Added	Adds or does not add TSI information to NSS(S).
1	DCN transmission setting at T1 timeout 0: Not transmitted, 1: Transmitted	Transmits or does not transmit DCN at T1 timeout.
2	**Not used**	Do not change this setting.
3	Hang up setting at DIS reception disabled 0: No hang up 1: Hang up after transmitting DCN	Sets whether the machine disconnects after DIS reception.
4	Number of times for training 0: 1 time, 1: 2 times	Selects the number of times training is done at the same bit rate.
5	Space CSI transmission setting at no CSI registration 0: Not transmitted, 1: Transmitted	When "0" is selected, frame data is enabled. When "1" is selected, the transmitted data is all spaces.
6-7	**Not used**	Do not change these settings.

Bit Switches

IP Fax Switch 08 [SP No. 1-111-009]		
No.	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-1	T1 timer adjustment Adjusts the T1 timer. The default is "00" (35 seconds). Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 0 = 35 sec Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 1 = 40 sec Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 0 = 50 sec Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 1 = 60 sec	-
2-3	T4 timer adjustment Adjust the T4 timer. The default is "00" (3 seconds). Bit 3: 0, Bit 2: 0 = 3 sec Bit 3: 0, Bit 2: 1 = 3.5 sec Bit 3: 1, Bit 2: 0 = 4 sec Bit 3: 1, Bit 2: 1 = 5 sec	-
4-5	T0 timer adjustment Bit 5: 0, Bit 4: 0 = 75 sec Bit 5: 0, Bit 4: 1 = 120 sec Bit 5: 1, Bit 4: 0 = 180 sec Bit 5: 1, Bit 4: 1 = 240 sec	Adjusts the fail safe timer. This timer sets the interval between "setup" data transmission and T.38 phase decision. If your destination return is late on the network or G3 fax return is late, adjust the longer interval timer. The default is "00" (75 seconds).
6-7	**Not used**	Do not change these settings.

4.4 NCU PARAMETERS

The following tables give the RAM addresses and the parameter calculation units that the machine uses for ringing signal detection and automatic dialing. The factory settings for each country are also given. Most of these must be changed by RAM read/write (SP2-102), but some can be changed using NCU Parameter programming (SP2-103, 104 and 105); if SP2-103, 104 and 105 can be used, this will be indicated in the Remarks column. The RAM is programmed in hex code unless (BCD) is included in the Unit column.

Note

- The following addresses describe settings for the standard NCU.
- Change the fourth digit from “5” to “6” (e.g. 680500 to 680600) for the settings for the first optional G3 interface unit and from “5” to “7” (e.g. 680700) for the settings for the second optional G3 interface unit.

Address	Function					
680500	Country/Area code for NCU parameters					
	Use the Hex value to program the country/area code directly into this address, or use the decimal value to program it using SP2-103-001					
	Country /Area	**Decimal**	**Hex**	**Country /Area**	**Decimal**	**Hex**
	France	00	00	USA	17	11
	Germany	01	01	Asia	18	12
	UK	02	02	Hong Kong	20	14
	Italy	03	03	South Africa	21	15
	Austria	04	04	Australia	22	16
	Belgium	05	05	New Zealand	26	17
	Denmark	06	06	Singapore	24	18
	Finland	07	07	Malaysia	25	19

NCU Parameters

Address	Function					
	Ireland	08	08	China	26	1A
	Norway	09	09	Taiwan	27	1B
	Sweden	10	0A	Korea	28	1C
	Switzerland	11	0B	Turkey	32	20
	Portugal	12	0C	Greece	33	21
	Holland	13	0D	Hungary	34	22
	Spain	14	0E	Czech	35	23
	Israel	15	0F	Poland	36	24

Address	Function	Unit	Remarks
680501	Line current detection time	20 ms	Line current detection is disabled. Line current is not detected if 680501 contains FF.
680502	Line current wait time		
680503	Line current drop detect time		
680504	PSTN dial tone frequency upper limit (high byte)	Hz (BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
680505	PSTN dial tone frequency upper limit (low byte)		
680506	PSTN dial tone frequency lower limit (high byte)	Hz (BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
680507	PSTN dial tone frequency lower limit (low byte)		
680508	PSTN dial tone detection time	20 ms	If 680508 contains FF(H), the machine
680509	PSTN dial tone reset time (LOW)		

Address	Function	Unit	Remarks
68050A	PSTN dial tone reset time (HIGH)		pauses for the pause time (address 68050D / 68050E). Italy: See Note 2.
68050B	PSTN dial tone continuous tone time		
68050C	PSTN dial tone permissible drop time		
68050D	PSTN wait interval (LOW)		-
68050E	PSTN wait interval (HIGH)		
68050F	PSTN ring-back tone detection time	20 ms	Detection is disabled if this contains FF.
680510	PSTN ring-back tone off detection time	20 ms	-
680511	PSTN detection time for silent period after ring-back tone detected (LOW)	20 ms	-
680512	PSTN detection time for silent period after ring-back tone detected (HIGH)	20 ms	-
680513	PSTN busy tone frequency upper limit (high byte)	Hz (BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
680514	PSTN busy tone frequency upper limit (low byte)		
680515	PSTN busy tone frequency lower limit (high byte)	Hz (BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
680516	PSTN busy tone frequency lower limit (low byte)		
680517	PABX dial tone frequency upper limit (high byte)	Hz (BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone

NCU Parameters

Address	Function	Unit	Remarks
680518	PABX dial tone frequency upper limit (low byte)		detection is disabled.
680519	PABX dial tone frequency lower limit (high byte)	Hz (BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
68051A	PABX dial tone frequency lower limit (low byte)		
68051B	PABX dial tone detection time	20 ms	If 68051B contains FF, the machine pauses for the pause time (680520 / 680521).
68051C	PABX dial tone reset time (LOW)		
68051D	PABX dial tone reset time (HIGH)		
68051E	PABX dial tone continuous tone time		
68051F	PABX dial tone permissible drop time		
680520	PABX wait interval (LOW)		-
680521	PABX wait interval (HIGH)		
680522	PABX ringback tone detection time	20 ms	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
680523	PABX ringback tone off detection time	20 ms	
680524	PABX detection time for silent period after ringback tone detected (LOW)	20 ms	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
680525	PABX detection time for silent period after ringback tone detected (HIGH)	20 ms	
680526	PABX busy tone frequency upper limit (high byte)	Hz (BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone

Address	Function	Unit	Remarks
680527	PABX busy tone frequency upper limit (low byte)		detection is disabled.
680528	PABX busy tone frequency lower limit (high byte)	Hz (BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
680529	PABX busy tone frequency lower limit (low byte)		
68052A	Busy tone ON time: range 1	20 ms	-
68052B	Busy tone OFF time: range 1		
68052C	Busy tone ON time: range 2		
68052D	Busy tone OFF time: range 2		
68052E	Busy tone ON time: range 3		
68052F	Busy tone OFF time: range 3	20 ms	
680530	Busy tone ON time: range 4		
680531	Busy tone OFF time: range 4		
680532	Busy tone continuous tone detection time		
680533	Busy tone signal state time tolerance for all ranges, and number of cycles required for detection (a setting of 4 cycles means that ON-OFF-ON or OFF-ON-OFF must be detected twice). Tolerance (±) Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 0 = 75% Bits 2 and 3 must always be kept at 0. Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 0 = 50% Bits 2 and 3 must always be kept at 0. Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 0 = 25% Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 0 = 12.5% Bits 7, 6, 5, 4 - number of cycles required for cadence detection		
680534	International dial tone frequency upper limit (high byte)	Hz (BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone

NCU Parameters

Address	Function	Unit	Remarks
680535	International dial tone frequency upper limit (low byte)		detection is disabled.
680536	International dial tone frequency lower limit (high byte)	Hz (BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
680537	International dial tone frequency lower limit (low byte)		
680538	International dial tone detection time	20 ms	If 680538 contains FF, the machine pauses for the pause time (68053D / 68053E). Belgium: See Note 2.
680539	International dial tone reset time (LOW)		
68053A	International dial tone reset time (HIGH)		
68053B	International dial tone continuous tone time		
68053C	International dial tone permissible drop time		
68053D	International dial wait interval (LOW)		-
68053E	International dial wait interval (HIGH)		
68053F	Country dial tone upper frequency limit (HIGH)	Hz (BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
680540	Country dial tone upper frequency limit (LOW)		
680541	Country dial tone lower frequency limit (HIGH)		If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
680542	Country dial tone lower frequency		

Address	Function	Unit	Remarks
	limit (LOW)		
680543	Country dial tone detection time	20 ms	If 680543 contains FF, the machine pauses for the pause time (680548 / 680549).
680544	Country dial tone reset time (LOW)		
680545	Country dial tone reset time (HIGH)		
680546	Country dial tone continuous tone time	-	-
680547	Country dial tone permissible drop time	20 ms	-
680548	Country dial wait interval (LOW)		
680549	Country dial wait interval (HIGH)		
68054A	Time between opening or closing the DO relay and opening the OHDI relay	1 ms	See Notes 3, 6 and 8. SP2-103-012 (parameter 11).
68054B	Break time for pulse dialing	1 ms	See Note 3. SP2-103-013 (parameter 12).
68054C	Make time for pulse dialing	1 ms	See Note 3. SP2-103-014 (parameter 13).
68054D	Time between final OHDI relay closure and DO relay opening or closing	1 ms	See Notes 3, 6 and 8. SP2-103-015 (parameter 14). This parameter is only valid in Europe.
68054E	Minimum pause between dialed digits (pulse dial mode)	20 ms	See Note 3 and 8. SP2-103-016 (parameter 15).

NCU Parameters

Address	Function	Unit	Remarks
68054F	Time waited when a pause is entered at the operation panel		SP2-103-017 (parameter 16). See Note 3.
680550	DTMF tone on time	1 ms	SP2-103-018 (parameter 17).
680551	DTMF tone off time		SP2-103-019 (parameter 18).
680552	Tone attenuation level of DTMF signals while dialing	-N x 0.5 –3.5 dBm	SP2-103-020 (parameter 19). See Note 5.
680553	Tone attenuation value difference between high frequency tone and low frequency tone in DTMF signals	-dBm x 0.5	SP2-103-021 (parameter 20). The setting must be less than –5dBm, and should not exceed the setting at 680552h above. See Note 5.
680554	PSTN: DTMF tone attenuation level after dialling	-N x 0.5 –3.5 dBm	SP2-103-022 (parameter 21). See Note 5.
680555	ISDN: DTMF tone attenuation level after dialling	-dBm x 0.5	See Note 5
680556	Not used	-	Do not change the settings.
680557	Time between 68054Dh (NCU parameter 14) and 68054Eh (NCU parameter 15)	1 ms	This parameter takes effect when the country code is set to France.
680558	Not used	-	Do not change the setting.

Address	Function	Unit	Remarks
680559	Grounding time (ground start mode)	20 ms	The Gs relay is closed for this interval.
68055A	Break time (flash start mode)	1 ms	The OHDI relay is open for this interval.
68055B	International dial access code (High)	BCD	For a code of 100: 68055B - F1 68055C - 00
68055C	International dial access code (Low)		
68055D	PSTN access pause time	20 ms	This time is waited for each pause input after the PSTN access code. If this address contains FF[H], the pause time stored in address 68054F is used. Do not set a number more than 7 in the UK.
68055E	Progress tone detection level, and cadence detection enable flags	Bit 7: 0, Bit 6: 0, Bit 5: 0 = -25.0 dBm Bit 7: 0, Bit 6: 0, Bit 5: 1 = -35.0 dBm Bit 7: 0, Bit 6: 1, Bit 5: 0 = -30.0 dBm Bit 7: 1, Bit 6: 0, Bit 5: 0 = -40.0 dBm Bit 7: 1, Bit 6: 1, Bit 5: 0 = -49.0 dBm Bits 2, 0 - See Note 2.	
68055F To 680564	**Not used**	-	Do not change the settings.
680565	Long distance call prefix (HIGH)	BCD	For a code of 0: 680565 – FF 680566 - FF

680566	Long distance call prefix (LOW)	BCD	
680567 to 680571	**Not used**	-	Do not change the settings.
680572	Acceptable ringing signal frequency: range 1, upper limit	1000/ N (Hz).	SP2-103-003 (parameter 02).
680573	Acceptable ringing signal frequency: range 1, lower limit		SP2-103-004 (parameter 03).
680574	Acceptable ringing signal frequency: range 2, upper limit		SP2-103-005 (parameter 04).
680575	Acceptable ringing signal frequency: range 2, lower limit		SP2-103-006 (parameter 05).
680576	Number of rings until a call is detected	1	SP2-103-007 (parameter 06). The setting must not be zero.
680577	Minimum required length of the first ring	20 ms	See Note 4. SP2-103-008 (parameter 07).
680578	Minimum required length of the second and subsequent rings	20 ms	SP2-103-009 (parameter 08).
680579	Ringing signal detection reset time (LOW)	20 ms	SP2-103-010 (parameter 09).
68057A	Ringing signal detection reset time (HIGH)		SP2-103-011 (parameter 10).
68057B to 680580	**Not used**	-	Do not change the settings.

680581	Interval between dialing the last digit and switching the Oh relay over to the external telephone when dialing from the operation panel in handset mode.	20 ms	Factory setting: 500 ms
680582	Bits 0 and 1 - Handset off-hook detection time Bit 1:0, Bit 0: 0 = 200 ms Bit 1:0, Bit 0: 1 = 800 ms Other Not used Bits 2 and 3 - Handset on-hook detection time Bit 3: 0, Bit 2: 0 = 200 ms Bit 3: 0, Bit 2: 1 = 800 ms Other Not used Bits 4 to 7 - **Not used**		-
680583 To 6805A0	**Not used**	-	Do not change the settings.
6805A1	Acceptable CED detection frequency upper limit (high byte)	BCD (Hz)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
6805A2	Acceptable CED detection frequency upper limit (low byte)		
6805A3	Acceptable CED detection frequency lower limit (high byte)	BCD (Hz)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
6805A4	Acceptable CED detection frequency lower limit (low byte)		
6805A5	CED detection time	20 ms ± 20 ms	Factory setting: 200 ms
6805A6	Acceptable CNG detection frequency upper limit (high byte)	BCD (Hz)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
6805A7	Acceptable CNG detection frequency upper limit (low byte)		

NCU Parameters

6805A8	Acceptable CNG detection frequency lower limit (high byte)	BCD (Hz)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
6805A9	Acceptable CNG detection frequency lower limit (low byte)		
6805AA	**Not used**	-	Do not change the setting.
6805AB	CNG on time	20 ms	Factory setting: 500 ms
6805AC	CNG off time	20 ms	Factory setting: 3000 ms
6805AD	Number of CNG cycles required for detection	-	The data is coded in the same way as address 680533.
6805AE	**Not used**	-	Do not change the settings.
6805AF	Acceptable AI short protocol tone (800Hz) detection frequency upper limit (high byte)	Hz (BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
6805B0	Acceptable AI short protocol tone (800Hz) detection frequency upper limit (low byte)		
6805B1	Acceptable AI short protocol tone (800Hz) detection frequency lower limit (high byte)	Hz(BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
6805B2	Acceptable AI short protocol tone (800Hz) detection frequency lower limit (low byte)		
6805B3	Detection time for 800 Hz AI short protocol tone	20 ms	Factory setting: 360 ms
6805B4	PSTN: Tx level from the modem	-N – 3 dBm	SP2-103-002 (parameter 01).

6805B5	PSTN: 1100 Hz tone transmission level	- N 6805B4 - 0.5N 6805B5 –3.5 (dB) See Note 7.	
6805B6	PSTN: 2100 Hz tone transmission level	- N6805B4 - 0.5N 6805B6 –3 (dB) See Note 7.	
6805B7	PABX: Tx level from the modem	- dBm	
6805B8	PABX: 1100 Hz tone transmission level	- N 6805B7 - 0.5N 6805B8 (dB)	
6805B9	PABX: 2100 Hz tone transmission level	- N 6805B7 - 0.5N 6805B9 (dB)	
6805BD	Modem turn-on level (incoming signal detection level)	-37-0.5N (dBm)	
6805BE to 6805C6	**Not used**	-	Do not change the settings.
6805C7	Bits 0 to 3 – **Not used** Bit 4 = V.34 protocol dump 0: Simple, 1: Detailed (default) Bits 5 to 7 – **Not used.**		
6805C8 to 6805D9	**Not used**	-	Do not change the settings.
6805DA	T.30 T1 timer	1 s	
6805E0 bit 3	Maximum wait time for post message	0: 12 s 1: 30 s	1: Maximum wait time for post message (EOP/EOM/MPS) can be changed to 30 s. Change this bit to “1” if communication errors occur frequently during V.17 reception.
6805E3	Voltage setting to detect off-hook	0: Auto	Do not change these

<table>
<tr><td rowspan="9"></td><td colspan="5">for voltage/DP detection for an externally connected line.</td><td colspan="2">1: Fixed V</td><td rowspan="9">settings</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="7">Here is a summary of the fixed voltage settings (1: Fixed) for an externally connected line.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit 7</td><td>Bit 6</td><td>Bit 5</td><td>Bit 4</td><td colspan="3">-</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td colspan="3">Not used</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td colspan="3">2.75 V</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td colspan="3">5.5 V</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td colspan="3">22 V</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td colspan="3">41.25 V</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">6805E4</td><td colspan="3" rowspan="4">Bit 1 sets the level of the call signal, Bit 3 sets the call signal impedance</td><td rowspan="2">Bit 1</td><td>0</td><td>RT=0 (Low)</td><td rowspan="4">-</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>RT=1 (High)</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Bit 3</td><td>0</td><td>RZ=0 (High)</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>RZ=1 (Composite)</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="10">6805E5</td><td colspan="3" rowspan="3">Bit 0 sets the ring detection method, Bit 1 sets the ring detection method when fixed.</td><td rowspan="2">Bit 0</td><td>0</td><td>Auto</td><td rowspan="10">If any setting is changed, select a setting that is higher than the default setting.</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>Fixed</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Bit 1</td><td>0</td><td>Use RDTP</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>Use RDTN</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="6">Here is a summary of the voltages for the detection of off-hook for DP detection.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit 7</td><td>Bit 6</td><td>Bit 5</td><td>Bit 4</td><td colspan="2">-</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td colspan="2">Not used</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td colspan="2">2.75 V</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td colspan="2">5.5 V</td></tr>
</table>

	1	0	0	0	22 V	
	1	1	1	1	41.25 V	

NOTES

1. If a setting is not required, store FF in the address.
2. Italy and Belgium only

   RAM address 68055E: the lower four bits have the following meaning.

   Bit 2 - 1: International dial tone cadence detection enabled (Belgium)

   Bit 1 - Not used

   Bit 0 - 1: PSTN dial tone cadence detection enabled (Italy)

   If bit 0 or bit 2 is set to 1, the functions of the following RAM addresses are changed.

   680508 (if bit 0 = 1) or 680538 (if bit 2 = 1): tolerance for on or off state duration (%), and number of cycles required for detection, coded as in address 680533.

   68050B (if bit 0 = 1) or 68053B (if bit 2 = 1): on time, hex code (unit = 20 ms)

   68050C (if bit 0 = 1) or 68053C (if bit 2 = 1): off time, hex code (unit = 20 ms)
3. Pulse dial parameters (addresses 68054A to 68054F) are the values for 10 pps. If 20 pps is used, the machine automatically compensates.
4. The first ring may not be detected until 1 to 2.5 wavelengths after the time specified by this parameter.
5. The calculated level must be between 0 and 10.

   The attenuation levels calculated from RAM data are:

   High frequency tone:

   - $-0.5 \times N_{680552/680554} - 3.5$ dBm
   - $-0.5 \times N_{680555}$ dBm

   Low frequency tone:

   - $-0.5 \times (N_{680552/680554} + N_{680553}) - 3.5$ dBm
   - $-0.5 \times (N_{680555} + N_{680553})$ dBm

   Note

   - N_{680552}, for example, means the value stored in address 680552(H)
6. 68054A: Europe - Between Ds opening and Di opening, France - Between Ds closing and Di opening

   68054D: Europe - Between Ds closing and Di closing, France - Between Ds opening and Di closing
7. Tone signals which frequency is lower than 1500Hz (e.g., 800Hz tone for AI short

protocol) refer to the setting at 6805B5h. Tones which frequency is higher than 1500Hz refer to the setting at 6805B6h.

8. 68054A, 68054D, 68054E: The actual inter-digit pause (pulse dial mode) is the sum of the period specified by the RAM addresses 68054A, 68054D, and 68054E.

4.5 DEDICATED TRANSMISSION PARAMETERS

There are two sets of transmission parameters: Fax and E-mail
Each Quick Dial Key and Speed Dial Code has eight bytes of programmable parameters allocated to it. If transmissions to a particular machine often experience problems, store that terminal's fax number as a Quick Dial or Speed Dial, and adjust the parameters allocated to that number.
The programming procedure will be explained first. Then, the eight bytes will be described.

4.5.1 PROGRAMMING PROCEDURE

1. Set the bit 0 of System Bit Switch 00 to 1.
2. Enter Address Book Management mode ([User Tools]> System Settings> Key Operator> Address Book Management).
3. Select the address book that you want to program.
4. For the fax parameter, select "Fax Dest.", for the E-mail parameter, select "E-mail", then press "Start". Make sure that the LED of the Start button lights green.
5. The settings for the switch 00 are now displayed. Press the bit number that you wish to change.
6. To scroll through the parameter switches, either:
7. Select the next switch: press "Next" or Select the previous switch: "Prev." until the correct switch is displayed. Then go back to step 6.
8. After the setting is changed, press "OK".
9. After finishing, reset bit 0 of System Bit Switch 00 to 0.

4.5.2 PARAMETERS

Fax Parameters

The initial settings of the following fax parameters are all FF(H) - all the parameters are disabled.

Switch 00
FUNCTION AND COMMENTS
ITU-T T1 time (for PSTN G3 mode) If the connection time to a particular terminal is longer than the NCU parameter setting,

adjust this byte. The T1 time is the value stored in this byte (in hex code), multiplied by 1 second.

Range:

0 to 120 s (00h to 78h)

FFh - The local NCU parameter factory setting is used.

Do not program a value between 79h and FEh.

Switch 01

No	FUNCTION						COMMENTS
0-4	Tx level						If communication with a particular remote terminal often contains errors, the signal level may be inappropriate. Adjust the Tx level for communications with that terminal until the results are better. If the setting is “Disabled”, the NCU parameter 01 setting is used. Note ▪ Do not use settings other than listed on the left.
	Bit4	Bit3	Bit2	Bit1	Bit0		
	0	0	0	0	0	0	
	0	0	0	0	1	–1	
	0	0	0	1	0	–2	
	0	0	0	1	1	–3	
	0	0	1	0	0	–4	
	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	
	0	1	1	1	1	–15	
	1	1	1	1	1	Disabled	

5-7	Cable equalizer Bit 7: 0, Bit 6: 0, Bit 5: 0 = None Bit 7: 0, Bit 6: 0, Bit 5: 1 = Low Bit 7: 0, Bit 6: 1, Bit 5: 0 = Medium Bit 7: 0, Bit 6: 1, Bit 5: 1 = High Bit 7: 1, Bit 6: 1, Bit 5: 1 = Disabled	Use a higher setting if there is signal loss at higher frequencies because of the length of wire between the modem and the telephone exchange when calling the number stored in this Quick/Speed Dial. Also, try using the cable equalizer if one or more of the following symptoms occurs. Communication error with error codes such as 0-20, 0-23, etc. Modem rate fallback occurs frequently. Note ▪ Do not use settings other than listed on the left. If the setting is “Disabled”, the bit switch setting is used.

Switch 02

No	FUNCTION					COMMENTS
0-3	Initial Tx modem rate					If training with a particular remote terminal always takes too long, the initial modem rate may be too high. Reduce the initial Tx modem rate using these bits. For the settings 14.4 or kbps slower, Switch 04 bit 4 must be changed to 0. Note ▪ Do not use settings other than listed on the left. If the setting is “Disabled”, the bit switch setting is used.
	Bit3	Bit2	Bit1	Bit0	bps	
	0	0	0	0	Not used	
	0	0	0	1	2400	
	0	0	1	0	4800	
	0	0	1	1	7200	
	0	1	0	0	9600	
	0	1	0	1	12000	

	0	1	1	0	14400	
	0	1	1	1	16800	
	1	0	0	0	19200	
	1	0	0	1	21600	
	1	0	1	0	24000	
	1	0	1	1	26400	
	1	1	0	0	28800	
	1	1	0	1	31200	
	1	1	1	0	33600	
	1	1	1	1	Disabled	
	Other settings: **Not used**					
4-7	**Not used**					Do not change the settings.

Switch 03		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0-1	Inch-mm conversion before tx Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 0 = Inch-mm conversion available Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 1 = Inch only Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 0 = Not used Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 1 = Disabled	The machine uses inch-based resolutions for scanning. If “inch only” is selected, the printed copy may be slightly distorted at the other end if that machine uses mm-based resolutions. If the setting is “Disabled”, the bit switch setting is used.
2-3	DIS/NSF detection method Bit 3: 0, Bit 2: 0 = First DIS or NSF Bit 3: 0, Bit 2: 1 = Second DIS or NSF	(0, 1): Use this setting if echoes on the line are interfering with the set-up protocol at the start of transmission. The machine will then wait for the second DIS or NSF before sending DCS or NSS. If the setting is “Disabled”, the bit switch setting is

	Bit 3: 1, Bit 2: 0 = Not used Bit 3: 1, Bit 2: 1 = Disabled	used.
4	V.8 protocol 0: Off 1: Disabled	If transmissions to a specific destination always end at a lower modem rate (14,400 bps or lower), disable V.8 protocol so as not to use V.34 protocol. 0: V.34 communication will not be possible. If the setting is “Disabled”, the bit switch setting is used.
5	Compression modes available in transmit mode 0: MH only 1: Disabled	This bit determines the capabilities that are informed to the other terminal during transmission. If the setting is “Disabled”, the bit switch setting is used.
6-7	ECM during transmission Bit 7: 0, Bit 6: 0 = Off Bit 7: 0, Bit 6: 1 = On Bit 7: 1, Bit 6: 0 = Not used Bit 7: 1, Bit 6: 1 = Disabled	For example, if ECM is switched on but is not wanted when sending to a particular terminal, use the (0, 0) setting. Note ▪ V.8/V.34 protocol and JBIG compression are automatically disabled if ECM is disabled. ▪ If the setting is “Disabled”, the bit switch setting is used.

Switch 04 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Switch 05 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Switch 06 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Switch 07 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Switch 08 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Switch 09 - Not used (do not change the settings)

E-mail Parameters

The initial settings of the following e-mail parameters are all "0" (all parameters disabled).

Switch 00		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	MH Compression mode for e-mail attachments **0**: Off 1: On	Switches MH compression on and off for files attached to e-mails for sending.
1	MR Compression mode for e-mail attachments **0**: Off 1: On	Switches MR compression on and off for files attached to e-mails for sending.
2	MMR Compression mode for e-mail attachments **0**: Off 1: On	Switches MMR compression on and off for files attached to e-mails for sending.
3-6	**Not used**	Do not change these settings.
7	Designates the bits to reference for compression method of e-mail attachments **0**: Registered (Bit 0 to 6) 1: No registration.	The "0" selection (default) references the settings for Bits 00, 01, 02 above. The "1" selection ignores the selections of Bits 00, 01, 02.

Switch 01		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	Original width of e-mail attachment: A4 **0**: Off 1: On	Sets the original width of the e-mail attachment as A4.
1	Original width of e-mail attachment: B4 **0**: Off 1: On	Sets the original width of the e-mail attachment as B4.
2	Original width of e-mail attachment: A3 **0**: Off 1: On	Sets the original width of the e-mail attachment as A3.
3-6	**Not used**	Do not change these settings.
7	Designates the bits to reference for original size of e-mail attachments **0**: Registered (Bit 0 to 6) 1: No registration.	The "0" selection (default) references the settings for Bits 00, 01, 02 above. The "1" selection ignores the selections of Bits 00, 01, 02.

Switch 02		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	Line resolution of e-mail attachment: 200 x 100 **0**: Off 1: On	Sets the line resolution of the e-mail attachment as 200 x100.
1	Line resolution of e-mail attachment: 200 x 200 **0**: Off 1: On	Sets the line resolution of the e-mail attachment as 200 x 200.
2	Line resolution of e-mail attachment: 200 x 400 **0**: Off 1: On	Sets the line resolution of the e-mail attachment as 200 x 400.
3	Not used	Do not change these settings.
4	Line resolution of e-mail attachment: 400 x 400 **0**: Off 1: On	Sets the line resolution of the e-mail attachment as 400 x 400.
5-6	**Not used**	Do not change these settings.
7	Designates the bits to reference for original size of e-mail attachments **0**: Registered (Bit 0 to 6) 1: No registration.	The "0" selection (default) references the settings for Bits 00, 01, 02, 04 above. The "1" selection ignores the selections of Bits 00, 01, 02, 04.

Switch 03 - Not used (do not change the settings)

Switch 04		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	Full mode address selection 0: Full mode address 1: No full mode (simple mode)	If the other ends have the addresses, which have the full mode function flag ("0"), this machine determines them as full mode standard machines. ▪ This machine attaches the "demand of reception confirmation" to a message when transmitting. ▪ This machine updates the reception capability to the address book when receiving.
1-7	**Not used**	Do not change these settings.

Switch 05		
No	**FUNCTION**	**COMMENTS**
0	Directr transmission selection to SMTP server 0: ON 1: OFF	Allows or does not allow the direct transmission to SMTP server.
1-7	Not used	Do not change these settings.

Switch 06 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Switch 07 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Switch 08 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Switch 09 - Not used (do not change the settings)

4.6 SERVICE RAM ADDRESSES

⚠CAUTION

- Do not change the settings which are marked as “Not used” or “Read only.”

680001 to 680004(H) - ROM version (Read only)

680001(H) - Revision number (BCD)

680002(H) - Year (BCD)

680003(H) - Month (BCD)

680004(H) - Day (BCD)

680006 to 680015(H) - Machine’s serial number (16 digits - ASCII)

680018(H) - Total program checksum (low)

680019(H) - Total program checksum (high)

680020 to 68003F(H) - System bit switches

680050 to 68005F(H) - Printer bit switches

680060 to 68007F(H) - Communication bit switches

680080 to 68008F(H) - G3 bit switches

680090 to 68009F(H) - G3-2 bit switches: Not used

6800A0 to 6800AF(H) - G3-3 bit switches: Not used

6800D0(H) - User parameter switch 00 (SWUER_00) : Not used

6800D1(H) - User parameter switch 01 (SWUSR_01) : Not used

6800D2(H) - User parameter switch 02 (SWUSR_02)

Bit 0: Forwarding mark printing on forwarded messages 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bit 1: Center mark printing on received copies

(This switch is not printed on the user parameter list.)

0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bit 2: Reception time printing

(This switch is not printed on the user parameter list.)

0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bit 3: TSI print on received messages 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bit 4: Checkered mark printing

(This switch is not printed on the user parameter list.)

0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bit 5: Not used

Bit 6: Not used

Bit 7: Not used

6800D3(H) - User parameter switch 03 (SWUSR_03: Automatic report printout)

Bit 0: Transmission result report (memory transmissions) 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 1: Not used

Bit 2: Memory storage report 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 3: Polling reserve report (polling reception) 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 4: Polling result report (polling reception) 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 5: Transmission result report (immediate transmissions) 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 6: Not used

Bit 7: Journal 0: Off, 1: On

6800D4(H) - User parameter switch 04 (SWUSR_04: Automatic report printout)

Bit 0: Not used

Bit 1: Automatic communication failure report and transfer result report output 0: Off, 1: On

Bits 2 to 3: Not used

Bit 4: Indicates the parties 0: Not indicated, 1: Indicated

Bit 5: Include sender's name on reports 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 6: Not used

Bit 7: Inclusion of a sample image on reports 0: Off, 1: On

6800D5(H) - User parameter switch 05 (SWUSR_05)

Bit 0: Substitute reception when the base copier is in an SC condition

0: Enabled, 1: Disabled

Bits 1 and 2: Condition for substitute rx when the machine cannot print messages (Paper end, toner end, jam, and during night mode)

Bit 2: 0, Bit 1: 0 = The machine receives all the fax messages.

Bit 2: 0, Bit 1: 1 = The machine receives the fax messages with RTI or CSI.

Bit 2: 1, Bit 1: 0 = The machine receives the fax messages with the same ID code.

Bit 2: 1, Bit 1: 1 = The machine does not receive anything.

Bit 3: Not used

Bit 4: Not used

Bit 5: Just size printing 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 6: Not used

Bit 7: Add paper display when a cassette is empty 0: Off, 1: On

6800D6(H) - User parameter switch 06 (SWUSR_06): Not used

6800D7(H) - User parameter switch 07 (SWUSR_07)

Bit 0 Ringing 0: Off, 1: On

Bit1: Automatic answering message 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 2: Parallel memory transmission 0: Off, 1: On

Bits 3 and 4: Not used

Bit 5: Remote control 0: Off, 1: On

Bits 6 and 7: Not used

6800D8(H) - User parameter switch 08 (SWUSR_08)

Bits 0 and 1: Not used.

Bit 2: Authorized reception

0: Only faxes from senders whose RTIs/CSIs are specified for this feature are accepted.

1: Only faxes from senders whose RTIs/CSIs are not specified for this feature are accepted.

Bits 3 to 7: Not used.

6800D9(H) - User parameter switch 09 (SWUSR_09): Not used

6800DA(H) - User parameter switch 10 (SWUSR_0A)

Bits 0 to 2: Not used

Bit 3: Page reduction 0: Off, 1: On

Bits 4 and 5: Not used

Bit 6: Use both e-mail notification and printed reports to confirm the transmission results 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 7: Not used

6800DB(H) - User parameter switch 11 (SWUSR_0B)

Bits 0 and 1: Not used

Bit 2: White original detection 0: Off, 1: On (alarm and alert message on the LCD)

Bit 3: Receive rejection for 1300 Hz transmission 0: Off (receive), 1: On (not receive)

Bit 5: Not used

Bit 6: Printout of messages received while acting as a forwarding station 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 7: Not used

6800DC(H) - User parameter switch 12 (SWUSR_0C): Not used

6800DD(H) - User parameter switch 13 (SWUSR_0D): Not used

6800DE(H) - User parameter switch 14 (SWUSR_0E)

Bit 0: Message printout while the machine is in Night Printing mode 0: On, 1: Off

Bit 1: Maximum document length detection 0: Double letter, 1: Longer than double-letter (well log) – up to 1,200 mm

Bit 2: Not used

Bit 3: Fax mode settings, such as resolution, before a mode key (Copy/Fax/Printer/Scanner) is pressed 0: Not cleared, 1: Cleared

Bits 4 to 6: Not used

Bit 7: Not used

6800DF(H) - User parameter switch 15 (SWUSR_0F)

(This switch is not printed on the user parameter list.)

Bits 0, 1 and 2: Cassette for fax printout

Bit 2: 0, Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 1 = 1st paper feed station

Bit 2: 0, Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 0 = 2nd paper feed station

Bit 2: 0, Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 1 = 3rd paper feed station

Bit 2: 1, Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 0 = 4th paper feed station

Bit 2: 1, Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 1 = LCT

Other settings Not used

Bits 3 and 4: Not used

Bit 5: Using the cassette specified by bits 0, 1 and 2 above only 0: On, 1: Off

Bits 6 and 7: Not used

6800E0(H) – User parameter switch 16 (SWUSR_10)

(This switch is not printed on the user parameter list.)

Bits 0 and 1: Not used

Bit 2: Paper size selection priority for an A4 size fax message when A4/LT size paper is not available. 0: A3 has priority, 1: B4 has priority

Bits 3 to 7: Not used

6800E1(H) – User parameter switch 17 (SWUSR_11)

Bit 0: Not used

Bit 1: Not used

Bit 2: Inclusion of the “Add” button when a sequence of Quick/Speed dials is selected for broadcasting 0:Not needed, 1: Needed

Bits 3 to 6: Not used

Bit 7: Press “Start” key without an original when using the on hook dial or the external telephone,

0: displays “Cannot detect original size”. 1: Receives fax messages.

6800E2(H) - User parameter switch 18 (SWUSR_12)

Bit 0: TTI date 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 1: TTI sender 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 2: TTI file number 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 3: TTI page number 0: Off, 1: On

Bits 4 to 6: Not used

Bit 7: Japan only

6800E3(H) - User parameter switch 19 (SWUSR_13)

Bit 0: Not used

Bit 1: Journal format

0: The Journal is separated into transmissions and receptions

1: The Journal is separated into G3-1, G3-2, and G3-3 communications

Bit 2: Not used

Bit 3: 90° image rotation during B5 portrait Tx (This switch is not printed on the user parameter list.) 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 4: Reduction of sample images on reports to 50% in the main scan and sub-scan directions. (This switch is not printed on the user parameter list.) 0: Technician adjustment (printer switch 0E bits 3 and 4), 1: 50% reduction

Bit 5: Use of A5 size paper for reports (This switch is not printed on the user parameter list.) 0: Off, 1: On

Bits 6 and 7: Not used

6800E4(H) - User parameter switch 20 (SWUSR_14)

Bit 0: Automatic printing of the LAN fax result report 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 1: Not used.

Bits 2 to 5: Store documents in memory which could not be printed from PC fax (LAN fax) driver

Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Setting
0	0	0	0	0 min.
0	0	0	1	1 min.
↓	↓	↓	↓	↓
1	1	1	0	14 min.
1	1	1	1	15 min.

Bits 6 and 7: Not used.

6800E5(H) - User parameter switch 21 (SWUSR_15)

Bit 0: Print results of sending reception notice request message 0: Disabled (print only when error occurs), 1: Enabled

Bit 1: Respond to e-mail reception acknowledgment request 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bit 2: Not used

Bit 3: File format for forwarded folders 0: TIFF, 1:PDF

Bit 4: Transmit Journal by E-mail 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bit 5: Not used

Bit 6: Network error display 0: Displayed, 1: Not displayed

Bit 7: Transmit error mail notification 0: Enabled, 1: Disabled

6800E6(H) - User parameter switch 22 (SWUSR_16)

(This switch is not printed on the user parameter list.)

Bit 0: Dial tone detection (PSTN 1) 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bits 1 to 7: Not used

6800E7(H) – User parameter switch 23 (SWUSR_17): Not used

6800E8(H) - User parameter switch 24 (SWUSR_18): Not used

6800E9(H) - User parameter switch 25 (SWUSR_19)

Bit 0: Not used

Bit 1: Reception mode switch timer 0: Off, 1: On (switching Fax or Fax/Tel)

Bit 2: Mode priority switch 0: Fax first, 1: Tel first

Bit 3: Dial in function (Japan Only)

Bit 4: RDS operation 0: Not acceptable, 1: Acceptable for the limit specified by system switch 03

Note

- This bit is only effective when RDS operation can be selected by the user (see system switch 02).

Bits 5 to 7: Not used

6800EA(H) and 6800EB(H) - User parameter switches 26 and 27 (SWUSR_1A and 1B): Not used

6800EC(H) - User parameter switch 28(SWUSR_1C)

Xxxxx

6800ED(H) - User parameter switch 29(SWUSR_1D)

xxxxxx

6800EE(H) and 6800EF(H) - User parameter switches 30 and 31 (SWUSR_1E and 1F): Not used

6800F0(H) - User parameter switch 32 (SWUSR_20)

Bit 0: Quotation priority for a destination when there is no destination of the specified type 0: Paper output priority = Priority order: 1. IP-fax destination, 2. Fax Number, 3. E-mail address, 4. Folder

1: Electric putout order = Priority order: 1. E-mail address, 2. Folder, 3. IP-fax destination, 4. Fax number

Bits 1 to 7: Not used

6800F1(H) - User parameter switch 33 (SWUSR_21): Not used

6800F2(H) - User parameter switch 34 (SWUSR_22)

Bit 0: Gatekeeper server used with IP-Fax 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Service RAM Addresses

Bit 1: SIP server used with IP-Fax 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bits 2 to 7: Not used

680100 to 68010F(H) - G4 Parameter Switches – Not used

680110 to 68012F(H) - G4 Internal Switches – Not used

680130 to 68016F(H) - Service Switches

680170 to 68017F(H) - IFAX Switches

680180 to 68018F(H) - IP-FAX Switches

680190 to 6801AF(H) - Service station's fax number (SP3-101)

6801B0 to 6801B9(H) - Own fax PABX extension number

6801BA to 6801C3(H) - Own fax number (PSTN) – Not used

6801C4 to 6801D7(H) - Own fax number (ISDN G4) – Not used

6801D8 to 6801E3(H) - The first subscriber number (ISDN G3) – Not used

6801E4 to 6801EF(H) - The second subscriber number (ISDN G3) – Not used

6801F0 to 6801FB(H) - The first subscriber number (ISDN G4) – Not used

6801FC to 680207(H) - The second subscriber number (ISDN G4) – Not used

680208 to 68021B(H) - PSTN-1 RTI (Max. 20 characters - ASCII) - See the following note.

68021C to 68022F(H) - PSTN-2 RTI (Max. 20 characters - ASCII) - Not used

680230 to 680246(H) - PSTN-3 RTI (Max. 20 characters - ASCII) - Not used

680247 to 680286(H) - TTI 1 (Max. 64 characters - ASCII) - See the following note.

680287 to 6802C6(H) - TTI 2 (Max. 64 characters - ASCII) - Not used

6802C7 to 680306(H) - TTI 3 (Max. 64 characters - ASCII) - Not used

680307 to 68031A(H) - PSTN-1 CSI (Max. 20 characters - ASCII)

68031B to 68032E(H) - PSTN-2 CSI (Max.20 characters - ASCII) - Not used

68032F to 680342(H) - PSTN-3 CSI (Max.20 characters - ASCII) - Not used

680343(H) - Number of PSTN-1 CSI characters (Hex)

680344(H) - Number of PSTN-2 CSI characters (Hex) - Not used

680345(H) Number of PSTN-3 CSI characters (Hex) - Not used

- If the number of characters is less than the maximum (20 for RTI, 64 for TTI), add a stop code (00[H]) after the last character.

680380 to 680387(H) - Last power off time (Read only)

680380(H) - 01(H) - 24-hour clock, 00(H) - 12-hour clock (AM), 02(H) - 12-hour clock (PM)

680381(H) - Year (BCD)

680382(H) - Month (BCD)

680383(H) - Day (BCD)

680384(H) – Hour

680385(H) – Minute

680386(H) – Second

680387(H) - 00: Monday, 01: Tuesday, 02: Wednesday, /// , 06: Sunday

680394(H) - Optional equipment (Read only – Do not change the settings)

Bit 0: Page Memory 0: Not installed, 1: Installed

Bit 1: SAF Memory 0: Not installed, 1: Installed

Bits 2 to 7; Not used

680395(H) - Optional equipment (Read only – Do not change the settings)

Bits 0 to 3: Not used

Bit 4: G3-2 0: Not installed, 1: Installed

Bit 5: G3-3 0: Not installed, 1: Installed

Bit 6 and 7: Not used

680406 to 68040A – Option G3 board (G3-2) ROM information (Read only)

680406(H) - Suffix (BCD)

680407(H) - Version (BCD)

680408(H) - Year (BCD)

680409(H) - Month (BCD)

68040A(H) - Day (BCD)

68040B to 68040F – Option G3 board (G3-3) ROM information (Read only)

68040B(H) - Suffix (BCD)

68040C(H) - Version (BCD)

68040D(H) - Year (BCD)

68040E(H) - Month (BCD)

68040F(H) - Day (BCD)

680410(H) - G3-1 Modem ROM version (Read only)

680412(H) - G3-2 Modem ROM version (Read only)

680414(H) - G3-3 Modem ROM version (Read only)

680420(H) - Number of multiple sets print (Read only)

680476(H) - Time for economy transmission (hour in 24h clock format - BCD)

680477(H) - Time for economy transmission (minute - BCD)

680492(H) - Transmission monitor volume 00 - 07(H)

680493(H) - Reception monitor volume 00 - 07(H)

680494(H) - On-hook monitor volume 00 - 07(H)

680495(H) - Dialing monitor volume 00 - 07(H)

680496(H) - Buzzer volume 00 - 07(H)

680497(H) - Beeper volume 00 - 07(H)

6804A8(H) - Machine code (Check ram 4)

688E8E to 68918D(H) - SIP server address (Read only)

688E8E(H) - Proxy server - Main (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)

688F0E(H) - Proxy server - Sub (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)

688F8E(H) - Redirect server - Main (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)

68900E(H) - Redirect server - Sub (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)

68908E(H) - Registrar server - Main (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)

68910E(H) - Registrar server - Sub (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)

68918E(H) - Gatekeeper server address - Main (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)

68920E(H) - Gatekeeper server address - Sub (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)

68928E(H) - Arias Number (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)

68930E(H) - SIP user name (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)

68938E(H) - SIP digest authentication password (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)

68940E(H) - Gateway address information (Max. 7100 characters - ASCII)

68AFCA(H) - Stand-by port number for H.232 connection

68AFCCH) - Stand-by port number for SIP connection

68AFCE(H) - RAS port number

68AFD0(H) - Gatekeeper port number

68AFD2(H) - Port number of data waiting for T.38

68AFD4(H) - Port number of SIP server

68AFD6(H) - Priority for SIP and H.323 0: H.323, 1: SIP

68AFD7(H) - SIP function 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

68AFD8(H) - H.323 function 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

68AFD9(H) - SIP digest authentication function 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

68AFDA(H) - IP-Fax backup data 00 - 600 (H)

⟹ **69ECBE(H) - 69ECDE(H) - IMPORTANT: <u>Do not change the values</u>** of these RAM addresses. They are not for use in the field.

⟹ **6BEBFE(H**) – **IMPORTANT: <u>Do not change the values</u>** of these RAM addresses. They are not for use in the field.

⟹ **6BEBFF(H)** – **IMPORTANT: <u>Do not change the values</u>** of these RAM addresses. They are not for use in the field.

⟹ **6BEC00(H)** – **IMPORTANT: <u>Do not change the values</u>** of these RAM addresses. They are not for use in the field.

⟹ **6BEC01(H)** – **IMPORTANT: <u>Do not change the values</u>** of these RAM addresses. They are not for use in the field.

⇒**6BEC02(H)** – **IMPORTANT: Do not change the values** of these RAM addresses. They are not for use in the field.

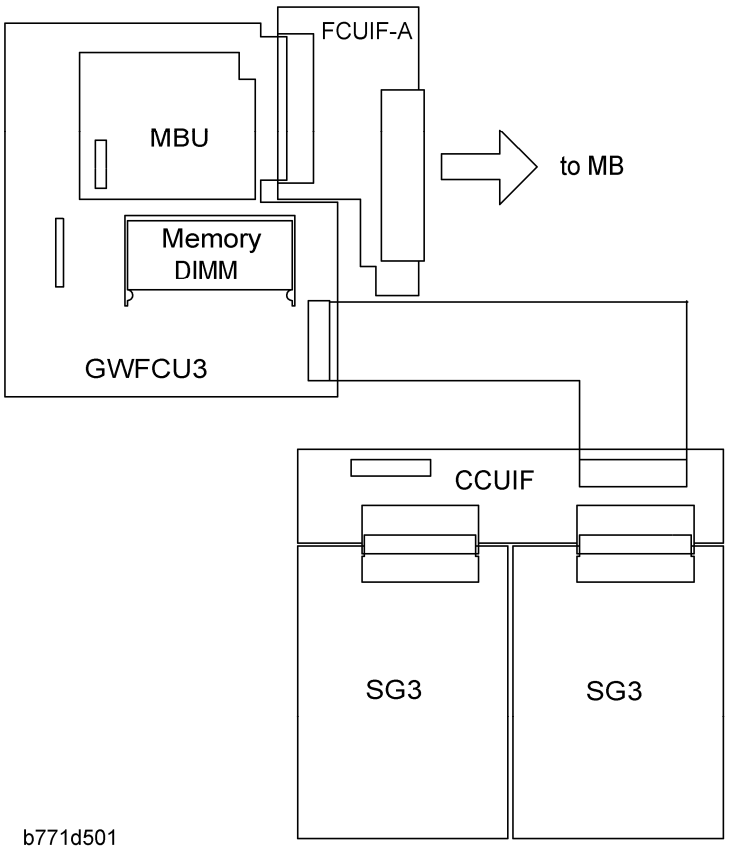
⇒**6BEC03 to 6BEC04** – **IMPORTANT: Do not change the values** of these RAM addresses. They are not for use in the field.

⇒**6BEC05(H)** – **IMPORTANT: Do not change the values** of these RAM addresses. They are not for use in the field.

⇒**6BEC06(H)** – **IMPORTANT: Do not change the values** of these RAM addresses. They are not for use in the field.

5. DETAILED SECTION DESCRIPTIONS

5.1 OVERVIEW



The basic fax unit consists of two PCBs: an FCU and an MBU.

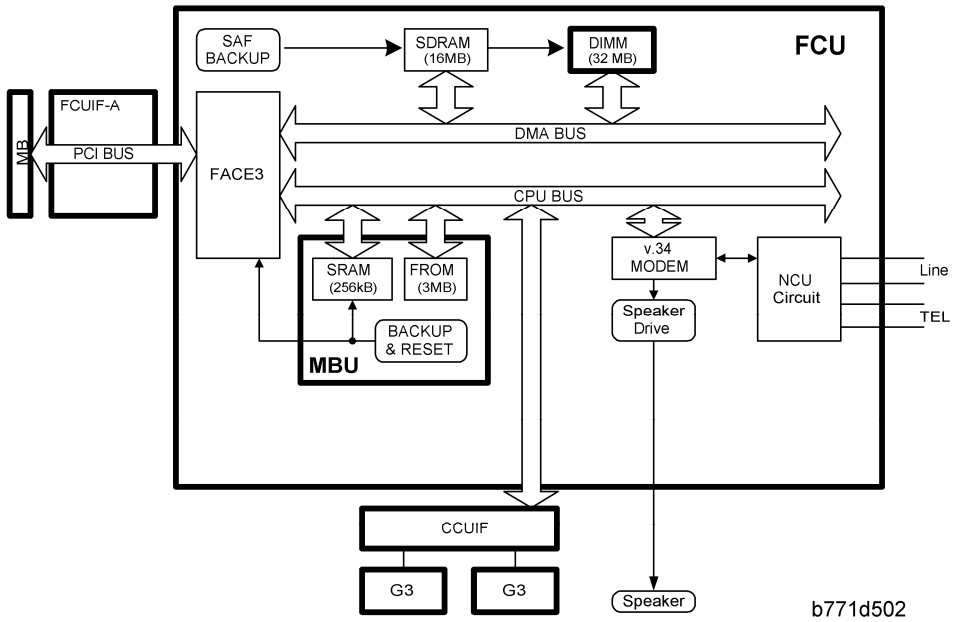
The FCU controls all the fax communications and fax features, in cooperation with the controller board. The MBU contains the ROM and SRAM. Also, the FCU has an NCU circuit.

Fax Options:

1. Extra G3 Interface option: This provides one more analog line interface. This allows full dual access. Two extra G3 interface options can be installed.
2. Memory Expansion: This expands the SAF memory and the page memory (used for image rotation); without this expansion, the page memory is not big enough for image rotation at 400 dpi, so transmission at 400 dpi is not possible.

5.2 BOARDS

5.2.1 FCU



The FCU (Facsimile Control Unit) controls fax communications, the video interface to the base copier's engine, and all the fax options.

FACE3 (Fax Application Control Engine)

- CPU
- Data compression and reconstruction (DCR)
- DMA control
- Clock generation
- DRAM backup control

Modem (FAME)

- V.34, V33, V17, V.29, V.27ter, V.21, and V.8

DRAM

- The 16 MB of DRAM is shared as follows.
  SAF memory: 4MB
  Working memory: 8MB
  Page memory: 4MB

Boards

- The SAF memory is backed up by a rechargeable battery.

Memory Back-up

- A Rechargeable battery backs up the SAF memory (DRAM) for 1 hour.

5.2.2 MBU

On this board, the flash ROM contains the FCU firmware, and the SRAM contains the system data and user parameters. Even if the FCU is changed, the system data and user parameters are kept on the MBU board.

ROM

- 3MB flash ROMs for system software storage
  2MB (16bit x 1MB) + 1MB (16bit x 512K)

SRAM

- The 256KB SRAM for system and user parameter storage is backed up by a lithium battery.

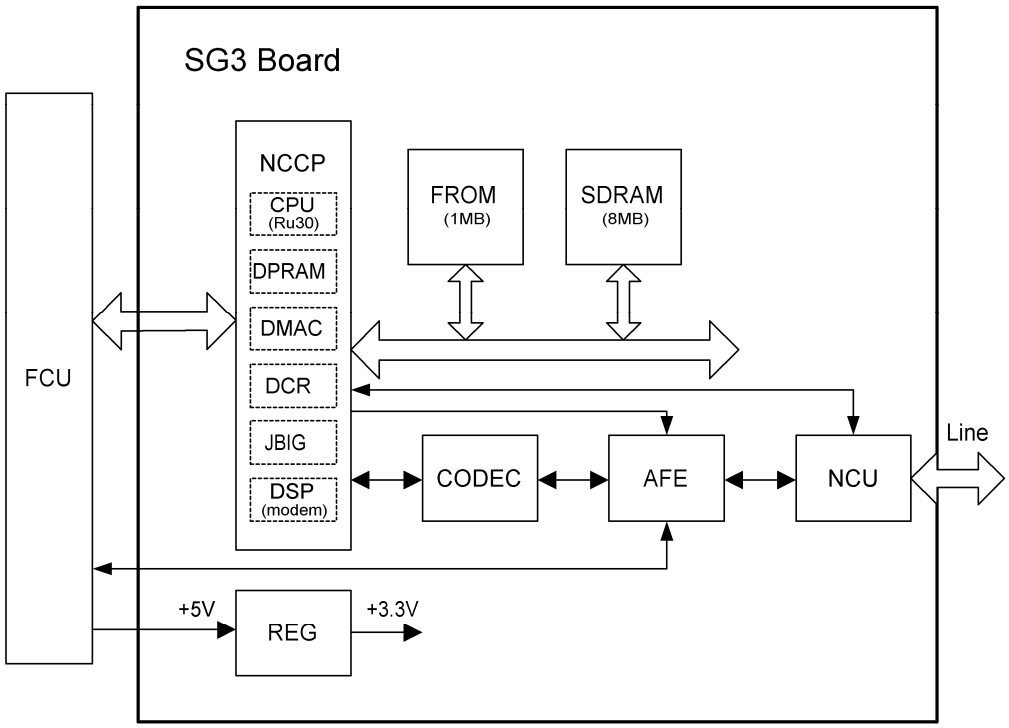
Memory Back-up

- A lithium battery backs up the system parameters and programmed items in the SRAM, in case the base copier's main switch is turned off.

Switches

Item	Description
SW1	Switches the SRAM backup battery on/off.

5.2.3 SG3 BOARD



The SG3 board allows up to three simultaneous communications when used in combination with the FCU and optional G3 boards. The NCU is on the same board as the common SG-3 board. This makes the total board structure smaller. But, the specifications of the SG3 board do not change.

NCCP (New Communication Control Processor)

- Controls the SG3 board.
- CPU (RU30)
- DPRAM (Dual Port RAM): Handshaking with the FCU is done through this block.
- DMA controller
- JBIG
- DSP V34 modem (RL5T892): Includes the DTMF Receiver function
- DCR for MH, MR, MMR, and JBIG compression and decompression

FROM

- 1Mbyte flash ROM for SG3 software storage and modem software storage

SDRAM

- 4Mbyte DRAM shared between ECM buffer, line buffer, and working memory

AFE (Analog Front End)

- Analog processing

CODEC (COder-DECoder)

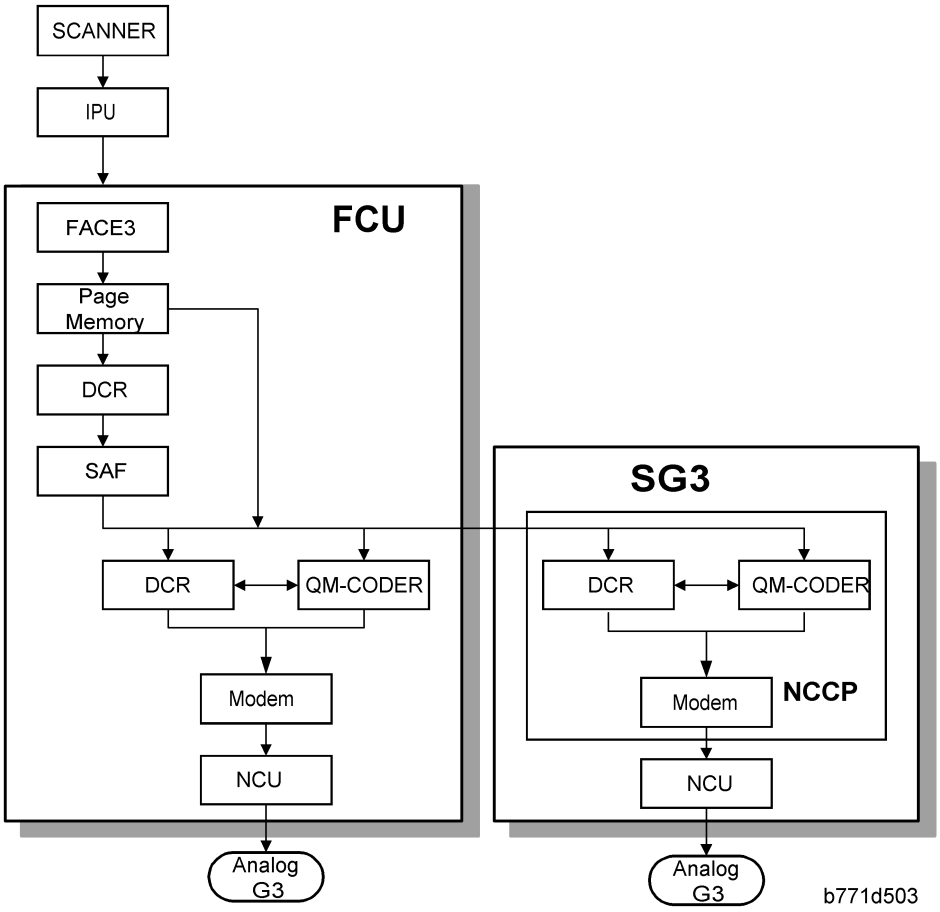
- A/D & D/A conversions for modem

REG

- Generates +3.3 V from the +5V from the FCU

5.3 VIDEO DATA PATH

5.3.1 TRANSMISSION



Memory Transmission and Parallel Memory Transmission

The base copier's scanner scans the original at the selected resolution in inch format. The IPU processes the data and transfers it to the FCU.

Note

- When scanning a fax original, the IPU uses the MTF, independent dot erase and thresholding parameter settings programmed in the fax unit's scanner bit switches, not the copier's SP modes.

Then, the FCU converts the data to mm format, and compresses the data in MMR or raw format to store it in the SAF memory. If image rotation will be done, the image is rotated in page memory before compression.

At the time of transmission, the FCU decompresses the stored data, then re-compresses

and/or reduces the data if necessary for transmission. The NCU transmits the data to the line.

Immediate Transmission

The base copier's scanner scans the original at the resolution agreed with the receiving terminal. The IPU video processes the data and transfers it to the FCU.

Note

- When scanning a fax original, the IPU uses the MTF, independent dot erase and thresholding parameter settings programmed in the fax unit's scanner bit switches, not the copier's SP modes.

Then the FCU stores the data in page memory, and compresses the data for transmission. The NCU transmits the data to the line.

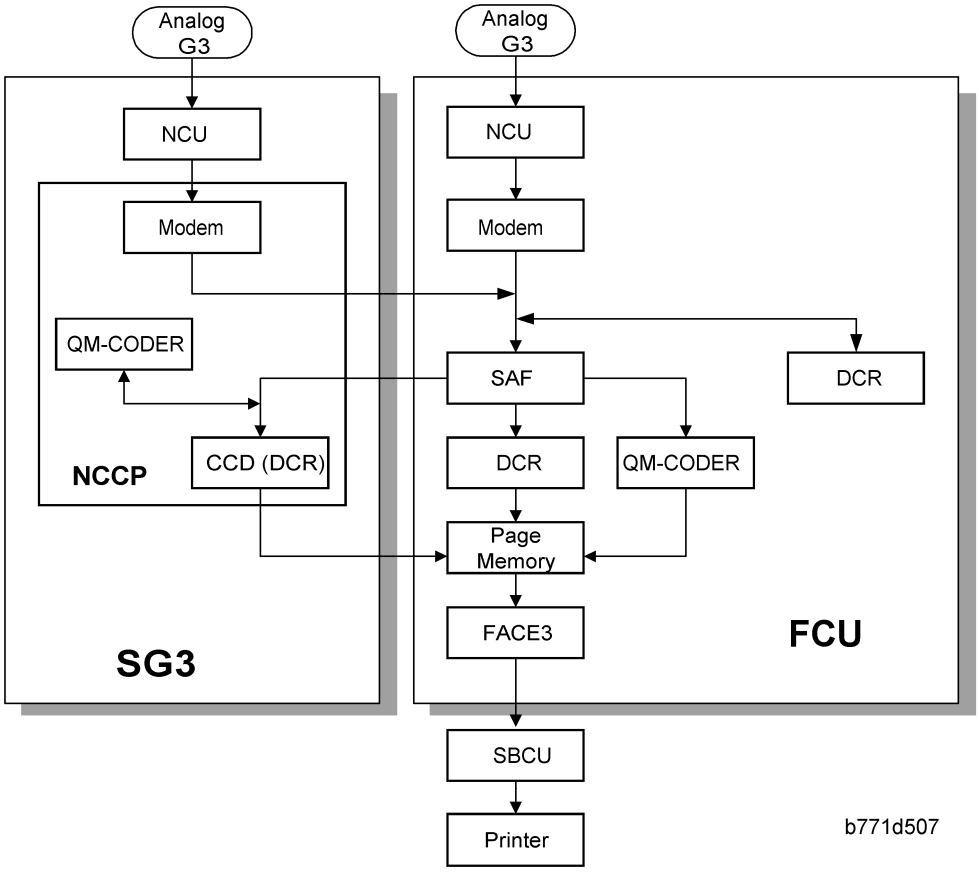
JBIG Transmission

- **Memory transmission:** If the receiver has JBIG compression, the data goes from the DCR to the QM-Coder. Then the NCU transmits the data to the line. When an optional G3 unit (SG3) is installed and PSTN2 is selected as the line type, JBIG compression is available, but only for the PSTN-2 line.
- **Immediate transmission:** If the receiver has JBIG compression, the data goes from the page memory to the QM-Coder. Then the NCU transmits the data to the line. When an optional G3 unit (SG3) is installed and PSTN2 is selected as the line type, JBIG compression is available, but only for the PSTN-2 line.

Adjustments

Priority for the line used for G3 transmissions (PSTN 1/PSTN 2 or 3): System switch 16 bit 1

5.3.2 RECEPTION



First, the FCU stores the incoming data from either an analog line to the SAF memory. (The data goes to the FACE3 at the same time, and is checked for error lines/frames.)
The FCU then decompresses the data and transfers it to page memory. If image rotation will be done, the image is rotated in the page memory. The data is transferred to the IPU.
If the optional G3 unit is installed, the line that the message comes in on depends on the telephone number dialled by the other party (the optional G3 unit has a different telephone number from the main fax board).

JBIG Reception

When data compressed with JBIG comes in on PSTN-1 (the standard analog line), the data is sent to the QM-CODER for decompression. Then the data is stored in the page memory, and transferred to the IPU.
When data compressed with JBIG comes in on PSTN-2 (optional extra analog line), the data is sent to the QM-CODER on the SG3 board for decompression.

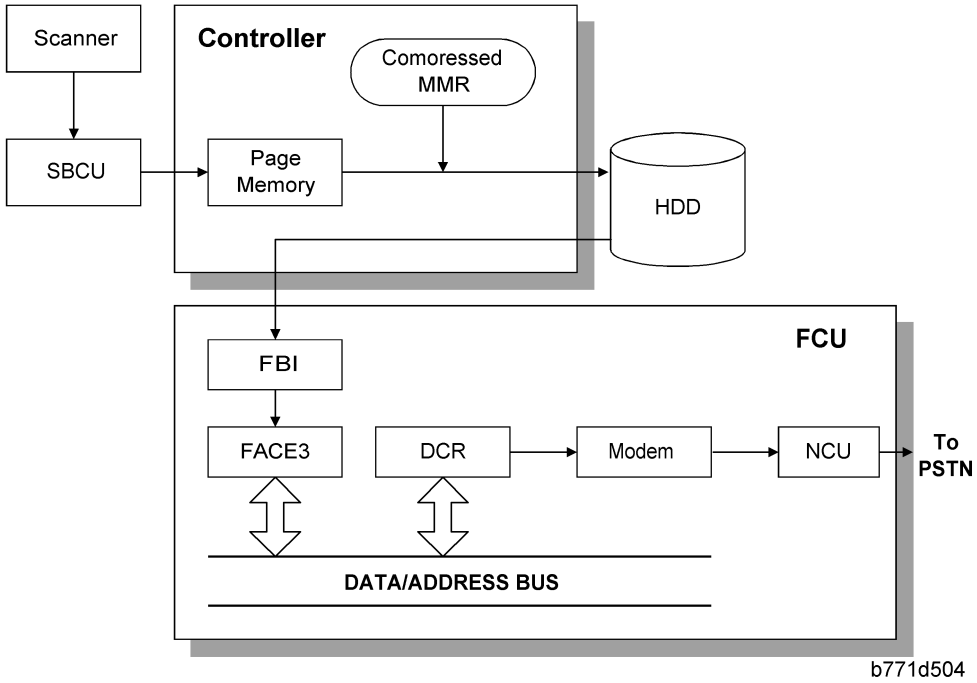
5.4 FAX COMMUNICATION FEATURES

5.4.1 MULTI-PORT

When the optional extra G3 Interface Unit is installed, communication can take place at the same time through the two or three lines at once.

Option	Available Line Type	Available protocol Combinations
Standard only	PSTN	G3
Extra G3 Interface Unit (single)	PSTN + PSTN	G3 + G3
Extra G3 Interface Unit (double)	PSTN + PSTN +PSTN	G3 + G3 +G3

5.4.2 DOCUMENT SERVER



The base copier's scanner scans the original at the selected resolution. The IPU video processes the data and transfers it to the controller board.

Then the controller stores the data in the page memory for the copier function, and compresses the data in MMR (by software) to store it in the HDD. If image rotation will be done, the image is rotated in the page memory before compression.
For transmission, the stored image data is transferred to the FCU. The FCU decompresses the image data, then recompresses and/or reduces the data if necessary for transmission. the NCU transmits the data to the line.
The documents can be stored in the HDD (Document Server) from the fax application. The stored documents in the document sever can be used for the fax transmission in many times. More than one document and the scanned document can be combined into one file and then the file can be transmitted.

- When using the document server, the SAF memory is not used.
- The document is compressed with MMR and stored.
- Up to 9,000 pages can be stored. (1 file: Up to 1,000 pages) from the fax application.
- Only stored documents from the fax application can be transmitted.
- Scanned documents are given a name automatically, such as “FAX001”. But it is possible to change the file name, user name and password.
- Up to 30 files can be selected at once.

Note

- The compression method of the fax application is different from the copy application. The storing time is longer than the copier storing.
- When selecting “Print 1st page”, the stored document will be reduced to A4 size.

5.4.3 INTERNET MAIL COMMUNICATION

Mail Transmission

This machine supports T.37 full mode. (ITU-, RFC232). The difference between T.37 simple mode and full mode is as follows.

Function	T.37 Simple Mode	T.37 Full Mode
Resolution	200 x 100 200 x 200	200 x100 200 x 200 200 x 400 400 x 400 (if available)
RX Paper Width	A4	A4, B4, A3

Fax Communication Features

RX Data Compression Method	MH	MH (default), MR, MMR,
Signals	Image data transmission only	Image data transmission, exchange of capability information between the two terminals, and acknowledgement of receipt of fax messages

Data Formats

The scanned data is converted into a TIFF-F formatted file.

The fields of the e-mail and their contents are as follows:

Field	**Content**
From	Mail address of the sender
Reply To	Destination requested for reply
To	Mail address of the destination
Bcc	Backup mail address
Subject	From CSI or RTI (Fax Message No. xxxx)
Content Type	Multipart/mixed Attached files: image/tiff
Content Transfer Encoding	Base 64, 7-bit, 8-bit, Quoted Printable
Message Body	MIME-converted TIFF-F (MIME standards specify how files are attached to e-mail messages)

Direct SMTP Transmission

Internet Fax documents can be sent directly to their destinations without going through the SMTP server. (Internet Faxes normally transmit via the SMTP server.)
For example:

e-mail address:	gts@ricoh.co.jp
SMTP server address:	gts.abcd.com

In this case this feature destination e-mail address (gts@ricoh.co.jp) is read as the SMTP server address "gts.abcd.com" and the transmissions bypass the SMTP server.

Selectable Options

These options are available for selection:

- With the default settings, the scan resolution can be either standard or detail. Inch-mm conversion before TX depends on IFAX SW01 Bit 7. Detail resolution will be used if Super Fine resolution is selected, unless Fine resolution is enabled with IFAX SW01.
- The requirements for originals (document size, scan width, and memory capacity) are the same as for G3 fax memory TX.
- The default compression is TIFF-F format.
- IFAX SW00: Acceptable paper widths for sending
- IFAX SW09: Maximum number of attempts to the same destination

Secure Internet Transmission

- SMTP Authentication: User Tools> System Settings> File Transfer> SMTP Authentication
- POP Before SMTP: User Tools> System Settings> File Transfer> POP Before SMTP

Mail Reception

This machine supports three types of e-mail reception:

- POP3 (Post Office Protocol Ver. 3.)
- IMAP4 (Internet Messaging Access Protocol)
- SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol)

For details: Core Technology Manual – Facsimile Processes – Faxing from a PC – Internet/LAN Fax Boards – Mail Reception

POP3/IMAP4 Mail Reception Procedure

The machine automatically picks up e-mail from the server at an interval which is adjustable in the range 2 to 1440 min. in 1-minute steps: User Tools> System Settings> File Transfer> E-mail Reception Interval

SMTP Reception

- The IFAX must be registered as an SMTP server in the MX record of the DNS server, and the address of the received mail must specify the IFAX.
- Enable SMTP reception: User Tools> System Settings> File Transfer> Reception Protocol

  Even if the MX record on the DNS server includes the IFAX, mail cannot be received with SMTP until SMTP reception is enabled:

  However, if SMTP reception is selected and the machine is not registered in the MX record of the DNS server, then either IMAP4 or POP3 is used, depending on the setting: User Tools> System Settings> File Transfer> Reception Protocol

Mail Delivery Conditions: Transferring Mail Received With SMTP

1. The machine must be set up for SMTP mail delivery: User Tools> Facsimile Features> E-mail Settings> SMTP RX File Delivery Settings
2. If the user wishes to limit this feature so that the machine will only deliver mail from designated senders, the machine's "Auth. E-mail RX" feature must be set (User Tools> Facsimile Features> E-mail Settings> SMTP RX File Delivery Settings).
3. If the "SMTP RX File Delivery Setting" is set to 0 to prohibit SMTP receiving, and if there is mail designated for delivery, then the machine responds with an error. (User Tools> Facsimile Features> E-mail Settings> SMTP RX File Delivery Settings)
4. If the quick dial, speed dial, or group dial entry is incorrect, the mail transmission is lost, and the IFAX issues an error to the SMTP server and outputs an error report.

Auth. E-mail RX

In order to limit access to mail delivery with IFAX, the addresses of senders must be limited using the Access Limit Entry. Only one entry can be registered.

1. Access Limit Entry

   For example, to limit access to @IFAX.ricoh.co.jp:

gts@IFAX.ricoh.co.jp	Matches and is delivered.

gts@IFAX.abcde.co.jp	Does not match and is not delivered.
IFAX@ricoh.co.jp	Does not match and is not delivered.

2. Conditions
   - The length of the Access Limit Entry is limited to 127 characters.
   - If the Access Limit Entry address and the mail address of the incoming mail do not match, the incoming mail is discarded and not delivered, and the SMTP server responds with an error. However, in this case an error report is not output.
   - If the Access Limit Entry address is not registered, and if the incoming mail specifies a delivery destination, then the mail is delivered unconditionally.

Handling Mail Reception Errors

Abnormal files

When an error of this type occurs, the machine stops receiving and commands the server to erase the message. Then the machine prints an error report and sends information about the error by e-mail to the sender address (specified in the “From” or “Reply-to” field of the message). If there is an incomplete received message in the machine memory, it will be erased.

The machine prints an error message when it fails to send the receive error notification after a certain number of attempts.

The following types of files are judged to be abnormal if one or more of the following are detected:

1. Unsupported MIME headers.
   Supported types of MIME header

Header	Supported Types
Content-Type	Multipart/mixed, text/plain, message/rfc822 Image/tiff
Charset	US-ASCII, ISO 8859 X. Other types cannot be handled, and some garbage may appear in the data.
Content-Transfer-Encoding	Base 64, 7-bit, 8-bit, Quoted Printable

2. MIME decoding errors
3. File format not recognized as TIFF-F format

4. Resolution, document size, or compression type cannot be accepted

Remaining SAF Capacity Error

The machine calls the server but does not receive e-mail if the remaining SAF capacity is less than a certain value (the value depends on IFAX Switch 08. The e-mail will be received when the SAF capacity increases (for example, after substitute reception files have been printed). The error handling method for this type of error is the same as for “Abnormal files”. If the capacity of the SAF memory drops to zero during reception, the machine operates in the same way as when receiving an abnormal file (refer to “Abnormal files” above).

Secure Internet Reception

To enable password encryption and higher level security: User Tools> System Settings> File Transfer> POP3/IMAP4 Settings> Encryption (set to “On”)

Transfer Request: Request By Mail

For details: Core Technology Manual – Facsimile Processes – Faxing from a PC – Internet/LAN Fax Boards – Transfer Request

The fields of the e-mail and their contents are as follows:

Field	Content
From	E-mail address of the requesting terminal
To	Destination address (Transfer Station address)
Bcc	Blind carbon copy
Subject	From TSI (Fax Message No. xxxx)
Content-Type	Multipart/mixed Text/Plain (for a text part), image/tiff (for attached files)
Content-Transfer-Encoding	Base 64, 7-Bit, 8-bit, Quoted Printable
Mail body (text part)	RELAY-ID-: xxxx (xxxx: 4 digits for an ID code) RELAY: #01#*X#**01….
Message body	MIME-converted TIFF-F.

E-Mail Options (Sub TX Mode)

The following features are available as options for mail sending: entering a subject, designating the level of importance, confirming reception of the mail.

Subject and Level of Importance

You can enter a subject message with: Sub TX Mode> E-mail Options

The Subject entry for the mail being sent is limited to 64 characters. The subject can also be prefixed with an “Urgent” or “High” notation.

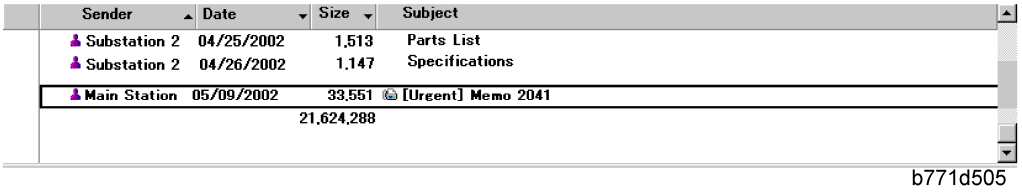
How the Subject Differs According to Mail Type

<table>
<tr><th>Mail Type</th><th>①</th><th colspan="2">②</th><th>③</th></tr>
<tr><td>Subject Entry</td><td>---</td><td colspan="2">Entry Condition</td><td rowspan="5">Fax Message No.
+
File No.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">No Subject Entry</td><td></td><td colspan="2">1. “CSI” (“RTI”)</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>2. “RTI”</td><td>CSI not registered</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>3. “CSI”</td><td>RTI not registered</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>4. None</td><td>CSI, RTI not registered</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">Confirmation of Reception</td><td rowspan="4">From</td><td colspan="2">1. “CSI” (“RTI”)</td><td rowspan="2">Normal:
Return Receipt (dispatched).
You can select “displayed” with IFAX SW02 Bits 2 and 3.</td></tr>
<tr><td>2. “RTI”</td><td>CSI not registered</td></tr>
<tr><td>3. “CSI”</td><td>RTI not registered</td><td rowspan="2">Error:
Return Receipt (processed/error)</td></tr>
<tr><td>4. None</td><td>CSI, RTI not registered</td></tr>
</table>

Mail delivery, memory transfer, SMTP receiving and delivery	From	RTI or CSI of the station designated for delivery	Mail delivery	Fax Message No. + File Number
		RTI or CSI of sender	Mail sending from G3 memory	
		Mail address of sender	Memory sending	
		Mail address of sender	SMTP receiving and delivery (Off Ramp Gateway)	
Mail error notification	---	Error Message No. xxxx From CSI (RTI)		

Items ① ② ③ of the table above are in the Subject.

Subjects Displayed on the PC



b771d505

E-mail Messages

After entering the subject, you can enter a message with:

Sub TX Mode> E-mail Options

An e-mail message (up to 5 lines) can be pre-registered with: User Tools> System Settings> File Transfer> Program/Change/Delete E-mail Message

Limitations on Entries

Item	Maximum
Number of Lines	5 lines

Line Length	80 characters
Name Length	20 characters

Message Disposition Notification (MDN)

For details: Core Technology Manual – Facsimile Processes – Faxing from a PC – Internet/LAN Fax Boards – E-mail Options

The network system administrator can confirm whether a sent mail has been received correctly or not. This function is enabled only when "I-FAX switch 02 Bit 4" is set to "1"This confirmation is done in four steps.

1. Send request for confirmation of mail reception. To enable or disable this request (known as MDN):
2. Sub TX Mode> E-mail Options
3. Mail reception (receive confirmation request)
4. Send confirmation of mail reception
5. Receive confirmation of mail reception

The other party's machine will not respond to the request unless the two conditions below are met:

- The other party's machine must be set up to respond to the confirmation request.
- The other party's machine must support MDN (Message Disposition Notification).

- Setting up the Receiving Party -

The receiving party will respond to the confirmation request if:

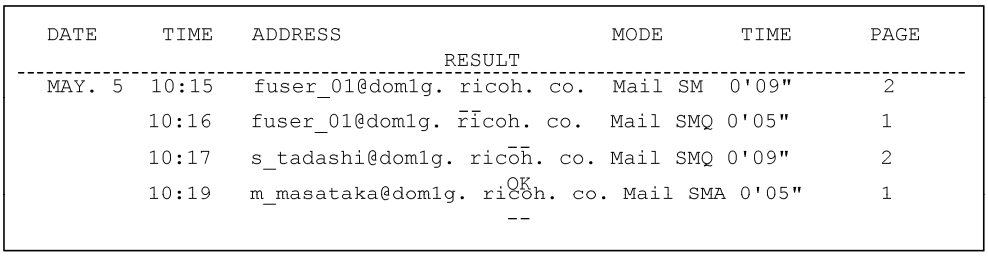
1. The "Disposition Notification To" field is in the received mail header (automatically inserted in the 4th line in the upper table on the previous page, if MDN is enabled), and
2. Sending the disposition notification must be enabled (User Parameter Setting SW21 (15 [H]) Bit 1 for this model). The content of the response is as follows:

Normal reception:	"Return Receipt (dispatched)" in the Subject line
IFAX SW02 (Bit 2, 3)	"Return Receipt (displayed)" in the Subject line
Error:	"Return Receipt (processed/error)" in the Subject line

Handling Reports

1. Sending a Request for a Return Receipt by Mail
   After the mail sender transmits a request for a return receipt, the mail sender's journal is annotated with two hyphens (--) in the Result column and a "Q" in the Mode column.
2. Mail Receipt (Request for Receipt Confirmation) and Sending Mail Receipt Response
   After the mail receiver sends a response to the request for a return receipt, the mail receiver's journal is annotated with two hyphens (--) in the Result column and an "A" in the Mode column.
3. Receiving the Return Receipt Mail
   - After the mail sender receives a return receipt, the information in the mail sender's journal about the receipt request is replaced, i.e. the journal is annotated with "OK" in the Result column.
   - When the return receipt reports an error, the journal is annotated with an "E" in the Result column.
   - The arrival of the return receipt is not recorded in the journal as a separate communication. Its arrival is only reported by the presence of "OK" or "E" in the Result column.
   - If the mail address used by the sender specifies a mailing list (i.e., a Group destination; the machine sends the mail to more than one location. See "How to set up Mail Delivery"), the Result column of the Journal is updated every time a return receipt is received. For example, if the mailing list was to 5 destinations, the Result column indicates the result of the communication with the 5th destination only. The results of the communications to the first 4 destinations are not shown.
     Exceptions: If one of the communications had an error, the Result column will indicate E, even if subsequent communications were OK.
     If two of the communications had an error, the Journal will indicate the destination for the first error only.

Report Sample



DATE	TIME	ADDRESS	MODE	TIME	PAGE	RESULT
MAY. 5	10:15	fuser_01@dom1g. ricoh. co.	Mail SM	0'09"	2	--
	10:16	fuser_01@dom1g. ricoh. co.	Mail SMQ	0'05"	1	--
	10:17	s_tadashi@dom1g. ricoh. co.	Mail SMQ	0'09"	2	OK
	10:19	m_masataka@dom1g. ricoh. co.	Mail SMA	0'05"	1	--

b771d506

5.5 IP-FAX

5.5.1 WHAT IS IP-FAX?

For details: Core Technology Manual – Facsimile Processes – Faxing from a PC – Internet/LAN Fax Boards – IP-FAX

T.38 Packet Format

TCP is selected by default for this machine, but you can change this to UDP with IPFAX SW 00 Bit 1.

UDP Related Switches

<table>
<tr><th colspan="7">IP-Fax Switch 01</th></tr>
<tr><th>No.</th><th colspan="5">FUNCTION</th><th>COMMENTS</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="8">0-3</td><td colspan="5">Select IP FAX Delay Level</td><td rowspan="8">Raise the level by selecting a higher setting if too many transmission errors are occurring on the network.
If TCP/UDP is enabled on the network, raise this setting on the T.30 machine. Increasing the delay time allows the recovery of more lost packets.
If only UDP is enabled, increase the number of redundant packets.
Level 1~2: 3 Redundant packets
Level 3: 4 Redundant packets</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bit3</td><td>Bit2</td><td>Bit1</td><td>Bit0</td><td>Setting</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>Level 0</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>Level 1</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>Level 2</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>Level 3</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr>
</table>

Settings

User parameter switch 34 (22[H]), bit 0

IP-Fax Gate Keeper usage 0: No, 1: Yes

IP Fax Switches: Various IP-FAX settings (see the bit switch table)

6. SPECIFICATIONS

6.1 GENERAL SPECIFICATIONS

6.1.1 FCU

Type:	Desktop type transceiver
Circuit:	PSTN (max. 3ch.) PABX
Connection:	Direct couple
Original Size:	Book (Face down) Maximum Length: 432 mm [17 ins] Maximum Width: 297 mm [11.7 ins] ARDF (Face up) (Single-sided document) Length: 128 - 1200 mm [5.0 - 47.2 ins] Width: 105 - 297 mm [4.1 - 11.7 inch] (Double-sided document) Length: 128 - 432 mm [5.0 - 17 inch] Width: 105 - 297 mm [4.1 - 11.7 inch]
Scanning Method:	Flat bed, with CCD
Resolution:	G3 8 x 3.85 lines/mm (Standard) 8 x 7.7 lines/mm (Detail) 8 x 15.4 line/mm (Fine) See Note1 16 x15.4 line/mm (Super Fine) See Note 1 200 x 100 dpi (Standard) 200 x 200 dpi (Detail) 400 x 400 dpi (Super Fine) See Note 1 Note ▪ Optional Expansion Memory required

General Specifications

Transmission Time:	G3: 3 s at 28800 bps; Measured with G3 ECM using memory for an ITU-T #1 test document (Slerexe letter) at standard resolution
Data Compression:	MH, MR, MMR, JBIG
Protocol:	Group 3 with ECM
Modulation:	V.34, V.33, V.17 (TCM), V.29 (QAM), V.27ter (PHM), V.8, V.21 (FM)
Data Rate:	G3: 33600/31200/28800/26400/24000/21600/ 19200/16800/14400/12000/9600/7200/4800/2400 bps Automatic fallback
I/O Rate:	With ECM: 0 ms/line Without ECM: 2.5, 5, 10, 20, or 40 ms/line
Memory Capacity:	ECM: 128 KB SAF Standard: 4 MB With optional Expansion Memory: 28 MB (4 MB+ 24 MB) Page Memory Standard: 4 MB (Print: 2 MB + Scanner: 2 MB) With optional Expansion Memory: 12 MB (4 MB + 8 MB) (Print 8 MB + Scanner: 4 MB)

6.1.2 CAPABILITIES OF PROGRAMMABLE ITEMS

The following table shows the capabilities of each programmable items.

Item	Standard
Quick Dial	2000
Groups	100
Destination per Group	500

Destinations dialed from the ten-key pad overall	500
Programs	100
Auto Document	6
Communication records for Journal stored in the memory	200
Specific Senders	30

The following table shows how the capabilities of the document memory will change after the Expansion Memory are installed.

	Without the Expansion Memory	**With the Expansion Memory**
Memory Transmission file	400	400
Maximum number of page for memory transmission	1000	1000
Memory capacity for memory transmission (☛ Note1)	320	2240

Note

- Measured using an ITU-T #1 test document (Slerexe letter) at the standard resolution, the auto image density mode and the Text mode.

6.2 IFAX SPECIFICATIONS

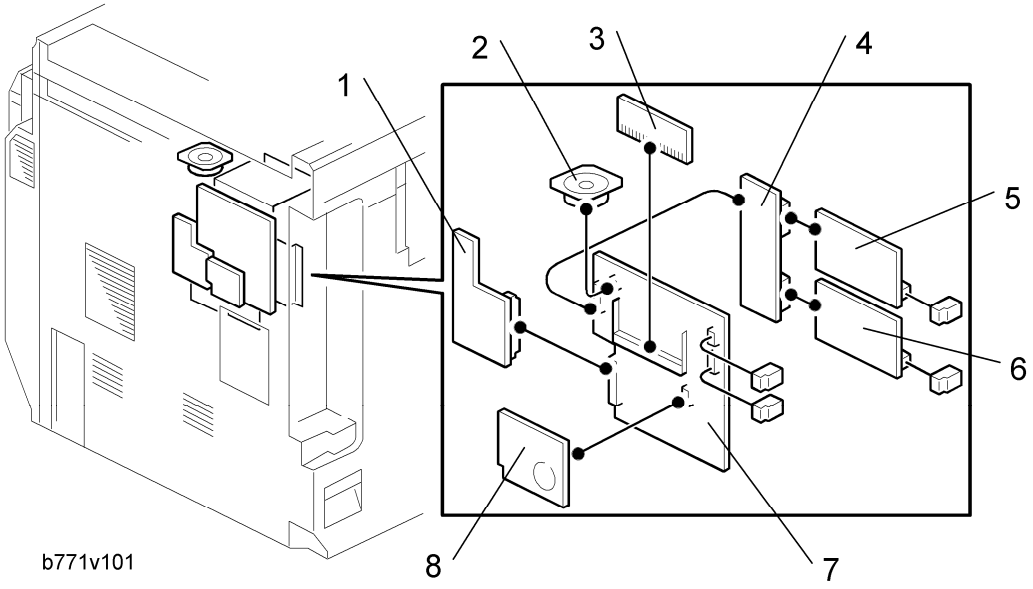
Connectivity:	Local area network Ethernet 100base-Tx/10base-T IEEE1394 (IP over 1394) IEEE802.11b (wireless LAN)
Resolution:	Main scan: 400 dpi, 200 dpi Sub scan: 400 dpi, 200 dpi, 100 dpi Note ▪ To use 400 dpi, IFAX SW01 Bit 4 must be set to “1”.
Transmission Time:	1 s (through a LAN to the server) Condition: ITU-T #1 test document (Selerexe Letter) MTF correction: OFF TTI: None Resolution: 200 x 100 dpi Communication speed: 10 Mbps Correspondent device: E-mail server Line conditions: No terminal access
Document Size:	Maximum message width is A4/LT. Note ▪ To use B4 and A3 width, IFAX SW00 Bit 1 (B4) and/or Bit 2 (A3) must be set to “1”.
E-mail File Format:	Single/multi-part MIME conversion Image: TIFF-F (MH, MR, MMR)
Protocol:	**Transmission:** SMTP, TCP/IP **Reception:** POP3, SMTP, IMAP4, TCP/IP

Data Rate:	100 Mbps(100base-Tx) 10 Mbps (10base-T)
Authentication Method:	SMTP-AUTH POP before SMTP A-POP
Remark:	The machine must be set up as an e-mail client before installation. Any client PCs connected to the machine through a LAN must also be e-mail clients, or some features will not work (e.g. Autorouting).

6.3 IP-FAX SPECIFICATIONS

Network:	Local Area Network Ethernet/10base-T, 100base-TX IEEE1394 (IP over 1394) IEEE802.11b (wireless LAN)
Scan line density:	8 x 3.85 lines/mm, 200x100dpi (standard character), 8 x 7.7lines/mm, 200x200dpi (detail character), 8 x 15.4lines/mm (fine character: optional expansion memory required), 16 x 15.4lines/mm, 400x400dpi (super fine character: optional expansion memory required)
Original size:	Maximum A3 or 11"x 17" (DLT)
Maximum scanning size:	Standard: A3, 297mm x 432mm Irregular: 297mm x 1200mm
Transmission protocol:	Recommended: T.38 Annex protocol, TCP, UDP/IP communication
Compatible machines:	IP-Fax compatible machines
IP-Fax transmission function:	Specify IP address and send fax to an IP-Fax compatible fax through a network. Also capable of sending fax from a G3 fax connected to the public telephone lines via a VoIP gateway.
IP-Fax reception function:	Receive a fax sent from an IP-Fax compatible fax through a network. Also capable of receiving fax from a G3 fax connected the public telephone lines via a VoIP gateway.

6.4 FAX UNIT CONFIGURATION



Component	Code	No.	Remarks
MBU	B771	8	Included with fax unit
FCU		7	
FCU I/F		1	
Speaker		2	
Expansion Memory	G578	3	Optional
CCU I/F Board	B772	4	Optional
SG3 Board		5	
SG3 Board	B772	6	Optional
Handset Type 1018	B433	-	NA only. Also used with J-C2

AUTO REVERSE DOCUMENT FEEDER DF3010 B802

B802 REVISION HISTORY		
Page	**Date**	**Added/Updated/New**
		None

ARDF DF3010 B802

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT 1

1.1 COVERS AND TRAY 1

1.1.1 FRONT AND REAR COVER 1

1.1.2 ORIGINAL TRAY 1

1.2 DOCUMENT FEED COMPONENTS 3

1.2.1 PICK-UP ROLLER 3

1.2.2 FEED BELT 3

1.2.3 SEPARATION ROLLER 5

1.3 ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS 6

1.3.1 DF DRIVE BOARD 6

1.3.2 ORIGINAL LENGTH SENSORS AND TRAILING EDGE SENSOR 6

1.3.3 ORIGINAL SET, SEPARATION, SKEW CORRECTION AND SCANNING ENTRANCE SENSOR 7

1.3.4 ORIGINAL WIDTH SENSORS 8

1.3.5 REGISTRATION SENSOR 9

1.3.6 ORIGINAL EXIT SENSOR 9

1.3.7 DF POSITION SENSOR 10

1.3.8 COVER SENSOR 10

1.3.9 PICK-UP ROLLER HP AND ORIGINAL STOPPER HP SENSOR 11

1.3.10 STAMP SOLENOID 12

1.4 ORIGINAL FEED DRIVE 14

1.4.1 ADF FEED MOTOR 14

1.4.2 ADF INVERTER MOTOR 15

1.4.3 ADF TRANSPORT MOTOR 15

1.4.4 ADF PICK-UP MOTOR 15

2. DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS 17

2.1 COMPONENT LAYOUT 17

2.1.1 MECHANICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT 17

2.1.2 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT 18

2.1.3 DRIVE LAYOUT 21

2.2 BASIC OPERATION 23
2.2.1 ORIGINAL SIZE DETECTION 23
2.2.2 MIXED ORIGINAL SIZE MODE 25
2.2.3 PICK-UP AND SEPARATION 26
2.2.4 SKEW CORRECTION 27
2.2.5 SLIP DETECTION 28
2.2.6 ORIGINAL TRANSPORT AND EXIT 28
2.2.7 CONDITIONS FOR JAM DETECTION 30

3. SERVICE TABLES 31
3.1 DIP SWITCHES 31

Read This First

Safety and Symbols

Replacement Procedure Safety

⚠CAUTION

- Turn off the main power switch and unplug the machine before beginning any of the replacement procedures in this manual.

Symbols Used in this Manual

This manual uses the following symbols.

☛: See or Refer to

: Screws

: Connector

: Clip ring

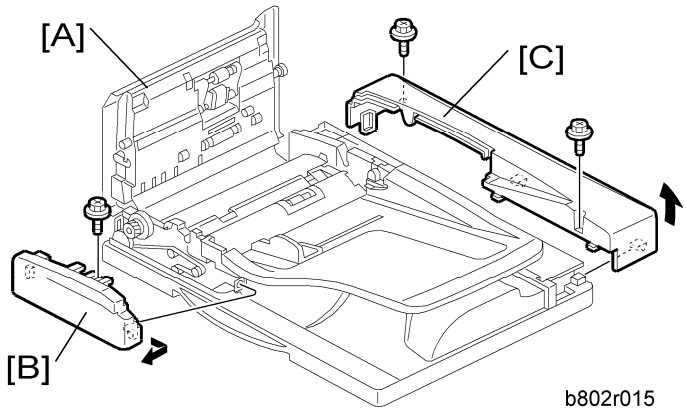
: E-ring

: Clamp

1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

1.1 COVERS AND TRAY

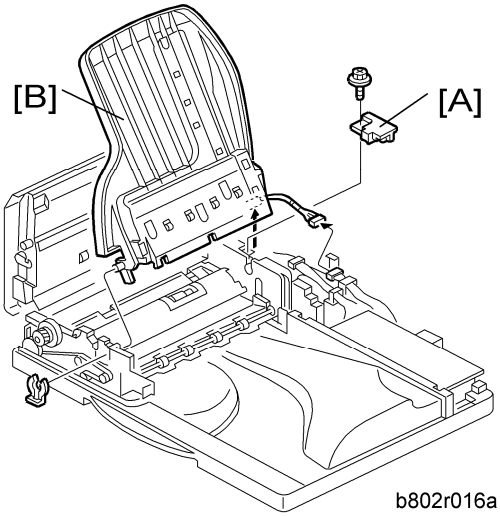
1.1.1 FRONT AND REAR COVER



1. **Open the left cover [A].**
2. **Front cover [B] (x 1, hook x 2)**
3. **Rear cover [C] (x 2, hook x 2)**

1.1.2 ORIGINAL TRAY

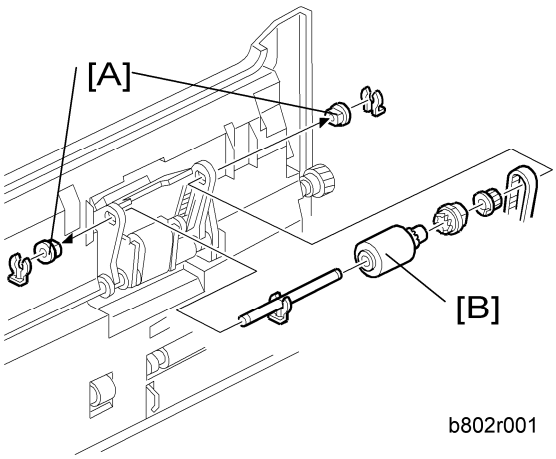
1. **Open the left cover.**
2. **Rear cover (1.1.1"Front and Rear Cover")**
3. **Front cover (1.1.1"Front and Rear Cover")**



4. **Pivot cover [A] (x 1)**
5. **Original tray [B] (x 1, x 1, x 2)**

1.2 DOCUMENT FEED COMPONENTS

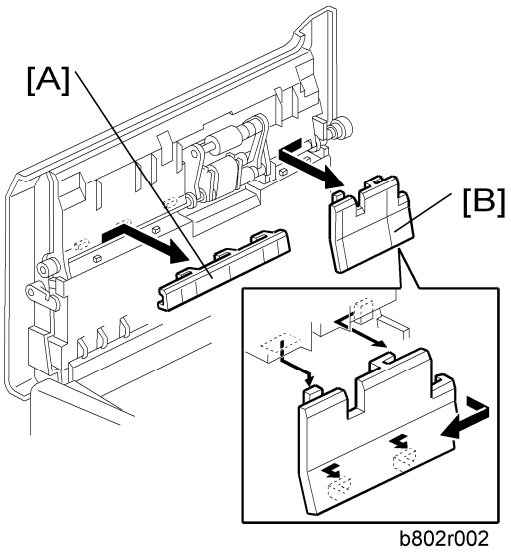
1.2.1 PICK-UP ROLLER



1. **Open the left cover.**
2. **Bushings [A] (🔘 x 1 each)**
3. **Pick-up roller [B] (gear x 1, one-way gear x 1)**

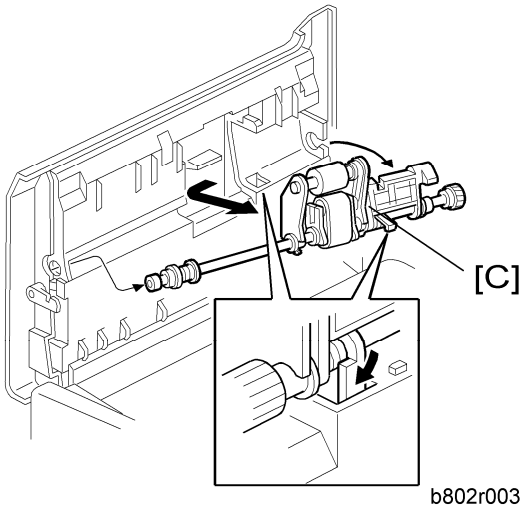
1.2.2 FEED BELT

1. **Open the left cover.**

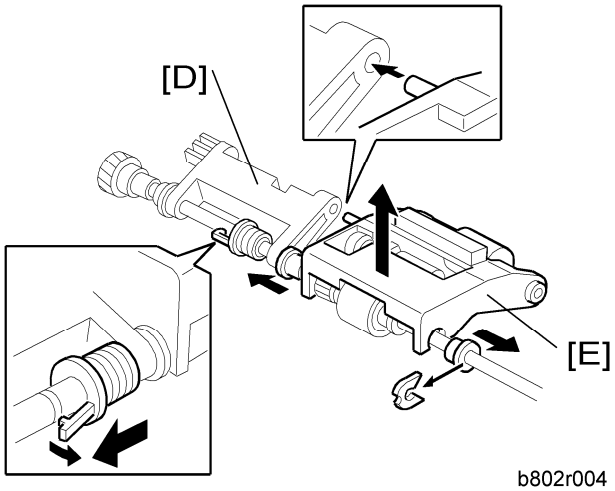


2. **Front feed unit cover [A]**
3. **Rear feed unit cover [B] (hook x 2)**

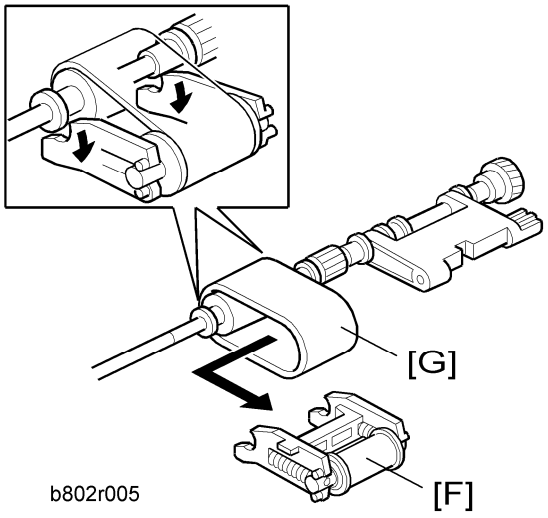
Document Feed Components



4. **Feed belt unit [C]**



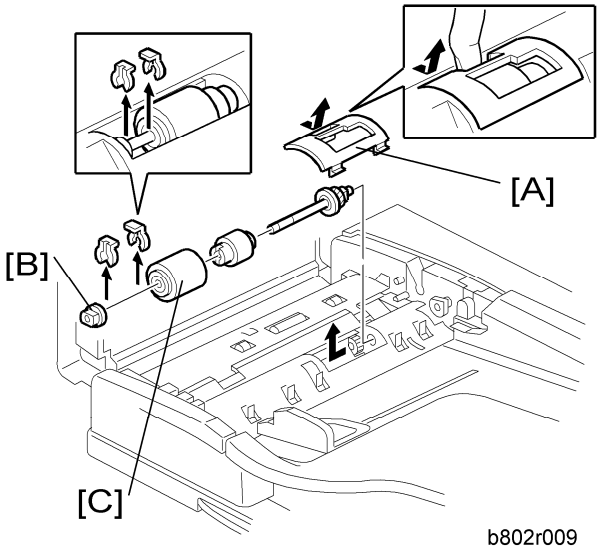
5. **Slide the tension plate [D] (hook)**
6. **Belt unit cover [E] (x 1)**



7. **Belt tension unit [F]**
8. **Feed belt [G]**

1.2.3 SEPARATION ROLLER

1. **Open the left cover.**

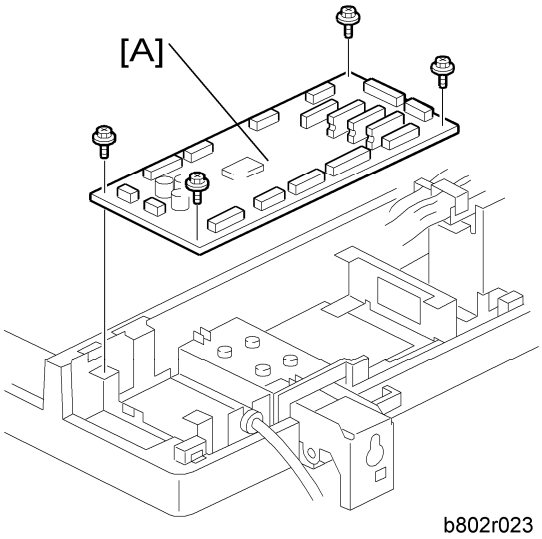


2. **Separation roller cover [A]**
3. **Remove the bushing [B] (x 1).**
4. **Slide the separation roller shaft to the front side, and then remove it.**
5. **Separation roller [C] (x 1)**

1.3 ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS

1.3.1 DF DRIVE BOARD

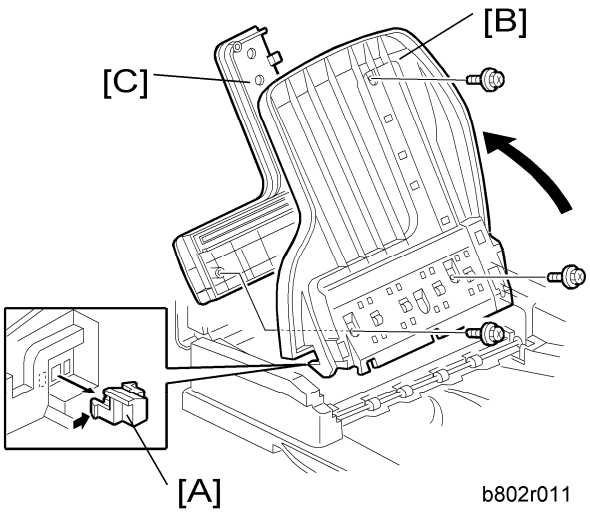
1. **Rear cover (☛1.1.1"Front and Rear Cover")**



2. **DF drive board [A] (☞ x 4, all ☞s)**

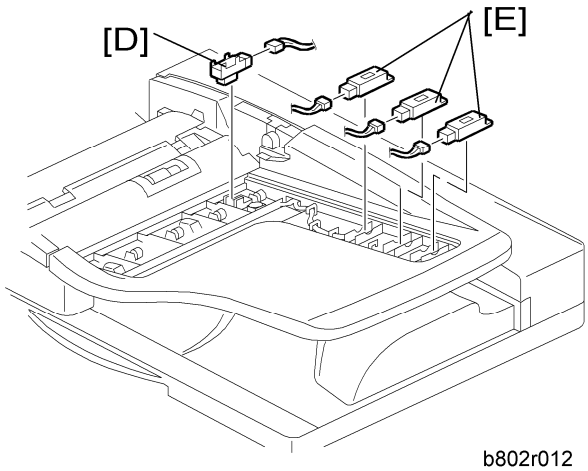
1.3.2 ORIGINAL LENGTH SENSORS AND TRAILING EDGE SENSOR

1. **Open the left cover.**



2. **Remove the tray stopper [A], while pushing the hook with a screw driver.**

3. **Open the original tray [B].**
4. **Original tray cover [C] (x 3)**

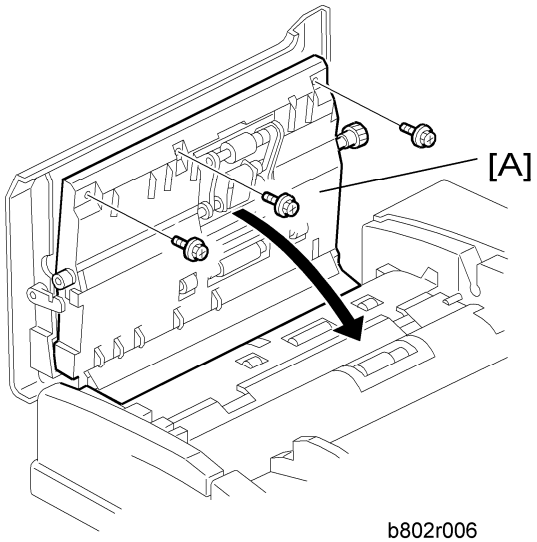


b802r012

5. **Original trailing edge sensor [D] (x 1, hook)**
6. **Original length sensors [E] (x 1 each, hook)**

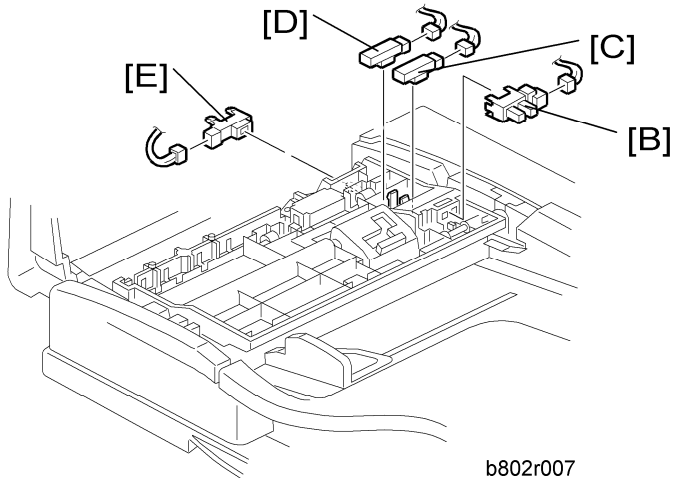
1.3.3 ORIGINAL SET, SEPARATION, SKEW CORRECTION AND SCANNING ENTRANCE SENSOR

1. **Open the left cover.**



b802r006

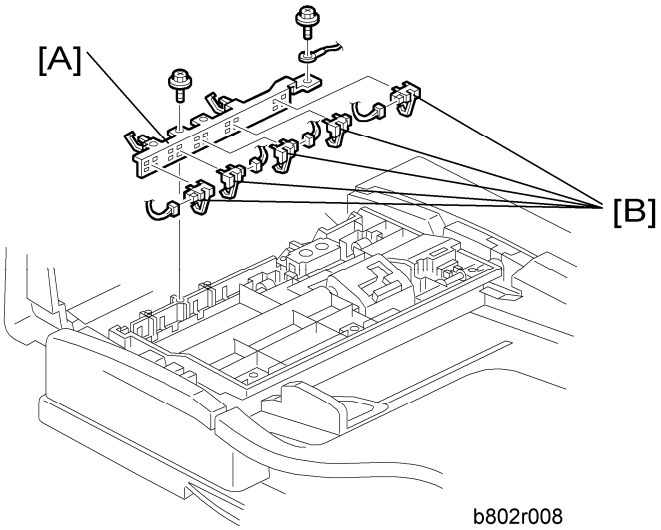
2. **Open the inner upper cover [A] (stepped screw x 3).**



3. **Original set sensor [B] (x 1, hook)**
4. **Separation sensor [C] (x 1, hook)**
5. **Skew correction sensor [D] (x 1, hook)**
6. **Scanning entrance sensor [E] (x 1, hook)**

1.3.4 ORIGINAL WIDTH SENSORS

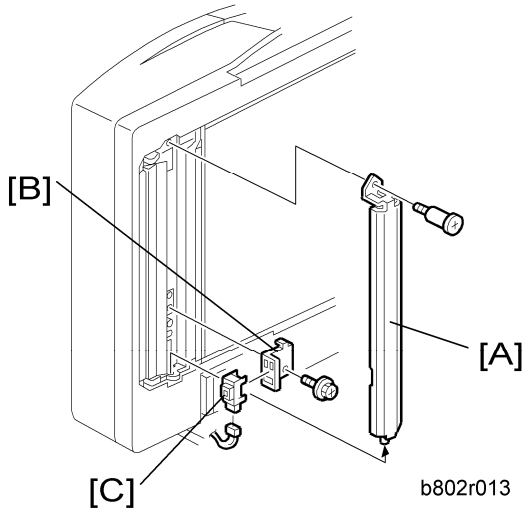
1. **Open the left cover.**
2. **Open the inner upper cover (1.3.3" Original Set, Separation, Skew Correction and Registration Sensor").**



3. **Original width sensor bracket [A] (x 2, ground cable x 1).**
4. **Original width sensors [B] (x 1 each, hook)**

1.3.5 REGISTRATION SENSOR

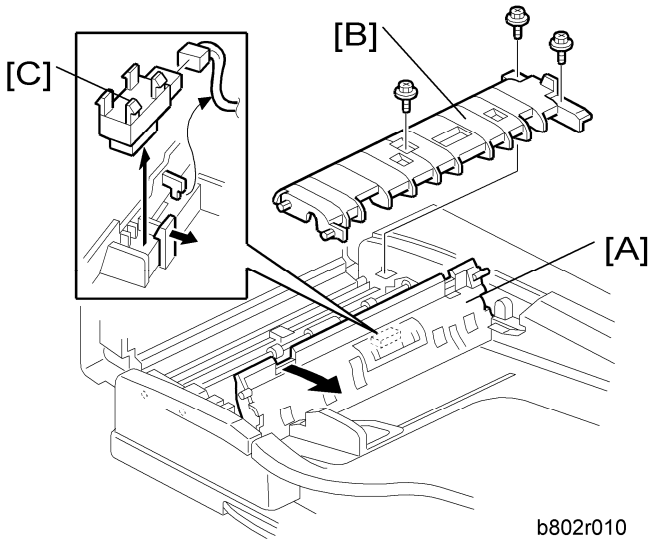
1. **Open the ARDF.**



2. **White plate [A] (stud screw x 1)**
3. **Registration sensor bracket [B] (🔩 x 1)**
4. **Registration sensor [C] (✋ x 1)**

1.3.6 ORIGINAL EXIT SENSOR

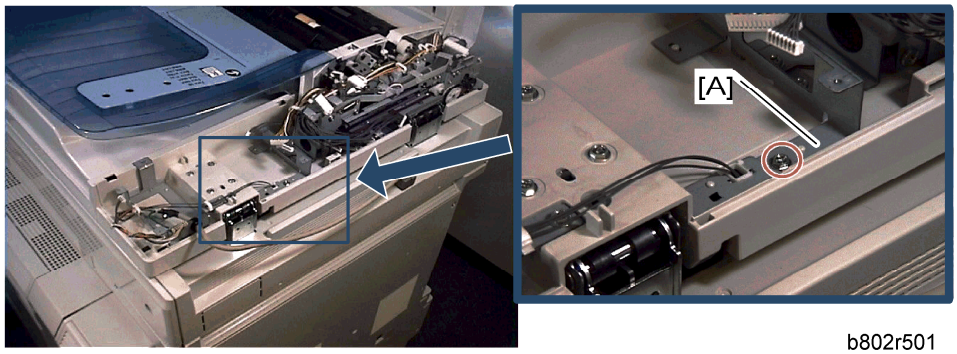
1. **Open the left cover.**



2. **Open the feed-in guide plate [A].**
3. **Guide plate [B] (🔩 x 2, stepped screw x 1; front side)**
4. **Original exit sensor [C] (✋ x 1, hook)**

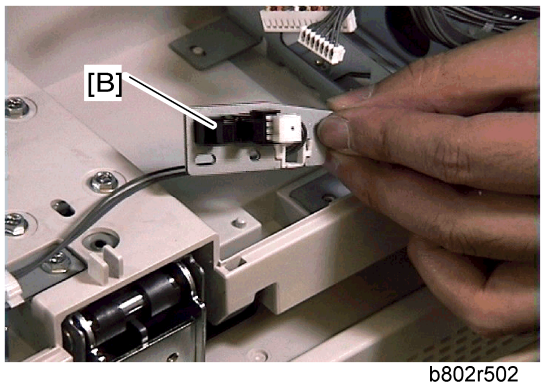
1.3.7 DF POSITION SENSOR

1. **Rear cover (1.1.1 "Front and Rear Cover")**
2. **ARDF drive board (1.3.1 "ARDF Drive Board")**



b802r501

3. **DF position sensor bracket [A] (x 1)**

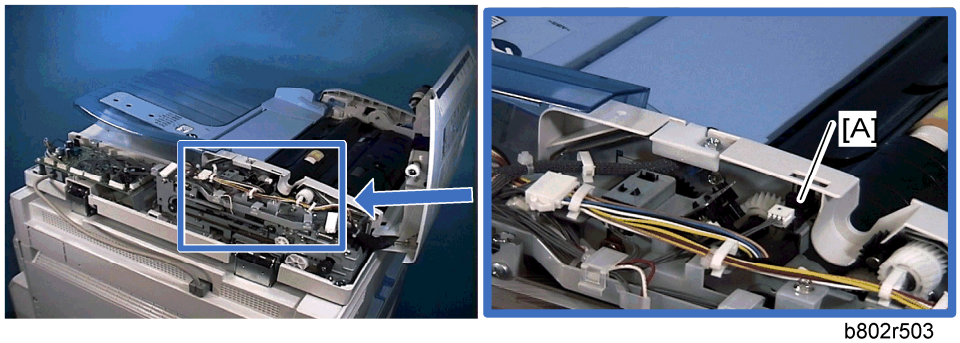


b802r502

4. **DF position sensor [B] (x 1, hook)**

1.3.8 COVER SENSOR

1. **Open the left cover.**
2. **Rear cover (1.1.1 "Front and Rear Cover")**

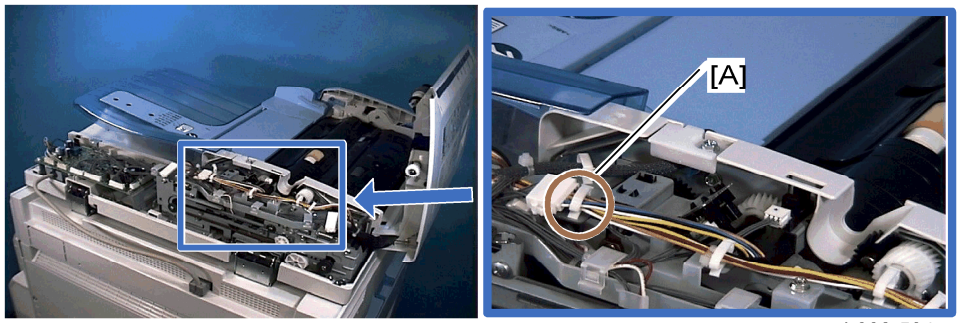


b802r503

3. **Cover sensor [A] (x 1, hook)**

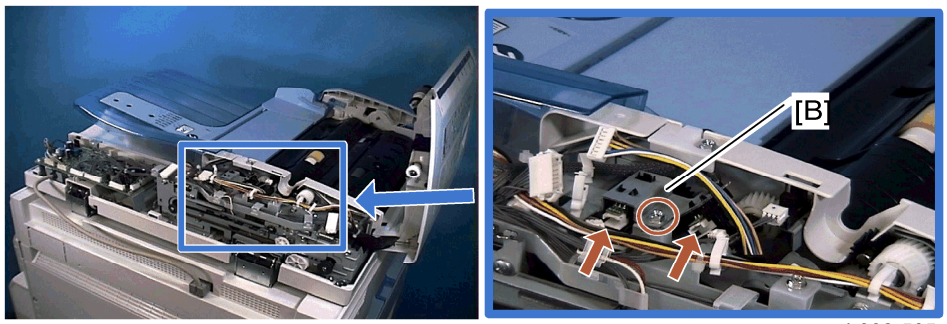
1.3.9 PICK-UP ROLLER HP AND ORIGINAL STOPPER HP SENSOR

1. Open the left cover.
2. Rear cover (1.1.1 "Front and Rear Cover")



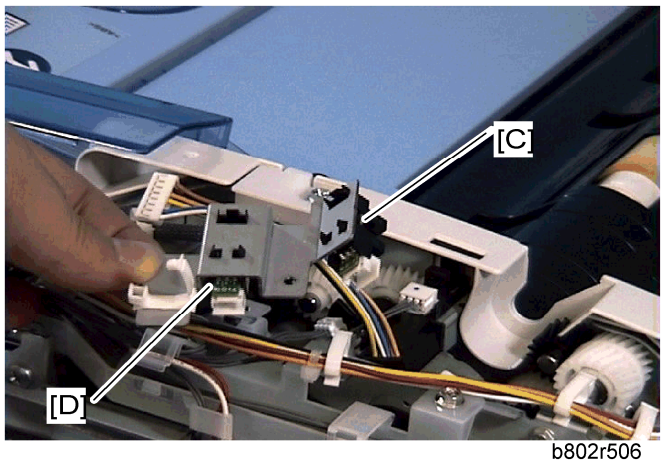
b802r504

3. Release the clamp [A] (x 1), and then slide the harnesses away.



b802r505

4. Sensor bracket [B] (x 1, x 2)

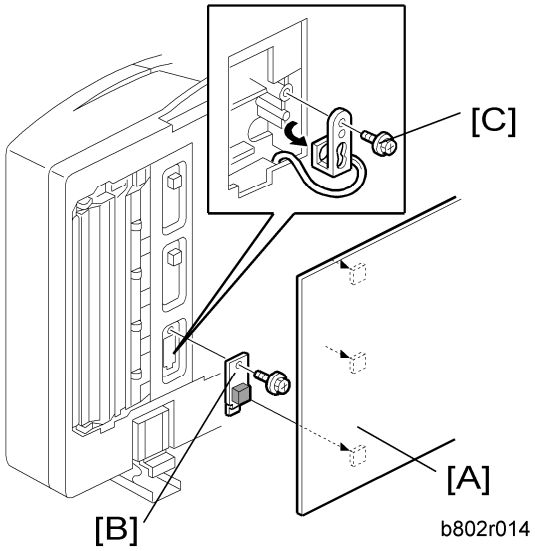


b802r506

5. Pick-up roller HP sensor [C] (hook)
6. Original stopper HP sensor [D] (hook)

1.3.10 STAMP SOLENOID

1. **Open the left cover.**

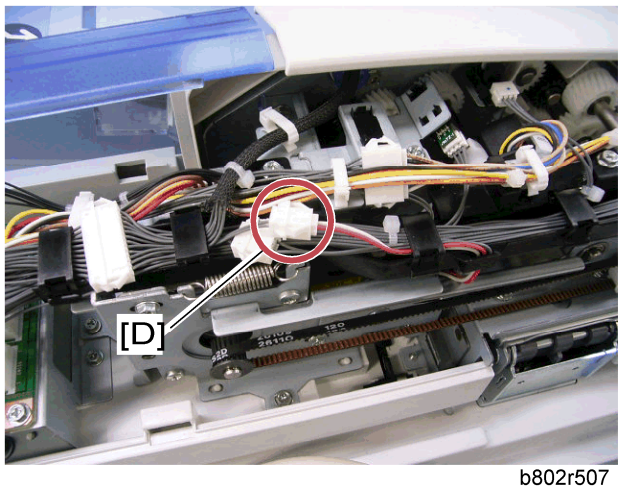


2. **Remove the platen plate [A].**
3. **Stamp solenoid cover [B] (x 1)**
4. **Remove the screw [C] (x 1).**

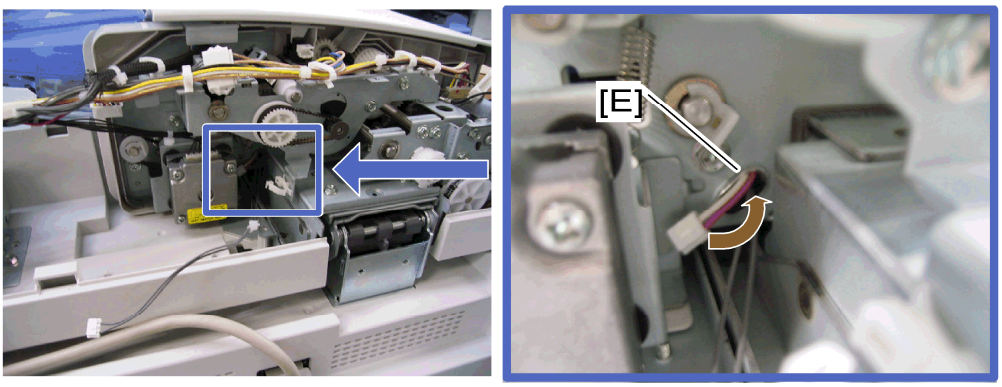
Note

- You cannot remove the stamp solenoid at this time.

5. **Rear cover (1.1.1. "Front and Rear Cover")**

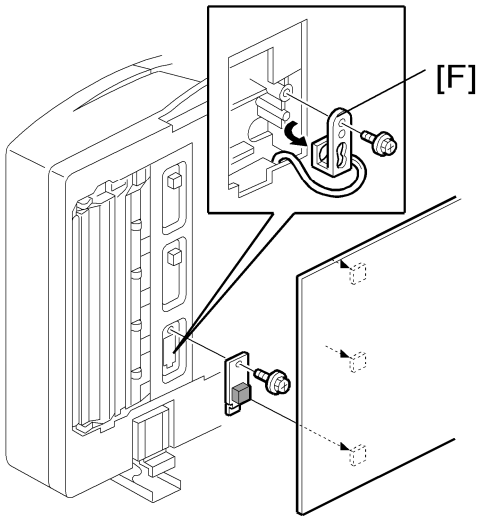


6. **Disconnect the stamp solenoid harness [D].**
7. **ADF feed motor (1.4.1 "ADF Feed Motor")**



b802r508

8. **Put the stamp solenoid harness into the cutout [E].**



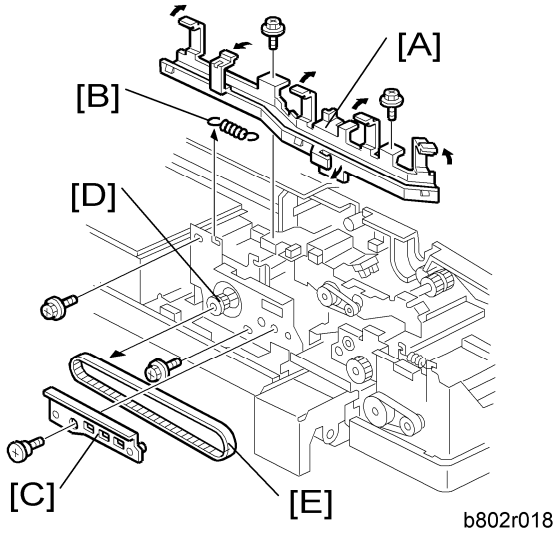
b802r014a

9. **Pull out the stamp solenoid [F]**

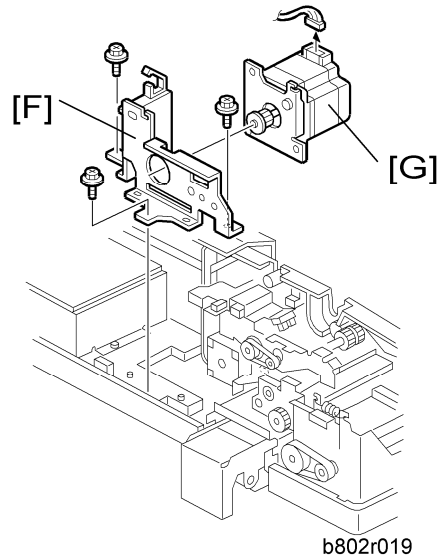
1.4 ORIGINAL FEED DRIVE

1.4.1 ADF FEED MOTOR

1. **Rear cover (1.1.1 "Front and Rear Cover")**



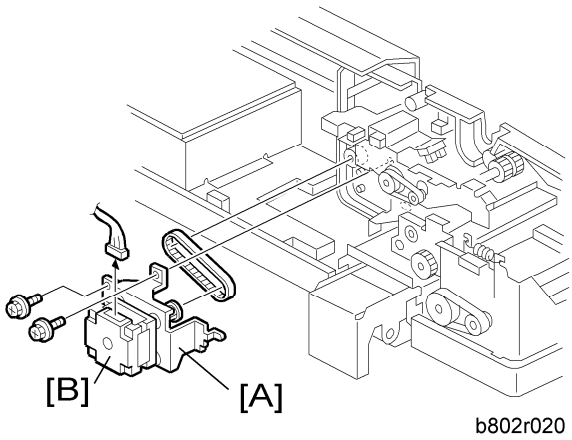
2. **Harness guide [A] (x 2, all s, all s)**
3. **Remove the spring [B].**
4. **Stay bracket [C] (stepped screw x 1)**
5. **Slide the feed motor gear [D] to the left side (seen from the front of the machine), and then remove the timing belt [E].**



6. **ADF feed motor bracket [F] (x 3)**
7. **ADF feed motor [G] (x 1)**

1.4.2 ADF INVERTER MOTOR

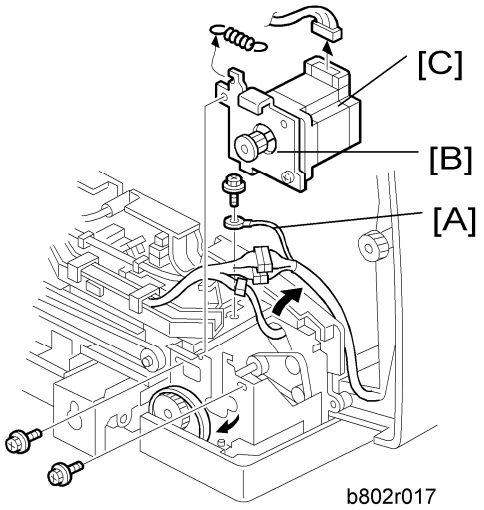
1. **ADF feed motor (☛1.4.1 " ADF Feed Motor")**



2. **ADF inverter motor bracket [A] (x 2, x 1, timing belt)**
3. **ADF inverter motor [B] (x 4)**

1.4.3 ADF TRANSPORT MOTOR

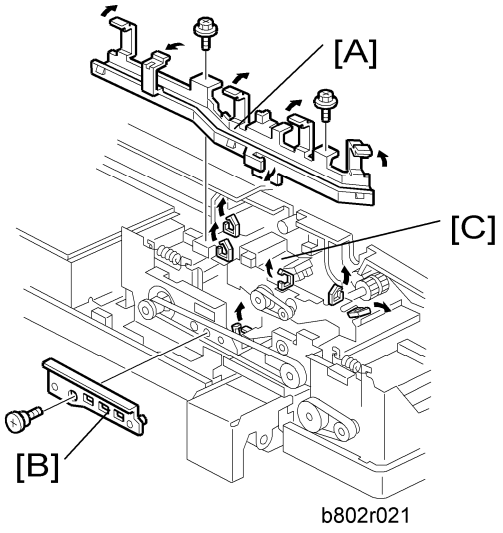
1. **Rear cover (☛1.1.1 "Front and Rear Cover")**



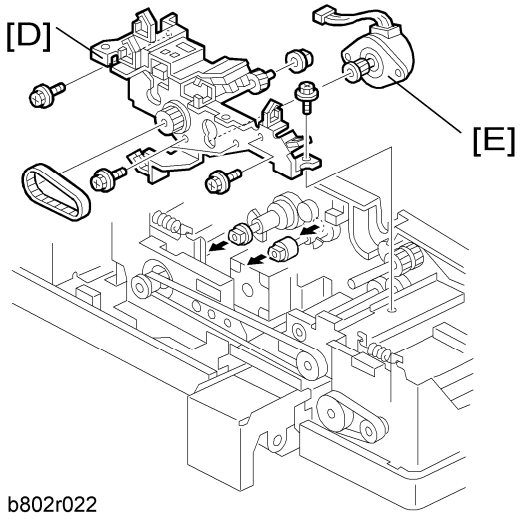
2. **Ground cable [A] (x 1)**
3. **ADF transport motor bracket [B] (x 2, x 1)**
4. **ADF transport motor [C] (x 2)**

1.4.4 ADF PICK-UP MOTOR

1. **Rear cover (☛1.1.1 "Front and Rear Cover")**



2. **Harness guide [A] (x 2, all s, all s)**
3. **Stay bracket [B] (stepped screw x 1)**
4. **Release 6 clamps on the ADF pick-up motor bracket [C] (x 6).**

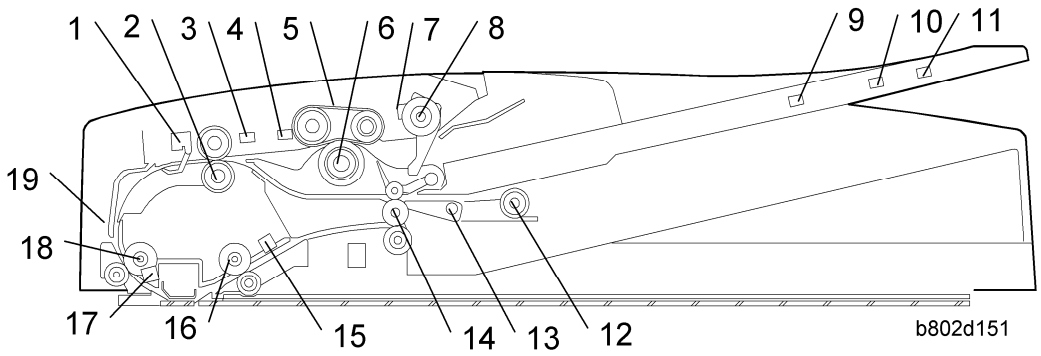


5. **ADF pick-up motor bracket [D] (x 3, x 1)**
6. **ADF pick-up motor [E] (x 2, x 1, timing belt)**

2. DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS

2.1 COMPONENT LAYOUT

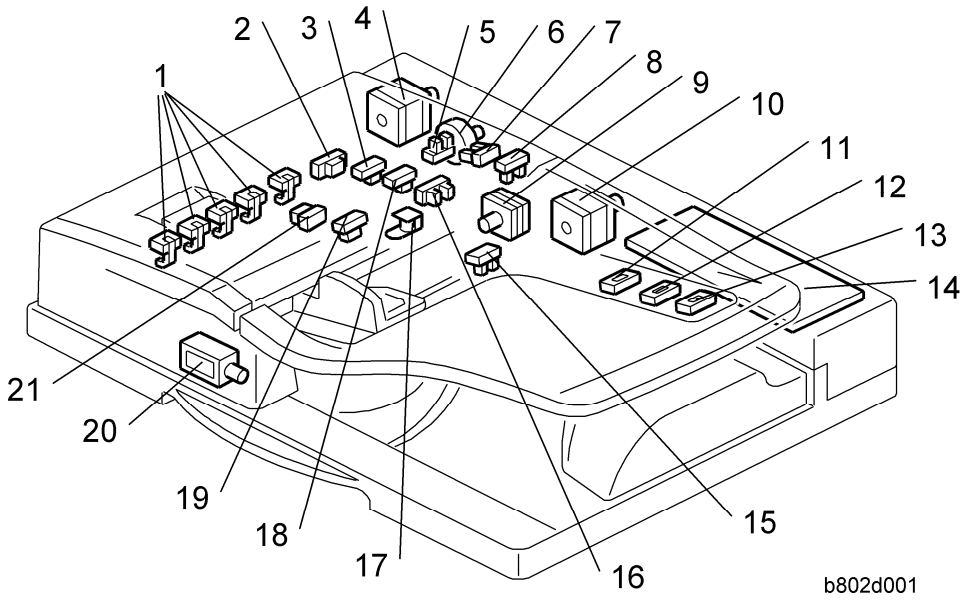
2.1.1 MECHANICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT



1. Original Width Sensor 2. Skew Correction Roller 3. Skew Correction Sensor 4. Separation Sensor 5. Feed Belt 6. Separation Roller 7. Original Set Sensor 8. Pick-up Roller 9. Original Length Sensor 1 10. Original Length Sensor 2	11. Original Length Sensor 3 12. Inverter Roller 13. Junction Gate 14. Exit Roller 15. Original Exit Sensor 16. Transport Roller 17. Registration Sensor 18. Registration Roller 19. Scanning Entrance Sensor

2.1.2 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT

Sensors and Drive Components



1. Original Width Sensors 2. Scanning Entrance Sensor 3. Skew Correction Sensor 4. ADF Transport Motor 5. Left Cover Sensor 6. Pick-up Motor 7. Pick-up Roller HP Sensor 8. Original Stopper HP Sensor 9. ADF Inverter Motor 10. ADF Feed Motor 11. Original Length Sensor 1	12. Original Length Sensor 2 13. Original Length Sensor 4 14. DF Drive Board 15. Original Trailing Edge Sensor 16. Original Set Sensor 17. Stamp Solenoid 18. Separation Sensor 19. Original Exit Sensor 20. Junction Gate Solenoid 21. Registration Sensor

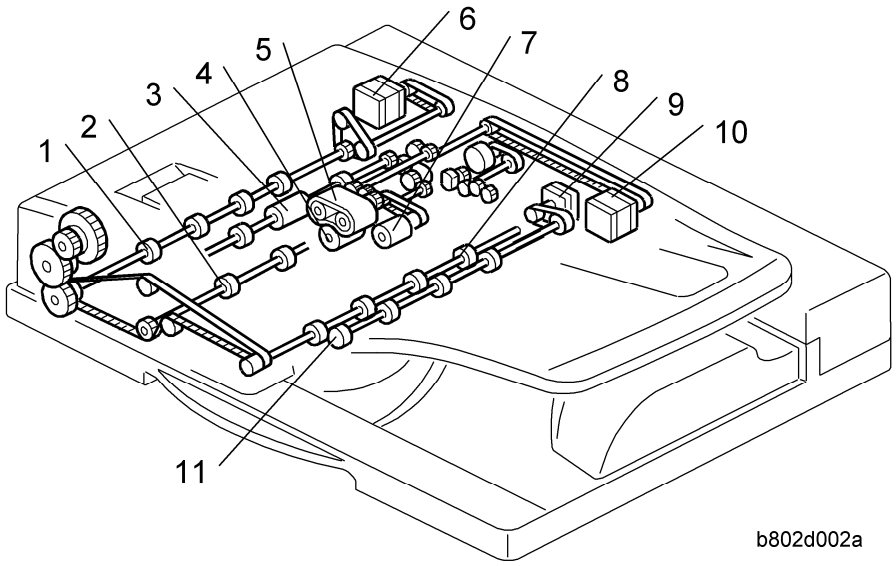
Electrical Component Descriptions

Name	Function	Index No.
Motors		
ADF Feed	Drives the feed belt, separation, pick-up, and reverse table rollers.	10
ADF Transport	Drives the transport and exit rollers	4
ADF Inverter	Drives the Inverter rollers	9
Pick-up Motor	Moves the pick-up roller up and down.	6
Sensors		
DF Position	Detects whether the DF is lifted or not.	
Skew Correction	Detects the leading edge of the original to turn off the DF feed and transport motors.	3
Registration	Detects the original exposure timing, and checks for original misfeeds.	21
Cover Sensor	Detects whether the feed-in cover is opened or not.	4
Original Width Sensor - S	Detects the original width - S.	1
Original Width Sensor - M	Detects the original width - M.	1
Original Width Sensor - L	Detects the original width - L.	1
Original Width Sensor - LL	Detects the original width - LL.	1
-	Detects the original length - S.	11

Component Layout

Original Length - M	Detects the original length - M.	12
Original Length - L	Detects the original length - L.	13
Original Set	Detects if an original is on the feed table.	16
Original Exit	Detects the leading edge of the original to turn on the junction gate solenoid and checks for original misfeeds. Detects the trailing edge of the original to turn off the transport and feed motor and junction gate solenoid. In single-sided mode, used to detect original misfeeds.	19
Original Trailing Edge Sensor	Detects the trailing edge of the last original to stop copy paper feed and to turn off the transport motor, and checks for original misfeeds.	15
Separation Sensor	The machine uses this sensor to check if the original has slipped during feed-in, to make sure that original feed starts at the correct time.	18
Solenoids		
Stamp	Energizes the stamper to mark the original.	17
Junction Gate	Opens and closes the junction gate.	20
PCBs		
DF Drive	Interfaces the sensor signals with the copier, and transfers the magnetic clutch, solenoid and motor drive signals from the copier.	14

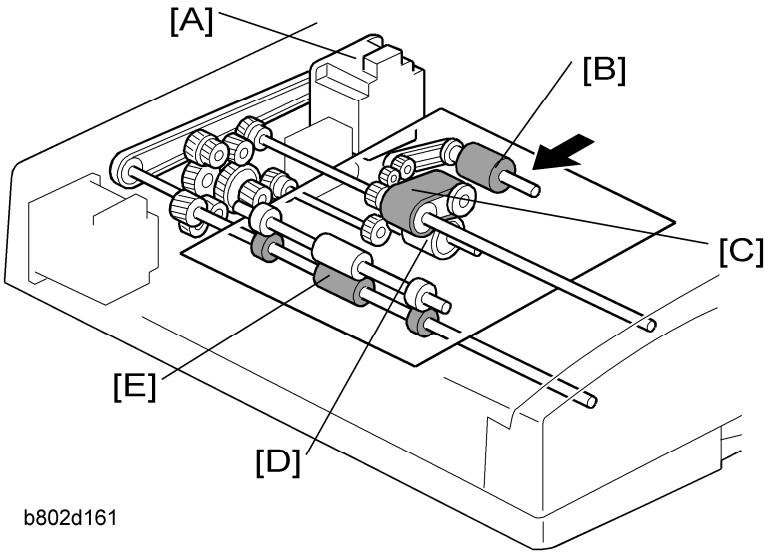
2.1.3 DRIVE LAYOUT



1. Registration Roller
2. Transport Roller
3. Skew Correction Roller
4. Separation Roller
5. Feed Belt
6. ADF Transport Motor
7. Pick-up Roller
8. Exit Roller
9. ADF Inverter Motor
10. ADF Feed Motor
11. Inverter Roller

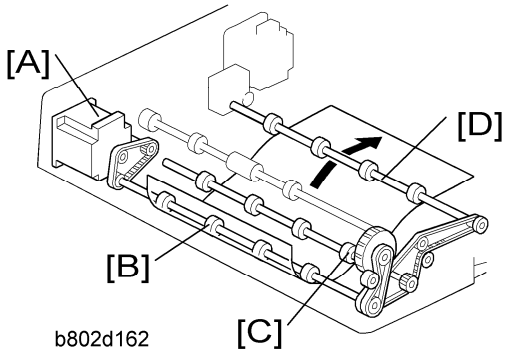
Component Layout

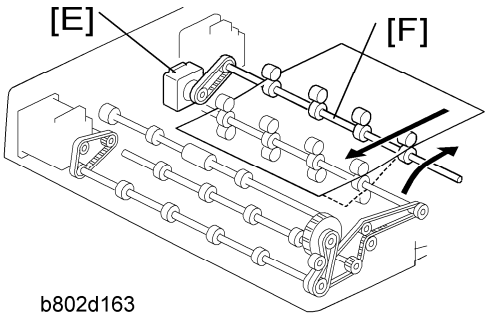
ADF Feed Motor



- ADF Feed Motor [A] drives the pick-up [B], feed belt [C], separation [D] and skew correction rollers [E].

ADF Transport Motor and ADF Inverter Motor

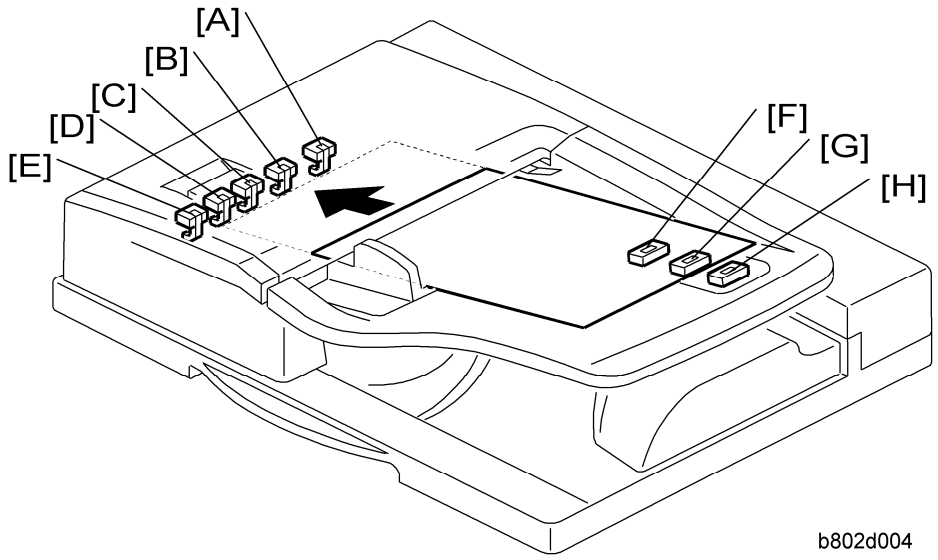




- ADF Transport Motor [A] drives the registration roller [B], transport roller [C] and exit roller [D].
- ADF Inverter Motor [E] drives the Inverter Roller [F].

2.2 BASIC OPERATION

2.2.1 ORIGINAL SIZE DETECTION



The original size detection mechanism consists of the five original width sensors ([A]: Width Sensor SS, [B]: Width Sensor S, [C] Width Sensor M, [D]: Width Sensor L, [E]: Width Sensor LL) and three original length sensors ([F]: Length Sensor S, [G]: Length Sensor M, [H]: Length Sensor L). Based on the combined output of the length sensors and the width sensors, the machine can detect the size of the original. This integrated detection mechanism is detailed in the table below.

Size	Width Sensor					Length Sensor			Area	
	SS	S	M	L	LL	S	M	L	LT	A/B
A3/SEF (297 x 420)	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	O	O
B4/SEF (257 x 364)	ON	ON	ON	-	-	ON	ON	ON	-	O
A4/SEF (210 x 297)	ON	ON	-	-	-	ON	ON	-	O	O
A4/LEF (297 x 210)	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	-	-	-	O	O
B5/SEF (182 x 257)	ON	-	-	-	-	ON	-	-	-	O

B5/LEF (257 x 182)	ON	ON	ON	-	-	-	-	-	-	O
A5/SEF (148 x 210)	ON	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	O
A5/LEF (210 x 148)	ON	ON	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	O
11" x 17"/SEF (DLT)	ON	ON	ON	ON	-	ON	ON	ON	O[1]	O[5]
11" x 15"/SEF	ON	ON	ON	ON	-	ON	ON	ON	●[1]	-
10" x 14"/SEF	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	O	-
8.5" x 14"/SEF (LG)	ON	ON	-	-	-	ON	ON	ON	O[2]	-
8.5" x 13"/SEF (F4)	ON	ON	-	-	-	ON	ON	ON	●[2]	O
8.25" x 13"/SEF	ON	ON	-	-	-	ON	ON	ON	-	-
8" x 13"/SEF (F)	ON	ON	-	-	-	ON	ON	ON	-	-
8.5" x 11"/SEF (LT)	ON	ON	-	-	-	ON	-	-	O[3]	O[6]
8.5" x 11"/LEF (LT)	ON	ON	ON	On	-	-	-	-	O[4]	O[7]
7.25" x 10.5"/SEF (US EXE)	ON	ON	-	-	-	ON	-	-	O	-
10.5" x 7.25"/SEF (US EXE)	ON	ON	ON	ON	-	-	-	-	●[4]	-
10" x 8"/SEF	ON	ON	-	-	-	ON	-	-	●[3]	-
5.5" x 8.5"/SEF (HLT)	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	O	-
5.5" x 8.5"/LEF (HLT)	ON	ON	-	-	-	-	-	-	O	-
267 mm x 390 mm	ON	ON	ON	ON	-	ON	ON	ON	-	●[5]
195 mm x 267 mm	ON	ON	-	-	-	ON	-	-	-	●[6]
267 mm x 195 mm	ON	ON	ON	ON	-	-	-	-	-	●[7]

Symbols

O: Yes (Default), ●: Yes (Can select this with SP mode), ON: Paper present, LT: North America, A/B: Europe, Asia

Note

- For "O/●" mark, which has superscripted number, it is possible to change the original detection size with SP6-016. For example, instead of LT (O^3), the machine can be set up to detect 10” x 8” ($●^3$).
- The F size can be selected with SP5-126. The default is 8.5" x 13"
- The machine cannot detect more than one size of original in the same job.

2.2.2 MIXED ORIGINAL SIZE MODE

This section explains what happens when the user selects mixed original size mode. Because this ARDF is a sheet-through document feeder, the method for original document width detection is the same as when the originals are the same size, but the document length detection method is different. Therefore, the scanning speed is slightly slower.

Document length detection

From when the skew correction sensor switches on until it switches off, the CPU counts the transport motor pulses. The number of pulses determines the length of the original.

Feed-in cycle

When the original size for the copy modes listed below cannot be determined, the image cannot be correctly scaled (reduced or enlarged) or processed until the original’s length has been accurately detected. The length must be determined before the image is scanned.

Auto Reduce/Enlarge
Centering
Erase Center/Border
Booklet
Image Repeat

The originals follow this path:

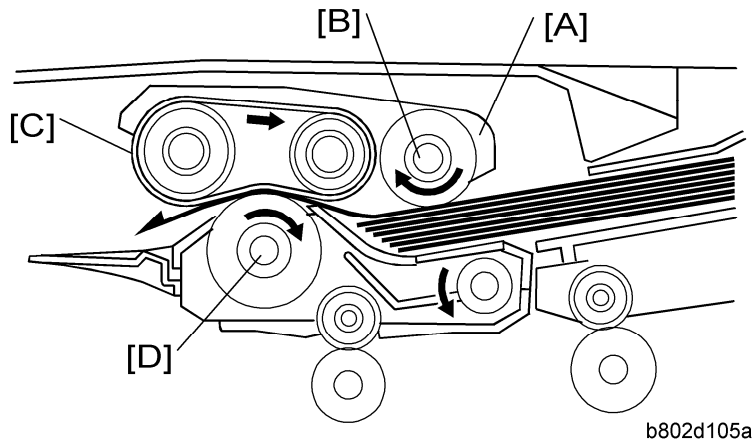
1. Length detection → Scanning glass → Inverter table

2. Inverter table → Scanning glass → Inverter table (restores the original order)
3. Inverter table → Scanning glass (image scanned) → Exit tray

Normal feed-in

In a copy mode other than those listed above, when the reduction/enlargement ratio has been determined, the originals are scanned normally. In order to store the scanned images, a large area of memory (the detected original width x 432 mm length) is prepared. Next, only the portion of the image up to the detected original length is read from memory and printed.

2.2.3 PICK-UP AND SEPARATION



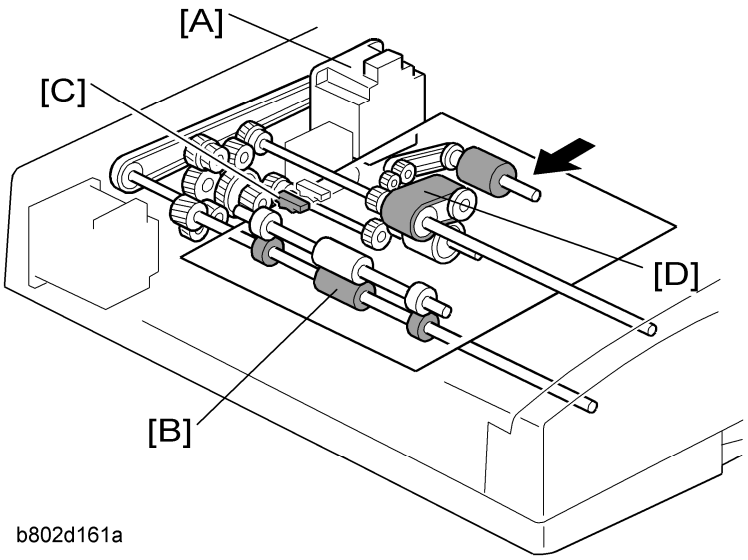
The original is set with the image facing up. The original pushes actuator and the original set sensor is activated.

After pressing the start button, the pick-up motor is activated and the original feed unit [A] moves down. At the same time, the ADF feed motor is activated and the pick-up roller [B] feeds original to the feed belt [C].

After being fed from feed belt [C], the topmost sheet is separated from the stack by the separation roller [D] and sent to the skew correction roller.

The mechanism is an FRR system, consisting of the original feed belt [C] and separation roller [D].

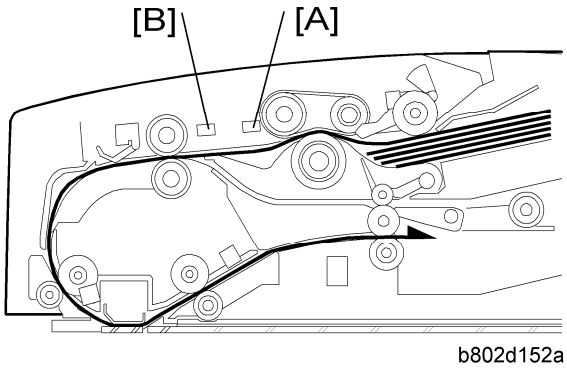
2.2.4 SKEW CORRECTION



When an original is fed into the feeder, the feed motor [A] rotates forwards. At this time, the feed belt turns but the skew correction roller [B] does not, because these rollers have a one-way gear. (If the ADF feed motor rotates forward, the feed belt is moved. If the ADF feed motor rotates in reverse, the skew correction roller is moved.) As a result, when the leading edge of the paper gets to the skew correction roller, skew in the original is removed. A short time after the leading edge of the original turns on the skew correction sensor [C], the feed motor [A] turns off and rotates in reverse. At this time, the skew correction roller [B] and the feed belt [D] both turn, and original feed continues.

The registration roller also has the same skew correction mechanism, but only for small size originals (6, A5 or HLT). This function can be effective for all size paper with SP6-020-001.

2.2.5 SLIP DETECTION



[A]: Separation sensor

[B]: Skew correction sensor

These two sensors are used to measure the amount of slippage and to correct for this.

The machine measures the time it takes for the original to get to the separation sensor [A] after the [Start] key is pressed.

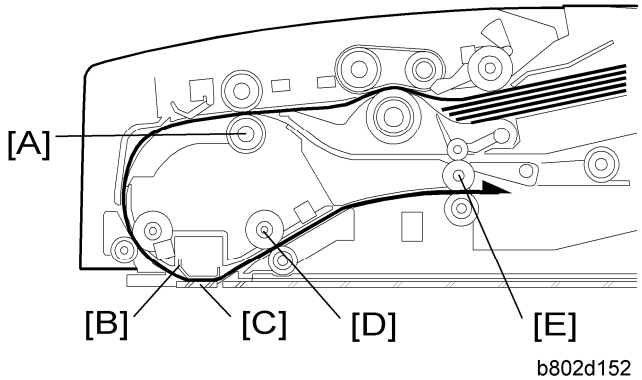
- If the original arrives at the correct time, it feeds normally.
- If the original arrives late, the machine enters the slip mode.

In the slip mode, the machine measures the time for the leading edge of the original to move from the separation sensor to the skew correction sensor [B].

The machine uses this time to adjust the length of time that the entrance roller stays off to correct skew. This stops feed for enough time for the original to be in the correct position for feeding.

2.2.6 ORIGINAL TRANSPORT AND EXIT

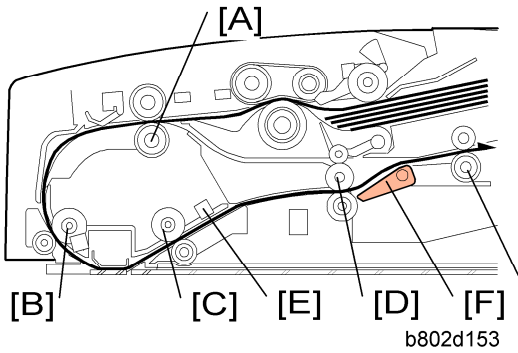
Single-Sided Originals



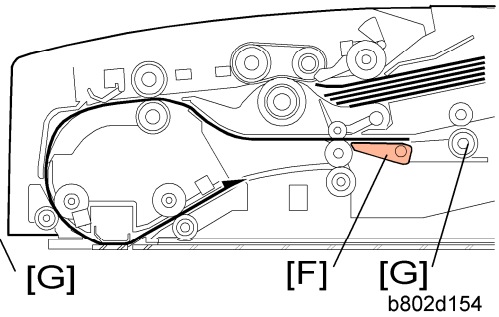
The feed motor feeds the separated original to the skew correction roller [A] at maximum

speed. After skew correction, the feed and transport motors feed the original through the scanning area at a lower speed (the scanning area contains the original exposure guide [B] and DF exposure glass [C]). After scanning, the original is fed out by the transport roller [D] and exit roller [E].

Double-Sided Originals



b802d153

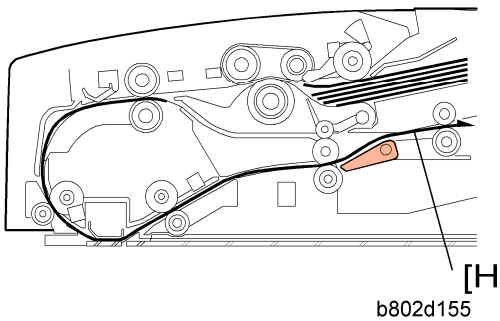


b802d154

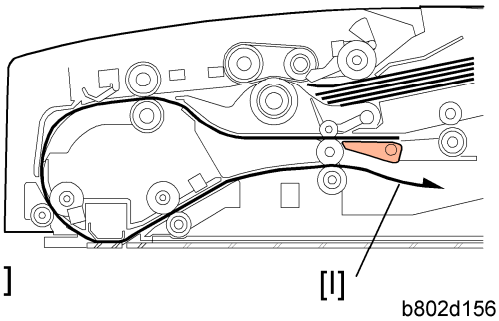
After skew correction, the ADF feed and transport motors drive the skew correction roller [A], registration roller [B], transport roller [C] and the exit roller [D]. The front side of the original is then scanned.

When the original exit sensor [E] detects the leading edge of the original, the junction gate solenoid is activated and the junction gate [F] opens. The original is then transported towards the inverter table.

Soon after the trailing edge of the original passes the exit sensor, the junction gate solenoid switches off and the junction gate [F] is closed. When the original has been fed onto the inverter table, the ADF inverter motor switches on. The original is then fed by the inverter roller [G], and then by the skew correction roller [A] and registration roller [B] to the scanning area (where the reverse side will be scanned).



b802d155



b802d156

The original is then sent to the inverter table [H] again to be turned over. This is done so that the duplex copies will be properly stacked front side down in the exit tray [I] in the correct order.

Original Sensor

During one-to-one copying, copy paper is fed to the skew correction roller in advance

(while the original is still being scanned), to increase the copy speed. The original set sensor monitors the stack of originals in the feeder, and detects when the trailing edge of the last page has been fed in. The main CPU then stops the copier from feeding an unwanted extra sheet of copy paper.

2.2.7 CONDITIONS FOR JAM DETECTION

Jam Mode	Detection Timing
Initial	When turning on the machine, the skew correction sensor, separation sensor, registration sensor or exit sensor detects an original.
	When the cover is closed or DF is down, the skew correction sensor, separation sensor, registration sensor or exit sensor detects an original.
	When the cover is opened or DF is lifted up, the skew correction sensor, separation sensor, registration sensor or exit sensor detects an original.
Sensor stays on too long	The skew correction sensor does not turn off even if the original was fed by the maximum length of the original + 150 mm after the skew correction sensor turned on.
	The registration sensor does not turn off even if the original was fed by its length x 1.5 after the registration sensor turned on.
	The exit sensor does not turn off even if the original was fed by its length x 1.5 after the exit sensor turned on.
Sensor does not come on	The separation sensor does not turn on even if the original was fed by transport path length x 1.5.
	The skew correction sensor does not turn on even if the original was fed by transport path length x 1.5.
	The registration sensor does not turn on even if the original was fed by transport path length x 1.5 after the skew correction sensor turned on.
	The exit sensor does not turn on even the original was fed by transport path length x 1.5 after the skew correction sensor turned on.

3. SERVICE TABLES

3.1 DIP SWITCHES

DIP-SW				Function
1	2	3	4	
0	0	0	0	Normal operating mode (Default)
0	0	0	1	Free run: With original: One-sided mode: 100% speed
0	0	1	0	Free run: With original: Two-sided mode: 100% speed
0	0	1	1	Free run: No original: One-sided mode: 100% speed
0	1	0	0	Free run: No original: Two-sided mode: 100% speed
0	1	0	1	Free run: With original: One-sided mode: 32% speed
0	1	1	0	Free run: With original: Two-sided mode: 32% speed
0	1	1	1	Free run: With original: One-sided mode: 70% speed
1	0	0	0	Free run: With original: Two-sided mode: 70% speed
1	0	0	1	Free run: With original: One-sided mode: 200% speed
1	0	1	0	Free run: With original: Two-sided mode: 200% speed
1	0	1	1	Transport Motor On
1	1	0	0	Feed Motor On
1	1	0	1	Transport Motor On with random mode
1	1	1	0	Feed Motor On with random mode
1	1	1	1	

1 BIN TRAY UNIT BN3010

B803

B803 BIN TRAY UNIT 3010 REVISION HISTORY		
Page	**Date**	**Added/Updated/New**
		None

1 BIN TRAY UNIT BN3010 B803
TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT 1
1.1 ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS 1
1.1.1 PAPER SENSOR 1
1.1.2 1-BIN CONTROL BOARD 2

2. DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS 3
2.1 COMPONENT LAYOUT 3
2.1.1 MECHANICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT 3
2.1.2 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT 3
2.1.3 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DESCRIPTIONS 4
2.2 BASIC OPERATION 5

Read This First

Safety and Symbols

Replacement Procedure Safety

⚠CAUTION

- Turn off the main power switch and unplug the machine before beginning any of the replacement procedures in this manual.

Symbols Used in this Manual

This manual uses the following symbols.

☛: See or Refer to

: Screws

: Connector

: Clip ring

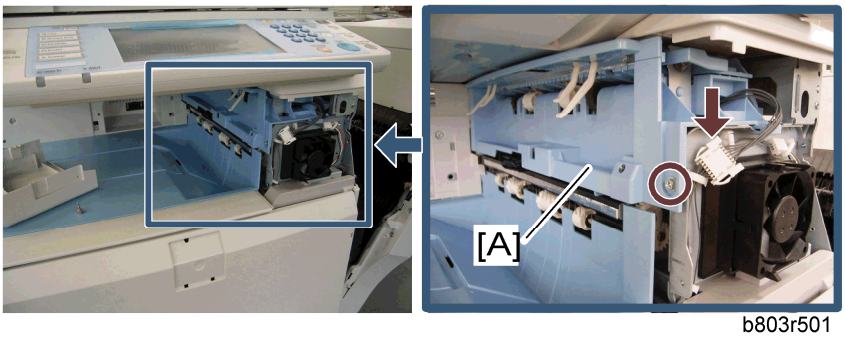
: E-ring

1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

1.1 ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS

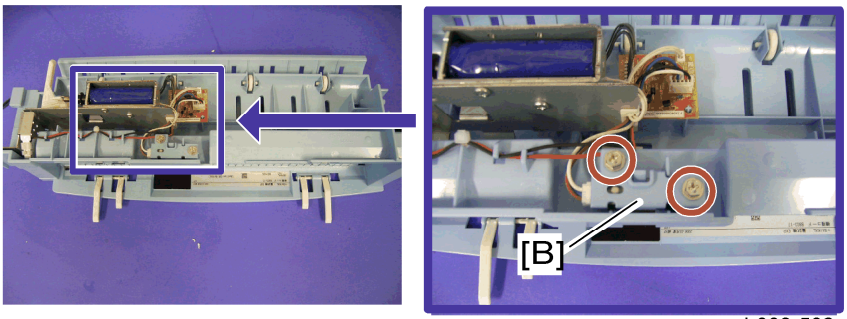
1.1.1 PAPER SENSOR

1. 1-bin-tray (🔩 x 2; M3 x 16)



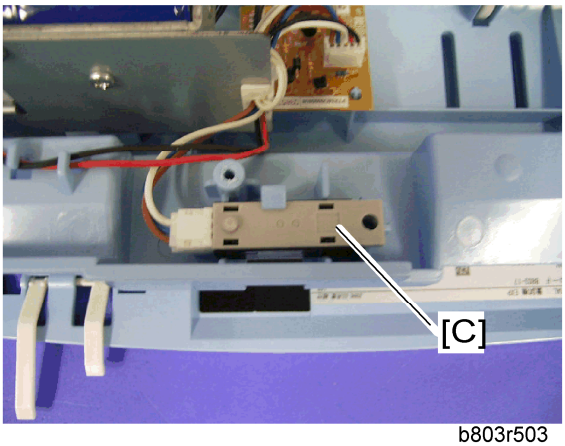
b803r501

2. 1-bin sorter unit [A]



b803r502

3. Paper sensor cover [B] (🔩 x 2)

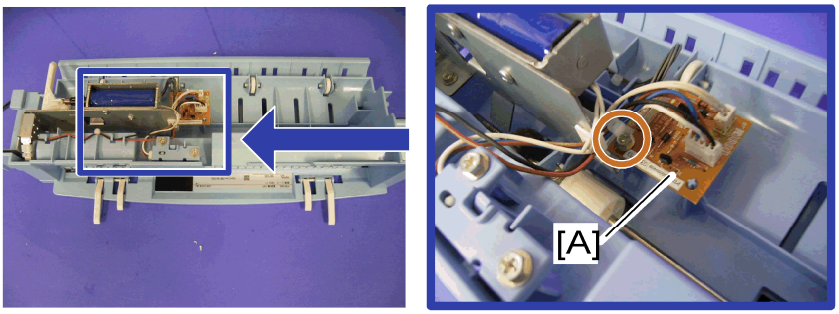


b803r503

4. **Paper sensor [C] (x 1, hook)**

1.1.2 1-BIN CONTROL BOARD

1. **1-bin tray**
2. **1-bin sorter unit (1.1.1. "Paper Sensor")**



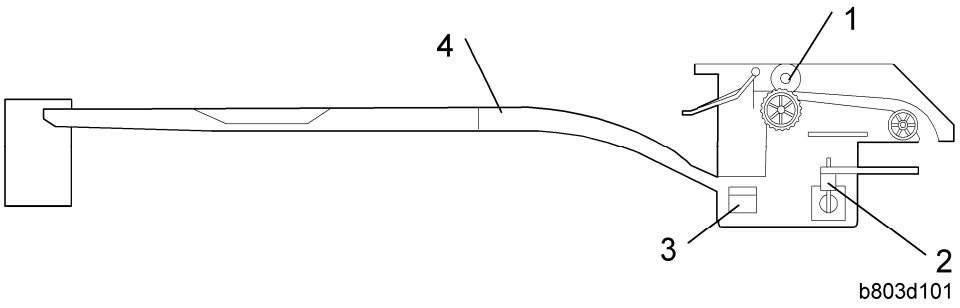
b803r504

3. **1-bin control board [A] (x 1, x 3)**

2. DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS

2.1 COMPONENT LAYOUT

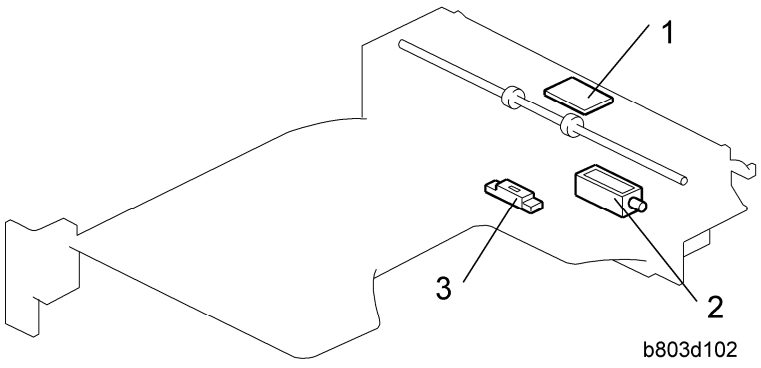
2.1.1 MECHANICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT



1. Exit Roller
2. Junction Gate 2* Solenoid
3. Paper Sensor
4. Paper Tray

* Junction Gate 2 is located in the main frame.

2.1.2 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT



1. 1-bin Control Board
2. Junction Gate 2 Solenoid
3. Paper Sensor

Component Layout

2.1.3 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DESCRIPTIONS

Symbol	Name	Function	Index No.
Sensor			
S1	Paper	Detects whether there is paper on the tray.	3
Solenoid			
SOL1	Junction Gate 2 Solenoid	Controls junction gate 2 in the main frame.	2
PCB			
PCB1	1-bin Control Board	Controls the junction gate 2 solenoid and the LED that indicates when there is paper in the tray.	1

2.2 BASIC OPERATION

At the appropriate time after the leading edge of the first sheet of copy paper reaches the copier's registration roller, the junction gate 2 solenoid turns on to switch junction gate 2 in the main frame to direct the paper to the 1-bin paper tray.

The junction gate 2 solenoid turns off at the appropriate time after the paper is directed to the 1-bin paper tray.

The paper sensor turns on when there is paper in the tray, and the paper indicator turns on.

The tray can be opened for easier jam removal by swinging the tray to the left.

BOOKLET FINISHER & FINISHER SR3020/SR3030/SR4010/SR4020 B804/B805/D373/D374

B804/B805 BOOKLET FINISHER SR3020/SR3030 REVISION HISTORY		
Page	**Date**	**Added/Updated/New**
		None

BOOKLET FINISHER SR3020/ FINISHER SR3030 B804/B805

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT 1

1.1 COVERS 1

1.1.1 EXTERIOR COVERS 1

1.1.2 UPPER TRAY, END FENCE 2

1.2 MAIN UNIT 3

1.2.1 UPPER TRAY LIMIT SENSOR, LIMIT SWITCH 3

1.2.2 POSITIONING ROLLER 4

1.2.3 PROOF TRAY EXIT SENSOR 4

1.2.4 UPPER TRAY HEIGHT SENSORS 1, 2 5

1.2.5 EXIT GUIDE PLATE, UPPER TRAY EXIT SENSOR 5

1.2.6 PROOF TRAY FULL SENSOR 6

1.2.7 FINISHER ENTRANCE SENSOR 7

1.2.8 PRE-STACK TRAY EXIT SENSOR 7

1.3 STAPLER UNIT 8

1.3.1 CORNER STAPLER 8

1.3.2 POSITIONING ROLLER 9

1.4 FOLD UNIT 10

1.4.1 FOLD UNIT 10

1.4.2 FOLD UNIT ENTRANCE SENSOR 12

1.4.3 FOLD UNIT EXIT SENSOR 12

1.4.4 STACK PRESENT SENSOR 13

1.4.5 FOLDING HORIZONTAL SKEW ADJUSTMENT-FOR B804 ONLY 14

1.4.6 FOLD VERTICAL SKEW ADJUSTMENT (FOR B804 ONLY) 17

1.5 BOOKLET STAPLER UNIT 19

1.5.1 BOOKLET STAPLER 19

1.5.2 BOOKLET STAPLER MOTOR 19

2. DETAILED SECTION DESCRIPTIONS 22

2.1 COMPONENT LAYOUT 22

2.1.1 GENERAL LAYOUT 22

2.1.2 ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS 24
2.1.3 SUMMARY OF ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS 28
2.1.4 DRIVE LAYOUT 38
2.2 JUNCTION GATES 40
2.2.1 PROOF MODE 40
2.2.2 SHIFT MODE 40
2.2.3 STAPLE MODE 41
2.3 PRE-STACKING 42
2.4 TRAY MOVEMENT MECHANISM 44
2.4.1 UPPER TRAY 44
2.4.2 LOWER TRAY (B804 ONLY) 46
2.5 CORNER STAPLING 49
2.5.1 STACKING AND JOGGING 49
2.5.2 STAPLER MOVEMENT 50
2.5.3 CORNER STAPLING 52
2.6 BOOKLET STAPLING (B804 ONLY) 53
2.6.1 BOOKLET PRESSURE MECHANISM 53
2.6.2 BOOKLET STAPLING AND FOLDING 54
2.6.3 BOOKLET STAPLING AND FOLDING MECHANISMS 60
2.7 UPPER TRAY OUTPUT 63
2.7.1 FEED OUT 63
2.7.2 FEED OUT STACKING 64
2.8 PUNCH UNIT B702 (FOR B804/B805) 65
2.8.1 OVERVIEW OF OPERATION 65
2.8.2 PUNCH MECHANISMS 67
2.8.3 PUNCH HOPPER MECHANISM 70
2.9 FINISHER JAM DETECTION 72

Read This First

Safety and Symbols

Replacement Procedure Safety

⚠CAUTION

- Turn off the main power switch and unplug the machine before beginning any of the replacement procedures in this manual.

Symbols Used in this Manual

This manual uses the following symbols.

☛: See or Refer to

: Screws

: Connector

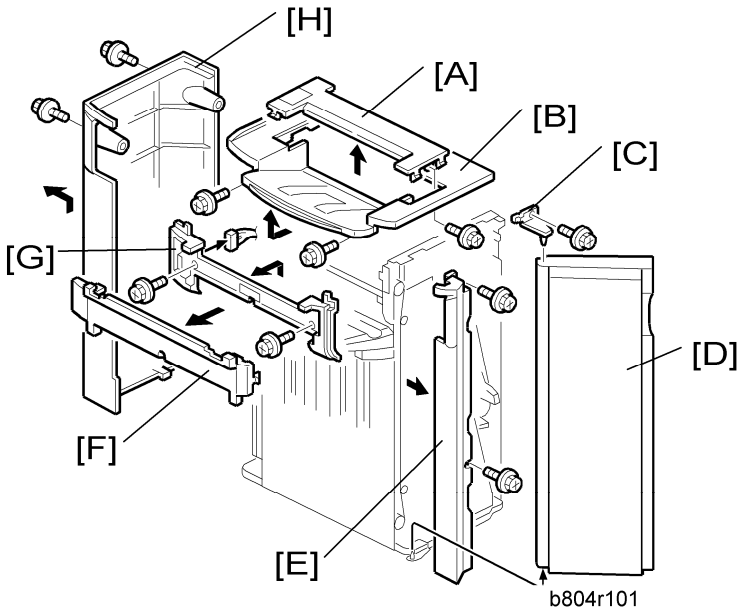
: Clip ring

: E-ring

1. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

1.1 COVERS

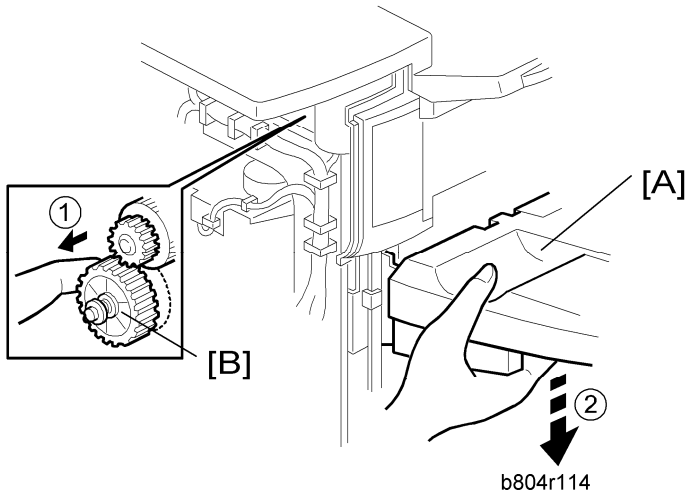
1.1.1 EXTERIOR COVERS



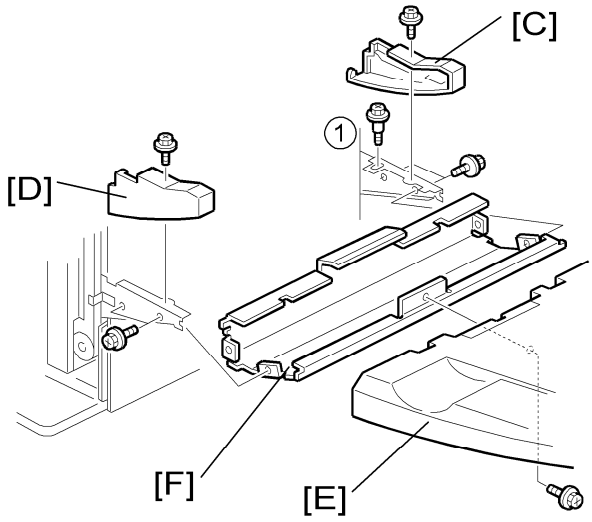
1. Open the front door [D].
2. Small upper cover [A] (x1)
3. Upper cover [B] (x2)
4. Front door bracket [C] (x1)
5. Front door [D]
6. Front left side cover [E] (x2)
7. Cover [F]
8. Paper exit cover [G] (x2)
9. Rear cover [H] (x2)

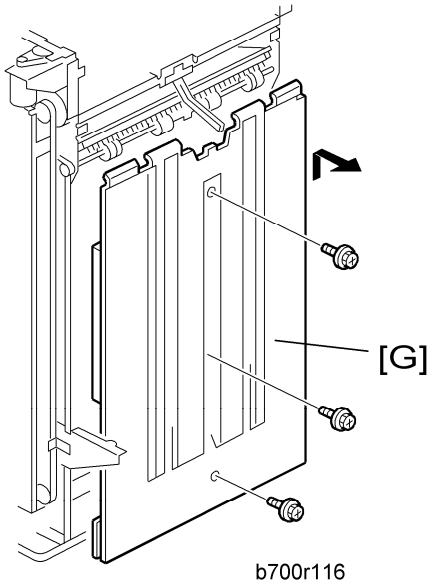
1.1.2 UPPER TRAY, END FENCE

1. Remove the rear cover. (* "Exterior Covers")



1. Support the tray [A] with your right hand.
2. Pull gear [B] toward you ✶ to release.
3. Slowly lower the tray ✸ until it stops.

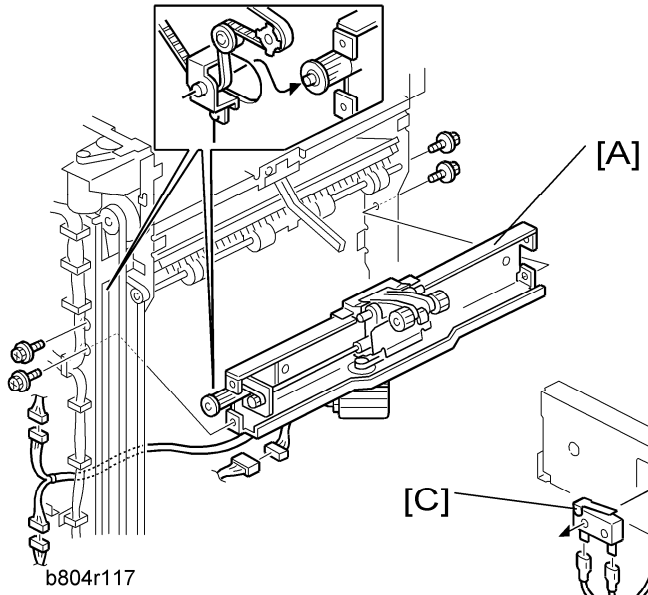


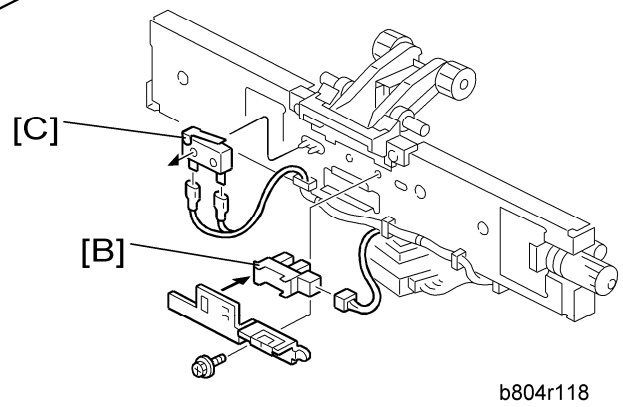


4. Front side cover [C] (x1)
5. Rear side cover [D] (x1)
6. Upper tray [E] (x1)
7. Tray bracket [F] (x4, x1 shoulder screw ✶)
8. End Fence [G](x3)

1.2 MAIN UNIT

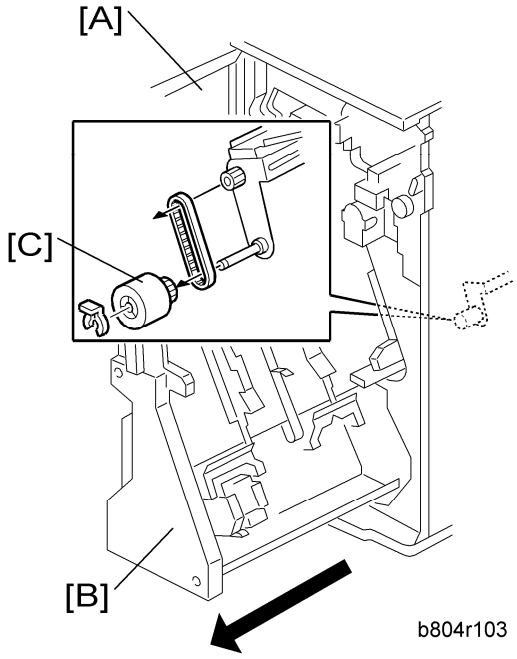
1.2.1 UPPER TRAY LIMIT SENSOR, LIMIT SWITCH





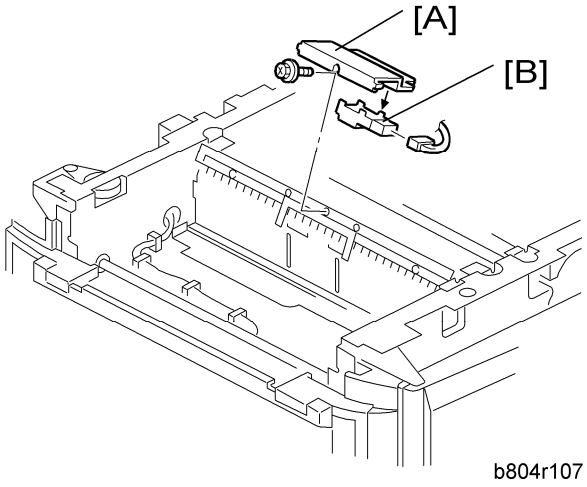
1. Front door, front left side cover, rear cover, upper cover (✉ "Exterior Cover")
2. End fence (☛1.1.2 "Upper Tray, End Fence")
3. Upper tray exit mechanism [A] (🔩 x4, 🖐 x3)
4. Upper tray limit sensor [B] (🔩 x1, 🖐 x1)
5. Upper tray limit switch [C] (🖐 x2)

1.2.2 POSITIONING ROLLER



1. Open the front door [A].
2. Pull out the stapling unit [B].
3. Positioning roller [C] (⟲ x1, timing belt x1)

1.2.3 PROOF TRAY EXIT SENSOR

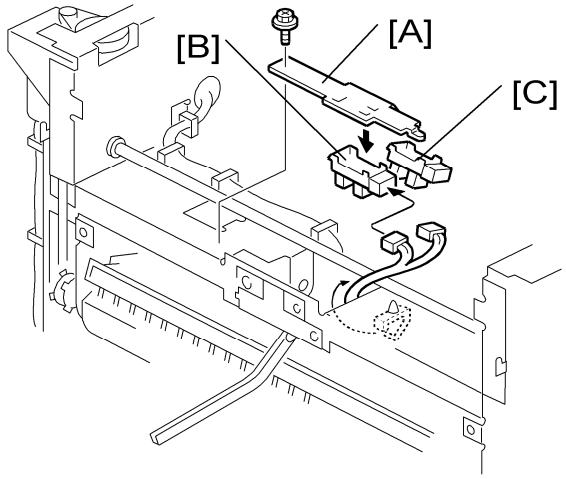


1. Small upper cover (☛1.1.1 "Exterior Cover")
2. Proof tray exit sensor bracket [A] (☞ x1)

Main Unit

3. Proof tray exit sensor [B] (☞ x1)

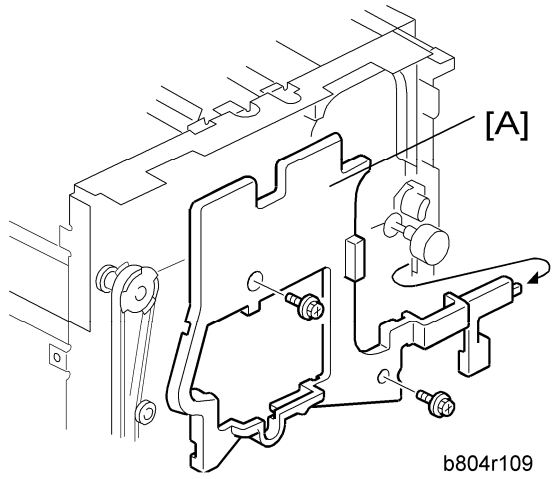
1.2.4 UPPER TRAY HEIGHT SENSORS 1, 2



b804r108

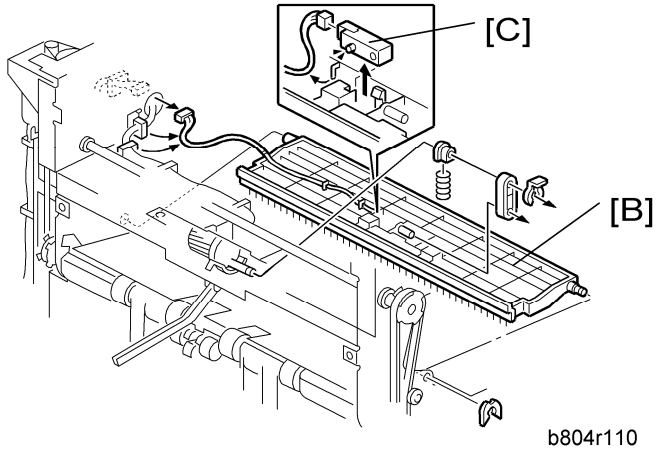
1. Small upper cover, upper cover (☛1.1.1 "Exterior Cover")
2. Upper tray paper height sensor bracket [A] (☞ x1)
3. Upper tray paper height sensor [B] – staple mode (S08) (☞ x1)
4. Upper tray paper height sensor [C] – non-staple mode (S09) (☞ x1)

1.2.5 EXIT GUIDE PLATE, UPPER TRAY EXIT SENSOR



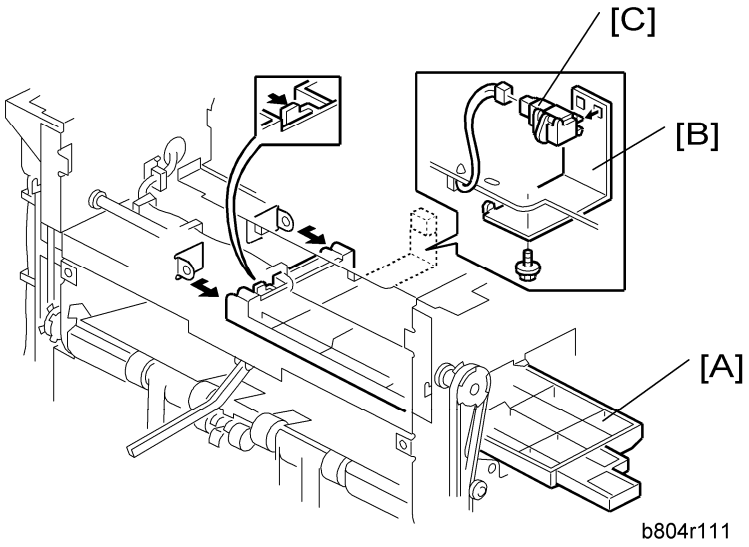
b804r109

1. Rear cover, Upper covers, Front door, Cover, Paper exit cover (☛1.1.1 "Exterior Cover")
2. Inner cover [A] (☞ x2)



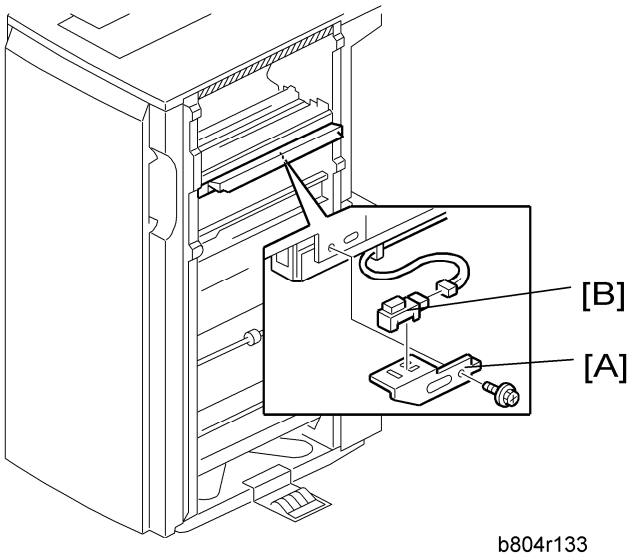
3. Exit guide plate [B] (x1, Link and spring, x1, x1)
4. Upper tray exit sensor [C] (S6) (x1)

1.2.6 PROOF TRAY FULL SENSOR



1. Exit guide plate. (1.2.5 "Exit Guide Plate, Upper Tray Exit Sensor")
2. Guide plate [A] (hook x 2)
3. Sensor bracket [B] (x1)
4. Proof tray full sensor [C] (S11) (x1)

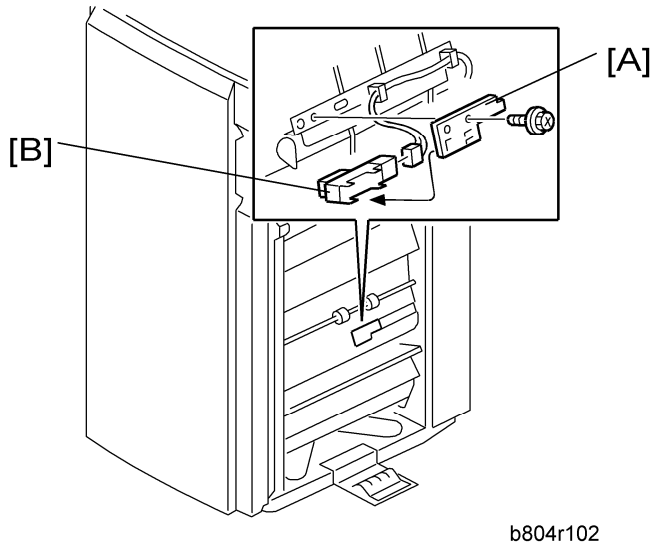
1.2.7 FINISHER ENTRANCE SENSOR



b804r133

1. Disconnect the finisher if it is connected to the copier.
2. Sensor bracket [A] (x1)
3. Finisher entrance sensor [B] (S1) (x1)

1.2.8 PRE-STACK TRAY EXIT SENSOR

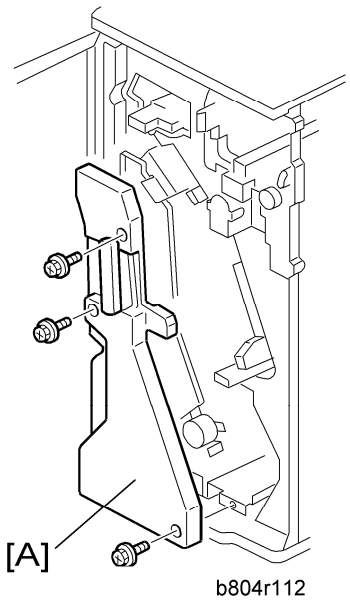


b804r102

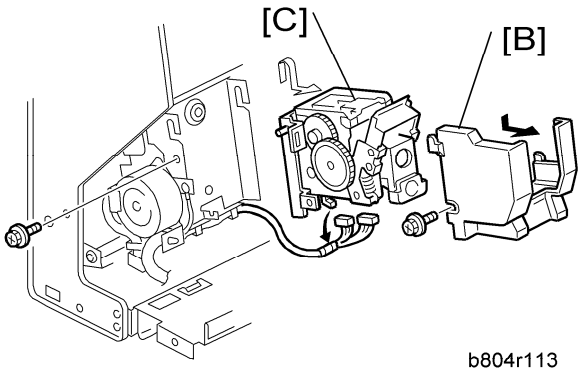
1. Disconnect the finisher if it is connected to the copier.
2. Sensor bracket [A]
3. Pre-stack tray exit sensor [B] (S2)

1.3 STAPLER UNIT

1.3.1 CORNER STAPLER



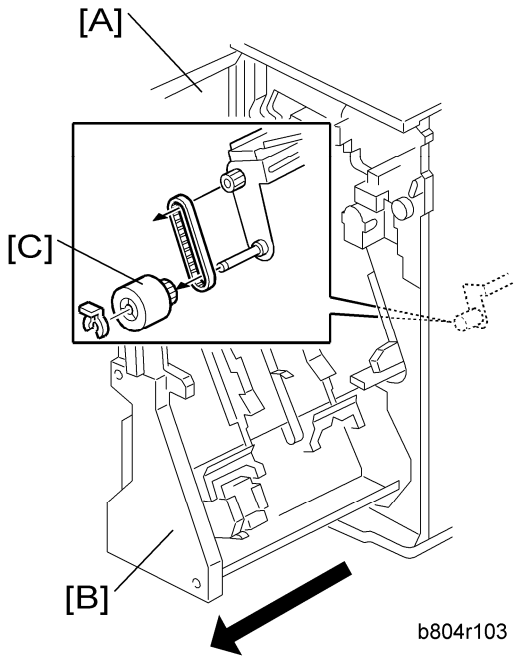
b804r112



b804r113

1. Open the front door.
2. Pull out the stapler unit.
3. Inner cover [A] (x3)
4. Stapler unit holder [B] (x1)
5. Corner stapler [C] (M20) (x1)

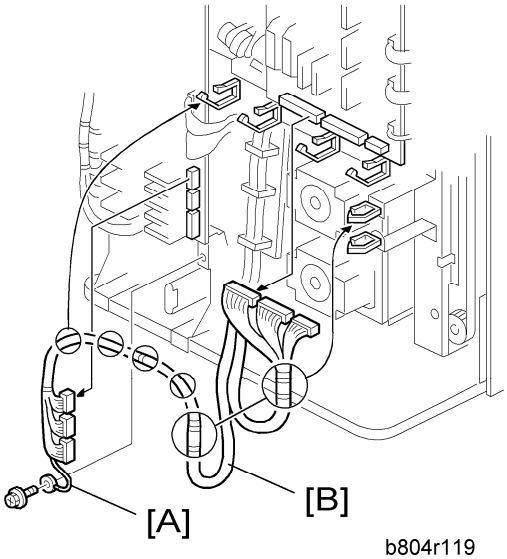
1.3.2 POSITIONING ROLLER



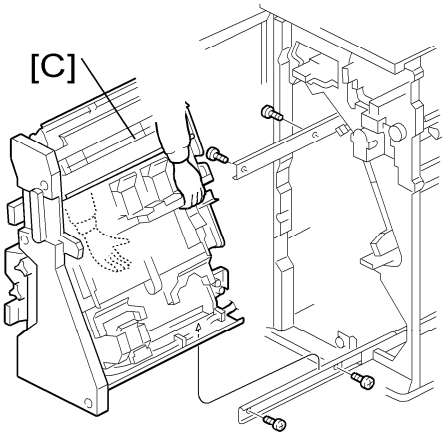
1. Open the front door [A].
2. Pull out the stapling unit [B].
3. Positioning roller [C] (x1, timing belt x1)

1.4 FOLD UNIT

1.4.1 FOLD UNIT



b804r119



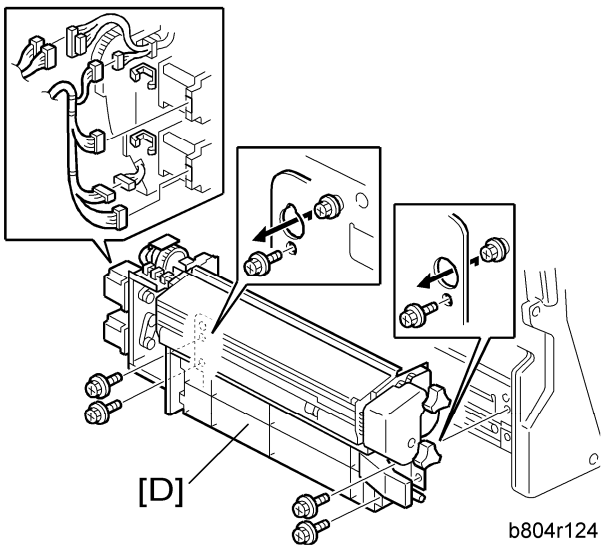
b804r801

1. Remove the back cover (☛1.1.1 "Exterior Covers").
2. Open the front door.

⚠CAUTION

- The stapler unit is heavy.

3. Ground cable [A] (🔩 x1)
4. Harness [B] (🔌 x6, 🔌 x6)
5. Stapler unit [C] (🔩 x4)



b804r124

Fold Unit

Important

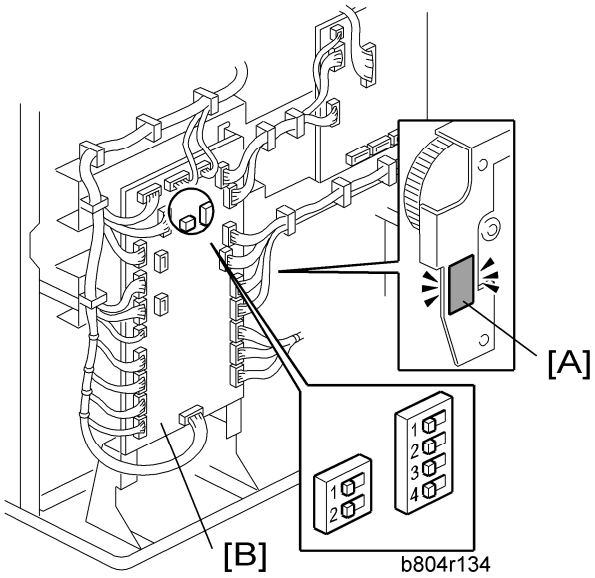
- Support the fold unit with your hand to prevent it from falling.

CAUTION

- The fold unit is heavy.

6. Folding unit [D] (x4, x2, x6)

If you have replaced the folding unit:

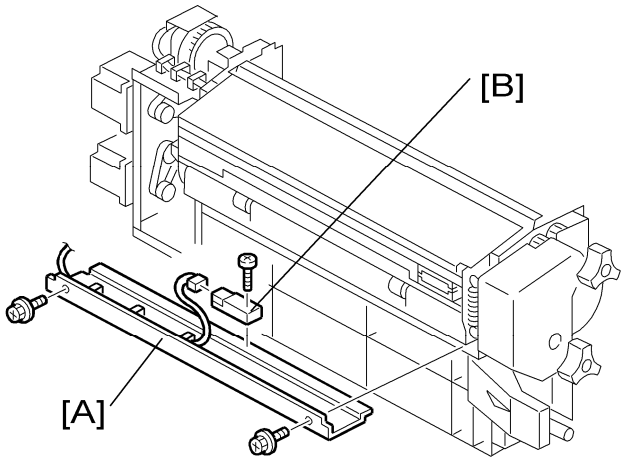


1. Read the DIP SW settings on the decal [A] attached to the back of the new folding unit.
2. Check the DIP SW settings on the main board [B] of the finisher.
3. If these settings are different, change these settings to match the settings printed on the decal attached to the folding unit.

Note

- Set DIP switches 1 to 4 (the switch set on the right). Do not touch the other DIP switches.

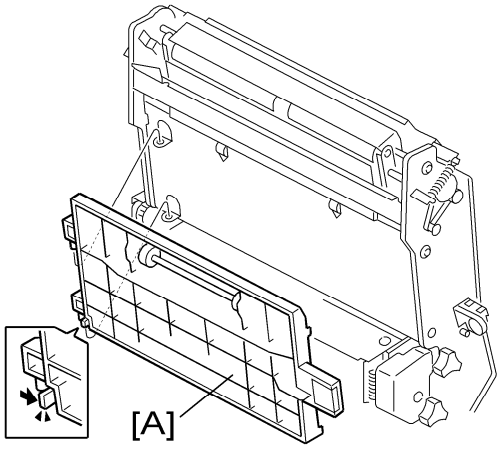
1.4.2 FOLD UNIT ENTRANCE SENSOR



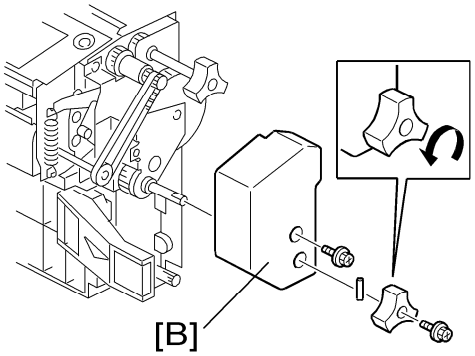
b804r132

1. Pull out the stapler unit (☛1.3.2 "Positioning Roller").
2. Fold unit entrance sensor bracket [A] (☞ x2)
3. Fold unit entrance sensor [B] (S26) (☞ x1, ☞ x1)

1.4.3 FOLD UNIT EXIT SENSOR



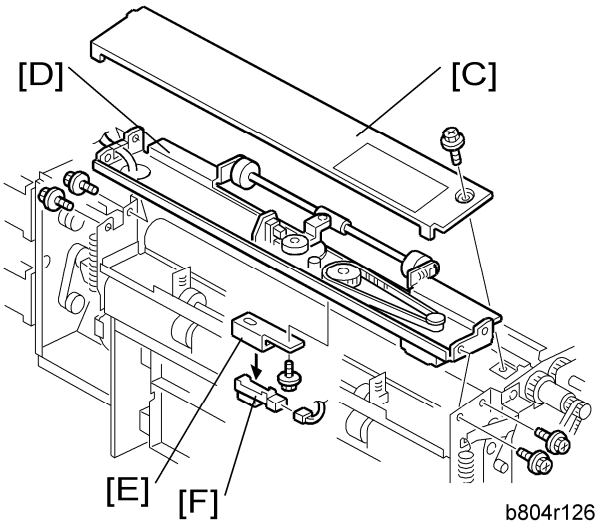
b804r121



b804r125

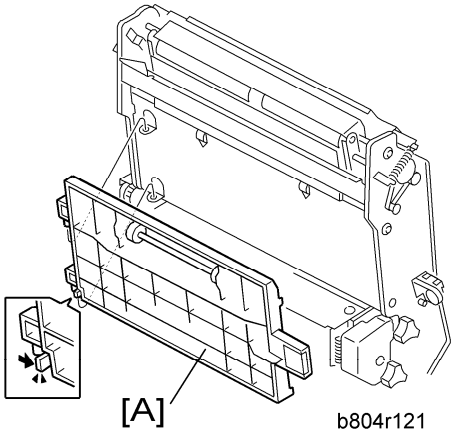
1. Open the front door.
2. Pull out the stapler unit (☛1.3.2 "Positioning Roller").
3. Fold unit vertical guide plate [A]
4. Fold unit inner cover [B] (☞ x2, Spring pin x1)

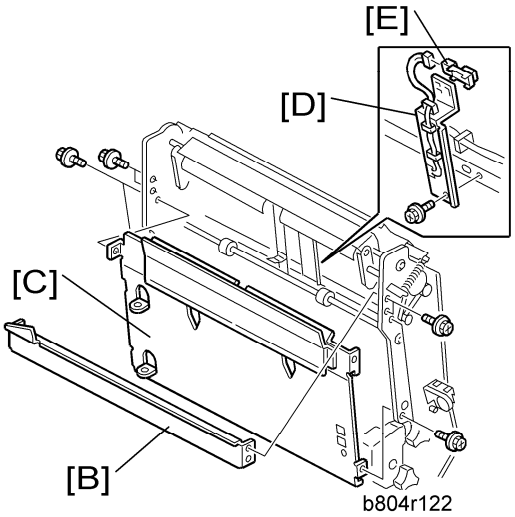
Fold Unit



5. Fold unit upper cover [C] (x1)
6. Paper clamp mechanism [D] (x4)
7. Fold unit exit sensor bracket [E] (x1)
8. Fold unit exit sensor [F] (S31) (x1)

1.4.4 STACK PRESENT SENSOR





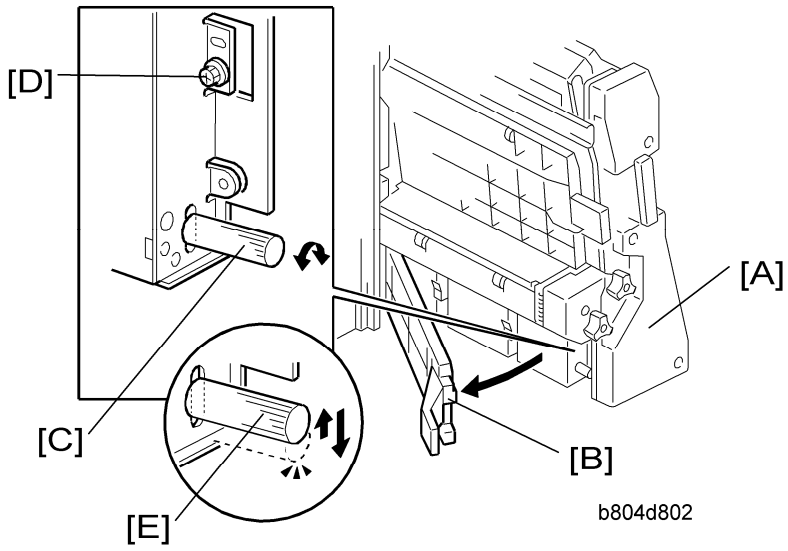
Important

- If you intend to correct the horizontal and vertical skew for the fold unit at the same time, do those adjustments first, then replace the sensor. (1.4.5 "Folding Horizontal Skew Adjustment" or "Fold Vertical Skew Adjustment")

1. Remove the stapler unit (1.4.1 "Fold Unit")

2. Guide plate [A].
3. Stay [B] (x4)
4. Left plate [C] (x4)
5. Sensor bracket [D] (x1)
6. Stack present sensor [E] (S32) (x1)

1.4.5 FOLDING HORIZONTAL SKEW ADJUSTMENT (FOR B804 ONLY)



Important

- The fold unit is adjusted for optimum performance before the finisher is shipped from the factory. Do this adjustment only if the edges of folded booklets are not even.

1. Switch the copier on and enter the SP mode.
2. Europe, Asia: Use **SP6-134-001** (this is for A3 paper). North America: Use **SP6-134-005** (this is for DLT paper).

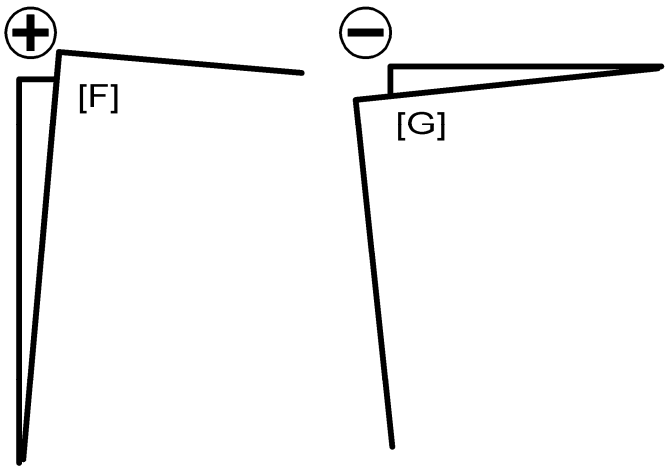
Note

- If the original setting of SP6-134-001 or -005 is not "0", then you must do the vertical skew adjustment (1.4.6 "Fold Vertical Skew Adjustment") after you finish this horizontal skew procedure.

3. Use the 10-key pad to input "-2" (mm) for the SP value. (Press ●/× to enter the minus sign.)
4. Press [#] then exit the SP mode.

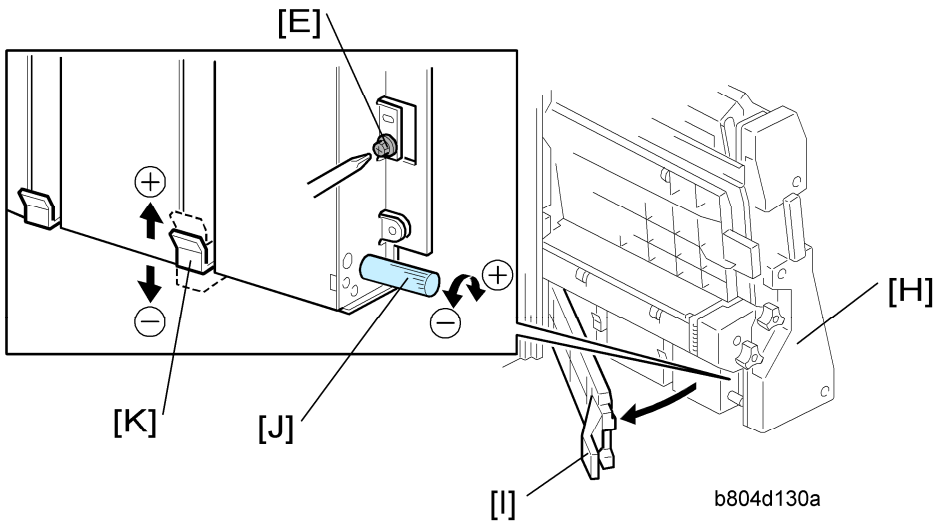
Fold Unit

5. Open the front door and pull the stapler unit [A] out of the finisher.
6. Open the guide plate [B].
7. Loosen the adjustment screw [C] and then tighten until it stops. (Do not over tighten.)
8. Remove the lock screw [D].
9. Raise the tip [E] of the adjustment screw very slightly and allow it to descend under its own weight.



b804r901

10. Push the stapler unit into the finisher and close the front door.
11. Do a folding test.
    - Switch the copier on.
    - Put one page of A3 or DLT paper in the ARDF.
    - On the copier operation panel, select booklet stapling.
    - Press [Start]. One sheet is folded.
12. Remove the sheet from the lower tray.
13. Hold the folded sheet with the creased side pointing down and face-up (the same way that it came out of the finisher).
14. Referring to the diagram, determine if the skew is + [F] or - [G].



15. Open the front door of the finisher and pull the stapler unit [H] out.
16. Open the guide plate [I].
17. Turn the adjustment screw [J] to correct the amount of skew you measured from the test sheet.
    - For + skew [F], turn the adjustment screw (clockwise).
    - For – skew [G], turn the adjustment screw to the left (counter-clockwise).
    - Every click in the +/– direction adjusts the fold position by 0.1 mm by moving the bottom fence [K].
18. Raise the tip of the adjustment screw [J] and allow it to lower under its own weight.
19. Attach and tighten the lock screw [L].
20. Push the stapler unit into the machine, close the front door, then turn the copier on.
21. Europe, Asia: Do **SP6-134-001** (this is for A3 paper). North America: **Do SP6-134-005** (this is for DLT paper).
22. Reset it to "0".
23. Do the test again.
24. If the result is satisfactory, this completes the adjustment. -or- If some skew remains, repeat this adjustment.

Note

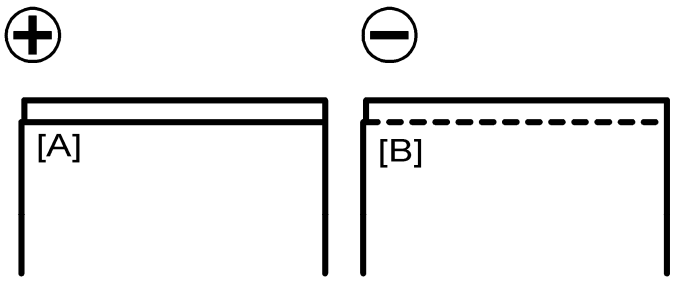
- After doing this adjustment, adjust for vertical skew, if necessary. (☛1.4.6 "Fold Vertical Skew Adjustment")

1.4.6 FOLD VERTICAL SKEW ADJUSTMENT (FOR B804 ONLY)

Important

- The fold unit is adjusted for optimum performance before the finisher is shipped from the factory. Do this adjustment only if the edges of folded booklets are not even.

1. Switch the copier on.
2. Do a folding test.
   - Switch the copier on.
   - Put one page of A3 or DLT paper in the ARDF.
   - On the copier operation panel, select booklet stapling.
   - Press [Start]. One sheet is folded.
3. Hold the folded sheet with the creased side pointing down, and face-up (the same way that it came out of the finisher).



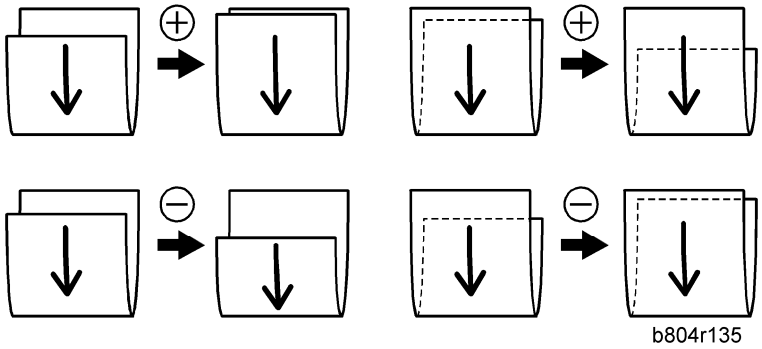
b804r902

4. Referring to the diagram, determine if the skew is positive [A] or negative [B].
5. Measure the amount of skew.
6. Enter the SP mode
   - Europe, Asia: Use **SP6-134-001** (this is for A3 paper).
   - North America: Use **SP6-134-005** (this is for DLT paper).
7. Enter one-half the measured amount of skew. Example: If the measure amount of skew is -1.2 mm, enter -0.6 mm

   Note

   - The range for measurement is –3.0 mm to +3.0 mm in 0.2 mm steps for every notch adjustment.
8. Exit the SP mode and do the test again (steps 2 to 5).
9. Repeat this procedure until the skew is corrected.

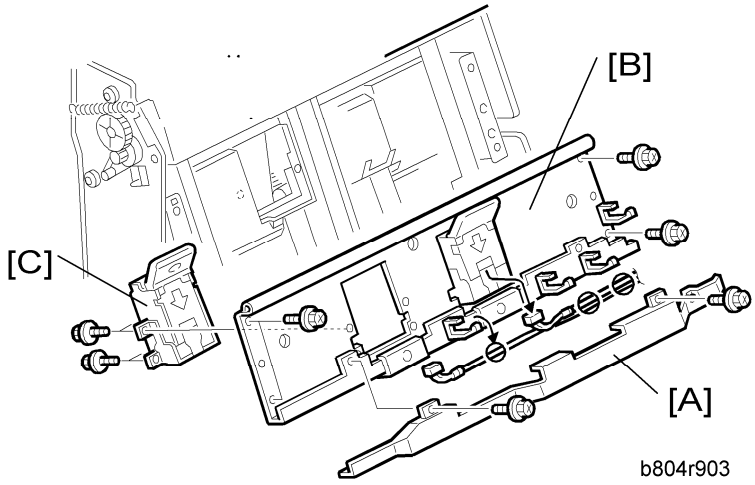
   The illustration below shows the effects of +/- adjustment with SP6113. (The vertical arrows show the direction of paper feed.)



b804r135

1.5 BOOKLET STAPLER UNIT

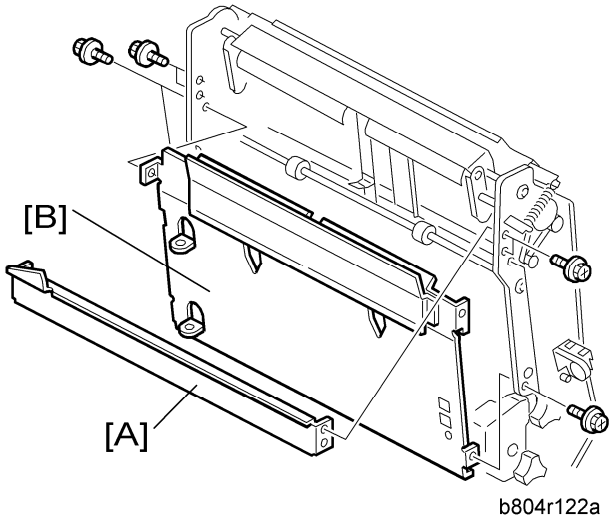
1.5.1 BOOKLET STAPLER



1. Open the front door.
2. Pull out the stapler unit (☛1.2.2 "Positioning Roller").
3. Harness cover [A] (x2)
4. Booklet stapler support stay [B] (x4, x2, x4)
5. Stapler [C] (x4)

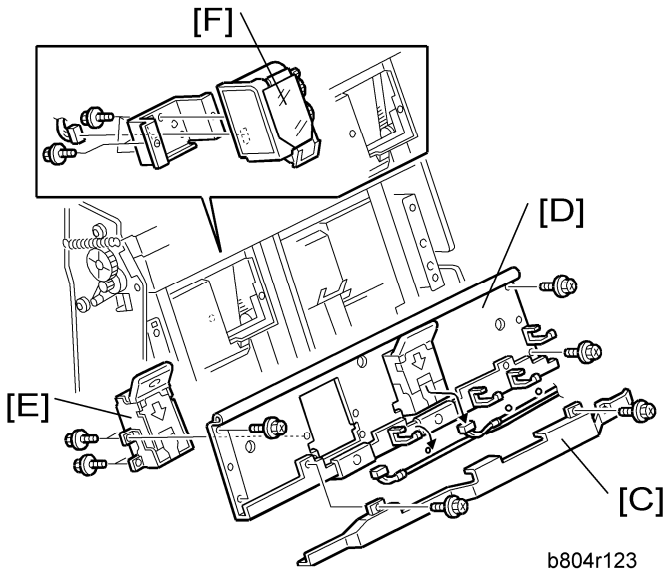
1.5.2 BOOKLET STAPLER MOTOR

1. Open the front door.
2. Remove the stapler unit. (☛1.4.1 "Fold Unit")



b804r122a

3. Stay [A] (x4).
4. Left plate [B] (x4)



b804r123

5. Harness cover [C] (x2)
6. Booklet stapler support stay [D] (x4, x2, x4)
7. Booklet stapler [E] (x4)
8. Booklet stapler motor [F] (x2, x1)

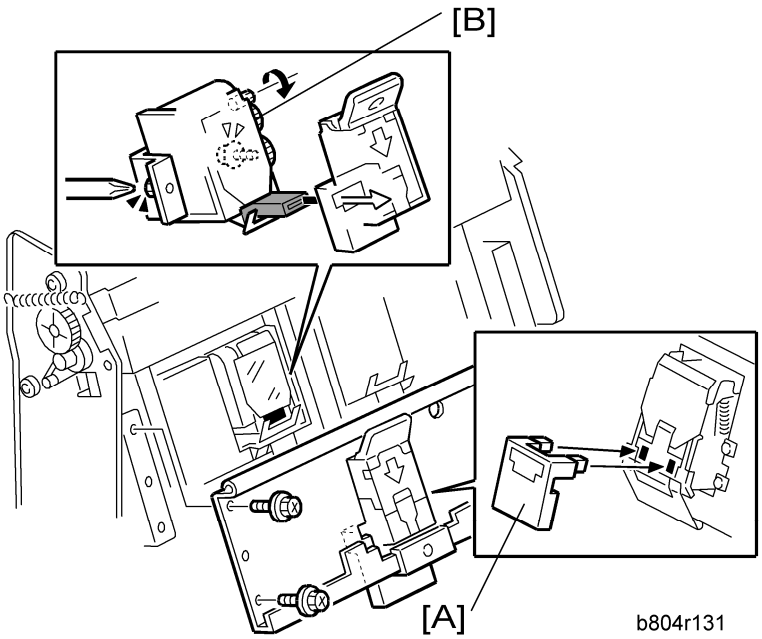
To Reattach the Booklet Stapler Motor

1. Reattach the booklet stapler motor.

Important

- Do not tighten the screws.

Booklet Stapler Unit



2. Attach the special tool [A] and reattach the booklet stapler stay.

Note

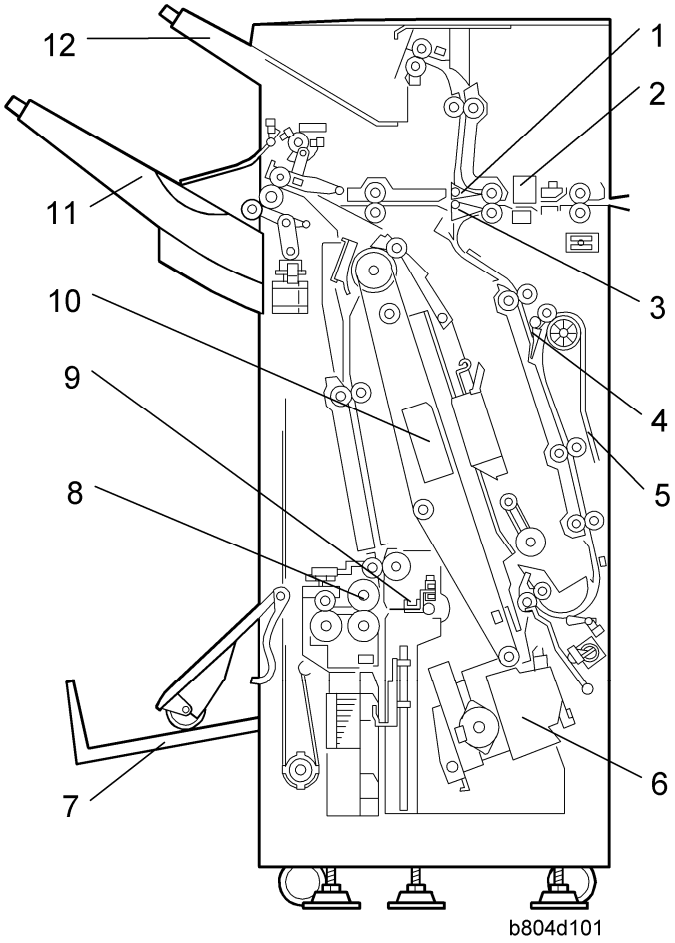
- This tool is included with the stapler spare part.

3. Turn the gear [B] with your finger until it stops.
4. Tighten the screws to attach to the booklet stapler motor.
5. Remove the stay again and remove the special tool.
6. Reattach the booklet stapler stay.
7. Push the stapler unit into the machine.

2. DETAILED SECTION DESCRIPTIONS

2.1 COMPONENT LAYOUT

2.1.1 GENERAL LAYOUT



1. Proof Tray Junction Gate	7. Lower Tray (Booklet)*[1]
2. Punch Unit	8. Folder Rollers*[1]
3. Stapler Junction Gate	9. Folder Plate*[1]
4. Pre-Stack Junction Gate	10. Booklet Stapler*[1]
5. Pre-Stack Tray	11. Upper Tray (Shift)
6. Corner Stapler (M20)	12. Proof Tray

Component Layout

*[1]: B804 Only

Paper direction

The operation of the proof tray and stapler junction gates direct the flow of the paper once it enters the finisher:

Proof Junction Gate	Stapler Junction Gate	Paper Feeds
Closed	Closed	Paper feeds straight through
Open	Closed	Paper feeds to the proof tray
Closed	**Open**	Paper feds to the staple tray

Proof tray

Copies are sent to the proof tray (12) when neither sorting nor stapling are selected for the job.

Upper tray

The upper tray (11) receives copies that are sorted and shifted and also receives copies that have been corner stapled. Corner stapling is provided on both the B804 and the B805.

Pre-stack tray

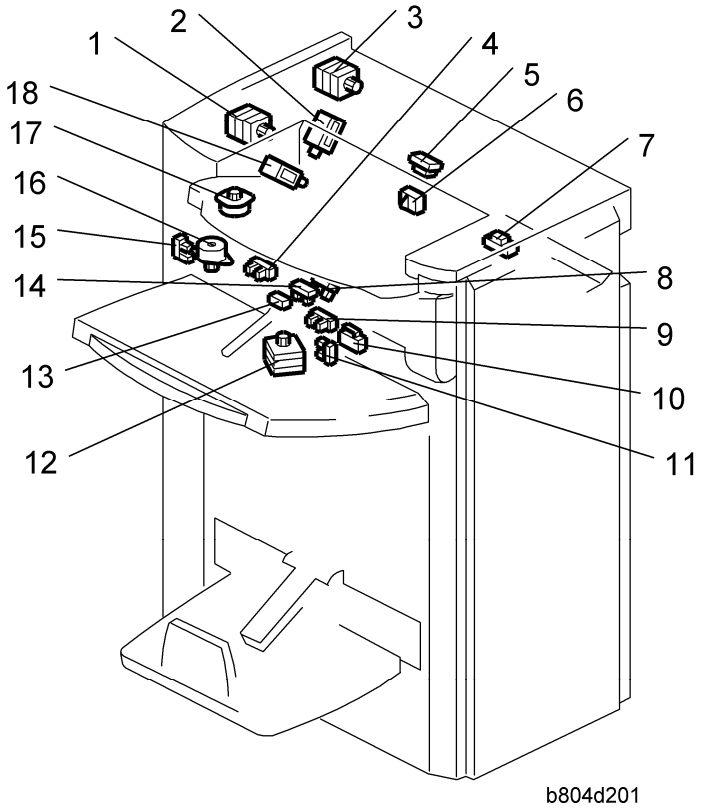
The pre-stack tray (5) has a switchback mechanism to increase the productivity of stapling. (☛2.3 "Pre-Stacking) Pre-stacking is done for corner stapling in the B804/B805 and for booklet stapling in the B804.

Lower tray

The lower tray (7) receives copies that have been center folded and stapled (booklet stapling). Booklet stapling is not provided on the B805.

2.1.2 ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS

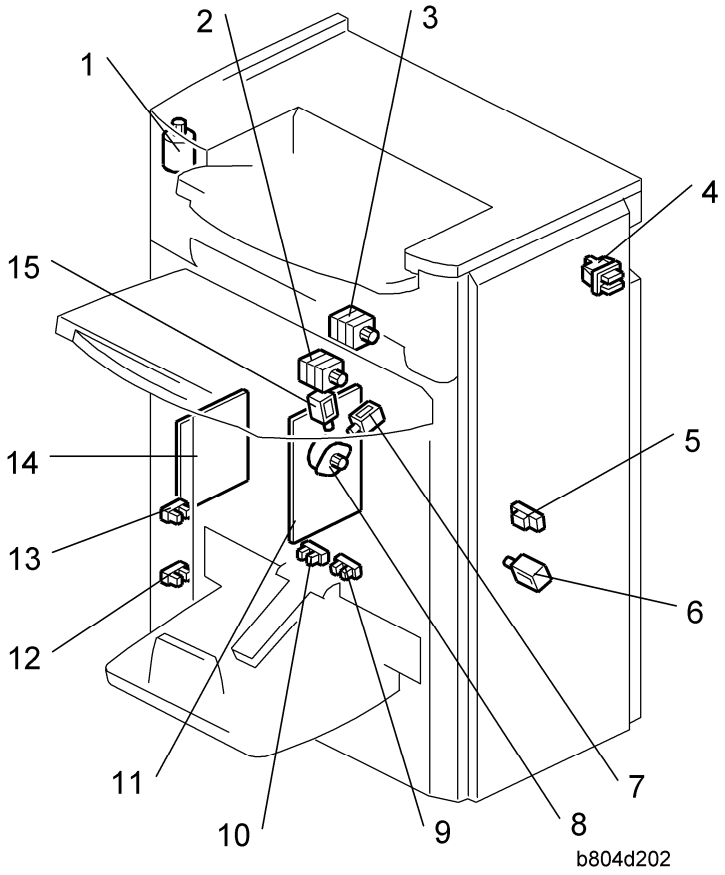
Upper Area B804/B805



1. Upper/Proof Exit Motor (M4) 2. Stapling Tray Junction Gate Solenoid (SOL2) 3. Upper Transport Motor (M2) 4. Exit Guide Plate HP Sensor (S7) 5. Proof Tray Exit Sensor (S10) 6. Proof Tray Full Sensor (S11) 7. Finisher Entrance Sensor (S1) 8. Upper Tray Paper Height Sensor (S9) (Non-Staple Mode) 9. Upper Tray Limit Sensor (S12)	10. Upper Tray Limit Switch (SW2) 11. Stacking Roller HP Sensor (S13) 12. Stacking Sponge Roller Motor (M10) 13. Upper Tray Exit Sensor (S6) 14. Upper Tray Paper Height Sensor (S8) (Staple Mode) 15. Shift Roller HP Sensor (S5) 16. Shift Roller Motor (M18) 17. Exit Guide Plate Motor (M19) 18. Proof Junction Gate Solenoid (SOL1)

Component Layout

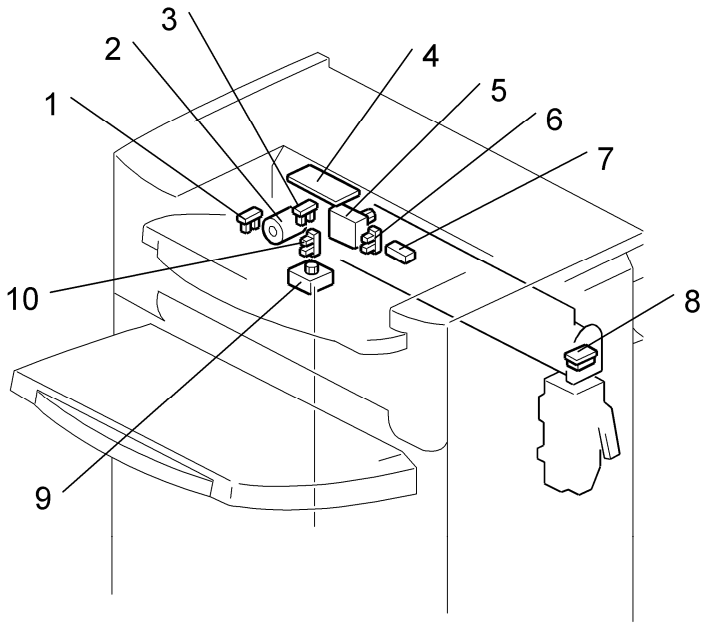
Lower Area B804/B805



1. Upper Tray Lift Motor (M21) 2. Lower Transport Motor (M3) 3. Entrance Motor (M1) 4. Front Door Safety Switch (SW1) 5. Pre-Stack Tray Exit Sensor (S2) 6. Stapling Edge Pressure Plate Solenoid (SOL4) 7. Positioning Roller Solenoid (SOL3)	8. Positioning Roller Motor (M14) 9. Lower Tray Full Sensor – Front (S34)*1 10. Lower Tray Full Sensor – Rear (S33)*1 11. Main Board (PCB1) 12. Upper Tray Full Sensor – (S20) *2 13. Upper Tray Full Sensor – (S19) 14. Booklet Stapler Board (PCB2)*1 15. Booklet Pressure Roller Solenoid – (SOL5) *1

*1: B804 Only, *2: B805 Only

Punch Unit B702

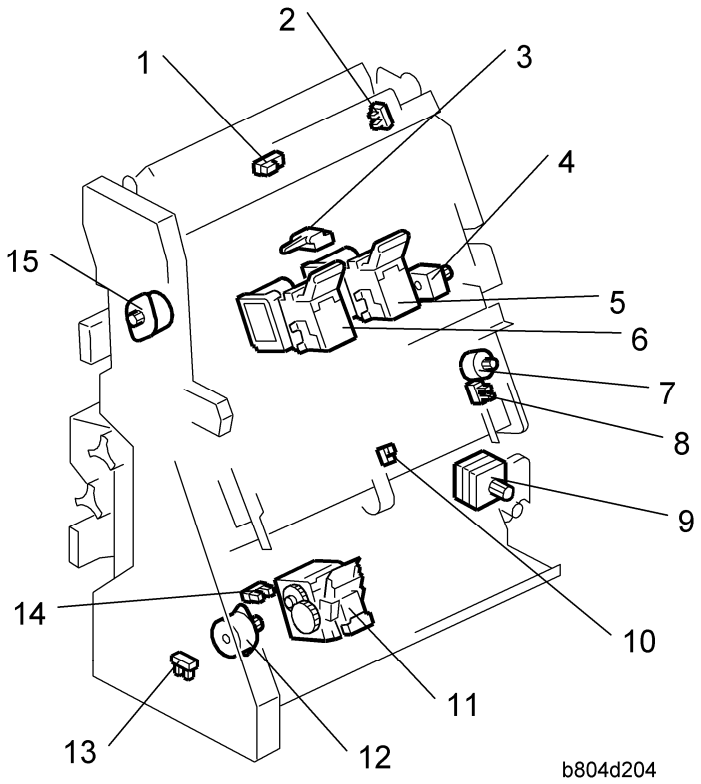


b804d203a

1. Punch Encoder Sensor (S24) 2. Punch Drive Motor (M24) 3. Punch HP Sensor (S24) 4. Punch Unit Board (PCB3) 5. Paper Position Sensor Slide Motor (M7)	6. Paper Position Slide HP Sensor (S22) 7. Paper Position Sensor (S3) 8. Punch Hopper Full Sensor (S4) 9. Punch Movement Motor (M9) 10. Punch Movement HP Sensor (S21)

Component Layout

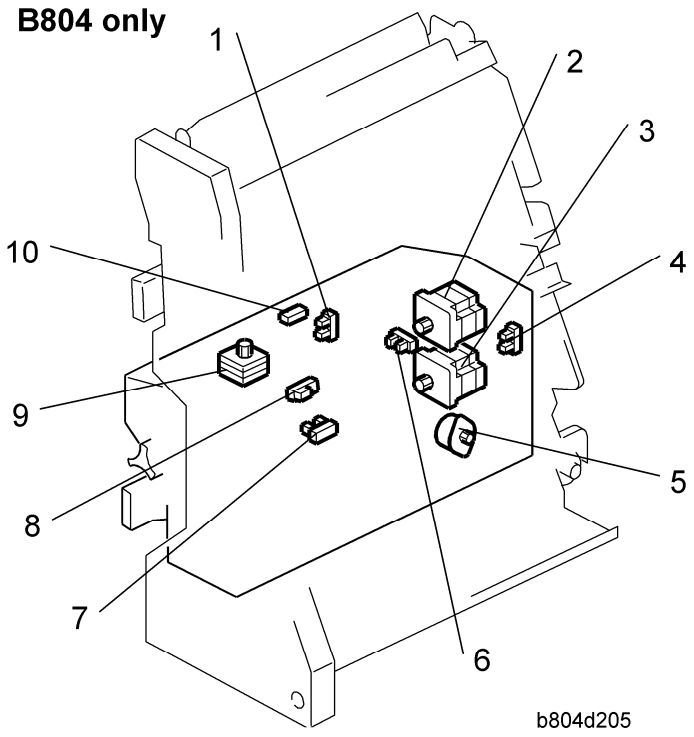
Stacker/Stapler - B804/B805



1. Stack Present Sensor (S32)*1	7. Jogger Fence Motor (M15)
2. Stack Junction Gate HP Sensor (S27)*1	8. Jogger Fence HP Sensor (S15)
3. Stack Feed Out Belt HP Sensor (S16)	9. Corner Stapler Movement Motor (M6)
4. Feed Out Belt Motor (M5)	10. Stapling Tray Paper Sensor (S14)
5. Booklet Stapler EH185R – Rear (M23)*1	11. Corner Stapler EH530 (M20)
6. Booklet Stapler EH185R – Front (M22)*1	12. Corner Stapler Rotation Motor (M13)
	13. Corner Stapler HP Sensor (S17)
	14. Stapler Rotation HP Sensor (S18)
	15. Stack Junction Gate Motor (M17) *1

*1: B804 Only

B804 Fold unit



1. Clamp Roller HP Sensor (S25)	6. Fold Cam HP Sensor (S30)
2. Fold Roller Motor (M12)	7. Fold Bottom Fence HP Sensor (S28)
3. Fold Plate Motor (M11)	8. Fold Unit Entrance Sensor (S26)
4. Fold Plate HP Sensor (S29)	9. Clamp Roller Retraction Motor (M8)
5. Fold Unit Bottom Fence Lift Motor (M16)	10. Fold Unit Exit Sensor (S31)

2.1.3 SUMMARY OF ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS

Here is a general summary of all the electrical components of the B804/B805 finishers.

Note

- In the table below a number that appears in bold text (**M8**, etc.) denotes a component that is on the 2000/3000 Sheet Finisher B804 only.

Component Layout

No.	Component	Function
Boards (PCB)		
PCB1	Main Board	The main board that controls the finisher
PCB2	Booklet Stapler Board	A separate board that controls booklet finishing.
PCB3	Punch Unit Board	The board that controls the punch unit.
Motors		
M1	Finisher Entrance Motor	Drives 1) the finisher entrance rollers, 2) and the punch waste transport belt of the punch unit.
M2	Upper Transport Motor	Drives the paper feed rollers that feed paper 1) to the proof tray, 2) straight-through to the upper tray, 3) the pre-stack tray entrance roller.
M3	Lower Transport Motor	Drives paper feed rollers forward and reverse in the pre-stack tray for the switchback, and drives the other rollers in the lower transport area.
M4	Upper/Proof Tray Exit Motor	Drives 1) proof tray exit rollers, 2) extension and retraction of the stacking sponge roller, 3) upper tray exit rollers.
M5	Feed Out Belt Motor	Drives the feed out belt that moves the stapled stacks out of the stapling tray after stapling.
M6	Corner Stapler Movement Motor	Moves the corner stapler horizontally on a steel rod to position the stapler at the stapling position at 1) the front, 2) the rear (straight stapling), 3) the rear (diagonal stapling), or 4) the front and rear for double stapling.
M7	Paper Position Sensor Slide Motor	Drives the movement of the paper position slide that holds the paper position sensor (S3) that detects the position of the paper.
M8	Clamp Roller Retraction Motor	Drives a large cam that alternately clamps and unclamps the clamp retraction roller, the idle roller of the clamp roller pair. When these rollers are clamped, they

No.	Component	Function
		are part of the paper feed path and feed the stack toward the bottom fence of the fold unit. When the idle roller is retracted, the stacks falls a very short distance (3 mm) onto the fold unit bottom fence below. These rollers remain unclamped while the bottom fence positions the stack for folding and while the stack is folded by the fold rollers.
M9	Punch Movement Motor	Drives the front/back movement of the punch unit to position it correctly for stapling the paper below.
M10	Stacking Sponge Roller Motor	Rotates the stacking roller that drags each sheet back against the end fence to jog the bottom of each sheet after feed out to the upper tray.
M11	Fold Plate Motor	Drives the fold plate that pushes the center of the stack into the nip of the fold rollers to start the fold.
M12	Fold Roller Motor	Rotates forward and drives the fold rollers that fold the stack and feed it out of the fold unit, reverses to feed the fold once more into the fold unit, and then rotates forward again to feed the fold out of the fold unit.
M13	Corner Stapler Rotation Motor	Swivels the corner stapler and positions it so the staple fires at an oblique angle at the rear corner of the paper stack.
M14	Positioning Roller Motor	Drives the positioning roller in the stapling tray.
M15	Jogger Fence Motor	Drives the jogger fences in the stapling tray to jog both sides of the stack before stapling.
M16	Fold Unit Bottom Fence Lift Motor	Raises the bottom fence and stops when the center of the vertical stack is opposite the edge of the horizontal fold blade. The distance for raising the blade is prescribed as one-half the size of the paper selected for the job. For large paper, (A3, B4) the bottom fence first

Component Layout

No.	Component	Function
		lowers the stack 10 mm below the fold position, and then raises it to the fold position.
M17	Stack Junction Gate Motor	Drives the large cam that operates the stack junction gate at the top of the stapling tray. When this gate is open, it directs the ascending stack to the upper tray if it has been corner stapled, or if it is closed the gate turns the booklet stapled stack down so it falls onto the bottom fence of the folding unit.
M18	Shift Roller Motor	Drives the shift roller that operates in shift mode to stagger document sets as they feed out to the upper tray (making them easier to separate).
M19	Exit Guide Plate Motor	Drives the mechanism that raises and lowers the exit guide plate.
M20	Corner Stapler EH530	This is the roving corner stapler, mounted on a steel rail that staples 1) at the front, 2) at the rear (straight staple), 3) at the rear (diagonal staple), and 4) font and rear (two staples).
M21	Upper Tray Lift Motor	Raises and lowers the upper tray during feed out to keep the tray at the optimum height until it is full.
M22	Booklet Stapler EH185R: Front	Booklet stapler. Staples paper stacks in the center before they are folded.
M23	Booklet Stapler EH185R: Rear	Booklet stapler. Staples paper stacks in the center before they are folded.
M24	Punch Drive Motor	Fires the punches that punch the holes in the paper.
Sensors		
S1	Finisher Entrance Sensor	Provides two functions: (1) Detects paper entering the finisher from the copier, and (2) Signals a jam if it detects paper at the entrance when the copier is switched on.

No.	Component	Function
S2	Pre-stack Tray Exit Sensor	Detects 1) paper fed from the pre-stack tray to the stapling tray, and detects 2) paper in the pre-stack when the copier is switched on. (This sensor performs no timing function. The entire flow of paper through the pre-stacking mechanism is controlled by motor pulse counts.)
S3	Paper Position Sensor	The photosensor that detects the edge of the paper and sends this information to the punch unit board where it is used to position the punch for punching the holes in the paper.
S4	Punch Hopper Full Sensor	1) A photosensor that detects and signals that the punch hopper is filled with punch waste and needs emptying, and 2) confirms the presence of the punch hopper and signals an error if it is missing or not installed completely.
S5	Shift Roller HP Sensor	Located near the shift roller motor, controls the front-to-back movement of the shift roller as shifts paper during straight-through feed.
S6	Upper Tray Exit Sensor	A flat, photo sensor located inside the guide plate, detects the leading edge and trailing edge of the paper as it feeds out to the upper tray during straight-through jobs (with and without stapling). When paper is fed to the upper tray, at the paper output slot this sensor signals an error when it detects (1) paper has failed to leave the paper exit (lag error), (2) detects paper has failed to arrive at the paper exit (late error), (3) detects paper is in the exit slot when the machine is turned on.
S7	Exit Guide Plate HP Sensor	Controls the vertical movement of the control exit guide . The guide plate is in the home position when the guide plate is down and the actuator interrupts the sensor gap.

Component Layout

No.	Component	Function
S8	Upper Tray Paper Height Sensor (Staple Mode)	This is the upper sensor of the upper/lower paper height sensor pair that controls the lift of the upper tray. This sensor detects the paper height of the stack in the upper tray when the copier is operating in the staple mode.
S9	Upper Tray Paper Height Sensor (Non-Staple Mode)	This is the lower sensor of the upper/lower paper height sensor pair that controls the lift of the upper tray. When the machine is switched on, the upper tray rises until the actuator on the tray triggers this sensor to switch off the upper tray lift motor.
S10	Proof Tray Exit Sensor	This sensor detects and times the feeding of paper to the proof tray. It also detects whether paper is present at the proof tray exit when the copier is switched on.
S11	Proof Tray Full Sensor	The top of the stack in the proof tray increases until it nudges the feeler of this sensor. The sensor then signals that the proof tray is full and the job halts until some paper is removed from the proof tray.
S12	Upper Tray Limit Sensor	This sensor controls the position of the upper tray 1) during straight-through feed out, 2) during shift feed out, 3) when the machine is turned on. The machine obeys the signal of whichever sensor is actuated first. An actuator attached to an arm triggers this sensor. The tip of the same arm depresses the upper tray limit switch. If the sensor fails, the tip of the arm will activate the upper tray limit microswitch (SW2) and stop the lift of the upper tray. **Note**: When the machine is turned on, the upper tray position is controlled by either this sensor or the upper tray paper height sensor (S9).
S13	Stacking Roller HP Sensor	Controls the forward and back motion of the stacking roller (a sponge roller) located at the output slot of the upper tray. The sponge roller drags each ejected sheet

No.	Component	Function
		back against the end fence of the upper tray to keep the bottom of the stack aligned.
S14	Stapling Tray Paper Sensor	A photo sensor that detects whether paper is in the stapling tray. When this sensor detects paper, the bottom fence motor raises or lowers the bottom fence to position the selected paper size for booklet stapling.
S15	Jogger Fence HP Sensor	Detects the home position of the jogger fences. When the actuator on the jogger fence interrupts this sensor, the jogger fence is in its home position and the jogger fence motor (M15) stops.
S16	Stack Feed-Out Belt HP Sensor	Controls the position of the stack feed-out pawl on the stack feed-out belt. Once the actuator on the feed belt nudges the feeler of this sensor near the top of the stapling unit, the feed out belt motor (M5) remains on for the time prescribed to position the pawl at the home position to catch the next stack.
S17	Corner Stapler HP Sensor	Located at the front the stapling tray and mounted above the steel rod where the corner stapler travels, this sensor detects the home position of the corner stapler. The corner stapler is in its home position when the actuator on the corner stapler unit interrupts this sensor.
S18	Stapler Rotation HP Sensor	Controls the angle of the position of the corner stapler during oblique stapling.
S19	Upper Tray Full Sensor (B804/B805)	**B804**: When the actuator on the side of the upper fence enters the gap of this sensor, the sensor signals that the upper tray is at its lowest position (full) and stops the job. **B805**: One of two upper tray full sensors. This is the higher tray full sensor for A3 and other heavy paper. The other upper tray full sensor (20) is for lighter paper.

Component Layout

No.	Component	Function
S20	Upper Tray Full Sensor (B805 only)	**B804**: This sensor is not used on the booklet finisher. There is only one upper tray full sensor (S18). **B805**: One of two upper tray full sensors. This is the lower tray full sensor for A4 and smaller paper. The other upper tray full sensor (19) is for larger paper.
S21	Punch Unit HP Sensor	Switches off the punch movement motor when the punch unit returns to its home position. Pulse counts determine where the punch unit pauses for punching and reversing.
S22	Paper Position Side HP Sensor	Controls the movement of the paper position detection unit. Switches on when the horizontal detection unit is at the home position (HP is the reference point).
S23	Punch HP Sensor	Detects the home position of the punch unit and controls the vertical movement of the punches when they fire.
S24	Punch Encoder Sensor	When the punch mode is selected for the job (2-hole, 3-hole, etc.), the machine controls the operation of the punch drive (M24) motor which drives a small encoder shaped like a notched wheel. This wheel is rotated forward and reverse precisely to select which punches are moved up and down during the punch stroke.
S25	Clamp Roller HP Sensor	Controls the movement of the clamp retraction roller (the idle roller of the clamp roller pair).
S26	Fold Unit Entrance Sensor	Detects 1) the leading edge of the stack during booklet stapling, and 2) also used to signal an alarm if a paper is detected at the entrance of the fold unit when the copier is turned on.
S27	Stack Junction Gate HP Sensor	Controls the opening and closing of the stack junction gate. Switches on when the stack junction gate is open and at the home position.

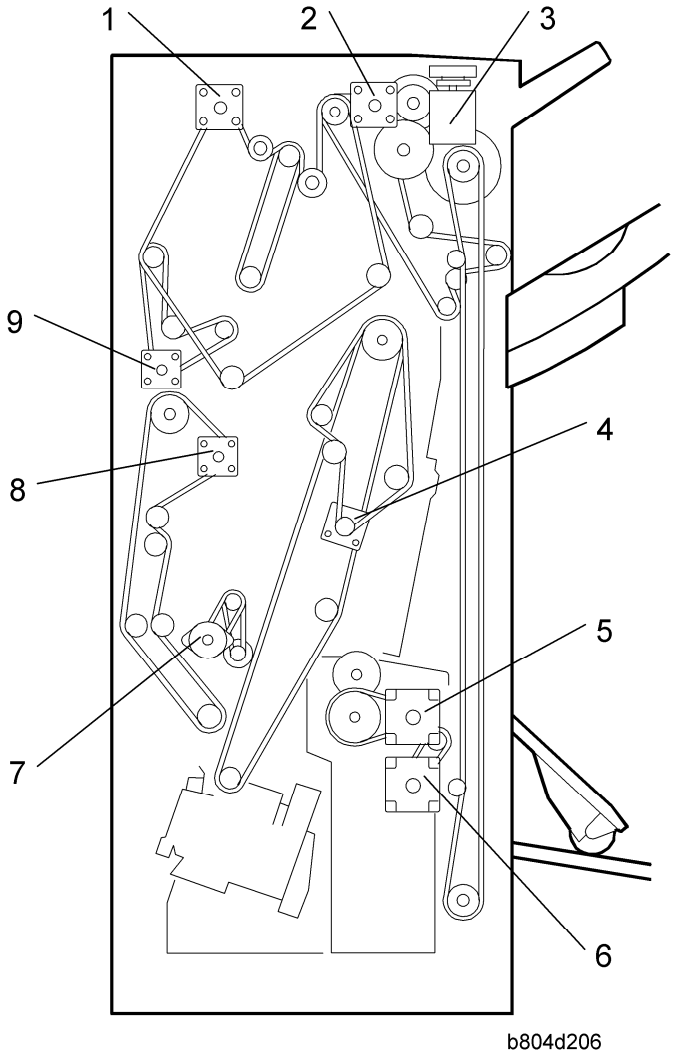
No.	Component	Function
S28	Fold Bottom Fence HP Sensor	Controls the movement of the bottom fence in the folding unit using pulse counts based on the size of the paper selected for the job to position the stack correctly for feeding.
S29	Fold Plate HP Sensor	Along with the fold plate cam HP sensor (S30) this sensor controls the movement of the fold plate . The fold plate has arrived at the home position when the edge of the plate enters the gap of this sensor.
S30	Fold Plate Cam HP Sensor	Along with the fold plate HP sensor (S29), this sensor controls the movement of the fold plate. The actuator mounted on the end of the roller that drives the folder plate forward and back makes three full rotations, i.e. the actuator passes the sensor gap twice and stops on the 3rd rotation and reverses. This accounts for the left and right movement of fold plate.
S31	Fold Unit Exit Sensor	1) Detects the folded edge of the stack as it feeds out from the nip of the fold rollers, stops the rollers, and reverses them so the fold feeds back into the nip, 2) when the folded booklet finally emerges from the nip of the fold rollers, detects the leading and trailing edge of the booklet to make sure that it feeds out correctly.
S32	Stack Present Sensor	This sensor determines whether there is paper at the turn junction gate when the machine is turned on. If a stack is present, this triggers a jam alert. (This sensor performs no dynamic function such as pulse counting, etc. It only detects whether paper is at the top of the folding unit when power its turned on.)
S33	Lower Tray Full Sensor - Rear	This rear sensor is the lower sensor of the lower tray full sensor pair. Two actuators are attached to the actuator arm that touches the top of stapled and folded booklets as they feed out. The on/off combinations of the two

Component Layout

No.	Component	Function
		sensors are used to detect when the tray is full and stop the job. (The lower tray is stationary. At tray full, the job halts until booklets are removed from the lower tray.)
S34	Lower Tray Full Sensor - Front	This front sensor is the higher sensor of the lower tray full sensor pair. Two actuators are attached to the actuator arm that touches the top of stapled and folded booklets as they feed out. The on/off combinations of the two sensors are used to detect when the tray is full and stop the job. (The lower tray is stationary. At tray full, the job halts until booklets are removed from the lower tray.)
Solenoids		
SOL1	Proof Junction Gate Solenoid	Opens and closes the proof tray junction gate. When the solenoid switches on, it opens the gate and paper is diverted to the proof tray. When this gate is closed, the paper goes straight to the upper tray. I
SOL2	Stapling Tray Junction Gate Solenoid	Directs paper to the stapling tray. When this solenoid is on, paper feeds straight through. When this solenoid is off, paper feeds to the stapler tray below.
SOL3	Positioning Roller Solenoid	Engages the stapler transport motor and the positioning roller of the stapling tray. The positioning roller pushes each sheet down against the bottom fence to align the bottom the stack for stapling. (The jogger fences align the sides.)
SOL4	Stapling Edge Pressure Plate Solenoid	Operates the pressure plate of the stapling unit. The pressure plate presses down the edge of stack in the stapling tray so it is tight for stapling.
SOL5	Booklet Pressure Roller Solenoid	When the paper stack in the stapling tray feeds to the folding unit, this solenoid turns on and operates the roller that pushes on the surface of the stack to flatten it.

No.	Component	Function
Switches		
SW1	Front Door Safety Switch	The safety switch cuts the dc power when the front door is opened.
SW2	Upper Tray Limit SW	A micro-switch cuts the power to the upper tray lift motor when the upper tray reaches its upper limit. This switch duplicates the function of the upper tray limit sensor (S12) and stops the upper tray if S12 fails.

2.1.4 DRIVE LAYOUT



b804d206

Component Layout

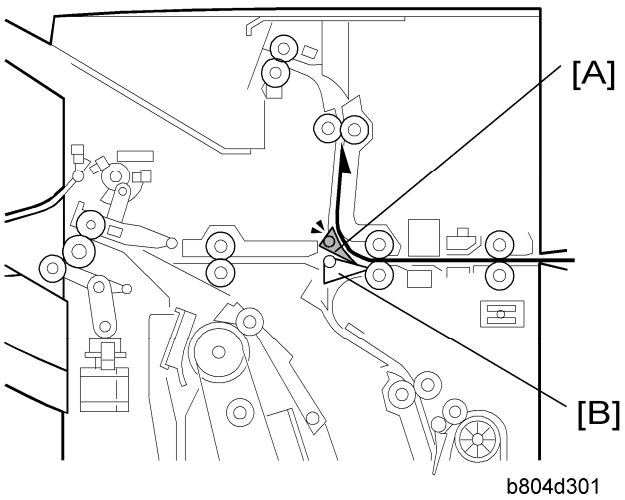
1. Upper Transport Motor (M2) 2. Upper/Proof Exit Motor (M4) 3. Upper Tray Lift Motor (M21) 4. Feed-Out Belt Motor (M5) 5. Fold Roller Motor*1 (M12)	6. Folder Plate Motor*1 (M11) 7. Positioning Roller Motor (M14) 8. Lower Transport Motor (M3) 9. Entrance Motor (M1)

*1: B804 Only

2.2 JUNCTION GATES

The positions of the proof tray and staple tray junction gates determine the direction of paper feed after paper enters the finisher.

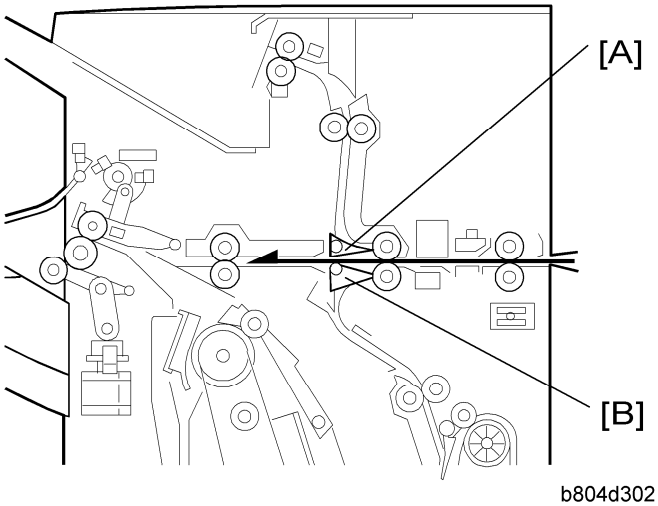
2.2.1 PROOF MODE



b804d301

Proof tray junction gate [A] opens. Staple tray junction gate [B] remains closed.
The proof tray junction gate directs paper to the proof tray above.

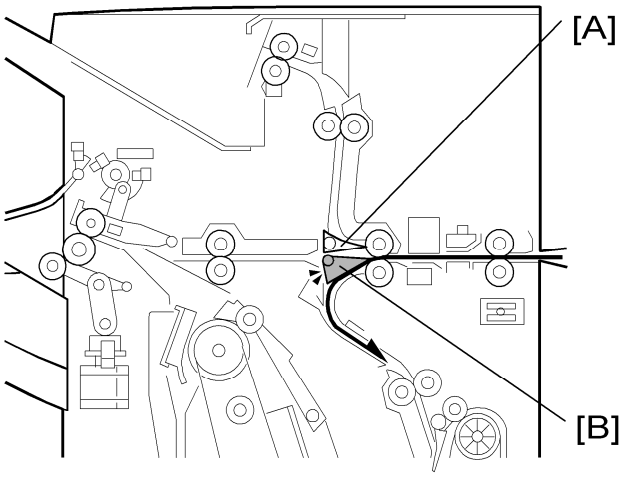
2.2.2 SHIFT MODE



b804d302

Proof tray junction gate [A] remains closed. Staple tray junction gate [B] remains closed.
With both junction gates closed, the paper goes to the upper tray.

2.2.3 STAPLE MODE

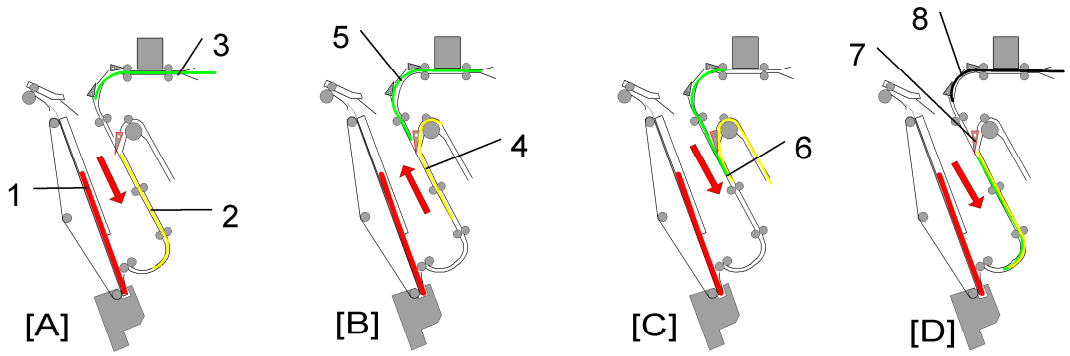


b804d303

Proof tray junction gate [A] remains closed. Staple tray junction gate [B] opens

The staple tray junction gate directs the paper to the staple tray below for jogging and stapling.

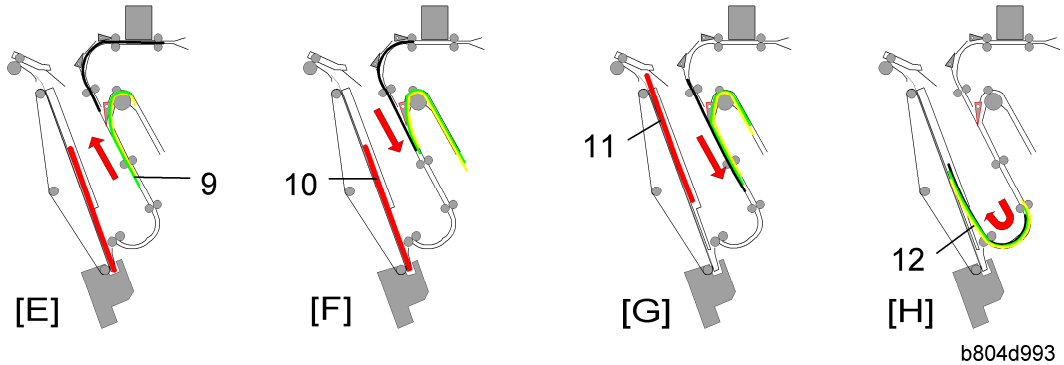
2.3 PRE-STACKING



b804d992

This example describes what happens to Set 2 during the feed and stapling cycle of sets that contain three pages.

- [A]: While the Set 1 is being stapled in the staple tray [1], the 1st sheet of Set 2 [2] feeds to the pre-stack tray, and the 2nd sheet of Set 2 [3] enters the finisher.
- [B]: The pre-stack junction gate opens and the 1st sheet of Set 2 [4] switches back to the top of the pre-stack tray as the 2nd sheet of Set 2 [5] starts to descend.
- [C]: As the 2nd sheet of Set 2 continues to descend, the 1st sheet of Set 2 is fed from the pre-stack tray. At this time the leading edges [6] of both sheets are even.
- [D]: The trailing edges of the 1st and 2nd sheets of Set 2 pass the junction gate [7] as the 3rd sheet of Set 2 [8] enters the finisher.



b804d993

- [E]: The 1st and 2nd sheets of Set 2 [9] switch back together into the top of the pre-stack and wait for the 3rd of Set 2 sheet to arrive.
- [F]: The stapling of Set 1 in the staple tray [10] is completed.
- [G]: Set 1 [11] exits the staple tray.
- [H]: The three sheets of Set 2 [12] feed together into the stapler tray for stapling.

Pre-stacking is only done for A4, B5, and LT paper.

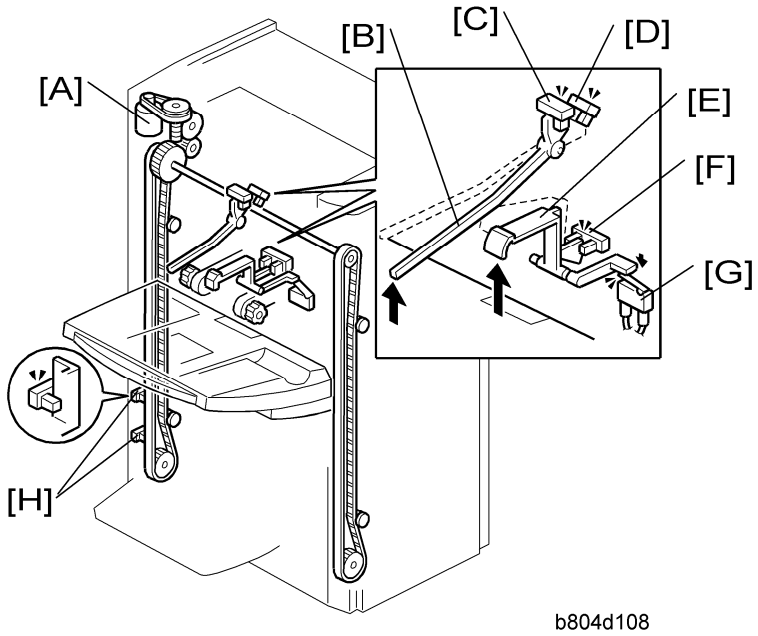
Pre-Stacking

In one-staple mode, one sheet goes to the pre-stacking tray. Then two sheets go to the stapler tray at the same time.

In two-staple mode and booklet mode, three sheets go to the pre-stacking tray. Then four sheets go to the stapler tray at the same time.

2.4 TRAY MOVEMENT MECHANISM

2.4.1 UPPER TRAY



[A]: Upper Tray Lift Motor
[B]: Upper Feeler
[C]: Upper Tray Paper Height Sensor 1 (Staple Mode)
[D]: Upper Tray Paper Height Sensor 2 (Non-Staple Mode)
[E]: Lower Feeler
[F]: Upper Tray Limit Sensor
[G]: Upper Tray Limit Switch
[H]: Upper Tray Full Sensors

Important

- The B804 (shown above) has only one upper tray full sensor (the higher sensor at [H]).
- The B805 has two upper tray full sensors (the upper and lower sensor at [H]). On the B805 the upper sensor detects tray full for heavier paper (A3, DLT, B4, LG, 12 x 18”), and the lower sensor detects tray full for lighter paper (A4, LT, etc.).
- The tray full capacity is 2,000 sheets (B804) for A4, LT and 3,000 sheets (B805) for

Tray Movement Mechanism

A4, LT.

Five sensors and one switch control the operation of the upper tray lift motor [A].

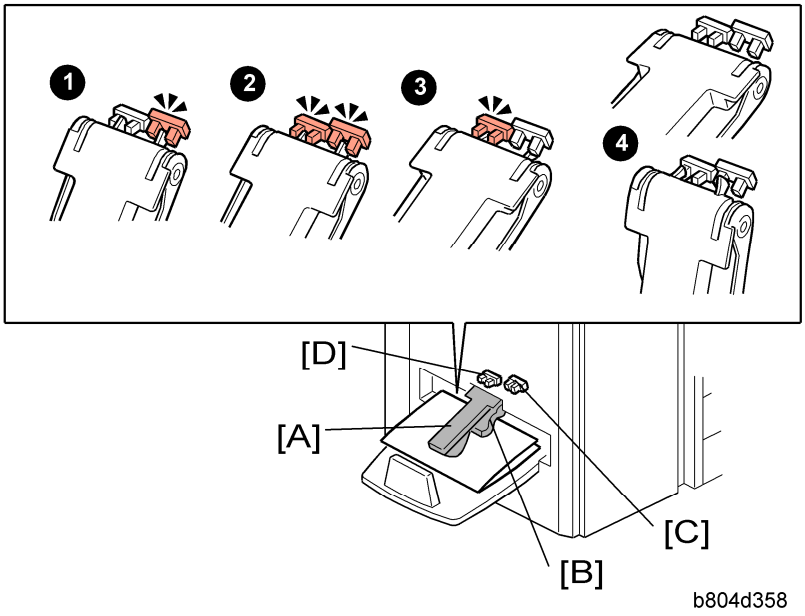
Upper Tray Raising and Lowering

Operation Mode	Sensors, Switch				Action
	[C]	[D]	[F]	[G]	
Standby (Non-Staple Mode)	OFF	OFF			Stops the lift motor at the standby position when the actuator of the upper feeler deactivates sensor [C] (when it is between sensors [C] and [D]). **Note:** Sensor [F] and switch [G] are used as backup if sensor [C] fails or if the upper tray is not attached.
Straight Through			ON		**Non-staple mode operation:** During operation, tray lift is controlled only by sensor [F]. When the actuator leaves sensor [F], the tray lowers until the actuator reactivates sensor [F].
Shift			ON		
Standby (Staple Mode)	ON				**Standby:** The upper tray stops and waits for the paper output when the actuator activates sensor [C]. [D] is not used for staple mode **Staple Mode Operation:** ▪ The upper tray lowers the prescribed distance immediately after the stack exits. ▪ The upper tray rises until the actuator activates sensor [C] and stops the tray lift motor (and the tray) to wait for the next set. ▪ Sensor [F] and switch [G] are used as backup if sensor [C] fails.

Tray Full

B804	When the actuator on the tray activates the upper tray full sensor [H] the tray lift motor [A] switches off. Operation resumes after some copies are removed from the tray. Upper Tray Capacity: 2,000 sheets (A4, LT)
B805	The operation of the upper tray full sensor is the same as the B804. Capacity: 1,500 sheets for A3, B4 or other large paper. An additional upper tray full sensor (below sensor [H]) allows more sheets to stack on the upper tray. Capacity: 3,000 sheets (A4, LT)

2.4.2 LOWER TRAY (B804 ONLY)



The lower tray sensor actuator arm [A] rests on the top of the stack of stapled booklets as they are output to the lower tray. A flap depressor [B] keeps the open ends of the booklets down.

The front lower tray full sensor (S34) [C] and rear lower tray full sensor (S33) [D] detect when the lower tray is full of booklets.

Important

- The front lower tray full sensor is mounted higher than the rear lower tray full sensor.
- The lower tray is stationary. When it becomes full, the stapling and folding job stops until booklets are removed from the tray.

Tray Movement Mechanism

- If the lower tray is not installed (this is detected if the front and rear sensors remain OFF), the machine will not operate in the booklet staple and fold mode. When booklet mode is selected, the tray full message appears on the operation panel.

The combinations of the two actuators and two sensors as the actuator arm rises determines the number of booklets that the lower tray can hold before the job stops.
The tray full detection depends on the size of the paper and the number of sheets in one stapled and folded booklet.
In the table below, the conditions (☆ Ready ◷ Full 1, ◷ Full 2 ◷ Full 3: See the illustration on the previous page) refer to the states of the sensors described on the previous page.

Condition	Front Sensor	Rear Sensor
Ready	ON	OFF
Full 1	ON	ON
Full 2	OFF	ON
Full 3 (or lower tray not installed)	OFF	OFF

In the tables below:

- "Sht" denotes "sheets in a stack".
- "Cnt" denotes "Count" (see below for an explanation).

After a booklet is feed out, the fold roller motor stops the exit roller. The machine then monitors the tray full sensors every 100 ms. The machine checks for a certain condition, based on the size of the paper and the number of sheets in the booklet.
An example is shown below. Tell the operators that the number of sheets that the lower tray can hold will vary greatly.

Lower Tray Full Condition Table

A3 (DLT)

	1 Sht	2 Sht	3 Sht	4 Sht	5 Sht	6 Sht	7 Sth	8 Sht	9 Sht	…
Full 1	3 Cnt	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	…
Full 2	—	5 Cnt	15 Cnt	—	—	—	—	—	—	…
Full 3	—	—	—	7 Cnt	13 Cnt	4 Cnt	2 Cnt	2 Cnt	2 Cnt	…

A4 (LT)

	1 Sht	2 Sht	3 Sht	4 Sht	5 Sht	6 Sht	7 Sth	8 Sht	9 Sht	…
Full1	16 Cnt	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	…
Full 2	—	10 Cnt	10 Cnt	15 Cnt	20 Cnt	15 Cnt	10 Cnt	8 Cnt	8 Cnt	…
Full 3	—	—	—							…

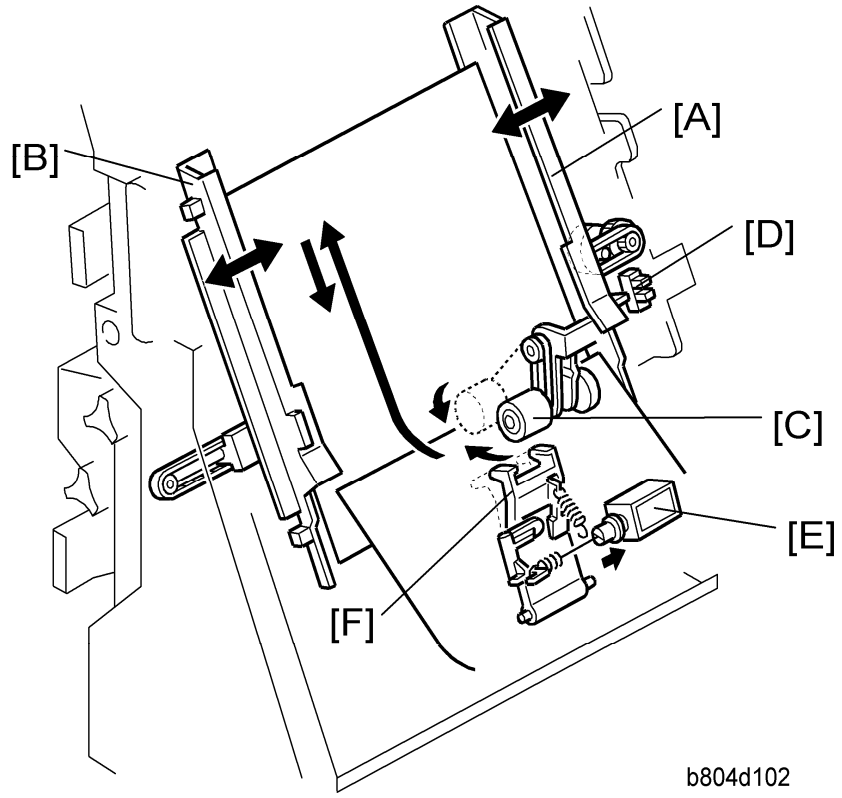
Examples:

After the copier makes a booklet with 1 sheet of A3/DLT paper, the machine checks every 100 ms for the ‘Full 1’ condition. If the Full 1 condition occurs 3 times, the machine detects that the tray is full.

After the copier makes a booklet with 5 sheets of A4/LT paper, the machine checks every 100 ms for the ‘Full 2’ condition. If the Full 2 condition occurs 20 times, the machine detects that the tray is full.

2.5 CORNER STAPLING

2.5.1 STACKING AND JOGGING



[A]: Jogger Fence Motor (M15)
[B]: Jogger Fences
[C]: Positioning Roller
[D]: Jogger Fence HP Sensor (S15)
[E]: Stapling Edge Pressure Plate Solenoid (SOL4)
[F]: Pressure Plate

At the beginning of the job, the jogger fence motor (M15) [A] switches on and moves the jogger fences [B] to the standby position (7.5 mm from the sides of the selected paper size). When each sheet passes the pre-stack tray exit sensor (S2) and enters the stapling tray:

- The jogger fence motor switches on and moves the jogger fences to within 5.5 mm of the sides of the selected paper size.
- The positioning roller solenoid (SOL3) switches on for the time prescribed for the paper

size. This pushes the positioning roller [C] onto the sheet and pushes it down onto bottom fence. This aligns the edge of the stack.

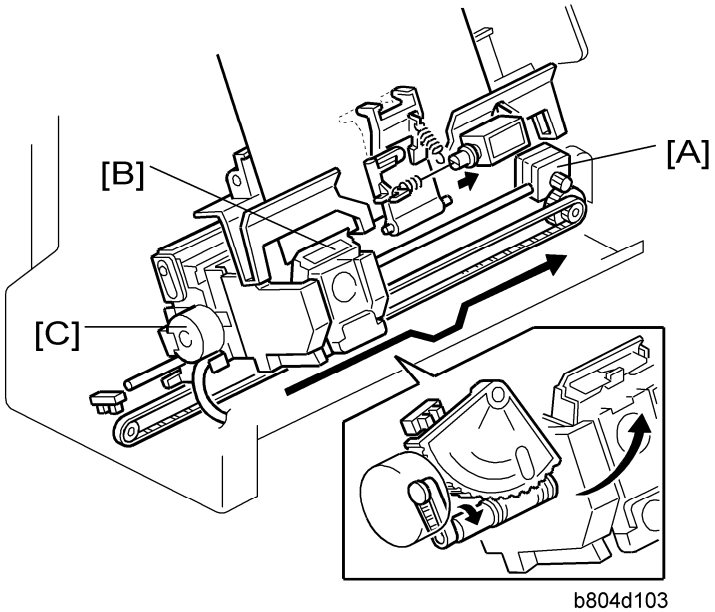
Next, the jogger fence motor:

- Switches on again and moves the jogger fences to within 2.6 mm of the sides of the stack to align the sides of the stack.
- Reverses and moves the fences to the standby position (7.5 mm away for the sides) and waits for the next sheet.
- The jogger fence HP sensor [D] switches off the jogger motor at the end of the job.

After the last sheet feeds:

- The stapling edge pressure plate solenoid [E] (SOL4) switches on and pushes the pressure plate [F] onto the stack to press down the edge for stapling.
- The corner stapler staples the stack.

2.5.2 STAPLER MOVEMENT



b804d103

[A]: Stapler Movement Motor
[B]: Stapler
[C]: Stapler Rotation Motor

Corner Stapling

The stapler performs horizontal and rotational movement in each of the four staple modes:

- Front 1 staple
- Rear 1 staple
- Rear diagonal staple
- Rear/Front 2 staples

The stapler movement motor [A] drives a timing belt that moves stapler [B] left and right on its stainless steel rail.

The stapler rotation motor [C] rotates the stapler into position for diagonal stapling at the rear.

- The stapler movement motor switches on and moves the stapler the standby stapling position. (This is the stapling position for the paper size selected for the job.)
- The stapler movement motor switches off and the stapler waits for the signal to fire (or swivel and for diagonal stapling).

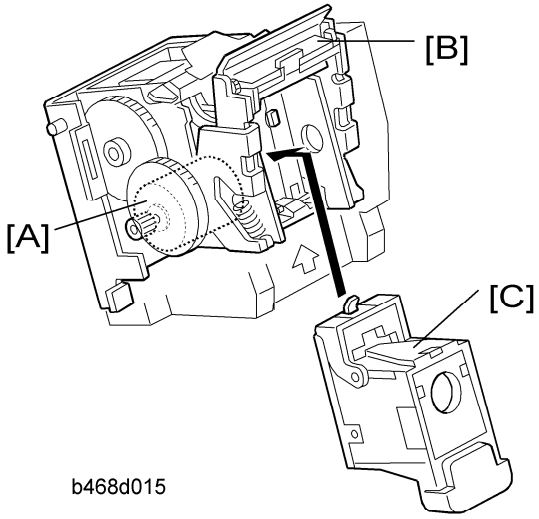
If the stack is to be stapled at two positions:

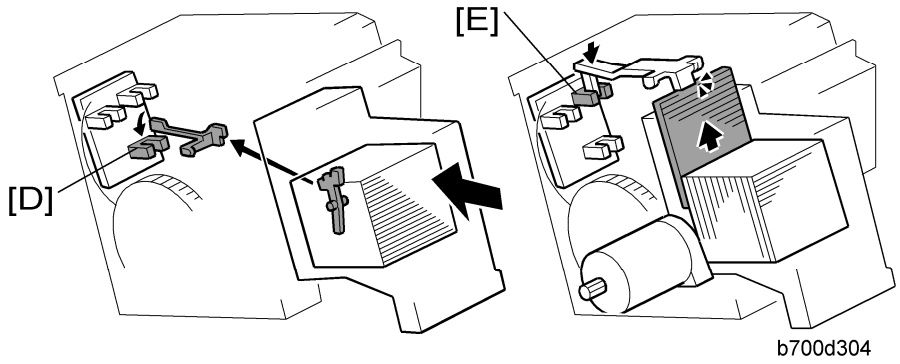
- The stapler movement motor moves the stapler to the front position and staples the front.
- The stapler movement motor moves the stapler to the rear and the stapler staples the rear.

If the stack is stapled at the rear with a diagonal staple, the staple moves to the rear. When it is time for stapling, the rotation motor rotates the stapler to the correct angle and holds the stapler in that position while the stapler fires.

The stapling positions can be fine adjusted with **SP6-133-001**.

2.5.3 CORNER STAPLING





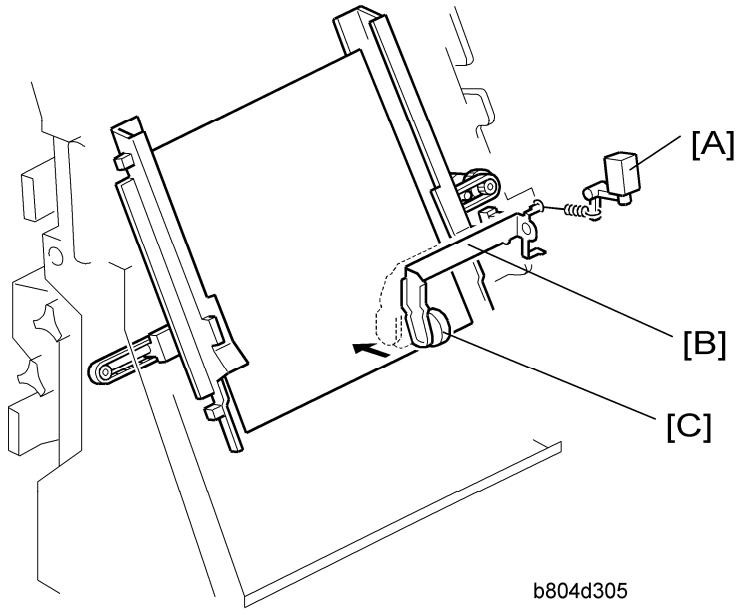
Staple firing is driven by the stapler motor [A] inside the stapler unit. The stapler hammer [B] fires the stapler [C].

The cartridge set sensor [D] detects the cartridge at the correct position.

The staple end sensor [E] detects the staple end condition.

2.6 BOOKLET STAPLING (B804 ONLY)

2.6.1 BOOKLET PRESSURE MECHANISM



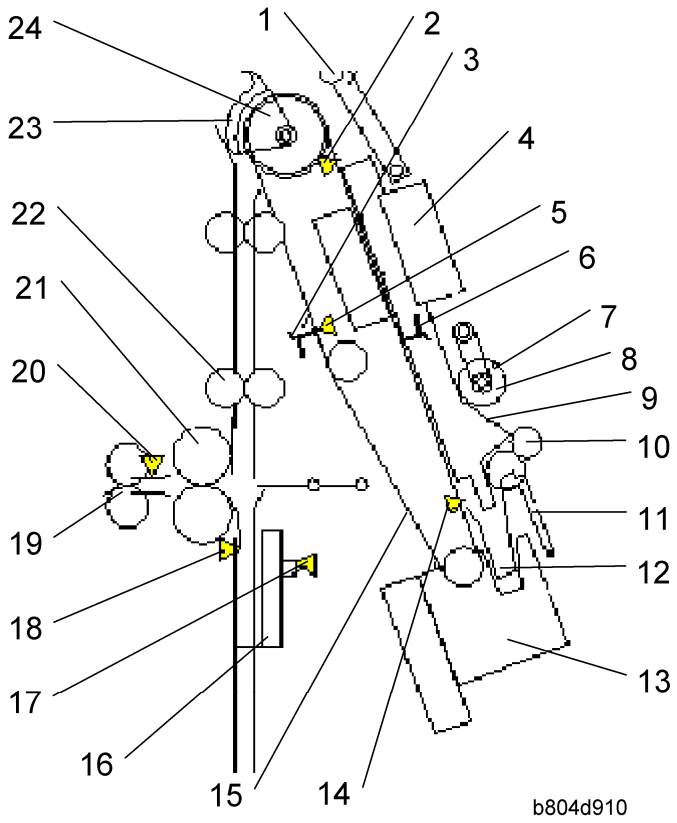
[A]: Booklet Pressure Roller Solenoid (SOL5)
[B]: Booklet Pressure Roller Arm
[C]: Booklet Pressure Roller

As soon as the edges are aligned by the positioning roller and the jogger fences, the stack feed out belt moves.

In booklet mode, immediately after the edges are aligned by the positioning roller and jogger fences, the booklet pressure solenoid switches on and the booklet pressure roller presses down on the stack until booklet stapling is finished. This prevents the stack from shifting during stapling.

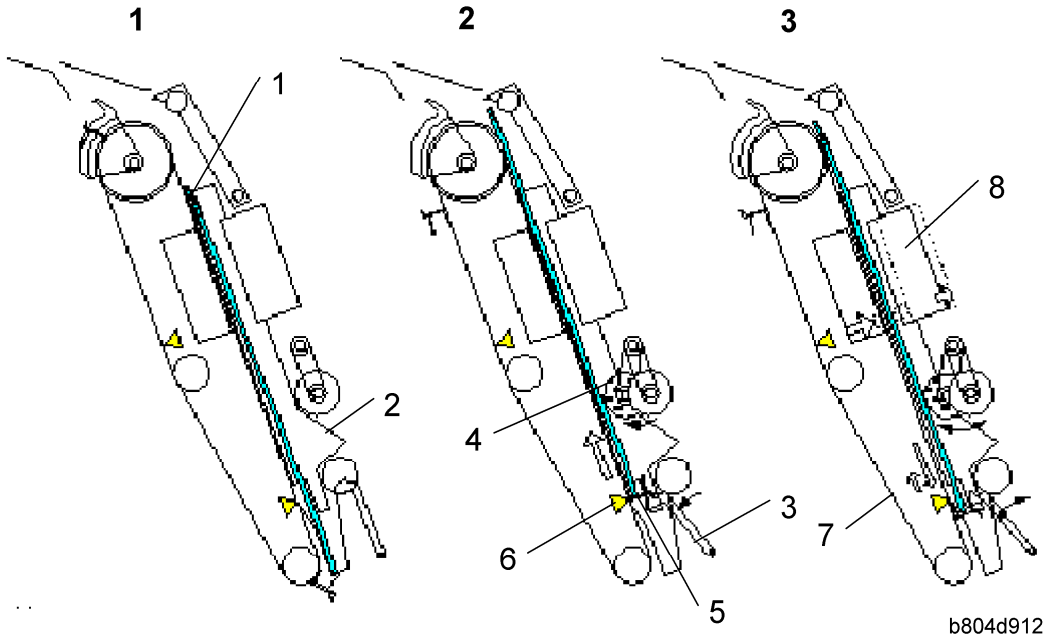
2.6.2 BOOKLET STAPLING AND FOLDING

Overview



1. Leading Edge Pressure Roller	13. Corner Stapler (M20)
2. Stack Present Sensor (S32)	14. Stapling Tray Paper Sensor (S14)
3. Feed Out Belt Pawl 1	15. Feed Out Belt
4. Booklet Staplers x2 (M22, M23)	16. Fold Unit Bottom Fence
5. Stack Feed Out Belt HP Sensor (S16)	17. Fold Bottom Fence HP Sensor (S28)
6. Feed Out Belt Pawl 2	18. Fold Unit Entrance Sensor (S26)
7. Positioning Roller	19. Fold Unit Exit Rollers x2
8. Booklet Pressure Roller (Rear)	20. Fold Unit Exit Sensor (S31)
9. Jogger Fences x2	21. Fold Rollers x2
10. Pre-Stack Exit Roller	22. Clamp Rollers x2
11. Pressure Plate	23. Stack Junction Gate
12. Stapling Tray Bottom Fence	24. Stack Transport Roller

Booklet Stapling (B804 Only)



1:

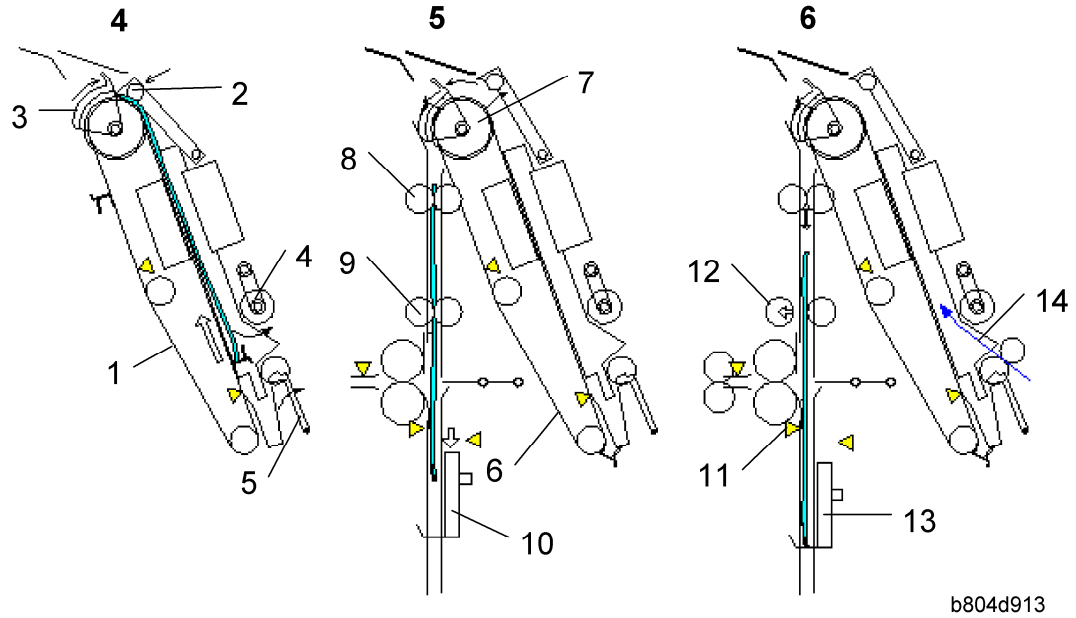
The last sheet of the stack [1] enters the stapling tray. The jogger fences [2] jog the last sheet into position (based on the width of the selected paper size) and then retract and stop 1 mm away from the sides of the stack.

2:

The pressure plate [3] and booklet pressure roller [4] press down on the sheet. The stack feed out belt switches on and the pawl [5] on the feed out belt catches the bottom of the stack and raises it. The stapling tray sensor [6] detects the trailing edge of the paper stack.

3:

The feed out belt [7] raises the stack to the prescribed stapling position and stops. The jogger fences move to the sides of the stack and the booklet staplers [8] staple the stack.



4:

The jogger fences remain 1 mm away from the sides of the stack. The feed out belt [1] raises the stack until the top of the stack is 10 mm past the leading edge pressure roller [2] and stops. The leading edge pressure roller descends and applies pressure to the top of the stack. The stack junction gate [3] (normally open) closes. The pressure roller [4] and pressure plate [5] retract.

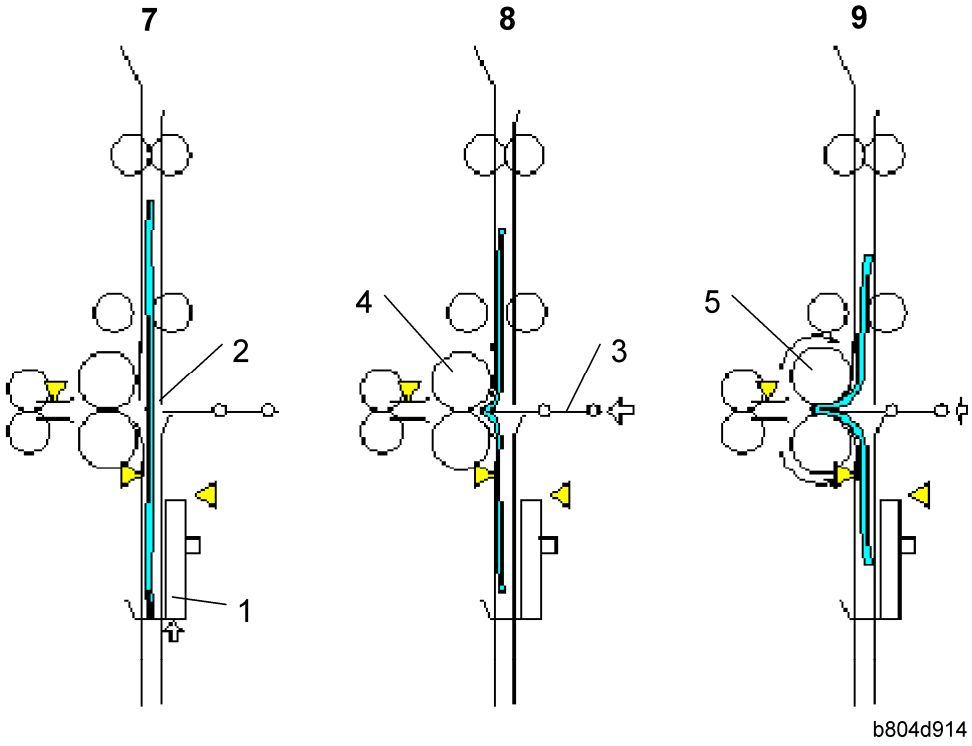
5:

The feed out belt [6], transport rollers [7], [8], and clamp rollers [9] rotate and feed the stack past the closed stack junction, over the top and down toward the bottom fence [10]. At the same time, the fold unit bottom fence descends from its home position and stops 10 mm below the fold position.

6:

The rollers feed the leading edge of the stack to within 3 mm of the stack stopper of the bottom fence [13]. The fold unit entrance sensor [11] detects the stack and opens the clamp rollers [12]. The stack drops 3 mm onto the fold unit bottom fence [13]. At this time, the first sheet [14] of the next stack feeds to the stapling tray.

Booklet Stapling (B804 Only)



7:

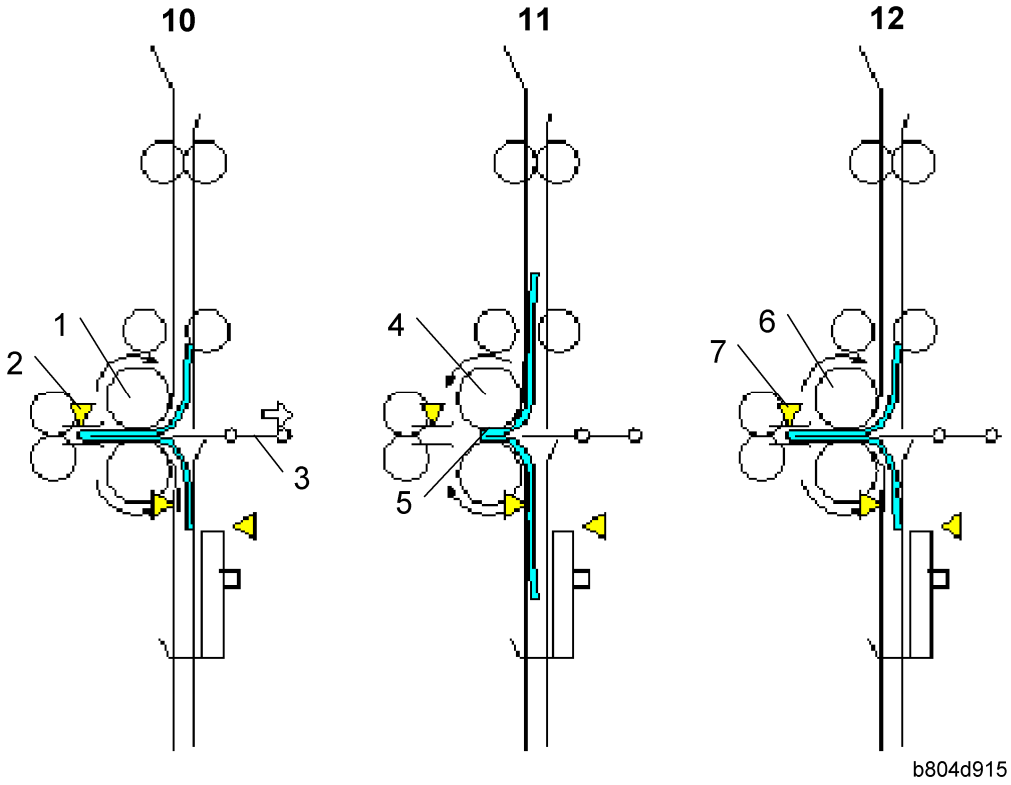
The bottom fence [1] raises the stack to the prescribed fold position [2].

8:

The fold plate [3] moves to the left and advances 1/3 its maximum horizontal stroke and exerts 20 kg (44 lb.) of pressure at the fold rollers [4].

9:

With the fold plate pushing the stack into nip of the fold rollers [5], the fold rollers begin to rotate and fold the stack as it feeds out.



10:

When the fold rollers [1] feed the stack 10 mm past the nip, the fold plate retracts until it no longer touches the stack. The fold unit exit sensor [2] detects the folded edge of the stack and stops the fold rollers.

11:

The rotation of the fold rollers [4] reverses and feeds the folded edge back until only 3 mm of the fold [5] remains at the nip.

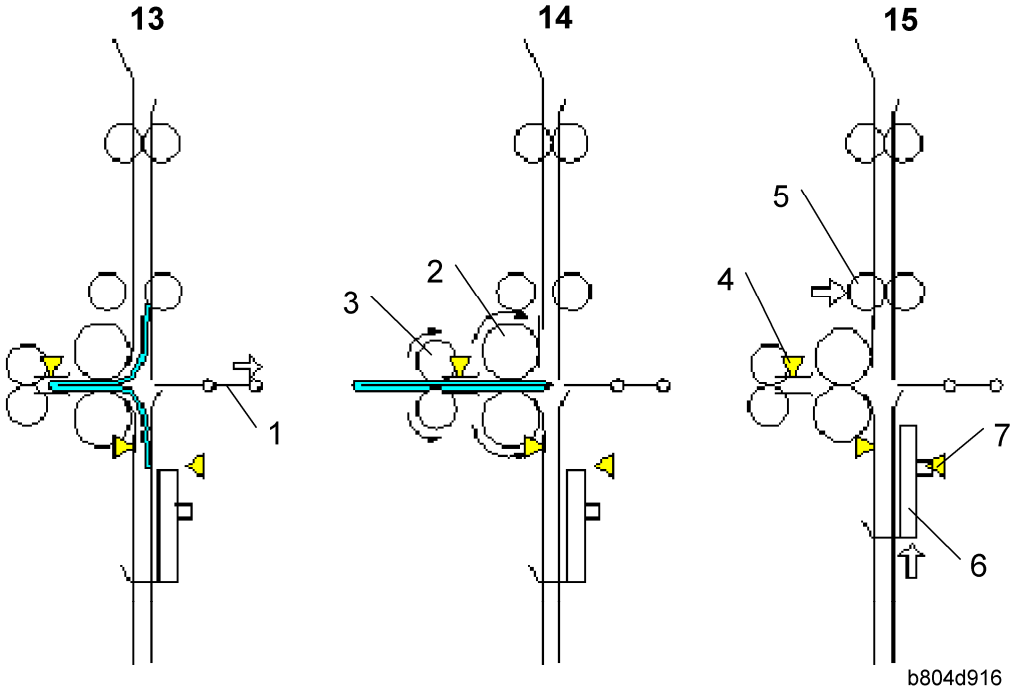
12:

The fold rollers [6] rotate forward once again feed out. The fold unit exit sensor [7] once again detects the edge of the fold.

Note

- You can do **SP6-136-001** to increase the sharpness of the fold. The number of forward and reverse feeds can be set in the range of 2 to 30. The machine repeats Steps 11 and 12. For more, please refer to Section "Service Tables".

Booklet Stapling (B804 Only)



13:

With the feed of the stack halted, the fold plate [1] retracts. The fold plate HP sensor (not shown) detects the fold plate and stops it at its home position.

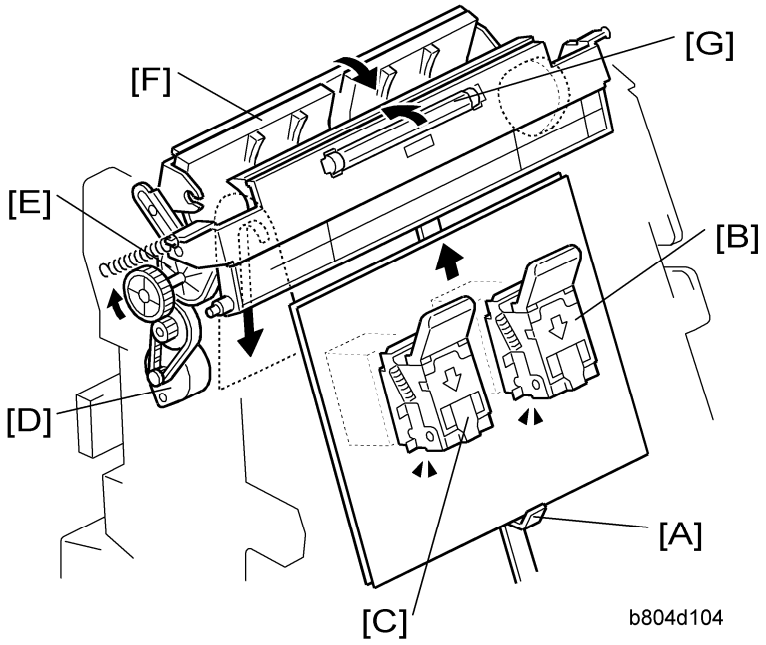
14:

The fold rollers [2] and fold unit exit rollers [3] begin to rotate together and feed out the folded booklet to the lower tray.

15:

Once the trailing edge of the stack passes the fold unit exit sensor [4], the clamp rollers [5] close to be ready to feed the next stack. The fold unit bottom fence [6] descends. The bottom fence HP sensor [7] stops the bottom fence when it detects the actuator on the bottom fence.

2.6.3 BOOKLET STAPLING AND FOLDING MECHANISMS



Booklet Stapler

[A]: Feed Out Belt Pawl. Raises the stack to stapling position.

[B]: Booklet Stapler EH185R – Rear

[C]: Booklet Stapler EH185R – Front

Stack Junction Gate

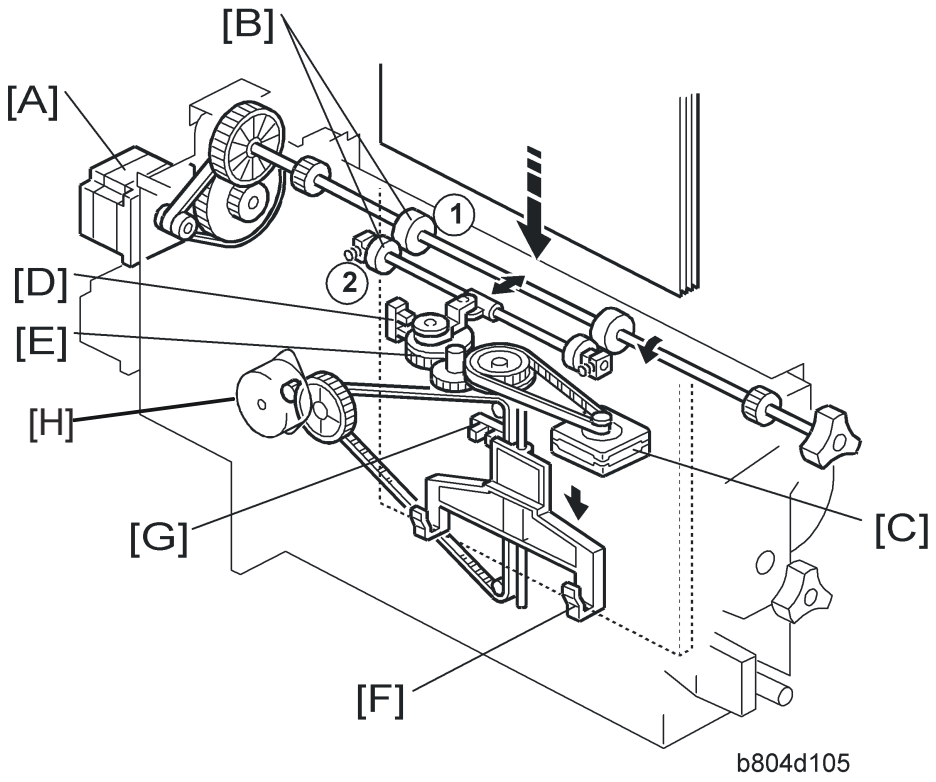
[D]: Stack Junction Gate Motor. Drives a timing belt and stack junction gate cam.

[E]: Stack Junction Gate Cam. Opens and closes the stack junction gate.

[F]: Stack Junction Gate. The stack junction gate motor and stack junction gate cam close the stack junction gate. The feed out belt pawl raises the stapled stack and sends it over the top and down to the fold unit.

[G]: Leading Edge Pressure Roller. Presses down on the leading edge of the stack after booklet stapling.

Booklet Stapling (B804 Only)



Clamp Roller

[A]: Fold Roller Motor. Drives the stationary clamp drive roller ✶ as well as the fold rollers (see next page).

[B]: Clamp Rollers.

✶ Clamp Roller – Drive. Rotated by the fold roller motor, this stationary roller feeds the stack down with the retracting roller closed.

✷ Clamp Roller – Retracting. Opened and closed by the retraction motor [C].

[C]: Clamp Roller Retraction Motor. Operates the clamp roller cam that retracts the retracting clamp roller. The clamp rollers feed the stack to within 3 mm of the bottom fence when closed and then open to drop the stack onto the bottom fence.

[D]: Clamp Roller HP Sensor. Controls the rotation of the clamp roller retraction motor and cam that open and close the retracting clamp roller.

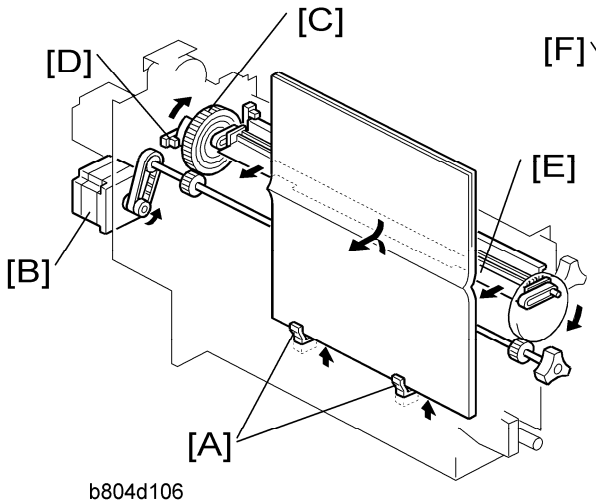
[E]: Clamp Roller Cam. Forces open the spring loaded retracting clamp roller.

Bottom Fence

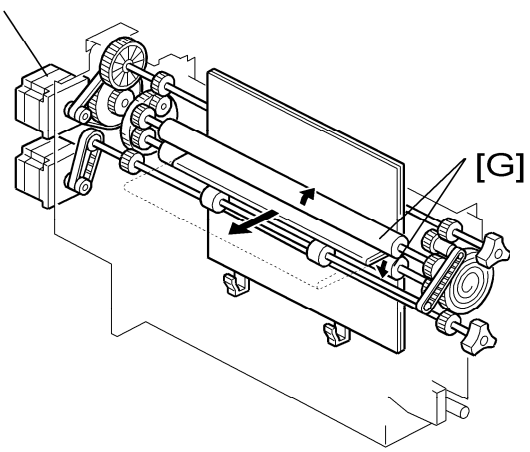
[F]: Bottom Fence. Raises the booklet stapled stack to the fold position.

[G]: Bottom Fence HP Sensor. Detects the actuator on the bottom fence and stops it at the home position after folding.

[H]: Bottom Fence Lift Motor. Raises the bottom fence and stapled stack to the fold position prescribed for the paper size.



b804d106



b804d107

Fold Plate

[A]: Bottom Fence Stack Stoppers. Catches the stack after it is released by the clamp rollers.

[B]: Fold Plate Motor. Drives the timing belt and gears that move the fold plate.

[C]: Fold Plate Cam. Controls the movement of the fold plate to the left (into the nip of the fold rollers) and right (toward the fold plate home position).

[D]: Fold Plate HP Sensor. Controls operation of the fold plate motor.

[E]: Fold Plate. Moves left and pushes the stack into the nip of the fold rollers and then moves right to retract.

Fold Rollers

[F]: Fold Roller Motor. Drives forward to feed out the stack at the fold and then reverses to feed the fold in to sharpen the crease, and then drives forward again to feed out the folded stack. This reverse/forward cycle is done once.

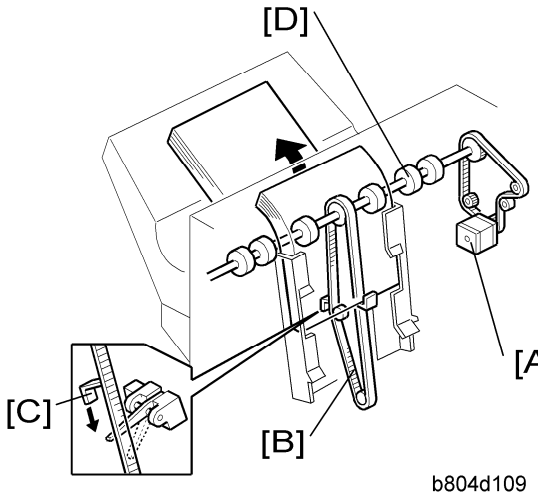
Note

- This cycle can be repeated by changing the setting of SP6114.

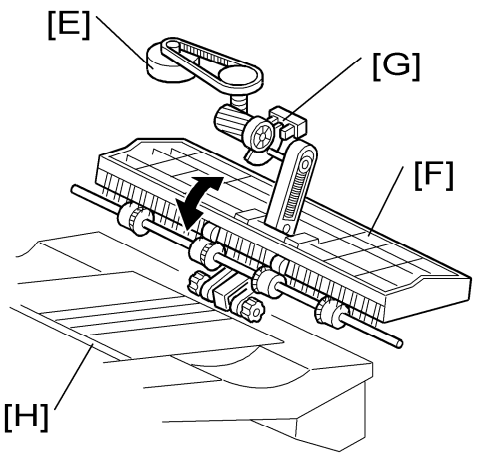
[G]: Fold Rollers. Driven by the fold roller motor, this roller pair feeds out the stack at its fold, reverses to feed in the stack to, and then feeds forward again (assisted by the fold unit exit rollers – not shown) to feed out the stack to the lower tray.

2.7 UPPER TRAY OUTPUT

2.7.1 FEED OUT



b804d109



b804d107

[A]: Feed Out Belt Motor
[B]: Stack Feed-Out Belt
[C]: Pawl
[D]: Exit Rollers
[E]: Exit Guide Plate Motor
[F]: Exit Guide Plate
[G]: Exit Guide Plate HP Sensor
[H]: Upper Tray

After the stack is stapled, the feed out belt motor [A] switches on and drives the feed out belt [B].

The pawl [C] attached to the feed out belt catches on the stack and lifts the stack toward the feed out slot.

The exit guide plate [F] remains open as the stack emerges at a prescribed distance away from the exit roller.

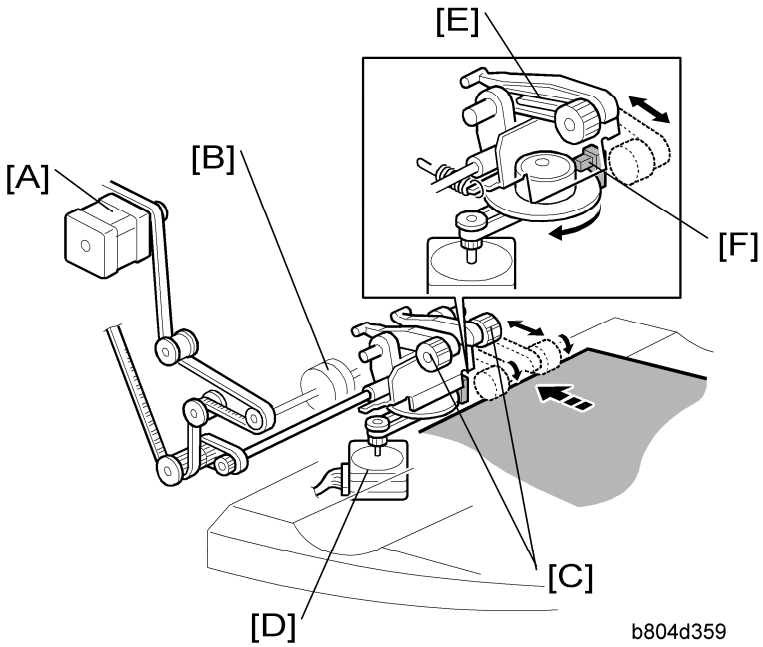
Next, the exit guide plate closes and the exit roller feeds the stack out.

The opening and closing of the exit guide plate is controlled by the rising and falling of a link driven by a rotating cam attached to the shaft of the exit guide plate motor [E].

The feed out belt motor stops 300 ms to prevent the stapled stack from rising too high. Next, the feed out belt motor switches on again, then the pawl actuates its home position sensor and switches off the motor.

There are two output pawls on the feed out belt to improve the productivity of the feed out operation.

2.7.2 FEED OUT STACKING



Upper/proof exit motor [A] drives feed roller [B] and stacking sponge roller [C].

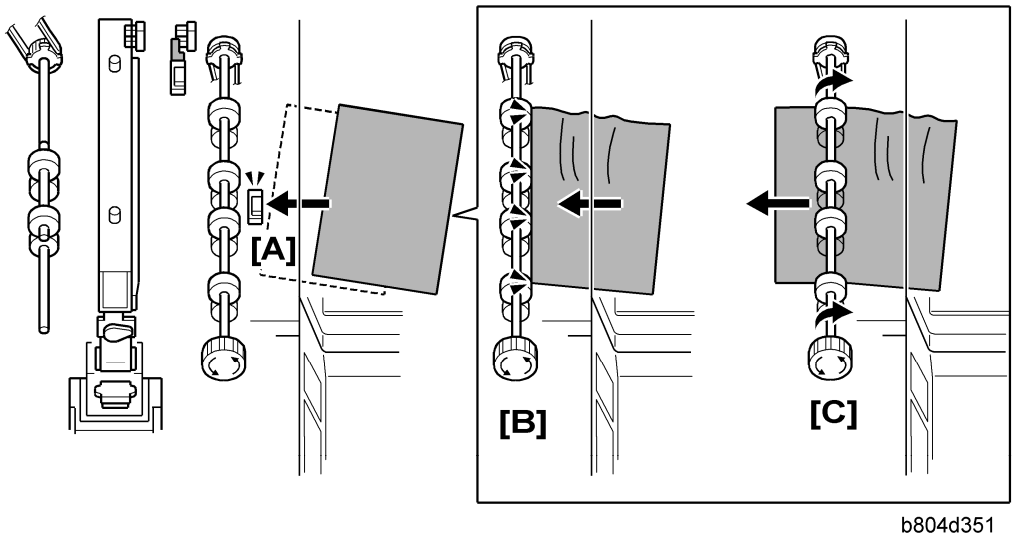
Stacking sponge roller motor [D] moves the sponge roller forward and back with link [E].

The position of the stacking sponge roller [C] is controlled by the stacking sponge roller motor which is switched on and off by the stacking roller HP sensor [F].

2.8 PUNCH UNIT B702 (FOR B804/B805)

2.8.1 OVERVIEW OF OPERATION

Skew Correction before Punching



This punch unit corrects for paper skew and then positions the punch unit to punch holes at the correct position. Each sheet is punched one at a time.

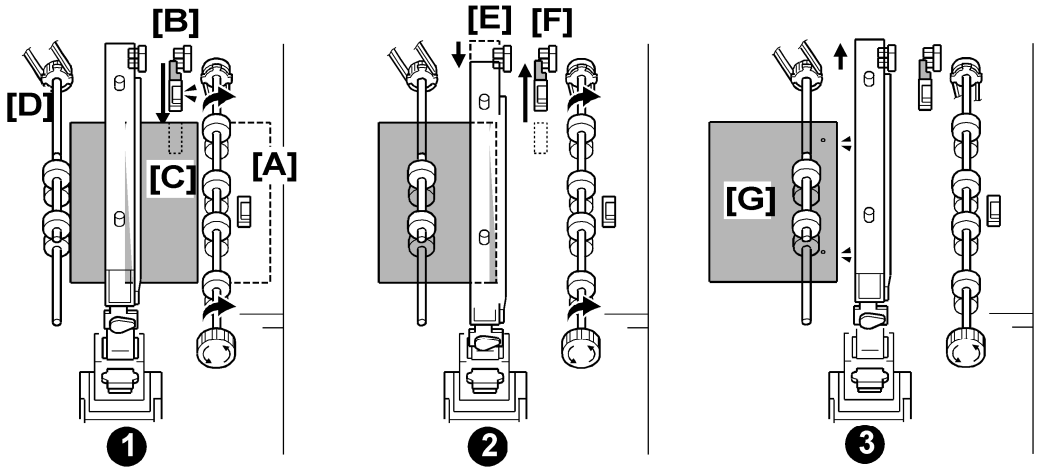
Paper feeds out of the copier. The finisher entrance sensor [A] detects the leading edge of the sheet.

The finisher entrance roller [B] stops rotating briefly while the copier exit rollers continue to rotate. This buckles the paper against the finisher entrance roller to correct skew. The finisher entrance roller [C] starts to rotate again and feeds the sheet into the finisher.

These SP codes adjust the skew operation in the punch unit:

- **SP6130**. This SP corrects the punch hole alignment. To do this, it corrects the skew of each sheet by adjusting the amount of time the finisher entrance roller remains off while the exit roller of the machine remains on. For more, see Section "Service Tables".
- **SP6131**. This SP determines whether the finisher entrance roller stops to correct skew when paper enters the finisher. You can use this SP to disable the skew correction. For more, see Section "Service Tables".

Punch Unit Position Correction



These operations (skew correction before punching, and punch unit position correction) increase the accuracy of the punch alignment.

☆:

The trailing edge of the sheet passes the finisher entrance sensor [A].

The paper position slide unit [B] moves the paper position sensor [C] forward to the edge of the paper.

The paper position sensor detects the position of the paper edge and sends this information to the punch unit board. The machine uses the detected position of the paper edge to calculate the correct position for punching.

The upper transport motor switches on and rotates the feed rollers [D] the prescribed distance to position the paper under the punch unit.

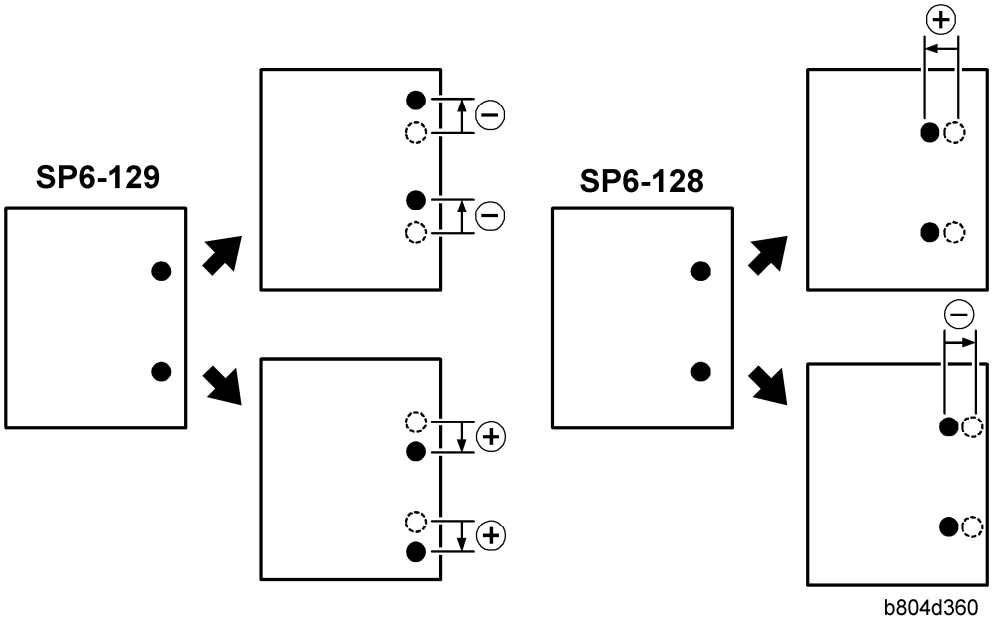
🕐:

Using the result of the position calculation, the punch unit control board moves the punch unit [E] to the adjusted punch position.

The paper position slide unit and its paper sensor, move back to the paper position slide home position sensor [F], and the punch unit fires the punches to make the holes.

🕑:

The feed rollers [G] feed the punched paper out of the punch unit and into the paper path.



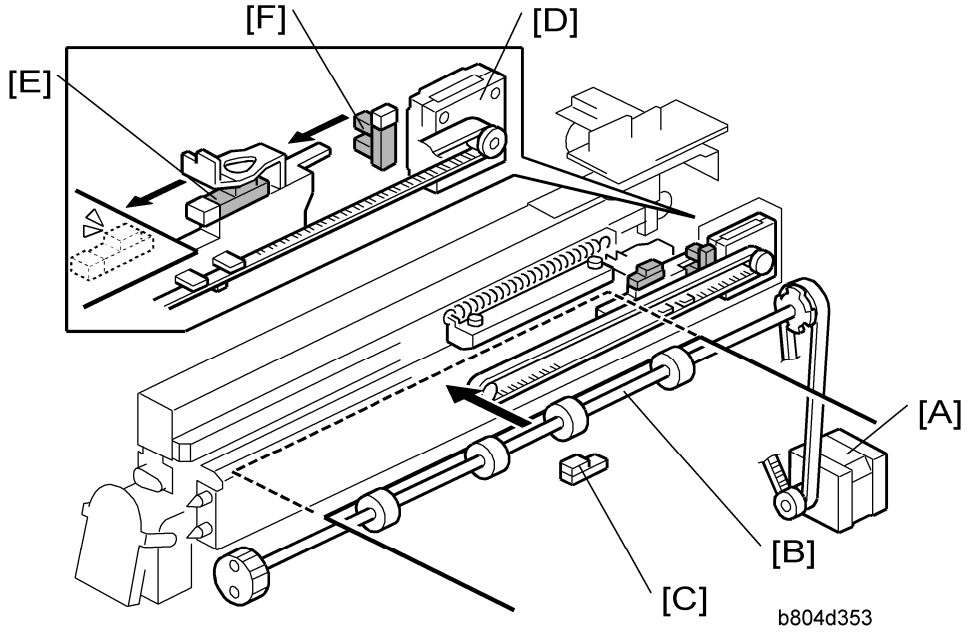
These SP codes adjust the punch hole alignment:

- **SP6-128** Adjusts the punch positions in the direction of paper feed.
- **SP6-129** Adjusts the punch position perpendicular to the direction of feed.

For more, see Section "Service Tables".

2.8.2 PUNCH MECHANISMS

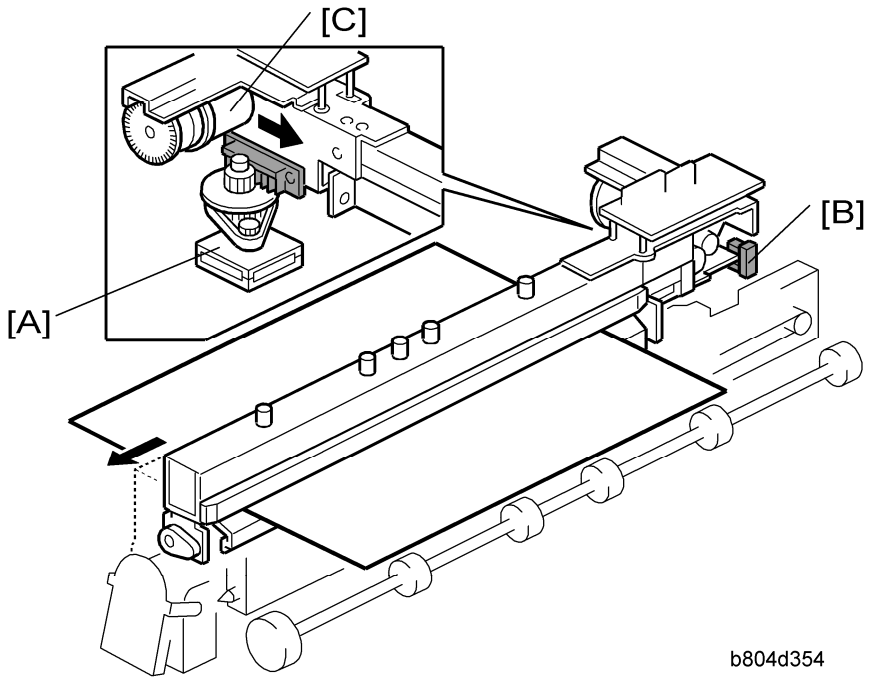
Paper Position Detection



[A]: Finisher Entrance Motor (M1)
[B]: Finisher Entrance Roller
[C]: Finisher Entrance Sensor (S1)
[D]: Paper Position Sensor Slide Motor (M7)
[E]: Paper Position Sensor (S27)
[F]: Paper Position Sensor Slide HP Sensor (S22)

The finisher entrance motor (M1) [A] drives the finisher entrance rollers [B] that feed paper from the copier into the finisher. The finisher entrance sensor (S1) [C] detects paper when it enters the finisher, and detects paper jams.
The paper position slide sensor motor (M7) [D] extends and retracts the paper position slide that holds the paper position sensor (S27) [E]. The paper position sensor detects the position of the paper edge. The detected position of the paper is used to calculate and position the punch unit for punching.
The paper position slide HP sensor (S22) [F] detects the paper position slide when it retracts and stops the paper position slide motor so the slide stops at its home position.

Punch Unit Movement

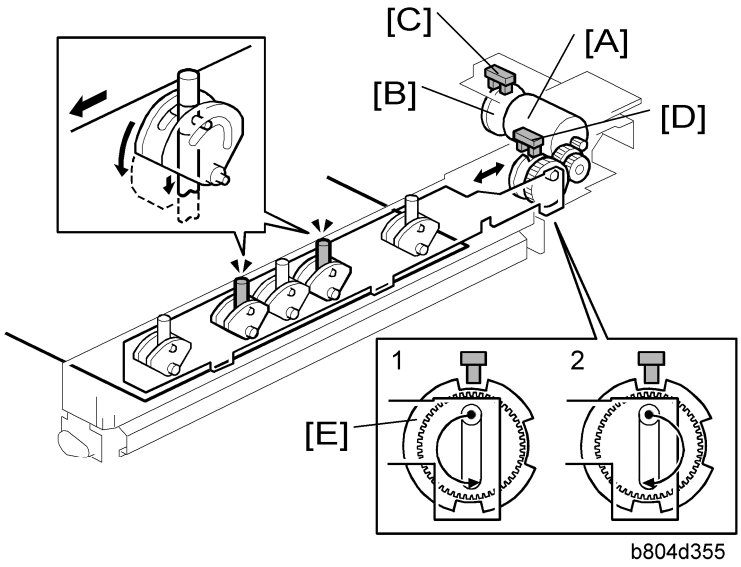


Punch Unit B702 (For B804/B805)

[A]: Punch Movement Motor (M9)
[B]: Punch Movement HP Sensor (S21)
[C]: Punch Drive Motor (M24)

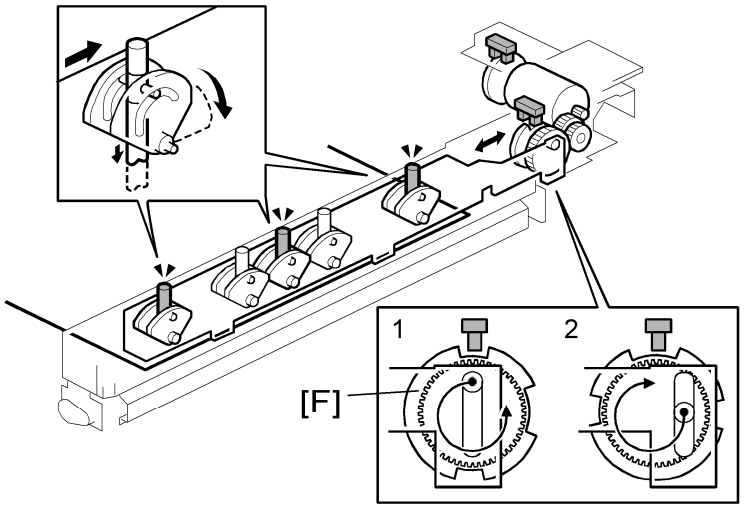
The punch movement motor (M9) [A] extends and retracts the punch unit to position it at the correct position for punching.
The punch movement HP sensor (S21) [B] detects the position when it retracts, switches off the punch position movement motor, and stops the punch unit at its home position.
The punch drive motor (M24) [C] fires the punches that punch holes in the paper below.

Punch Selection and Firing



[A]: Punch Drive Motor (M24)
[B]: Punch Encoder Wheel
[C]: Punch Encoder Sensor (S24)
[D]: Punch HP Sensor (S23)

The punch drive motor (M24) [A] turns the small, notched encoder wheel [B] through the gap in the punch encoder sensor [C] (S24). The sensor output is used to control the punch timing.



The timing for 2-hole punching [E] is different from 3-hole punching [F].

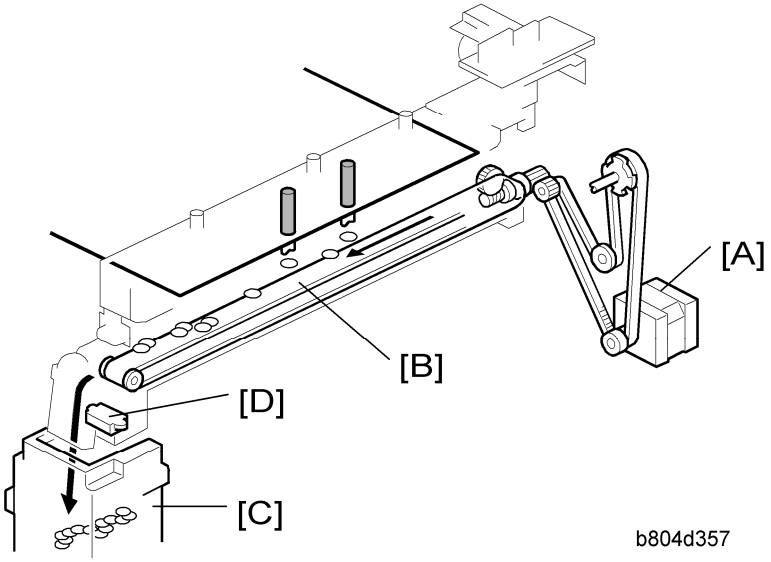
When the punch unit is at the punching position, the punch motor turns until the encoder detects the starting position for 2-hole or 3-hole punching.

- This is the '1' position in the diagrams (the top diagram is for 2-hole punching, and the bottom diagram is for 3-hole punching).

Then, the punch drive motor turns counter-clockwise to the '2' position. This movement punches the holes in the paper.

Then, the punch drive motor turns clockwise to the '1' position, to be ready for the next sheet of paper.

2.8.3 PUNCH HOPPER MECHANISM



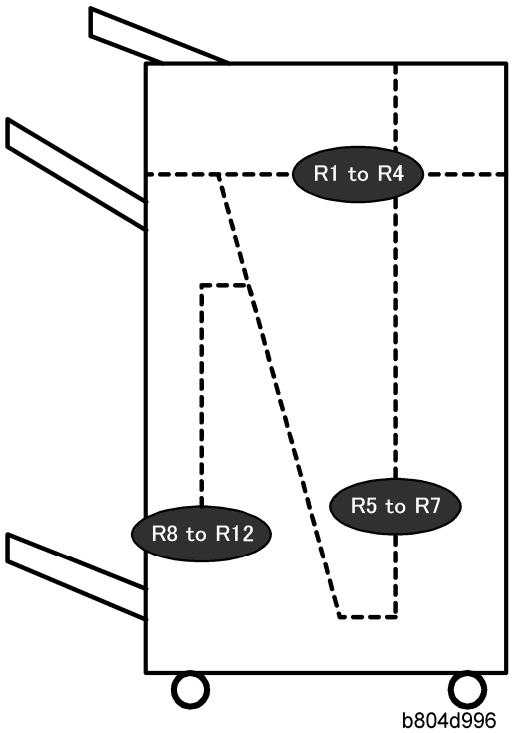
Punch Unit B702 (For B804/B805)

[A]: Finisher Entrance Motor (M1)
[B]: Punch Waste Belt
[C]: Punch Waste Hopper
[D]: Punch Hopper Full Sensor (S4)

The finisher entrance motor (M1) [A] drives the timing belt and gears that rotate the punch waste belt [B].
The punchouts fall from the punch unit onto the belt. The belt moves the punchouts to the front and dumps them in the punch waste hopper [C].
The punch hopper full sensor [D]:

- Signals that the hopper is full when it detects the top of the stack of punchouts that have collected in the hopper.
- It also detects when the punch hopper is set properly.

2.9 FINISHER JAM DETECTION



Display	Mode	Jam	What It Means
R1 to R3	Proof Shift Staple	Finisher entrance sensor late	After main machine exit sensor goes OFF, finisher entrance sensor does not go ON even after enough time to feed 450 mm.
		Finisher entrance sensor lag	After finisher entrance sensor goes ON, it does not go OFF after enough time to feed a sheet 1.5 times its length has elapsed.
R3	Proof	Proof exit sensor late	After finisher entrance sensor goes ON, proof exit sensor does not go ON even after enough time to feed 450 mm.
		Proof exit sensor lag	After finisher entrance sensor goes OFF, proof exit sensor does not go OFF even after enough time to feed 450 mm.

Finisher Jam Detection

Display	Mode	Jam	What It Means
R4	Shift	Upper tray exit sensor late	After finisher entrance sensor goes ON, upper tray exit sensor does not go ON even after enough time to feed 485 mm.
		Upper tray exit sensor lag	After finisher entrance sensor goes OFF, upper tray exit sensor does not go OFF even after enough time to feed 650 mm.
R5 to R7	Staple	Pre-stack tray exit sensor lag	After finisher entrance sensor goes ON, pre-stack tray exit sensor does not go ON even after enough time to feed 650 mm.
		Pre-stack tray exit sensor late	After finisher entrance sensor goes ON, pre-stack tray exit sensor does not go OFF even after enough time to feed 1650 mm.
R8 to R12	Booklet Staple (B700 Only)	Fold unit entrance sensor late (S26)	The fold unit entrance sensor goes not go ON after enough time has elapsed to feed 1.5 times the length of the stack after the leading edge of the stack reaches the stack present sensor (S32).
		Fold unit exit sensor late (S31)	The fold unit exit sensor does not go ON after enough time has elapsed for the stack to feed 1.5 times its length from the fold position.
		Fold unit exit sensor lag (S31)	After the fold unit exit sensor goes ON, it does not go OFF after enough time has elapsed to feed 442.9 mm.

SCANNER ACCESSIBILITY OPTION
TYPE 4045
B838

REVISION HISTORY		
Page	**Date**	**Added/Updated/New**
All	10/08/2008	New Information – The entire B838 SM has been replaced.

SCANNER ACCESSIBILITY OPTION
TYPE 4045 B838

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. SCANNER ACCESSIBILITY OPTION (B838) 1

1.1 INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS 1

1.1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS 1

1.1.2 SPECIFIC REQUIREMENTS 1

1.1.3 ACCESSORY CHECK 3

1.2 REMOVAL PROCEDURE FOR COVERS 5

1.3 REMOVAL PROCEDURE FOR SCANNER UNIT 7

1.4 CONNECTING PROCEDURE FOR SCANNER UNIT 9

1.5 CONNECTING PROCEDURE FOR OP PANEL 20

1.6 HARNESS BRACKET ATTACHMENT PROCEDURE 23

1.7 CONNECTING PROCEDURE FOR MAINFRAME 25

1.8 INSTALLATION FOR KEY COUNTER 31

Read This First

Safety and Symbols

Replacement Procedure Safety

⚠CAUTION

- Turn OFF the main power switch and unplug the machine before beginning any of the replacement procedures in this manual.

Symbols Used in this Manual

This manual uses the following symbols.

☛:See or Refer to

: Screws

: Connector

: Clip ring

: E-ring

1. SCANNER ACCESSIBILITY OPTION (B838)

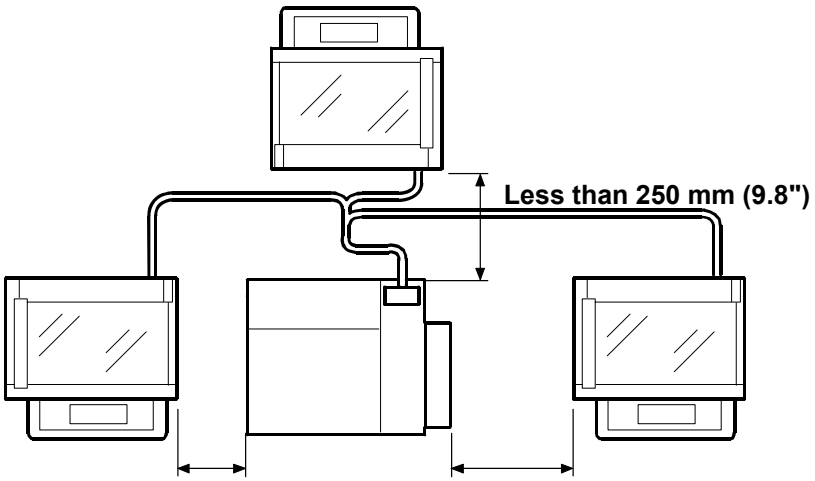
1.1 INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

1.1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

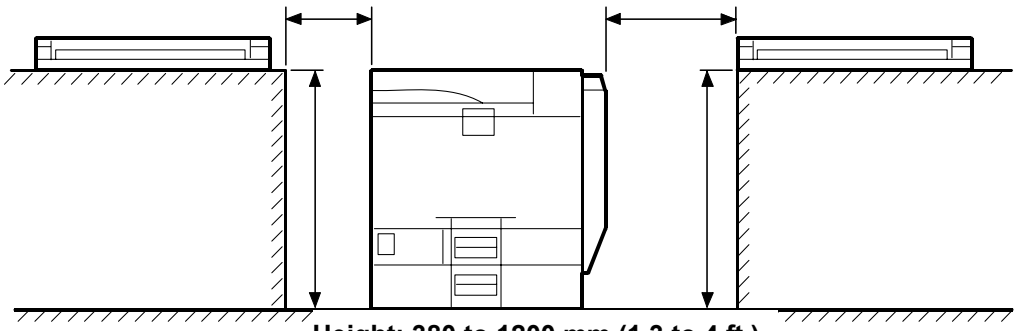
- Install the scanner on a solid base.
- Do not install the scanner in areas where the unit can fall down when the ADF cover is opened.
- Make sure you install the unit in area that allows easy access for operation.
- Ask the customer about their requirements before you install the unit.

1.1.2 SPECIFIC REQUIREMENTS

- The scanner cable should not touch the floor.
- The cables should not hang free where they can become entangled with other equipment or furniture such as a wheelchair.
- The unit should be positioned within 380 to1220 mm (1.3 to 4 ft.) above the floor.



- The scanner should be positioned as follows:
  Within 250 mm (9.8") from the left and rear side of the main unit
  Within 550 mm (21.7") from the right side of the main unit

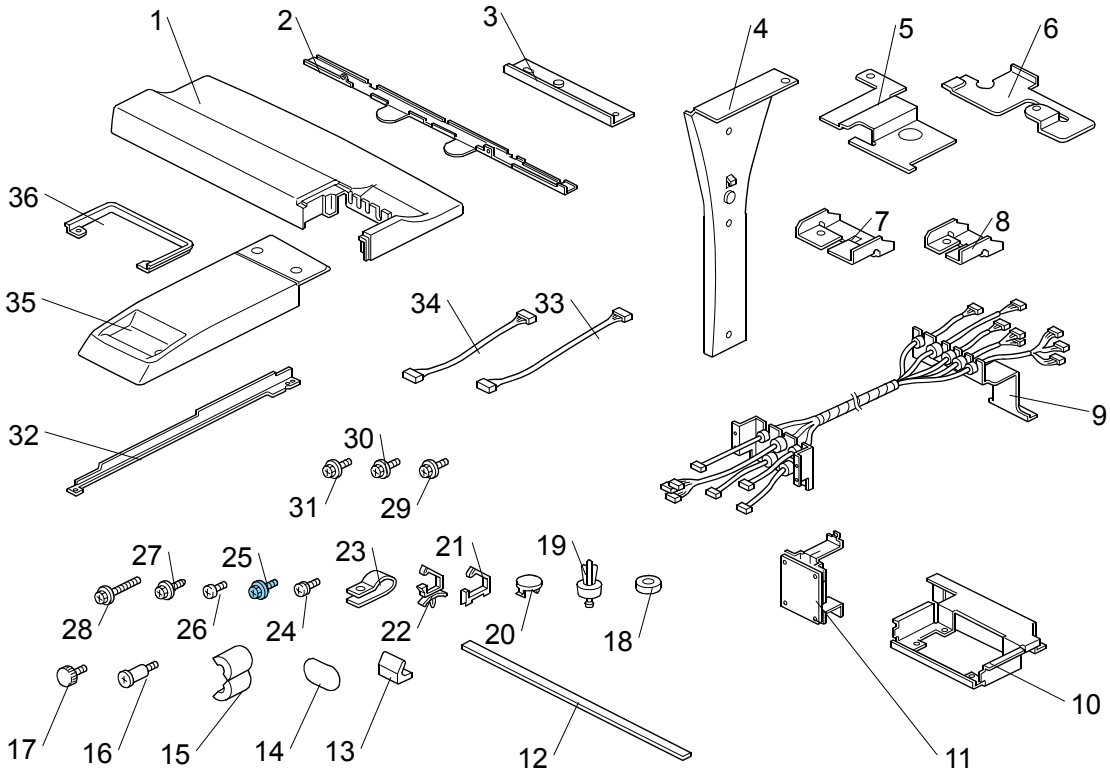


Height: 380 to 1200 mm (1.3 to 4 ft.)

1.1.3 ACCESSORY CHECK

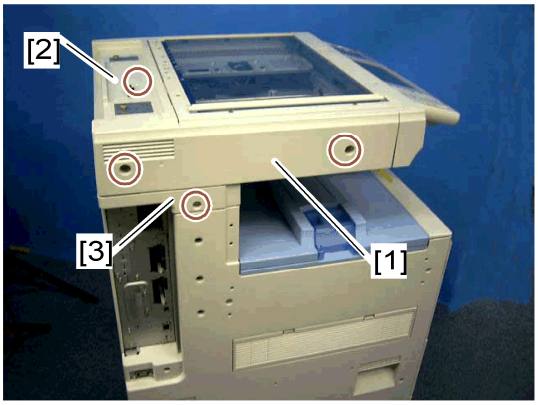
Check the accessories and their quantities against the following list.

No.	Description	Q'ty
1	Top Rear Cover	1
2	Rear Bracket	1
3	Key Counter Bracket (only for installing key counter)	1
4	Left Scanner Stay	1
5	Right Bottom Plate	1
6	Left Bottom Plate	1
7	Left Stopper	1
8	Right Stopper	1
9	Cable Bracket Unit	1
10	Operation Panel Interface Board	1
11	MB Interface Board	1
12	Gasket - Scanner Frame	1
13	Gasket - Scanner Lens	1
14	Seal - Bottom	1
15	Ferrite Core	17
16	Shoulder Screw (only for installing key counter)	1
17	Adjuster	2
18	Spacer	2
19	Rubber Leg	3
20	Cap	3
21	Saddle Clamp	1
22	Clamp	1
23	Plate Clamp	4
24	Screw-Round: M4x8	2
25	Screw-Tapping: M3x8 (blue)	7
26	Screw-Round: M3x6	4
27	Screw 2-Tapping: M3x8	4
28	Screw-Tapping: M4x16	4
29	Screw-Tapping: M4x8	4
30	Screw-Tapping: M3x6	5
31	Screw-Tapping: M3x8	6
32	Left Bracket	1
33	Harness - MB	1
34	Harness - Operation Panel Board	1
35	Top Right Cover	1
36	Cable Bracket Cover	1

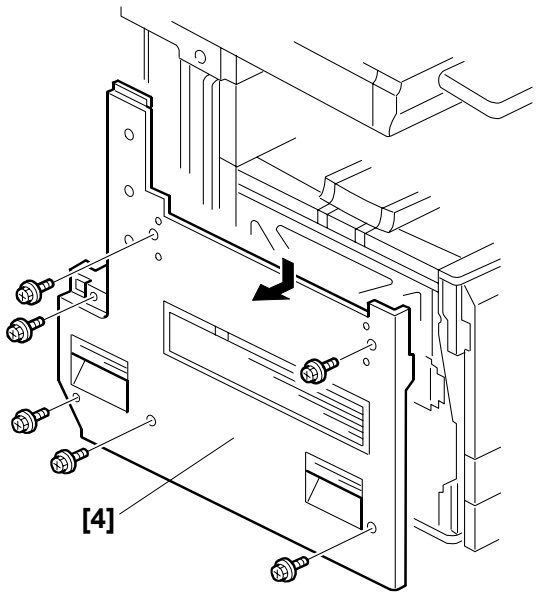

1
2
3
4
5
6
36
7
8
35
34
33
9
32
30
31
29
27
25
23
21
19
28
26
24
22
20
18
17
16
15
14
13
12
11
10

1.2 REMOVAL PROCEDURE FOR COVERS

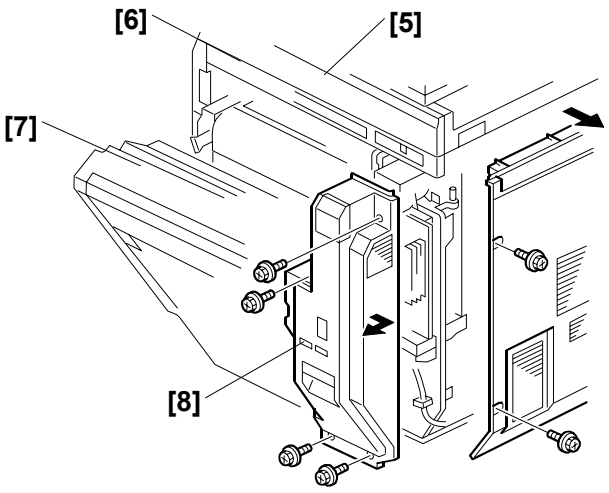
1. Scanner left cover **[1]** (☞ x 2)
2. Slide the scanner rear cover **[2]** to the left side, and then remove it (☞ x 1, hook x 2).
3. Left rear cover **[3]** (☞ x 1)



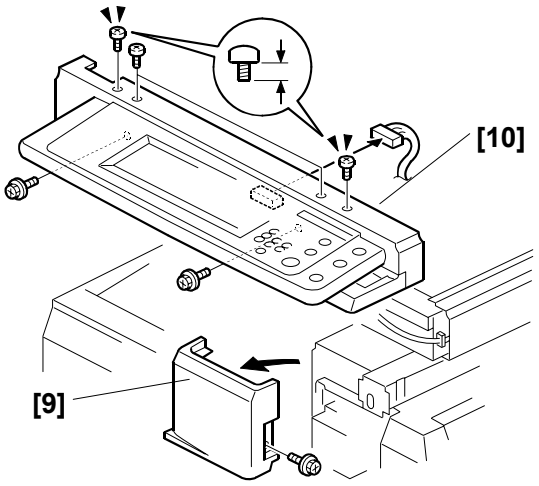
4. Left cover **[4]** (☞ x 6)



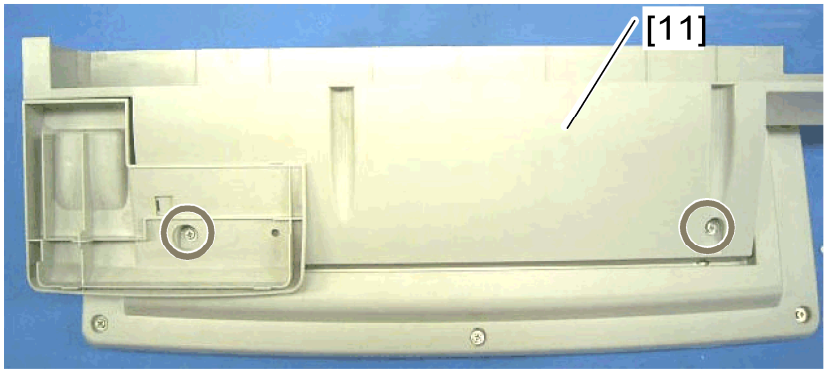
5. Scanner right cover **[5]** (☞ x 2)
6. Right top cover **[6]** (☞ x 1)
7. Open the right door **[7]**.
8. Right rear cover **[8]** (☞ x 4)



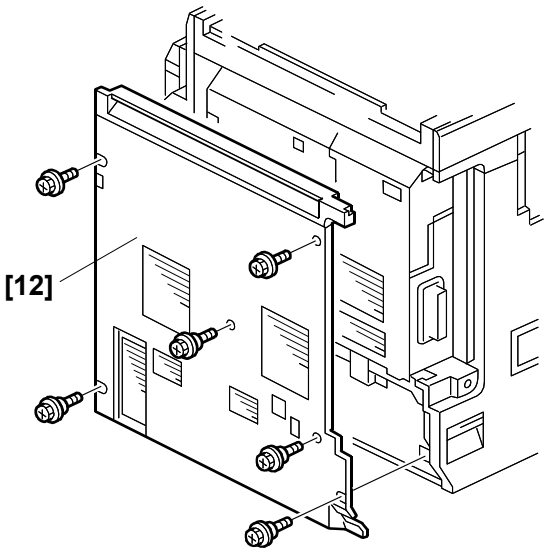
9. Front right cover **[9]** (x 1)
10. Operation panel with the scanner front cover **[10]** (x 6; M3x3 bind screw x 2, M3x5 bind screw x 2 on the top of the scanner front cover, M3x8 tapping screw x 2 on the bottom of the scanner front cover)



11. Scanner front cover **[11]** (x 2)



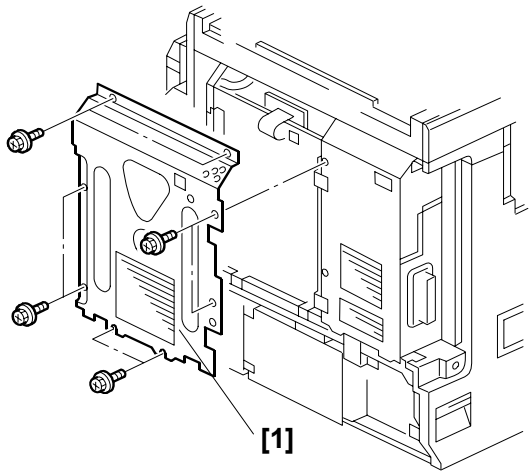
12. Rear cover **[12]** (x 6)



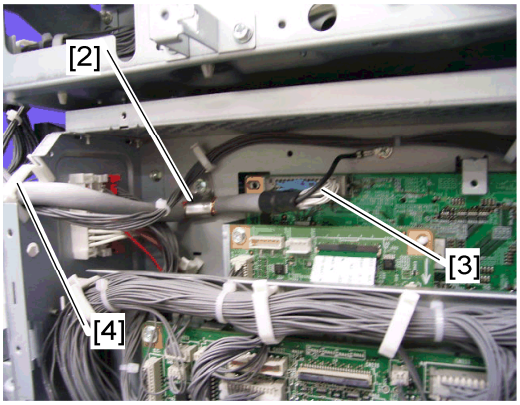
F

1.3 REMOVAL PROCEDURE FOR SCANNER UNIT

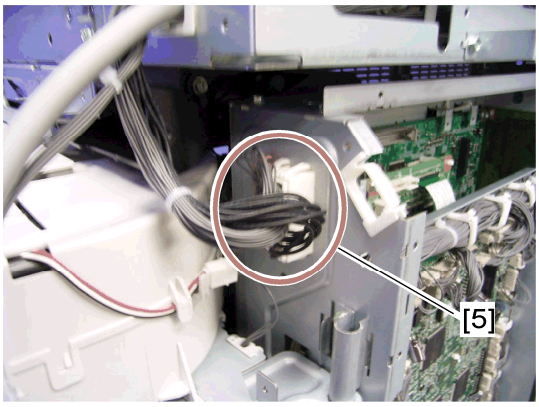
1. Controller box right cover **[1]** (☞ x 8)



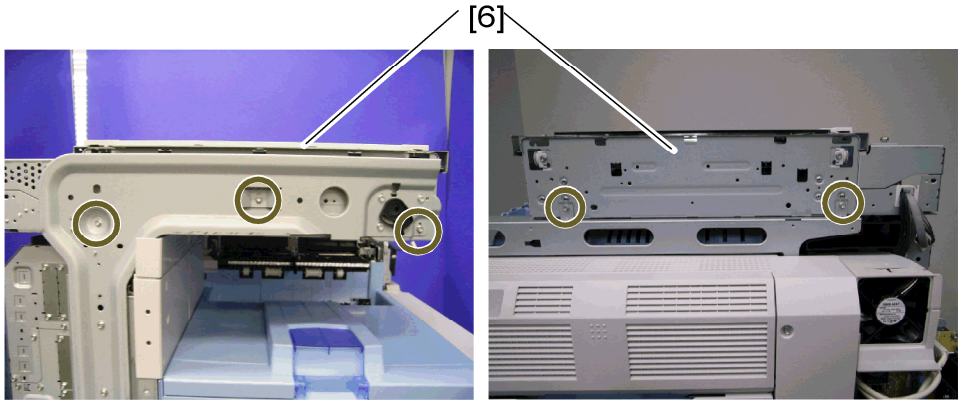
2. Remove the clamp plate **[2]** (☞ x 1).
3. Disconnect the scanner I/F cable **[3]** from the connector (CN509) on the IPU (☞ x 1, ground cable x 1).
4. Release the clamp **[4]**.



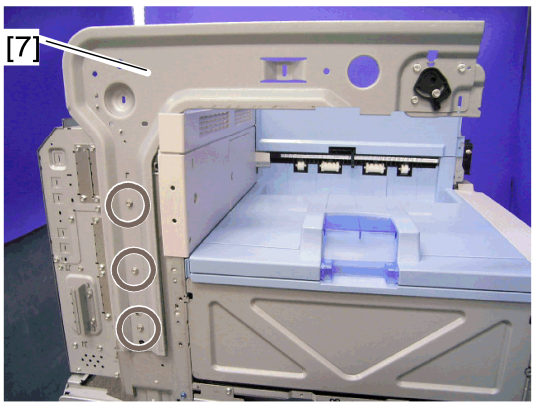
5. Disconnect the three connectors **[5]** on the controller box.



6. Scanner unit **[6]** (x 5; right side x 2, left side x 3)

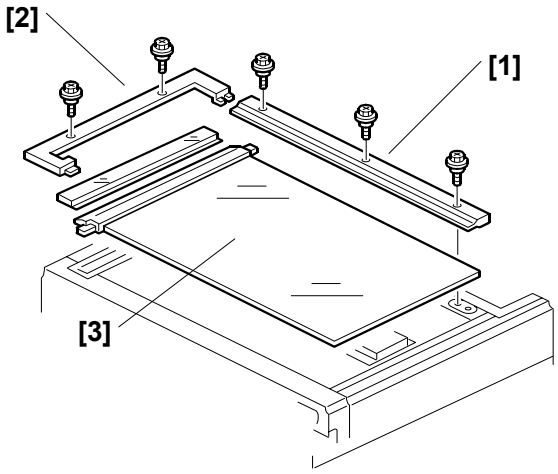


7. Scanner left stay **[7]** (x 3)

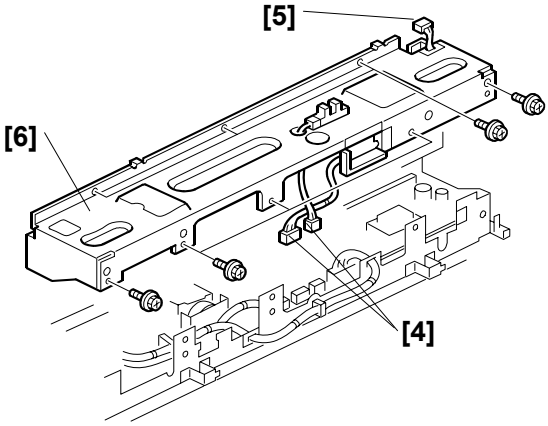


1.4 CONNECTING PROCEDURE FOR SCANNER UNIT

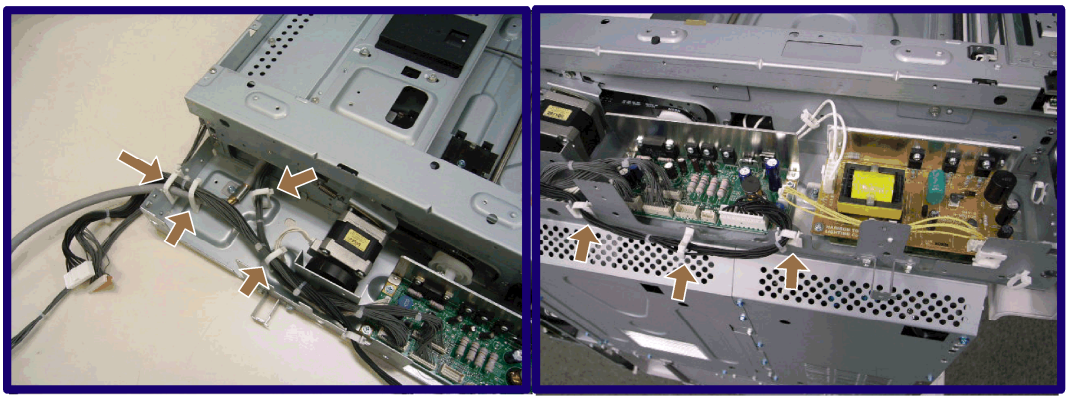
1. Rear scale **[1]** (x 3; stepped screw)
2. Glass cover **[2]** (x 2; stepped screw)
3. Exposure glass with the left scale **[3]**



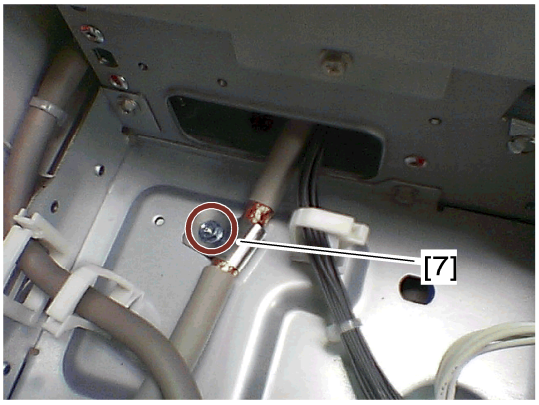
4. Disconnect the connectors **[4]** (CN312, CN318) from the SIO.
5. Disconnect the scanner HP sensor connector **[5]**.
6. Scanner rear frame **[6]** (x 8)



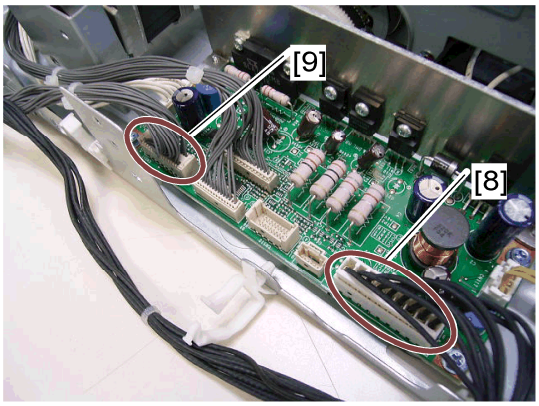
7. Release the clamps (x 7).



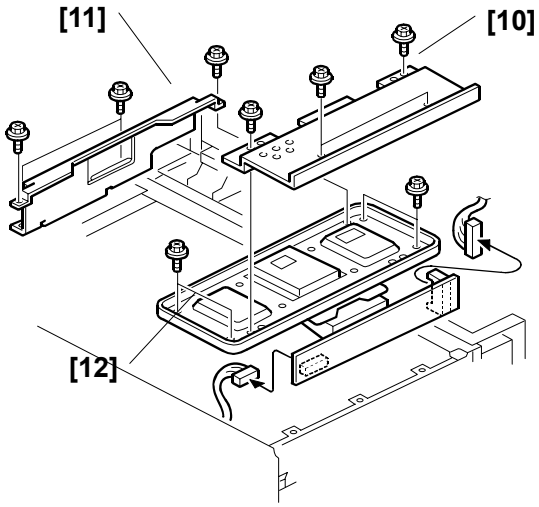
8. Remove the clamp [7] for the scanner I/F cable (x 1). This clamp will be used hereafter.



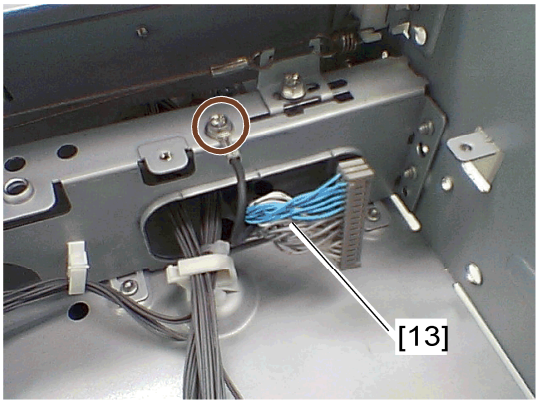
9. Disconnect the BICU interface harness [8] (CN310 on the SIO), and then remove it.
10. Disconnect the power supply harness [9] (CN311 on the SIO), and then remove it



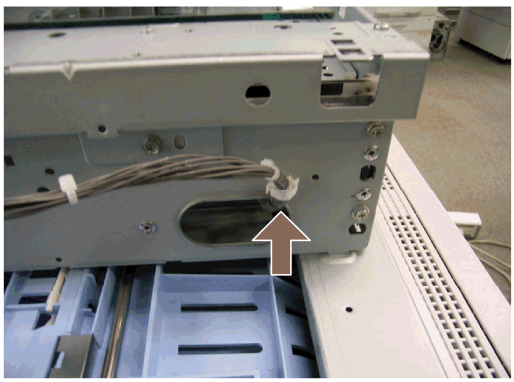
11. SBU cover **[10]** (x 4)
12. SBU grounding plate **[11]** (x 4)
13. SBU **[12]** (x 4, x 2: 15 pins connector, 30 pins connector)

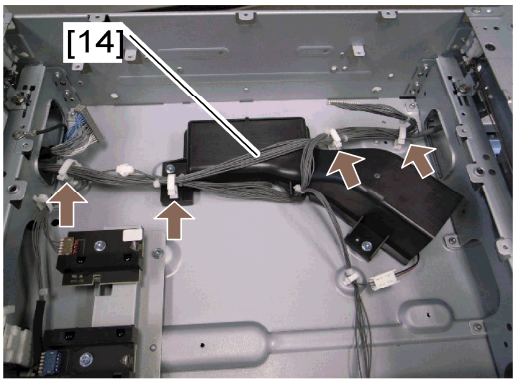


14. Scanner I/F cable **[13]** (x 1, ground cable x 1)

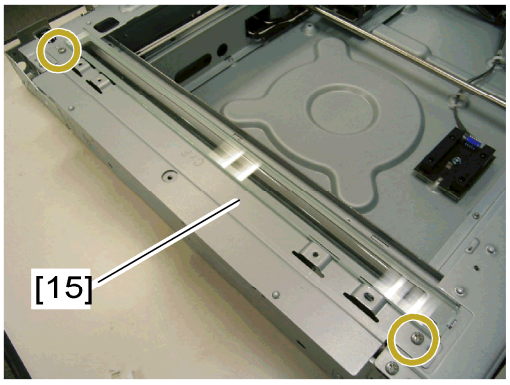


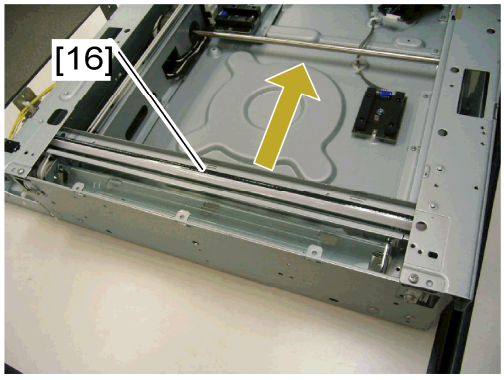
15. Operation panel I/F harness **[14]** (x 5)



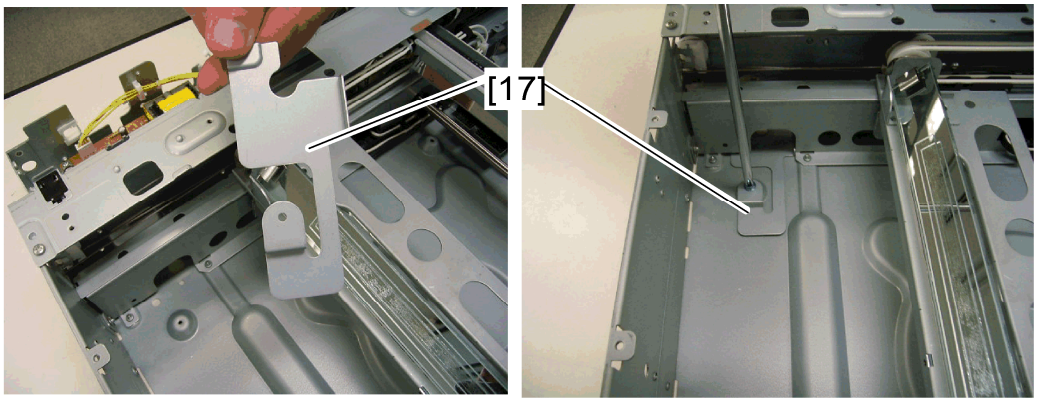


16. Scanner left stay **[15]** (x 2)
17. Move the scanner carriage **[16]** to the center position.

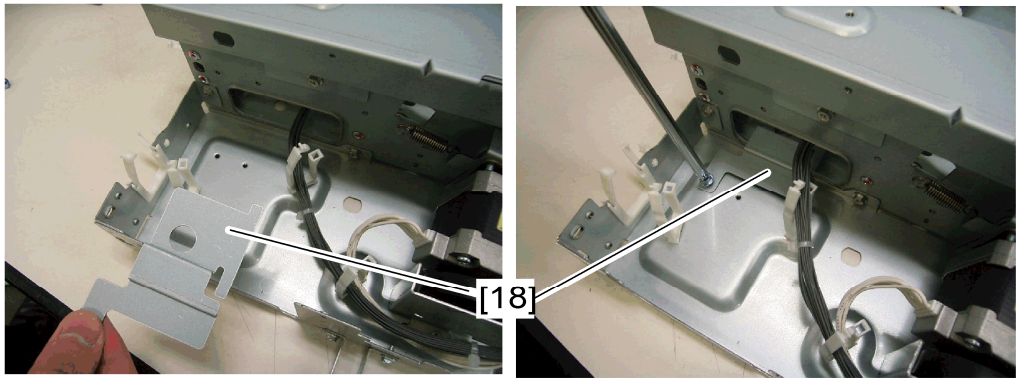




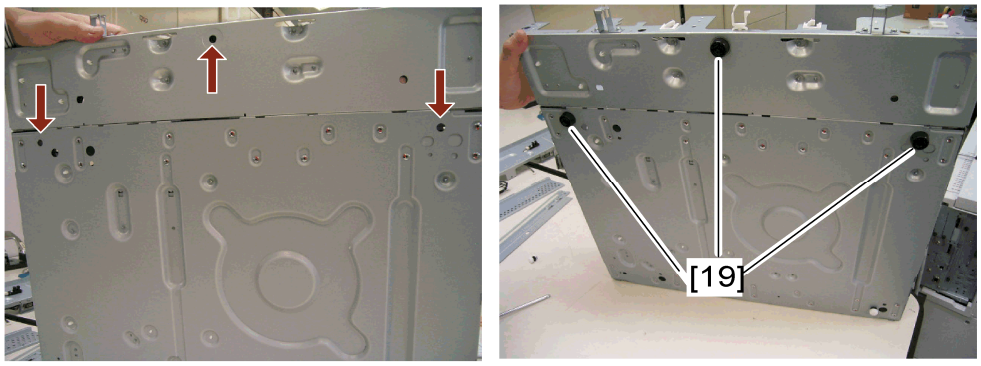
18. Install the left bottom plate **[17]** in the place as shown (x 1; M3x6 blue screw).



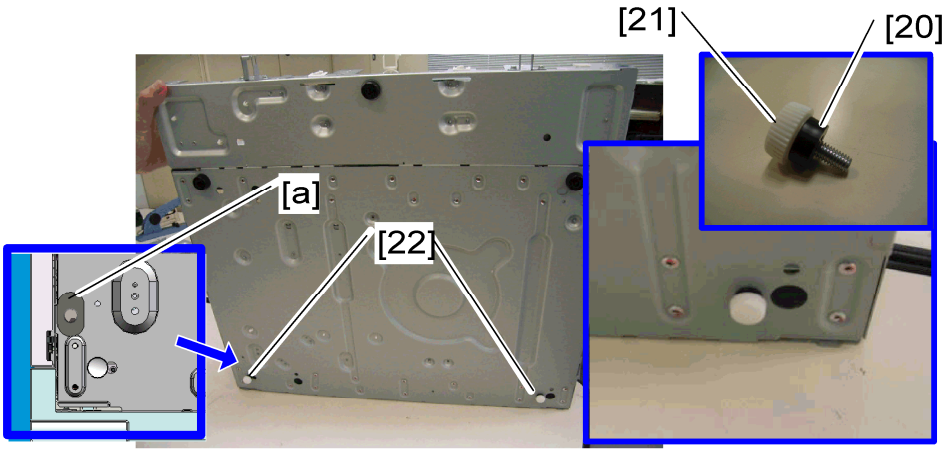
19. Install the right bottom plate **[18]** in the place as shown (x 1; M3x6 blue screw).



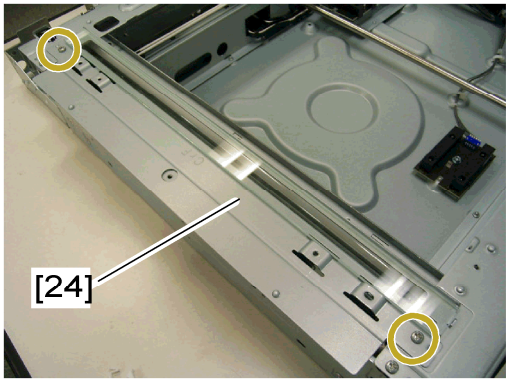
20. Install the three rubber legs **[19]** in the bottom of the scanner unit.

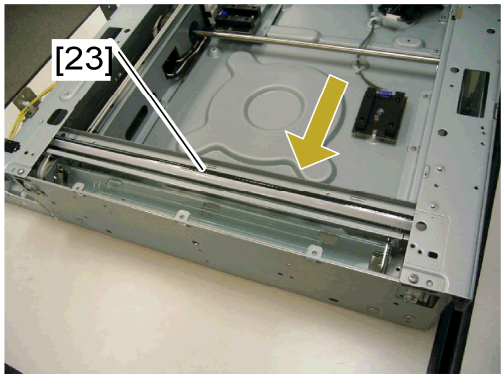


21. Install the two spacers **[20]**, adjusters **[21]** and seal **[a]** in the bottom **[22]** of the scanner unit.

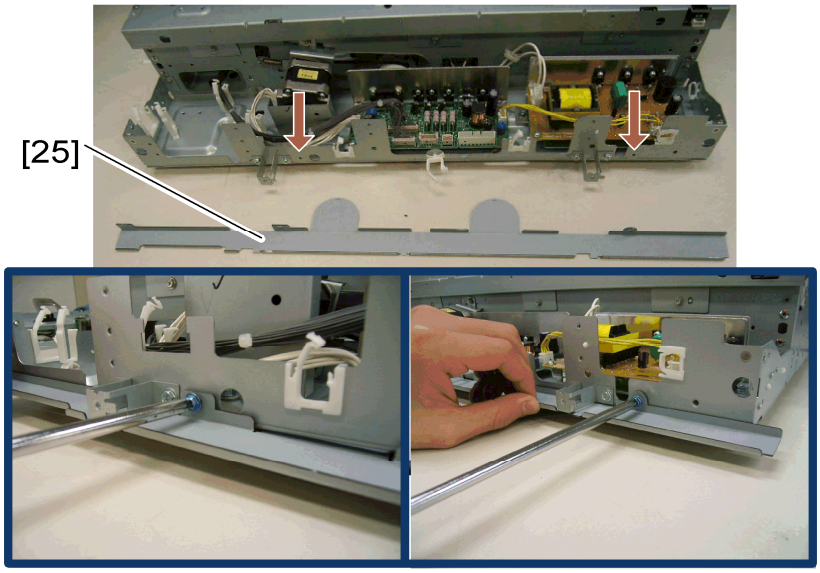


22. Move the scanner carriage **[23]** to its home position.
23. Reinstall the scanner left stay **[24]** (x 2).

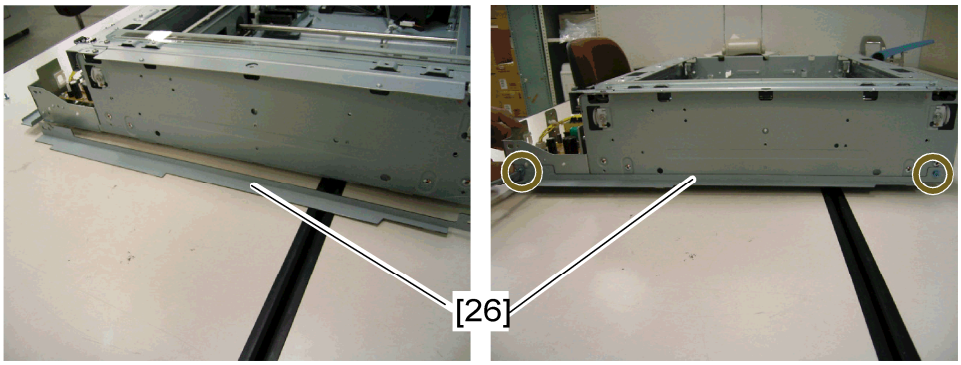




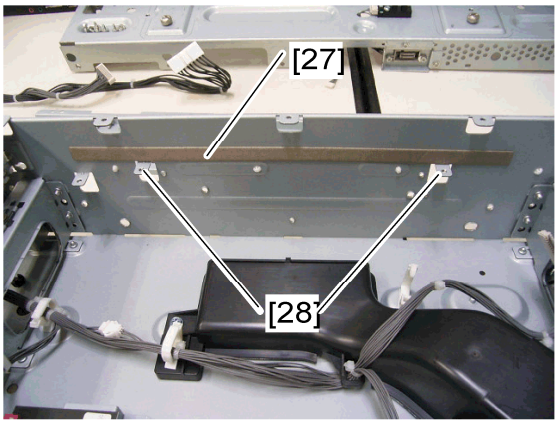
24. Install the rear bracket **[25]** to the outside of the scanner rear frame (x 2; M3x6 blue screw).



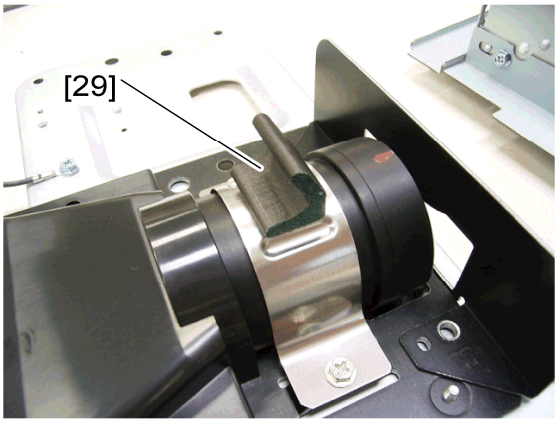
25. Install the left bracket **[26]** to the outside of the scanner left frame (x 2; M3x6 blue screw).



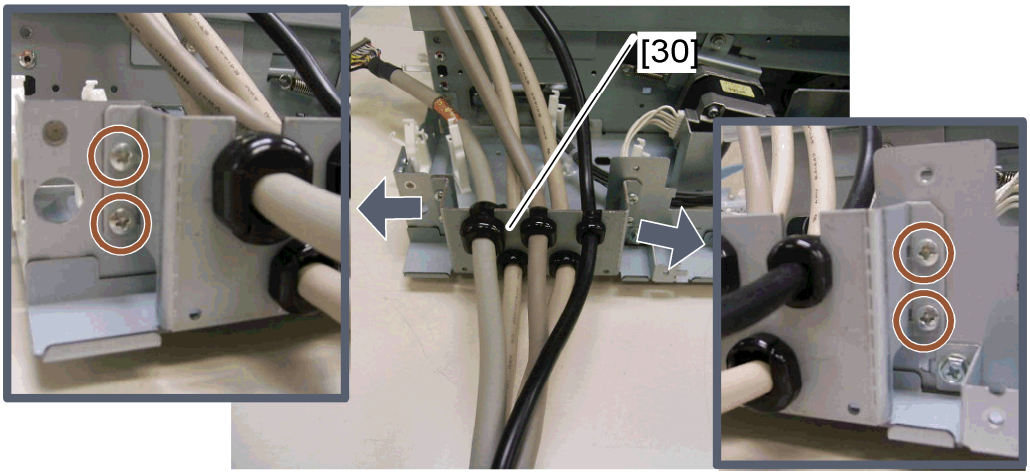
26. Clean the inside of the scanner left frame with a cloth absorbing alcohol.
27. Attach the gasket **[27]** to the inside of the scanner left frame aligning with two projections **[28]**.



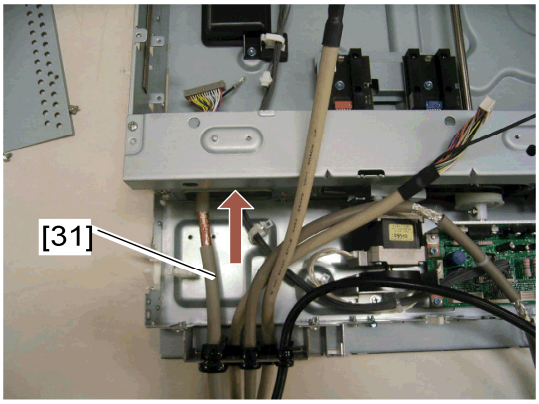
28. Clean the lens bracket with a cloth absorbing alcohol.
29. Attach the gasket **[29]** to the lens bracket as shown.



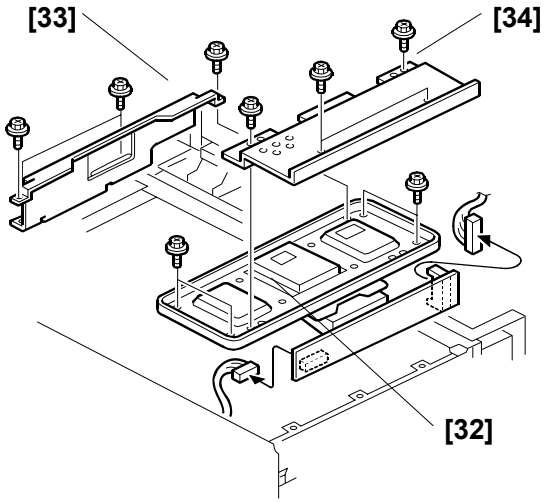
30. Attach the cable bracket **[30]** to the rear right of the scanner unit (x 4; screw-round M3x6).



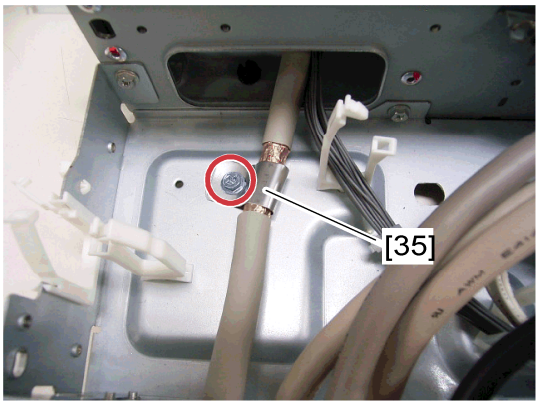
31. Put the scanner I/F cable **[31]** through the cutout of the scanner rear frame.



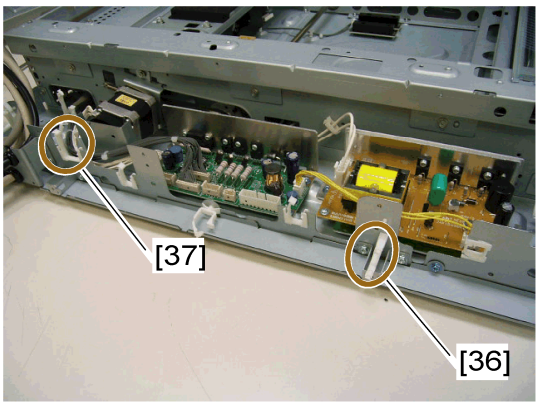
32. Reinstall the SBU [32] (x 4, x 2: 15 pins connector, 30 pins connector) and ground cable of the scanner I/F cable (x 1).
33. Reinstall the SBU grounding plate **[33]** (x 4).
34. Reinstall the SBU cover **[34]** (x 4).



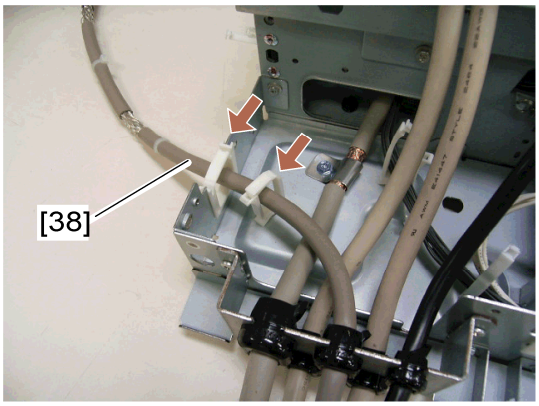
35. Remove the rap on the scanner I/F cable.
36. Attach the clamp **[35]** (this clamp is removed in step 8 in the "Connecting Procedure for Scanner Unit") to the scanner I/F cable and then secure it (x 1; M3x6 blue screw).



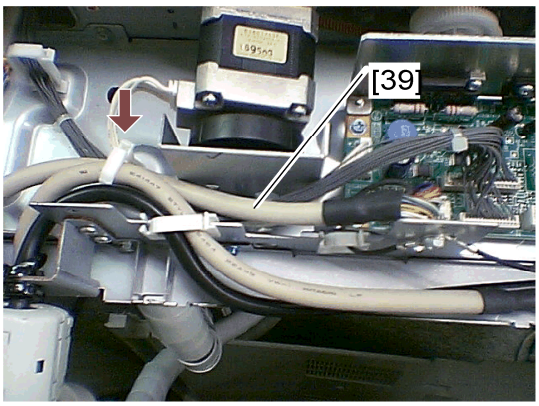
37. Install the clamp **[36]** and saddle clamp **[37]** as shown (☞ x 2).



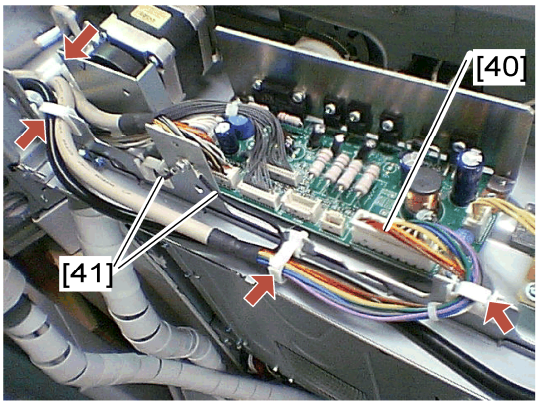
38. Route the operation panel I/F cable **[38]** and clamp it (☞ x 2).



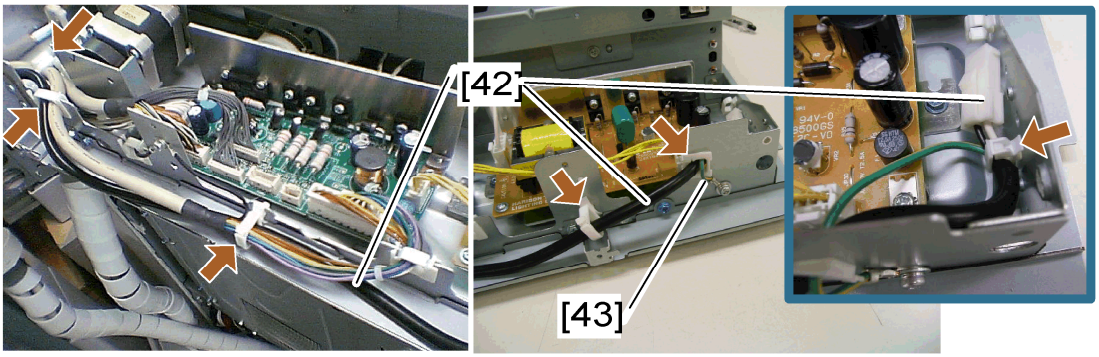
39. Route and connect the BICU interface cable **[39]** to CN311 on the SIO (☞ x 1).



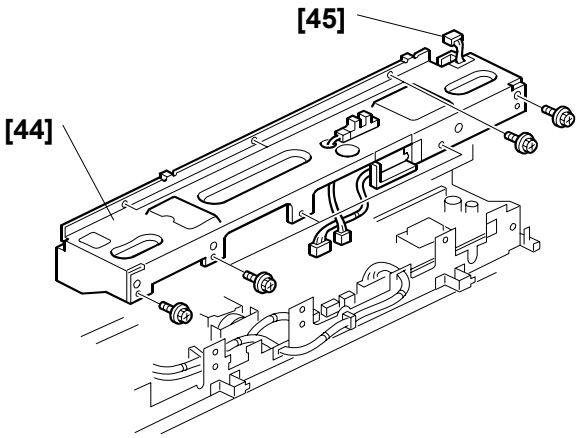
40. Route and connect the power supply cable **[40]** to CN310 on the SIO (x 4).
41. Secure two ground cables **[41]** (BICU interface cable and power supply cable) (x 1; M3x6 blue screw).



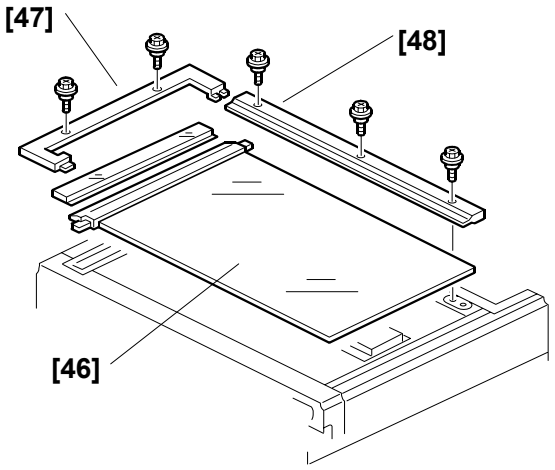
42. Route the heater relay cable **[42]** as shown and secure ground cable **[43]** (x 6, x 1; screw-round M4x8).



43. Reinstall the scanner rear frame **[44]** (x 8, x 2).
44. Connect the harness **[45]** to the scanner HP sensor.

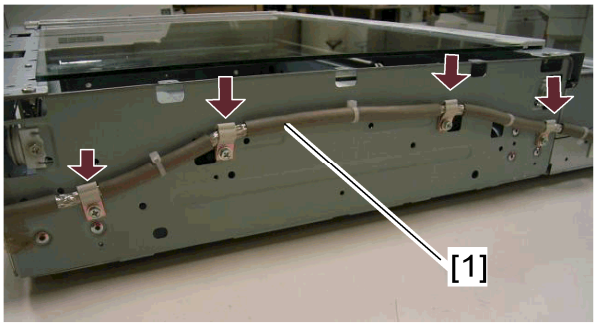


45. Reinstall the exposure glass with left scale **[46]**.
46. Reinstall the glass cover **[47]** (stepped screw x 2).
47. Reinstall the rear scale **[48]** (stepped screw x 3).

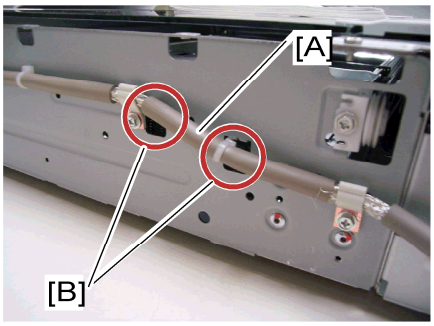


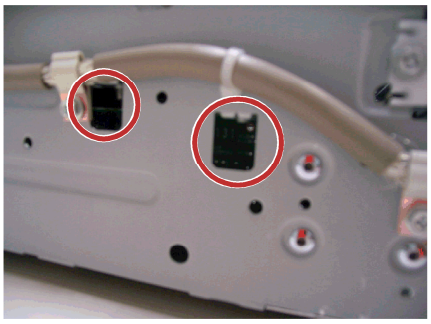
1.5 CONNECTING PROCEDURE FOR OP PANEL

1. Route and attach the operation panel I/F cable to the outside of the scanner right frame with four plate clamps (🔩 x 4; screw - tapping M3x8).

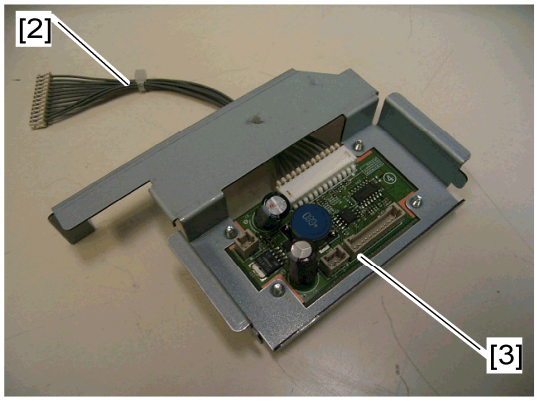


NOTE: Make sure that the operation panel I/F cable [A] does not cover the three cutouts [B].

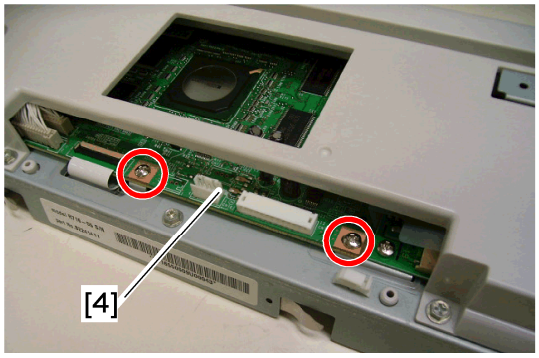




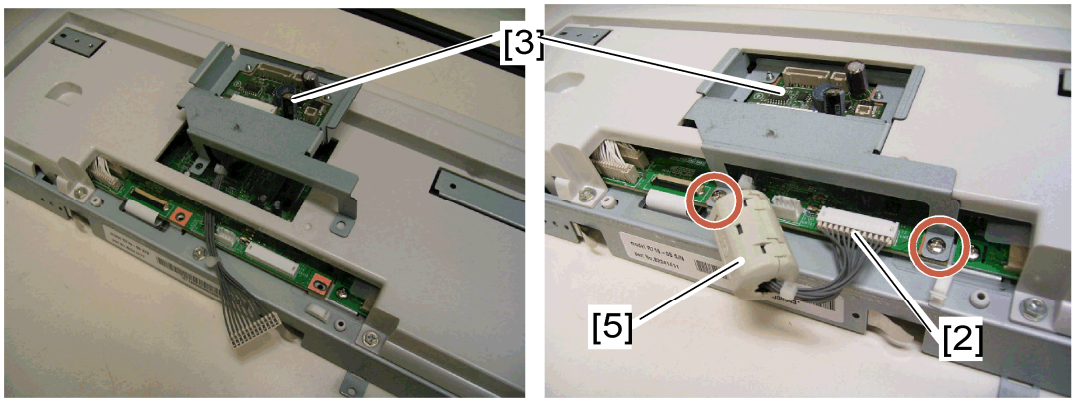
2. Connect the harness **[2]** to the operation panel interface board **[3]** as shown.



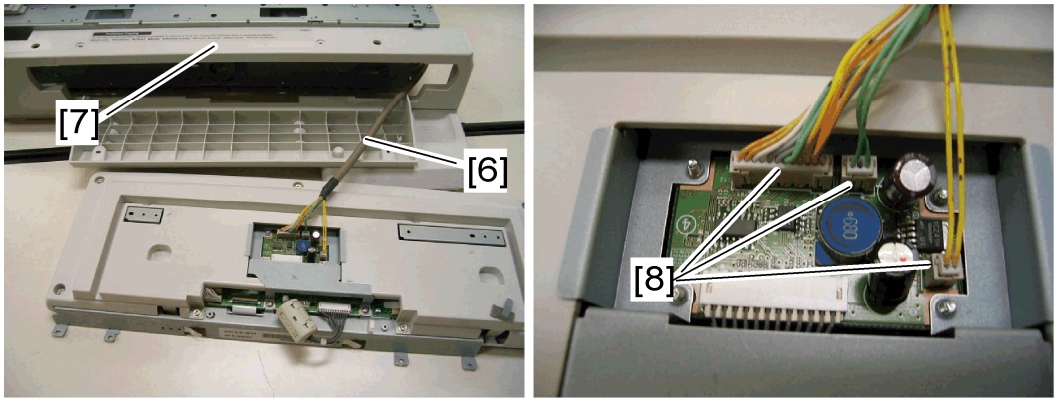
3. Remove the two screws on the operation panel drive board **[4]**.



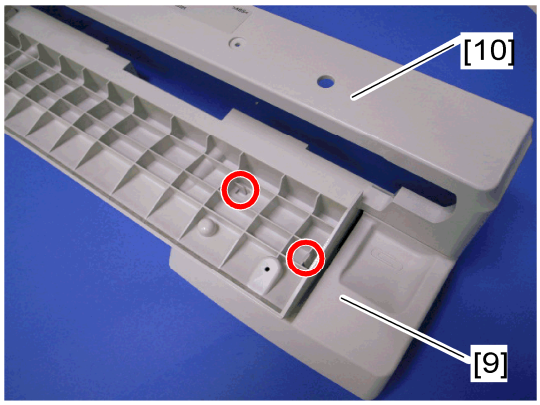
4. Attach the operation panel interface board **[3]** as shown (x 2; these are removed in step 3 in this procedure).
5. Connect the harness **[2]** to CN700 on the operation panel drive board and install the core **[5]** (RFC-8).



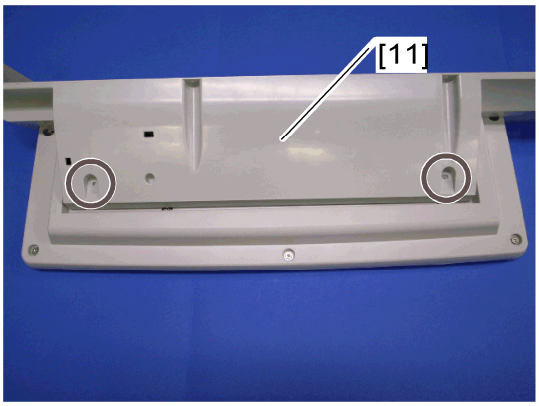
6. Put the operation panel I/F cable **[6]** through the scanner front cover **[7]**.
7. Connect the three connectors **[8]** of the operation panel I/F cable to operation panel interface board.



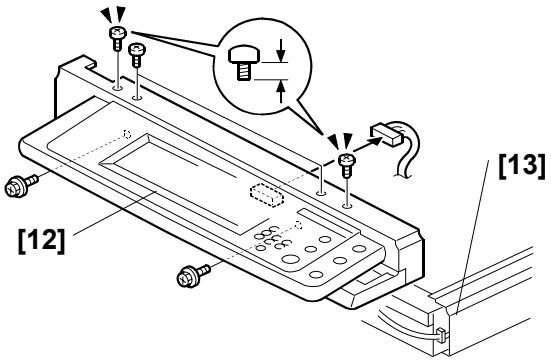
8. Remove the clip tray **[9]** from the scanner front cover **[10]**.



9. Attach the scanner front cover **[11]** to the operation panel (x 2).

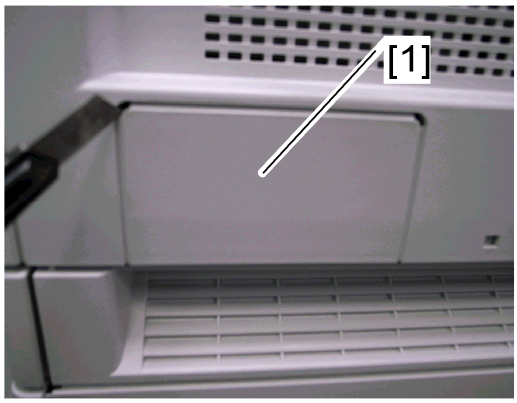


10. Reinstall the operation panel with the scanner front cover **[12]** in the scanner front frame (x 6; M3x3 bind screw x 2, M3x5 bind screw x 2 on the top of the scanner front cover, M3x8 tapping screw x 2 on the bottom of the scanner front cover).
11. Reinstall the scanner right cover **[13]** (x 2).

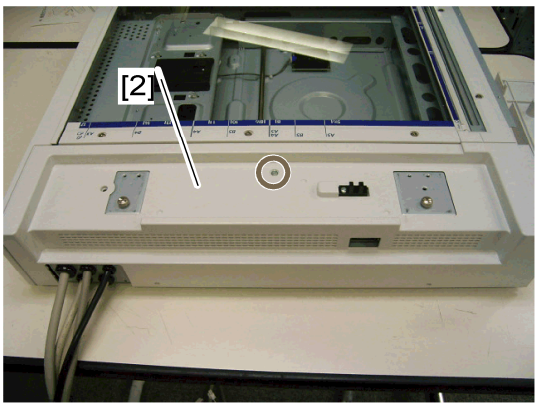


1.6 HARNESS BRACKET ATTACHMENT PROCEDURE

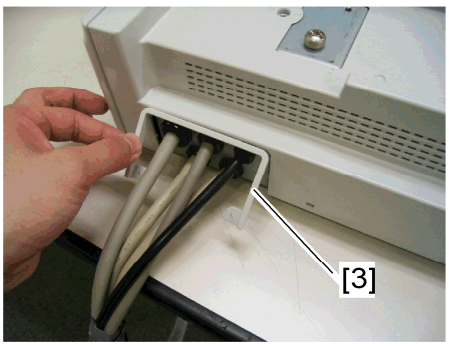
1. Cut off the rear right **[1]** of the scanner top rear cover with a cutter.

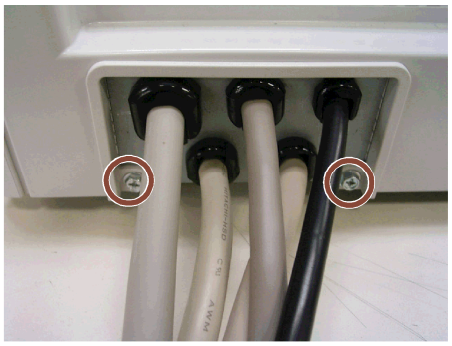


2. Reinstall the scanner top rear cover **[2]** (x 1; M3x8 tapping screw).



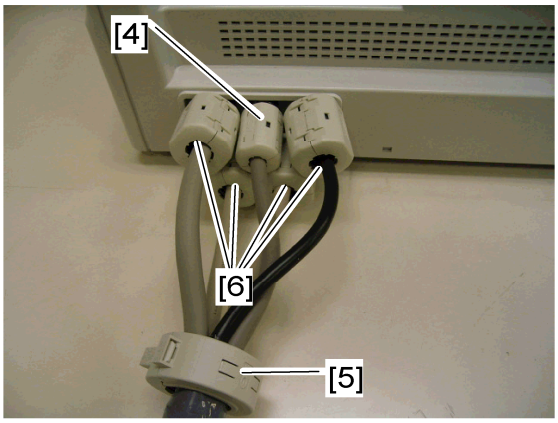
3. Install and attach the cable bracket cover **[3]** (x 2; screw-tapping M3x8).



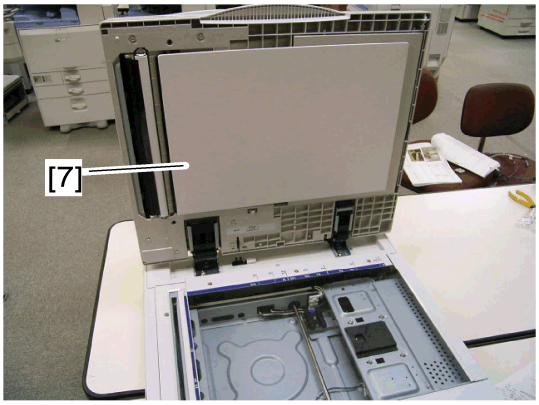


4. Reinstall the scanner left cover (x 2).

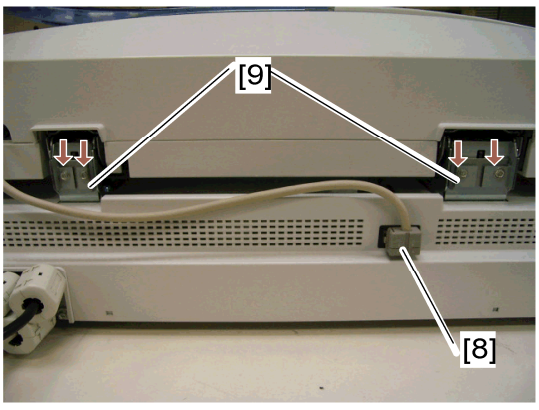
5. Install the core **[4]** (RFC-9) to the operation panel I¥F cable, ring core **[5]** (TFCM-41-27-16) to the bound cables and the cores **[6]** (RFC-13) to the other cables.



6. Install the ARDF **[7]** or platen cover on the scanner unit (stud screw x 2).

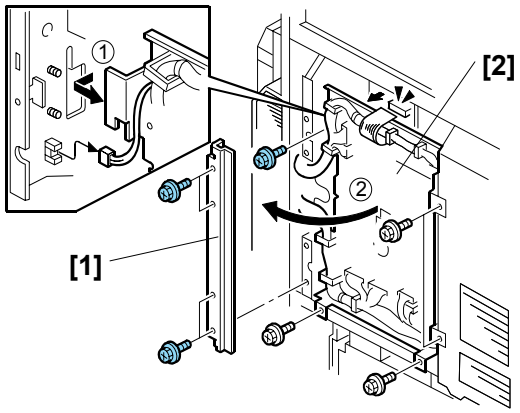


7. Connect the ARDF I/F cable **[8]** to the connector of the scanner unit.
8. Install the right and left stoppers **[9]** to the ARDF hinges (x 2 each; screw-tapping M3x16).

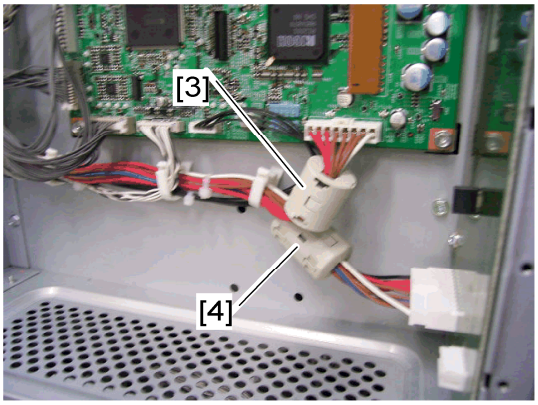


1.7 CONNECTING PROCEDURE FOR MAINFRAME

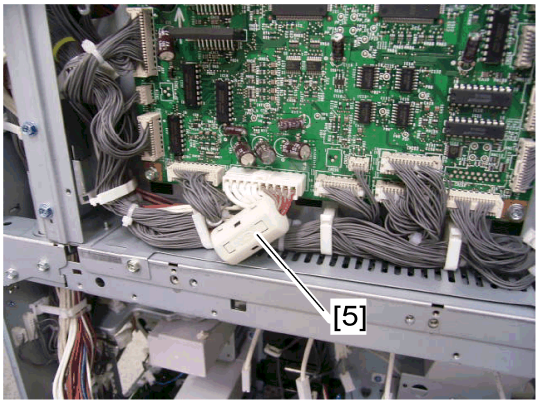
1. Controller box stay **[1]** (x 4)
2. Open the IOB bracket **[2]** (x 5, flat cable x 1, x 1).



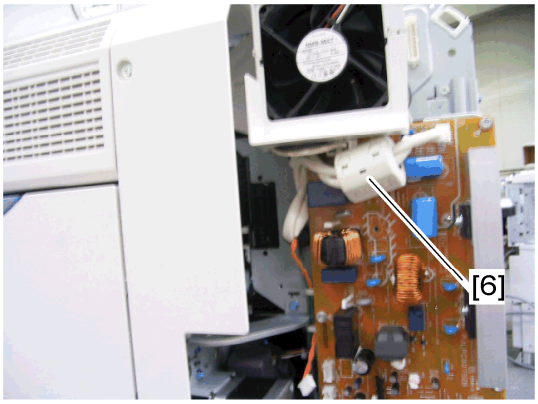
3. Install the core **[3]** (TFC16816) in the harness of CN510 (on the IPU) and the core **[4]** (RFC-8) in the harness of CN540 (on the MB).
4. Close the IOB bracket **[2]** (x 5, flat cable x 1, x 1).
5. Reinstall the controller box stay **[1]** (x 4).



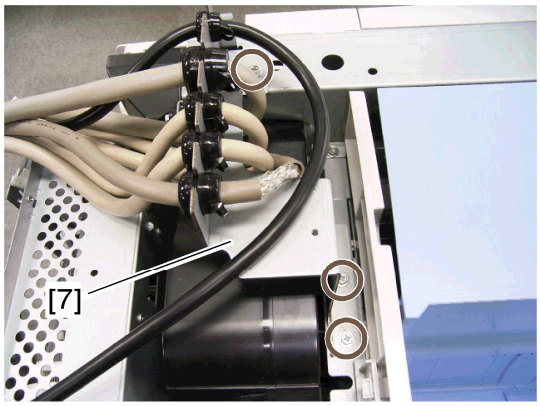
6. Install the core **[5]** (RFC-5) in the brown and red harnesses of CN201 (on the IOB).



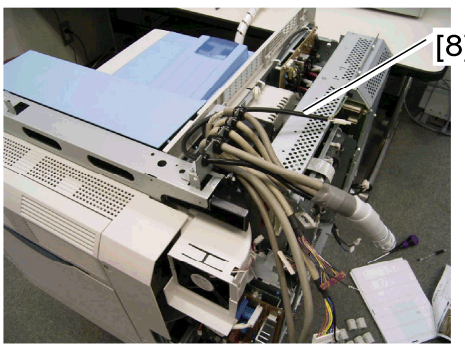
7. Install the core **[6]** (RFC-13) in the power supply cables on the IH inverter.

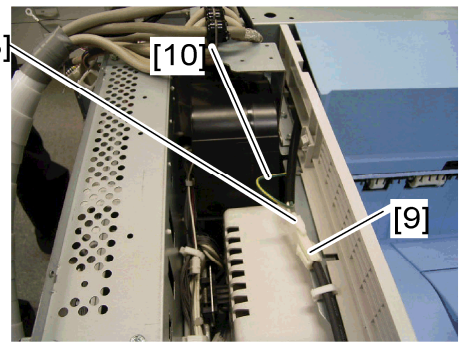


8. Install the cable bracket **[7]** in the rear frame of the mainframe (🔩 x 3; screw-tapping M3x6).

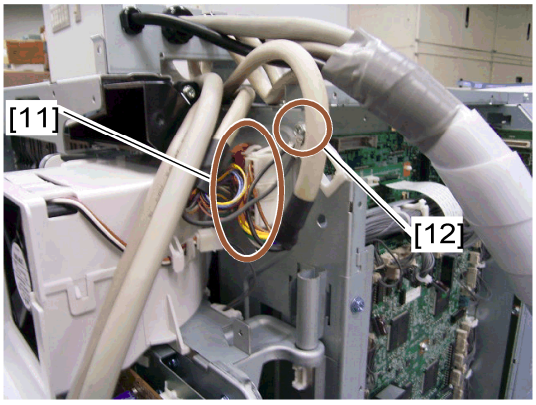


9. Route and connect the heater relay cable **[8]** to the heater cable **[9]** of the mainframe.
10. Secure the ground cable of the heater relay cable **[10]** (🔩 x 1; screw-round M4x8).

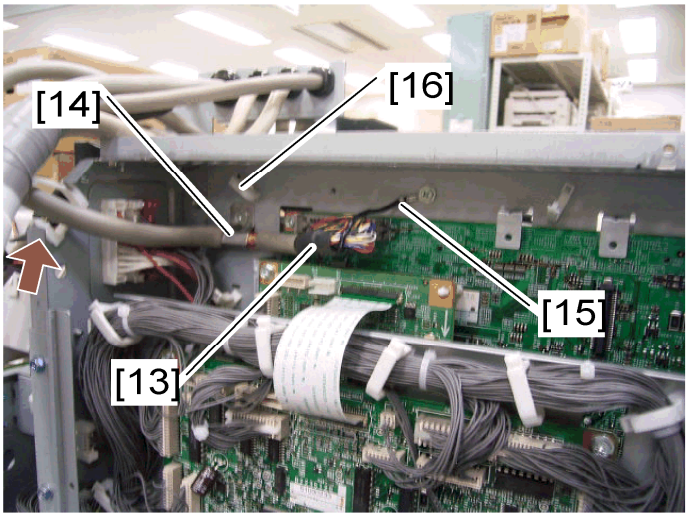




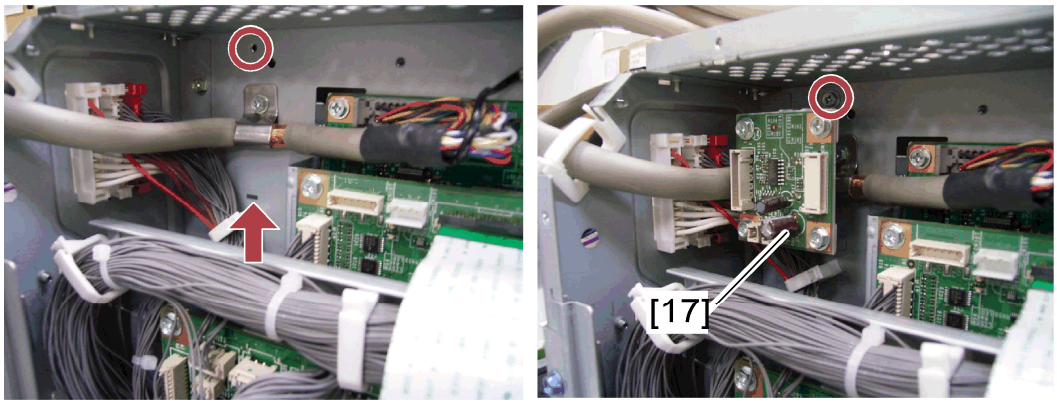
11. Connect three connectors **[11]** to the outside of the controller box.
12. Secure the two ground cables **[12]** (🔩 x 1; screw-tapping M3x6).



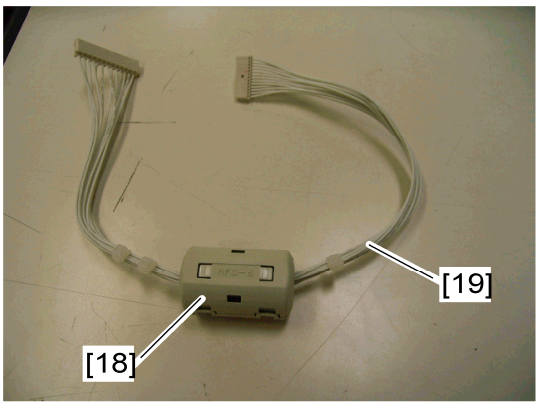
13. Route the scanner I/F cable **[13]** and connect it to CN509 (on the IPU) (🔌 x 1).
14. Secure the scanner I/F cable with the clamp **[14]** (🔩 x 1; M3x6 tapping screw) and the ground cable **[15]** (🔩 x 1; M3x6 tapping screw).
15. Remove the clamp **[16]**.



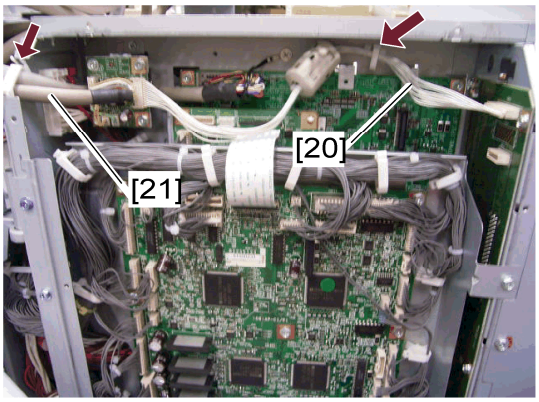
16. Install the MB interface board [17] (□ x 1; screw-tapping M3x6).



17. Install the core **[18]** (RFC-8) in between binds on the long relay harness **[19]**.



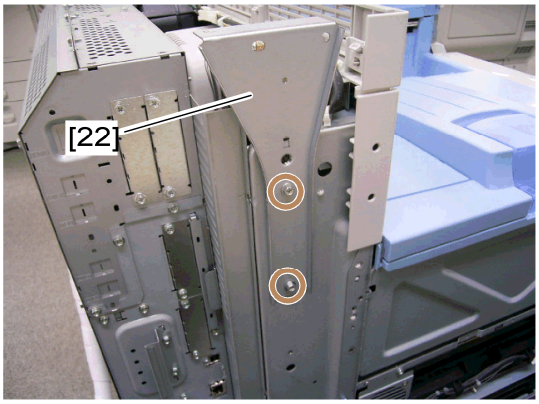
18. Route the long relay harness **[20]** with the connector, which has two binds, connecting to the MB and the connector, which has one bind, connecting to the MB interface board and clamp it between two binds (☞ x 1).



19. Connect the harness **[20]** to CN536 on the MB and other terminal to the CN1 on the MB interface board.

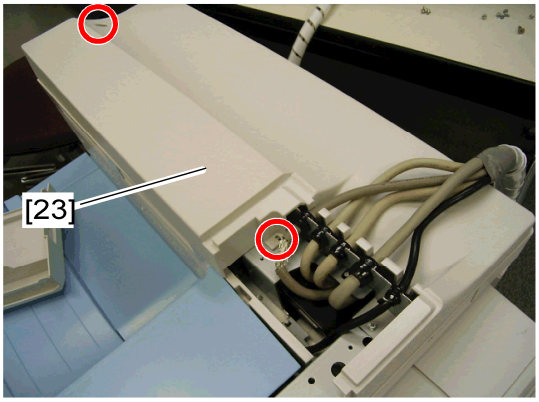
20. Connect the operation panel I/F cable **[21]** to the CN2, CN5 and CN6 on the MB interface board and clamp it (☞ x 1).

21. Reinstall the controller box right cover (x 8).
22. Install the left scanner stay **[22]** (x 2; M4x6 tapping screw) in the left side of the main machine.
23. Reinstall the left cover (x 6).
24. Reinstall the left rear cover (x 1).
25. Reinstall the right rear cover (x 4).
26. Close the right door.
27. Reinstall the right top cover (x 1).

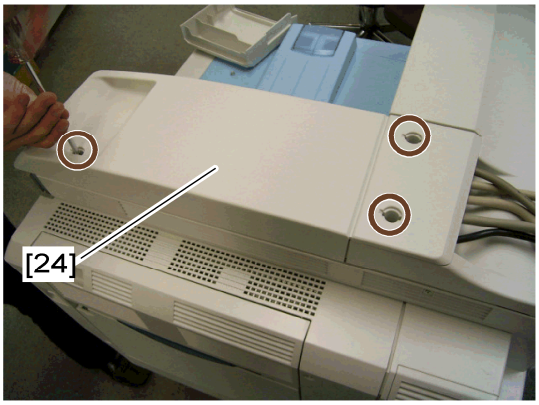


IMPORTANT: If you install the key counter, first refer to the "Installation for Key Counter".

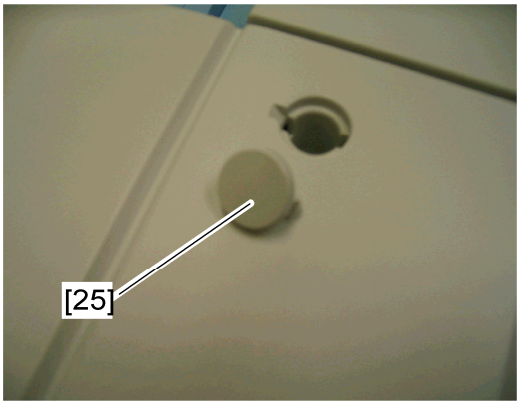
28. Install the top rear cover **[23]** (x 2; screw-tapping M3x8).



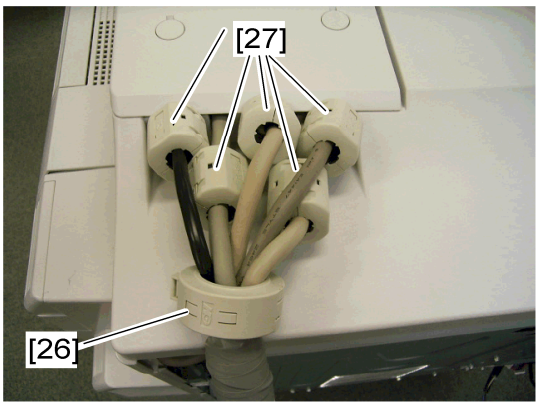
29. Install the top right cover **[24]** (x 3; screw-tapping M3x8).



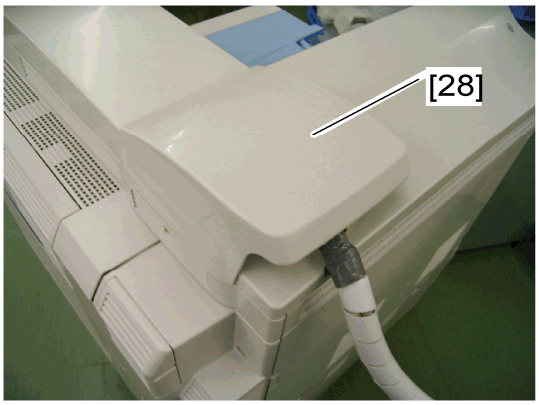
30. Attach the three caps **[25]** to the screw holes on the top right cover.



31. Install the ring core **[26]** (TFCM-41-27-16) to the bound cables and the cores **[27]** (RFC-13) to the other cables.

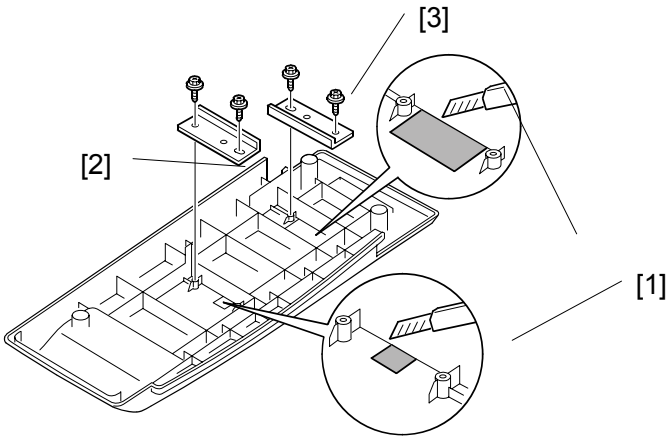


32. Install the cable cover **[28]** in the top rear cover.
33. Follow the "INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS" to place the scanner accessibility unit for safety.
34. After installation, adjust the scanner image (☛ "Image Adjustment" > "Scanning" in the chapter "Replacement and Adjustment" of the Model B222/B224 SERVICE MANUAL)

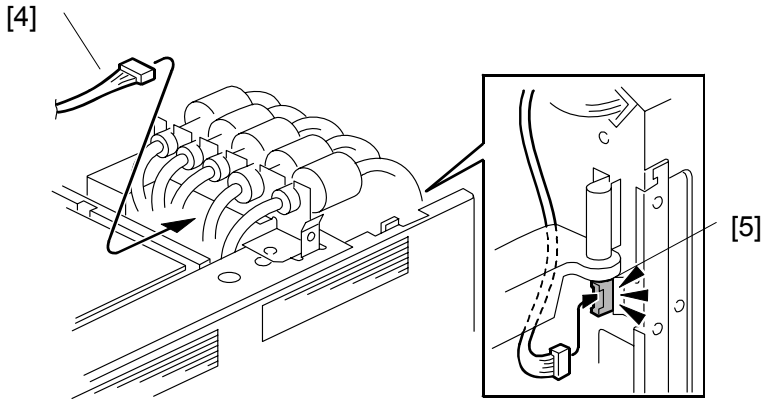


1.8 INSTALLATION FOR KEY COUNTER

1. Cut off and remove the parts **[1]** with a cutter.
2. Attach the key counter front bracket **[2]** and rear bracket **[3]** to the reverse side of the top right cover (🔩 x 4; screw 2-tapping M3x8).

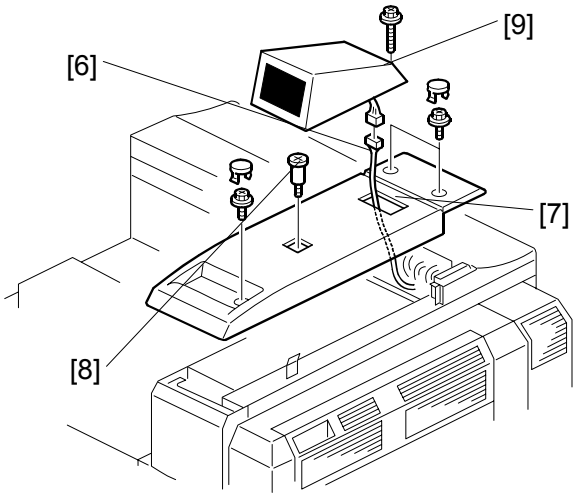


3. Put the key counter harness **[4]** into the machine.
4. Connect the key counter harness to the connector **[5]** of the right side of the controller box.



5. Install the top rear cover (☛ step 28 in "Connecting Procedure for Mainframe")

6. Put the key counter harness **[6]** through the cut out **[7]**.
7. Install the top right cover in the machine and attach the caps to the screw holes (☛ steps 29 and 30 in "Connecting Procedure for Mainframe").
8. Install the shoulder screw **[8]**.
9. Install the key counter **[9]** (🔩 x 1; screw-tapping M4x16, 🖑 x 1).



For details about installing the Key Counter, ☛ "Service Manual for B222/B224".